

# The Transcribed War Diary of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF



This transcription duplicates as closely as possible the actual War Diary of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF. This was completed by Al Lloyd and John "Sarge" Sergeant of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion Discussion group at <http://groups.yahoo.com/group/21sters/>

Every effort has been made to correct typing and spelling errors that appear in the original document that involve the names and numbers of the men mentioned. This was done in order to allow researchers to locate individuals by a key-word search. Had those spelling mistakes not been corrected, the entries would not be found.

An effort has been made to retain a similar layout or appearance of the original War Diary. This was not always possible in that the original is in landscape format and for ease of viewing, it formatted here in a portrait format.

On occasion there are transcriber's comments printed in *italics* and in other places there are some words that are undecipherable, and noted as such.

There are also many pages of original memos, messages and maps that were included in the diary. Those have been reproduced here as images and not transcribed.

Questions and comments can be directed to Al Lloyd at [21stbattalion@kos.net](mailto:21stbattalion@kos.net)

Please visit the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion website at <http://21stbattalion.ca>

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.  
(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
Devonport	15/5/15	4 AM	The Battalion arrived in England at the marginally mentioned time & place
		4 PM	The right half of the Battalion entrained for Westenhanger Station, Kent
		6 PM	The Left half & details of the Battalion entrained for Westenhanger Station, Kent
Westenhanger	16/5/15		The Battalion having arrived at the marginally mentioned station marched to West Sandling Camp to take up quarters there.
West Sandling Camp	18/5/15		Armourer Sergt Major Gibson gives a lecture to the Battalion (by Companies) on the care and use of the Ross rifle
			Sr NCO's attached to the Battalion as Instructors in Interior Economy
	20/5/15		#369 Coy Sergt Major C. Lattion (2) having died at Plymouth Hospital is struck off strength of the Battalion from this date.  <i>Transcriber's note: CSM Lattion's number was later changed to 59569</i>
	21/5/15		The Battalion paraded for Elementary Musketry Training (by companies) on Private Parade ground  One officer and 35 NCO's and men proceeded to Ashford on Garrison Duty
	24/5/15		2 Officers and * NCO's proceed to Ross Barracks, Shorncliffe for Instructional Class in Machine Guns. They will be attached to the 30 <sup>th</sup> Battalion for discipline, rations and accommodation during course.  9 AM – Muster Parade held on private parade ground  The Battalion will be Duty Battalion for week commencing 23/5/15  Guard at Ordnance Depot – Picquet at Red Lion Hotel, Hythe – Picquet at Fountain Hotel, Seabrook.
	26/5/15		One Officer proceeds to Ross Barracks, Shorncliffe for a Machine Gun Course.  5 Staff Sergeants of the School of Musketry reported for duty as Instructors in Musketry, and will be attached to this Battalion for discipline, quarters, and rations from this date.  The Battalion received instructions (by companies) in Fire Discipline and training
	28/5/15	7.30 AM to 10 AM	The Battalion paraded for Musketry and Physical Drill
		10.10 AM	Commanding Officer's parade. New Equipment worn, and taken into use from this date.
	30/5/15	8.00 AM	Muster Parade held
	31/5/15	7.30 AM to 5.00 PM	The Battalion paraded for Musketry Instruction, Physical Drill, Bayonet Fighting, Company Drill, Lectures on March discipline, and Battalion drill.

WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
West Sandling Camp	1/6/15	7.30 AM to 5 PM	- The Battalion paraded for:- Musketry Instruction, Physical Drill, Coy in attack, Bayonet Fighting, Lectures Protection on the March.
			Usual Training and Battalion Drill
	2/6/15	7.30 AM to 12 Noon	- The Battalion paraded for instructions in:- Musketry, Physical Drill, Coy in attack & Bayonet Fighting
		1:00 PM	- Route March
	3/6/15		Three Officers proceeded to Scarborough for a course of Instruction
			Our Officers proceeds to RMC (Staff College) Camberley for course of Instruction
	7/6/15		Battalion at Hythe Ranges for Musketry Course
	to		
	12/6/17		
	14/6/15		Battalion at Hythe Ranges for Musketry Course
			2:30 PM Battalion paraded Muster which was postponed till the 17 <sup>th</sup> inst.
			Two Officers proceeded to Ross Barracks for special Machine Gun Class
	15/6/15		Battalion at Hythe Ranges for Musketry Course
	16/6/15		60108 Pte W Carruthers taken on strength from desertion
	17/6/15		Battalion at Hythe Ranges for Musketry course
			2.30 PM Battalion paraded for Muster
	18/6/15		Battalion at Hythe Ranges for Musketry Course
	to		
	19/6/15		
	21/6/15		Battalion and Compy Drills – Capt WH Smith (14 <sup>th</sup> Batt Royal Montreal Regt) gave a lecture to the QRMR, QMS & Coy QMS
			Pte CH Fletcher taken on strength on arrival from Canada
	22/6/15		Battalion & Coy Drills & Route March
	to		
	26/6/15		
	28/6/15		Class of Instruction in Bayonet Fighting commenced (Battalion)
	29/6/15		Bayonet Fighting Class, Coy Drill, Battalion Drill
	30/6/15		Bayonet Fighting Class, Coy Drill, Battalion Drill
			Pte Clement charged with conduct to the prejudice of good order & Military Discipline - Tried by DCM
			Pte Carruthers deserted – tried by DCM

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
West Sandling Camp	1/7/15	8.00 am	the Battalion turned out for Muster Parade
		2.00 pm	Battalion sports on parade ground
			One Pte discharged from MONKS HORTON Hosp
	2/7/15		Major CC BENNETT president and Capt HE PENSE, members of a board of Officers on the suitability of the Oliver Equipment.  A lecture on Entrenching and Methods of improving Trenches by Major CE BATTYE, RE, to Officers  2 Ptes struck off Strength on proceeding to CANADA for discharge.
	4/7/15		The Battalion paraded for DIVINE SERVICE, C of E 9.00 AM, RC at 7.00 AM, Protestants, Methodists and other denominations 9.00 AM
	5/7/15		The PIPE BAND and CAMC UNIT paraded at 3.00 pm at H Qrs, 4 <sup>th</sup> INFANTRY BDE.  The BATTALION paraded at 7.30 am
	6/7/15		The following Officers and NCOs duly qualified at Eastern Com SCHOOL OF MUSKETRY – Lieut F INDERWICK, & J EDWARDS, 1 <sup>st</sup> Class Instructors. One Sergeant and a Corporal 2 <sup>nd</sup> Class Instructors. One Sergeant "Distinguished"  3 Ptes promoted to rank of Corporal in Machine Gun Section  A Bombing Class consisting of Lieut BLACK, one Sergeant, 2 Corporals & 32 men, commenced at 1.45 pm.  The Battalion paraded at 7.30 am
	7/7/15		7.30 AM – The Battalion paraded at 7.30 AM  3.00 PM – The Pipe Band and CAMC Unit paraded at Hd Qrs, 4 <sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade
	8/7/15		With reference to recent Signalling Course held at East Sandling, the following Officers & NCO qualified as follows:- Division I, Capt AM Stroud – 99 Division II, Ser W Hazlett – 91  The General Officer Commanding in Chief Eastern Command is pleased to note that at the recent Rifle Course at the Hythe school the under mentioned NCOs passed "Distinguished":- Sergt E Marks, 21 <sup>st</sup> Bn. CEF.  Telegram from The Honorable The Minister of Militia and Defence:- Please convey to all Canadians my appreciation of and congratulations of this splendid work at the front and in Britain.  The Battalion paraded at 7.30 AM



- 9/7/15 Officers Commanding Companies sent in to the Orderly Room names of all NCOs and men who are, or have been employees of the Post Office Dept in Canada
- 7.30 AM – The Battalion paraded at 7.30 AM
- 10/7/15 9.30 AM – Sergt Williams (MG) reports at MG School at 9.30 AM for the purpose of enrolling names
- 2 NCOs discharged from Monks Horton Hosp. One Pte discharged from Newcastle on Tyne Hosp
- 11/7/15 The Battalion paraded for Divine Service
- 12/7/15 Lieut E Bassett attends Course of Instruction at Scarborough
- Ser AP Williams (MGS) attends MG course at Ross Barracks
- Lieut Col WSP Hughes, Major EW Jones, and Capt GS Sparks on the sick list
- One NCO and one Private admitted to hospital
- Three Privates discharged from Hospital. One Private transferred from Moore Bks (Hosp) to Shorncliffe
- Major CC Bennett assumes Command of the Battalion during the absence of Lieut Col WSP Hughes on account of sickness.
- 13/7/15 Lieut Col W St P Hughes returns to duty from sick list and assumes command of the Battalion
- The 39<sup>th</sup> Reserve Battalion has been affiliated with this Battalion as the Reserve Unit
- Lieut HW Cooper reported for Course of Instruction at Camberley
- 59968 L/Cpl Geo Thomas appointed Corporal  
 59992 Pte AF Tomlinson appointed L/Cpl  
 59458 Pte H Henry appointed L/Cpl  
 59027 Corp J Atkins appointed L/Sgt
- The Battalion paraded
- 14/7/15 Bombing Class consisting of 1 Lieut, 1 Sergt, 2 Corps and 32 men reported to Capt Lindsay
- 59759 Pte J O'Keefe, & 59490 Pte G Hussey appointed Lance Corpls
- One Pte transferred to Hd Qrs Transport  
 One Pte admitted to Shorncliffe Hospital  
 One Pte discharged from Shorncliffe Hospital  
 One Pte discharged from Newcastle on Tyne  
 One Pte reported to Lieut Howard Ridout, Railway Supply Detachment for course of Army Cooking

- 15/7/15 9.00 AM – The Battalion paraded for Muster  
59092 Pte M Bresnahan transferred to the 39<sup>th</sup> Battalion and struck off the strength  
4 Ptes transferred to Hd Qrs Sub Staff, 4<sup>th</sup> Inf Bde.
- 16/7/15 Divisional Inspection by the Rt Hon Sir Robert Borden CCMG, PCKC, LLD, accompanied by Major General The Hon S Hughes, Min of Mil & Defence  
The Battalion paraded at 6.30 AM Reveille 5.00 AM  
Lieut Edwards, Serg Harrison & Savage reported to Staff Officer at Beechborough 6.30 AM  
3 Ptes admitted Hospital, two of them Shorncliffe, one St Martin's Plain  
One Pte discharged from St Martin's Plain  
One Pte transferred to Monks Horton Hosp  
One Pte transferred to RAMC Hosp, Shorncliffe
- 17/7/15 L/Cpl Tucker 60003, reverts to Pte at own request  
*The diary actually shows this as 17/8/15*  
One Pte admitted to Hospital, St Martins Plain  
Two Ptes discharged from Hospital (Newcastle on Tyne & Shorncliffe)
- 18/7/15 The Battalion paraded for Divine Service  
Two Ptes admitted to Hospital (Shorncliffe & St Martins Plain)
- 19/7/15 7.30 AM – The Battalion paraded at 7.30 AM  
Capt JL Kapele, and two privates detailed for Dental Service and attached to the Battalion  
One Pte admitted to St Martin's Plain
- 20/7/15 8.45 AM – The Battalion paraded for Brigade March and Billeting at 8.45 AM  
Lieut Newcombe transferred to the PPCLI  
Tactical exercises with troops were conducted for Battalion and Brigade Machine Gun Officers  
2 NCOs and a Pte discharged from Hospital (St Martin's Plain & Newcastle)  
1 Pte admitted to St Martin's Plain Hosp
- 21/7/15 7.30 AM – Battalion paraded at 7.30 AM  
One NCO admitted to St Martin's Plain Hosp  
One Pte transferred from Detention Hosp to Shorncliffe
- 22/7/15 7.00 AM – Battalion paraded at 7 AM Heavy Marching order (Mess Tins)  
Lt RW White takes over training of supernumerary MG  
One Pte discharged from Hospital, Shorncliffe

23/7/15 7.30 PM – Battalion paraded at 7.30 PM, Heavy Marching Order

A Bombing Class detailed to parade 8.45 AM, consisting of Lt Wilgress, 3 NCOs and 32 men

2 Ptes discharged from Hospital (Shorncliffe & Newcastle)  
1 Pte admitted to St Martin's Plain Hosp

59331 Cpl FT Ford reverts to Pte (own request)

24/7/15 Lieut J Edwards is appointed Bde MG Officer, and is attached to Bde Hd Qrs.

1 NCO and 3 Ptes discharged from Monks Horton & Shorncliffe hospitals

25/7/15 The Battalion paraded for Divine Service

26/7/15 7.30 AM – The Battalion paraded at 7.30 AM

2 Ptes transferred from Shorncliffe to RAMC Hospital  
1 Pte discharged from St Martin's Plain

27/7/15 7.30 AM – The Battalion paraded:- Nos 1 & 2 Coys & Details at 7.30 AM and Nos 3 & 4 Coys at 8.00 AM

One Pte admitted to St Martin's Plain Hosp

Authority granted for all 5<sup>th</sup> year Medical Students to resume their studies, if they wish.

28/7/15 8.00 AM – The Battalion paraded at 8.00 AM (Entrenching on Tolsford Hill)

The Battalion paraded at 8.45 PM (Cross Country Marching)

2 Ptes admitted to Hospital (ST Martin's Plain & Shorncliffe)  
2 Ptes transferred from Det'n Hospital to Shorncliffe

29/7/15 8.45 AM – The Battalion paraded for Muster

Exercises for Machine Gun Scouts

8.30 AM – A Court of Enquiry assembled at West Sandling to investigate & record absence without leave of 59601 Pte JT Lomax

A Court of Enquiry assembled at West Sandling to enquire into and report upon circumstances under which 60033 Pte Watts E became injured

One NCO and three Ptes admitted to Hospital  
One Pte transferred from Detention Hosp to Shorncliffe

March discipline to Area 4  
Tactical Scheme with flags on Area 4  
Protection on March to Camp

30/7/15 Battalion paraded

Lieut Stewart, 3 NCOs and 32 men report to Capt Lindsay Bde Bombing Office

31/7/15 - - - - -

**War Diary**

**21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division  
From 1<sup>st</sup> July to 31<sup>st</sup> July 1915  
Volume 1 Copy 2**

Diary Text	12 Pages
Appendix 1	Arrangements for training of 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion on week ending July 10 <sup>th</sup> 1915
Appendix 2	O.O. No 1 dated ! Instructions to 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn re march to Stanford-Broad Street Water Farm tomorrow the 13 <sup>th</sup> inst.
Appendix 3	Programme of training of 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn for week ending 24 <sup>th</sup> July 1915
Appendix 4	Instructions to C.C. 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn from O.C. 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn on July 26 <sup>th</sup> 1915
Appendix 5	O.O. 30 dated 26.7.15. Report on enemy mounted troops in Crundale-Upper Hardres Barham last night.
Appendix 6	O.O. ! dated 29.7.15. Instructions to 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn. Bn. Re practice attack to be carried out on 29 <sup>th</sup> inst.
Appendix 7	Syllabus of training of 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn. Bn. For week ending July 31 <sup>st</sup> 1915

21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF  
4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade  
2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division

**Arrangements for Training**

Week ending July 10<sup>th</sup>, 1915

Hour and Place of Assembly	Training Area and duration of exercise	Nature of Training
Parade Ground 7.30-8.15	Area No 5	Road to Area, March Discipline
8.15-11.15 11.15-12.00	Area No 5	Battalion in Attack Protection on march to camp
1.30-2.15 2.15-4.15	Area No 5	Road to area – advanced guard Battalion in attack Tactical scheme with flags March discipline to camp
4.15-.5.00		
7.30-8.30 8.30-11.00 11.00-12.00	Area No 4	Protection on road to Sellindge Occupation of a defensive in area March discipline to camp
1.30-2.30 3.00-12.00	Parade Ground Area No 5	Battalion Drill Night march to area and night attack
7.30 am to 5.00 pm		Company training consisting of company tactical schemes set by the OC.
7.30-8.15 8.15-11.15 11.15-12.00	Area No 5	March discipline to area Protection at rest Protection on march to camp
1.30-2.15 2.15-4.15		March discipline to area Tactical schemes with flags Attack on a position Protection on march to camp
4.15-5.00		
7.30-9.30	Area No 4	Protection on march to area Rear guard action Protection at rest March discipline to camp
9.30-11.00 11.00-12.00		
1.30-2.15 2.15-4.15	Area No 5	March discipline to area Tactical scheme with flags Attack on a position and retirement Night attack and bivouac
9.00		

Operation Order No 1  
By  
Lieut Col W. St. P. Hughes  
O.C. 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion (Red Force)

Ref Map  
12<sup>th</sup> Div T Map

A detached force (Blue) consisting of one Battalion (20<sup>th</sup>) & 1 Battery Artillery has been sent out from Canterbury to Collect supplies from the neighbourhood of Stouting and Braybourne.

1" Shorncliffe Art  
Map

A Force (Red) consisting of 1 ½ Battalion Infantry, 1 battery Artillery, & 2 squadrons Cavalry has been despatched from West Sandling Camp to disperse them.

1. (a)
2. (b) The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march to Benstock Wood via Shrine Park – Stanford- Broad Street – Water Farm – tomorrow the 13<sup>th</sup> inst.

Starting Point – Postling Wents, which the head of the Column will pass at 6.40 am.

Dress- Light Marching Order – without packs – Machine Guns will accompany the Battalion.

Reports will be sent to head of Column.

Transports with Dinners will be at road junction at A-11-a – 11.00 am.

AK Hemming  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF  
RED FORCE

- Orders No 1-2 OC Red Force
- 3 OC No 1 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battn
  - 4 OC No 2 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battn
  - 5 OC No 3 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battn
  - 6 OC No 4 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battn
  - 7 OC Machine Gun
  - 8 OC M.O. 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 9 O.C. Transport
  - 10 Quartermaster 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 11 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> Battalion CEF

Programme of Battalion Training for week ending 24<sup>th</sup> July 1915

Monday 19<sup>th</sup>

7.30 to 9 am

9 am to 3.30 pm

3.30 to 5 pm

March Discipline to Area 8

Tactical scheme with flags

Protection on March to Camp

Wednesday 21<sup>st</sup>

7.30 to 9 am

9 am to 3.30 pm

3.30 to 5 pm

Protection on march to Area 8

Tactical Scheme with flags

March discipline to camp

Friday (night) 23<sup>rd</sup>

8.30 pm

Night operations and bivouac on Area 8

Saturday (morning) 24<sup>th</sup>

7.30 to 10.30 am

Tactical Schemes

From O.C. 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

To Major CC Bennett 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

West Sandling Camp

July 26/7/15

- (1) The attached copy of 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade Orders is forwarded for your information
- (2) You will Command Nos 3 & 4 Companies 21<sup>st</sup> Battn, and will rendezvous at Postling Wents at 8.25 am, which place you will pass at 8.30 am sharp.
- (3) Dress HEAVY MARCHING ORDER as in open wartime
- (4) Instructions regarding TRANSPORT to be carried out to the letter.
- (5) Lieut Flavelle will report to BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS at Starting Point at 8.25 am.
- (6) 2 Cyclists to report to BRIGADE SIGNAL SECTION at 7.50 am.
- (7) Officers will wear revolvers, one Pouch with ammunition clips. Field Glasses, Haversacks, Compasses and Map Cases.

(signed) W.S.P. Hughes  
Lieut Col  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

OPERATION ORDER No 30  
BY  
Lieut Col W. St. P. Hughes  
Commanding ADVANCED GUARD  
CENTRE COLUMN, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division

West Sandling Camp 26/7/15

Ref. 12<sup>th</sup> Divisional  
Training Map

1. (a) The Divisional Mounted Troops were in touch with the enemy on the line-GRUNDALE – UPPER HARDRES – BARHAM - last night.
  - (b) The Division will march tomorrow the 27<sup>th</sup> inst in three columns in pursuit of the retiring enemy.
  - (c) The Right column on the LYMINGE – ELHAM – BARHAM – BISHOPSBOURNE ROAD on BRIDGE
  - (d) The Left Column will march tomorrow on the – SELLINDGE – BROBOURNE – HASTLINGLEIGH – WALTHAM – UPPER THRUETED FARM on CHARTHAM.
  - (e) Our Column (the Centre) will march by POSTLING STONE STREET – on CANTERBURY and the Head of the Column will pass the Starting Point – POSTLING WENTS - at 8.30 tomorrow morning.
2. The advanced Guard will rendezvous at Starting Point – POSTLING WENTS – at 7.40 am. The Main Guard will march at 8.05 am and will vigorously engage the enemy wherever met.

DISTRIBUTION as in margin

Van Guard

OC Major Jones of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battn  
Nos 1 & 2 Platoons 21<sup>st</sup> Battn  
7 Battn Cyclists

Main Guard

OC Capt Caldwell of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battn  
21<sup>st</sup> Battn less Cos Nos 1 & 2 Platoons & 7 Cyclists  
1 Sect Bearer Sub Div 5<sup>th</sup> Field Amb.

REPORTS Will be sent to head of MAIN GUARD

AK Hemming  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

Issued by Orderly at 7 pm. 26/7/15

Copy No 1	OC Center Column
2	OC Nos 3 & 4 Coys 21 <sup>st</sup> Battan (with main body)
3	OC Vanguard
4	OC Mainguard
5	5 <sup>th</sup> Field Ambulance
6 & 7	War Diary



Operation Order No  
By  
Lieut Col W. St P. Hughes  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

Ref Shorncliffe  
Artillery Map

Information

- (1) A Blue enemy estimated at a Division with complement of all arms is occupying a position along STONE STREET from WICK WOOD in B. 13. b to Smithy in STANFORD

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division has been ordered to attack and drive them back.

The attack will begin at 9.00 am tomorrow. The 6<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade is attacking on our right

The 5<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade is remaining in Divisional Reserve under cover of THORN WOOD H. 3e. D dividing line between Brigades CUCKOO LANE and WOOD SOUTHERN, edge of B 19.

- (2) The 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade will attack the enemy's line on the frontage WOOD Southern edge B 19. exclusive to STANFORD SMITHY inclusive. It will be deployed on the line running from the POSTLING WENTS SHRINE FARM road in H 2 d. 3d. to the CUCKOO LANE AT B 27 c1 1 at 8.30 am

- (3) The 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion will attack on the frontage WOOD SOUTHERN EDGE of B 19 exclusive to the Northern edge of COPPICE WOOD B 25 a.

- (4) The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion will attack on the frontage COPPICE WOOD inclusive to STANFORD CHAPEL inclusive

- (5) The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion will proceed via the POSTLING WENTS-NEW INN GREEN road, leaving same at the South Western edge of HONEYWOOD PLANTATION ROAD ? AND THENCE BY FOOTPATH TO THE STONE road at BELMONT MANOR road in G 6 d and attack the enemy's right flank on the frontage STANFORD CHAPEL HAYTON MANOR.

- (6) The Machine Guns of the 18<sup>th</sup>, 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battalions will be brigaded under Lieut Edwards, Brigade Machine Gun Officer in the vicinity of contour 90 H 1. 2 NORTH of SHRINE FARM.

- (7) The Brigade Ammunition Reserve will be at Postling WENTS

- (8) No 5 Field Ambulance will open at STONE FARM H 10 o with advanced dressing stations at POSTLING WENTS.

- (9) The 1<sup>st</sup> Line Transport, less ammunition and tool carts, will park with the baggage section Divisional Train at the Junction of the BEACHBOROUGH-CHERITON roads H 11. b3/4

INTENTION

The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march via CHURCH ROAD-CHERITON PLACE-NEWINGTON-STONE FARM-POSTILING WENTS road and will rendezvous in H + 3 a.c. behind SMITHS WOOD and will act as BRIGADE RESERVE, starting Point CHERITON JUNCTION which the head of the Battalion will pass at 7.20 am JULY 31<sup>st</sup>.

Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

Copy No 1 Issued by Orderly at 6 pm  
2 To OC 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade  
3 Company Commanders  
4  
5  
6 MO 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
7 Brigade Machine Gun Officer  
8 Transport Officer 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
9 Quartermaster 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
11 War Diary

2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division  
21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade  
Syllabus of Training for week ending July 31<sup>st</sup> 1915

Monday 26<sup>th</sup> inst  
7.30 am to 8.30  
8.30 am to 4.00 pm  
4.00 pm to 5.00 pm

March discipline to Area 4  
Tactical Scheme with Flags on Area 4  
Protection on March to Camp

Tuesday 27<sup>th</sup>

Brigade Billeting Scheme in open Warfare

Wednesday 28<sup>th</sup>  
7.30 am to 3.00 pm  
9.00 pm

Entrenching on Tolsford Hill  
Cross Country Marching by Companies on Area

Thursday 29<sup>th</sup>  
7.30 am to 8.30 am  
8.30 am to 4.00 pm  
4.00 pm to 5.00 pm

March Discipline to Area 4  
Tactical Scheme with Flags on Area 4  
Protection on March to Camp

Friday 30<sup>th</sup>  
9.00 am to 4.00 pm

128 men of Battn at Tolsford Hill for instruction in sapping.  
(Brigade Coy Commanders Tactical Scheme without troops)  
Company Kit Inspection

Saturday  
7.30 to 12.30

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.  
(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
West Sandling Camp	1/8/15		The Battalion paraded for Divine Service
	2/8/15		<p>7.30 am to 5.00 pm – The Battalion carried out a Tactical Scheme with flags on their allotted area – Entrenching – Tolsford Hill</p> <p>Pte Wilson arrived from Canada and taken on their strength</p> <p>59092 Pte Bresnahan &amp; 59399 Pte Groulx struck off strength from Aug 2<sup>nd</sup> on proceeding to Canada for discharge (Auth'y RO 678 2<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Div)</p> <p>60012 Pte Twigg A (1) discharged from SHORNCLIFFE MILITARY HOSP'L</p>
	3/8/15		<p>8.15 am to 6.15 pm – The Battalion formed part of the Brigade in carrying out a Brigade march and billeting scheme, starting from NEW INN GREEN at 9 am and proceeding via LYMPNE-COURT-AAT.STREET-POSTLING GREEN- and BILGINGTON</p> <p>One Officer and an NCO to WROTHAM for three weeks Pioneer Class</p> <p>Our Company Sergt Major sent to undergo course in Range Finding at HYTHE</p> <p>Weather – Light showers between 7 and 7.30 am. Clouded sky throughout day. Thunder Storm, accompanied by heavy rains from 4.30 pm to 6.30 pm</p> <p>Officers Commanding Units to cause KR&amp;O para 462 to be read to UNITS on ????? ????? Parades</p> <p>59399 Pte Groulx A (trans) discharged from SHORNCLIFFE MILITARY HOSPITAL 59092 Pte Bresnahan (3) discharged from SHORNCLIFFE MILITARY HOSPITAL</p>
West Sandling Camp	4/8/15		<p>12.15 pm to 5.30 pm – The Battalion took part in an Inspection of the DIVISION by the Right Honorable Mr Bonar Law, and Major General Sam Hughes</p> <p>2.30 pm – One Officer per UNIT to report to DAA &amp; QMG at the DRILL HALL SHELAN ST-FOLKESTONE at 7.30 pm (RO 674)</p> <p>THE GENERAL OFFICER COMMANDING directs that all Officers except those on duty will be present at the address given by the Right Honorable Mr. Bonar Law at the DRILL HALL ON SHELLAN ST, FOLKESTONE, at 8.15 pm</p> <p>9.30 am – One NCO reported to Major PRISMALL at HYTHE 9.30 am for course in Range Finding</p> <p>Weather:- Morning – fine. Afternoon – at 2.30 pm Thunder storm and heavy rain</p> <p>59636 Pte Marinecia A (4) admitted to Hospital St Martin's Plain 59353 Pte Carling C transferred from Detention Hosp'l to SHORNCLIFFE 59564 Pte Biggs A (2) discharged from Monks Horton (<i>Transcriber's Note: Pte Biggs service number is 59063</i>)</p>

Orders & Instructions on Web Equipment, Binoculars, and Pistols for Officers of the CEF cancelled. These articles issued only on payment

West Sandling Camp	5/8/15	<p>1.30 pm to 5.15 pm – The BATTALION paraded at 1.30 pm and proceeded to TOLSFORD HILL for the purpose of digging 3<sup>rd</sup> line of trenches</p> <p>Weather:- Morning – clouded sky. Heavy rains in afternoon</p>
	6/8/15	<p>8.30 am to 5.00 pm – THE BATTALION paraded at 8.30 am. Heavy marching order. Brigade tactical schemes with flags.</p> <p>59065 Pte Lowe H (1) discharged from ST MARTIN'S PLAIN HOSPITAL 59063 L/Cpl Lanning A (2) transferred from Detention Hospital SHORNCLIFFE</p> <p>Weather fine throughout day, though cloudy towards evening</p>
	8/15	<p>7.30 am – The Battalion paraded at 7.30 am. Nos 2, 3, &amp; 4 Companies carried tools</p> <p>Lieut SPEER appointed Battalion Bombing Officer Lieut MACNEE, 1 Co Sergt Major, 2 Corporals and 32 men reported to Capt LINDSAY, Brigade Bombing Officer.</p> <p>Colonel DE PREE lectures on Divisional Standing Orders to all officers at SPR-JOHN FRENCH'S CLUB-WEST SANDLING at 11.30 am</p>
West Sandling Camp	7/8/15	<p>Weather Cloudy</p> <p>59605 Pte LOWE H admitted to St MARTIN'S PLAIN hospital 59775 Pte PARKINS H (1) transferred from DETENTION HOSPITAL TO SHORNCLIFFE Capt GS SPARKS is appointed First Lieut Transport Officer of the 4<sup>th</sup> INFANTRY BRIGADE One Corpl discharged from Hospital. L/Cpl Foster 59335, struck off strength.</p> <p>9 am to 4 pm – The BATTALION paraded to carry out BRIGADE schemes at TOLSFORD HILL entrenching and bayonet fighting</p>
	8/8/15	<p>The BATTALION paraded for Divine Services, Protestants at 9 am, RC's at 9.45 One Pte admitted to HOSPITAL</p>
West Sandling Camp	9/8/15	<p>7.30 am to 5 pm – The BATTALION paraded at 7.30 am to carry out a Bn Tactical Scheme with flags on Area 4 15 men per COMPANY placed at disposal of MO for training. Lectures of 5/8/15 postponed to 12/8/15</p>
	10/8/15	<p>7.30 am to 5 pm – The BATTALION paraded at 7.30 am to carry out Tactical schemes with flags on Area 4 1 Pte admitted to Hospital 1 Pte discharged from Hospital</p>
	11/8/15	<p>7.30 am to 12.30 pm – The BATTALION paraded at 7.30 am to carry out Entrenching &amp; Bayonet Fighting on TOLSFORD HILL The BATTALION paraded at 1.15 pm 3 Ptes discharged from hospital 3 Ptes transferred from Hospital</p>

West Sandling Camp	12/8/15	<p>2.00 pm – The BATTALION paraded at 2 pm. Trench attack arranged on a frontage of 150 yards</p> <p>A “Return” showing the Militia Units from which the personnel of the BATTALION was drawn</p> <p>In future the title of the BATTALION will be “21<sup>st</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION”</p> <p>Machine Gun lectures in by Capt LINDSAY in the GARRISON GYMNASIUM SHORNCLIFFE</p> <p>1 Pte admitted to Hospital</p> <p>1 Pte discharged from Hospital</p>
	13/8/15	<p>The BATTALION paraded to carry out Brigade schemes and continue operations with a scheme set by the DIVISION</p> <p>1 L/C &amp; 3 Ptes reported to A/Sgt CREIGHTON, Brigade shoeing smith for course of horse shoeing</p> <p>Lieut SPEER proceeded to LONDON to attend a special Grenade course</p> <p>Machine Gun Section and Musketry Casuals completing course in Musketry at Hythe</p> <p>1 Pte discharged from Hospital</p>
West Sandling Camp	14/8/15	<p>7.30 am to 12.00 – The BATTALION paraded for Company Kit Inspection</p> <p>The Machine Gun Section and Musketry Casuals completing a course in Musketry at Hythe</p> <p>One Pte discharged from Hospital</p>
	15/8/15	<p>The BATTALION paraded for Divine Service</p> <p>The Machine Gun Section and Musketry Casuals completed a course in Musketry at Hythe</p> <p>Heavy rains during latter part of day</p> <p>2 Privates admitted to Hosp</p> <p>2 Ptes discharged from Hospital</p>
	16/8/15	<p>The BATTALION paraded for Divisional Maneuvering</p> <p>21<sup>st</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION duty Battalion for WE 15/8/15</p> <p>Lieut BOWERBANK, a Company Sergt Major, one sergeant, 2 corporals and 32 men reported to Capt LINDSAY at 8.45 am</p> <p>3 Ptes admitted to Hospital</p> <p>One Pte discharged from Hospital</p> <p>Weather fair during day, ????? showers towards night</p>
West Sandling Camp	17/8/15	<p>The BATTALION paraded for Tactical Scheme without Troops for Commanding Officers and regimental Staffs.</p> <p>Parades under Company Commanders. Special classes in Bombing, Scouting, and Machine gun.</p> <p>2 Ptes admitted to Hospital</p> <p>One Private transferred from Hospital</p> <p>Weather cloudy in the morning, hazy rain at noon</p>
	18/8/15	<p>The BATTALION paraded at 8 am to take part in Divisional Maneuvers (Area No 1) Tactical Scheme</p> <p>The BUGLE and PIPE BAND paraded in the field opposite the ROYAL OAK HOTEL, NEW INN GREEN at 10 am</p> <p>All NCOs and men who have taken Machine Gun Courses to report to M.G. Officer every Saturday morning for parade with that section</p> <p>One Pte discharged in ENGLAND as medically unfit and struck off the strength</p> <p>One Pte admitted to Hospital</p> <p>2 NCOs and one Pte discharged from Hospital</p> <p>Weather – fair</p>

West Sandling Camp 19/8/15 Appointments:-  
To be Asst Adjutant Lieut INDERWICK, vice Lieut FLAVELLE, Machine Gun Officer, Lieut WHITE, Bombing Officer, Lieut SPEER

Platoon Commanders:-

<u>No 1</u>	<u>No 2</u>	<u>No 3</u>	<u>No 4</u>
Lieut MILLER	Lieut RAYMOND	Lieut SHEPHARD	Lieut COOPER
Lieut SHARP	Lieut MORRISON	Lieut CUNNINGHAM	Lieut BLACK
Lieut McGEE	Lieut DENNIS	Lieut HOBART	Lieut STEWART
Lieut WILGRESS	Lieut BOWERBANK	Lieut BROWNLEE	Lieut BASSETT

20/8/15 The BATTALION paraded at 7.30 to take part in Divisional Maneuvers  
4 Ptes discharged from Hospital

19/8/15 The BATTALION paraded under COMPANY COMMANDERS  
Special classes in bombing, Scouting and Machine Gun

Lieut SPRIGGS and FRINK with 20 men are attached to act under Major Bennett as a Flag enemy at the Divisional Maneuvers and during Maneuvers work.

Lieut WJS SHARP proceeds to CAMBERLEY for Course of instruction

The following NCOs and men obtained Armourers and Asst Armourers Certificates at the Government Inspection Dept ROSS RIFLE FACTORY, QUEBEC:-

Armourers Certificates:- 59492 Pte AG Ingram, 59725 Pte WA McIntosh, 59360 Pte GE Gerow, 59841 Pte EJ Roberts

Assistant Armourers Certificates:- 59889 Sergt E SLEETH, 59079 A/Sgt Bongard

The following Appointments in the Machine Gun Section take effect from this date:-  
59824 Pte Redpath to be L/C, 59325 Pte FLANAGAN to be L/C, 59695 Pte McBRIDE H to be L/C

3 Ptes admitted to Hospital, 3 Ptes struck off the strength of the BATTALION

West Sandling Camp 21/8/15 Parades under Company Commanders  
Special Classes in Bombing, Scouting, and Machine Gun  
Tactical Schemes without troops for Company Commanders  
4 Ptes discharged from Hospital – 2 Ptes struck off strength of the BATTALION as physically unfit  
Weather fine

22/8/15 The BATTALION paraded for DIVINE SERVICE  
2 NCOs & 2 Ptes admitted to Hospital. – 1 NCO & 3 Ptes discharged from hospital

23/8/15 The BATTALION paraded in Marching Order to take part in DIVISIONAL MANOEUVRES  
COMPANY parade 8.15 am  
BATTALION parade 8.25 am  
1 NCO & 2 Ptes admitted to hospital  
Weather fine

24/8/15 Brown Force continues operations West of the GREAT STOUR  
 Bivouac along the river  
 WHITE FORCE, bivouac is at KENNINGTON  
 COMPANIES parading at 8.15 am, BATTALION at 8.25 am  
 1 Pte admitted to Hospital, 2 Ptes discharged from Hospital  
 OC COMPANIES to make arrangements by the end of the coming week to have their  
 COMPANIES completed to full strength in accordance with War Establishment 1915  
 Weather Fine

25/8/15 BROWN FORCE building scheme with troops 2<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION only remain in  
 camp bivouac  
 WHITE FORCE march to bivouac near SELLINDGE  
 COMPANIES parading at 8.15 am, BATTALION at 8.25 am.  
 BRIGADE FIELD OFFICER – MAJOR McLEAN: QR MR – CAPT McCULLY  
 Weather fine

26/8/15 BROWN FORCE move from billets to attack enemy near ALDINGTON. Units return to  
 quarters  
 WHITE FORCE ?????? against 2<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION near ALDINGTON, troops  
 return to quarters or rest camps on the way to quarters. Rations & bivouacs to be  
 arranged by A.A. & Q.M.G CANADIAN TRAINING DIVISION  
 COMPANIES parading at 8.15 am, BATTALION at 8.25 am  
 Instructions on the REGIMENT proceeding abroad (D.O. 241)  
 One Pte admitted to Hospital, One Pte discharged from Hospital  
 Weather Fine

27/8/15 The BATTALION paraded at 8 am, Dress Drill Order

An NCO appointed Coy Sergt Major of the BATTALION BOMBING CO. which employed  
 in such capacity  
 One private admitted to Hospital. One Pte transferred (Hospital)  
 Three Privates discharged from Hospital  
 Weather fine

28/8/15 The BATTALION paraded at 8 am Dress Drill Order  
 Lieut FRINK appointed Act Qr Mr to Details employed under Lieut Col HARKEM at  
 miniature Rifle Range 21<sup>st</sup> Bn LINES  
 One Pte discharged from Hospital  
 5 NCOs and 32 Ptes transferred in the BATTALION in course of bringing Coys up to War  
 Strength.  
 Weather fine

29/8/15 The BATTALION paraded for DIVINE SERVICE 8.45 and 9.45 am (RC)  
 Weather fine in the morning, heavy showers in the afternoon.

West Sandling Camp 30/8/15 The BATTALION paraded for Muster at 8.30 am  
 A District Court Martial, Major W.H. HEWGILL, 31<sup>st</sup> BATTALION President, assembled in  
 the lines of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion WEST SANDLING at 10.00 am  
 Lieut SHEPHERD, 4 NCOs and 32 men reported to Capt LINDSAY Brigade Bombing  
 Officer at 8.45 am on the 18<sup>th</sup> BATTALION parade Area

Weather fine:- chilly in early morning

31/8/15 All NCOs of the BATTALION paraded at 7.30 am till 9 under Lieut EDWARDS.  
 Remainder of the BATTALION paraded at 8 am  
 Major BENNETT assumes command of the BATTALION during the absence of Lieut Col  
 W. St. P. HUGHES on sick leave

Weather HEAVY SHOWERS

## INDEX

WAR DIARY  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division  
From 1<sup>st</sup> August to 31<sup>st</sup> August 1915

Diary Text	17 Pages
Appendix	A. 1. O.O.24 dated 5.8.15. Practice attack of 2 <sup>nd</sup> Cdn Division at Shorncliffe on Aug 9 <sup>th</sup>
Appendix	3. A. 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion order No 1 dated 5.8.15. Practice attack of 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn at Shorncliffe tomorrow, 6 <sup>th</sup> instant
Appendix	5.A. Syllabus of training 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn week ending August 7 <sup>th</sup> , 1915
Appendix	6.A. Attack order No 1 dated 10.8.15. Practice attack will be made an enemy's position tomorrow 11 <sup>th</sup> instant
Appendix	8.A. 2 <sup>nd</sup> Cdn Division Order T.1. dated 13.8.15. Division will carry out the divisional route march on Monday 16 <sup>th</sup> instant.
Appendix	10. Tactical exercises for Brigade training of 2 <sup>nd</sup> Cdn division on August 13 <sup>th</sup> /14 <sup>th</sup> , 1915
Appendix	13. O.O. ? dated 14.8.15. Instructions to 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB re route march to take place on Monday 16 <sup>th</sup> instant.
Appendix	14. 21 <sup>st</sup> Bn Order No ? dated 17.8.15. Instructions to 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalions re practice attack on 17 <sup>th</sup> instant.
Appendix	15. Syllabus of training, 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn for week ending August 14 <sup>th</sup> , 1915
Appendix	16. 21 <sup>st</sup> Battn will take part in tactical exercise tomorrow, 18 <sup>th</sup> instant
Appendix	17. 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB Order No. ?. dated 19.8.15. 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB will march tomorrow morning 20 <sup>th</sup> instant to a position just south of BRABOURNE.
Appendix	18. Syllabus of training of 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn for week ending August 21 <sup>st</sup> , 1915
Appendix	19. 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB Order No. ?. dated 21.8.15. Instructions to 2 <sup>nd</sup> Cdn Division re advancing to MAIDSTONE.
Appendix	20. 4 <sup>th</sup> Tactical exercise of 2 <sup>nd</sup> Cdn Division on August 23 <sup>rd</sup> /24 <sup>th</sup> , 1915
Appendix	22. Organization and training of bombers
Appendix	23. Programme of second week of Divisional Training of 2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division, 1915



Copy No 1

Operation Order No 24

By

Lieut Col W.St.P. Hughes  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF  
Shorncliffe 5.8.15

Ref Shorncliffe Art  
Map

- 1 (a) A Blue enemy consisting of a Division with a proportion of other arms, with its base at MAIDSTONE, has taken up a position along STONE STREET with its right flank resting on STANFORD ??????, and its left on WICK WOOD, B 13 b
- (b) The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division with its base at SHORNCLIFFE is attacking the enemy at 10 am tomorrow.

The 6<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade is attacking on our right

The 5<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade is remaining in Divisional reserve under cover of THORN WOOD B 3 c.d.

The Artillery will commence its bombardment at 8 am and support the attack of the Infantry

Dividing line between Brigades, CUCKOO LANE and WOOD southern edges of B 19.

The Brigade Ammunition Reserve will be at POSTLING WENTS.

- 2 The 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade will attack the enemies line on the frontage WOOD southern edges of B 19 exclusive to STANFORD SMITHY inclusive.

It will be deployed on the line running from the POSTLING VENTSJ SHRINE FARM, road in H 2 D 3-9 to the CUCKOO LANE at B 27c 1.1. at 9.30 am

The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion will attack on the frontage Wood Southern edge of B, exclusive to the Northern edge of COPPICE WOOD, B 25 a.

The 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion will attack the enemies right flank on the frontage STANFORD CHAPEL-HAYTON MANOR.

The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion and Cyclists (1 Platoon) will remain in Brigade Reserve under cover of SMITHS WOOD H3 a.c.

The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will attack on the frontage COPPICE WOOD inclusive to STANFORD CHAPEL inclusive.

Dividing line between Battalions will be fence running north west from H 2 b. 10.4-NORTHERN edge of COPPICE WOOD. Flank Company commanders will select intermediate points in consultation before the attack commences.

The Machine Guns of the 19<sup>th</sup>, 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battalions will be brigaded under the Brigade Machine Gun Officer to whom special instruction have been issued.

- 3 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march via CHURCH ROAD-CHERITON PLACE NEWINGTONJSTONE FARM to POSTILING WENTS Starting point-CHERITON JUNCTION

Time 7.30 am and will attack the enemies line on a frontage COPPICE WOOD inclusive to STANFORD CHAPEL inclusive as follows:-

No 1 Company will deploy for the attack with its right flank on fence running NW from H 2 b 10.4 with left flank on Junction of fence 120 yards SW

No 2 Company will deploy for the attack and continue the line SW to SHEEP PEN H.2.b.6 inclusive exclusive. No 4 Company will deploy for the attack and continue the line SW from H.2.b.6 inclusive to H.2.d.3.9 inclusive.

All of the above Companies will be deployed by 9.20 am. No 3 Company will remain in local Reserve under cover at SMITHS WOOK H.3.a.c.

OC No Q company will select intermediate points in consultation with OC left flank of 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion attack and will send reports as to the movements of the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion attack

4. The Machine Gun Officer will report to the Brigade Machine Gun Officer at 8.30 am with the Battalion Machine Gun Section.
5. The 1<sup>st</sup> Line Transport (less ammunition and tool carts) will report to OC baggage section, Divisional Train at Junction of the BEACHBOROUGH-CHERTION ROADS H.11.b at 0 am

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Line Transport will rendezvous in the field N of the YMCA Hut at 10.30 am and report to Brigade Transport Officer.

6. No 5 Field Amb will open at STONE FARM H.10.c with advanced dressing stations at POSTLING WENTS. REPORTS to NW corner of SMITHS WOOD.

Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

Issued by Orderly at 7.45 pm

- Copy No 1-3 War Diary
- 4 OC 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade
  - 5 OC 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - 6 OC No 1 Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 7 OC No 2 Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 8 OC No 3 Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 9 OC No 4 Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 10 OC MO 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 11 Brigade Machine Gun Officer
  - 12 Battalion Machine Gun Officer
  - 13 Transport Officer 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
  - 14 Quartermaster 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion

## SYLLABUS OF TRAINING

21<sup>ST</sup> Battalion CEF, 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade, 2<sup>nd</sup> Can Division

Week ending August 7<sup>th</sup>, 1915

Monday, 2<sup>nd</sup>  
7.30 am to 5.00 pm Entrenching – Tolsford Hill

Tuesday 3<sup>rd</sup> Brigade March and Billeting Scheme

Wednesday, 4<sup>th</sup>  
7.30 am to 8.30 am March Discipline to Area 4  
8.30 am to 3.00 pm Tactical Scheme with flags on Area 4  
3.00 pm to 4.00 pm Rearguard action to Camp

7.30 pm March to Area 4 – Night Outpost – and Bivouacs

Thursday 5<sup>th</sup>  
7.30 am to 11.30 am Tactical Schemes with flags on Area 4  
11.30 am to 12.30 pm March to Camp  
2.00 pm to 5.00 pm Company Kit Inspection

Friday 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade Tactical Scheme with Flags

Saturday 7<sup>th</sup>  
9.00 am to 4.00 pm Tolsford Hill (BRIGADE)  
Entrenching etc.  
Complete Companies must be detailed in turn during this day for Bayonet Fighting.

Lieut Col  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion CEF

Copy No.....

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
ATTACK ORDER No 1

10/8/1915

1. An Attack will be made on the enemy's position on Tolsford Hill tomorrow the 11<sup>th</sup> instant
2. The objective will be the enemy's trenches, marked "A" & "B" on accompanying plan, facing our trenches 4 & 5 with a frontage of about 150 yards
3. The Battalion will attack as follows:-

<u>Right Column</u>	<u>Left Column</u>
No 1 & 2 Companies	No. 3 & 4 Companies

These Columns will cross the trench by gangways and attack side by side – they will seize the enemy's trenches – driving them out and occupying the communication trenches sufficiently far forward for purposes of protection.

When the trench is captured it will be placed in a state of defence immediately.

4. The attack will be made simultaneously in four Columns in lines of Platoons of fours. Every Column will be given two wooden gangways for crossing our own trenches. Men will carry the entrenching tools and every third man a pick or shovel. Every man will carry a sandbag.  
Six men of the leading sections will be given wire cutters  
All men except leading section of each Column will carry their pack.  
Companies will be drawn up before the assault in the Communication trenches and immediately in rear of our first line trench.
5. Each Column will be formed for the assault as follows:
  - (a) Axe men to cut enemy's wire
  - (b) Bombers to cover these
  - (c) Riflemen with fixed bayonets, men with sand bags, loopholes and entrenching tools
  - (d) Flanking parties with Bombers. Rifle men and sand bag men to extend by bombing the length of trench captured – These parties will be furnished with large flags to facilitate Artillery observation
6. The Machine Gun Officer will arrange for 1 Machine Gun to accompany each Column – and for covering fire from his remaining guns.
7. OC No 1 & 4 Companies will detail a digging party of 1 NCO and 12 men each to connect up our Sap with enemy's trench immediately after assault.
8. The assault is to be carried out with all the rapidity & energy of which all ranks are capable
9. The troops in our fire trenches will form a reserve & cover the attack by a vigorous fire on the flanks of the enemy's line
10. Each man will carry on him 200 rounds of ammunition and OC Companies will arrange for a sufficient reserve supply
11. OC Companies will arrange that necessary Engineers stores are issued before the attack takes place
12. The Signalling Officer will arrange for necessary communication with enemy's trench as soon as assault is successful
13. The Artillery bombardment will open at 1 pm and at 1.55 pm will lift its fire. Our attack will take place at 2. pm

AK Hemming  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at  
 4.30 pm

Copy No 1	OC 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
2	OC No 1 Co., 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
3	OC No 2 Co., 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
4	OC No 3 Co., 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
5	OC No 4 Co., 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
6	Quartermaster, 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
7	Machine Gun Officer, 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
8	Signalling Officer, 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
9 - 12	War Diary

2<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION ORDER No T.1

Ref:- 1" Shorncliffe Training Map 13-8-15

1. The Division will carry out a Divisional Route March on Monday the 16<sup>th</sup> inst., as a march on a line of communication where protection is being provided by other troops
2. The road to be followed will be POSTLING WENTS-NEW INN GREEN-SMEETH-SMEETH STA-SYMNELL-ALDINGTON CORNER-BELLEFUE-BERWICK-NEW INN GREEN. On arrival in NEW INN GREEN, on the return march, Units will return to peace quarters independently.
3. Starting points will be as follows:-
  - a. POSTLING WENTS cross roads
  - b. The road junction where the road from 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde Headquarters meets the line of march
  - c. The road junction where the road from WESTENPANGER meets the line of march
  - d. The road junction where the road from OTTERPOOL meets the line of march
4. The Division will march as follows:-

	<u>Starting Point</u>	<u>Time</u>
Divl Mounted Rifles.....	D	9.0 am
Divl Cyclist Co.....	D	9.3
Div HQ 1 <sup>st</sup> Echelon.....	D	9.6
6 <sup>th</sup> C Inf Bde.....	D	9.10
2 Ambce Wagons No 4 Field Ambce..	D	9.40
4 <sup>th</sup> CFA Bde (less Ammn Col).....	C	9.17
No 6 Fd Co CE.....	D	10.2
4 <sup>th</sup> C Inf Bde.....	B	9.7
2 Ambce Wagons No 5 Fd Ambce....	D	10.35
No 2 C. Heavy Battery.....	D	10.37
No 4 Fd. Co. CE.....	A	9.3
Div HQ 2 <sup>nd</sup> Echelon.....	A	9.33
5 <sup>th</sup> C. Inf Bde.....	A	9.36
No 5 Fd Co CE.....	A	10.16
4 <sup>th</sup> CFA Bac Ammn Co.....	C	11.4
2 <sup>nd</sup> C Heavy Battery Ammn Col.....	D	11.31
No 4 Fd Ambce (less Motors & 2 Wagons).....	A	10.23
No 5 Fd Ambce (less Motors and 2 Wagons).....	D	11.35
No 6 Fd Ambce (less Motor Vehicles)	D	11.37
No 8 Co Div Train.....	A	10.29
Div Train (less No 8 Co).....	D	11.41
Div Ammn Col.....	D	11.47

5. The head of the main body will halt at 11.50 am. Units in rear will make good any distance they have lost, before halting on this occasion. Orders for the resumption of the march will be issued from these headquarters, but at least one hour will be allowed for dinners. Efforts will be made during this halt to water animals with buckets at neighboring farms.
6. Particular attention will be paid by all Officers at all times to the points mentioned in Standing Orders Chapter II.
7. The Baggage Section of the Train will not be loaded up.

(Sd.) H. De Pree, Col.,  
General Staff

Issued to Signals at 4 pm

BRIGADE TRAINING – 2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION

TACTICAL EXERCISE - AUGUST 13<sup>TH</sup> & 14<sup>TH</sup>

GENERAL IDEA

Reference:- 1" Shorncliffe Training Map

Ashford is a railway center and its possession by White is regarded as indispensable for the defence of East Anglia. It is held by a White Force consisting of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, with a proportion of troops of all arms, and Garrison troops.

A Brown mixed force, including the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, with proportion of and comparatively strong in artillery with sufficient garrison troops to secure an Overseas base, is landing at Dimchurch and everything points to an immediate attack by this force on ASHFORD.

The only bridges over the Military Canal which have not been destroyed are the three S. of BONNINGTON, BILSINGTON and RUCKINGE.

CONFIDENTIAL

BRIGADE TRAINING – 2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION

TACTICAL EXERCISE.....AUGUST 13<sup>TH</sup> & 14<sup>TH</sup>.

Special Idea (Brown)

- (a) The following force, under the orders of the GOC 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will move to DYMCHURCH on the afternoon of Friday 13<sup>th</sup> inst. And go into bivouac there:-

4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade  
 Divisional Artillery Headquarters  
 4<sup>th</sup> CFA Brigade (Less 1 Battery)  
 2<sup>nd</sup> Heavy Battery  
 No 2 Sect Div Signal Co  
 No 4 Field Co CE (with establishment of bridging material)  
 No 6 Co Divisional Train  
 No 5 Field Ambulance  
 Divisional Mounted Troops (less 2 Platoons Cyclists)

This move will be completed and outposts put out by 6.30 pm. All Troops of this force will be East of the POSTLING WENTS-LYMPHERG by 2 pm. This road is allotted to the White force after 2 pm.

- (b) It will be assumed for the purpose of the exercise that the landing of the troops mentioned above is not completed until 6 am on Saturday 14<sup>th</sup> inst.

No troops except the mounted troops will move beyond a radius of 1 mile from DYMCHURCH church before 7.30 am on the 14<sup>th</sup> inst.

- (c) The Divisional Mounted Troops less 2 Platoons Cyclists will join the Brown Force at 8 pm 13<sup>th</sup> inst at DYMCHURCH
- (d) The GOC is at liberty to send forward cavalry or cyclist patrols at any time after 8 pm 13<sup>th</sup> inst. No other sources of information are available. No Brown reconnoitering parties will be allowed to approach closer to the canal bridges than 200 yds, or to cross the canal during daylight.
- (e) Refilling point for the Brown force RD Junc just East of BURMASH at 3 pm.

NOTES

- (1) The very greatest care will be exercised by all ranks to prevent damage to standing crops. When fields of growing cereals are found to block operations, umpires are authorized to permit the troops to be withdrawn, and placed without penalty (other than loss of time) at the furthest edge of the field in question.
- (2) The White Force is to wear White cap bands, umpires will wear white arm bands
- (3) The DAAG will allot a Brigade bivouacking area at DYMCHURCH. The Staff Captain 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will get into communication with him.
- (4) The orders for the move of all the Units will be issued by the Brigadier General 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade.
- (5) The Newingreen lamb sales will be taking place on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst, it is therefore important that any flocks of sheep and lambs that may be met on the roads be given free movement.

4<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE ORDER NO.

COPY NO.....  
14-8-15

Ref. 1" Shorncliffe Training Map

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will march on Monday the 16<sup>th</sup> instant as follows:-

<u>UNIT</u>	<u>STARTING POINT</u>	<u>TIME</u>
18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Road Junction near Sir John French Club	9.08 am
19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Do	9.13
20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Do	9.18
21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion	Do	9.23

Route as in Divisional Order circulated herewith

- 2 The nine wagons as detailed in Divisional Order No 723 of August 8<sup>th</sup> last, will follow in rear of units.

- 3 Battalions may take cookers if they wish and these, if taken, will follow in rear of the above wagons with each unit.

- 4 On the return march when opposite the 6<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade at OTTERPOOL, all Bands will be detached from units and parade in the field to East of and opposite 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion.

- 5 Units will send mounted representatives as usual with Brigade Headquarters.
- 6 Billeting Parties will march immediately in rear of the Brigade Signal Section
- 7 Reports to head of Brigade

Issued to Signals at 6.30 pm

- Copy No 1 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 2 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 3 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 4 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
 5 Bde Transport Officer  
 6,7 & 8 War Diary

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
 Order No.

Copy No.....

17/8/1915

Ref. 1" Training Map

- 1 (a) A German Force believed to consist of about a Corps, has begun landing between NEW ROMNEY and DUNGNESS. It has established a covering Force on the line NEW ROMNEY-LYDD.  
 (b) The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division is to hold the line of the Military Canal from HAM STREET to WEST HYTH (inclusive) and prevent the enemy moving North at all costs.  
 (c) The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will march tomorrow via LYMPHE-BELLEVUE.  
     Starting Point.....NEW INN GREEN  
     Time.....8.30 am  
 And occupy "C" Section from BILSINGTON exclusive to WEST HYTHE inclusive.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march tomorrow  
     Starting point.....NEW INN GREEN  
     Time.....8.42 am  
 And occupy "B" sub-section from Bridge over Military Canal South of GOLDENHURST FARM exclusive to Foot Bridge over Military Canal (1 mile South of COLD HARBOUR) inclusive.
- 3 The sub-sections on our right and left will be held by the 19<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> Battalions respectively. The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion will be held in Brigade Reserve at COURT AT STREET.  
 1 Section 4<sup>th</sup> Field Company CE will be attached to our sub-section  
 The line of the Canal will be the line of resistance.
- 4 Advanced Dressing Stations will be opened at BONNINGTON COURT and BELLEVUE
- 5 The Machine Gun Section will report to Brigade Machine Gun Officer at 8.00 am
- 6 Brigade Ammunition Reserve at POSTLING GREEN
- 7 Transport will follow in rear of Battalion
- 8 Reports to head of Battalion Column

Signed AK HEMMING  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion



Copy No 1 OC 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Brigade  
2 OC No 1 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
3 OC No 2 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
4 OC No 3 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
5 OC No 4 Co 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
6 OC Machine Gun Section  
7 MO 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
8 TO 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
9-11 War Diary

Syllabus of Training

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division

Week ending August 14<sup>th</sup>

Monday 9 <sup>th</sup> 7.30 am to 5.00 pm	Tactical Scheme with Flags on Area 4
Tuesday 10 <sup>th</sup> 7.30 am to 5.00 pm	Tactical Scheme with Flags on area 4
Wednesday 11 <sup>th</sup> 7.30 to 12.30 2.00 pm to 5.00 pm	Entrenching and Bayonet Fighting on Tolsford Hill Trench attack to be arranged on a frontage of 150 yards
Thursday & Friday	Brigade Scheme, Bivouac, Thursday night and continue operations Friday with a scheme set by the Division
Saturday 14 <sup>th</sup> 7.30 12.00	Company Kit Inspection

Lieut Col  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

The Brigade will take part in a Divisional tactical exercise tomorrow the 18<sup>th</sup> instant.

The starting point will be THE ROYAL OAK INN at 8.30 am.

First line transport as laid down for training will accompany units, water carts will be taken but not cookers.

A haversack ration for the mid-day meal will be carried and the troops will return to quarters during the afternoon.

Units will be as strong as possible

Scouts and Machine Gun Sections will accompany units.

The Bombing Class will carry on as usual.

Operation and March Orders will be issued this evening.

West Sandling  
17-8-15

Brigade Major, 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde.

21<sup>st</sup> Battalion

4<sup>th</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE ORDER No

COPY No.

1 Ref: 1" Training Map

19.8.15

The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will march tomorrow morning, the 20<sup>th</sup> inst, to a position of assembly, just South of BRABOURNE as follows:-

Route:- SELLINDGE-STONE HILL-BRABOURNE LEES

UNIT	STARTING POINT	TIME
18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Road immediately N of OTTERPOOL	8.25 am
19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Road immediately N of OTTERPOOL	8.30 am
20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Road immediately N of OTTERPOOL	8.35 am
21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion	Road immediately N of OTTERPOOL	8.40 am
4 <sup>th</sup> Fd Coy CE	Road immediately N of OTTERPOOL	8.45 am

2 Transport will follow in rear of Units. Brigade Headquarters Transport in rear of Signal Section

3 Reports to Head of Column

Lieut Col  
Brigade Major, 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

Issued to Signals at 3.00 pm

Copy No 1 to 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
Copy No 2 to 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
Copy No 3 to 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
Copy No 4 to 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
Copy No 5 to 4<sup>th</sup> Fd Coy CE  
Copy No 6,7,& 8 to War Diary

#### NOTES

Units will send mounted representatives to Bde Headquarters at the Starting Point.

Cookers will not be taken, but haversack rations and buckets for watering horses will be carried.

Billeting parties will march in rear of Brigade Headquarters transport.

Divisional Standing Orders on March Discipline should be studied. One Officer per Battalion will be detailed to act as umpire and will report to Bde Headquarters at the position of assembly.

(21<sup>st</sup> Battalion)

ALL BATTALIONS

Training for week ending Aug 21<sup>st</sup> will be as follows:-

- Monday Divisional Maneuvers
- Tuesday (a) Tactical Scheme without Troops for Commanding Officers and Regimental Staffs  
(b) Parades under Company Commanders. Special Classes in bombing, Scouting and Machine gun.
- Wednesday Divisional Maneuvers
- Thursday Same as Tuesday para (b)
- Friday Divisional Maneuvers
- Saturday Same as Tuesday para (b)
- Tactical Scheme without Troops for Company Commanders
- AREAS 18<sup>th</sup> Battn....No 2....19<sup>th</sup> Battn....No 3  
20<sup>th</sup> Battn....No 4....21<sup>st</sup> Battn....No 1
- No syllabus need be rendered.

(Signed) KD Murray  
Captain  
Staff Captain, 4<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade

11.8.15

4<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE ORDER NO. 1

Copy No. 6  
21/8/15

Reference 1" Training Map

- (a) A White Division is mobilizing at MAIDSTONE and is occupying the line of the GREAT STOUR River.  
(b) The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division is to advance on Monday 23<sup>rd</sup> inst, to defeat the covering force and prevent the further mobilization of the White Division. It is to bivouac in HATCH PARK, and FORDWATER.
- The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Brigade will march on Monday the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst, as follows to bivouac in HATCH PARK, Route via SELLINDGE:-

<u>UNIT</u>	<u>STARTING POINT</u>	<u>TIME</u>
20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Sir John French Club	8.30 am
21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion	Sir John French Club	8.35 am
18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Sir John French Club	8.40 am
19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Sir John French Club	8.45 am

Rear Guard, 1 Platoon 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion will follow in rear of the Column

- The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion and 1 Platoon Divisional Cyclists, who joined the Column at OTTERPOOL. OC Lieut Col Allan will form an Advanced Guard from the time the Column reaches STONE HILL road junction. A halt will be made at this point to allow the Advanced Guard to gain its distance.

- 4 First Line Transport, ie. 9 wagons, 2 water carts and cookers, will follow in rear of units

Baggage section of the train, ie 4 wagons, will be loaded and remain parked in camp. They will be collected and removed under orders of No 6 Coy Train.

Supply wagons, ie 2 per Unit will march with 1<sup>st</sup> line Transport and pull out at the re-filling Point at SELLINDGE

- 5 Refilling Point SELLINDGE at 11.00 am
- 6 Reports to Head of Column

(Signed) R Gordon Stewart  
Lieut Colonel  
Brigade Major 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

Issued to Signals at 7.00 pm

Copy Nos 1 & 2	2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion
3	18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion
4	19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion
5	20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion
6	21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion
7	Divisional Cyclists
8	No 6 Coy Divisional Train
9,10 & 11	War Diary

DIVISIONAL TRAINING  
2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION

4<sup>th</sup> Tactical Exercise

Aug 23<sup>rd</sup> & 24<sup>th</sup>, 1915

GENERAL IDEA

War has been declared between a Western country – WHITE and an Eastern country – BROWN, whose frontier is the Railway from CANTERBURY to RYE.

A white division is mobilizing at MAIDSTONE and a Brown Division (2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division) at FOLKESTONE. On Aug the 22<sup>nd</sup> the mobilization of the Brown Division has been completed, but only two Infantry Brigades of White together with a Brigade of Field Artillery and a Mounted Brigade are in a fit state to move.

On this date the Brown Military authorities decide to use the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Div in a dash across the frontier to break up the mobilization taking place at MAIDSTONE.

The GOC White Div at MAIDSTONE decides to push forward all available troops to EASTWELL PARK to hold the Brown Division on the line of the GREAT STOUR.

DIVISIONAL TRAINING  
2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION

4<sup>th</sup> Tactical Exercise

Aug 23<sup>rd</sup> & 24<sup>th</sup>. 15

SPECIAL IDEA  
BROWN

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division moves from FOLKESTONE on the morning of August 23<sup>rd</sup>, in accordance with operation orders to be issued separately, in the direction of ASHFORD, with a view of defeating the WHITE covering force and marching on MAIDSTONE.

The 2<sup>nd</sup> & 3<sup>rd</sup> FA Bde West Lancashire Artillery  
1 How Batty (5") Lancashire Artillery  
1 Heavy Batty (4.7") Lancashire Artillery

join the force at HATCH PARK & FORDWATER under separate instructions.

APPENDIX "A" ORGANIZATION AND TRAINING OF BOMBERS

Brigade Company

1 Officer  
1 Company Serg Major or acting CSM  
4 Corporals or acting Coporals  
124 Privates

The Officer, CSM, 4 Corporals, and 4 privates are permanently attached. The remainder are attached from Battalions for periods of 6 days.

Battalion Company

1 Officer  
1 Sergeant or Act Serg  
4 Sections (one with each Company)

Company Section

1 Serg or Act Serg  
2 Corporals or act Corporals  
18 Privates

Men trained in excess of the above Company Section establishment are used as working parties with the Bomb Section and as a reserve from which to keep up the strength of the Company Section.

The Battalion Bombing Officer is responsible for the training of and the supply of Grenades to Company Sections, in all other matters Company sections are under Company Commanders.

The Company Sections are to remain distinct organizations as Bombers, the most efficient men as such being retained and the less efficient weeded out and returned from time to time from the ranks for ordinary infantry use. For this purpose an elimination test should be held two or three times a month.

For the supply of Grenades in action, a sufficient number of men (as mutually arranged) is to be detailed by Company Commanders to the Battalion Bomb Officer.

PROGRAMME OF 2<sup>ND</sup> WEEK OF DIVISIONAL TRAINING OF 2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISIONAL  
1915

WHITE FORCE

Composition

1<sup>st</sup> South Eastern Mounted Brigade (From Canterbury)  
3 or 4 Battalions Canadian Training Div  
Flag enemy of about 80 men and 9 Officers from 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division  
2<sup>nd</sup> FA Bde West Lancashire Artillery

MONDAY AUGUST 23<sup>RD</sup>

Assemble near Kennington at time and place to be selected by Col Skinner, General Staff Canadian Training Division.  
Night operations on GREAT STOUR R- for advanced troops - White Force - Bivouac near KENNINGTON

TUESDAY AUGUST 24<sup>TH</sup>

Continue operations West of GREAT STOUR, Bivouac near KENNINGTON

WEDNESDAY AUGUST 25<sup>TH</sup>

March to Bivouac near SELLINDGE

THURSDAY AUGUST 26<sup>TH</sup>

Operate against 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Div near Aldington, Troops return to quarters, or rest camps on the way to quarters.

Rations and Bivouacs to be arranged by AA QMG Canadian Training Division

(Sd) H.DE Pres  
Colonel  
General Staff

2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division  
August 17<sup>th</sup>, 1915

WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
West Sandling Camp	1/9/15		Company transfers effected from today to make up Strength according to War Establishment. 1 NCO transferred to 39 <sup>th</sup> Reserve Battalion. One NCO transferred to COC CEF. One NCO transferred to 2 <sup>nd</sup> Div Supply Column. One Pte transferred to the 2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Supply Column One Pte admitted to Hospital. One NCO reverts to ranks. One Pte discharged from Hospital Weather – fine
	2/9/15		The Battalion paraded at 8.30 am The 2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division was inspected by His Majesty The King. Dress marching order. Officers not to wear swords Weather – fine
	3/9/15		Commanding Officer's parade at 7.30 am in Marching Order for Trench Warfare 1 NCO deprived of lance rank. One Pte discharged from Hospital One NCO proceeds to Pay and Record Office. Temp duty One Pte discharged from hospital. One Pte transferred (Hosp) Weather – Heavy showers
West Sandling Camp	4/9/15		Commanding Officer's parade at 8 am, dress Marching Order 12 men from each Company and 2 men from Machine Gun Sect paraded under Lieut Dennis at 1.45 am and reported to Brigade Machine Gun Officer for Musketry Two Ptes discharged from Hospital. One Pte admitted Hospital Weather – fine
	5/9/15		The Battalion paraded for Divine Service Weather – fine
	6/9/15		Lieut WO Frink ceases to be acting QM to the Details employed at the Miniature Rifle Range 2 NCOs revert to the ranks One Pte admitted to Hospital. Three Ptes discharged (Hosp) Weather – fine
West Sandling Camp	7/9/15		Commanding Officer's parade at 7.30 am Company parades at 7 am. Dress marching order Lieut Miller, 4 NCOs and 32 men reported to Capt Lindsay, Birgade Bombing Officer at 8.45 am 2 NCOs promoted Weather – fine
	8/9/15		Company parades at 8 am. Commanding Officer's parade at 8.30 am. Rifle loading contest (by clips) by Companies. Weather – fine
	9/9/15		Company parade at 7.30 am. Battalion Paraded at 8 am, and marched to Tolsford Hill for Bayonet Fighting and filling in trenches. 2 NCOs revert to rank of Pte. 1 NCO transferred to 9 <sup>th</sup> Battalion Reserve Weather – fine

West Sandling Camp	10/9/15	Company parades at 7.30 am. Battalion parade at 8.00 am. Dress, clean fatigues for trench filling on Tolsford Hill Hon Capt WE Kidd has been appointed Chaplain to the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade One NCO reverts to ranks Weather – fine
	12/9/15	Transport, Machine Gun Section, and portion of Signals left Sandling Camp in Charge of Major CC Bennett for the front. Entraining from Southampton. Disembarking at Havre.
	14/9/15	Remainder of the Battalion in Charge of Lieut Col W.St.P. Hughes left Sandling Camp for Folkstone for the front. The Battalion embarked at Folkstone and when about halfway across was ordered back by the Naval Authorities. They eventually sailed from Folkstone the following morning reaching France about mid-day. After a days halt at the Rest Camp, they entrained for St. Omer where they were joined by the details under Major Bennett.
	16/9/15	Departing from St Omer they marched to Renesure arriving there at 7.00 am. The Battalion breakfasted and rested until 11.00 am when they marched to Eecke which was reached at 6.00 pm. The night was spent in Billets. Weather – fine, very hot
	17/9/15	Battalion rested until 5.00 pm when they were inspected by General Alderson, Commanding Canadian Division
	18/9/15	Officer Commanding Battalion accompanied by several other officers left billets 6.00 am and proceeded to trenches being then held by 2 <sup>nd</sup> Battn East Surrey, 85 <sup>th</sup> Brigade. The Battalion in charge of Major Bennett proceeded to Dranoutre where they went under canvas for the night. Weather – fine, very hot
Dranoutre	19/9/15	Battalion paraded for Muster. All present and correct Battalion (with the exception of Nos 1 & 3 Coys) rested for the day Nos 1 & 3 Coys left camp at dusk and proceeded to the trenches (“C”) held by 2 <sup>nd</sup> Battn East Surreys Weather – fine and warm
	20/9/15	No 2 & 4 Coys rested in Camp. No 1 & 3 Coys in trenches. No Casualties
	21/9/15	No 2 & 4 Coys took over the remaining “C” trenches from the East Surreys Relief completed at 9.00 pm. No Casualties
	22/9/15	Battalion snipers reported eight probable hits and some “possibles” Wind SE Weather – fine & dry Bombardment by our artillery at 4.00 pm
	23/9/15	Situation normal. Sniping active Enemy active 10.00 to 11.00 am & 4.00 to 6.00 pm.



"C" Trenches	24/9/15	Our Artillery active from 9.00 am to 12.00 noon. Wind SE. Casualties one (wounded accident) One shell burst 25 yards from Battalion Headquarters at 11.00 am. Progress of work. Reconstruction of Dugouts and party under Canadian Engineers sloping sides and leveling Trenches, also deepening and widening "Surrey Lane"
	25/9/15	At 4.56 am Smoke Bags thrown out in front of fire trenches and fire by our Machine Guns & Snipers also heavy fire from our Artillery. Enemy replied with heavy fire in our trenches. Casualties wounded – four – Remainder of day quiet - Wind SW
	26/9/15	Enemy bombarded trenches in afternoon and did considerable damage to C1 Diagonal. Casualties – 3 wounded. Wind SW Work carried on. Repairing fire Trenches damaged by shell fire also dug-outs
	27/9/15	Enemy bombarded trenches in afternoon around C2 for a short time. Parapet in fire trench slightly damaged. 2 Coys 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn relieved Coys in C1 & C3, relief completed 9.45 pm. These Coys marched to Dranoutre for rest, with the exception of 2 platoons of No 4 Coy which were left at Souvenir Farm. 2 Coys from C2 & C4 relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion, relief completed 10.30 pm and marched to Dranoutre for rest.
Dranoutre	27/9/15 to 2/10/15	Battalion resting in billets & under canvas until 6.00 pm 3/10/15 when they marched back to trenches to relieve 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn. Relief completed 9.00 pm - Weather fair

## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
Trenches	3/10/15		Morning quiet – our artillery active. Enemy fairly active during night. Many flares came over. Our straffing gun kept busy. One casualty shot dead
	4/10/15		Situation normal. Afternoon enemy shelled our front line and communication trenches. Wind – NW. One casualty shot in head, dead. Enemy fairly active during night. 2 Ptes buried at 5.30 pm St Quintons Farm
	5/10/15		Situation normal. Wind – NE, weather fine Afternoon usual artillery dual. Proper trench matting laid in Surrey Lane
	6/10/15		Quiet all day until evening, when a burst of artillery fire broke our own section (from enemy). Wind NE. Casualties six wounded. Situation normal.
	7/10/15		Situation normal. Wind NE, weather fine Artillery fairly active. Casualties five wounded
	8/10/15		Enemy's attitude quiet, wind NE, weather fine. Artillery quiet, rifle fire heavy during night. Enemy's working parties observed from C1 Bay 2, C3 Bay 5, & C2 Bay 4.
	9/10/15		The battalion was relieved in the trenches on the night 9 <sup>th</sup> -10 <sup>th</sup> by the 2 <sup>nd</sup> battalion and proceed into close billets at La Clytte where they remained until the 15 <sup>th</sup> inst.
La Clytte	15/10/15		The battalion proceeded to trenches to relieve the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion. The relief was carried out without any casualties and was completed at 4.00 pm
Trenches	16/10/15		Situation normal. Artillery practically nil. Numerous rifle grenades fallen in N6-O2 trenches. Casualties nil Enemy's working parties observed at 1.30 pm in rear of trench SE of N6 General attitude – except for bombing – quiet.
	17/10/15		Situation normal. Wind N. Artillery – nil Rifle grenades again falling in rear of N6 No working parties observed Attitude quiet, casualties four wounded.
	18/10/15		Situation lively. Artillery very active sending over numerous shells. Enemy's trench mortar also very active. Bombs again dropping in rear of N6. Machine Gun, Rifle Firing & Sniping practically nil. Attitude of enemy, alert. Many flares sent up during night. 1 casualty (wounded)
	19/15/15		Situation still lively. Enemy's artillery being very prominent, and persistently wasting shells in empty fields in rear of our trenches. Several working parties observed in morning and after noon. Enemy's aircraft flew over apparently endeavoring to ascertain the result of their artillery fire.

	20/10/15	Situation still lively. Artillery firing several rounds. Enemy's patrol met and dispersed by bombs at 1.30 am. Enemy's working parties observed in afternoon about 4.00 pm repairing damage in their front line trench from our artillery fire. Attitude of enemy nervous sending up an average 17 flares an hour during night followed by fixed rifle battery fire. 1 casualty.
	21/10/15	The battalion was relieved at 4.00 pm by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn and proceeded to Brigade Reserve at RIDGEWOOD.
RIDGEWOOD	22/10/15	4 casualties, (2 killed & 2 wounded) occurred while a fatigue party furnished by this battalion was working in POPPY LANE.
	23/10/15	Enemy's artillery very active during evening firing many shells over Brigade Reserve Billets. Fatigue party of 490 men detailed from this battalion to act near trenches during the evening.
	24/10/15 to 27/10/15	Battalion resting in Brigade Reserve at Ridgewood  The battalion relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion on the night of 27 <sup>th</sup> – 28 <sup>th</sup> . No casualties.
Trenches	28/10/15	Situation quiet. German artillery firing only 6 rounds. Enemy dropped 6 Rifle grenades in rear of N6. Enemy were busy repairing their front line, as flattening of sand bags could be distinctly heard. On the whole a quiet and uneventful day. One Casualty (slight)
	29/10/15	Enemy artillery very active and attitude more aggressive than usual. Our retaliation to their artillery caused much damage to their 1 <sup>st</sup> Line parapets opposite O2. 2 casualties (fatal) 3 wounded.
	30/10/15	Activity of enemy still continues sending over about 63 shells during day. Little damage however was done by them. Our aircraft was very active all day, and the Germans ante-aircraft guns were kept quite busy, although non-effective 3 casualties (slight)
	31/10/15	Activity of German artillery continues. 59 shells being sent over our lines, but little damage was done. Bombing by the Germans also active, the enemy managed to place about 30 yards of new wire in front of O2 trench. Our patrol reports enemy very busy at night rebuilding front parapet, damaged by our artillery.
		<i><u>Transcriber's Note:</u> The following is a report from the Battalion Medical Officer</i>
Dranoutre	1/10/15	15 men reported sick. Repacked ?????? & boxes, went to Bailleul in afternoon with Capt Brown of Toronto. Returned 6 pm
	2/10/15	Packed up to move to trenches. Moved off at 5.00 pm. Arrived at RAP C trenches 7.30 pm. Ambulance called at 10.00 pm
RAPC Trenches	3/10/15	A quiet day – 59497 Pte Hopkinson got a scalp wound. Bullet struck his rifle barrel, was deflected downwards, went through his cap badge and furrowed his scalp. His head was a foot below edge of parapet. At 11.30 pm medical assistance was called for. Man was dead when I reached Headquarters. This is the first fatal casualty. Had a very depressing effect.
		<i><u>Transcriber's Note:</u> The above entry is incorrect. There were 2 men in the Battalion named Hopkinson. Neither man was killed. 2 men are recorded as being killed on this date, Pte J Bowyer, 59086, and Pte W Starkey, 59908.</i>

	4/10/15	One man shot in the head and killed. Had a double funeral at 5.00 pm today.
	5/10/15	Woken up at 6 am by arrival of a man shot through the arm. Later his friend arrived suffering from nervousness. Another wounded casualty followed later. I came near to being a casualty myself, a spare bullet passing just over my head & lodging in a tree.
	6/10/15	Four men wounded today by shrapnel
	7/10/15	Two men were badly wounded by accidental discharge of a rifle. One other man was wounded and one man was sent down with report that "his nerves were all gone to pieces." We officers make the men worse by talking to them in this strain. All he needed was a good night's sleep.
	8/10/15	At 2.30 am a man with a self inflicted wound was brought in. We prepared to move out. Late in the afternoon three men were brought in wounded – one of them a stretcher bearer. Had to send a stretcher after dark for a man from No. ? Co. who had cramps and should have been made to walk. Ambulance called at 8.00 pm. We moved off at 11.00 pm after being relieved by 1 <sup>st</sup> Battalion. Arrived in La Clytte at 1.00 am. Slept in a wagon box.
La Clytte	9/10/15	Spent the day looking after sanitation of Billets which were left in a very dirty condition.
	10/10/15	30 men paraded sick. Major Jones was told at 5 <sup>th</sup> FA that he had whooping cough and was sent to a rest camp for a while. Am quite sure he has no whooping cough.
	11/10/15	40 men paraded sick. Camp is clean and in good condition. Bathing parade was held.
	12/10/15	50 men paraded sick – they are resting and have nothing else to do.
	13/10/15	Went to inspect our new trenches today. They are in very poor condition.
	14/10/15	25 men paraded sick
	15/10/15	Inspected water supply of our trenches. Battalion moved to Dickebush trenches at 11.30 am. Billets left in fair condition
La Brasserie	16/10/15	Four men wounded today. Our MP is in the cellar of La Brasserie alone to Battalion Headquarters.
	17/10/15	One man wounded. The trenches are very poor. The bullets came right through the parapet.
	18/10/15	No casualties today. Very quiet
	19/10/15	Artillery quite active but no casualties occurred
	20/10/15	One man killed today. He was shot in the head by a sniper.
	21/10/15	No casualties today. Battalion moved out of trenches into Brigade Reserve in Ridgewood
	22/10/15	40 men paraded sick. Lieut Black was sent to hospital with enteritis

23/10/15 Working party was surprised. Two men were killed and two wounded – one of the latter being fatally wounded

24/10/15 Church parade was held this am. Day was very quiet

25/10/15 No casualties. Major Wolfrain was sent to hospital suffering from gastritis

26/10/15 Very quiet day. Some artillery activity

27/10/15 One casualty today. Battalion moved into trenches from Brigade Reserve

28/10/15 No casualties. Rained all day. Trenches very muddy. Parapet fell in in two places. Men's dugouts fell in on top of them.

29/10/15 One man killed and three wounded by one of our own shells falling short

30/10/15 Three men wounded today by shrapnel. Visited by the ADMS today

31/10/15 Heavy artillery duel but no casualties occurred

Signed by Capt KE Cook CAMC  
MO I/C 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
-------	------	------	-----------------------------------

- |          |          |  |   |
|----------|----------|--|---|
| Trenches | 1/11/15  |  | Enemy's artillery still busy, 48 shells being thrown at us, otherwise quiet. Our bombers were successful in dispersing working party engaged on repairing wire entanglements opposite O1A. Battalion snipers report two hits. One of the victims having a ??????? around his head and shoulders.<br>The battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion and proceeded to Ridgewood where they stayed the night in Brigade Reserve.                 |
|          | 2/11/15  |  | The battalion proceeded to La Clytte and formed Divisional Reserve, staying there until the afternoon of the 7 <sup>th</sup> .  |
|          | 3/11/15  |  | Bathing of the battalion was carried out also platoon and company drill, special instructions being given to bombers & Machine Gun men.   |
|          | 7/11/15  |  | Clothing and feet inspection also Smoke Helmet Drill and a route march.<br>The Battalion proceeded to the left subsection of trenches to relieve the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion during the afternoon of the 7 <sup>th</sup> . Relief being completed by 4.30 pm. Casualties Nil   |
|          | 8/11/15  |  | Enemy artillery quiet only 14 shells coming at us.<br>Germans were observed pumping water over their front line trenches.<br>Our trenches are very wet being over knee deep in water in many places, making a diving suit more serviceable than the ordinary issue of clothing.   |
|          | 9/11/15  |  | Enemy artillery fairly active only 22 shells being presented to us. Rifle fire very little and on the whole the attitude of the Germans unusually quiet. The Huns were observed bailing water over front line parapet opposite N5 & N6 thus proving they could also benefit by diving suits instead of their ordinary suits. Casualties one wounded.  |
|          | 10/11/15 |  | Enemy today quite lively about 120 shells being fired by their artillery. Huns were again busy bailing water out of there front line trenches opposite N5 & N6.<br>Our bombers were successful in landing 3 bombs, 2 of them getting square into a working party.<br>Wet weather still continues and from observation made is giving the enemy as much trouble if not more than us, especially as regards communication trenches.<br>Casualties one serious |
|          | 11/11/15 |  | Enemy artillery moderate, only 3 shells being sent over our lines. Bombing and Rifle fire also quiet.<br>Extract from our patrol report "We went out to the enemy wire and continued working where we left off previous night and this time were successful in bringing back one 1 1/2 " Auger and a Bailing Dipper from their lines.<br>The flag we had hoped to get had gone.<br>Casualties 1 killed and 2 badly wounded.                                 |
|          | 12/11/15 |  | Enemy's attitude quiet, their artillery continued with sending us 16 shells of light caliber. They were still very busy bailing water out of their trenches and a pump could be hard working in same.<br>Our sniper was successful in bagging one Hun who was foolish enough to show his head and shoulders over the parapet.<br>Casualties 1 killed and 4 wounded.   |

Ridgewood	13/11/15	The battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion and proceeded to Brigade Reserve at Ridgewood where we remained until the 18 <sup>th</sup> . While in this Brigade Reserve we found practically all the fatigues for the front line left subsection and for all Engineers and Miners fatigues as well. This tour being the hardest one of all up to the present. 1 Casualty in one of the above mentioned fatigue parties occurred on the 17 <sup>th</sup> .
Ridgewood and trenches	18/11/15	The battalion proceeded to the left subsection trenches and relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion. Relief was reported complete by 8.00 pm with no casualties
Trenches	19/11/15	Enemy's attitude quiet – artillery only sending us 25 rounds Enemy's front line appears to have been under repair as new sandbags abound.
	20/11/15	Enemy artillery little more active, 48 shells being fired at us. On the whole the day was exceptionally quiet. Casualties Nil
	21/11/15	Attitude of Germany still quiet, only 10 shells being fired. New sandbags were noticed on top of Germany's parapet opposite N6, apparently placed there during the night of the 20 <sup>th</sup> . 2 slight casualties
	22/11/15	Artillery quiet, nothing special occurring all day long. The battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn during afternoon. This was carried out owing to the weather being foggy and in our favour. The battalion proceeded direct to La Clytte, where they stayed until the 26 <sup>th</sup> The usual bathing and company parades were carried out.
La Clytte	26/11/15	The battalion relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion in the left subsection today. Relief being completed 7.30 pm. Casualties nil
Trenches	27/11/15	Enemy fairly active shelling us with 52 rounds. Battalion snipers report one hit. Enemy seen during day walking up trench at 0.8.A.1.7 All wearing grey uniforms and caps – one being blessed with a sheepskin collar. This was a bad day for the Battalion having 6 killed including one officer, and our artillery retaliated quite heavily on the Huns and obviously doing a great deal of damage.
	28/11/15	Enemy artillery fairly active giving us only 34 rounds. Several working parties of enemy were noticed opposite 0.1.A trench. Battalion snipers report one hit. In evenings communication trench at 0.8.A.17 about 50 Huns were seen all dressed in grey uniforms. None wore equipment, and only one carried a rifle. One casualty fatal.
	29/11/15	Enemy artillery <u>NIL</u> , apparently saving up for finer weather, as today was extremely foggy Battalion snipers report one hit. Patrol out could do nothing with an enemy patrol as they were unable to get in touch with them.
	30/11/15	Enemy artillery very active sending over 69 rounds. Our snipers were successful during day, claiming one officer and 7 men. Except for the above, nothing unusual occurred during the day.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
N and O Trenches	1/12/15		<p>Enemy artillery fairly active – 36 shells – otherwise very quiet. One of two Hun airplanes flew over our lines about 11.00 am this morning. Casualties Nil. Our snipers bag one Hun. The battalion was relieved in the afternoon by the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn and proceeded to Ridgewood and formed Brigade Reserve. Casualties Nil</p>
Ridgewood	2/12/15		<p>The battalion rested here till the afternoon of the 5<sup>th</sup> when it proceeded to N and O trenches to relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Battn. This relief was completed at 7.00 pm. No casualties. Continuous fatigue and working parties were supplied to the N &amp; O trenches during this stay.</p>
N and O Trenches	6/12/15		<p>Enemy artillery lively, 59 rounds being fired. Their sniping was also very active, paying particular attention to an exposed crossing at Bombers Hollow, rear of N 12. At 3.30 pm a white rag was waved by the enemy opposite N6. This is a trick frequently used by German snipers to encourage our men to expose themselves, as on previous occasions an observer through a telescope has detected a rifle muzzle some yards to the flank of the rag. One casualty, not fatal.</p>
	7/12/15		<p>Enemy artillery quiet in comparison to our own, number of rounds fired by them dropping in our area – 45. A pump was heard in the German front lines and water could be seen coming from the enemy's parapet during the day. Our snipers bagged one Hun. German Ante-Aircraft guns wasted much ammunition in endeavoring to bring down one of our airplanes this am. Casualties nil</p>
	8/12/15		<p>Enemy artillery fairly active – 57 rounds being fired. Our artillery gave good retaliation smashing their front line parapets in many places. The pump reported yesterday still working. One of the Hun planes attacked one ours but without any good result. Casualties two – non fatal.</p>
	9/12/15		<p>Enemy artillery and our own fairly active. Shells fired by the Hun in our area being 46. Enemy machine guns being active on Sniper's Barn Road, otherwise everything quiet.</p>
	10/12/15		<p>The battalion was relieved in the afternoon by the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn. Relief completed by 7.00 pm. Casualties – They proceeded to billets in La Clytte for rest until the 16<sup>th</sup> inst. The usual bathing parade, gas helmet drill, also ???? and company drills were carried out during the stay here.</p>
La Clytte	16/12/15		<p>The battalion proceeded to the N &amp; O trenches and relieved the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in the afternoon. Relief completed 7.45 pm. Casualties nil</p>
N & O trenches	17/12/15		<p>Enemy artillery nil. Our artillery fairly active. Enemy machine gun very active last night from Piccadilly Farm traversing Sniper's Barn Road. Otherwise quiet on our front. Casualties – 2 slight –</p>



N & O trenches	18/12/15	Enemy artillery quiet, 25 shells being fired in our area. Machine gun fire active from same direction as reported yesterday. The enemy made a good attempt to place knife rests at 0.7.C49, but were dispersed by our rifle fire Casualties – one not fatal
	19/12/15	Everything quiet in our area, but the effects of enemy's gas attack north of our position was felt here in the early morning. No serious effects were felt from this gas, but many suffered eye and throat trouble. The gas was noticed for about 3 ½ to 4 hours. Our artillery were extremely active during last night and all today north of our position. Casualties nil
	20/12/15	Enemy artillery quiet only 5 rounds being fired at us. Machine gun was rather active. Our artillery was very active. Pump was heard working at 07C 4.8 ½ all day. Many fires were lighted in Bois Quarant. Our snipers claim one hit. Casualties – one fatal, 3 minor –
	21/12/15	Today was indeed very ? Artillery on both sides hardly firing at all. Weather bad for observing. Casualties nil
	22/12/15	Artillery nil on both sides. German working parties were observed apparently repairing trenches damaged by our shells. The Germans were successful in establishing posts consisting of 3 steel loop holed plates each plate about 6' X 3' slanted back from top of parapet. Enemy nervous during night sending up large number of flares. The battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion and proceeded to Ridgewood and formed Brigade Reserve. Casualties nil
Ridgewood	23/12/15	The usual tedious fatigue and working parties were provided by the battalion, and the accommodation at Ridgewood was far from pleasant.
	25/12/15	Christmas Day – REST DAY – No fatigues or working parties. Celebrated in a very quiet manner with plenty of Xmas puddings.
	28/12/15	The battalion proceeded to N & O trenches to relieve the 20 <sup>th</sup> Bn. Relief completed 8.00 pm. No Casualties
N & O trenches	29/12/15	Enemy artillery fairly active – 28 rounds being fired in our area. Machine gun fire on enemy's part more aggressive than usual traversing Chicory Trench and Bois Carre Position of gun 07C.69. Some new wire has been put up overnight at 08A 1.7 ½ A squadron of 19 allied planes flew over our lines at 12.15 pm flying SE and were seen to drop bombs on enemy's trenches. They all returned safely in spite of the efforts of the Huns ante-aircraft guns to destroy same. Our snipers bagged on Hun.
	30/12/15	Enemy artillery again nil on our front. Four rifle grenades fell in rear of 01A trench this morning. An allied plane crossed enemy's lines flying in a southerly direction was very heavily shelled by the Huns but without any result. Casualties One fatal
	31/12/15	Enemy artillery still nil. Our artillery active and doing good work. Enemy Machine gun fairly active. Two of our shells landed at 08A 17 ½ at 1.15 pm and waves of water could be seen in the trench and overflowing. Casualties one fatal, 3 minor.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
N & O Trenches	1/1/16		Enemy artillery – Nil Our artillery Quiet Germans very active with rifle grenades – no appreciable amount of damage done. At 07450 on top of parapet was noticed a blue flag with white centre. Considerable amount of Hun shouting was heard during last night.
	2/1/16		Enemy artillery again Nil – our artillery fairly active Huns again fairly active with grenades but without any effect Casualties 1 serious and 3 minor
	3/1/16		Enemy artillery very active – quite a number of shells coming around Bn HQ New revetments are being made in most of enemy trenches to right of PICADILLY FARM. 5 yards of new entanglements has been put up at 0.8.A.2.9. New Enemy trench about 25 yards long at 0.8.A.4.9 ½. Casualties 1 minor The Battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn in the evening. Relief completed 7.50 pm (no casualties) and proceeded to LA CLYTTE and formed Division Reserve
LACLYTTE	4/1/16 to 9/1/16		The Battalion rested here – usual bathing and company parades being carried out. The Btn relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> Btn in the left sub section. Relief completed 9:00 PM no casualties
N & O Trenches	10/1/16		Enemy artillery very active. Sending about 59 rounds during day to which our artillery replied effectively. Early this morning shrapnel wounded 3 men Later in the day shrapnel wounded 2 more men. During the night the Huns MG swept ground between PICADILLY FARM and HOLLANDESCHUR FARM At 0.7.B.a.3. there is a portion of the enemy's second line trench built up with very large sandbags. Each bag is painted a brilliant color, bright red and blue being the principal ones. The bags have the appearance of being thrown in promiscuously with order or arrangement. One portion has the appearance of being a large painted sheet thrown over the top of the parapet.
	11/1/16		Enemy's artillery quiet only firing 12 rounds Sniping also very quiet. Our artillery fairly active. Allied planes being very active during morning. No enemy planes sighted. Casualties one.
	12/1/16		Enemy's artillery medium 38 rounds Good retaliation by our artillery. Machine Gun and sniping quiet. Aircraft 7 allied planes patrolled our lines during morning – no enemy aircraft sighted. Casualties 3 wounded.
	13/1/16		Enemy artillery on the "Bum" only 4 rounds being fired. Our artillery going strong. Some more painted bags have been added to Huns parapets At 0.7.B.0.1. 13 Knife rests have been advanced about 20 yards Casualties 1 wounded.
	14/1/16		Enemy artillery "resting on their laurels"(?) only firing one round. Our artillery active. Enemy MG swept SNIPERS BARN ROAD every ten minutes from 7.00 pm till MN last night. Waste of ammunition- Three allied planes patrolled our lines during morning Enemy sent up numerous flares during night. Casualties one

	15/1/16	Enemy artillery 17 Rounds – no damage Two allied planes appeared over VEOORMEZEELE at 2.55 pm and patrolled at a low altitude between BOIS CARE and BOIS CONELUENT. Rifle fire by enemy at our aircraft did not indicate the front line trench was held in strength.
Ridgewood	16/1/16	Everything quiet Battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion and proceeded to RIDGEWOOD and formed Bde Reserve Casualty one -while out on working party at night. Battalion arrived safely at RIDGEWOOD
	17/1/16 to 20/1/16	Battalion furnished usual fatigues etc. Casualties four MG men wounded while holding Redoubts 17/1/16. One OR died of pneumonia 18/1/16. (first case of death from disease in the Battalion)
	21/1/16	The Battalion relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the left sub-section today – Relief completed 7.30 pm No casualties
N & O Trenches	22/1/16	Enemy artillery fairly active between 9-10 am and 9.57 am 20 HE were distributed among the O trenches – Casualties 6 all slight about 3.30 pm about 3 whiz bangs were put over the new reserve screen and one into the BOIS CARRE. Evening MG from HOLLANDASCHEUR FARM was very active during night.
	23/1/16	Enemy artillery fairly active Our STRAFFING MG's firing on road at 0.8.c.8.9 and house at 0.8.c.8.5 from 6.00 pm apparently annoying enemy for between 6.30 and 6.50 pm he planted 29 whiz bangs in the vicinity of SNIPERS BARN evidently thinking our guns were located there. Bombing very active on both sides. Enemy aircraft very active over our lines during day Casualties Nil
	24/1/16	Enemy artillery very active 80 rounds being fired, mainly heavy H E and distributed among P&O and CHICKORY trenches. Enemy MG traversed BOIS CARRE and SNIPERS BARN ROAD during early hours of morning. Our snipers claim one hit Casualties 1 officer wounded slight
	25/1/16	Enemy artillery quiet only 15 rounds being fired the MG very active. Our snipers claim another hit. Both enemy and our own aircraft were very active during the morning. Casualty- one (accidental)
	26/1/16	Enemy artillery nil. Enemy MG fire active and a considerable amount of Rapid Rifle fire in front of N trenches. At 8.30 pm enemy sent over 18 Rifle Grenades to which we effectively replied with 31. Casualties nil.
	27/1/16	Enemy artillery quiet—only about 12 shells being sent over, these falling around Battn HQ and Bde Reserve at RIDGEWOOD Our MG very active during night Everything else normal casualties nil The Battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Btt in the evening and proceeded to Divisional reserve at LA CLYTTE.
LA CLYTTE	27/1/16 TO 31/1/16	Battalion resting –(with the usual bathing and other parades). A big fatigue party was furnished by this Battn on the night of the 29 <sup>th</sup> inst. Laying cable for the 6 <sup>th</sup> Brigade.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual, respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

**WAR DIARY**  
or  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.**  
*(Erase heading not required.)*

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
LA CLYTTE	1/2/16		Church parade held and preparations made for tomorrow's relief	
	2/2/16		The Battalion relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the N & O trenches this evening. Relief completed 9.30PM	
N & O Trenches	3/2/16		Enemy artillery fairly active 45 shells (shrapnel) and 10 whiz bangs otherwise quiet Enemy MG active from 6.00 pm till midnight Bombing - Huns sent 5 grenades in front of N6 and 1 in rear of N5. No damage, we retaliated with 8 effectively No casualties. 9 Allied planes went over German lands at 9.30 AM.	
	4/2/16		Enemy artillery nil – our artillery active Bombing- 12 Rifle grenades, eight of which fell short in front of N5, the remaining four in rear of N4 no damage. Naturally we reciprocated effectively MG fire from vicinity of SNIPERS BARN ROAD traversed our trenches. Red flag hoisted above enemy parapet at 7.00 am at 0.7.g.6.5 Casualties – nil	
	5/2/16		Enemy artillery active firing 54 rounds including whiz bangs HE and shrapnel Bombing – Enemy active with rifle ball and new fishtail grenades. Sending about at 45 between 3.00 and 9.00 pm. We replied with 67 Rifle Grenades Several allied planes patrolled in rear of our lines during morning. German planes were also fairly active. Our snipers reported 2 hits. Casualties – four slight	
	6/2/16		Enemy artillery quiet, our artillery also quiet Day passed with nothing unusual happening	
	7/2/16		Enemy artillery fairly active. 55 rounds coming our way mostly falling along ? BOIS CARRE communication trench. Enemy MG fairly active. Bombing very quiet	
	8/2/16		We were relieved this night by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion and proceeded to Brigade reserve at RIDGEWOOD. Relief completed 9.00 PM. Casualties – nil	
	RIDGEWOOD	9/2/16 to 14/2/16		The usual fatigues and cleaning up. Working parties etc Casualties – two
14/2/16			We relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the N and O trenches. Relief completed 7.45 PM, Casualties nil	
N & O Trenches	15/2/16		Enemy artillery normal -28 rounds Our artillery quiet. MG rifle and bombers – nil New sandbags noticed on parapet 0.7a.9½ .0½. The parapet is raised about 2 feet high for a short distance. Casualties – nil	
	16/2/16		Enemy artillery nil – our artillery active. Bombing also quiet. An heliograph was noticed by our observer working from front line at 020421. Casualty – one serious	
	17/2/16		Enemy artillery still nil, ours active. MG and bombing also nil. From 9.00 am to 3.20 pm seven allied planes patrolled our lines.	

	18/2/16	<p>Enemy artillery nil. Our artillery quiet.  Short burst of MG fire from HOLLANDSCHESCHUR FARM between 6.00 pm and 7.30 pm over N6 Casualties nil  Water was noticed being pumped through parapet at 0.7.a.6.0½  About 30 yards of new work on parapet at 0.7.G.2.2½  Allied planes patrolled our lines from 7.30 am to 8.20 am  Our snipers claim 2 hits. Casualties – nil</p>
	19/2/16	<p>Enemy artillery quiet only ten rounds being fired  Enemy MGs very active from 6.00 to 9.30 pm  Huns fired many fish-tail grenades over N trenches two of which failed to explode.  Casualties – nil  Snipers claim one hit on enemy periscope</p>
	20/2/16	<p>Huns artillery awaken 88 rounds being fired  New Rifle rests placed at 0.7.6.3½ .3½. Fresh earth and new sandbags on front line parapet at 0.7.a.7.0  9 Allied planes patrolled our lines and went over enemy lines at 6.15 am returning 6.30 am  9 Enemy planes came over our lines and returned at intervals  Casualties – nil  Relieved by 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion and proceeded to form Divisional Reserve at La Clytte. Relief completed 10.30 am. Casualties nil</p>
La Clytte	21/2/16	<p>The usual bathing and Kit inspections etc were carried out. Also inspection by GOC 4<sup>th</sup> Can Inf Bde.</p>
	25/2/16	<p>The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in N and O trenches this evening.  Relief completed 8.00 pm  Casualties – nil</p>
N & O Trenches	26/2/16	<p>Enemy artillery quiet only 8 shells coming our way  Enemy attitude exceptionally quiet but judging by number of flares during night, extremely nervous</p>
	27/2/16	<p>Enemy artillery 302 rounds exceptionally active  Our Grenadiers were very active during night several patrols being out covering wiring parties.  Machine Gun fire very active during early morning opposite N4  Our artillery very active 9.2 doing excellent work  Our sniper claims one hit – casualties 1 killed</p>
	28/2/16	<p>Enemy artillery active 111 rounds being fired.  Our artillery very active during morning damaging parapets and wire. One fishtail grenade fell in rear of 0.1.A at 5.30 AM  Enemy has placed new knife rests in trench in wire at 2.7.a.6.0 during night  The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion relieved us and we proceeded to RIDGEWOOD and formed Brigade Reserve. Relief completed 8.30 pm  Casualties – nil</p>
	29/2/16	<p>Usual foot inspection and fatigues – otherwise resting</p>

WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place Date Hour

Summary of Events and Information

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
RIDGEWOOD	1/3/16		The Battalion "Stood Too" in readiness to help English Division on our left who were engaged in recapturing "THE BLUFF" The Artillery covering us were extremely active. Enemy shelling in our area very slight – 5 rounds.
	2/3/16 to 5/3/16		Usual fatigues and resting
	5/3/16		The Battalion relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the left subsection this evening (N and O Trenches) relief completed 9.30 pm no casualties
N & O Trenches	6/3/16		Hun artillery fairly active – our artillery shelled enemy front line trenches between 11.30 and 12.00 AM Our MGs swept enemy wire and parapet at intervals during night, and were successful in dispersing enemy working party. Enemy attitude on the whole very quiet
	7/3/16		Enemy artillery very slight only 3 rounds over our area. Our machine guns fund working parties on wire opposite N6 and 0.4. which were reported by our patrols Enemy fairly active with rifle grenades. – little damage being done however. Our snipers claim one hit.
	8/3/16		Our snipers claim 5 (five) hits. Enemy artillery quite – (only 27 rounds) Enemy MG's active from 0.7.0.4.5 Considerable amount of repair and revetment work going on in Hun's front line Trench between points 0.7.c.3¼ to 0.7.c.4.7.
	9/3/16		Our snipers claim one hit. Enemy artillery quiet (15 rounds) Enemy active with "Fish Tail" grenades also MG fire Attitude of enemy quiet Our MG dispersed working party on enemy parapet at 9.30 pm at 0.7.a.7½-1 British plane brought down east of VOORMEZELE at 10.15 am German plane brought down after duel with Allied plane and fell some distance behind enemy lines in rear of BOIS QUARANTE at 11.20 AM Casualties two slight
	10/3/16		Enemy artillery quiet 39 rounds Machine gun fire from direction of BOIS CARRE swept Battn Headquarters for a short time at 7.15 pm and again at 2.50 am. Portable searchlight swept O Trenches from 9-10 pm approx 0.7.G.6.5 and at 10.50 pm from approx 0.7.G.10.7 Enemy attitude very quiet. Casualties nil

N & O Trenches	11/3/16	Our patrols last night verified previous observations of suspected MG emplacement at 0.7.G.6.5 Enemy artillery quiet 18 rounds Our artillery active Enemy attitude on whole very quiet The Battalion were relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn and proceeded to Divisional Reserve at LA CLYTTE Relief completed 10.30 pm Casualties – nil
LA CLYTTE	12/3/16 to 16/3/16	The usual Bathing, Foot inspection, Kit inspection and cleaning up all day until the 17 <sup>th</sup> inst During stay in LA CLYTTE the Battalion furnished three fatigues for “P” trenches, 500 strong. Casualties resulting from these fatigues - 5 killed 4 wounded
N & O Trenches	17/3/16	The Battalion proceeded to N and O Trenches and relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion. Relief completed 10.00 pm. Casualties-nil
	18/3/16	Enemy artillery- nil Our artillery registering all day with good effect on enemy front line and PICADILLY FARM Huns MG very active during night. Our snipers claim one hit
	19/3/16	Enemy artillery quiet – 37 rounds Enemy very active with Trench mortars to which we retaliated with 3 -60 lb bombs – 12- 4 lb and 45 Rifle Grenades – and they then kept quiet Our artillery active all day. Casualties- nil
	20/3/16	Enemy artillery quiet 35 rounds Enemy very active during night with rifle fire About 30 yards new sandbag work noticed on enemy front line Parapet at 0.7.G.8½.1½ Enemy attitude on whole very quiet
	21/3/16	Enemy artillery again quiet (13 rounds) Huns active with Bombs and Rifle fire. Some new dory grey sandbags noticed on enemy front line parapet at 0.7.a.8.1½ Enemy attitude quiet Enemy artillery more active 136 rounds coming our way. Our grenadiers cooperated with Trench Mortars and Artillery at 4.30 AM 35 Rifle Grenades were fired, 30 Mills Grenades, Trench Mortars fired 20 – 60lb Bombs and 37 4 lb bombs – Target 0.7.G.2.2 Snipers claim one hit Casualties 8 wounded Battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn and proceeded to Brigade Reserve at RIDGEWOOD
RIDGEWOOD	22/3/16 to 27/3/16	Usual foot inspection and resting
	27/3/16	The Battalion “stood too” in GHQ 2 <sup>nd</sup> line trench from 3:00 am till 6:00 pm in consequence of operation on the left of our front. At 4.15 am a mine was exploded by the English Division on our left and all Batteries opened fire. Many German prisoners passed through our area. Casualties nil
	28/3/16	The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn in the left sub section this evening. Relief completed 8.00 pm no casualties

N & O Trenches    29/3/16    Enemy artillery fairly active  
Otherwise quiet during day  
Casualty- one fatal

30/3/16    One Company 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion attached for duty with us occupying part of "P" trenches  
Enemy artillery very active. During the night continually shelling "P" Trenches with  
Shrapnel and H. E.  
Their MG's were also very active over "N" trenches  
Our artillery was also very active retaliating effectively  
Casualty – one slight

31/3/16    Enemy artillery very active on N and O Trenches Nil on "9" Trenches and NO MAN'S  
LAND between "P" trenches and captured enemy trenches on ST ELOI salient very  
heavy.  
Their MGs were also active on N Trenches between 12 MN and 2.00 AM  
Rifle fire also heavy particularly over N Trenches  
Casualties- four wounded.



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
-------	------	------	-----------------------------------

N & O Trenches	1/4/16		Enemy artillery were very active mostly HE's Little damage was done however. Our artillery responded with plenty of 18 pounders. Our Grenadiers responded with Trench Mortars in a continual shoot on enemy front and second line from 0.7.c.5.9. to 0.7G.6.5. Huns responded with about 60 fish tail grenades and heavy MG fire On the whole the situation was very lively.
	2/4/16		Enemy artillery active – 200 rounds. Mostly whiz bangs being fired our artillery reply was not very effective Two of our officers with 22 of our Bombers went to the assistance of the 1 <sup>st</sup> GORDONS at posts 44 and 45. Our Bombers took over these posts and held them from dusk till 3.30 AM the following morning when they were relieved by two fresh squads of our Bombers. At 11.15 pm last night a Bombing Party composed of 1 <sup>st</sup> GORDONS and 21 <sup>st</sup> CANADIANS attacked post 65 and repeatedly assaulted it till daylight but were unable to dislodge the enemy, and our Bombers returned to posts 44 and 45. Enemy machine gun fire very active Casualties 14 and 1 fatal.
	3/4/16		Enemy was very active with Bosch sending over 87 fish-tail grenades and such like at 0.1.2. and 0.2. Artillery not very active only 83 rounds being fired. Our artillery was very active especially with HEs. Enemy machine gun very active from 7 pm till 10 pm. Lieut Davidson and eight of our bombers left at 10 pm to assist the 1 <sup>st</sup> GORDONS in another attack on post 65 which this time was successful. Casualties five, 1 Fatal
	4/4/16		Enemy artillery quiet very few rounds being fired Our artillery also quiet. New work noticed at 0.7.6.6.5 consisting of woven brushwood and revetting material Casualties –3
	5/4/16		The Battalion was relieved on the night of 5/4/16 by the BORDER REGT of the 151 <sup>st</sup> Inf Bat. Maps, logbooks defense schemes and aerial photographs work programs etc were handed over to the relieving Battalion Relief completed by 12.30 AM where the Battalion proceeded to Billets at LA CLYTTE
LA CLYTTE	6/4/16 to 8/4/16		The Battalion remained in billets at LA CLYTTE until 4 pm when they proceeded to "B" camp on being relieved by the DURHAMS who took over their billets. The Battalion remained here one day standing to the while. On the 8 <sup>th</sup> inst at 11.45 am when they were ordered to proceed at once to Reserve trenches at SCOTTISH WOOD where they remained all night Casualties 5 and 1 officer. The Battalion remained in SCOTTISH WOOD all day of the 8 <sup>th</sup> and relived the 27 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in "P" trenches during the night. Relief completed at 10.00 PM

"P" Trenches	8/4/16	<p>On the night of the 8<sup>th</sup>/9<sup>th</sup> a bombing patrol under Capt Miller started from junction of Queen Victoria Street and "P" trenches at 11.30 PM and proceeded in a south easterly direction to Crater No. 2 which was reached at 11.55 PM. This patrol was followed by a working party under Lieut. Bowerbank Operation orders were issued by the 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Infantry Bde to the effect that the attack on the craters by the 12<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> and the 21<sup>st</sup> was to start simultaneously at 12 o'clock. The bombing patrol on proceeding up the bank of the crater found they had reached it about the junction of its southern edge and the old German front line trench. None of the enemy were observed occupying the north-westerly side of the crater, nor inside the crater at any point. They appeared to have dug themselves in on the side of the German old front line trench (South west of Crater No 2) The bombers were disposed one section along the south western side of the crater and one section facing the German trench. Dispositions were made without unduly arousing the suspicions of the enemy. The attack commenced at a given signal, and after bomb throwing by both sides for some time our casualties accumulated so as to compel us to retire. On returning to "P" trenches a bayonet party of 150 men under Lieut Brownlee was ordered up, but before they could be placed in position daylight had broken and the attack was abandoned. Artillery on both sides very fierce, especially with H E.</p> <p>Our casualties - 2 officers wounded and 34 OR killed and wounded.</p>
	9/4/16	<p>Everything fairly quiet during the day. On the night of the 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup> two bombing parties of the Battalion consisting of 11 men each under Lieuts Davidson and Marks proceeded along the Canada communication trench and after establishing a block at Point 74 moved northerly and joined up at the junction of English trench and German trench with the party under Lieut Brownlee which had bombed up from Crater No 1 through English trench. This party proceeded along the German old front line trench towards Crater No. 2, leaving bombing posts on side communication trenches. On reaching the point where the trench filled with debris from the Crater another bombing post was established and in spite of vigorous German bombardment the parties succeeded in capturing No 2 crater and with help established a garrison in the old German front line trench from 0.2.C.7.4 to 0.2.C.9.6. Working parties were brought up to improve communication to the rear, but before sufficient work was done daylight had broken. Sniping by the enemy became active and the bombing parties could not be relieved as intended.</p> <p>Casualties 1 Officer and 28 Other ranks (killed wounded and missing)</p>
	10/4/16	<p>Matters were fairly active during the day, with artillery very active on both sides, but little damage was done to our line. During the night of 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup> the Germans from their positions near Crater No 2, on two separate occasions made fierce bombing attacks on an imaginary enemy. After this had lasted 3 or 4 minutes their artillery opened up a very heavy bombardment on our "P" trenches, which prevented working parties of the PIONEER BATTALION from doing as much as they otherwise would. The shelling was mostly HE</p> <p>Our bombing posts were relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion under Lieut Martin about 2.00 AM and the 21<sup>st</sup> were withdrawn at day break. Casualties 6 other ranks. All orders in these attacks were verbal.</p>
"B" Camp	11/4/16 to 19/4/16	<p>The Battalion returned to "B" CAMP remaining there until the 12<sup>th</sup> inst. When they moved on to "J" CAMP staying at the latter until the 20<sup>th</sup> inst. Every other night fatigue parties were furnished for the purpose of improving "P" and "Q" front line trenches. Casualties on these parties amounted to 6 other ranks.</p>
Voormezeele & Vicinity	20/4/16	<p>The Battalion relieved the 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Centre of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade front line area. Considerable delay was caused in the relief owing to the busses at RENINGHELST failing to report until 12 midnight instead of 9.00 PM Relief completed at 4:00 AM</p> <p>One company took over front line with 2 sections of Bombers and 5 machine gun crews. The remainder of the Battalion was distributed – One company in SCOTTISH WOOD, one in VOORMEZELLE SWITCH and one at VOORMEZEELE VILLAGE Front line was relieved every 24 hours</p>

Voormezeele & Vicinity	21/4/16	Front line was relieved every 24 hours This was an exceedingly quiet day. Activity on both sides practically nil.
	22/4/16	Enemy very active with their artillery, about 300 shells being sent over. Very little damage was done. They succeeded in breaking our wire communications to the front line, and it was with some difficulty that same was repaired. We had several patrols out during the night but they reported enemy quiet. Large working party was furnished for front line work Casualties- 4 other ranks killed and 6 wounded.
	23/4/16	Enemy artillery quite active this day, about 510 rounds being fired. High explosive plentiful. Our artillery retaliated but only moderately. Green flares in pairs were sent up by enemy when our artillery retaliated at 3.30 AM and enemy artillery fire at once ceased. Bombing: Enemy were also active with their bombs, coming from the vicinity of Crater No. 6. No new work seen. On the whole things were very lively. Casualties – 6 other ranks wounded and one OR missing. One machine gun blown up.
	24/4/16	Enemy artillery very active, over 700 rounds being fired. Our guns retaliated very effectively. At 3.00 AM the enemy for no apparent reason, threw a great many bombs, mostly from No 3 crater and their artillery opened at once. Rifle fire on the part of the enemy was very active during last night. Both our own and enemy machine guns did quite a lot of firing. The new sand-bag work in enemy craters was considerably damaged by our artillery. Casualties 8 other ranks wounded. We were relieved this night by the 18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and proceeded to billets in DICKEBUSCH where the Battalion remained the night. Relief completed at 1 AM
"B" Camp	25/4/16 to 30/4/16	Battalion moved to "B" camp where they stayed until 30 <sup>th</sup> of April. Numerous fatigue parties were sent to front line but outside of this very little work was done. Battalion given a rest after hard time in the trenches.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

B Camp	1/5/16 to 9/5/16	The battalion remained at "B" camp as Corps Reserve during this period. Physical Training, Musketry and extended order drill were carried out. Fatigues and Working Parties to Reserve and Front line trenches were furnished periodically.
	9/5/16 to 13/5/16	The Battalion moved to Scottish Wood relieving the 18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion and remained in reserve there till the night of the 13 <sup>th</sup> inst. Two companies were stationed in VOORMEZELE Garrison and did the fatigue work for that area. The two companies stationed in SCOTTISH WOOD were used as carrying and working parties to Front line. 6 OR wounded and 1 OR Killed during that period
	13/5/16	The Battalion relieved the 18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the CENTRE SECTION (VOORMEZELE MAP Sheet 6 1/10000) "T" and "R" trenches Two companies held these trenches with sections of Machine Gunners and Bombers, the other two companies being held in reserve and were used as carrying parties to the front line companies.
T & R Trenches	14/5/16	The Artillery on both sides was fairly active, the enemy send over 160 rds mostly H E which fell behind our supports doing very little damage. Our artillery was mostly directed on the second line. Enemy machine guns from No 5 crater were very active over trenches 18 & 19. New sand bags were observed in trenches in front of craters 2.3.4 and 5. but being a dull day however observation was difficult. Casualties- two wounded
	15/5/16	Enemy artillery again fairly active. 148 rds being sent our way – mostly HE falling behind trenches 15 and 16. Little damage was done and consequently no case for retaliation and our artillery was quiet. The machine guns from crater no. 5 were again active over trenches 18 & 19, doing but little harm at these points. Rifle fire on the whole very quiet. New work was noticed at 2,3,4,& 5 craters 1 casualty – killed The battalion was relieved by the 24 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion this night and proceeded to "B" camp.
"B" Camp	16/5/16 to 27/5/16	The Battalion remained in this camp till 23/6/16 doing the usual fatigues and training On the night of the 23 <sup>rd</sup> the Battalion proceeded to Divisional Reserve at DICKEBUSCH where they remained until the 27 <sup>th</sup> . Working parties, carrying parties and camp commandants fatigue were formed by the Battalion. Casualties during this tour – 1 OR wounded.
	27/5/16	On the night of the 27 <sup>th</sup> the Battalion moved back to "A" camp remaining there till the 30 <sup>th</sup> inst. Strict training was carried out each morning, ie Physical drill, musketry, bayonet fighting and company and smoke helmet drill. The remainder of each day being devoted to sports.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
"A" Camp	1/6/16 to 2/6/16		From 1 <sup>st</sup> June to 2 <sup>nd</sup> June the Battalion continued with training I.E. Bayonet fighting, physical drill and extended order drill.
GHQ Line	2/6/16 to 4/6/16		About 8.30 pm on the night of June 2 <sup>nd</sup> Battalion received orders to be ready to move at a ½ hour's notice. About 9 pm same night further orders were received to move as quickly as possible to GHQ line where the battalion "stood to" for 2 days, coming out the night of the 4 <sup>th</sup> . The Battalion stayed at A Camp on the 5 <sup>th</sup> until at 7.00 pm when they moved to DICKEBUSCH in Divisional reserve relieving the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion.
Dickebusch	5/6/16 to 10/6/16		From the 5 <sup>th</sup> until the 10 <sup>th</sup> June the Battalion remained in DICKBUSCH and furnished numerous fatigues, ie carrying parties, wiring parties and digging parties. Casualties this tour amounting only to 5 OR
Front Line	10/6/16 to 11/6/16		On the night of the 10 <sup>th</sup> of June the Battalion relieved the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the Front line from number 33 to 38 Trench. Relief completed at 2 am. On the 11 <sup>th</sup> matters were quiet with the exception of a little activity in our left sector, where the Germans were sending over numerous trench mortars causing considerable damage to our trench. Our artillery were very active during the day and pounded the enemy's support trenches very heavily.
	12/6/16		June 12 <sup>th</sup> brought with it a very warm time for the Hun. His front trenches being badly smashed by our artillery and trench mortars which cooperated with it. Our machine guns also kept up a heavy fire on enemy's parapet. The Hun replied fairly well and sent over quite a lot of HE which did very little damage to our line. He however got a good hit on our parapet in 37 trench and caused considerable damage. Our casualties amounted to 14 wounded and 6 killed.
	13/6/16		The enemy was very active with his artillery sending over 203 rounds mostly HE which fell in the vicinity of VERBRANDENMOLLEN and the Railway Cutting in rear of trench 38. In addition to this he put about 50 shells of mixed caliber in front, support and rearward lines. This was in retaliation for our heavy bombardment last night which started at 12.45 am. Immediately our bombardment opened up the Bosch commenced firing rifle grenades and trench mortar bombs along our whole front (33 to 38). Most of them either fell short or in rear of our front line but the parapet was damaged in ten places in trench 38. It was a very poor day for observation owing to rain. Casualties – 4 OR wounded.
Trenches 33 to 38	14/6/16		Enemy Machine gun fire during the night from opposite trench 36 very active. Flashes could not be located. The enemy had been successful during the night in placing about 40 yards of coiled wire upon parapet at I.3.4.d.3½ .8½. Also about 15 yards of new sandbags on parapet at I.3.5.a.3½.5. Our artillery were successful in firing on a working party at I.3.4.b.7½. Enemy artillery during the day was very active sending over 865 rounds most of which in the vicinity of the railway cutting and the DUMP and in our supports. Enemy was active with "Rum jars" in afternoon and between 1.30 pm and 3.20 pm sent over about 20. We retaliated effectively with trench mortars (60lb) and artillery. Between 5 pm and 6 pm about 20 shells which seemed to be 4.5's Howitzers fell short and damaged our support and front line at right of 35 trench. These proved to be from our own artillery. One of these heavies hit on dugout in our front line smashing same in and killing one signaller and wounding several others. Casualties- 1 officer 16 OR wounded and 7 killed.

Trenches 33 to 38	15/6/16	<p>Enemy's artillery was quieter this day only 360 rounds being sent over. Most of this falling in the railway cutting and the DUMP. Machine guns swept trenches 35 and 36 at short intervals during the night. Trench mortars of enemy were quiet and apparently our artillery fire of yesterday had silenced the trench mortars firing all day yesterday on trenches 37 and 38, from vicinity of CATERPILLAR</p> <p>On two occasions during night a green flare which burst into two was used by the enemy opposite trench 36. Enemy were shelling with heavy shrapnel at the time and shells were falling in "no man's land". On both occasions fire lifted from 50 to 100 yards after green flare was fired.</p> <p>Casualties 9 OR wounded.</p>
	16/6/16	<p>Artillery on both sides was very quiet. Enemy machine gun fire was again active over trenches 35 and 36. The Bosch sent over a few small trench mortars and about 10 rifle grenades in rear of trench 35 and 36 early this morning. We retaliated with trench mortars and rifle grenades.</p> <p>Our artillery bombarded the enemy front lines from 5 pm to 5.20 pm and a considerable amount of damage was done to both front line and supports.</p> <p>Our artillery bombarded the enemy front lines from 5 PM to 5.30 PM and a considerable amount of damage was done to both front line and supports. Front line opposite Trench 35 and 33 breached in several places and wood and iron being thrown in the air. Second line opposite trenches 33 and 34 much earth and revetment thrown up. Some direct hits in front trenches opposite 36, 37 and 38, but outside of parapet not damaged. A heavy shell fell short of parapet opposite trench 33 at the RAVINE at approx I.3.4.b.3<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> .1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> and explosion exposed revetment of covered sap or shaft.</p> <p>Casualties 4 OR</p>
	17/6/16	<p>Enemy artillery was very active especially in the vicinity of the RAILWAY CUTTING. Enemy's machine gun again active over trenches 35 to 38.</p> <p>About 12 rifle grenades fell in rear of trench 35 in the early morning and we retaliated at 4 to 1 with rifle grenades and trench mortars.</p> <p>Supposed old sap or covered listening post at I.34.b.3<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> .<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> . exposed by one of our shells falling short in "No Man's Land" yesterday, has been carefully examined and seems to be too shallow to be anything more than a thinly covered listening post or an old trench filled in. No opening can be seen in the shell crater leading back to the enemy line. The revetting was apparently an old work long disused.</p> <p>Our snipers were successful in obtaining 5 hits today at ranges of 200 to 400 yards.</p> <p>Casualties during day – 6 OR</p> <p>The Battalion was relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion this night and Battalion proceeded to Bedford House as Reserve. Distribution of Battalion in reserve as follows:          No 1 Company and details at Bedford House          No 2 Company at SUNKEN ROAD and SP 7.          No 3 Company HEDGEROW &amp; SP 7          No 4 Company SPOILBANK (Bluff tunnels)          Gas alert in force this day.</p>
Bedford House Etc	18/6/16	<p>Numerous fatigues parties were furnished to the front line at night. Remainder of day was given to cleaning up. Shelling in this area was very little. Beautiful day warm and sunny.</p>
	19/6/16	<p>This is a fine but rather cloudy day. It was indeed a quiet day. Very little shelling. Working parties and carrying parties were again furnished and owing to the large demands it took nearly every available man. Nothing of interest happened.</p>
	20/6/16	<p>Distribution of companies as before. Working and carrying parties out as usual. Fine Day. Very little shelling in our area. Plenty of shells falling in fields to our N. and the Bosch was apparently after our batteries</p> <p>Late in evening 1 company of No 1 company proceeded to garrison SP 9</p>

Bedford House	21/6/16	Gas alert off. It was a dull day and little wind. Indeed a very quiet day. Fatigues as usual at night. Casualties 2 OR wounded.
	22/6/16	Huns heavily strafed fields and houses to our N, using up a heavy lot of percussion shells. Farmers however being the only ones to suffer from damage to fields. It was indeed a very hot day. Our CO and Pioneers were very busy today preparing sniping plates for the snipers when next in line. Also making fixed rifle batteries. Our CO great enthusiast on sniping. One of our planes was hit by German and fell as near as could be judged in the neighborhood of YPRES. Great arial activity during the day.
	23/6/16	We relieved the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the front line this night. Relief completed at 12.30 am. Patrols were out until 3 am and reported everything quiet.
Trenches 33 to 38	24/6/16	Our artillery were fairly active during the day. Light shelling by enemy during morning but majority fell in rear of trench 37 and RAILWAY CUTTING. Enemy were very active with trench mortars and rifle grenades. Their Artillery however being fairly quiet. Enemy trench mortar made a direct hit one dugout in front line destroying all No. 3 Company's cooking utensils and causing several casualties. For every 2 trench mortars we gave them 4 in return and occasionally add a few Stokes gun bombs just to remind them that we have got and can use the ammunition. We had fine support from the 13 <sup>th</sup> and 17 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Batteries supporting us. Also from the Trench mortars and Stokes guns. They certainly (the Trench Mortars and Stokes Gun people) love to be allowed to retaliate and we give them all the opportunities we can for so doing. Numerous sniper plates have been placed in the trenches under the supervision of the sniping officer. All these sniping plates were designed by the CO who is very anxious to dominate the situation in so far as sniping goes. The Hun only fires 48 rounds of HE but he was very accurate with this and caused quite a lot of damage to our trenches also caused several casualties. We got retaliation from artillery supporting us and the 4.5 howitzers. Casualties 5 killed 10 wounded.
	25/6/16	Enemy's artillery during the day amounted to 71 rounds. Our artillery responded with good effect assisted by heavy trench mortars and Stokes guns. Enemy machine gun fire during the night was very active over trenches 34 and 35. The Huns sent over quite a number of "Rum Jars" the majority falling in rear of Trench 37. 6 enemy observation balloons were up this afternoon until about 4.15 pm when 7 of our planes appeared. Planes dropped curious white cloud like smoke balls which flamed as they fell. Four of the balloons were then hauled down. Aeroplane activity was very marked today, it being an exceptionally good day for observation. Our snipers were successful in getting two hits and victims wore greenish gray uniforms and caps of same colour, with lighter coloured bands. Casualties 3
	26/6/16	Our artillery was very active and did a considerable amount of damage to enemy parapets. Their reply to our bombardments were very feeble and did very little damage with the exception of smashing in a bay in the left sector. Enemy very nervous during night and kept up a continuous MG fire. Operations were planned to raid enemy trenches this night, but owing to the artillery receiving orders conflicting with ours the raid was called off. Patrols were very active during the night and found the enemy very alert and very heavy wire in front of their parapet and heavy trip wire. Artillery and sniping was very active on our part during night. Casualties 12 OR wounded.

Trenches 33 to 38	27/6/16	This was a fairly quiet day in so far as artillery went but machine guns and aeroplanes were fairly active. Our snipers claimed 3 victims. Operations to raid enemy's trenches at night was again planned. It was the intention to send over 2 raiding parties each consisting of 1 officer and 20 OR and at 11.25 pm Mr Brownlee in company with the scout officer inspected enemy's wire as also did Lieut. Davidson and patrol and both reported wire exceptionally thick in front of enemy parapet and same had not been cut by the Trench mortars and Stokes guns but had simply been thrown up on the parapet and making it much harder to overcome. Mr Brownlee and Mr Davidson with parties went over on several occasions to enemy's wire this night but found no possible chance of getting through enemy's wire. Operations consequently were then called off. Casualties 1 officer wounded, 12 OR wounded and 2 OR killed.
	28/6/16	Artillery of enemy very active especially in our supports, but our artillery retaliated very effectively and one of the batteries supporting was successful in getting several direct hits on enemy's parapet and also dislodge a MG emplacement. Rifle grenades were freely distributed on both sides. Enemy had endeavored to repair breaches in parapet during night but the work done was soon smashed by our heavy trench mortars and Stokes guns. Enemy seems to have a plentiful supply of fishtail rifle grenades and uses them frequently. Casualties 2 OR wounded.
	29/6/16	Artillery on both sides very quiet and only 40 rounds of enemy shells fell in our area. Our artillery although not very active were again successful in getting direct hits on enemy parapet, causing quite a lot of damage. On the whole it was a quiet day. The battalion were relieved this night by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and on relief proceeded to MICMAC camp (old A Camp). Relief completed at 2 am.
MICMAC CAMP	30/6/16	Battalion rested and all men were able to get cleaned up.



## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
Micmac Camp	1/7/16		Battalion carried out a thorough programme of training. Commencing at 8 am with physical drill, and carrying on during morning with bayonet exercises, musketry and platoon company drill. Special attention being paid to bayonet training. Afternoon devoted to games
	2/7/16		Battalion at physical drill from 8:00 am to 8:45 am and remainder of morning was taken up with bayonet fighting and musketry exercises. Fatigue party of 1 officer and 50 OR furnished at night for a carrying party to front line. Afternoon was devoted to sports
	3/7/16		Battalion at physical drill from 8:00 am to 8.45 am and continued until 12.00 noon with company and platoon drill Battalion proceeded to Chippawa Camp (old "B" camp) and were relieved by the 29 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Relief completed at 9:30 pm
Chippawa Camp	4/7/16		Battalion continued with physical drill, bayonet fighting and company and platoon drill. Special instruction classes were given for machine gunners, bombers and scouts. During the evening part of the battalion visited Reninghelst YMCA and were entertained by the members of the PPCLI concert party. One company was inoculated during afternoon against typhoid.
	5/7/16		Battalion continued with physical drill, bayonet fighting and special classes of instruction for machine gunners, bombers and scouts. Afternoon battalion attended lecture by 2 <sup>nd</sup> Army physical drill instructors at YMCA Reninghelst on physical drill and bayonet fighting up to date. All officers of the battalion available attended this lecture and some proved beneficial to all concerned
	6/7/16		One company and some of the details were inoculated. This completed the 2 <sup>nd</sup> dose of inoculation for the battalion
	7/7/16		The Corps commander and staff paid a visit to our camp and thoroughly inspected the battalion at training, which consisted of bayonet fighting, machine gun work and bombing work. The battalion did not turn out up to strength owing to a company and some of the details being sick from the effects of inoculation.
	8/7/16		4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde Horse show held this day. Battalion had many entries but were only successful in winning 1 first prize and two 2nds. Hun plane came over camp about noon today and was chased by our airmen who looked to have an easy victim, but our anti-aircraft opened up and spoilt our airmen's chances. The anti-air craft guns were wide in the firing and consequently our aircraft retired.
	9/7/16		Roman Catholics attended service at Reninghelst at 8:15 am. Protestants paraded for service at 9:30 am.
	10/7/16		Battalion carried out a scheme of infantry cooperating with aircraft in attack. This scheme occupied the whole of the morning. Afternoon battalion exchanged old respirator for new PHG helmet which is much stronger than the old issue. Football (soccer) match was played against Belgian battery and game resulted in a draw of 1 goal each. Enemy aircraft active.

Chippawa Camp	11/7/16	No 2 and 3 companies, scouts and pipe band attended divisional gas demonstration held at the YMCA Reninghelst at 9:30 am. Remainder of battalion attended demonstration at 10:30 am. Only old smoke helmets were allowed to be used. Instruction very beneficial
	12/7/16	Physical drill and bayonet exercises. Platoon and company drills were carried out during the morning. Afternoon entirely devoted to sports
	13/7/16	Battalion Sports Day Battalion paraded at 10 am. And march to the adjoining football ground of the Belgian battery where the heats for the sports were run off. Some fine contests were witnessed and there were plenty of entries. Battalion paraded at 2.00 pm and march to aforesaid ground for the final events of the sports. After sports the battalion football team played the Belgian battery and a great game was witnessed and the Belgians were successful in winning by the only goal scored. Great excitement prevailed among the battalion at night owing to the CO and others making great speeches. The CO intimated to the battalion that he was leaving in the morning for England to take command of a brigade in the 4 <sup>th</sup> division and there was a great rush to shake hands with him and he was carried shoulder high around the camp. Major Elmer Jones our new commander was also given a great reception.
	14/7/16	CO left for England Relief delayed, Reason unknown
Trenches	15/7/16	Battalion relieved 25 <sup>th</sup> Canadian battalion and took over Trenches 15 to 21 inclusive. 1 Company in front line, 1 company in Voormezeele Switch, 1 company in R6, Bus House and Shelly Farm. 1 company at GHQ 2 <sup>nd</sup> line. Relief completed at 2.35 pm 16/7/16 Situation at night very quiet
	16/7/16	Day fairly quiet. Dull and raining at intervals. Enemy machine gun swept road to Voormezeele, but no casualties resulted. Artillery fire on both sides very quiet 1 OR killed (sniped)
	17/7/16	Warm day, No wind. Dull Enemy shelled rear of Convent Wall from 3.00 pm to 4.00 pm. Retaliation from our Heavy artillery resulted. Situation otherwise normal. Aerial activity nil.
	18/7/16	During day very quiet Patrol under command of Capt Shepherd (SO) went out at night and blew up listening post in German lines with 25 lbs Gun Cotton. No casualties
	19/7/16	Situation very quiet Activity practically fit. Casualties 1 officer killed, 1 OR died of wounds 3 OR wounded
	20/7/16	Fine day, Very little artillery fire from both sides Aircraft especially active during evening 1 OR wounded
	21/7/16	Fine early morning but dull later. Artillery on both sides very quiet. Aircraft activity nil. One casualty 1 OR wounded.

Trenches	22/7/16	Everything quiet, beautiful day, no activity of artillery, trench mortars, snipers, machine guns or aircraft.
	23/7/16	Everything quiet during day and at night battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> battalion. Relief completed at 2.30 am. 2 companies and machine gun scouts and headquarter staff proceed to Micmac Camp. 1 company remained in reserve at Voormezeele Switch with bombers and 1 company went to Scottish Wood in reserve.
Scottish Wood, Voormezeele and Micmac Camp	24/7/16	Companies and details in Micmac Camp carried on with physical training, bayonet fighting and platoon drill 1 company route marching.
	25/7/16	Training as per yesterday's schedule. 1 company route marching
	26/7/16	Training same as yesterday's schedule. 1 company route marching Enemy aircraft very active over the camp.
	27/7/16	Relief of Dickebusch working party (permanent) completed in accordance with brigade orders.
	28/7/16	Training was carried on in the morning as per the schedule on the 24 <sup>th</sup> . Concert by members of the battalion in the evening
	29/7/16	Training as on the 24 <sup>th</sup> inst.
	30/7/16	One carrying party to front line furnished by company in Scottish Wood last night. No casualties. Companies and details in Micmac camp carried on with physical drill and bayonet fighting. Special attention being paid to the bayonet under the direction of officers and NCO's recently returned from the divisional course of bayonet fighting. Weather exceptionally warm. No aeroplane activity.
		<i>(NOTE: the next entry is actually on the first page for August and the appendix below is included with the month of August as well. They have been transcribed here to ease any confusion)</i>
Micmac Camp	31/7/16	Battalion relieved by the 29 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion this date and on relief proceeded to CHIPPAWA CAMP (see App sheet 1)

Relief Order No. 4  
By Lieut Col EW Jones, commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
Micmac Camp, July 31<sup>st</sup> 1916

The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion tonight and on relief Companies and Details will march to Chippawa Camp and take over quarters previously occupied. "B" and "D" Companies will march by Platoons and the Bombers as a Section.

"A" and "C" Companies and Details in Micmac Camp will march by Company and Detail.

Trench Stores will be handed over to incoming Units and receipts in duplicate obtained for same.

Transport will report to Micmac Camp at 7 pm and at SCOTTISH WOOD and VOORMEZEELLE after dark.

Companies and Details will bring out all water Cans.

Reliefs for Companies and Details in Micmac Camp will arrive about 8.15 pm.

Reliefs for Companies and Bombers in Reserve will arrive about Dusk

"B" and "D" Companies and Bombers will report Reliefs by wire to Chippawa Camp. Code word for Relief "TICKLE"

Each Unit Commander in Micmac Camp will report to Orderly Room Micmac Camp before moving off.

ALL UNIT COMMANDERS will report their Units correct or otherwise to Orderly Room CHIPPAWA CAMP on arrival

Strict March Discipline will be observed in all cases.

Routine Orders will be published later.

Sgd. SL Cunningham  
Lieut  
Ag Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place Date Hour

Summary of Events and Information

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
Chippawa Camp	1/8/16		Battalion commenced bathing this date at the LA CLYTTE baths. Physical drill carried out from 8.30 am to 9 am. Battalion kit inspection also held during morning. Afternoon devoted to sport
	2/8/16		Physical drill held from 8.30 am to 9.00 am Battalion parade held at 10.00 am and also at 2 pm. Court of Enquiry composed of Major T. F. Elmitt, President, and Lieut B. K. Allen and Lieut A. G. Fraser. Members assembled at the call of the president this date to enquire into and report on the illegal absence and deficiencies of kit (if any) of 59735 L/Cpl. McMahon F. Bathing of the battalion was continued during the day.
	3/8/16		Physical drill was carried out from 8.30 to 9.00 am. 10.00 am Rifle inspection for the battalion by the brigade armourer. 1.00 pm. Battalion paraded for lecture by officer i/c divisional gymnastic school on bayonet fighting up to date.
	4/8/16		Battalion paraded for a route march at 6 am. this date. Dress Officers, packs, haversacks, water bottles, glasses, steel helmets, smoke helmets, revolver and ammunition. Dress other ranks heavy marching order, packs to be complete. Transport formed up on left of battalion, 2 pack horses to be loaded in rear of each company. Battalion returned from route march at 10 am.
	5/8/16		Brigade route march carried out. Battalion paraded at 8.30 am this date in heavy marching order. Tactical exercise was also carried out by brigade. Route Starting point cross roads at G.34.d.3.8 -C.34.c.9.5 -L.33.c.2.3 (sheet 27) - road junction R.3.c.9.1 Reference sheets 27 & 28 1/40000. Objects of route march and tactical exercises are: (a) to improve the marching condition of all ranks. (b) to instill all ranks the principles of march discipline. (c) to practice cooperation between aircraft and infantry in attack. Battalion returned about 7.30 pm.
	6/8/16		Roman Catholics paraded for divine service at 10.30 am All other denominations paraded for divine service at 11. am The following supernumerary officers reported: Major D. H. McLean, Major H. Sauva, Major C.G. McLaughlin, Capt R. H. Waddell, Capt. J. McLean, Lieut H. L. Morrill and Lieut H. J. Wood.
	7/8/16		Battalion at physical drill from 8.30 am to 9.00 am Commanding officers inspection at 10.00 am. Inspection at 11 am of transport by Commanding officer 2.00 pm Battalion parade
	8/8/16		Battalion at physical drill from 8.30 am. to 9.00 am. Commanding officers inspection at 10.00 am. Companies and details carried out Bayonet fighting exercises from 11.00 am. To 12 noon. Afternoon devoted to sport. Battalion relieved the 26 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the left sub section of the brigade area this night. (see App sheet 2) Relief completed about 10 pm. Battalion on our left 27 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Bn, and on our right 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Bn. Trenches were in good condition. # Patrols out at night (See Patrol reports App sheet 3)

H & O Trenches	<p>9/8/16 Very little shelling during morning. Enemy aircraft fairly active during morning. Our artillery retaliated at intervals for enemy trench mortars. Casualties 2 OR wounded 2 OR shell shock. Activity (See App Intelligence report Sheet 4)</p> <p>10/8/16 (Patrol report see Appx sheet 5) Artillery shoots on enemy trenches were carried out (See appx secret Bde Order sheets 6 &amp; 7) Enemy's activity see (see app Intell report sheet 8) Casualties 5 OR wounded</p> <p>11/8/16 3 patrols covered our front (see patrol report app sheet 9) Our artillery quiet during day Enemy Activity see (Intelligence report app sheet 10)</p> <p>12/8/16 Our artillery carried out a demonstration of barrage firing on the enemy trenches opposite N3 and N4. (see operation order app. Sheet 11) Enemy activity during day (see intelligence report appx. Sheet 12)</p> <p>13/8/16 Artillery active during and shelled enemy's support lines with good effect. Enemy activity during day (see intelligence report appx sheet 13.)</p> <p>14/8/16 Plan to raid enemy's trenches was not carried out owing to enemy wire not being cut. Artillery fairly active during day on enemy's' front line during morning. Our heavy artillery strafed enemy front and support lines for about 10 minutes during afternoon apparently doing considerable damage to their trenches having regard to quantity of timber and sand bags etc that was thrown in the air. Enemy activity (see appx sheet 14 intelligence report)</p> <p>15/8/16 Plan to raid enemy trench at X40.7.b.6.5 for this morning was not carried out, it being impossible to reach enemy wire without detection owing to the very bright moon. (Operation Order attached appx sheet which is similar to Operation order published on the 13<sup>th</sup>, with the exception that Lieut. Norton Taylor took Lieut. Raymond's place with the Lewis Gun) Artillery was very active on enemy's lines during afternoon. Activity of enemy (see appx. Sheet 16 intelligence report) The battalion was relieved this night (see appx operation order sheet 17) and proceeded to Ridgewood. Relief completed at 11.30 pm.</p>
Ridgewood	<p>16/8/16 Commanding officer inspected each company and detail of the Battalion. Fatigue parties furnished for front line in afternoon.</p> <p>17/8/16 Battalion rested in Ridgewood during day and night furnished large working party for front line, consisting of about 300 men for work on front and support trenches.</p> <p>18/8/16 Battalion furnished similar work party as yesterday</p> <p>19/8/16 Battalion furnished similar work party as on the 17<sup>th</sup> and had 1 OR killed</p> <p>20/8/16 Battalion paid special attention to the cleaning of equipment etc in view of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian division move. Usual work party furnished at night</p> <p>21/8/16 Enemy aircraft active over our area, otherwise everything very quiet</p>

- Ridgewood 22/8/16 Enemy shelled our area very heavily during afternoon. Apparently tried to locate our batteries. No casualties resulted. Battalion was relieved by the 50<sup>th</sup> Canadian battalion of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division and on relief proceeded to QUEBEC CAMP where they rested for the night (See appx 17)
- 23/8/16 Battalion rested at QUEBEC CAMP all day. All possible time was devoted to cleaning of equipment, rifles, bayonets etc. Exchange of Ross Rifles for Lee Enfields made (600 exchanged)
- 24/8/16 Battalion paraded at 5.45 am to take part in the 4<sup>th</sup> Can Inf. Bde march to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Army Training Area somewhere in the vicinity of ST OMER (see operation order No 5 attached Sheet 18 appx)  
Battalion arrived at STEENVORDE at about 1 pm. No casualties en route. Battalion rested at STEENVORDE all day 25<sup>th</sup> August.
- Steenvorde 25/8/16 Battalion rested at STEENVORDE
- Noorpeedene 26/8/16 Battalion paraded at 6.20 am. and marched to NOORPEEDENE arriving there at about 4 pm. Where battalion rested until 10 am. The day following. No casualties during march. Weather very wet raining nearly the whole journey (see operation Order no 6. attached sheet 19 appx)
- Wulverdinghe 27/8/16 Battalion paraded at 10 am. And marched to WULVERDINGHE via the NOORPEEDENE LEDERZEELE ROAD where battalion arrived at about 12.30 pm. Battalion rested here until about 7 am the following day (see operation order no 7 attached sheet 20 appx)
- ZOUAFQUES 28/8/16 Battalion paraded at 7 am. And passed starting point at 7.20 am and marched to ZOUAFQUES where the battalion arrived about 12 noon. Very wet during march, but no casualties
- 29/8/16 Battalion paraded at 7 am. and proceeded to local training area where musketry and bayonet fighting and extended order drill was carried on
- 30/8/16 Battalion carried on with musketry training and lectures etc. In billets during morning owing to the very heavy rain battalion did not proceed to training area. Battalion carried on with lectures on bombing musketry and bayonet fighting.
- 31/8/16 Battalion paraded at 7.30 am and march to training area and carried on with musketry drill, extended order drill, bayonet fighting, gas helmet drill etc. Battalion returned to billets at about 5 pm. Issue of Lee Enfield rifles to battalion completed today (casualties excepted)

Relief Order No 5

By Lieut Col EW Jones, Officer Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Chippawa Camp Aug 8<sup>th</sup>, 1916

1  
RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 26<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the left sub-section tonight at times as mentioned:

Scout will march at 4 pm	Signallers at 4.10 pm
"A" Coy No 1 Platoon at 4.15 pm	No 2 Platoon at 4.20 pm
"A" Coy No 3 Platoon at 4.25 pm	No 4 Platoon at 4.30 pm
"B" Coy No 5 Platoon at 4.40 pm	No 6 Platoon at 4.45 pm
"B" Coy No 7 Platoon at 4.50 pm	No 8 Platoon at 4.55 pm
"C" Coy No 9 Platoon at 5.05 pm	No 10 Platoon at 5.10 pm
"C" Coy No 11 Platoon at 5.15 pm	No 12 Platoon at 5.20 pm
"D" Coy No 13 Platoon at 5.30 pm	No 14 Platoon at 5.35 pm
"D" Coy No 15 Platoon at 5.40 pm	No 16 Platoon at 5.45 pm
Bombers at 5.55 pm	
Machine Gun Section will make their own relief	

2  
March Order Companies and details will march to Dickebusch by Platoons and from thence to Ridgewood by Sections, and from thence forward in parties of 3s at 20 yard intervals

3  
Disposition

"A" Company	3 Platoons N.3. to 0.1. inclusive 1 Platoon N.10.
"B" Company	3 Platoons 0.1.a. to 0.4. inclusive 1 Platoon N.11.
"C" Company	1 Platoon N.11. 2 Platoons S.7. and N.11. right 1 Platoon Southern Redoubt
"D" Company	2 Platoons Bois Carre 1 Platoon Eastern Redout 1 Platoon Western Redout
Bombers	1 Section N.10. 1 Section N.11. 2 Sections Eastern Redoubt (With Officer)
M.G. Section	will occupy positions as previously occupied by the out coming Battalion
M.G. Officer	N.11.
Scouts	24 at Bn Hd Qrs with Officer 16 in Front Line 11 at S.P.7.
Work Officer	At Battalion Hd Qrs
Arty Officer	At Battalion Hd Qrs

4  
Trench Stores Trench will be taken and receipt given. List of Stores will be sent to Bn. Hqrs in duplicate, by 12 noon the 9<sup>th</sup> inst. Defence Schemes, Log Book, and Maps will be taken over and be treated as Trench Stores.

5  
March Discipline Strict March Discipline will be maintained throughout the relief. On entering communication Trench, rifles will be carried at the "Trail". Only the P.&O.C.T. will be used

6  
Packs All packs will be handed to Coy or Detail Quartermaster Sergt at Chippawa Camp.

7  
Reports O.C. Companies and Details will report their units correct or otherwise on leaving Chippawa Camp, to Battalion Hd.Qrs Orderly Rm.



8  
Relief Completion of all reliefs will be reported to Bn. Hd.Qrs by wire. Code word as stated in "List of Code Words" already issued will be used.

9  
Marching out  
State Marching out state will be rendered to Bn.Hd.Qrs Orderly Room before leaving camp. It is essential that these states be absolutely correct.

Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

Copy No.....

Relief Order No. 4  
By Lieut Col EW Jones, Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

1  
RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 50<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the REDGEWOOD SECTOR tonight at 7.00 pm.  
Completion of Reliefs will be reported to Battalion Orderly Room, RIDGEWOOD, and again to Battalion Orderly Room at Billets.

On being relieved the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will proceed by Platoons and Details to QUEBEC CAMP.

Strict March Discipline is to be maintained throughout the relief.  
Stores will be handed over, and receipts in duplicate obtained, on forms which can be obtained from the Orderly Room. These receipts together with a Certificate as to cleanliness of Lines and Dup Outs, will be handed into Battalion Orderly Room by 9.00 am the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst.

(Signed) S.L. CUNNINGHAM

Lieut  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion OPERATION ORDER No 3

Copy No 11

SECRET

Ref. Trench Map

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of the 15<sup>th</sup> instant. CODE Time to be notified later.
- 2 On being relieved "D" Company will take over the FRASSERIE DEFENCES  
The Remaining THREE Companies and Details will take over the Billets occupied by the corresponding Units of the Relieving Battalion in RIDGEWOOD.
- 3 RELIEFS will be reported as follows:  
  
Immediately on being relieved to Bn Headquarters by wire and  
  
Again on arrival at RIDGEWOOD, Code word for Relief 'SPAIN'
- 4 TRENCH STORES, Log Books, Maps, etc will be handed over and receipts in duplicate obtained.

- 5 LINES will be handed over in a clean and Sanitary condition, and Certificates to this effect will be obtained from the Relieving Unit. Special attention of O.C. Companies and Details will be paid to the Cleaning of the Lines.
- 6 WATER CANS and VERY PISTOLS will NOT be treated as Trench Stores but will be carried out with Units to RUKGEWOOD and BRASSERIE (in "D" Company's case) and then handed over to the Reg Sgt Major.
- 7 1 Officer per Company and 1 NCO per Detail will proceed ahead and take over their Company or Detail Lines at REDGEWOOD and will report to Major TF Elmitt at 4.00 pm 15<sup>th</sup> Aug.
- 8 DISTRIBUTION STATES will be submitted to Orderly Room at RIDGEWOOD as soon as possible after Relief. Same must be in on night of Relief.
- 9 Ref. para. 6 above, add WIRE CUTTERS and GLOVES not to be treated as Trench Stores but to be brought out with Units.
- 10 *(Three words are undecipherable)* will not proceed ahead but will march out with their Company or Detail. No straggling will be allowed.

(signed by SL Cunningham)

Issued by Orderly at 10.30 am 15/8/16

Lieut  
Ag Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian  
Battalion

Copy No 1 File  
2 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Bn  
3 "A" Company  
4 "B" Company  
5 "C" Company  
6 "D" Company

Copy No 7 Grenade Officer  
8 Machine Gun Officer  
9 Scout Officer  
10 Sig Officer & RSM  
11 & 12 War Diary

SECRET

Ref attached Operation Order No 2, Copy No 11

Para.1. Time of Relief will be as follows:

Companies at Dusk

Details 7.45 pm to 8.30 pm

(signed by SL Cunningham)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Reference attached Operation Order No 60, Copy No 13

The raid will take place about 1 am tomorrow (Aug 15<sup>th</sup>, 1916

(sgd) SL Cunningham  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Can Battalion

Operation Order No 60  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion – August 14<sup>th</sup>, 1916

- 1 INTENTIONS. It is proposed to raid the enemy Trench at a point 10 yards W of Hedge which runs from Trench 0.4 and passes through enemy Lines at O.7.b.d.5 for the purpose of procuring an identification, on the morning of the 15<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 2 CONFIGURATION. An old fire Trench run along the R side of the hedge from approx 0.7.b.5.7½ to the German wire. An old sap connects this Trench with our line at 0.4.Bay 1, entering under parapet vide(?) Sally Port. There are two small breaks but the average depth is from 3 to 4 feet. With care the raiding party can reach the German wire with little risk of detection.

3 COMPOSITION

- |                |                |  |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Capt           | No 1 – Left}   |  |
| Shepherd       | No 2 – Right}  | 3 Parties each of one Officer and 4 men to enter Trench                                |
| Lieut Fraser   | No 3 – Centre} |  |
| Lieut Davidson | No 4 – Party   | Two men to remain outside parapet  |
| Lieut Taylor   | No 5 – Party   | Two men to remain outside enemy wire   |
| Lieut Gillman  | No 6 – Party   | 1 NCO and 4 men to remain in head of Sap for support. They will have a Lewis Gun       |
| Lieut More     | No 7 – Party   | 1 Officer and one telephonist with telephone a few yards behind supporting Party       |
|                | No 8 – Party   | 2 men in sap at our end  |
|                | No 9 – Party   | 2 men at opening in our wire   |
|                | No 10 – Party  | 1 Officer and 4 men inside our parapet to conduct prisoner or prisoners to Bn Hd Qrs   |
|                | No 11 – Party  | 1 Officer and 1 man to check Raiding party as they return                              |
|                | No 12 – Party  | Battalion Signalling Officer with telephone inside our Trench connected with Artillery |
|                | No 13 – Party  | Stretcher Bearer Party inside our Trench (4 Stretchers)                                |

4 DISPOSITION

Capt Shepherd will take command of Raiding Party and in the final operation will be in charge of the LEFT Attacking Party of 4 ORs, which will be known as No 1 PARTY  
Lieut Fraser will take command of RIGHT Party consisting of 4 OR which will be known as No 2 party.  
Lieut Davidson will take command of the centre party consisting of 4 OR which will be known as No 3 party.  
Lieut Raymond will be in command of Lewis Gun and Telephonist Party, consisting of 1 NCO and 5 OR.  
They will take 1 Lewis Gun and 1 Telephone.  
Lieut Gillman with 1 OR will check party on return. He will also be responsible for all wire arrangements.  
Lieut More will be in charge of Conducting Party. He will be inside of parapet and will be responsible for safe custody of any prisoners to Battalion Hd Qr  
4 Connecting Files of 2 OR each will be placed as follows:  
1 Party immediately outside our Parapet  
1 Party at opening in our Wire  
1 Party at entrance to Sap  
1 Party at front of enemy wire

Stretcher Party X4 with 4 Stretchers at Trench 0.4

5 PREPARATION

Two Scouts will commence to cut wire in the Front of point of entry as soon as possible after dark tonight. They will be covered by 2 other scouts in the end of the Sap. The 2 former will report to the OC Raiding Party at Trench 0.4 when the Wire has been cut. The 2 covering Scouts will remain in the Sap to watch the opening in the Wire.

6 ATTACK

The Parties will leave our Trench in the following order and proceed as follows:

No 6 SUPPORTING PARTY will take up position in end of Sap near enemy wire. The telephone party No 7 will remain in Sap about 5 yards behind No 6.

No 1 ATTACKING PARTY will follow No 6 but will not pass telephone until it is erected and tested. No 1 Party will then pass the Supporting Party No 6, turn to the right through the Hedge and crawl along close to the wire to the opening, pass through the wire to the left along the parapet to leave the opening clear and wait until the remaining parties are all in position.

No 2 ATTACKING PARTY will follow No 1 through the wire and will turn to the right and await the signal to attack.

No 3 ATTACKING PARTY will crawl up to the parapet directly opposite the opening in the wire and await the signal to attack. When the THREE attacking Parties are in position the Officer in charge of the LEFT FLANKING PARTY No1 will give the signal to enter the Trench by flashing a small electric lamp, with the bulb covered with cotton to subdue the light. The two FLANKING PARTIES No 1 and No 2 will at once spring over the parapet and work with all possible speed to the Flanks. No 1 Party will not go past JUNCTION of CT and Front Line at 0.7.b.6.5. and No 2 Party WILL NOT GO more than 30 yards to the right. Bombs will not be used except to bomb Dugouts until objectives have been reached, or parties stopped. A man must watch any Dugout Bombed. No 3 CENTRE PARTY will enter the Trench as soon as possible after the FLANKING PARTIES and will be responsible for looking after any prisoner they may obtain themselves or receive from the FLANKING PARTIES. They will remain in the Centre at the point of entry and will obtain all possible identification.

No 4 PARTY will follow close behind No 3 party and will NOT GO further than the FACE of the Parapet when the THREE ATTACKING PARTIES have entered the Trench. A KLAXON HORN and a piece of white cotton 6' by 2' and two pieces 2' by 2' will be carried by this party. The HORN will be sounded when a Prisoner has been brought over the parapet or when the Party has been in the Trench 3 MINUTES. The large piece of COTTON will be hung over the parapet inside the Trench to mark the point of Exit for CENTRE and FLANKING PARTIES. The two small pieces will be fastened one on either side of the opening in the wire nearest the parapet to guide parties returning. This will be done by the man not using the KLAXON HORN. This Party will take charge of the Reserve Bombs which will be brought up to them by No 5 Party. No 5 PARTY will remain outside the enemy wire to assist with Prisoners or Casualties or to communicate with the telephone Officer, if necessary. When the ATTACKING PARTIES have entered the Trench they will bring up 2 Bags of Bombs, which will include 4 Smoke Bombs, to No 4 Party. They will remain at their Post outside the wire until the last Party has passed through.

No 8 Party will remain at our end of the Sap to assist parties returning. They will come in when all parties have passed them.

No 9 PARTY will remain near opening in our wire to assist with casualties and will come in when all parties have passed them.

No 10 PARTY will be posted inside our parapet to take charge of prisoner or prisoners and take them to Battalion Headquarters. The Officer will be entirely responsible for the safe custody and care of any prisoners handed over to him.

No 11 PARTY will remain inside our parapet to take names and check raiding party as they return.

No 12 PARTY. An Officer will be at the Telephone inside our parapet and will be connected with the telephone in the Sap and with Artillery through Battalion Headquarters.

No 13 PARTY. A Stretcher Bearer Party with 4 Stretchers and First Aid Appliances will be in waiting inside our parapet to evacuate casualties.

## 7 SUPPORTS

(a) Artillery. 2 Barrages will be required.

(1) Enemy front Line from 0.7.a.9.2. to 0.7.b.3.3. and 0.7.b.9.6. to 0.8.a.1.8. leaving Trench from 0.7.b.3.3. to 0.7.b.8.6. clear for attacking Parties.

Enemy Support Line from 0.7.b.3.3. to 0.7.b.9.6.

Fire will commence on the code Word GO from the Telephone Officer in the Sap.

(2) Enemy Front Line from 0.7.b.3.3. to 0.7.b.9.6.

Fire will commence at the Code Word COME from the Telephone Officer in the Sap.

The first code word will be given when the 3 Attacking Parties are inside the enemy Trench and the 2<sup>nd</sup> code word when the whole raiding Party has reached Sap 50 Yards from enemy Wire. Artillery will cease fire on receiving code word HAPPY from the Officer at the Telephone in Trench 0.4.

(b) MACHINE GUNS

(1) Battalion Machine Gun Officer will arrange for short burst of fire over head while the wire cutting is going on. He will also arrange that all available Guns sweep enemy parapet from 0.7.b.4.5. to 0.7.c.b.0. and 0.7.d.6.5. to 0.8.a.1.6. from the time the attacking Parties enter Trench until they have returned to our own line. The Signal to commence fire will be the commencement of the first Artillery Barrage. They will cease fire when the Artillery cease fire.

(c) Trench Mortars and Stokes Guns

While the Artillery is firing Stokes Guns and Trench Mortars will fire on point 0.7.a.9.0. Volume of fire to be decided on by the Officers concerned.

### Rifle Fire

(d) While the wire cutting is going on sentries in the Front Line should fire about once every ten minutes. There will be no rifle fire while the Artillery is firing.

### Retirement

When the KLAXON HORN sounds, the FLANK PARTIES will work back as quickly as possible to the point of exit. When they get into touch with the CENTRE PARTY the LATTER will at ONCE leave the Trench and retire through the Sap to Trench 0.4. When the FLANK PARTIES come in contact with each other the first man of each party will leave the trench and using the supply of reserve bombs, bomb outwards while the remainder are leaving the trench and retire into the Sap. The RIGHT FLANKING party will leave the trench FIRST. When all are clear of the Trench the two men who are bombing to the Flank will throw the 4 smoke bombs, and will retire with the Officer in charge of the LEFT PARTY.

No 4 PARTY will retire when the Reserve bombs have been handed over to the 2 bombers of the LANKING PARTIES.

No 5 PARTY will retire as the LAST OFFICER and MAN reaches them. When the last Man has passed the Supporting Party in the Sap the Lewis Gun with the Supporting Party will sweep the parapet on both sides of the Hedge until the Retiring Party are well on their way to our Lines. The Supporting Party will THEN pass the Telephone Party and return to our trench.

The Code Word for the second Barrage will be given by the Officer at the Telephone and the Telephone wire will be then CUT and the Officer and Telephonist return to our Trench.

9 GENERAL

Dress and Equipment. ALL men of the RAIDING PARTY who will be at any time in advance of the Supporting Party at the HEAD of the Sap will wear dark WOLLEN CAPS and will have HANDS and FACES BLACKENED. NO EQUIPMENT will be worn and 2 Rifles ONLY will be carried by each of the Flanking Parties. The remainder of the men of the 3 Attacking Parties will be armed with revolvers or Pistols, Knobkerries and Bombs. All Badges and identification marks will be removed and pockets emptied before the RAIDING PARTY leaves Battalion Headquarters. ALL CASUALTTIES MUST be Brought Back to our own Trench. NO WHISTLES will be blown by any man in the Raiding Party and the word RETIRE WILL NOT be used. In the event of the Attacking Parties being discovered by the enemy while still in the wire, or before they are in their proper positions close to the parapet, The Trench will be RUSHED and the CENTRE and FLANKING PARTIES MUST reach their objectives as BEST THEY CAN.

Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....pm

Copy No 1 OC No 1 Raiding Party  
2 OC No 2 Raiding Party  
3 OC No 3 Raiding Party  
4 Artillery concerned  
5 Trench Mortars  
6 Stokes Gun  
7 Bn MGO  
8 MO  
9 4<sup>th</sup> Can Inf Bde  
10, 11, 12 War Diary  
13 27<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
14 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn

Operation Order No 5  
By Lieut Col EW Jones, commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
Quebec Camp, Aug 23<sup>rd</sup> 1916

- 1 The Battalion will parade tomorrow morning at 5.45 am.  
Parade DRESS – Heavy Marching Order in accordance with instructions already issued.  
O.C. Companies and Details will hold an inspection of their Units previous to moving on parade.
- 2 Breakfast will be at 4.00 am tomorrow  
Breakfast
- 3 All Lines and Tents must be cleaned and ready for inspection by 5.30 am tomorrow.  
Sanitation
- 4 All Transport will be loaded and parked at QUEBEC CAMP at “X” time tonight. “X” time will be notified later.  
Transport
- 5 The following will be the “Order of March” tomorrow:  
Order of March Signallers, “A”, “B”, “C” and “D” Companies, Scouts, Bombers, “E” Section, Machine Gun Section and Transport.

- 6 All Officers will salute, no other compliments will be paid.  
Saluting
- 7 Any man going sick must be given a note by an Officer. He will then report, alone, to the Horse  
Sick Ambulance in the rear.
- 8 Company Cooks will march behind Cookers, but will be allowed to put equipment and Rifles on  
March Cookers.  
Discipline Packs and Rifles of each Brakeman will be carried on the wagon, which they must not leave.  
All Company Pack Animals will march with Transport.
- 9 The under mentioned Details will be attached to Companies as follows for RATIONS and  
Rations BILLETS, during march:  
BOMBERS to "A" Company. SCOUTS & MACHINE GUN SEC. to "B" Company, 6 CAMC,  
SIGNALLERS, PIONEERS and POLICE to "D" Company, TRANSPORT and QM STORES to  
"C" Company.
- 10 OC Companies and Details will render to the Battalion Orderly Room a MARCHING OUT STATE  
Marching out States by 12 midnight tonight, in accordance with State attached hereto.
- 11 With reference to sub-para 3 above, 2 Pioneers will be attached to each of the following  
Sanitation Companies "A" and "B" and 1 Pioneer to "D" and "C" Companies. These Pioneers will carry  
shovels and will dig the necessary Latrines at each Halt.

(signed) SL Cunningham  
Lieut  
Ag. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

Operation Order No 6

Copy No.....

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Ref. HAZEFROUCK 5 A 1/100000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march to NOORDPEENE tomorrow the 26<sup>th</sup> inst.  
Battalion will parade at 6.20 am. STARTING POINT Q.8.c.2.2.  
(Field where Transport is now parked)
- 2 No 1 Platoon will march in rear of the Battalion Transport to assist wagons up hills in the vicinity  
of CASSELL.
- 3 Upon arrival in Billets each Company will immediately send a runner to Battalion headquarters.  
Signal Officer will send a cycle Orderly.
- 4 Watches will be synchronized this evening by a Runner sent from Battalion Headquarters.
- 5 OC Companies and Details will report number of March Casualties immediately on arrival in  
Billets.
- 6 Water Bottles will be filled this evening.
- 7 The Officers Mess Cart will call for Officers Baggage and Mess Box of A and C Companies at  
4.30 am and 4.40 am respectively. E and D Companies will load their Mess Boxes into Officers  
Mess Cart at D Company's Billets at 5.15 am.  
Officers Mess Cart will call at Battalion Headquarters at 5.30 am.

- 8 Cookers will be ready to move and will be called for by the Transport at following hours:
  - A Company at 5.50 am
  - B Company at 6.00 am
  - C Company at 5.50 am
  - D Company at 6.00 am
- 9 Officers of Battalion Headquarter Staff, B and D Companies will have their Baggage at Transport Lines ready to load at 5.30 am
- 10 The Commanding Officer will inspect the Lines at 5.30 am.

(signed) SL Cunningham  
Lieut  
Ag Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....pm.

SECRET

Operation Order No 7

Copy No.....

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Ref Map HAZEBROUCK 5.a. 1/100000

COST HOUCK (Bn. Hdqrs)

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march to MILLIAN – WULVERDINGHE – LEDERZEELE Area tomorrow the 27<sup>th</sup> inst., via the NOORDPEENE LEDERZEELE ROAD.

Starting Point CROSS ROADS ¼ Mile North of COST HOUCK (Bn Headquarters)  
Battalion Headquarters will pass starting Point at 10.30 am.

- 2 ORDER OF MARCH:  
Signallers, B Company, C Company, A Company, D Company, Bombers, Scouts, E Section, Quartermaster's Stores, Machine Gun Sect., and Transport.
- 3 The Officers Mess Cart will call at B Company at 9.30 am., C Co., 9.40 am., A Co., at 9.50 am., D Coy., at 10.00 am. And Battalion Headquarters at 10.10 am.
- 4 B Company will have their surplus Baggage at Transport Lines at 9.30 am., to load on GS Wagons.  
The GS Wagons will leave for Starting Point at 9.30 am., picking up Baggage of C, A and D companies on route. They will be parked at Starting Point and pick up Baggage of Battalion Headquarters.
- 5 Cookers will be called for at 10.50 am.
- 6 Company Commanders will see that their Billets are left in a clean and Sanitary condition.

(signed) SL Cunningham  
Ag Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.30 pm.



SECRET

Operation Order No. 8

Copy No.....

By Lieut Col EW Jones, Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Ref Map HAZEBROUCK 5 a 1/100000

27<sup>th</sup> Aug 1916

The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march to ZOUAFQUES tomorrow.

- 1 Starting Point at CROSS ROADS 1/3 mile N of 1<sup>st</sup> "E" in LEBERSTACKE

Battalion Headquarters will pass Starting point at 7.20 am.

- 2 Order of March will be as follows:

Signallers, A, B, C and D Companies, Bombers, Scouts, E Sect., QM Stores, Machine Gun Sect., and Transport.

- 3 Transport Officer will arrange to have Transport for the purpose of collection Officer's Baggage and Mess Boxes of A and B Companies at 6.00 am. C and D Company Officers will deliver their Baggage in front of Battalion Headquarters at 6.30 am. Officer's Mess Cart will call at Battalion Headquarters at 6.40 am.

Officers at Battalion headquarters will have their Baggage in front of Battalion Orderly Room at 6.35 am. Where it will be picked up by GS Wagons.

COOKERS will be called for at 6.30 am.

- 4 Immediately on arrival in Billets the Signalling Officer will send 2 Cycle Orderlies to Battalion Headquarters.

Company Commanders will send Runners 1 Hour afterwards and by them their reports of march Casualties.

- 5 OC Companies and Details will see that their Billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition.

Signed SL Cunningham

Ag Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.10 pm

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTE:

*The following are scans of the hand written reports that were passed back and forth from the trenches to Battalion Headquarters. As you can see, they are difficult to read in many instances and any attempt to transcribe them would leave many question marks inserted which would make it difficult to follow. I have opted to simply include the scans here rather than make an attempt to transcribe.*

*The downside to this option is that they are not key word searchable, and for that I apologize.*

Appendix 3

"A" Form.

15

Army Form C. 2121.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of Message

Prefix	Code	m.	Words	Charge	This message is on a/c of: - <b>APP 1</b> Service.	Recd. at	m.							
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.						Sent	Date							
At					To	From	By							
								By					(Signature of "Ranking Officer.")	

TO **ADJUTANT BRISTOL**

* Sender's Number	Day of Month	In reply to Number	<b>AAA</b>
<b>94</b>	<b>9th</b>		

Patrol Report  
 Three patrols of 1 N.C.O and 3  
 men each covered British front  
 N.S. to 04 from 1 am to  
 3.30 am and nothing unusual  
 to report but enemy  
 exceptionally quiet with flares and  
 light and V.M.G. fire seen  
 P.S. horns were heard at about  
 11.15 pm some distance to our  
 left and a Red rocket or flare  
 was seen and Heavy artillery fire  
 continued for about 15 minutes after  
 this case

From		
Place	<b>D</b>	<b>BRISTOL</b>
Time	<b>5.30 am</b>	

The above may be forwarded as now corrected.

(Z)

Censor.

Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of Message.....

Prefix.....	Code.....	Words	Charge	This message is on a/c of:	Reed. at.....
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.		Sent			Service.
App 1a		At	Sheet		Date
		To			From
		By			By

TO { Intelligence Report  
21st Cav Bn Aug 9th 1918.

\* Sender's Number Day of Month In reply to Number **AAA**

Artillery Nil  
Bombing - 10 Pains fell in vicinity  
02 trench and N 10 this afternoon apparently  
in retaliation for the fire of our Heavy Howitzers  
and Stokes Gun

Machine Gun Fire  
A few short bursts in the early morning, swept  
our front line parapets and Bois Carr flashes  
observed at approx 070-5-4

Rifle	Fire	Quite
Sniper		Quite
Artillery		Quite

Trenches & Works  
Front line from 07C-5-9 to 07A-9-2 in very  
bad condition and appears to be abandoned

From  
Place  
Time

The above may be forwarded as now corrected. (2)  
Censor. Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.


\* This line should be erased if not required.  
(At) G. Ltd., London - W.14042/M.44. 150,000 P's la. 12/15. Form C.2121.

"A" Form.

17 Army Form C. 2121.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of Message.....

Prefix..... Code.....m. Office of  and Service Instructions.	Words	Charge	This message is on a/c of :  Service.	Reed. at ..... m.
App 1a	Sent			Date
	At ..... m.	To	From	
	By		(Signature of "Franking Officer.") By	

TO {

--	--	--

* Sender's Number	Day of Month	In reply to Number	AAA
-------------------	--------------	--------------------	-----

The new work visible and no movement observed  
 New line in rear in the wood seems to be  
 from 50 to 100 yds behind the old front line  
 A possible MG emplacement is located at approx  
 07b-2-2 and another one apparently damaged  
 and old at approx 07b-3-3 Sketch of former attached  
 identifications

Man exposed himself for a few seconds at  
 07c 3 1/2-7 this morning He wore a blue  
 uniform and a blue cap with red facings

App 2 / ~~Patrol report~~ ~~Sheet 5~~ ~~SO MB Shepherd~~ ~~Capt 915~~

Patrol report  
 Three patrols each of 4 men covered trenches N 3  
 to O 4 from 11 pm to 2 30 am. They report enemy  
 activity with rifle fire and MG fire but no Patrols or

From working party seen, seen.  
 Place  
 Time

The above may be forwarded as now corrected. (Z)  
 Censor. Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.  
 (A1) G. Ltd., London - W.14042/M.44. 150,000 Pads. 12/15. Form C.2121.

Intelligence Report:

18

21 Canadian Pan

APL 210

Sheet 8

Artillery

-Nil

Bombing

-Nil

Machine Gun Fire

Several short bursts, night 7-10, sweeping  
for 0 across N Trenches

Enemy replied quickly to our rapid fire  
at 3-12 am.

Rifle Fire

Early Active

Sniping

Quiet

Artillery

Active during the night

Trenches + Works

07 B 54  
Time Report

Also sandbagging on front

Identification

At Point 59. - men seen wearing round  
cap with yellow bands Black Peak

Enemy seen moving around all day  
wearing usual grey Uniforms

App. 300

Several men observed wearing  
Grey caps with Teak similar to out  
service caps.

One man seen on Piccadilly train  
wearing light Grey uniform

Two men observed at 07047  
wearing Green uniforms

General

Point of origin seen to fly into  
trench. direction of flight not known

# 21 Bn

## PATROL REPORT

Three patrols covered our front as follows:

No 1 Patrol Capt Shepherd, Lieut Davidson, Lieut Fraser, and 4 scouts reconnoitered old trench W side of hedge opposite 0.4 and reached enemy's wire which though partly hidden by grass appears to be in good condition.

1 am to 4 am a search light was used by enemy from front line at 0.7.b-6-5 and swept wire and No Man's land at intervals from 3 am to 4 am., Machine Gun fire very active on front opposite trenches 03 and 04.

No 2 Patrol L/Cpl Northy and 3 scouts covered trenches 02 to N5, 11 pm to 3.30 am. Enemy flank quiet.

No 3 Patrol Lieut More and 3 scouts completed reconnaissance of our wire 11 pm to 2 am.

(Sd) Capt Shepherd

~~Abp Gato~~

Intelligence Report  
21st Canadian Battalion  
Aug. 11<sup>th</sup> 1916.

21

Activity 1.05 1.20 2.30  
20 enemy Bambi Enemy + Mobs in front

Bombing Nil  
Machine Gun fire Active during night of 10<sup>th</sup> - 11<sup>th</sup>  
Rifle fire Quite  
Sniping Nil

Artillery Active during night  
Trunks + Works. Were nothing noted between 01A 70. and  
01A 806. Sketch attached.

New Sandbags on enemy front lines of the following Points  
Point 65. 38 07. 308 1, Point 59. 07 13 7. 12 and 07C. 45.  
50 yds of wire were entanglements (large coils) in front of  
parapet at Point 59.

Identifications - Point 59 Enemy seen wearing round grey  
caps (See sketch)

could not distinguish  
whether white or yellow



Two men seen wearing Grey Cap with black Peak  
One man seen wearing Grey Cap having two black Bands  
Enemy seen wearing Grey Sheepskin Helmet

General All observers report with activity on the part  
of the enemy

Ed J. Moran Lt  
21st Can Batta



~~Secret~~ Intelligence Report  
21st Canadian Battalion

15-8-16. 22

Artillery Nil

Bombing Nil

Machine Gun Fire Active between the hours of 9 P.M. to 12 M. & 14<sup>th</sup> inst

Rifle Fire Quiet

Sniping Quiet

Artillery Quiet

Trenches & Works.

Point 59 Several large coils of new concertina wire laying on parapet.

3 Coils have been put up in front of parapet and to all appearance work had been left in a hurry.

New Sandbags observed at this point Sniper firing from a hole in parapet.

O.7A. 6 $\frac{1}{2}$  - 7 $\frac{1}{2}$  Trench Earth on parapet 5 yds.

O.14.C. 3 $\frac{1}{4}$  - 1 to O.14.C. 4 $\frac{3}{4}$  - 3 $\frac{1}{4}$  Bushwood Demers.

Identification

Several men observed wearing dark caps as reported yesterday

Two observed wearing Grey Cap with black band and Black Patent leather peak.

Air Craft

Nil.

General -

L/Cpl Mitt claims one hit.

Man hit was one of the two who were wearing Grey Caps with black Patent peak.

Considerable rattling of trucks during our 2 minutes Gun Fire 4. a.m. this morning

(Sd) J. J. Moore. Lt.  
21st Canadian Battalion

**"C" Form (Duplicate).  
MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.**

Army Form C. 2123.  
(In books of 50's in duplicate.)

No. of Message.....

App 4 23	Charges & Pay. £      d.	Office Stamp. 23
Service Instructions		

Handed in at..... Office..... m. Received..... m.

TO *Intelligence Report  
2nd Co. Battalion*

Sender's Number	Day of Month	In reply to Number	A A A
	<i>Aug 12 1916</i>		

<i>Baiting</i>	11 a.m.	to	11:10 a.m.		
	20	11.15			<i>Bayonet Post</i>
	11.15	wire to	11.20	42	<i>77</i>
	11.20	to	11.50	42	<i>59</i>
	"	"	"	36	<i>Whig Camp (except</i>
	<i>S. D. 7. and Reserve Line.</i>				
	3.40	to	4.30	4	<i>1</i>
	"	"	"	45	<i>4.1</i>
	<i>and PC. @ T</i>				
	3.50	to	4.15	68	<i>5.9</i>
	<i>and Mobile</i>				
	3.50	to	4.15	14	<i>Whig Camp (except</i>
	<i>Truck and Mobile</i>				
	4.30	to	4.40	25	<i>4.1</i>
	<i>and @ T</i>				
	<i>Total rounds (336)</i>				
<i>Baiting</i>	<i>Nic</i>				

FROM \_\_\_\_\_

PLACE & TIME \_\_\_\_\_



"C" Form (Duplicate).  
MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

Army Form C. 2123.  
(In books of 50's in duplicate.)

No. of Message .....

Service In...	Office Stamp.
---------------	---------------

Handed in at... m. Received... m.

TO

Sender's Number	Day of Month	In reply to Number	AAA
-----------------	--------------	--------------------	-----

you say if I have heard all along the line  
Very loud talking heard at point 59.  
Aircraft  
9:27 A.M. enemy plane flew over our support  
line at N. 10. and returned to his own  
line  
  
(S) Lt. Moran II  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

FROM  
PLACE & TIME

Sheet 13

25

21st Canadian Battalion  
13-8-16

Artillery Nil  
Bombing Nil  
Machine Guns fire Active during night 12<sup>th</sup> & 13<sup>th</sup>  
Rifle Fire Active during night 12<sup>th</sup> & 13<sup>th</sup>  
Sniping Quiet  
Artillery Alert

Trenches & Work  
M.G. emplacement at bearing 158° and rear  
of front line  
07C-4h-7 and timbered across  
07C-5h-9k loops hole  
07C-5-9k New work on E.T.  
Point 59 large canvas board with large black  
prints (115) (29) not visible from front line  
07C-37-8. Tape line running in Westbury  
direction to a small mound and the mound's  
length about 75 yds.

Identifications  
Enemy observed moving frantically at Point 59,  
wearing dark gaiters and caps. The caps  
having a dark band possibly black.

General  
Drops for Bantier claim two hits  
" " " " one hit

Air Craft Nil

(So)

L. J. Moore  
21st Can Batta



APP

Sheet 421<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
14-8-16.Artillery

12-25 - 12:45 P.M. 24 Whay tanks S.P. 1.  
 12-25 - 1:30 P.M. 78 " " Cherry tank  
 and 7 Motob.  
 12-25 - 1:30 P.M. 54 5-9" Cherry T. & Motob.  
 12-30 - 12:0 P.M. 23 77mm Super Beans & N. 11  
 12-30 - 1:20 p.m. 6 5-9" Reserve line  
 12-30 - 1:20 p.m. 12 77mm " "  
 12-30 - 1:20 " 10 4-1" P.O. C.T. & N. 11  
 2-45 - 3:30 p.m. 14 77mm Super Beans  
 3:30 - 3:55 p.m. 227 4-1" Super Beans  
 3:30 - 3:50 p.m. 20 5-9" Buffers Rest  
 3:50 - 4:10 P.M. 5 77mm Super Beans  
 3:00 - 3:45 P.M. Enemy heavily shelled O.P. 7  
 Motob, Cherry C.T. and Western Redoubt. Observer  
 could not keep record of shells on account of the  
 noise

Bombing

12-15 - 1:30 p.m. 15 Pum fans at O.S. + O.H. Support  
 line  
 12-15 - 1:30 31 Pum fans at N. 5 + N. 6 + Support  
 3-35 - 3:50 8 Pum fans at N. 11.

Machine Gun fire Active During night 13<sup>th</sup> + 14<sup>th</sup>.

Rifle fire

Quiet

Sniping

Active at our Periscopes

Artillery

Active

CONTINUED

Trenches & Works **Activity**

27

App 6

070746 New brushwood screen about 30' long  
a quantity of brushwood Darning Material and what  
appears to be boards nailed together in sections  
about 12' x 3 1/2' has been observed in the  
subject Points 59 + 92.

Point 59 New concrete coil beds were in  
form of project.

0715 63-14 Muzzle flashes observed distinctly  
and the flashes of this gun

General

25 of the enemy were observed today wearing  
dark grey caps as reported yesterday

Sergeant Pandolfi of 1st Airborne Division hit yesterday evening

Aircraft - Nil

Transport was heard at 6 am this morning  
apparently on the Upper Messines Road.

(S) D. J. Moore Lt

Sheet 6      Appendix 4  
~~Appendix 4~~

28

SECRET

The following shoots have been arranged for tomorrow morning:-

3.12a.m. to 3.14 a.m. Rapid fire from Front line trenches and Machine Guns.

3.18 to 3.20a.m. Hurricane fire by Dod's group.

3.35. to 3.37a.m. Hurricane fire by Dod's group.

Machine Guns, Stokes Guns and Trench Mortars will fire under directions of O.C. Battalions concerned, during the period the Artillery are in action.

Battalion Commanders concerned will be responsible that all troops in their area are warned and under cover.

(Sd) H.D. Harrington,  
Captain,

Brigade major, 4th. Can. Inf. Brigade.

9-8-16.





6 App Sheet 11

21st Canadian Battalion

1 Between 11 and 11.30 a.m. tomorrow 15th and the Artillery will give a demonstration of barrage firing on the German trenches opposite N 3 & N 4

2 The object of the demonstration is to illustrate how Infantry would be able to advance to an objective under cover of an Artillery Barrage without suffering casualties from the fire of our own guns.

3 Many cases have occurred in the summer fighting in which Infantry have been able to advance very close to their objective under cover of an Artillery Barrage and make the assault the moment the barrage lifts.

4 C.O. 21st Battalion will clear trenches N 3 and N 4 during the demonstration.

5 As many Officers and N.C.O.'s as possible should witness this show.

11/8/16

(Sd) H. J. Harrington  
Brigade Major 4th Canadian Inf Bn

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
ZOUAFQUES	1/9/16		The Battalion spent day at Ranges for first shoot with the Lee Enfield Rifles. Companies and Details not shooting were engaged in instructional work in Billets. Weather dull, little weird.
	2/9/16		Billeting party proceeded ahead and reported at WATTON BRIDGE at 10.00 am Battalion on Exercise Ground from 8.00 am till 5.00 pm MG and Lewis Gun practice at Ranges
	3/9/16		Battalion paraded at 8.00 am and proceeded to Training Area till 3.00 pm. Tactical Schemes indulged in Weather dull and cool
	4/9/16		Raining nearly all day. Battalion received instructional lectures in Billets
	5/9/16		The Battalion marched to AUDRUICQ and entrained for AUXI LA CHATEAU See Operation Order No 9, Appendix "A"
AUXI LA CHATEAU	6/9/16		Battalion marched to Billeting Area at FIEFFES as per Operation Order
FIEFFES	7/9/16		The Battalion marched to Billeting Area at RUBEMPRE as per Operation Order
RUBEMPRE	8/9/16		The Battalion marched to Billeting Area at VADENCOURT as per Operation Order
VADENCOURT	9/9/16		The Battalion moved to the BRICKFIELDS, ALBERT and rested for remainder of Day
BRICKFIELDS, ALBERT	10/9/16		The Battalion proceeded into RESERVE and relieved part of the 15 <sup>th</sup> Cdn INF BDE as per Operation Order. X.10.6.9.5 Battalion Headquarters situated in old German Dugout about 30 ft underground. Headquarters location about X.20.6.7.5
X.20.6.7.5	11/9/16		Weather fine, Artillery very quiet. Casualties 1 Officer and 2 OR Wounded
	12/9/16		Weather fine. Artillery fairly active. German aeroplane brought down by one of our planes behind our line. Hun machine set on fire coming down and pilot and plane were completely burned on reaching ground
	13/9/16		Quiet day all round. General clean up of rear surrounding district.
	14/9/16		Battn still location as per margin. Most of Officers proceeded to look over area of proposed attack on 15 <sup>th</sup> inst. The Battn left to take up their position as laid down in Operation Order No 15 at 11.00 pm, 14 <sup>th</sup> inst. Lieut WF Brownlee & two Scouts left Bn HQ at 8.00 pm to lay out Area for Bn to assemble on with white tape to mark flanks and positions of waves.

X.20.6.7.5

15/9/16 Battn Hd Qr took up position at R.35.c.4.3 at 2.00 am  
Battalion took up position in Front Trenches with Right Flank in BAUPUME-ALBERT ROAD extending to left about 300 yards. The being covered by three Companies with one Company in Reserve.  
The Battn, less two platoons (which had been sent to relieve 2 platoons of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battn) was in position as per Operation Order at 4.30 am.  
The above platoons which were holding front line from R.35.d.2.3 to R.35.d.4.2½ were badly cup up by a Bombing Attack by the enemy about 4.30 am and only one Sergeant and 16 men went forward with the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn and afterwards joined their Battalion at COURCELETTE Sugar Factory. The Balance left made their way over and joined the other Company which was the fifth wave.

At 6.20 am as laid down in Operation Order, the Barrage was laid 50 yds in front of Enemy front line. At 6.21 am it lifted to enemy front line, at 6.24 am it lifted to 100 yds beyond and the Battalion then advanced covered also by heavy MG fire.

No difficulty was experienced in taking first line trench as our Artillery had demoralized what occupants that remained there.

The Artillery barrage was carried out as per Operation Order. On our advancing, some of the enemy offered to surrender and these men were sent back to the 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn whose orders were to "MOP UP".

On the right of our line near BAPAUME ROAD about 30 of the enemy left trench and retired. These men were all accounted for by our Rifle Fire and bombs.

On continuing the advance the next point where serious opposition was met was a trench from approx R.35.g.7.1 to R.35.g.9.0. Here several detached parts of the enemy were encountered and shot or bayoneted by our first wave. On proceeding to the trench, Battalion suffered heavily by reason of MG fire which came from our left flank.

These guns were shortly accounted for by the 27<sup>th</sup> Cdn Batt who were advancing on our left flank.

At this time all the officers of "B" Company and several other officers were casualties. Coy Sergt Major Deane took command of "B" Company. From this trench to Sugar Factory our chief opposition was snipers and MG fire.

On arriving in the vicinity of Sugar Refinery our troops converged on that point expecting very strong opposition. Our Artillery fire had been very accurate and we did not receive as much opposition as was anticipated.

About 125 of the enemy surrendered.

On entering the Sugar Factory we took 6 officers and 15 men as prisoners out of deep dug outs under Factory. These prisoners at first refused to surrender but on our using "P" Bombs on them, they were glad to do so.

From this point we dug in and consolidated trench from approx R.30.c.5.1 to R.36.a.8.7. Also putting advanced points with Lewis Guns about 150 yds in advance in SUNKEN ROAD.

This line which was on our Final Objective was obtained at about 7.03 am.

This position was held by the Battalion until 6.10 am 16/9/16.

"D" Company (Fifth Wave) who were to dig half way trench commenced work at 7.20 am and consolidated position.

All officers were casualties, strength of company about 60 other ranks, one Lewis and one Colt Gun. From the Machine Section, the MGO and balance of Section were casualties. This line was under command of CSM Verdon who became a casualty shortly afterwards.

At 9.00 am the following message was received from 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde. "Artillery have instructions to lift barrage at 9.20 am aaa You will establish posts on SUNKEN ROAD beyond your final objective as soon as possible aaa". This message was sent forward to Company Commanders and OC Front line who assured us that we occupied SUNKEN ROAD.

We then got in telephonic communication with Brigade who informed us that Lieut Davidson (who was a casualty) had been to Brigade and had shown Major Armstrong our position and he said that we were in SUNKEN ROAD. About 12.00 noon we received message from "D" Company that they had only about 37 other ranks left and that Sergt Trappitt was in command.

Several maps, papers etc were secured at Sugar Factory and were sent to Bn Hd Qrs. All that reached there were at once sent to Brigade Hd Qrs.

After the prisoners were taken from Sugar Factory two Bombers explored interior and found a wounded German. All that was possible was done for him and he was left there. All telephone lines were out at Sugar Factory (communicating with German Hd Qrs) and one Receiver set was used by our Artillery Officer on BAPAUME ROAD being connected up by him with his battery.

At 3.00 pm we received the following message from 4<sup>th</sup> CIB "BM320 15/9/16 "Hold on to SUNKEN ROAD aaa Bde on our right are taking MARTINPUCH at 3.00 pm aaa 5<sup>th</sup> CIB are advancing through us at 6.00 pm aaa 3<sup>rd</sup> Cdn Div are advancing on our left aaa Seize first opportunity of establishing front line in SUNKEN ROAD in conjunction with BRITISH and 5<sup>th</sup> Bde advance aaa". This order was sent to Front line and Supports who received it at 5.50 pm.

At 5.50 pm they passed through into SUNKEN ROAD but did not take up any position immediately on our front. From 6.05 pm to 12 mn our front and support line trenches were very heavily bombed but there was no sign of a Counter Attack.

Our Front Line and supports were shelled continuously all day by guns of all calibers. At 6.30 pm following was received from 4<sup>th</sup> CIB "BM 324 15<sup>th</sup> 5.30 pm "Your Btn will be withdrawn tonight aaa Further orders will be issued aaa You may commence to evacuate your wounded as soon as 5<sup>th</sup> Bde pass through you aaa". This message was sent to all concerned. At 5.45 pm the 5<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bde were seen to be coming toward our front line in extended order. The Hun Artillery immediately opened fire on our position at the Sugar Factory.

The Battalion advanced well ahead of the Tanks, and the final objective was gained before Tanks overtook them. One Tank which advanced along SUGAR TRENCH to r.30.c.5.3 then advanced in front of our final objective, then turning SE to BAPAUME ROAD after which time it was not seen by our Front Line troops. Nothing was seen of the other tanks.

Communication was kept up between Front Line and Btn Hqs by Runners, between Btn Hqs and Bde by Telephonic Communication which was down a great part of the time. Our Runners did excellent work, while they were subject to heavy shell & MG fire.

R.35.c.4.3 16/9/16

At 1.30 am we received following from 4<sup>th</sup> CIB. BM 338-1, 16<sup>th</sup>, 12.45 am. "20<sup>th</sup> Battn now occupying line of SUNKEN ROAD and 22<sup>nd</sup> Battn are in vicinity of NS (?) central aaa. A tank will proceed up BAPAUME ROAD at daylight today aaa. You will push party close up behind Tank and occupy line of SUNKEN ROAD joining up with 20<sup>th</sup> Battn on right and 22<sup>nd</sup> on left aaa. Should Tank fail, you will push on as it is intended to push Cavalry through on your front if you reach and capture SUNKEN ROAD aaa URGENT PRIORITY. This message was sent to Front Line by two Runners neither of whom reached them. At 4.00 am Lieut AG Fraser left Bn Hq with the message and he reached there at 5.15 am taking over command of Front line. Preparations were immediately made for the advance on SUNKEN ROAD and we waited till 6.45 am for the Tank, but as it failed to appear we advanced in extended order to SUNKEN ROAD being met by heavy MG and rifle fire from front and left flanks. (Lieut Mowett was left behind at Sugar Factory with 1 NCO and 24 men with instructions to hold on at all cost)

When the line reached position about 100 yds in front of SUNKEN ROAD the fire was so heavy all had to see trench. Lieut HM Kennedy and six men reached SUNKEN ROAD first, the balance had to move from trench about 100 yds into SUNKEN ROAD. This operation was completed about 7.00 am although some men did not arrive till some while afterwards. We were then in touch with 20<sup>th</sup> Bn on our right and about 12.00 noon in touch with 22<sup>nd</sup> Bn on our left. Lieut AS Fraser wounded in the advance and Lt Hunter then took command.

At 6.30 am Major McLaughlin and Lt Brownlee reported to SUGAR FACTORY being with 6 reinforcements. Those men tried to make their way to SUNKEN ROAD merging themselves with advancing line. Lt Brownlee was killed in the advance. Total strength of those reaching front line SUNKEN ROAD was 3 officers and about 100 other ranks. Major McLaughlin then took command from Lieut Hunter. This line was subject to a heavy bombardment all day. At 1.00 am Lieut McGee reported to Bn Hd Qr with 50 other ranks consisting of men who had been employed on various duties and from there proceeded to SUGAR FACTORY LINE.

About 6.00 pm observer reported large body of Germans advancing from direction of Cemetery carrying Red Cross Flag and led by two officers – Huns were unarmed. Instructions not to fire on them were given, but we were ordered to be on the alert.

This party were allowed to come on and were passed along the line.

As we had so few men they were turned over to the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn on the right flank. Several of them were wounded. When these prisoners reached these prisoners reached the extreme right of our line, the enemy attempted a Counter Attack and came out of their trenches but were driven back by our rifle and MG fire.

From that time on until were relieved by the 26<sup>th</sup> Bttn we were subjected to very heavy shell fire.

The Scout Section during these two days rendered valuable information and our snipers accounted for a good many of the enemy. This section was also used as Runners and for carrying water and Bombs to the advanced positions. They also acted as guides for the relieving Battn.

17/9/16 We were relieved early this morning by the 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn who took up Hd Qrs in the Sugar Factory. See Relief Order appendix. This order was promulgated to Battn by Runners. Battalion arrived at SUNKEN ROAD VALLEY X.10.d at 6.10 am where hot meal was served to the men. At 3.00 pm the Bn moved by Bde Order to BRICKFIELDS arriving there about 7.00 pm.

18/9/16 Muster parade was held and 20 Officers and 385 were found to be casualties.  
At 2.00 pm the Batt proceeded to VADENCOURT arriving in Billets about 7.00 pm. Raining hard all day.

19/9/16 At 8.00 am the Battalion proceeded with Bde to LAVICOGNE arriving there about 1.20 pm. Billets were found to be fair.

20/9/16 Battalion remaining in Billets all day. General clean up was indulged in.

21/9/16 The Battalion left Billets at 8.15 am joining Bde at NAOURS and proceeded to BERTEAUCOURT arriving there about noon. Billets were good.

22/9/16 The Battalion remained here all this day. About 100 men were able to get a bath at ST. LEGER.

BERTEAUCOURT 23/9/16 The Battalion moved to LAVICOGNE

24/29/16 The Battalion moved to VADENCOURT

25/9/16 The Battalion moved to the BRICKFIELDS, ALBERT as per attached Operation Order, arriving at BRICKFIELDS at about 12.00 noon  
The Battalion moved to TARA VALLEY at 6.30 pm arriving there at 8.30 pm. See attached move order.

26/9/16 The Battalion moved to BAILIFFWOOD at 5.00 am and was in position at 6.45 am, remaining there all day. Bombs, extra ammunition, SOS Rockets and Ground Flares were issued to all of the ranks. There was a big advance on our front commencing at 12.15 pm but we had no shelling on our area.

27/9/16 The Battalion remained in the above mentioned position all this day. We supplied eight scouts to guide 19<sup>th</sup> Batt to COURCELETTE at 9.00 pm

28/9/16 At 4.00 am we received orders from Bde to report to 6<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde and proceed to QUARRY M.19.g.3.1. This order was given verbally.  
On arrival at Quarry Battalion took up position as follows: A, B, & C Companies were in trenches M.19.c.7.1½ to R.24.c.9.9 with 29<sup>th</sup> Battn. D Company and Details in Quarry at M.19.c.3.2.  
We were then in touch with 31<sup>st</sup> on our left.  
Machine Guns were placed in advance of Quarry covering DYKE ROAD.  
At 1.30 pm the following message was received from 6<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde BM 304 28<sup>th</sup> "Detail two patrols each of 1 Officer and 25 men and a Lewis gun to push out and establish positions covering left flank. 19<sup>th</sup> Bn reported about M.14.a.6.6. and right flank 26<sup>th</sup> reported about R.18.c.4.4. aaa These patrols should endeavor to get in touch with trenches about M.13.6 aaa As soon as these patrols establish themselves, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will be prepared to be pushing out to fill gaps between 19<sup>th</sup> and 26<sup>th</sup> aaa addressed 21<sup>st</sup>, propagator, 19<sup>th</sup> and 26<sup>th</sup> aaa

At 3.00 pm Major Sauva with 31 men and 1 Lewis Gun was given orders as above and proceeded northward along the EAST MIRAUMONT ROAD at R.24.a.t.5

He came under heavy fire from REGINA TRENCH and discovered that the 26<sup>th</sup> Bn were not in position as stated but were at R.24.a.8.0. A patrol of Bn Scouts was pushed forward along EAST MIRAUMONT ROAD and COURCELETTE TRENCH and reported that the junction of REGINA TRENCH and COURCELETTE TRENCH by the enemy with machine guns.

At 3.15 pm Lieut Hunter with 25 men and 1 Lewis Gun proceeded to connect with left flank of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn.

On report from Lieut Hunter that his objective was obtained, Lieut Christmas with remainder of C Company was ordered to dig in on the left of Lieut Hunter. The Company consolidated position from M.a.5.9 to M.19.a.9.9.

At 8.00 pm message was received from Major Sauva that 26<sup>th</sup> Bn were to attack REGINA TRENCH at 9.00. This attack was not successful. Major Sauva was then given order to dep from R.24.a.8.0 in a North easterly direction to connect up with rest of Bn at 9.30 pm. Major Cooper was ordered to take one Coy and connect up the posts. At 10.00 am 29/9/16 contact was made with Major Sauva and the line was then checked up and found to be from M.20.a.5.9 to M.19.a.7.7.

We took over at 9.00 pm from 29<sup>th</sup> Battn and a sector to COURCELETTE TRENCH at R.24.c.8.2.

29/9/16 At 10.30 am 29/9/16 Major Sauva's line was checked and found to run from M.19.c.3.8 to M.19.c.0.5. He was being heavily shelled and had many casualties, it was therefore decided to abandon his line and he was instructed to dep in from R.19.a.4.7 in a SW direction. After reaching the advanced position he suffered no casualties. At noon Lieut Christmas made contact with 22<sup>nd</sup> Bn which had relieved 26<sup>th</sup> Bn on our left at R.24.c.9.9.

The enemy shelled continuously and maintained barrage on DYKE ROAD, COURCELETTE QUARRY and EAST MIRAUMONT ROAD.

30/9/16 Despite heavy casualties to Runners, communication was maintained. The construction of the line and connecting of front line continued throughout the night Sep 29/30<sup>th</sup> and during the 30<sup>th</sup> at 11.00 am 30/9/16 telephonic communication was established between advance Bn Hd Qrs established at R.19.a.5.5 and Bn Hd Qrs established at R.25.a.6.4.

At 6.30 pm the line was continuous from M.20.a.5.9 to M.14.c.1.1 and R.24.a.9.5¼

At 11.00 pm the Battalion was relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Batt and proceeded to about X.11.a.2.2



OPERATION ORDER No 9

Lieut Col EW Jones, Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Copy No. ...

4/9/16

Ref: HAZEBROUCK 5.a. and LENS Sheet No 11  
Sheet 27.a.N.E.

- 1 The Battalion will entrain at AUDRUICQ on the morning of the 5<sup>th</sup> inst, and detrain at AUXI LA CHATEAU
- 2 Company Commanders and OC Bombers will have an NCO report to Major Elmitt at 4.00 pm today. The NCOs will proceed ahead and will meet Companies and Details on arrival at AUDRUICQ.
- 3 "D" Company, Machine Gun Sections with their Guns, and Transport Section will parade at 11.00 pm tonight in HEAVY MARCHING ORDER. "D" Company will lead and HEAD of Company will rest at J.20.c.5.4. Sheet 27 a.N.E.
- 4 Signallers, A, B, and C Companies, Bombers, Scouts, Machine Gun Section, QM Stores and "E" Section will parade in HEAVY MARCHING ORDER at 12.30 am tomorrow. HEAD of COLUMN will rest at J.20.c.5.4 Sheet 27 a.N.E.
- 5 The Machine Gun Officer will have all parch Draft wagons loaded at Transport Lines at 3.00 pm today.
- 6 Current day's rations will be carried by all ranks.  
Water carts will be loaded filled.  
Water Bottles will be filled.  
COOKERS will be entrained with tomorrow's dinner in same.
- 7 Officer's baggage will be collected at 6.00 pm and Mess Boxes at 8.00 pm
- 8 One Officer per Company and one Sergeant per Detail will be on duty en route. In case the train stopping these Officers and NCOs will ensure that no NCO or man leaves the train.
- 9 All Billets must be left clean.

(sd SL Cunningham)  
Lieut  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.45 am

Copy No 1	"A" Coy	10	QM
2	"B" Coy	11	MO
3	"C" Coy	12	Major Elmitt
4	"D" Coy	13	Office
5	MGO	14-16	War Diary
6	Scout Officer		
7	BO		
8	Sig Officer		
9	TO		

OPERATION ORDER 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

Ref LENS Sheet 11

- 1 Tomorrow the 6<sup>th</sup> Sept 1916 the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march in order as stated below to Billeting Area MONTRELET – FIEFFES – BONNEVILLE, via BEAUMETE and VERMAVILLE – to L in BERNEUIL. Scouts, Signals, A,B,C, and D Companies, Bombers, QM, Stores “E” Sections and Transport Section and transport [?].
- 2 STARTING POINT – CROSS ROADS ½ mile south of the L in CRALMONT. The HEAD of the Battalion will pass Starting point at 10.00 am.
- 3 A Mid-day halt of one and a half hours duration will be made at 11.30 am during which time hot dinners will be issued and horses watered.
- 4 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer’s Baggage and Mess Boxes. These must be ready at 9.00 am
- 5 Coy and Detail Commanders will ensure that their Billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition.
- 6 Current day’s Rations will be carried
- 7 All Water Bottles must be filled at 8.30 am.

(Sd) SL CUNNINGHAM Lieut  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

OPERATION ORDER 21<sup>ST</sup> BATTALION

Ref: LENS Sheet 11

- 1 Tomorrow the 7<sup>th</sup> Sept 1916, the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will march in order as stated below to Billeting area ROBEMPRE – HERIS SART – TOGTENCOURT via VALHEUREUX – FME DE ROSE – VAL DE MAISON.  
Scouts, Signals, D, C, B and A Coys, Bombers, QM Stores, “E” Section, Machine Gun Section and Transport.
- 2 STARTING POINT – 100 yds, NORTH of C Coy Billets on MAIN ROAD & RUNNING BETWEEN FIEFFES and MONTRELET.  
HEAD of the Battalion will pas STARTING POINT (going north) at 10.00 am.
- 3 A Mid-Day halt of 1½ hours duration will be made at 11.50 am during which time hot dinners will be issued and horses watered.
- 4 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer’s Baggage and Mess Boxes. These must be ready at 9.00 am

- 5 Coy and Detail Commanders will ensure that their Billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 6 Current days dry Rations will be carried
- 7 All water bottles must be filled at 8.30 am

(Sd) SL Cunningham Lieut  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 7.45 pm

- |         |       |             |
|---------|-------|-------------|
| Copy No | 1     | "A"         |
|         | 2     | "B"         |
|         | 3     | "C"         |
|         | 4     | "D"         |
|         | 5     | Scouts      |
|         | 6     | Bombers     |
|         | 7     | Machine Gun |
|         | 8     | Signals     |
|         | 9     | TO          |
|         | 10    | QM          |
|         | 11    | MO          |
|         | 12    | Office      |
|         | 13-15 | War Diary   |

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Sept 7<sup>th</sup> 1916  
RUBEMPRE

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER

Ref LENS Sheet 11

- 1 Tomorrow the 8<sup>th</sup> inst the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march in order as stated below to billeting area at VADENCOURT  
Scouts, Signals, A, B, C, and D Companies, Bombers, QM Stores, "E" Section, Machine Gun Section and Transport.
- 2 STARTING POINT – A point on the main road between RUBEMPRE and HERISSART 1200 yds NORTH of the 2<sup>nd</sup> E in RUBEMPRE  
The Scout Officer will arrange to have one Scout report to each Coy Commander at 7.20 am.  
Other Detail Commanders will make arrangements to march out with Coys they are billeted with.  
Companies will be ready to move at time Scout reports
- 3 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect all Officer's Baggage and Mess Boxes. These must be ready at 6.20 am
- 4 All water Bottles must be filled from tanks in village before leaving
- 5 Coy and Detail Commanders will ensure that their Billets are left clean.

Issued by Orderly at 10.50 pm

- Copy No 1 "A" Coy
- 2 "B" Coy
- 3 "C" Coy
- 4 "D" Coy
- 5 Bombers
- 6 Scouts
- 7 MGS
- 8 Signals
- 9 TO
- 10 WM
- 11 MO
- 12 Office
- 13-15 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
10/9/16

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER

Ref; FRANCE 57 d.S.E

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve part of the 1<sup>st</sup> Cdn Inf Bde today (In Support)
- 2 Disposition as follows:
  - Headquarters )
  - "A" and "B" Companies )
  - Bombers, Scouts and Signals ) About 1.20.b.7.5

"C" and "D" Companies about X.20.b.9.5  
Machine Gun Section will relieve corresponding Machine Gun Section
- 3 Packs will not be taken. Overcoats will be rolled Bandolier. Packs will be immediately handed to the quartermaster
- 4 Reliefs will be immediately reported to Bn Hd Qrs, and 2 Runners per Company and one per Detail will immediately report to the Signalling Officer.
- 5 Companies and Sections will parade at times as under:
  - "C" Coy 3.40 pm "D" Coy 3.50 pm "A" Coy at 4.00 pm
  - "B" Coy at 4.10 pm Scouts and Signallers at 4.20 pm
  - followed at 100 yds intervals by Bombers and Machine Gunners
- 6 Transport will collect Officers Baggage at 3.30 pm
- 7 Lines must be left in a clean and sanitary condition

Issued by Orderly at 1.50 pm

- |           |         |       |           |
|-----------|---------|-------|-----------|
| Copy No 1 | "A"     | 8     | MGO       |
| 2         | "B"     | 9     | MO        |
| 3         | "C"     | 10    | TO        |
| 4         | "D"     | 11    | QM        |
| 5         | Signals | 12    | Office    |
| 6         | Scouts  | 13-15 | War Diary |
| 7         | Bombers |       |           |

**NOTE:** What follows are the hand written messages passed by runners between Brigade HQ and the Battalion, as well as those passed from the front line to Battalion HQ.

"A" Form.		Army Form C. 2121.	
MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.			No. of message
Prefix	Code	Words	Charge
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.		This message is on a/c of:	
one of address		Scout	Service.
At	To	(Signature of "Franking Officer.")	
By		By	
TO		'F'	
Bristol			
Sender's Number.	Day of Month	In reply to Number	
* BM 240	13 <sup>th</sup>	AAA	
<p>please detail two platoons from Coy furnishing 5<sup>th</sup> wave to report to Bde Hd Qrs at 6-pm tonight to relieve platoons of 19<sup>th</sup> Bn in front line a/c Water Bottles will be filled and 48 hours rations carried a/c 19<sup>th</sup> Bn will provide guides a/c acknowledge</p> <p>addressed 18<sup>th</sup> 20<sup>th</sup> + 21<sup>st</sup> Bn</p> <p>repeated 19<sup>th</sup> Bn for information</p>			
From	England		
Place	1155 AM		
Time			
The above may be forwarded as now corrected.		(Z)	
Censor.		Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.	
* This line should be erased if not required.			
(4195) Wt. W11042-M44. 300000 Pads. 12/15. Sir J. C. & S.			

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of message

Prefix _____ Code _____ m.	Words _____	Charge _____	This message is on a/c of:  <b>31</b> Service.  (Signature of "Franking Officer.")	Recd. at _____ m.
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.	Sent _____			Date 'E'
	At _____ m.			From
	To _____			By _____
	By _____			

TO { 06. Frontline 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn

Sender's Number * C 626/1	Day of Month 16	In reply to Number	AAA
------------------------------	--------------------	--------------------	-----

You will be relieved tonight by the 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn and on completion of relief you will report to Bn Hdqrs. which will be located at present Bde Headquarters and the Battalion will be billeted near there and evacuate wounded with you and Bde Hdqrs is right beside the Bde Dump

From Adj/ 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn	
Place 6. 35 pm	
Time	

The above may be forwarded as now corrected.

(Z) (sd) *of Cunningham*  
Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of Message

Prefix _____ Code _____ m.	Words _____	Charge _____	This message is on a/c of: _____ Service. _____	Recd. at _____ m.
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.	Sent _____			Date 'H'
	At _____ m.		(Signature of "Franking Officer.")	From _____
	To _____			By _____
	By _____			

TO { O.C. Coys & Details 32

Sender's Number * C 626/2	Day of Month 17	In reply to Number	AAA
------------------------------	--------------------	--------------------	-----

The Batts will proceed to BRICKFIELDS at 3:00pm today in following order  
aaa Sig, A, B, C & D Coys, Wld, Bombers & Scouts aaa.

From Staff 2<sup>nd</sup> Gen Pz

Place 11-00 AM

Time

The above may be forwarded as now corrected.

(Z) S P. Cunningham

Censor. Signature of Addressor or person authorized to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of message

Prefix	Code	m.	Words	Charge	This message is on a/c of:	Recd. at	m.		
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.			Sent			Service.	Date		
			At	m.				From	I
			To					By	
			By		(Signature of "Franking Officer.")				

TO { To O.C. Coys & Details 33

Sender's Number.	Day of Month	In reply to Number	AAA
* C 630	18 <sup>th</sup>		

The Battalion will proceed to  
 VADEN COURT to Bullets in the following  
 order ~~at~~ 2.00 pm today and  
 Scouts, Signals, ABCD Coys, Post  
 Wks, Gun Store and Transport

From *Adj. 21<sup>st</sup> Col. B*

Place

Time *11-00 AM*

*(Z)* *A. J. Cunningham*

Censor. Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.  
 (4/08) Wt. W11042-M44. 300000 Pads. 12/15. Sir J. C. & S.



"A" Form.

Army Form C. 2121.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of Message

Prefix _____ Code _____ m.	Words _____ Charge _____	This message is on a/c of: _____ Service. _____	Recd. at _____ m.
Office of Origin _____ and Service Instructions _____	Sent _____		Date <b>J</b>
	At _____ m.		From <b>J</b>
	To _____	(Signature of "Franking Officer.") _____	By _____
	By _____		

TO **OC. Coys + Details** **34**

Sender's Number. <b>* C 645</b>	Day of Month <b>19<sup>th</sup></b>	In reply to Number _____	<b>AAA</b>
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------	------------

The Battalion will proceed to Billets at LAVICOGNE tomorrow morning in order as stated in my C 630 of yesterday and Head of column will pass on the main road at Fort Ghelle at 8.00 AM

From <b>Adj 2<sup>nd</sup> Col</b>	
Place _____	
Time <b>11-40 pm</b>	
<i>The above may be forwarded as now corrected.</i>	<b>(Z)</b> <b>S. J. Cunningham</b>
Censor _____	Signature of Addressor or person authorized to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of message

Prefix	Code	m.	Words	Charge	This message is on a/c of:	Reed. at	m.	
Office of Origin and Service Instructions			Sent			Service.	Date	
			At	m.			From	K
			To				By	
			By		(Signature of "Franking Officer.")			

TO { O.6 Coys + Details 35

Sender's Number.	Day of Month	In reply to Number	AAA
* C 615/r	20		

The Battalion will proceed to Bullets at BERTEUCOURT tomorrow and Head of column will pass CHURCH at 8.15. AM and Order of March same as in order C 630 of the 18<sup>th</sup>.

From	Adj. 21 <sup>st</sup> Cav. Bn
Place	
Time	11.50 pm
The above may be forwarded as now corrected.	
Censor.	(Z) H. Cunningham
Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.	

\* This line should be erased if not required.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of Message \_\_\_\_\_

Prefix _____	Code _____	m. _____	Words _____	Charge _____	This message is on a/c of: _____	Recd. at _____ m.
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.			Sent _____			Service _____
			At _____ m.			From _____
			To _____			By _____
			By _____	(Signature of "Franking Officer.")		

TO { 06. Coys & Details 36

Sender's Number.	Day of Month	In reply to Number	AAA
* <u>C 672</u>	<u>22</u>		

The Battalion will proceed to Bellet  
 at LAVICOGNE tomorrow morning  
 aac Head of column will pass  
 CHURCH at 8.00 Am. aac Order of  
 march Scouts Signals ABTC Coys  
 Bombers, Gun Section, Mch Section & Transport  
 aac

From Adj-2<sup>nd</sup> Lt

Place \_\_\_\_\_

Time 11-50pm

The above may be forwarded as now corrected.

(Z) S. Cunningham

Censor. Signature of Addressee or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.  
 (4/98) Wt. W11042-M44. 300000 Pads. 12/15. Sir J. C. & S.

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

No. of Message

Prefix	Code	m.	Words	Charge	This message is on a/c of:	Recd. at	m.	
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.			Sent			Service.	Date	
			At	m.				
			To				From	M
			By	(Signature of "Franking Officer.")			By	

TO { O.C. Coy + Details 37

Sender's Number	Day of Month	In reply to Number	AAA
* C 672/1	23 <sup>rd</sup>		

The Battalion will move to Ballis at VADENCOURT tomorrow morning as a Head of column will pass present B<sup>n</sup> Hd<sup>q</sup> Qms at 9.00AM as an order of march as in msg C 672 of the 22<sup>nd</sup> inst

From: Maj. J. P. [Signature]

Place:

Time: 12-10 Am

The above may be forwarded as now corrected.

(Z) [Signature] S. J. Cunningham

Censor. Signature of Addressee or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to the BRICKFIELDS tomorrow the 25<sup>th</sup> inst via WARLOW – SENLIS and BOUZENCOURT

Order of March

SCOUTS, SIGNALS, "A" "B" "C" and "D" Companies  
Bombers, MG SECTION, "E" SECTION, QM STORES  
and Transport

- 2 STARTING POINT – ROAD JUNCTION N.W. of V IN VADINCOURT
- 3 The Battalion will fall in column of Route, ready to move at 7.50 am
- 4 On arrival at the BRICKFIELDS the Battalion will be prepared to move to the Forward Area on short notice, and be prepared for IMMEDIATE ACTION. All ranks must be warned that they are confined to BILLETING of BIVOUAC area, and any departure from this order will be most severely dealt with.
- 5 Company and Detail Commanders will ensure that their Lines are left in a clean and sanitary condition.
- 6 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect all Baggage at 6.45 am. This MUST be ready on time.
- 7 Breakfast will be served at 6.00 am tomorrow.
- 8 Water Bottles will be filled tonight
- 9 Dinners will be cooked on lines of March tomorrow

(Sd) SL Cunningham Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.00 pm  
To Companies and Details

"A" Form  
MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.

Army Form C. 2121

No. of Message

Prefix	Code	m.	Words	Charge	This message is on a/c of:	Recd. at	m.
Office of O and Service Instructions			Sent			Service.	Date
			At	m.			
			To				
			By	(Signature of "Franking Officer.")			By

TO O.C. Coos. + Details 39

Sender's Number.	Day of Month	In reply to Number	AAA
* C 711	25		

Ref: Map: 57 D. SE

- The B<sup>n</sup> will move off at 6.30 pm to TARA VALLEY at following hours  

Scout Signals	6.30 pm
A Coy	6.33 pm
B Coy	6.35 pm
C Coy	6.37 PM
D Coy	6.40 pm
Bombardier	6.43 pm
- These intervals must be maintained between Coys
- Staff Capt (Intelligence) will provide guides from Bde who will meet the B<sup>n</sup> on the ALBERT BATAUME ROAD and conduct to beacons
- On arrival in area Coy + Detail Commanders will at once send runners to B<sup>n</sup> H<sup>d</sup> Q<sup>r</sup>.
- Cookers will be taken

From	
Place	
Time	

The above may be forwarded as now corrected. (Z)

Censor.      Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

(4195) Wt. W11042-M44. 300000 Pads. 12/15. Sir J. C. & S.

21<sup>st</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION No 15

Reference Map COURCELETTE POZIERS 1.5000

1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will carry out an attack at X time (X time to be notified later) on the morning of the 15<sup>th</sup> inst 1916 in conjunction with the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn on the right and the 27<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn on the left.

2 The assembly trench will be the front line trench at present occupied by the 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn WEST of the POZIERS – BAPAUME ROAD.

3 The objective of the Battalion will be the German Trench (2<sup>nd</sup> line) from R.36.a.8.7 to R.30.c.5.1 including strong points about the SUGAR FACTORY in R.36.a.

4 The attack will be made on a three Company front:

“A” Coy on right

“B” Coy in Centre

“C” Coy on left flank.

Each Coy to occupy 1/3 of Battn front this to be arranged mutually between Company Commanders concerned. (Company frontage about 75 yards)

Companies will attack on a Platoon front. Each Platoon being followed by 3 Platoons of its own Company making four Waves, “D” company will follow the attack as a 5<sup>th</sup> Wave and have a special mission.

One Section of BOMBERS will advance on either flank and 2<sup>nd</sup> wave to the final objective and on reaching there will be immediately organized in anticipation of a counter attack, the remaining Section will advance with the 5<sup>th</sup> wave under the Bombing Officer to the final Objective.

5 In order to mop up and consolidate German 1<sup>st</sup> line trench after capture an intermediate wave consisting of about 6 Platoons of the 19<sup>th</sup> Bn will advance close behind the 1<sup>st</sup> Wave.

6 The distance between the first four waves will be 30 yards the intermediate wave (19<sup>th</sup> Bn) will follow immediately behind the 1<sup>st</sup> Wave.

The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave (“D” Coy) will follow at 100 yards behind 4<sup>th</sup> wave.

7 The objective of the first four waves will be:

a. The 1<sup>st</sup> German Line

b. The 2<sup>nd</sup> German Line (beyond the SUGAR FACTORY)

After the capture of the final objective the 2<sup>nd</sup> wave with which will be the Coy Lewis Guns, will push out 100 yards in advance and consolidate shell holes into advance posts, this to be done during the consolidation of the captured position.

The objective of the 5<sup>th</sup> Wave (with Machine guns) will be a “half-way trench” on line approx R.35..75 to R.36.a.5.5 where it will at once dig in under direction of Canadian Engineers.

These objectives will be made known to all ranks, who should clearly understand their respective roles.

8 The Scout Section will act under direct orders of the Battn Commander



9 The Signalling Officer will be responsible for all communication and have charge of all Battn runners who will report to him at Battn Hdqtrs at 7.00 pm the 14<sup>th</sup> inst.

10 Assembly Position:

1 <sup>st</sup> Wave	In the open, as close to barrage as possible
Intermediate Wave	In the open
2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> Wave	In new trench and saps 50 yards in front of present front line
4 <sup>th</sup> Wave	In our present front Line trench
5 <sup>th</sup> Wave	In selected trench in rear of present front line.

11 Communication trenches will be dug by Pioneers

12 The Artillery Programme is:

Four minutes before X hour and for one minute – barrage 50 yards in front of German first line.  
Three minutes before X hour and until X, barrage on German front line.  
At X hour, barrage lifts 100 yards and Infantry advance.  
After this, barrage will lift 100 yds every three minutes (except after capture of objectives when next barrage following will be for six minutes instead of three).

13 Two Stokes Guns will be attached to us to assist in attack on SUGAR FACTORY

14 Battn Hdqtrs will leave present position at 8.00 pm on the night of the 14<sup>th</sup> inst and will open at R.35.c.4.3 at 100.00 pm. They will remain there until after capture of final objective, when they will move forward to German First Line.

15 Brigade Hdqtrs will remain in present location.

16 Dumps for all materials will be established as follows:

Main Dump	at Brigade Hdqtrs
Dumps	at Battalion Hdqtrs

Auxiliary Dumps as under:

No.	First Position	Forward Position
20 <sup>th</sup> Bn	R.35.d.6.2	R.36.c.0.6
21 <sup>st</sup> Bn	R.35.c.7.5	R.35.d.3.7 and R.35.b.7.1

17 Lieut Wood will be in charge of Battn Dump, which will contain the following material:

Shovels	SAA ( <i>small arms ammunition</i> )
Picks	Very Pistol flares
Sand Bags	SOS Rockets
Grenades	Rations and Water

18 Each man will carry the following:

4 Sand Bags  
2 Mills Grenades (Dump will be established when the final objective is reached where these grenades will be placed)  
3 Bandoleros of SAS  
48 hours Rations and Water Bottles filled (of which sparing use must be made)

SAA may be drawn at Bn Hdqtrs tomorrow morning



- 19 The Fourth and Fifth waves will carry picks and shovels, these may be obtained at the Brigade Dump on the afternoon of the 14<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 20 Every alternate man of the First wave will carry a red flare which is to be used for communication with aircraft under the senior Officer in the line when the final objective is reached. Flares may be obtained at Bn Hdqtrs on the morning of the 14<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 21 Communication Trenches will be allotted as follows:
- |    |               |     |
|----|---------------|-----|
| 1. | PEG TRENCH    | IN  |
| 2. | WALKER AVENUE | OUT |
| 3. | YARRA BEND    | IN  |
- SYDNEY TRENCH is allotted exclusively to 21<sup>st</sup> Battn when moving to our forward position and must be thoroughly reconnoitered  
COPSE AVENUE and CENTRE WAY are allotted to 6<sup>th</sup> CIB
- 22 All Watches must be synchronized
- 23 Company Commanders will report by runner immediately they have taken up their respective assembly position.
- 24 All officers and other ranks not detailed to go into the attack will report to Major Elmitt at Bn Hdqtrs at 7.00 pm the 14<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 25 Company and Detail Commanders will insure that all ranks have a hot meal at 6.00 pm
- 26 Lieut Brownlee will act as Bn Liaison Officer and will report at Brigade Hdqtrs at 9.00 pm the 14<sup>th</sup> inst
- 27 All ranks will be instructed that no wounded are to be carried back except by stretcher bearers until after the action, and no man not seriously wounded is to go back with permission of an Officer.
- 28 Following are the times which Companies will move to their assembly positions:
- |            |                                    |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| "A"        | 11.00 pm                           |
| "B"        | 11.30 pm                           |
| "C"        | 12.30 am                           |
| "D"        | 12.45 am                           |
| Signals    | 11.00 pm                           |
| Scouts     | 1.00 am                            |
| MG Section | in time to go forward with "D" Coy |
| Bombers    | will move with "A" Coy             |
- The Battalion must be in position by 4.00 am
- 29 At X hour which will be communicated later, the Battn will advance and an intense shrapnel barrage will begin. X hour will probably be between 6.00 am and 6.30 am.
- 30 A machine gun barrage has been arranged for as already indicated. All ranks should be warned that machine guns will fire from behind, over-head.

31 A Section Heavy Section MG Corps will accompany the advance and will be employed as follows:

(a) Left Detachment

One male and two female tanks will cross our front line about R.35.a.0.3 at X and advance behind artillery barrage to R.35.a.4.6, and thence along the German trench to R.30.c.0.2 – R.30.c.3.3 – R.30.c.5.1 and the SUGAR FACTORY, with female tank on SOUTH of trench and one male and one female on NORTH of trench. This detachment will cover the left flank of the advancing infantry, and will assist in mopping up. On arrival of the SUGAR FACTORY, the tanks will attack any machine guns there or in COURCELETTE, which they can deal with.

(b) Right Detachment

Two male and one female tank will cross our front line on the BAPAUME ROAD at X, and move as rapidly as possible down the road, one tank on the road and one 30 yards each side to R.36.a.5.5. A lane in the barrage will be kept free for 50 yards on either side of the road for this detachment.

As soon as the barrage lifts (at X 43 minutes) off the final objective, one male and one female tank will move by R.36.a.8.7 down the trench towards M.31.b.8.8 the other male will assist in dealing with SUGAR FACTORY.

(c) If tanks are unable to go as fast as the infantry the latter will not wait for them, but a detachment of 5 men will be left to remove wounded from its track. When final objectives have been obtained these tanks will return.

32 No 7 Squadron RFC will detail contact patrol to fly over objectives as soon after X hour as light permits. Flares will be lighted by the most advanced line when the aeroplane sounds a klaxon horn. The Contact Patrol machines are marked with a black band under right lower plane and a blue [*undecipherable*] on the inside stay of right wing.

33 Prisoners will be sent back to Battalion HQ

34 The SOS signal from 12.00 Noon today until further notice is RED – BLUE – RED.

35 Watches will be synchronized at 7.00 pm today and 1.00 am tomorrow morning

36 Moving to position will be done quietly, and when in position all ranks should be encouraged to maintain silence. If the advance is made in darkness cheering will NOT be permitted.

37 Covering parties will be placed well forward during the time Companies are taking up their positions.

38 Main points to impress on all ranks are: - that the attack must be pushed with the utmost vigour until the objective is gained, and when gained that it must be held.

To ensure success, the programme must be adhered to as nearly as possible, and opportunities watched for and seized.

(signed by SL Cunningham)  
Capt  
Adj. 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

The following pages are from documents that were part of the personal papers of  
Lieut Col Elmer Watson Jones DSO w/Bar, who was Commanding Officer of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
during the action at the Somme in September 1916

15/10/16

Dear General Rennell  
I'm enclosing history of  
the "Somme" fight as promised

Faithfully yours  
Elmer Jones

21<sup>st</sup> BN

Operations ordered to be

Carried out on or about Sept 15<sup>th</sup> 1916 by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade in conjunction with Brigade on Right & Left.

The objective being the German trench (second line) from M. 31. b. 7.3 to ~~M. 31. b. 2.5 1/2~~  
to R. 30. c. 5.1 including strong points about the Sugar Factory in R. 36. a.

The attack to be made on a 3 Battalion front -

The objective of the 21<sup>st</sup> Batt<sup>n</sup> from R. 36. a. 8.7 1/2 to R. 30. c. 5.1

The Batt<sup>n</sup> to attack on a front of 3 platoons. Each platoon to be followed by 3 platoons of its own Coy. making 4 waves. The 4<sup>th</sup> Coy of each Batt<sup>n</sup> will follow the attack as a fifth wave & have a special

12

mission The full instruction  
 contained in order :-  
 46 213<sup>de</sup> 990.  
 and amendment 990/1

Complete operation order of  
 21 B<sup>n</sup> by Lt Col 26 Jones attached

<u>OPERATIONS</u>	
	21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
Move	On the night of the 14 <sup>th</sup> September the 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion moved from billet at LA BOISELLE at 10.30 pm and took up Bn HQ at point 43 on map attached.
Position	<p>The Battalion took up position in front trenches with Right on BAPAUME – ALBERT Road, extending to Left about 300 yards, the front being covered by 3 Coys with one Coy in reserve.</p> <p>The Bn was in position less 2 Platoons which had been sent to relieve 2 Platoons of the 19<sup>th</sup> Bn 2 days previously.</p> <p>These two Platoons were badly cut up by a bombing attack delivered by the enemy shortly before the time of general advance and only Sergt Kitchener and 16 men went forward with the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Bn but afterwards joined the 21<sup>st</sup> Bn at Sugar Factory.</p>

<p>Barrage <u>Sept 15, 1916</u> Advance</p>	<p>The artillery opened a barrage 50 yards in front of enemy front line trench at 6.20 am 15<sup>th</sup> September, and at 6.25 lifted and shelled enemy front line trench for one minute. The barrage then lifted 100 yards and Battalion advanced.</p> <p>No difficulty was experienced in taking 1<sup>st</sup> line trench as the artillery had thoroughly demolished this trench and killed most of the occupants.</p> <p>On our advancing some of the enemy offered to surrender but in most cases these men were bayoneted by our advancing troops.</p> <p>On the right of our line near BAPAUME Road about 30 of the enemy left trench and retired. These men were all accounted for by our rifle fire.</p>
<p><u>Advance Continued</u></p>	<p>On continuing the advance the next point where opposition was met was the road or trench half way from starting point to the SUGAR FACTORY.</p> <p>Here small detached posts of the enemy were encountered and shot or bayoneted by our advancing troops.</p> <p>On proceeding to this trench the Battalion suffered heavily by reason of machine gun fire from machine guns in trench, the crews of which were accounted for by our troops on left flank.</p> <p>At this time all the officers of "B" Coy were casualties, also several officers of other companies.</p> <p>CSM Deane took over command of "B" Company. From this trench to Sugar Factory our chief opposition was from snipers and machine gun fire.</p> <p>Fortunately our artillery fire had been so accurate that many of the defences of this strong point had been demolished. Our troops, however, knowing this to be well defended, attacked it with great vigor, and although met by heavy rifle and machine gun fire, went forward. Although our losses were severe the objective was gained and 125 prisoners captured. That the SUGAR FACTORY was strongly held was proven by the numbers of enemy dead found in the factory and also the ruins of machine guns.</p> <p>In a deep dugout inside the buildings were some men who refused to surrender but on a P bomb being thrown in, 6 officers and 21 men wearing gas helmets came out and surrendered.</p> <p>From this point we advanced some 150 yards with our patrols and established advanced posts in which were placed Lewis Guns. The line in front of the SUGAR FACTORY (our objective) was taken at 7.30 am 15<sup>th</sup> September.</p>
<p><u>16<sup>th</sup> Sept 1916</u></p>	<p>The position was held by the battalion until 6.10 am 16-9-16.</p> <p>Approximate strength of front line was then about 200 all ranks and 4 machine guns.</p>

<p><u>15<sup>th</sup> Sept 1916</u></p> <p><u>Notes</u></p> <p><u>Maps and Information</u></p> <p><u>Telephone Communication</u></p> <p><u>Holding Position</u></p>	<p>“D” Coy who were to dig the Half-way Trench commenced work at 7.20 am 15<sup>th</sup> September and consolidated position from junction of ALBERT – BAPAUME Road and SUGAR FACTORY about 450 yards NW of same.</p> <p>Strength about 50 OR, 1 Lewis Gun, 1 Colt gun under command of CSM Verdon.</p> <p>The Right flank of Coy on road and left resting in front of village on left.</p> <p>With reference to last para a message was received at 9.00 am 14<sup>th</sup> inst, from 4<sup>th</sup> C.I. Bde as follows: (C.577)</p> <p>“Artillery have instructions to lift barrage at 9.30 am AAA You will establish posts on SUNKEN ROAD beyond your final objective as soon as possible. AAA British are co-operating on left AAA Acknowledge.”</p> <p>This message was sent forward to Coy Commanders and OC front line who assured us we occupied SUNKEN ROAD.</p> <p>The OC 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion then got into communication with 4<sup>th</sup> CI Bde who informed him that Lieut Davidson had been to the HQ Brigade and shown Major Armstrong where the position was and he said that was SUNKEN ROAD.</p> <p>“D” Company lost all officers, also CS Major. The command of the company devolved on Sergt Trappitt.</p> <p>Several maps, papers, etc, were secured at Sugar Factory and were sent to Bn HQ. all that reached there were then forwarded to Bde HQ.</p> <p>After the prisoners were taken from SUGAR FACTORY two bombers explored interior and found a wounded German. All possible was done for him and he was left there.</p> <p>All communication was cut off from receiver’s transmitters at SUGAR FACTORY communicating with German HQ at 11 am. One transmitter and receiver set was at the same time taken by the artillery observer and used on main BAPAUME ROAD connecting batteries.</p> <p>The position was held all day under heavy shell fire from guns of all caliber. Casualties about 25 killed.</p> <p>At 3.00 pm the following message was received from 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade:</p> <p>“BM 320 15<sup>th</sup>  Hold on to SUNKEN ROAD AAA Bde on our Right are taking MARTINPUICH at 3.00 pm AAA 5<sup>th</sup> CIB are advancing through us at 6.00 pm AAA 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division are advancing on our Left AAA Seize first opportunity of establishing first line in SUNKEN ROAD in conjunction with British and 5<sup>th</sup> Bde advance.</p> <p>This order was sent to front line and supports who received it at 5.50 pm. Line held all day.</p>
---	--

<p><u>5<sup>th</sup> Bde Troops Relieving</u></p> <p><u>Command</u></p> <p><u>16/9/16</u></p> <p><u>GARRISON FOR SUGAR REFINERY</u></p>	<p>At 6.30 pm the following message was received from 4<sup>th</sup> CI Bde:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">“BM 324      15<sup>th</sup>      5.35 pm Your Bn will be withdrawn tonight AAA Further orders will be issued AAA You may commence to evacuate your wounded as soon as the 5<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bde passes through you.”</p> <p>The message was sent to all concerned.</p> <p>At 5.45 pm 15<sup>th</sup>, the 5<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bde Troops were seen to be coming towards us from the rear in extended order.</p> <p>The German artillery immediately opened fire on our position at the SUGAR FACTORY.</p> <p>At 5.50 pm 15<sup>th</sup>, the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Bde passed through us to SUNKEN ROAD but did not take up any position immediately in our front.</p> <p>At 7.00 pm Lieut HUNTER took over command from Lieut Fraser who was sent back wounded.</p> <p>From 6 pm 15<sup>th</sup> instant to 3 am 16<sup>th</sup> inst a heavy bombardment continued but there was no immediate sign of a counter attack.</p> <p>At 1.30 am 16<sup>th</sup> we received the following message from 4<sup>th</sup> CI Bde –</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">“BM 335/1      16<sup>th</sup>      12.45 am</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">20<sup>th</sup> Bn now occupying line of SUNKEN ROAD AAA 22<sup>nd</sup> Bn are in vicinity of M.25 Central AAA A tank will proceed up BAPAUME Road at daylight today AAA You will push party close up behind Tank and occupy line of SUNKEN ROAD joining up with 22<sup>nd</sup> Bn on Left and 20<sup>th</sup> Bn on right AAA Should Tank fail you will push on as it is intended to put Cavalry through on your front if you reach and capture SUNKEN RAOD.      URGENT PRIORITY”</p> <p>This message was sent to front line by two runners, neither of whom reached there. At 4.30 am Lieut Fraser left Bn HQ with the message and he reached there at 5.15 am 16<sup>th</sup>, and advised accordingly, taking command of party.</p> <p>The line waited until 6.45 am for Tank but as it failed to appear, advanced in extended order towards SUNKEN ROAD where they were met by heavy machine gun fire both from the front and left flank.</p> <p>Lieut Mowett was left behind at the SUGAR Refinery with 1 NCO and 22 men with instructions to hold at all costs.</p> <p>When the line reached the position about 100 yards in front of SUNKEN ROAD the fire was so heavy that nearly all had to seek cover in trench.</p>
---	---



	<p>The left flank of the line overran our objective and were temporarily lost, only two Officers and about 8 men reaching the SUNKEN ROAD.</p> <p>Lieut Fraser returned to trench in rear of SUNKEN ROAD to make arrangements to have the remainder of the men brought up, but failed to reach there.</p> <p>As soon as the men who reached the position had dug themselves in and consolidated position, Lieut Hunter who was then in charge proceeded to find out what troops were occupying flanks, and on his found no one occupying SUNKEN ROAD, the men having returned to the trench in rear.</p> <p>Lieut Hunter then tried to locate some place to get back to men in rear and there found Major McLaughlin and some NCOs and men who were able to reach SUNKEN ROAD, total about 42 Officers and ORs.</p> <p><u>Reinforcements</u> At 6.30 am 16<sup>th</sup>, Major McLaughlin and Lieut BROWNLEE reported to SUGAR FACTORY LINE with 6 men.</p> <p>At 11.00 am 16<sup>th</sup> Lieut McGee reported to Battalion HQ with 50 OR who had been engaged on various other duties and proceeded from there to SUGAR FACTORY LINE.</p> <p><u>Consolidation with 20<sup>th</sup> and 22<sup>nd</sup> Btn positions</u> At 12.00 noon, 16<sup>th</sup>, the line was consolidated with 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Bn on Right and 22<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Bn on Left. Total about 75 all ranks. Major McLaughlin in command.</p> <p>A heavy bombardment by the enemy continued.</p> <p><u>Prisoners</u> About 4.30 pm 16<sup>th</sup>, observer reported large body of Germans advancing from direction of cemetery carrying red cross flag led by two Officers.</p> <p>Instructions not to fire on them were given but all to be on the alert. It appeared then that they were unarmed so they were allowed to cone on and were passed on to the rear.</p> <p>As we had so few men they were then passed on to the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the Right Flank. Several were wounded and when they reached the extreme right of our line, they enemy attempted a counter attack.</p> <p><u>Counter Attack</u> Rapid fire was opened up which drove them back to their trenches, from that time on a heavy shell fire was kept up by the enemy till the Bn was relieved at about 4.30 am 17<sup>th</sup> inst, when the Battalion was moved back to a position near Bde HQ.</p>
--	---

21<sup>st</sup> Ban Battalion

23. 9. 16

Bombing Section

On the morning of the 15<sup>th</sup> 16 Ban Battalion Bombards with Lt Davidson in charge, dug ourselves in just behind the firing line. About 6.30 am Lt Davidson gave the order to advance.

We advanced behind our barrage until we got to the Sugar Refinery.

On arriving at the Refinery Lt Davidson took charge of D Company leaving myself in charge of Battalion Bombards. I ordered the N. C. O's & men which I had left to dig themselves in about 10 yards behind the Refinery so <sup>that</sup> we ~~were~~ could stop any counter-attacks which the enemy might make.

On the morning of the 16<sup>th</sup>  
Lt Frayer came up & told  
me to bring up the Battalion Bombers  
as we were going to advance  
another 400 yds & take the  
Sunken Road.

About 6:30 am the 16<sup>th</sup> we  
went over the Parapet.  
About half-way over the  
Germans opened up about 3  
Machine-guns & Rapid fire.  
Seeing a B. T. about 10 yards  
to the right I led the bombers  
into it so that we could get  
some cover.

When we got into the B. T.  
I met Major McLaughlin.  
I reported to him for orders.  
About 11 am we advanced up  
the B. T. along the sunken  
Road & connected up with the  
20<sup>th</sup> Battalion & dug ourselves in.  
The German were shelling the  
road the whole time.

③

About 5 o'clock in the afternoon about 50 prisoners came along the road from the 22<sup>nd</sup> Battalion section.

When they got behind our section the German began a counter-attack.

I told about half my Bombers to about turn & watch the prisoners as they were trying to get in our holes for cover.

The rest of the line opened up rapid fire & beat off the attack.

We sent the prisoners back to the rear after we had beaten off the counter-attack.

We were relieved by the 26<sup>th</sup> Battalion at about 11:30 on the 17<sup>th</sup> after holding the line at the refinery for about 24 hours & the sunken about 24 hours without food & water.

Sgt. Blackburn

P. S. (4)  
I brought out 8 N. C. Os  
& men when Retrieved.

Sgt. Blackburn

21<sup>st</sup> CANADIANS

SCOUT SECTION,

23<sup>rd</sup> Sept 1916

Report of Operations of Scout Section Sept 15<sup>th</sup> + 16<sup>th</sup> / 16

As per orders from Brigade 50% of the Scout Section, were left at Albert.

2/Cpl Belyea and Scout Wood left Battalion Headquarters at 9 PM on the 14<sup>th</sup> along with Lt Brownlee and laid tape to mark line of our 1<sup>st</sup> attacking wave.

The Section left Sausage Valley at 1 AM on the 15<sup>th</sup> arriving at Battalion Hdqrs R. 35. c. 4. 3. at 4 AM.

Lt Mone reported to Commanding Officer, the Section dug themselves in an old German trench close to Battalion Hdqrs.

Between 4 and 5 AM 15<sup>th</sup> Lt Mone was wounded by shrapnel near Battalion Hdqrs. Sargent Macpherson was then



detached by Commanding Officer to take charge of the Scout Section.

Soon after the attack had taken place, two parties were sent out under Lt Col Northey and Lt Belyea to report on the situation.

Both parties returned with the information that all our objectives had been gained, and we had connected up with the 20<sup>th</sup> <sup>Consolidated</sup> <sup>Parade</sup> <sup>Companies</sup> <sup>Batt<sup>n</sup></sup> on our right, and 27<sup>th</sup> <sup>Batt<sup>n</sup></sup> on our left.

Sgt Macfarlan. Lt Belyea Scout Wood & Day searched ground to Sugar Refinery for wounded officers & men. This party used prisoners to carry in our wounded.

The Section was afterwards employed carrying messages from Batt<sup>n</sup> Hdq<sup>s</sup> to Sugar Refinery and to Sunken Road. also

3

also acting as Guides to reinforcing parties, and bringing in wounded.

The work of the Section throughout was carried on with thoroughness and precision. Every man being employed and showing great devotion to Duty.

The Section was relieved at 5 AM on the morning of the 17<sup>th</sup> inst and proceeded to Brigade Hdqs.

J. A. Macfadyen  
Sergt Scouts



M. G. S. Report.

Operations commencing 15/9/16.

Machine gun section Reported in position 4.50 am 15<sup>th</sup> Twelve guns strong.

2 Lewis guns per company. A.B. C.D.

2 Colt guns 5<sup>th</sup> wave

2 Colt guns Reserve 72<sup>nd</sup> Hqs

Colt section advanced 4.20 one gun on each flank of D. Coy. to a line approx R 35 B. 7. 5. to R. 36. a. 5. 5. and consolidated.

11  
The Lewis guns advanced with  
their respective companies, and only  
3 arrived at the objective. 100  
yds in advance of first German  
trench beyond sugar refinery  
Capt Pense reported to O. C.

Machine Gun Sect that he had  
not enough machine gun protection  
M. G. O. then sent back an order  
to Btn Hqs. for one of the  
reserve guns to come up and bring  
shovels. This message evidently  
did not reach Hqs.

Mr Taylor and myself then

111  
scouted round to try and find  
what had become of the other guns

We ultimately found two D.  
Company guns. and one 27<sup>th</sup> Bde  
gun. Placed these in position  
making a total of 6 guns in

advanced post. Time 8 a.m.  
One gun out of action 4.15 p.m.  
Held advanced post until troops  
of 5<sup>th</sup> Can Bde advanced through  
us in extended order. Enemy  
evidently observed them and  
shelled positions heavily.

Another gun out of action before  
daylight. Team O.K.

~~III~~  
III. Another were made casualties. No  
IV team salvaged gun. This team  
was the only one to advance on  
sunken road. Retired when <sup>relieved</sup> Btm was.

III. 24<sup>th</sup> team missing before daylight 16<sup>th</sup>

V. Another gun left with Lt. Morris  
to defend sugar refinery. This  
team retired with party of C  
company. 7.30 pm 16<sup>th</sup>

VI. Another team got separated from  
their company and got lost.

Retired 1 am 16<sup>th</sup>

VII. One gun advanced with the  
right flank of the Battalion and

V  
Got mixed with the 19<sup>th</sup>. This  
team was made consolidate with  
the 19<sup>th</sup>. Retired 7.50 pm 16<sup>th</sup>

VIII  
and  
IX  
2 teams and guns casualties  
never advanced past German  
first line.

Message came through Sgt  
Trappitt D-boy. to evacuate  
halfway trench. This was done  
about 2 am 16<sup>th</sup> having 2  
colt guns there. I went to  
with draw them. Found one  
gun O.K. - The other team  
were missing so I retired

~~VI~~

with one gun and six men  
and reported to Btn Hqs and  
was told to stay at Bde Hqs.  
The other two colt <sup>reserve</sup> guns also  
retired at 2. am 16<sup>th</sup>.

Total casualties in Colt Section  
during action.

- 1 officer killed
- 6 men missing
- 2 " wounded.

~~Serjt Marks~~



OPERATIONS  
Of  
4<sup>th</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE  
at the  
SOMME

September 10<sup>th</sup> to 17<sup>th</sup> 1916

Brigadier-General R. Rennie, M.V.O., D.S.O.  
Commanding

On September 10<sup>th</sup> the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Bde took over from the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, the trenches held by the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division running approximately from X.6.a.3.6 to R.35.c.7.5. These trenches were about 1500 yards South of the Western end of the Village of COURCELETTE. The frontage was approximately 1000 yards.

Immediately upon taking over, the Brigade commenced work, in preparation for an attack which was to be made on the 15<sup>th</sup> September. On September 8<sup>th</sup>, a Battalion of the 1<sup>st</sup> Brigade had successfully attacked a portion of the enemy front line on the right of the Sector taken over by the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade, and consolidation of this new position had also to be completed.

The attack of September 15<sup>th</sup> was arranged to be on an extended front – the Canadian Corps on the left, with the Fourth British Army and French Armies on the Right, to the East and South East. The operation was intended to be extensive, and to advance the entire British Front in this locality, together with a considerable portion of the Front held by the French. The task allotted to the 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Brigade was that portion of the main objective between MARTINPUICH and COURCELETTE, extending about 250 yards North west of the ALBERT-BAPAUME ROAD, and about 450 yards to the South East of that Road. The objective itself, was an enemy second line Fire trench, said to be well garrisoned, and the strong point at the SUGAR FACTORY in front of that line. The SUGAR FACTORY was known to be a strong position, and it was expected would be defended with determination. Prisoners taken by Units of the Bde., during the few days previous to the operation gave clear information upon that point.

In preparation for the attack, a series of jumping off trenches in advance of our Front Line, had to be dug. This work was carried out successfully by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion, Major Gordon F. Morrison, Commanding in the absence of Lieut-Colonel WR Turnbull, wounded in a previous engagement. The enemy shelling during the days this work was going on, was very severe, and unfortunately many casualties resulted. The great value of these forward trenches, which were dug by the men of the 19<sup>th</sup> Bn., was however, clearly shown by subsequent events and too much credit cannot be given to those responsible for the carrying out of the work, which was done under an irritating and destructive fire during several days and nights. Our Artillery kept up a steady and very effective fire day and night on the 12<sup>th</sup>, 13<sup>th</sup> and 14<sup>th</sup> September. This fire covered all enemy trenches which came within the zone of the attack, and the effect was clearly revealed in the shattered nerves of many of the prisoners who came in on the day of our advance.

In addition to preparing trenches for our attacking troops, a system of Communication trenches was completed giving direct access to each sector of the Brigade Front.

Dumps well supplied with stores of water & Food Ammunition and material were established in Forward positions, and at an hour calculated to be in advance of any hostile barrage, these Dumps were moved forward so that supplies were available for the work of consolidation when required.

The Plan of attack decided upon for Units of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade was that three Battalions should divide the Front, the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion Commanded by Lt-Colonel H.L. Milligan on the Right, 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion Commanded by Lieut-Colonel C.H. Rogers in the centre, with left resting on and inclusive of the LABERT-BAPAUME ROAD, and the 21<sup>st</sup> Bn. Commanded by Lt-Colonel Elmer Jones, from that Road to the left of our area. Each Battalion was to attack on a three Platoon frontage, with the remaining three Platoons of each Company following as second, third and fourth waves. The fourth Company of each Battalion to follow as a fifth wave and to be given a special Mission.

The four waves were to form up in the jumping-off trenches, previously prepared, and to be in position in ample time to give all ranks a good rest before the hour fixed for the assault. The Fourth Company of each Battalion forming the fifth wave, formed up in trenches in rear. In addition, Platoons from the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion, followed closely upon the first wave of the three attacking Battalions as an intermediate wave, and the instructions given to this wave, were, that it should "mop up" or deal with any enemy left, who might possibly fire into the backs of those troops who had passed on. The intermediate wave was also instructed to consolidate the First Line German Trench and take charge of all Prisoners.

During the night the movement of the 18<sup>th</sup>, 20<sup>th</sup> & 21<sup>st</sup> Battalions to the jumping off trenches, was carried out satisfactorily, perfect silence being maintained. The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion had been relieved in the Front Line trench by some Platoons of the other Battalions detailed for the assault. At about 3.am a determined attack by Strong enemy Bombing parties was mad upon both flanks of the right sector of our Trench. This was the section that had been taken from the enemy by the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade a few days previously. From copies of his orders for this operation, subsequently captured, it appears evident that the enemy had carefully planned an attack at this point. On the right he was met by vigorous bombing and rifle fire, and did not succeed in getting into our trenches. He left many dead & some wounded who were afterwards brought in. A young Subaltern, Lieut Hugh H. Sykes, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion promptly organized his bombing defence and effectually maintained his position on the Right. The enemy were unable to gain access to our trenches on that Flank. On the left flank, at a point where the trenches converged, and the Lines were only a few yards apart, the enemy succeeded in rushing a party into our trenches. It would appear that this was to have been but the preliminary to a more determined attack to follow if the rush proved successful. Prompt action on the part of Lieut Gidley, 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion and a party of 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion Bombers, assisted by parties from the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn., quickly drove out the enemy and enabled us to complete plans for our advance.

Zero hour had been fixed for 6.20 am at which time the Artillery opened fire. The enemy had placed a strong force in his front and support trenches, presumably with the object of exploiting any initial success in his attack, and these troops had not been withdrawn when our barrage came down upon them. All Battalions of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade were reported in position and everything ready shortly before zero hour. As the four Battalions of the Brigade were being employed in the operation the 24<sup>th</sup> Bn., of the 5<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Brigade, Commanded by Lieut-Colonel J.A. Gunn, was detailed to the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade as reserve.

At 6.20 am the Artillery for a few minutes, directed their fire on the area in front of the enemy trenches, for the purpose of destroying any small parties or outposts of the enemy which might have been placed in advanced posts in shell holes. At 6.24 am the barrage lifted, and the Infantry advanced to the assault.

The first German trench was captured at 6.25 am. A great many dead were found in the trench, our Artillery fire having wrought great havoc. The fire again lifted and the Infantry in waves, advanced, following closely under the curtain of shrapnel.

At 6.34 am the second German trench was captured. During the advance on the right, towards this trench, the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion moving forward steadily, noticed a party of the enemy apparently prepared to surrender. Captain S.M. Loghrin went forward to accept their surrender, and when doing so, was killed by a bomb thrown by one of the enemy party. This foul act of treachery was observed by the men of his Company, with the result that none of the occupants of the trench were allowed to escape alive. Other trenches were



encountered as the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion steadily proceeded, following closely in rear of our terrible artillery barrage. These trenches were captured and the enemy either killed or taken prisoner. By this time a steady stream of prisoners was being sent back from the right section, in which our advance was made in close co-operation with that of the British Brigade on our right.

At 6.30 am the "TANKS" supporting the advance of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade, went forward in accordance with instructions and assisted in the taking of some enemy positions.

In the centre of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade front, the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion under command of Lieut-Colonel C.H. Rogers, and on the left, the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion under command of Lieut-Col., Elmer Jones, were making splendid progress. The Front Line and support trenches were found full of the enemy but nothing could check the determined advance of the men of these Battalions. The trenches were taken, and where the occupants promptly surrendered, they were allowed to become prisoners and were sent to the rear.

The strong point at the SUGAR FACTORY was expected to prove a difficult proposition, and complete arrangements had been made to deal effectively with it. Concentrated heavy artillery fire assisted materially in checking the enemy machine gun fire. Our attack was made from 3 sides and following immediately upon the barrage lifting this strong point was taken a few minutes after our first line reached the position.

At 6.55 am the men of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion entered and took possession of what remained of the SUGAR FACTORY. The final objective beyond this point was taken at 7 am, & at 7.20 am the second German trench, our objective, was reported as being entirely in our possession.

On the way to the SUGAR FACTORY, small detached posts of the enemy were encountered and these caused some casualties. The occupants were in almost every case shot or bayoneted. Some machine Gun fire was also encountered from hidden positions in the vicinity of COURCELETTE. These were afterwards dealt with by the Battalion of the 6<sup>th</sup> Bde., moving forward in co-operation with the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion.

About the time the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion reached the SUGAR FACTORY all the Officers of "B" Company had become casualties, and the command of this Company devolved upon CSM Deane who took charge until the work of consolidation had been completed. About 125 prisoners were captured in the vicinity of the SUGAR FACTORY. Included in this number were 10 Officers, one of whom was the Commander of the Battalion. A number of the enemy, among them six officers refused to come out of a deep dug-out in the SUGAR FACTORY. A smoke bomb was thrown in and they immediately came out wearing gas helmets and surrendered.

At about 7.50 am one of our "TANKS" passed the SUGAR FACTORY on the right and circled round North and East. This, prisoners stated had a terrifying effect, and they reported that their fire had no effect on it.

The prisoners taken at the SUGAR FACTORY admitted the complete surprise of our attack, and the officers did not hesitate to express their admiration for the irresistible advance of our Infantry and their own helplessness in face of our bombardment. The objective having been gained along our entire front the work of consolidating the captured lines was pressed forward with unceasing energy. The reserve Companies of all Battalions which went forward as the fifth wave hastily dug a support trench behind the newly taken German trench and in a short time all were under cover.

Arrangements previously made for the construction of a main communication Trench were now put into operation. The Pioneer Battalion which had been kept in readiness to do this work, was sent forward, and under Major MacDonell promptly set to work to dig a Communication trench, afterward known as RENNIE STREET, through our old front line to our new position.

Immediately the objective had been gained, and in accordance with instructions previously given, the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn., in the centre section of our attack sent forward a patrol under Captain Heron MC., which reached the SUNKEN ROAD, termed GUN PIT ROAD, about 900 yards beyond our objective. This patrol went out with great determination and entered the enemy trenches which were on the roadside. Here they found numbers of the enemy in deep dug-outs. They bombed a number of these hiding places and captured two machine guns, and returned bringing with them, two prisoners. The report of the success of this operation was at once sent to Headquarters, and orders were issued to all Battalions to move forward and after taking possession of GUN PIT ROAD to establish a line of posts therein.

At 9.20 am under Artillery protection, parties from the three Battalions of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade, moved forward to GUN PIT ROAD which was taken after little opposition. The enemy occupying the trenches and dug-outs were either killed or captured with the exception of a few who attempted to run away in the direction of LE SARS, most of these were accounted for by our Infantry or were caught by our artillery fire. About 50 unwounded prisoners were sent back by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion alone.

While the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade was securing and consolidating GUN PIT TRENCH the Brigade on our right came forward and joined up with the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion. Information had been sent to the British Brigade that we had succeeded in entering GUN PIT ROAD TRENCH and thereupon their advance to the same line was made.

On the left of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade line, the opposition was more determined. A strong force of the enemy had placed themselves securely in some old trenches about 200 yards to our left, and were causing some casualties to our men moving in the open. The 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade on our left had secured their objective and were improving their positions. Sniping continued more or less active from COURCELETTE, which was undoubtedly occupied by the enemy. The losses of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion were heavy, particularly in Officers and most of the Companies were now commanded by Subalterns and many of the Platoons by Non-Commissioned Officers.

By this time, the enemy had realized that we had penetrated a long way into his defences and had brought his Artillery fire to bear on the Line we had finally gained. The SUGAR FACTORY came in for a terrific shelling and was therefore cleared. GUN PIT ROAD and trenches in the vicinity were also heavily shelled, but our men held their ground tenaciously. All available cover was taken advantage of, and under most trying conditions for many hours, the work of consolidation and improvement of our defences was proceeded with. The splendid spirit displayed by all ranks in the defence of GUN PIT ROAD during the mid-day and afternoon of September 15<sup>th</sup> is an outstanding feature of the splendid work done by the Brigade on that memorable day. The senior Officer of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion remaining, and in charge of the defences was Major McLaughlin. It is to be regretted that in this hotly contested sector, some valuable Officers lost their lives.

During the afternoon, arrangements had been made for the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade to attack the enemy and secure COURCELETTE. This operation began at 5 pm, the Battalions of the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade advanced through our area and successfully attacked the enemy on the North and West of COURCELETTE. In this operation they were assisted materially by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion posts in GUN PIT ROAD, and by Machine Guns posted near the junction of ALBERT-BAPAUME ROAD and GUN PIT ROAD. Our Machine Guns swept the area to the north, keeping down the fire of the enemy and covering the advance of the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade.

During the night our positions were improved. The enemy's shelling became more intense towards the morning of the 16<sup>th</sup>. Our losses were numerous and some of our Platoons and Companies were considerably reduced in numbers. During the night one or two minor counter attacks were driven off. Early on the 16<sup>th</sup>, reinforcements for the enemy appeared to have been brought up and at about 6 o'clock in the afternoon a determined counter attack was launched against the left of our position in GUN PIT ROAD.

The enemy were holding an old trench about 200 yards North of our position. A party of about 150 prisoners were coming in, passing behind our front line from the direction of COURCELETTE carrying some of our wounded on Stretchers and displaying a large Red Cross Flag. Just as the party got behind our lines, the enemy turned his artillery on them and at the same time started a Bombing attack on the left of our position. An advance was also made from the old trench referred to, by a strong and well organized party of the enemy. They came forward in a most determined manner, apparently with the object of retaking the position held by the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion in GUN PIT ROAD and which we had held throughout the day. Sergt Wiggins and Sergt., Jones of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion were in command. For a while matters looked serious, as it would not have been difficult for the prisoners coming behind to have fallen upon the weak Platoon holding our trenches and combined with the attacking force from the front, to have wiped out our Garrison. The two non-Commissioned Officers steadied their men and allowed the enemy to get out of the trenches and into the open. They then opened a withering rapid fire from their whole line and at the same time the machine guns of the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the right came into action. The ranks of the enemy melted away. The few who were not killed or severely wounded rushed back to their trenches and the counter attack failed. Subsequent examination of the ground which was covered with dead, gave evidence of the deadly effect of our fire.

The "TANKS" used for the first time, proved their value. Prisoners stated that, in their opinion, it was not war but "Butchery". One tank is reported to have got astride an enemy trench and to have enfiladed it both ways. A Machine gun Officer captured in the SUGAR FACTORY declared that he directed fire on them but without an effect and certainly the advance of this new offensive weapon, had much to do with the success of the operation.

During the night of the 16<sup>th</sup> the right and centre Battalions were relieved by a British Brigade and early the morning of the 17<sup>th</sup> the Left Battalion was relieved by the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, and the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade was withdrawn from the Line for a rest.

### TRANSLATION OF A CAPTURED GERMAN DOCUMENT

(Orders for attack on 15<sup>th</sup> Sept 1916)

45<sup>th</sup> Reserve Division.

13-9-16  
(Ref. No 1627 I.)

The trench lost on the 9<sup>th</sup> September (map location E) will, after artillery preparation, be cleared of the enemy and retaken on the morning of the 15<sup>th</sup> September. "Sturmstruppen" will be employed for this purpose.

Artillery Preparation will be arranged under special orders from Heavy Artillery Commander, General Sturve. The artillery will fire on the objective, commencing at 9.30 on the morning of the 14<sup>th</sup> September.

The Wirkum Scheisen will commence at 11 am on the morning of the 14<sup>th</sup>, and will be carried on until the 15<sup>th</sup> at 4 am when it will be lifted to 300 metres. The Abriegelungsfeuerer (intense) will be carried out on the 15<sup>th</sup> September until 7 am.

In order to protect the Infantry, the Line will be vacated opposite the objective from (time) 14<sup>th</sup> until Hellworden (sunrise-daybreak) on the 15<sup>th</sup>. The support trenches will be manned.....  
The units in the front line will be withdrawn to the following locations at 9.30 on the morning of the 14<sup>th</sup>:

In Hammer-Riegel Trench - to 100 m  
In Feldbahnchhlweg - to 150 m

At 4 am on the 15<sup>th</sup> Sept., execution of Infantry section.

Launching of the attack from the Hammer-Riegel and the Feldbahnchhlweg trenches, 1 Officer and 1 Platoon from the assaulting section; 2 "Gruppen" Infantry of the 10/211.

The meeting of the 1 Officer and 1 Platoon from the assaulting section and the 2 Gruppen of Infantry will be announced by the firing of 3 white Rockets in quick succession. The Sturmstruppen will assemble in Kaplincourt on the 14<sup>th</sup> September, in the forenoon, for special orders.

2/3 – 10/211 under Lieut Hirsch with a machine gun belonging to SS Tr 167 will follow the assaulting section (Sturmstruppen) to the south and will connect with the 2/3 – 10/211 following up along the trench from Feldbahnchhlweg to the North.

The 10/211 will remain in support as arranged (presumably the balance of the Unit not employed in attack.)

Immediately after the 10/211 have taken over, the Companies which previously occupied the positions will resume their former positions in Hammer-Riegel and Feldbahnchhlweg up to the point where the position turns Northward Touch with the 10/211 must be established at any cost as far as possible the supporting troops will keep in touch with the Company in the front line trench.

The 211<sup>th</sup> Machine Guns will be disposed of in Hammer-Riegel and Feldbahnchhlweg, in such a way as to enfilade enemy machine guns which may be found in action.

Signalling lights (Lamps ie visual signalling) will be established between the Sugar Factory and the Company at Hammer-Riegel Road. This light will be used on the morning of the 15<sup>th</sup> September from 4 am till the end of the operation.

The 245<sup>th</sup> TM Company Officer (Minenwerfer) will establish his guns to the west of the point of attack and to the South of Feldbahnchhlweg from 4 am ready to fire on the enemy in case of counter attack.

Assembly Point. The assaulting troops will start from Kaplincourt at 9.30 pm at the exit of Grevillers on Irles side ready to load into the wagons. The responsibility for guiding the wagons to Pys will rest on Capt Kock of the Divisional Staff. The responsibility for guiding the troops from Pys forward will rest as follows: Lieut Hirsch for 2/3 10/211 in the North sector. Lieut Pelz for 1/3 10/211 in the south sector. The troops already in position will not move out without orders from these officers (ie, until the incoming unit is satisfied)

Equipment The attacking troops will be equipped under the orders of the officer concerned.

#### Supporting Troops

Each	(Rifle
Man	(8 hand grenades
	(8-10 egg shaped grenades
	(equipment and entrenching tool

10/211 (Rifle  
each (2 hand grenades  
man (equipment and many heavy trench tools (ie shovels etc)

Pioneers will take their usual number of hand grenades and tools, as well as their establishment of light pistols and ammunition.

Rations Each (infantry) man – 3 iron rations and water bottles.

Zero Hour It is necessary that the exact time be established, and that Zero hour be correctly known. All units taking part will synchronize their watches at Division.

Throughout the Division, during and after the action, the highest combatant spirit must be kept up.

OPERATIONS  
OF  
4<sup>th</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE  
at the  
SOMME  
September 25<sup>th</sup> to October 4<sup>th</sup>  
1916

Brigadier-General R. Rennie, MVO., DSO  
Commanding

On September 25<sup>th</sup>, the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade arrived at the BRUICKFIELDS near ALBERT, and came under the orders of the GOC, 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division, in connection with an operation having for its object, the capture of the Ridge which runs NW of COURCELETTE to the SCHWABEN REDOUBT.

This Operation was to be undertaken by the Canadian Corps in conjunction with the 2<sup>nd</sup> Corps. Detailed orders issued on September 24<sup>th</sup> provided for the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade to be in reserve South East of POZIERES at Zero hour, and for one Battalion coming under orders of the GOC, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion was detailed for this duty and proceeded to the CHALK PITS near POZIERES where it arrived about 5.30 in the afternoon. The same afternoon the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion moved to CHALK PITS, the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion to BAILIFF WOOD and the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion, 4<sup>th</sup> Machine Gun Company and 4<sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery to TARA VALLEY.

The Officers commanding the several Units of the Brigade at this time were as follows:

18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Lt-Col HL Milligan
19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Lt-Col WR Turnbull
20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	Major HV Rorke
21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion	Lt-Col Elmer Jones
4 <sup>th</sup> Machine Gun Coy	Captain J Forbes Mitchell
4 <sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery	Captain AS Morrison

At 12.35 pm on the 25<sup>th</sup> September, the attack was launched by the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division and other Formations. In so far as the task allotted to the Canadian Corps was concerned, the attack was successful. The Formations on our left were, however, held up in some places by concentrated enemy machine gun fire, and sections of the enemy's lines not having been captured, some re-adjustments became necessary.

At 5 pm, the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion was ordered to a forward position, and the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion replaced the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in reserve to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Brigade. Both Battalions were employed during the night in consolidating the new positions, and also in constructing new trenches in portions of the captured area. During these operations the 18<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> Battalions lost many valuable men, the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion being particularly unfortunate in this regard. Throughout the night and during the following morning the enemy shelled our lines heavily particularly with shells of large caliber, causing numerous losses.

The obscurity in connection with the location of the new trenches and the extent of area captured, rendered further immediate advances inadvisable, until the situation had been cleared up. The enemy were holding on to STAFF REDOUBT – SCHWABEN REDOUBT and other strong points, and appeared to have numerous small parties of men with machine guns in isolated positions dotted all over the area. These isolated posts appeared to be quite numerous in front of the Canadian position, more particularly, on the left, where their machine guns enfiladed some of our hastily constructed trenches.

Anticipating that the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade would be called upon to participate in the clearing up of the situation, all Units were kept well in hand throughout the day and in some cases moved forward to more convenient positions. Alteration in the general disposition of our forces and the developments in the situation elsewhere rendered it unnecessary to call upon the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade, and it therefore was returned to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division. The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion on relief proceeded to TARA VALLEY and the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Battalions were moved to SAUSAGE VALLEY. These moves took place early on the morning of Sept., 27<sup>th</sup>. During the day, which was wet and disagreeable, the enemy shelled all our positions in the Forward area, more or less severely at times, and certain sections were subjected to a particularly heavy bombardment.

On the right of the general Line of the Canadian Corps front the situation was clearer, the 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade was holding the Line from the ALBERT – BAPAUME ROAD in a westerly direction with the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion in position from the CEMETERY facing North, between TWENTY ROAD and the ALBERT BAPAUME ROAD. Late, on the afternoon of the 27<sup>th</sup> Sept., this Battalion sent a patrol forward on TWENTY ROAD and discovered that the main force of the enemy on this front had apparently retired. Other patrols were sent out in other directions capturing some prisoners and confirming the information as to the enemy's movements. Cavalry patrols, the first time this arm had been called upon for many months, were ordered to proceed up the ALBERT – BAPAUME ROAD and also up DYKE ROAD. These patrols were able to get forward some distance, and succeeded in gathering much useful information but on account of the presence of hostile machine guns in the Woods about LE SARS, and also in the trenches on the Ridge due North of COURCELETTE, they were unable to reach the high ground in all directions. Infantry patrols had to be depended upon for exact local information.

German prisoners captured during the early morning of the 25<sup>th</sup> September stated that the main enemy forces had retired about four kilometers. This statement was only partially accurate. Prisoners taken subsequently stated, that many of the men holding that particular section of the enemy line had "bolted", when they discovered that most of their Officers had left them, and that only machine guns and isolated posts remained to hold the position. The prisoners further stated that when the frightened Infantry arrived at their Reserve Line, some distance in rear, they were met by Staff Officers who ordered them back to their positions. In the meantime however, their absence had been discovered by our patrols and taking advantage of the situation our Line had been advanced considerably.

The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion under command of Lieut-Colonel WR Turnbull was moved up to GUN PIT ROAD during the night and came under the orders of the GOC, 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade. Early in the morning of the 28<sup>th</sup> September, this Battalion was ordered to push forward from GUN PIT ROAD in the direction of a Line from DESTEMONT FARM to the SOUTH PRACTICE TRENCHES and to establish a Line well in front of the PRACTICE TRENCHES. This Operation called for caution and at the same time, a fixed determination to attain the objective, in spite of opposition from the numerous small hostile parties suspected to be firmly holding hidden strong points in the area over which the advance had to be made. The movement was carried out with dash and splendid gallantry and our position advanced over a thousand yards with few casualties.

The 70<sup>th</sup> Brigade of the 23<sup>rd</sup> British Division holding the Line on our Right, were to co-operate by sending strong patrols to occupy DESTREMONT FARM. In this they were not at first successful as the FARM was found to be strongly held, subsequently the FARM was captured and occupied.

Under incessant and increasing Machine Gun fire from the direction of LE SARS and the high ground to the North and West, the leading Platoons of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion pushed forward and took up a new position about 400 yards North of the PRACTICE TRENCHES. A support trench about 150 yards in rear, and a reserve trench were also hastily constructed. Flank protective trenches were also provided. Lewis Guns and Bombing posts were quickly prepared and during the day all ranks worked steadily improving the position. By Noon the Battalion had completed a continuous front Line trench, 4ft deep, and established observation posts and direct telephone communication with Battalion Headquarters. Much valuable information was sent from these advanced observation stations.

A message was received from the GOC, 2<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Division extending his congratulations to the Units taking part in this splendid achievement. This much appreciated communication was promptly transmitted to all Ranks engaged.

Early on the morning of September 28<sup>th</sup>, the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion moved from BAILIFF WOOD to the Forward area and came under orders of the GOC 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade, subsequently relieving the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the area North of the CEMETERY, and in the QUARRY at COURCELETTE. The 20<sup>th</sup> Battn moved to a position in support occupying trenches in the TWENTY ROAD – GUN PIT ROAD – CEMETERY AREA. The 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion remained in reserve near POZIERES WINDMILL and SUNKEN ROAD at Brigade Headquarters.

Under orders of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division the GOC 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade took over the Line from the 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade during the night 28<sup>th</sup>/29<sup>th</sup> September. Between the hours of 3 and 5 o'clock in the morning and just before completion of the relief, the enemy subjected our forward positions to a severe shelling. The resultant casualties were fortunately not heavy. Notwithstanding this activity, our positions were improved by the establishing of several posts 150 to 200 yds in advance of our Front Line trenches. These posts were manned by Bombers and Lewis Gun crews. The work of improving our new trenches was pressed forward vigorously.

During the morning of 29<sup>th</sup> September, scouting parties were sent out to collect information as to the position of the enemy and the nature of his defences. One small party of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion discovered three Germans in a dug-out, whom they bombed and killed. Later in the day, when posts were being established by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in advanced positions, some of the enemy were discovered and attacked in a disused Gun Pit. This party promptly surrendered and was sent in under escort.

A patrol under Lieut Dunn, 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion, proceeded up DYKE ROAD to what proved to be an unoccupied German trench about 500 yards in front of our advanced Line. In this trench was found much German equipment, many Arms and a quantity of ammunition and Bombs. It appeared to have been recently occupied. Subsequently a post was established in the Trench composed of a party of Bombers, some Lewis Gunners and squad of Snipers from 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion.

To preserve connection with the 70<sup>th</sup> British Brigade on our right, who were operating against DESTREMONT FARM, the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion were ordered to push forward Machine Gun posts to some old German Gun Positions and to send patrols to the right for the purpose of joining up with the British position. Early on the morning of the 29<sup>th</sup> the British Brigade made their second attack upon DESTREMONT FARM and succeeded in taking the position securing some Machine Guns and capturing a number of prisoners. This operation was completed by 7 am. The line on our right having been advanced, the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion were ordered to get in close touch with the British by establishing a line of Posts from the present right of our Line to DESTREMONT FARM.

Persistent enemy shelling during the day caused some casualties. The night September 29<sup>th</sup>/30<sup>th</sup> was however relatively calm. Staff Officers visited the Line on the morning of the 30<sup>th</sup> and confirmed the Location of our new position. Enemy shelling on COURCELETTE continued. A Bomb store containing a large number of Bombs left in COURCELETTE by the enemy was hit by a shell and a series of destructive explosions resulted.

During the night September 30<sup>th</sup>/October 1<sup>st</sup>, the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion, relieved the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion in the Left sector and the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion relieved the 19<sup>th</sup> Bn, in the Right Sector of the Line. The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion went into support. One Company however, was later sent back and took over and completed the centre sector taken up by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion.

On October 1<sup>st</sup> in conjunction with offensive operations with the Corps on our Right and Left, the Canadian Corps was ordered to make an attack on some section of the enemy's Lines West of the EAST MIRAMONT ROAD. The 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade were to occupy and consolidate a Line from the junction of REGINA TRENCH and EAST MIRAMONT ROAD to connect with the 23<sup>rd</sup> British Division in the vicinity of DESTREMONT FARM. This meant a considerable further advance, in some sections for the Units of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade. The 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion was assigned as their task, joining up with the British at DESTREMONT FARM. This was successfully accomplished. The 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion were required to advance their Line and dig some new sections. Under severe machine gun and rifle fire, and as a result of skilful handling on the part of many of the Officers and NCOs of the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion, the task was carried out and a continuous trench excavated, giving good cover and communication from the EAST MIRAMONT ROAD to DYKE ROAD.

The main attack directed principally against the REGINA TRENCH, west of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade front, was launched at 3.15 o'clock in the afternoon. Shortly after that hour observers of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade reported having seen teams and single horses, galloping West on the ACHIET-LEPETIT-REAUREFARD ROAD, closely followed by Motor Transport. They further reported having observed the attacking line of the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade



Advancing in good order. The smoke from bursting shells was very dense and all the back country completely hidden.

At 7.20 pm Major Rorke Commanding 20<sup>th</sup> Battn., reported as to the situation, stating that Machine Gun fire had been severe and that the Battalion had suffered heavily. Arrangements were made for patrols to complete connection with the 23<sup>rd</sup> Division, 70<sup>th</sup> Brigade, who had been successful in their attack and who were holding the German trenches beyond DESTREMONT FARM and on the outskirts of the Village of LE SARS. A strong patrol was sent out and reached the position held by the K.O.Y.L.I. in front of LE SARS. As the British were much reduced in numbers, and were being hardly pressed, this patrol remained during the night and the next day and rendered valuable assistance. All night long, severe fighting went on in this region. In the morning the Roads and ground in front were reported to be strewn with numbers of enemy dead. Regarding the work of the patrols, the Officer Commanding the 8<sup>th</sup> Battalion K.O.Y.L.I., wrote the Officer Commanding the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the following terms:

“I desire to convey to you my warmest thanks for the excellent work and valuable aid rendered to us by 10 men of No 8 Platoon of the Battalion under your Command, during the operation on October 1<sup>st</sup>. From the accounts I have received, I have no doubt whatever but that for the timely arrival of these men and the energy they displayed in keeping back the enemy, the position, which was already I difficult one could not have been held.”

On the Left, the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade had met with strong opposition from the direction of the high ground immediately West of the EAST MIRAMONT ROAD, and COURCELETTE TRENCH and owing to wire obstacles, were prevented from securing REGINA TRENCH. To hold the ground already gained, the 18<sup>th</sup> Battn., established a strong post on EAST MIRAMONT ROAD. This post was pushed forward to within two hundred yards of the REGINA TRENCH and the 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion of the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade made connections with it, but some distance in rear of our position.

Owing to the cloudy weather, aerial photos could not be taken, and the difficulties connected with determining the exact location of our forward Lines was intensified. Staff Officers went over the area during the morning, and fixed the Line by taking a series of Compass Bearings. Corrections were made in the Line during the day and following night, and an almost continuous trench was completed, enabling our Battalions to defend all the ground which had been gained.

During the afternoon, an order was received from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Division providing for the relief of the 4<sup>th</sup> Bde., by the 9<sup>th</sup> Brigade, 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division. This order also required the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade to dig a “jumping off” trench forward of our position in some sections, and called for the work being completed during the night October 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup> or before relief. The men were very much exhausted from want of sleep, heavy shelling and continuous rain. As these trenches were required for further offensive operation contemplated by the Army, and every man realized the importance of pressing the advantage we had already gained over the enemy, the work was undertaken cheerfully, notwithstanding the exhausted and worn out condition of all ranks. Every Unit in the Brigade contributed to the working parties and by noon the following day, a further advance had been made in our general Line. By joining up some disused portions of enemy trench, and pushing forward a series of posts our Battalions had been able to gain in some places two hundred yards of additional ground.

Throughout the day and night, October 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup>, the enemy shelled COURCELETTE and some other know targets with shells of all caliber. Parties of the enemy could be observed working on the defences of PYS. These were promptly dispersed by our Artillery. Much Machine Gun & rifle fire came from the high ground west of COURCELETTE, and a constant stream of HE Shells fell on the CEMETERY-QUARRY-GUN PIT ROAD area. Movement of men in this district had therefore to be restricted. As the result of previous

Operations many bodies of the enemy and some of our own men remained in this district unburied. Enemy artillery activity, in addition to the lack of available men, prevented the work of interment being carried on. The time had arrived when something had to be done. For four days, two of the Brigade Chaplains, Rev. WE Kidd, and Rev. Robert Thompson, worked without rest, burying the remains of fallen comrades as well as those of the enemy. This work was done gratuitously and under continuous enemy shell fire.

On the night of October 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup>, which was very foggy and exceedingly dark, a valuable reconnaissance of the ground in the direction of REGINA TRENCH was made by Captain LD Heron and a party of Scouts from the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn. The information gained was transmitted to the Corps for use in connection with subsequent operations.

Arrangements were made for the relief of the Bde., during the night of October 3<sup>re</sup>/4<sup>th</sup> this relief was completed, and the Line turned over to the 9<sup>th</sup> Infantry Bde., 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division. The Units of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade moved to SAUSAGE VALLEY and subsequently to BOUZINCOURT and rest Billets.

The work of the Brigade was appreciated by the Army Commander who intimated to the Division in a special message, his pleasure and satisfaction with the work done by all Ranks.



ALBERT		The Battn left the position and proceeded to Transport Line BRICKFIELDS ALBERT where dinner was served and then proceeded to billets in BOUZENCOURT staying in Huts till morning.
BOUZENCOURT	7/10/16	The Battalion proceeded to WARLOY in accordance with operation order attached. 1 Officer and 20 ORs proceeded to Reserve Army Rest Camp.  The Battalion, less two Companies, stayed here this day and night. Two Companies proceeded by Motor Busses to VAL de MAISON.
	8/10/16	The Balance of the Battalion proceeded to FIEFFES by Motor Bus arriving there at about 12.30. The two Companies who proceeded to VAL de MAISON reaching here about 4.00 pm on foot. Very wet all day.
FIEFFES		The Battalion rested here until the 10 <sup>th</sup> inst, during which time about 80 reinforcements were received.
	11/10/16	The Battalion proceeded to REMAISNIL-MEZEROLLES-OCCOCHES Billeting area as per operation order No 51 attached
	12/10/16	The Battalion proceeded to the SIBEVILLE-SERICOURT-CANETTEMET Billeting area as per operation order No 52 attached.
	13/10/16	The Battalion proceeded to the MARQUAY-MONCHY-BRETON Billeting area as per operation order attached No 53
	14/10/16	The Battalion proceeded to the HALLICOURT-BRUAY-DIVION Billeting area as per operation order attached No 54 and stayed at DIVION for two days.
DIVION	17/10/16 to 22/10/16	The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 10 <sup>th</sup> Bn Royal Fusiliers in BULLY GRENAVY. Relief being made in daylight and in accordance with operation order No 55 attached.
BULLY GRENAVY		The Battalion remained here until the 23 <sup>rd</sup> inst forming Divisional Reserve. During this period the Battalion had one Route march (by Companies), was bathed and received, in the majority of cases, fresh underwear, which was appreciated by all.  Daily instructions were given to the Battalion on Gas Drill, Bayonet Fighting, Fire Control etc.
	23/10/16	The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Right Sub Sector CALONNE as per Operation Order No 56 attached.  Relief was completed by 12.00 noon with no casualties.
TRENCHES	24/10/16	Patrols covered our front all night and found nothing to report. Day was quiet with no rifle or Machine Gun, or Artillery fire.
	25/10/16	Patrol covered our front again. This night nothing to report.  One Casualty (fatal) occurred on this patrol.

M.20.c.5.7 To M.9.d.4.4	26/10/16	Patrols covered our front all night. Nothing to report.  Day very quiet, no artillery fire.
	27/10/16	Scout patrols again out during night. Found everything quiet. Nothing doing during day. No fire of any description during day.
	28/10/16	Patrols again covered our front finding everything quiet.  Day quiet, nothing to report
CALONNE	29/10/16	The Battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn and proceeded to Reserve at CALONNE as per Operation Order 57, attached.
	30/10/16 to 31/10/16	The Battalion resting in reserve. Finding various Engineer's Fatigue Parties and Company Parties.

MESSAGE TO

OC COMPANIES, SIGNALS AND SCOUTS

October 3, 1916

The Bn will relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Bn (leaving at times as under) in the Front line today aaa You will report to Major Elmitt at 20<sup>th</sup> Bn Hdqrs who will advise you of you disposition aaa Companies will move so as to pass Bn Hdqrs at following times aaa Scouts 2.15 pm, "A" Coy 2.30 pm, "B" Coy 2.45 pm, "C" Coy 3.00 pm, "D" Coy 3.15 pm, "E" Section 3.30 pm aaa

You will ensure that you take the following articles with you: AOA Rockets, 2 days rations (including Rum rations), Ground Flares, Extra Bandoliers of SAA, 2 Bombs per man, 3 Sand Bags, Shovels, Picks and Water.

Please leave billets as clean as circumstances permit aaa

On taking over you will report by runner to Bn Hdqtrs aaa You will detail two runners for running between you and Battn Hdqtrs aaa

Time: 1.30 pm

signed by SL Cunningham

MESSAGE TO  
OC COMPANIES AND DETAILS

October 6, 1916

You will move your unit to Bouzincourt leaving here some time before 8.00 am aaa Packs will be carried by Transport aaa The Battalion will halt in Field just this side of BOUZINCOURT where the Battalion will assemble aaa

To  
"A" Coy  
"B" Coy  
"C" Coy  
"D" Coy  
Bombers  
MGS  
Signals  
RSM

Time: 6.20 AM

Signed by SL Cunningham

OPERATION ORDER  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

6/10/16

- 1 The Battalion will proceed tomorrow the 7<sup>th</sup> inst to WARLOY via SEM LIS in the under mentioned order:  
Head of Column will pass CHURCH BOUZENCOURT at 10.00 am  
Scouts, Signals, ABCD Coys, Bombers, MGS, E Section, QM Stores and Transport
- 2 Breakfast will be at 7 am tomorrow
- 3 Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer's Baggage and Orderly Room Boxes. These must be ready by 8.30 am Sharp
- 4 Dinners will be cooked on line of march. Current days rations will be carried by each man
- 5 All Huts etc must be left in a clean and sanitary condition

Signed by SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adj 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn

OPERATION ORDER  
21<sup>ST</sup> BATTALION

- 1 300 men of the Bn will hold themselves in readiness to proceed to BONNEVILLE by bus  
The following will comprise the detail

A Coy	94
C Coy	80
B Coy	80
Bombers	30
Scouts	36
QM Stores	4
Signals	39
- 2 Major H Cooper will be in Command, Lieut Christmas will act as Adj, Capt Hora will act as Quartermaster.
- 3 All men whose names were submitted this am to proceed to Rest Camp will report to Lieut Gillman immediately

OPERATION ORDER No 50  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

Reference Map: Lens 11

- 1 The Bn, less 300 men who moved today will move to BONNEVILLE by bus at 8.00 am tomorrow
- 2 The Bn will fall in in column of route on road opposite Expeditionary Force Canteen in following order:  
A Coy, Signals, Detail that are warned for Rest Camp, MG Section, E Section, QM Stores, at 7.45 am
- 3 The MG Officer will arrange with Transport Officer to have all Lewis and Colt Gun Carts attached to Limbers
- 4 Lines must be left in Clean Condition
- 5 The Transport will march to BONNEVILLE via VADENCOURT HERRISART - VAL de MAISON FME de ROSEL - VAL HEUREUX

OPERATION ORDER No 51  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

Ref. LENS sheet 1/10,000

10/10/16

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will march tomorrow the 11<sup>th</sup> inst to the REMAISNIL-MEZEROLLES-OCCOCHES billeting area, via FIEENVILLERS-UTHEAUX-OUTREBOIS  
Battn Hqrs  
Scouts  
"A" Coy  
"B" Coy  
"C" Coy  
"D" Coy  
Bombers  
"E" Sect  
QM Stores  
MG Section  
Transport
- 2 The Battalion will pass starting point (in front of Battalion Orderly Room) at 10.30 am
- 3 Company and Detail Commanders will submit a marching out state by 9.30 am to Battalion Orderly Room
- 4 Company and Detail Commanders will personally inspect their respective billets before 10.00 am and will ensure that they are clean and all latrines filled in.
- 5 Water Bottles must be filled previous to moving off
- 6 Dinner will be served on the line of march
- 7 Transport Officer will make arrangements to collect Officer's baggage and Orderly Room material by 9.30 am. This must be ready on time.
- 8 No Hand Carts are to be attached to the Transports. Company Commanders and Machine Gun Officer will have to make arrangements for the drawing of same.
- 9 On arrival in billets two runners per Company and one per detail will immediately report to Battalion Orderly Room.
- 10 Company and Detail Commanders will hold inspection of their Companies and Details and ensure that all packs are properly adjusted.
- 11 One Billeting NCO per Company and Cpl Drake for the Details will report to Captain Hora with bicycles at the Battalion Orderly Room 7.00 am SHARP. Bicycles can be obtained from the Signalling Section.

Sgd SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adj 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion



21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 52

SECRET

Copy No.....

Oct 11<sup>th</sup>, 1916

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will march tomorrow the 12<sup>th</sup> inst to the SISEVILLE? – SERICOURT CAMETTEMET billeting area

Order of march as per margin:

Scouts  
Signals  
"D" Coy  
"C" Coy  
"B" Coy  
"A" Coy  
Bombers  
MG Section  
"E" Section  
QM Stores  
Transport

- 2 The Battalion will pass starting point (MILL at CROSS ROADS in village) going NORTH at 8.30 am
- 3 Company and Detail Commanders will submit to Battalion Orderly Room by 7.30 am a Marching Out State showing numbers and names fo to-days March casualties and those returning from Hospital and Courses.
- 4 Company and Detail Commanders will PERSONALLY inspect their Billets and see that everything is clean previous to moving off.
- 5 Water Bottles will be filled previous to moving off
- 6 Transport Officer will make arrangements to collect Officer's Baggage and Orderly Room material at 7.30 am.
- 7 On arrival in billets Company and Detail Commanders will send one runner per Company and Detail to Battn Orderly Room
- 8 Billeting NCOs (same as today) will report to Captain Hora at Battalion Orderly Room at 6.00 am

SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderlies.

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 53

Copy No....

12/10/16

Ref LENS Sheet 11 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will march tomorrow the 13<sup>th</sup> inst to the MARQUAY – MONCHY – BRETON area via BUNNEVILLE – TEENAS LA BELLE EPINE

Order of march as per margin

Scouts  
Signals  
"C" Coy  
"D" Coy  
"A" Coy  
"B" Coy  
Bombers  
MG Section  
"E" Section  
QM Stores  
Transport

- 2 The Battalion will pass starting point Church (400 yards SOUTH of "S" in PIT BONRET SUR CANCHE) at 8.00 am
- 3 Company and Detail Commanders will PERSONALLY inspect their Billets and see that everything is clean prior to moving off.
- 4 Company and Detail Commanders will submit to Battn Orderly Room by 7.00 am a marching out state. This must be in on time.
- 5 Water bottles will be filled previous to moving off
- 6 Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer's baggage and Orderly Room material at 7.00 am. This must be ready on time.
- 7 On arrival in billets Company and Detail Commanders will send one Runner to Battalion Head Quarters.
- 8 Billeting NCOs (same as today's) will report to Captain Hora at Battalion Orderly Room at 6.30 am
- 9 Dinner will be served on the line of March

Sgd SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adj 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER #54

Copy No.....

Ref LENS Sheet

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will march tomorrow the 14<sup>th</sup> inst to the HALLICOURT – BRUAY – DIVION billeting area.

Order of march as per margin:

Scouts  
Signals  
A Coy  
B Coy  
C Coy  
D Coy  
Bombers  
MG Section  
E Section  
QM Stores  
Transport

- 2 The Battn will pass starting point (Battn Orderly Room) at 12.30 pm
- 3 Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer's Baggage during the morning
- 4 Company and Detail Commanders will personally inspect their billets and see that everything is clean prior to moving off.

Signed SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adj 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 55

Ref LENS SHEET 11. 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 10<sup>th</sup> Bn RF tomorrow at 10.30 am in BULLY GRENAY
- 2 Usual order of March

Head of Column will pass "D" Company Billets situated about ½ mile along MAIN ROAD TO BARLIN

- 3 Baggage will be collected as usual at 7.00 am
- 4 Breakfast will be served at 6.00 am

- 5 The Battalion will march to HERSIN as a UNIT and from thence to PT. SAINTS by Companies, at 300 yards intervals. All Details will march together under Command of Lieut DJ More.
- 6 The TRANSPORT and QUARTERMASTER'S STORES will take over from the 10<sup>th</sup> RF at HERSIN and will remain there.
- 7 If it is possible the Cookers and Baggage will proceed to BULLY GREY with the Battalion, if not, as soon after dark as possible
- 8 All packs will be worn
- 9 Company Commanders will ensure that they have their full compliment of ammunition and spare parts on their Lewis Gun Carts.
- 10 Company and Detail Commanders will personally inspect their Billets before marching off tomorrow. Billets today were not left in a satisfactory condition
- 11 Completion of Reliefs will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by Runner immediately.

Company and Detail Commanders will each send one Runner to report to Adjutant, for duty on completion of reliefs.

Signed SL Cunningham  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET  
 Copy No.....

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 56

22/10/16

- 1 the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB SECTOR leaving BULLY GREY at times as under:

MG Section	7.50 am
Scouts	8.00 am
Bombers	8.10 am
Signals	8.15 am
"A" Company	8.20 am
"B" Company	8.30 am
"C" Company	8.40 am
"D" Company	8.50 am
"E" Section	9.00 am

"A" Company will relieve the Company of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the Right  
 "B" Company will relieve the Company of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the Centre  
 "C" Company will relieve the Company of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion on Left  
 "D" Company will relieve the Company of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Support  
 Details will relieve corresponding Details.

- 2 Completion of reliefs will be immediately notified to Battalion Headquarters by runner

- 3 Company and Detail Commanders will see that all reports asked for reach Battalion Headquarters on time.
- 4 The Cookers will be taken in at night, all cooking for tomorrow to be done in dixies
- 5 Officer's Baggage and Mess Boxes will be left at Orderly Room the Transport will call for same as soon after dark as possible and bring same to ration dump at COLONNE.
- 6 Company and Detail Commanders will ensure that their billets are left clean
- 7 All messages to be sent by runner, the telephone is not to be used except for SOS signals and OK the line.
- 8 Marching Out States to be handed in to Battalion Orderly Room before moving off

SL Cunningham  
 Captain  
 Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 57

SECRET

Copy No....  
 28/10/16

Ref Trench Map LENS Map 36C. SW 1.8.d.7.B 1/10,000

RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB-SECTION on SUNDAY Oct 29<sup>th</sup> 1916 during daylight

ORDER Companies and Details will be relieved as follows:

"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn by "A" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 "C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn by "B" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn by "D" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 "D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn by "C" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 Details will be relieved by corresponding Details of the 19<sup>th</sup> Bn

MOVEMENT Companies and Details of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion will move as under:

"B" Company via ESSEX TRENCH	9.00 am
"A" Company via HEADQUARTERS STREET	9.00 AM
"D" Company via BRICKWALK	9.00 AM
"C" Company via COLONNE NORTH	9.00 AM
Signals	9.30 AM
Bombers	9.30 AM
Headquarters	9.30 AM
Machine Gun will commence at	8.30 AM
Scouts	9.15 AM

TRENCH STORES Trench Stores will be handed over, and receipts taken, which will be forwarded to Battalion Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will NOT be treated as TRENCH STORES.

REPORTS Relief Completed will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by wire, using Code Word, as in list issued 27/10/16

COVER All ranks are to be warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief.

(signed by HCL Gillman)  
Lieut for  
Captain & Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

To

Copy No 1 "A" Coy  
2 "B" Coy  
3 "C" Coy  
4 "D" Coy  
5 MG Section  
6 Bombers  
7 Scouts  
8 Signals  
9 MO  
10 RSM  
11 Office Copy  
12 Commanding Officer  
13-16 War Diary

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
CALONNE	1/11/16 to 3/11/16		The Battalion resting in support finding various Engineer Fatigue Parties, also carrying parties.
	4/11/16		The Battalion relieved the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the Right Sub Sector Front Line as per Operation Order No 58. Casualties nil. Relief completed 11.30 am.
M.20.c.8.5.7 to M.9.d.4.4.	5/11/16		Enemy artillery quiet, our artillery fairly active during day. Patrols covered our front all night finding nothing unusual to report.
	6/11/16		Day passed with no event of importance to recount. Patrols covered our front during the night finding everything quiet.  Casualties Nil
	7/11/16		Everything quiet during day and night, patrols finding nothing of interest while covering our front during night.
	8/11/16		Enemy artillery fairly active during day to which ours effectively replied. During the night nothing unusual occurred.
	9/11/16		Situation in all respects normal during both day and night.
	10/11/16		The Battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian and proceeded to form Brigade Reserve in Billets in Bully Grenay. See Operation Order No 59
BULLY GRENAY	11/11/16 to 15/11/16		The Battalion remained in Brigade Reserve, finding numerous large fatigues and carrying parties.  During this period the Battalion was issued with new Box Respirators, each man going through gas to test the efficiency of same and make sure that they fitted properly.
	16/11/16		The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the Right Sub Sector front line as per Operation Order 60.  Relief completed 11.45 am  No casualties
M.20.c.8.2.7 to M.9.d.4.4	17/11/16		Enemy artillery Nil. Our artillery Nil.  Our observers report seeing signalling apparatus working at M.20.B.7.4 and proper attention was paid to same.  Patrols covering our front during night found nothing unusual to report.

- 18/11/16 Enemy artillery woke up for a bit, firing 6 rounds, also sending 36 Trench Mortars into our area during day.
- Signalling apparatus mentioned yesterday not in use today. About 10.00 am enemy plane attempted to cross our lines but was promptly driven back by our guns.
- Patrols were out during night and reported that no enemy patrols were seen or observed, and that enemy wire generally speaking was in good order.
- 19/11/16 At 10.00 am our Artillery shelled enemy front line between M.20.G.8.5 and M.20.G.9.6 doing considerable damage to wire for about 20 yards.
- At 12.30 pm TM (*Trench Mortar*) Battery fired bombs into enemy front line between M.20.b.9.6½ and again at 3.00 pm and 3.20 pm.
- Stokes and TM had combined shoot on M.15.b.6.1 to M.15.d.4½.9 making most damage at M.15.b.6.½
- Patrols in front at night found nothing unusual to report
- 20/11/16 Our Artillery Nil. Trench Mortar and Stokes firing a few rounds during day to which enemy only feebly replied.
- Whole of night quiet, and our patrols found nothing worthy of note to report.
- 21/11/16 Artillery nil on both sides. Our Trench Mortars fired 27 rounds during day at various points along our front.
- Patrols report everything quiet during night.
- CALONNE 22/11/16 The Battalion was relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion and proceeded to form Brigade Support at CALONNE. See Operation Order No 61  
to  
27/11/16 The Battalion remained here furnishing various fatigues and carrying parties.
- 28/11/16 The Battalion relieved the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Ryhl Sub Sector front line. See Operation Order No 62.
- Day turned out foggy, nothing unusual happening.
- 29/11/16 Still foggy. Artillery nil, very quiet
- 30/11/16 Still foggy. Our Artillery and TMs put on a shoot at 2.00 pm on the enemy's front and support trenches opposite our Left Flank and considerable damage appeared to be done, otherwise the day quiet.



21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 58Copy No 15  
3/11/16

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36. CSW 1 Ed 7.b 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the RIGHT SUB-SECTOR tomorrow the 4<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 Companies and Details will relieve as follows:
  - Signals will relieve – leaving present Billets at 10.30 am
  - Machine Gun Section – leaving present Billets at 10.45 am
  - “A” Company will relieve Coy of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in Right SUB-SECTOR leaving present Billets at 11.00 am
  - “B” Company will relieve Coy of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in Right SUB-SECTOR leaving present Billets at 11.20 am
  - “D” Company will relieve Coy of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in Left SUB-SECTOR leaving present Billets at 11.40 am
  - “C” Company will move to SUPPORT TRENCHES as soon as the 18<sup>th</sup> Battn have passed through their present area.
  - Bombers and Scouts will relieve corresponding Details, leaving present Billets at 12.00 noon
  - Headquarters will move at 1.00 pm
- 3 Reliefs will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by wire using Code word LAMP
- 4 1 NCO and 4 men per Company and 2 men per Detail will remain behind for the purpose of cleaning Billets. They will not proceed to join their Units until dismissed by the MO (this does not apply to “C” Company)
- 5 OC “C” Company will hand over to OC “D” Company all VERY PISTOLS and LEWIS GUNS AND CREWS by 11.00 am tomorrow.
- 6 One Officer per Coy and one NCO per Detail will proceed ahead to take over Trench Stores.
- 7 OC Companies and Details will be held responsible that all VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES are taken in with them.
- 8 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given, which will be forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs by 6.00 pm tomorrow
- 9 All guards will remain until relieved by 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 10 One Officer per Company will remain behind to take charge of all guards left behind.
- 11 OC Companies and Details are reminded that all reports as called for in List recently issued, must be submitted on time.

Signed by SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 8.15 pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	8	Scouts
2	19 <sup>th</sup> Battn	9	Signals
3	"A" Company	10	Office
4	"B" Company	11	MO
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	Adj
7	MG Section	14-16	War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 59

SECRET

Copy No 12  
9/11/16

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved tomorrow the 10<sup>th</sup> inst by the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. On being relieved the Battalion will proceed to Billets in BULLY GREY
- 2 "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will be relieved by "D" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn leaving BULLY GREY at 9.00 am  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will be relieved by "C" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn leaving BULLY GREY at 9.15 am  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will be relieved by "A" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn leaving BULLY GREY at 10.00 am  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will be relieved by "B" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn leaving BULLY GREY at 9.30 am  
Details will be relieved by corresponding Details of 19<sup>th</sup> Bn leaving BULLY GREY between 8.30 am and 9.00 am.
- 3 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts taken, which will be forwarded to Bn Orderly Room by 6.00 pm tomorrow. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will NOT be treated as TRENCH STORES.
- 4 Relief completed will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs (COLONNE 1) by wire using Code word as in list issued 27/10/16
- 5 OCs Companies and Details will ensure that their Billets are left in an absolutely clean and sanitary condition.
- 6 One Officer and one NCO per Company and one NCO per Detail will report to Capt Hora at headquarters CALONNE 1 at 8.00 am the 10<sup>th</sup> inst and will proceed to BULLY GREY to take over Billets.
- 7 All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during Relief
- 8 Officer's Baggage will be piled at COVENT GARDEN by 10.00 am the 10<sup>th</sup> inst, and OC "C" Coy will arrange to have a guard placed over same until arrival of Transport.
- 9 Cookers will be taken out tonight, and placed in position at BULLY GREY. OC Companies and Details will arrange to have sufficient "Dixies" left behind to cook tomorrow's breakfast.
- 10 OC Companies and Details will report on arrival at BULLY GREY to Battalion Orderly Room.

Signed by HCL Gillman  
Lieut for  
Captain & Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 2.50 pm

Copy No 1 "A" Coy  
2 "B" Coy  
3 "C" Coy  
4 "D" Coy  
5 Scouts  
6 Sigs  
7 Bombers  
8 MG S  
9 MO  
10 RSM  
11 Office  
12-14 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 60

SECRET

Copy No 13  
15/11/16

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36.CSW 1 Ed 7b 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB SECTOR tomorrow the 16<sup>th</sup> inst leaving BULLY GREY at times as under:  
  
"A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve "D" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn on right leaving BULLY GREY at 9.00 am  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve "C" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in center leaving BULLY GREY at 9.15 am  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve "B" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn on left leaving BULLY GREY at 9.30 am  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve "A" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in support leaving BULLY GREY at 10.00 am  
Details will relieve corresponding Details, leaving BULLY GREY at 8.30 am
- 2 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given duplicates of which will be sent to Battalion Orderly Room by 5.00 pm 16/11/16
- 3 Officers Commanding Companies and Details will ensure that their Billets are left in a perfectly clean and sanitary condition. For this purpose a party of 1 NCO and 4 men per Company and 2 men per Detail will report to the Medical Officer at Battalion Orderly Room, BULLY GREY at 9.00 am and will not proceed to join their Units until dismissed by the Medical Officer.
- 4 Completion of relief will be reported to Battn Hd Qrs by wire using Code Word as in list issued 27/10/16
- 5 Cookers and Orderly Room equipment will be taken to COVENT GARDEN tonight. Officers Commanding Companies and Details will see that sufficient "Dixies" are retained by them to cook tomorrow's breakfast.
- 6 All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief.

- 7 VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will be taken into the line, and the Officer Commanding "B" Coy will hand to the Officer Commanding "C" Coy all Very Pistols and Periscopes that are on his charge.
- 8 Officer's Baggage will be piled at Battalion Hd Quarters, BULLY GRENAY, by 9.30 am and the OC "B" Coy will arrange to have a Guard placed on same until Transport arrives.

Signed by HCL Gillaman  
 Captain for  
 Captain & Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.45 pm

Copy No 1	"A" Coy	8	Bombers
2	"B" Coy	9	MG S
3	"C" Coy	10	RSM
4	"D" Coy	11	MO
5	19 <sup>th</sup> Battn	12	Office
6	Scouts	13-15	War Diary
7	Signals		

SECRET  
 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 61

Copy No 14  
 21/11/16

Ref: Trench Map Lens 36.CSW 1 Ed 7b 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion tomorrow at times under:
  - "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn being relieved by "A" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion leaving CALONNE at 9.00 am and proceeding via BRICKWALK
  - "D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn being relieved by "C" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion leaving CALONNE at 9.00 am and proceeding via HEADQUARTERS STREET & ESSEX TRENCH
  - "C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn being relieved by "B" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion leaving CALONNE at 8.45 am and proceeding via EDGEWARE ROAD
  - "B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn being relieved by "D" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion leaving CALONNE at 9.00 am and proceeding via TEMPLE STREET & DURHAM ROAD
 Details will be relieved by corresponding Details of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battn leaving CALONNE at 9.00 am. Machine Gun Section will leave at 8.15 am
  
- 2 On being relieved Companies and Details will take up following positions
  - "A" Company in MAROC Defences
  - "B" Company to Billets in CALONNE as before
  - "C" Company to Billets in CALONNE as previously occupied by "A" Coy
  - "D" Company to Billets in CALONNE as before
  - Details to Billets in CALONNE as before
  
- 3 Completion of reliefs will be reported to Battn Head Qrs CALONNE 1 by wire. Companies using the following codes:
  - "A" Company LAUGH
  - "B" Company BOWER
  - "C" Company DOWN
  - "D" Company BROK
 Details will report completion by runner

- 4 Immediately Companies and Details have taken up positions as stated in para 2 above, Officers Commanding will render to Battalion Orderly Room, detailed Distribution States, showing exact disposition of every man under their command
- 5 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts obtained, which will be forwarded to Battn Hd Qrs by 5.00 pm 22/11/16

Sanitation Certificate will also be forwarded at the same time. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will not be treated as TRENCH STORES.

Signed by SL Cunningham  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 3.45 pm

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| Copy No 1 | "A" Coy   |
| 2         | "B" Coy   |
| 3         | "C" Coy   |
| 4         | "D" Coy   |
| 5         | MG S      |
| 6         | Signals   |
| 7         | bombers   |
| 8         | Scouts    |
| 9         | MO        |
| 10        | RSM       |
| 11        | Office    |
| 12-14     | War Diary |

SECRET  
 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 62

Copy No 14  
 27/11/16

Ref Trench Map LENS 36 CSW 1 Ed 7b 1.10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB SECTOR tomorrow the 28<sup>th</sup> inst leaving present Billets at times as under:
  - DETAILS will relieve corresponding Details at 9.00 am
  - "C" Company will relieve LEFT SUB SECTOR at 9.15 am proceeded via ESSEX TRENCH – HORSE GUARDS – 230 – 235
  - "D" Company will relieve CENTRE SUB SECTOR at 9.30 am proceeding via ESSEX TRENCH – PICK LANE – HUGUMONT STREET to 291, 222 & 223
  - "B" Company will relieve RIGHT SUB SECTOR at 9.30 am proceeding via HEADQUARTERS STREET and BOYAN THOMAS & 217
  - "A" Company from MAROC DEFENCES to SUPPORT, will leave there as soon as the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion have relieved them.
  - Headquarters will move at 10.30 am
- 2 Reliefs will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by wire using the under mentioned Codes:
 

"A" Coy LAUGH	"B" Coy BOWER	"C" Coy DOWN
"D" Coy BROK	Details will report by Runner.	

- 3 1 NCO and 4 men per Company and 2 men per Detail will remain behind for the purpose of cleaning Billets. This detail will not proceed to join their Units until dismissed by the MO (This does not apply to "A" Company)
- 4 OC "A" Company will hand over to OC "D" Company all VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES and LEWIS GUNS & CRES by 10.00 am tomorrow
- 5 One Officer per Company and one NCO per Detail will proceed ahead to take over Trench Stores.
- 6 OC Companies and Details will be held responsible that all VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES are taken in with them.
- 7 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given, which will be forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs by 6.00 pm tomorrow
- 8 All Guards will remain until relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion, and one Officer per Company will remain behind to take charge of same until relieved.
- 9 OC Companies and Details are reminded that all Returns & Reports as called for in list recently issued, must be submitted on time. A distribution State is to be submitted by 6.00 pm tomorrow.

Signed by SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 6.40 pm

- Copy No 1 "A" Coy  
2 "B" Coy  
3 "C" Coy  
4 "D" Coy  
5 19<sup>th</sup> Battn  
6 MG S  
7 Scouts  
8 Bombers  
9 Signals  
10 MO  
11 RSM  
12 Office  
13-15 War Diary

## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
M.20.c.8½.7 to M.9.d.4.4	30/11/16 to 1/12/16		<p>Patrols covered our front during the night and reported everything quiet. At 3.00 am this morning we attempted to raid the enemy trenches between M.20.b.9.6½ and M.21.a.1½.7½, but were discovered and the Officer in charge of the party killed, the balance of the party had to retire, leaving his body on enemy parapet.</p> <p>Situation normal during day.</p>
	2/12/16		<p>Enemy Artillery Nil, our Artillery Nil</p> <p>Patrols covered our front during the night and reported hearing and feeling two distinct shocks at intervals of 4 seconds, as if caused by heavy shells falling and not exploding. These shocks were not heard or felt by sentries in Front Line. Investigation proved futile.</p>
	3/12/16		<p>Enemy Artillery Nil, our Artillery Nil. Our Trench Mortars damaged the enemy's trenches and works at various places opposite our Front during the day. Patrols were out during the night and one party approached to within 12 yards of Enemy's parapet at M.21.a.05.65 reporting afterwards that enemy's wire was cut by our Trench Mortars and laying about in heaps.</p>
	4/12/16		<p>Patrols were out on our front and reported all quiet.</p> <p>At 1.00 am we attempted to raid the enemy trench between M.20.b.6½ and M.21.a.1½.7½ but discovered that enemy's wire was not cut sufficiently to allow access to enemy parapet. All the party returned without casualties.</p> <p>The Battalion was relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and proceeded to form Divisional Reserve in Bilets in Bully Grenay, see Operation Order No 65.</p>
BULLY GRENAY	5/12/16 to 9/12/16		<p>The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve finding numerous large fatigues.</p> <p>During this period the Battalion had courses of Training in Bayonet Fighting, Physical Drill, and Bombing, there was also an Inspection by the GOC 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade.</p>
	10/12/16		<p>The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the Right Sub Sector front line as per Operation Order No 66</p> <p>Relief completed 11.30 am, no casualties.</p> <p>Enemy Artillery active during afternoon. Our Artillery retaliated. Enemy Sniper shot at M.15.d.2.0</p>
M.20.c.8½.7 to M.9.d.4.4.	11/12/16		<p>Enemy Artillery active firing several rounds near Marble Arch and between trenches 230 and 238. Our Artillery very active during the afternoon. Patrols covering our Front during the night found nothing unusual to report.</p>
	12/12/16		<p>Enemy Artillery Nil. Our Artillery fired a few rounds on Enemy Support Line. Our Patrols found nothing of note to report.</p>

	13/12/16	Artillery Nil on both sides. Our Trench Mortars fired several rounds at various points along our front. During the night nothing unusual occurred.
	14/12/16	Enemy Artillery fairly active during day to which ours replied very effectively. Our Patrols reported nothing unusual.
	15/12/16	Situation normal during both day and night.
	16/12/16 to 21/12/16	The Battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and proceeded to CALONNE to form Brigade Reserve. See Operation Order No 67  The Battalion remained here furnishing various fatigues and carrying parties.
CALONNE	22/12/16	The Battalion relieved the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the Right Sub Sector Front Line as per Operation Order No 68.  Casualties Nil. Relief completed 11.30 am
M.20.c.8½.7 to M.9.d.4.4.	23/12/16	Our Artillery was active, but enemy did not trouble us at all. Our Stokes and Trench Mortars fired several rounds into enemy Line at various places, also damaging enemy wire at M.20.g.20.03. Enemy artillery woke up the afternoon and fired eleven 5.9s into trench 222 also several into trench 212. Our observers reported seeing several of the enemy in vicinity of Puits 16. Patrols reported nothing unusual.
	24/12/16	Patrols covered our Front and discovered that enemy's wire was not cut enough to allow our raiding party to enter their trench, thereby canceling Operation Order No 69. During the day everything quiet and normal.
	25/12/16	Our Artillery very active, firing at working Party at M.21.c.8.9 and at M.20.d.85.20. 17 Stokes shells were fired into Enemy line between M.15.b.6.1 and M.15.b.8.0. Enemy retaliated by firing 35 HEs at points between trenches 212 and 217. Our observers report seeing large bodies of troops behind enemy front line. These were dispersed by our Artillery.
	26/12/16	Artillery fairly active on both sides. Our Stokes and Trench Mortars were very active during the day. Our Aeroplanes very active on our front causing considerable Ante Aircraft fire. Our Patrols reported everything quiet during the evening so it was decided to raid the enemy trench as per previous Operation Order No 69. The Artillery opened fire at 12.30 am, the enemy retaliated on our raiding party with bombs causing casualties and compelling them to retire, they also opened machine gun fire and rapid rifle fire on them. Our casualties were 3 Other Ranks wounded and 1 missing.
	27/12/16	All quiet during the day. Enemy Artillery shelled our rearward Reserve with Gas Shells continuously during the night. Our searching patrols could find no trace of man reported missing from previous night's operations.
	28/12/16	The Battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and proceeded to form Divisional Reserve in Billets in Bully Grenay. See Operation Order No 70
BULLY GRENAY	29/12/16 to 31/12/16	The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve finding several fatigues parties during this time. The Battalion had their Special Christmas Dinner which was greatly appreciated by all ranks.



21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 63

SECRET

Copy No 21  
30/11/16

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36c SW 1. 1/10,000

- 1  
INFORMATION      The enemy trenches M.20.b.0.6½ to M.21.a.1½.7½ are manned at night by a sentry or flying patrol, and a lane has been cut through enemy wire at this point.
- 2  
INTENTION        The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion Raiding Party will attack this line on the night of Nov 30<sup>th</sup>/Dec 1<sup>st</sup> at ZERO Hour, for the purpose of securing an enemy identification.
- 3  
PERSONNEL        Lieut B Cottam  
27 Other Ranks  
1 Lewis Gun  
2 Stretcher Bearers
- 4  
TIME                ZERO Hour will be 3.00 am
- 5  
BATTALION  
HEADQUARTERS    Advanced Battalion Headquarters from 2.00 am will be at M.14.d.9.1.

Signed by SL Cunningham  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 4.00 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	13	"D" Coy
2	22 <sup>nd</sup> Battalion	14	MG O
3	18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	15	Scouts
4	20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	16	Bombers
5	Artillery	17	Signals
6	Stokes Mortar Battery	18	MO
7	255 <sup>th</sup> Tunneling Coy	19	RSM
8	4 <sup>th</sup> FCCE	20	Office
9	2 <sup>nd</sup> Pioneer Battalion	21-23	War Diary
10	"A" Coy		
11	"B" Coy		
12	"C" Coy		

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 64Copy No 21  
3/12/16

Ref: Trench Map LENS. 36.c.S.W.1 1/10,000

- 1 INFORMATION The enemy trenches M.20.b.9.6½ to M.21.a.1½ .7½ are manned at night by a sentry or flying patrol, and a lane has been cut through the enemy wire at this point.
- 2 INTENTION A party of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, supported by Artillery will raid this line on the night of Dec 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup>, at ZERO HOUR, for the purpose of securing an identification.
- 3 PERSONNEL Lieut J De Audette  
Corporal Wood  
15 Other Ranks  
1 Lewis Gun and Crew  
2 Stretcher Bearers
- 4 TIME ZERO HOUR will be 1.00 am
- 5 BATTALION HEADQUARTERS Advanced Battalion Headquarters from 12.00 mn will be at M.14.d.9.1

(signed by SL Cunningham)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 3.50 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	12	"C" Coy
2	26 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	13	"D" Coy
3	18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	14	MGO
4	20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	15	Scouts
5	Artillery	16	Bombers
6	Stokes Mortar Battery	17	Signals
7	255 <sup>th</sup> Tunneling Coy	18	MO
8	4 <sup>th</sup> FCCE	19	RSM
9	2 <sup>nd</sup> Pioneer Battalion	20	Office
10	"A" Coy	21-23	War Diary
11	"B" Coy		

SECRET  
Copy No 1221<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 65

3/12/16

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36.C.S.W.1 Ed 7.B. 1/10,000

- RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB-SECTOR on MONDAY Dec 3<sup>rd</sup>, 1916, during daylight and proceed to Billets in BULLY-GRENAY.
- TIME Will be notified later.

- TRENCH STORES Trench Stores will be handed over, and receipts taken, which will be forwarded to Bn Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will NOT be treated as TRENCH STORES.
- REPORTS Completion of Relief will be reported to Bn Headquarters by wire. Companies using the following Code Words:
- “A” Company LAUGH
  - “B” Company BOWER
  - “C” Company RAY
  - “D” Company BROK
- Details will report by runner. Relief by runner.
- BAGGAGE All baggage and Cooking utensils will be left at COVENT GARDEN by 9.00 am. OC “A” Company will detail a guard of one NCO and 6 Men to look after same.
- OC Companies and Details will have to make their own arrangements in regards to carrying out of cooking utensils needed for tomorrow.
- COVER All ranks are to keep under cover as much as possible during relief. Strict March Discipline will be observed when march through BULLY-GRENAY.
- TAKING OVER One Officer and one NCO per Company and One NCO per Detail will proceed ahead and take over Billets.

(signed by SL Cunningham)  
Captain  
Adj 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 “A” Company
- 2 “B” Company
- 3 “C” Company
- 4 “D” Company
- 5 MGS
- 6 Bombers
- 7 Scouts
- 8 Signals
- 9 MO
- 10 RSM
- 11 Office Copy
- 12-15 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 66

SECRET

Copy No 14  
9/12/16

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36.c.S.W.1. Ed 7.b. 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB SECTOR tomorrow at times under:
  - "A" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve Coy of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn on Left, leaving BULLY GREY at 9.00 am
  - "C" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve Coy of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in Center, leaving BULLY GREY at 9.15 am
  - "B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve Coy of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn on Left, leaving BULLY GREY at 9.30 am
  - "D" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve Coy of 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in SUPPORT, leaving BULLY GREY at 10.00 amDetails will relieve corresponding Details leaving at times as under:  
MG Section 8.30 am      Signals 8.35 am      Bombers 8.40 am  
Scouts 8.45 am      Headquarters 10.00 am
  
- 100 yards intervals will be maintained between platoons and sections.
- 2 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts given, duplicates of which will be sent to Battn Orderly Room by 5.00 pm, the 10<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 3 Officers Commanding Coys and Details will ensure that their Billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition. For this purpose a party of 1 NCO and 4 men per Coy and 2 men per Detail will report to the Medical Officer at Battn Orderly Room BULLY GREY at 9.00 am and will not proceed to join their Units until dismissed by the MO>
- 4 Completion of Reliefs will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by wire, using Codes as in Operation Order No 65. d/3/12/16
- 5 Cookers will be taken to COVENT GRADEN tonight. Officers Commanding Coys and Details will see that sufficient "DIXIES" are retained to enable tomorrows breakfast to be cooked.
- 6 All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief.
- 7 VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will be taken into the Line and OC "D" Coy will had to OC "C" Coy all VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES on his charge.
- 8 1 Officer per Coy and 1 NCO per Detail will proceed ahead to take over Trench Stores.
- 9 Lewis Guns and Crews of "D" Coy will report to OC "A" Coy previous to moving off tomorrow.

(signed by SL Cunningham)  
Major  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 5.00 pm

Copy No 1 19<sup>th</sup> Battn  
2 "A" Coy  
3 "B" Coy  
4 "C" Coy  
5 "D" Coy  
6 Scouts  
7 Bombers  
8 Signals  
9 MGS  
10 RSM  
11 MO  
12 Office  
13-15 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 67

SECRET

Copy No 13  
15/12/16

Ref: Trench Map 36.c.N.W.1 Ed 7.b. 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB-SECTOR on SATURDAY Dec 16<sup>th</sup> 1916, during daylight.
- 2 On being relieved Companies and Details will take up the following positions:
  - "A" Company to Billets in CALONNE as before
  - "B" Company to MAROC DEFENCES
  - "C" Company to Billets in CALONNE as previously occupied by "B" Coy
  - "D" Company to Billets in CALONNE as before
  - Details to Billets in CALONNE as before.
- 3 Completion of reliefs will be immediately reported to Battn Hd Qrs by wire using individual Codes as in Operation Order No 65. d/3/12/16. Details will report completion by runner.
- 4 Officers Commanding Companies and Details will see that all SALVAGE is handed over to the Pioneer Corporal at COVENT GARDENS by 8.30 am tomorrow.
- 5 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts taken, which will be forwarded to Battalion Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will NOT be treated as TRENCH STORES.
- 6 Officers Commanding Companies and Details will ensure that their Lines are left in a clean and sanitary condition. Sanitation Certificates will be forwarded to Battn Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow. This must be signed by the Officer taking over.
- 7 Officers Commanding Companies and Details will submit to Battalion Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow a detailed Distribution State showing the exact Stand-to positions of their Companies and Details.
- 8 Officers Commanding Companies and Details will send to Battalion Orderly Room by 12.00 noon tomorrow a return showing the exact number of Other Ranks available for fatigue.
- 9 1 Officer and One NCO per Company and one NCO per Detail will proceed ahead and take over Billets.

10 All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief.

(signed by SL Cunningham)  
Major  
Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No 1 "A" Coy  
2 "B" Coy  
3 "C" Coy  
4 "D" Coy  
5 Bombers  
6 Scouts  
7 Signal  
8 MO  
9 RSM  
10 Office Copy  
11 Commanding Officer  
12 MGS  
13-16 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 68

SECRET

Copy No 13  
21/12/16

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36.c.S.W.1 Ed.7.b 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB SECTOR tomorrow the 22<sup>nd</sup> inst., leaving present Billets at times as under:  
"A" Company will relieve the LEFT SUB SECTOR at 9.00 am proceeding via ESSEX TRENCH – HORSE GUARDS, 230-235  
"B" Company from MAROC DEFENCES to CENTER SUB SECTOR, will leave there as soon as the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion have passed through their lines.  
"C" Company will move to SUPPORT in CALONNE 1.  
"D" Company will relieve the RIGHT SUB SECTOR at 9.15 am proceeding via HEADQUARTERS STREET & BOYAN THOMAS and 217.  
DETAILS will relieve corresponding Details at 8.30 am. Headquarters will move at 10.30 am.
- 2 Reliefs will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by wire using individual Codes as in Operation Order No 65 d/3/12/16. Details will report completion by runner.
- 3 1 NCO and 4 men per Company and 2 men per Detail will remain behind for the purpose of cleaning Billets. This detail will not proceed to join their Units until dismissed by the MO (This does not apply to "B" Company)
- 4 OC "C" Company will hand over to OC "A" Company all VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES and LEWIS GUNS & CREWS by 10.00 am tomorrow.
- 5 One Officer per Company and one NCO per Detail will proceed ahead to take over Trench Stores.
- 6 OC Companies and Details will be held responsible that all VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES are taken with them.

- 7 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given, a copy of which will be forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs by 6.00 pm tomorrow
- 8 All guards will remain until relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion, and one Officer of "C" Company will remain behind to take charge of same until relieved.
- 9 OC Companies and Details are reminded that all Returns and Reports as called for in list recently issued, must be submitted on time. A distribution state is to be submitted by 6.00 pm tomorrow.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
For Major & Adt 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	"A" Coy	8	Bombers
2	"B" Coy	9	Signals
3	"C" Coy	10	MO
4	"D" Coy	11	RSM
5	19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion	12	Office
6	MGS	13-15	War Diary
7	Scouts		

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 69

Copy No 22  
Dec 23<sup>rd</sup>, 1916

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36c.S.W.1. 1/10,000

- 1 **INFORMATION** The enemy trench from M.20.b.9½.6½ to M.21.a.1½.6. is manned at night by a sentry group. A lane has been cut through the enemy wire at M.21.a.½.6½
- 2 **INTENTION** With the co-operation of McKay Artillery Group and Stokes Mortar Battery, a Raiding Party of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will enter the enemy line at the point M.21.a.½.6½ on the night of Dec 23<sup>rd</sup>/24<sup>th</sup> at ZERO Hour, for the purpose of securing an enemy identification.
- 3 **PERSONNEL**
  - Lieut J de Audette
  - 27 Other Ranks
  - 1 Lewis Gun & Crew
  - 1 Signaller
  - 2 Stretcher Bearers
- 4 **TIME** ZERO HOUR will be notified later
- 5 **BATTALION HEADQUARTERS** Advanced Battalion Headquarters from 6.00 pm will be at M.14.d.8½.½

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut for  
Major & Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.10 am

- |           |                                   |       |           |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|-------|-----------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB               | 12    | "B" Coy   |
| 2         | 22 <sup>nd</sup> Battalion        | 13    | "C" Coy   |
| 3         | 18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion        | 14    | "D" Coy   |
| 4         | 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion        | 15    | MGO       |
| 5         | McKay Group Artillery             | 16    | Scouts    |
| 6         | Stokes Mortar Battery             | 17    | Bombers   |
| 7         | 255 <sup>th</sup> Tunnelling Coy  | 18    | Signals   |
| 8         | 4 <sup>th</sup> FCCE              | 19    | MO        |
| 9         | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Pioneer Battalion | 20    | RSM       |
| 10        | 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB MG Coy        | 21    | Office    |
| 11        | "A" Coy                           | 22-23 | War Diary |

"A" Form.  
**MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.**

Army Form C.2121  
(in pads of 100.)  
No. of Message.....

Prefix .....	Code .....	Words	Charge	This message is on a/o of:	Recd. at.....m.
Office of origin and Service Instructions.				Sent	Date .....
				At.....m.	From .....
				To.....m.	By .....
				By..... (Signature of "Franking Officer.")	

TO { Addressed as in Operation Order 69

Sender's Number. * T 726	Day of Month. 26	In reply to Number.	A A A
-----------------------------	---------------------	---------------------	-------

Ref our O O 69 aaa This will  
be carried out tonight aaa  
Zero hours about 12.15 am aaa  
Acknowledge.

From	Capt. 21 <sup>st</sup> Bdn Bn		
Place			
Time	11:00 pm		

The above may be forwarded as now corrected. (Z)  
Censor. Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

763,000. W 2190 - M509. II. W. & V., Ltd. 6/16.



21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 70

SECRET

Copy No 13  
27/12/16

Ref Trench Map LENS 36.c S.W.1 Ed 7b 1/10,000

- RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB-SECTOR on THURSDAY Dec 28<sup>th</sup>, 1916, during daylight and proceed to Billets in BULLY-GRENAY.
- TIME Will be notified later
- TRENCH STORES Trench Stores will be handed over, and receipts taken, which will be forwarded to Bn Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will NOT be treated as TRENCH STORES.
- REPORTS Completion of Relief will be reported to Bn Hdqtrs by wire, using codes as in Operation Order 66, d/3/12/16.
- Details will report relief by runner.
- BAGGAGE All Baggage and Cooking utensils will be left at COVENT GARDENS by 9.00 am tomorrow. OC "C" Company will detail a guard of one NCO and 6 men to look after same.
- OC Companies and Details will have to make their own arrangements in regards to carrying out of cooking utensils needed for tomorrow.
- COVER All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief. Strict March Discipline will be observed when marching through BULLY-GRENAY
- TAKING OVER Company and Detail quartermaster Sergts will proceed to BULLY and take over Billets prior to the Battalion moving in. All Billets must be taken over in a clean and sanitary condition.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
For Major & Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 6.00 pm

Copy No 1	"A" Coy	8	MGS
2	"B" Coy	9	MO
3	"C" Coy	10	RSM
4	"D" Coy	11	Commanding Officer
5	Bombers	12	Office Copy
6	Scouts	13-16	War Diary
7	Signals		

## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
Bully Grenay M20C 8 ½ 7 to M9 d 4.4	1/1/17		The battalion remained in Divisional Reserve formed several large fatigue parties for digging trenches.
	2/1/17		
	3/1/17		The battalion relieved the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian battalion in the Right Sub Sector Front Line as per operation orders No 71 Casualties nil. Relief completed 12.00 noon Enemy artillery fairly active in vicinity of trench 212. Our artillery very active also. Trench mortars doing damage to enemy wire at trenches. Our observers report ??? at M15 d 43 about 4 feet long and appears to be very substantial. Six patrols covered our front but found nothing of importance to report.
	4/1/17		Enemy artillery normal. Our artillery very active, during the day we fired over 300 rounds 18 Pdrs at sundry places along their line. Our trench mortars also very active damaging enemy wire in vicinity of M15 d 9.9 Our patrols reported everything quiet.
	5/1/17		Enemy artillery normal. Our artillery and trench mortars exceptionally active, firing at enemy wire and front line doing considerable damage to both. Our observer reports seeing a blue & white pigeon flying from M20 b 7 ½ . 4 ½ in NE direction, they also report seeing two flags flying from flag pole near Lens Church. Both were white (this was at 12.00 noon). At 1.00 pm these were taken down and a blue on hoisted. Our listening patrols report nothing unusual.
	6/1/17		Enemy artillery fairly active. Our artillery and trench mortars very active against Fosse 16 d M15.C.6.2 blowing enemy trench in at various places. Weather conditions too misty for good observation.
Calonne	7/1/17		The battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> battalion in the right sub sector this morning as per operation order No 72 and three companies proceeded to Bully for special training. The remainder of the battalion together with a company of the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion formed Brigade Support. Casualties nil
	8/1/17		The three companies in Bully training very hard for intended raid the remaining company in Calonne together with 27 <sup>th</sup> Battalion draft company and a company of the 18 <sup>th</sup>
	16/1/17		battalion formed many large carrying parties and fatigues.
	17/1/17		At 5.00 pm this morning the companies from Bully proceeded to take up their positions in front line as per operation order No 73. This was completed by 7.00 am, at 7.45 am the artillery opened fire, and the first wave moved to the assault, followed by the two other waves. At 8.30 am the enemy line was evacuated and all the raiding party returned together with two machine guns and a Fish tail bomb throwing machine, after causing tremendous damage to enemy line and inflicting heavy casualties. During this raid numerous prisoners were taken and conveyed back to Battalion HQ. Our casualties were 1 officer wounded and 11 OR killed 61 OR wounded. The battalion then proceeded to Calonne to form Brigade Reserve.

	18/1/17	The battalion remained in Calonne resting and cleaning up.
	&	
	19/1/17	
	20/1/17	The battalion was relieved this morning by the 16 <sup>th</sup> battalion, 3 <sup>rd</sup> Cdn Inf Brigade and proceeded to Bully Grenay to form Divisional Reserve as per operation order No 74
	21/1/17	The battalion marched to Ruitz to training area as per operation order #75
Ruitz	22/1/17	The battalion remained here, during this period they did much training and taking part in
	to	Route Marches, sports etc.
	26/1/17	
	27/1/17	The battalion marched to places as under: 2 companies & headquarters to Barlin the remainder of the battalion going to Bruay and Fosse 7 as per Operation Order 76
Barlin	28/1/17	The battalion carried on with training etc.
	&	
	29/1/17	
	30/1/17	The battalion marched to Billets in Marles Les Mines as per Operation Order #77 Reached the new area about 1.15 pm
Marles Les Mines	31/1/17	The battalion continued training during the day. Weather very cold, little snow.

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 71

SECRET  
Copy No. 12  
2/1/17

Ref. Trench Map LENS c.S.W. 1 ED. 7.b. 1/10.000

1. The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the RIGHT SUB SECTOR tomorrow at times as under.
  - "D" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve coy of 19<sup>th</sup> battalion on Left, leaving Bully Grenay at 9.00 am
  - "C" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve coy of 19<sup>th</sup> battalion in Centre, leaving Bully Grenay at 9.15 am
  - "A" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve coy of 19<sup>th</sup> battalion on Right, leaving Bully Grenay at 9.30 am
  - "B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve coy of 19<sup>th</sup> battalion in Support, leaving Bully Grenay at 10.00 am
 Details will relieve corresponding details leaving at times as under:
  - MG Section – 8.30 am
  - Signals – 8.35 am
  - Bombers – 8.40 am
  - Scouts – 8.45 am
  - Headquarters – 10.00 am
 100 yards interval to be maintained between platoons and sections.
2. Trench stores will be taken over and receipts given, duplicates of which will be sent to Bn. Orderly Room by 5.00 pm the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst.
3. Officers commanding companies and details will ensure that their billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition. For this purpose a party of one NCO and 4 men per Coy and 2 men per detail will report to the Medical Officer at Battn Orderly Room Bully Grenay at 9.00 am and will not proceed to join their unit until dismissed by the MO.

4. Completion of reliefs will be reported to Battn Hd Qtrs by wire, using Codes as in Operation Order No 65. d/3/12/16.
5. Cookers will be taken to Covent Gardens tonight. Officers Commanding Coys and Details will see that sufficient "Dixies" are retained to enable tomorrows breakfast to be cooked, and that balance of rations are taken to Covent Gardens tonight.
6. All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief.
7. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will be taken into line, and OC "B" Coy will hand to OC "C" Coy all VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES on his charge.
8. 1 officer per Coy and 1 NCO per Detail will proceed ahead to take over Trench Stores.
9. Lewis guns & crews of "B" Coy will report to OC "D" Coy previous to moving off tomorrow.

Signed by Elmer Jones  
Lieut. Col.  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.30 to

Copy No 1 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 2 "A" Coy  
 3 "B" Coy  
 4 "C" Coy  
 5 "D" Coy  
 6 Scouts  
 7 Bombers  
 8 Signals  
 9 M.G.S.  
 10 RSM  
 11 MO  
 12 Office  
 13 to 16 War Diary

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 72

Ref. Trench Map LENS 36 c.s.w. 1 ED. 7.b. 1/10.000

SECRET  
Copy No. 16  
6/1/17

1. The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> battalion in the right SUB-SECTION on Sunday Jan 7<sup>th</sup>, 1917 during daylight.
2. On being relieved Companies and Details will take up the following positions:
  - "B" Coy will proceed to Bully
  - "C" Coy will proceed to Bully
  - "D" Coy will proceed to Bully
  - Bombers will proceed to Bully
  - Scouts will proceed to Bully
  - "A" Coy to Billets in Calonne as before
  - M.G. Section to Billets in Calonne as before
  - Headquarters will move to Calonne as before

3. Completion of relief will be immediately reported to battalion HQ by wire using individual codes as in Operation Order No 65 dated 3/12/16. Details will report completion by runner.
4. Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts taken, which will be forwarded to Battalion Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow. VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES will not be treated as TRENCH STORES.
5. Officers Commanding Companies and Details will ensure that their Lines are left in a clean and sanitary condition. Sanitation Certificates will be forwarded to Battalion Orderly Room by 5.00 pm tomorrow. This must be signed by the Officer taking over.
6. All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief. Strict march discipline will be observed by the Companies and Details marching through Bully Grenay.
7. 1 Officer and 1 NCO per Company and one NCO per detail will proceed ahead to take over billets.
8. Officers Commanding Companies and Details will see that all SALVAGE is handed over to the Pioneer Corporal at COVENT GARDENS by 8.30 am tomorrow.

Signed by Elmer Jones  
Lieut. Col.  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at

- Copy No 1 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 2 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 3 "A" Coy  
 4 "B" Coy  
 5 "C" Coy  
 6 "D" Coy  
 7 Bombers  
 8 Scouts  
 9 Signals  
 10 M.G.S.  
 11 NQ  
 12 RSM  
 13 Office  
 14 to 16 War Diary

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 73

SECRET  
Copy No. 28

Ref. Sheet 36 c.s.w. 1 LENS. 1/10.000

1. Information      The enemy frontage from M.15.b.6. ½. To M.15.b.9.8½ and fro a depth of 300 yards is held during the day by sentries and detached posts.  
 The garrison of this area being in deep dugouts and cellars.
- By observation, machine gun emplacements are located at M.15.b.8.3. and m.9.d.7.0. Trench Mortar emplacements in enemy second line trench, and dugouts located at M.15.b.6½.½ and M.16.a.3.8½.
- The 20<sup>th</sup> battalion will support our left flank and will advance at the same ZERO hour
- The right flank will not be supported.

2. Intention                    The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion attacking party will enter the enemy trench from M.15.b.6.½ to M.15.b.9.8½ at ZERO HOUR plus 4 minutes for the purpose of inflicting casualties, making prisoners, securing booty and wrecking dugouts in the system of trenches in the area attacked.
3. Personnel                    Major GSS Bowerbank  
Major FD Raymond  
Capt P Brocklebank  
Capt DM Goudy  
Lieut GT Evans  
Lieut FW Oldham  
Lieut CW Topping  
Lieut J de Audette  
Lieut ES Sawell  
Lieut R Henderson  
Lieut G Millar  
Lieut AM Scott  
Lieut HT Deane  
7 Lewis Guns  
4 Signallers  
12 Stretcher Bearers  
400 Other Ranks
4. Time                            Zero hour will be notified later
5. Battalion Headquarters    Advanced battalion headquarters will be at m.15.a.1½.1½ from 5.00 am

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
2 26<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
3 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
4 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
5 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
6 McKay Group artillery  
7 Stokes Mortar Battery  
8 255<sup>th</sup> Tunneling Coy  
9 4<sup>th</sup> FCCE  
10 2<sup>nd</sup> Pioneer Battalion  
11 4<sup>th</sup> CIB M.G. Coy  
12 No 1 Special Company RE  
13 173<sup>rd</sup> Tunneling Company  
14 Cdn Corps MG Bde  
15 2<sup>nd</sup> Special Company RE  
16 "E" Company 4.A. special Bn RE  
17 "A" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
18 "B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
19 "C" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
20 "D" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
21 MGO  
22 Scouts  
23 Bombers  
24 Signals  
25 MO  
26 RSM  
27 Office  
28-30 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
MEMORANDA TO ACCOMPANY OPERATION ORDER No 73.

Copy No.....

Ref: Map LENS 36.c.S.W. 1.1/10,000  
and sundry blue prints

1. **Preparatory Moves** "B", "C" and "D" Companies 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian battalion will relieve troops in front line from M.15.b.2½.9½ to M.15.b.2.4 (JUMPING OFF TRENCH)  
This will be complete 45 minutes before ZERO. A runner will report to Battalion Headquarters when this is done. "A" Company will move from Calonne into Battalion Support in Horse Guards Avenue. One platoon will be detailed to hold JUMPING OFF TRENCH.
2. **Traffic** Lemberg Trench will be inclusive to the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion. Porthcawl Road will be inclusive to the 20<sup>th</sup> battalion.  
Horse Guards Avenue and Railway Alley and other C.T's south of Railway are inclusive to the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion.
3. **Frontage** Previous to assault the Battalion Frontage is allotted as follows:  
"C" Company- RIGHT- M.15.b.2.4 – M.15.b.3.6  
"D" Company- CENTRE- M.15.b.3.6 – M.15.b.3.7½  
"B" Company- LEFT- M.15.b.3.7½ – M.15.b.2½.9½
4. **Objectives** Battalion Objective.  
1<sup>st</sup> Objective. Enemy front line from M.15.b.3.6½ to M.15.b.9.8½  
2<sup>nd</sup> Objective. Enemy second line from M.16.a.3.8½ to M.16.b.9½.½ penetrating to M.16.a.3.7½ (17) and M.16.a.4.3. (20)  
  
Company Objectives  
  
"C" Company-RIGHT- will enter enemy trenches from M.15.b.6.0. (1) – M.15.b.7.3 (3) and will penetrate to a depth of approximately 350 yards.  
Trenches M.15.b.7.3 (3) – M.16.a.4.3 (20) and M.15.b.6.0 (1) – M.15.b.9½.½ (11) are inclusive to this Company.  
  
"D" Company-CENTRE- will enter enemy trenches from M.15.b.7.3 (3) – M.15.b.9.6½ (6) and will penetrate to a depth of approximately 150 yards.  
Trench M.16.a.½.5 (15) – M.16.a.2.7½ (16) is inclusive to "D" Company  
  
"B" Company-LEFT- will enter the enemy trenches from M.15.b.9.8. (7) to M.15.b.9.6½ (6) and will penetrate to a depth of approximately 200 yards penetrating to M.16.a.3.8½ (19). Trench M.15.b.9.8 (7) to M.16.a.3.7½ (17) is inclusive to "B" Company.
5. **Advance** The advance will be made in three waves.  
The first wave will move to the assault at ZERO HOUR.  
The second and third waves will follow at 50 yards interval.  
1<sup>st</sup> Wave will capture and mop up the first objective and form a covering party for withdrawal.  
2<sup>nd</sup> Wave will pass over first objective and capture final objective, supported by a portion of the 1<sup>st</sup> wave. They will also deal with intervening trenches.  
3<sup>rd</sup> Wave will be composed of technical units and carrying parties to assist the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> waves.
6. **Dress** Dress will be full equipment without packs. Each man will carry:  
1 sand bag and 10 Mills Bombs

7. Changes to date in the artillery barrage are as under:
- Artillery
- "A" BARRAGE will extend as far South as the road at M.15.d.5½.9½
- "B" BARRAGE will be as follows: Road m.15.d.5½.9½. to M.15.b.9.0. to M.16.a.0.3. thence as before
- "C" BARRAGE will be as follows: Road M.15.d.5½.9½. to junction with trench at M.16.a.2.0. along trench M.16.a.4.0. and thence as before.
- The zones of 2" and Stokes Mortars will be altered accordingly
- The times for barrages will be as follows:
1. From ZERO to ZERO plus 4 minutes "A" BARRAGE which is on 1<sup>st</sup> Objective.
  2. From ZERO plus 4 to ZERO 20 north of M.16.a.2.6½ "B" BARRAGE which is on 2<sup>nd</sup> Objective
  3. From ZERO plus 4 to ZERO plus 9 South of M.16.a.2.6½. "B" BARRAGE which is on 2<sup>nd</sup> Objective
  4. After times mentioned in 2 and 3 "C" BARRAGE or a protective barrage.
8. No. 1 Special Coy RE will form a Smoke Barrage from 4" Stokes to cover the immediate flanks of the attack. This Barrage will be maintained from ZERO to ZERO plus 60 minutes.
- Smoke
9. The 173<sup>rd</sup> Tunneling Coy RE will explode a Mine at about m.4.d.3.5 at ZERO plus 15 minutes.
- Mine
10. The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian M.G. Coy and detachment of Canadian Corps M.G. Bde. Will barrage enemy trenches on flanks of and beyond final objective from ZERO till completion of operation.
- Machine Guns
11. Stokes Guns will be used to bombard special targets during operation.
- Stokes Guns
12. At ZERO plus 45 minutes an underground tube will be exploded from M.15.b.2½.9. to about 150 feet in a due easterly direction and the withdrawal will commence from the final objective. At the same time daylight signal rockets will be sent up on both flanks of the JUMPING OFF TRENCHES.
- Withdrawal
- Covering parties will hold the enemy communication trenches in the Battalion Front and finally the German Front line trench until all advancing troops have passed back.
- The withdrawal will be completed by ZERO plus 60 minutes.
13. The Signal Section, 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will establish telephonic communication from advanced Battalion Head Quarters to about M.15.b.6½.3. A relay station will be installed at about m.15.b½.7.
- Communication
14. A temporary RAP will be established at about M.9.c.1½.2. Approach to RAP is via PORTHCAWL ROAD and LEMBERG TRENCH.
- Medical
15. The assaulting Infantry will fire:
- Signals
1. WHITE VERY LIGHTS to indicate the capture of the first objective, and GREEN VERY LIGHTS to indicate the capture of the final objective.
  2. The "SOS" Signal will be a succession of RED VERY LIGHTS
  3. All signals will be fired towards our own lines.
- The Officer Commanding platoon of "A" company, holding JUMPING OFF TRENCH will be responsible for the firing of daylight signal rockets mentioned in para. 12 of these memoranda.
16. Watches will be synchronized from Bde. Hd. Qrs., at 8 hours and 2 hours before ZERO HOUR.
- Time
17. Prisoners will be sent to Battalion Headquarters
- Prisoners



18. Complete Rolls of all men engaged to be prepared in advance, and on completion of operation, the rolls are to be checked carefully over. Sappers attached to Companies will be placed on these Rolls.
19. No effort should be spared to remove casualties so that the enemy will not secure identification.
20. Reports will be sent to Battalion headquarters.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut for  
Major & Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

- Copy 1 Officer Commanding  
2 "A" Company  
3 "B" Company  
4 "C" Company  
5 "D" Company  
6 Signals  
7 Bombers  
8 Scouts  
9 M.G.O.  
10 M.O.  
11 RSM  
12 Office  
13 to 15 War Diary.

Jan. 15<sup>th</sup> 1917

REFERENCE MEMORANDA TO ACCOMPANY  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 73

- AMENDMENT Para. 12 In addition to GREEN ROCKETS, SILVER RAIN ROCKETS will also be used in conjunction.
- Para 15 The Officer Commanding "A" Company will arrange that in addition to GREEN ROCKETS at each station 3 SILVER RAIN ROCKETS will be added. The Rockets will be fired alternately GREEN and SILVER RAIN, commencing with a GREEN

(Signed) AP Christmas  
Acting Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.20 pm

Jan 16<sup>th</sup>, 1917

REFERENCE MEMORANDA TO ACCOMPANY  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 73

- AMENDMENT Para 12 In place of Daylight Rocket Signals, GREEN ROCKETS will be used
- Para 15 Four Rocket Stations will be established 200 yards apart on the immediate right of JUMPING OFF TRENCH, the left one being at m.15.b.2.4.  
The rockets will be fired towards the Battalion objectives.  
The Officer Commanding "A" company will arrange with Unit holding the Line, where these Rocket Stations will be, to fire them at the specified time. Rocket Port Fires and other material necessary for this operation will be drawn from the Brigade Bomb Store, CALONNE.  
At least six rockets will be at each station.
- Care should be taken that men detailed to fire rockets are fully acquainted with the work in hand.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
Acting Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 9.30 pm

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

Reports received during operations contained in O.O. 73

At advanced Battalion Headquarters the following Telephonic communication was established

HQ to Hun Front Line  
HQ to Brigade  
HQ to Burlington OP  
HQ to HQ 144 H. Battery  
HQ to D.21 H.H. Battery

- 7.43 ½ Barrage Opens  
7.46 ½ Infantry reaches first objective. Very slight retaliation  
7.50 Retaliation still slight, only Field Guns  
7.52 Double red flares coming from Enemy Front Line. Communication with Enemy Front Line established  
7.53 White flares right. One white flare left  
7.55 Two white flares on both flanks. Enemy retaliation increasing in front line and supports. 12 per minute, only field guns. Three prisoners passed back. Mine at Double Crassier reported exploded at 7.54  
7.57 Enemy retaliation still slight. Field guns in direction Lens. Major Raymond speaks from enemy front line, reports everything ok, that he had 2 casualties from our own shell fire.  
7.59 One ???? flare right  
8.00 Another Prisoner passed back. Boy about 16.  
8.0½ Red and green flare center.  
8.01 White flare left. Enemy trench mortars form direction of Fosse 16.

- 8.02 10 or 12 prisoners coming over. Three Red flares (mentioned above 8.0½. Broke into two.
- 8.04 Enemy retaliation practically nil
- 8.04½ Very little retaliation. What there is, is on right flank. A few Whiz Bangs on Support Line.
- 8.05½ Smoke barrage quite satisfactory. Green flares center
- 8.06 Machine gun retaliation practically nil
- 8.07 Enemy retaliation nothing heavier than 4.2. Those falling in M.15.a. from direction of Lieven.
- 8.08 25 prisoners reported captured by left Battalion.
- 8.09 Green flares center
- 8.09½ Green flares center. Total four.
- 8.10 Green flares. Total ten. Green flare left.
- 8.10½ Two green flares left
- 8.11 T.M. heavier to support line. M.15.a. Rate 4 per minute. Green flare right.
- 8.12 All parties have reached objectives except one on right of railroad.
- 8.12½ Green flare on right of railway
- 8.13½ First prisoner passed HQ
- 8.14 Three more pass HQ. Green light right. All objectives reached.
- 8.16½ A few heavies, one in 25 seconds
- 8.17 Connection between HQ and Relay station broken
- 8.18 No guns appear to be firing, only TMs
- 8.19 Sergeant Maheux returns from enemy line. Reports that operations are proceeding satisfactorily, that wire was well cut. That there were a number of casualties in the Right Coy.
- 8.23½ Field guns opened on left. Direction unknown.
- 8.28 Retaliation very slight. All enemy fire practically ceased.
- 8.28½ Major Elmitt asks for increase rate of fire from our artillery.
- 8.30 Infantry commences to withdraw
- 8.31 Withdrawal commenced on whole front.
- 8.32 Retaliation practically nil. Fishtail Machine captured. Communication with the enemy front line reestablished.
- 8.32½ Green flare seen on left about three minutes ago.
- 8.33 Green flares on left. Heavy retaliation on our support line.
- 8.35 Our station on enemy front line sends word that they are about to withdraw. Lt Deane instructs to lift our barrage. Enemy barrage increasing on right and left of railway.
- 8.36 Rate of fire on our front line 4 rounds per min.
- 8.37 Lt Deane reports that our barrage is on the enemy front line and that our men are not all out.
- 8.38 Burlington OP cannot confirm Lt Deane's report. Too misty.
- 8.39 15 prisoners reported captured by "D" Company.
- 8.40 Enemy firing salvo on our front line. Lt Deane reports that our artillery is now satisfactory.
- 8.41 Major Elmitt instructs that our rate of fire be kept up until all the infantry gets back.
- 8.43 Two more prisoners pass HQ. Total 21.
- 8.44 Lt Deane reports that he is unable to see our men returning
- 8.45 Major Elmitt instructs that our artillery fire be kept up until he instructs otherwise. Enemy barrage increasing in front of left Batt.
- 8.46 Two or three wounded being carried in from ???
- 8.47 Our left front practically clear. Fair amount of retaliation our own front line.
- 8.49 Captain Brocklebank reports and or the same. Lt Deane reports ??? clear. Captain Goudy reports.
- 8.50 Major Raymond reports
- 8.51 Total prisoners reported over thirty. Major Elmitt instructs artillery to moderate of fire.
- 8.52 No Officer's casualties reported.
- 8.55 Lt Deane again reports ??? clear. Major Elmitt instructs Mr Deane to report when trenches are practically clear. 57 prisoners reported taken by left Battalion. Right and Center Companies reports "light casualties".

- 8.59 Situation quieting down
- 9.05 Situation normal
- 9.06 Lt Deane reports our trenches practically clear
- 9.09 Enemy retaliation ceases
- 9.10 60 prisoners taken by left Battalion
- 9.15 Major Elmitt instructs artillery to cease fire.

SECRET

21 CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No. 74.

Copy No.....15

Ref: Trench Map LENS 36.c.S.W.1 Ed 7 b. 1/10,000

19/1/17

- RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by a Unit of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Inf Bde, tomorrow the 20<sup>th</sup> inst., during daylight, and, on completion of relief will proceed to Billets in BULLY GREY.
- STORES Attention is drawn to DO 15.d18/1/17 para 4.  
For the purpose of Sanitation, a party of 1 NCO and 4 men per Company and 2 men per Detail will report to the MO at Battalion Orderly Room CALONNE at 9.00 am tomorrow and will not proceed to join their Unit until dismissed by the MO. (this does not apply to "B" Company)
- BAGGAGE All Officer's baggage and cooking utensils will be left at COVENT GAREN by 9.00 am tomorrow and the Officer Commanding "A" Company will detail a Guard of 1 NCO and 6 men to look after same.  
Officers Commanding Companies and Details must make their own arrangements in regards to varying out of cooking utensils needed for tomorrow.
- COVER All ranks are warned to keep under cover as much as possible during relief. Strict March Discipline will be observed when marching through BULLY GREY.

(signed by AP Christmas)

Lieut

Acting Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 4.00 pm

- Copy No. 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Company
  - 3 "B" Company
  - 4 "C" Company
  - 5 "D" Company
  - 6 Bombers
  - 7 Scouts
  - 8 M.G.S.
  - 9 Signallers
  - 10 MO
  - 11 RSM
  - 12 Office
  - 13 to 15 War Diary

Ref. Lens Sheet 1/1000,000  
Sheet 36 b 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to RUITZ tomorrow the 21<sup>st</sup> inst. Via SAINS EN GOHELLE and HERSIN
- 2 STARTING POINT – BULLY GREY SQUARE. 9.00 am
- 3 The following will move in the following order:  
Scouts, “A”, “B”, “C”, and “D” Companies, Bombers, M.G. Section and “B” Section  
From BULLY GREY SQUARE to WEST of HERSIN. Companies will march by Platoons, and from WEST of HERSIN to RUITZ by Companies. Intervals of FIVE MINUTES to be kept between each Platoon. Company and Details QMS will guide companies and Details to Billets.
- 4 All ranks will carry full kit and will wear Steel Helmets.
- 5 All blankets will be rolled by Platoons and plainly labeled and placed in ORDERLY ROOM SQUARE by 8.30 am tomorrow without fail. The RSM will detail a Guard of 3 men to look after same.
- 6 Officers Baggage and Orderly Room material will be placed in Orderly Room Square, ready for Transport to pick up tomorrow at 8.30 am.
- 7 Company and Detail Commanders will make their own arrangements for the men’s meals tomorrow.
- 8 Headquarters will be at BULLY GREY till 11.00 am and will open again at 2.00 pm at RUITZ.
- 9 The Transport and Quartermasters Stores will move independently.
- 10 Strict march discipline is to be maintained throughout this March. OCs Companies and Details will see that this is strictly adhered to.
- 11 Troops are on no account to halt within Villages
- 12 All Billets are to be left in a clean and sanitary condition.

Lieut  
A Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 5.30 pm

- Copy No 1 Officer Commanding
- 2 “A” Company
  - 3 “B” Company
  - 4 “C” Company
  - 5 “D” Company
  - 6 M.G.S.
  - 7 Scouts
  - 8 Bombers
  - 9 Signallers
  - 10 MO
  - 11 TO
  - 12 QM
  - 13 RSM
  - 14 Office
  - 15 War Diary

Ref: Map. FRANCE. Sheet 36b.ED. 6 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to Billets in the under mentioned places, today, at times as under. Units will move independently.

HEADQUARTERS moving at 1.00 pm )

"C" Company moving at 1.00 pm ) To Billets at BARLIN

"D" Company moving at 1.15 pm )

"B" Company moving at 1.30 pm to Billets at BRUAY

"A" Company moving at 1.45 pm to Billets at FOSSE 7.

Completion of reliefs to be reported at once to Battalion Headquarters. "B" Company will report relief direct to Bde Headquarters.

TRANSPORT and QUARTERMASTER'S PERSONNEL moving to BRUAY at times to be decided on by Transport Officer and Quartermaster.

- 2 Officer's Baggage and Orderly Room equipment will be placed outside present Orderly Room by 12.30 pm today, and the Transport Officer will make necessary arrangements for transportation of same to respective new Billets.

Extra BLANKETS will be rolled by Platoons, plainly labeled and placed outside present Orderly Room by 12.30 pm

Mechanical Transport will convey these to new Billets.

- 3 All Billets must be left in a clean and sanitary condition. For this purpose OCs Companies will each detail one NCO and 4 men, and the RSM will detail one NCO and 4 men, for Headquarters, who will report to the MO at 12.30 pm at Bn Orderly Room. This detail will not rejoin their respective Units until dismissed by the MO.
- 4 Present HEADQUARTERS will close at 1.00 pm and will open again at BARLIN (approx: K.33.c.O.S.) at 4.00 pm.

(signed by AP Christmas)

Lieut

A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.10 pm

- Copy No 1 Officer Commanding  
2 "A" Company  
3 "B" Company  
4 "C" Company  
5 "D" Company  
6 M.G.O.  
7 Bombers  
8 Scouts  
9 Signals  
10 MO  
11 TO  
12 QM  
13 RSM  
14 Office  
15 to 17 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 77. Copy No. 17

SECRET

29/1/17

REF: Maps LENS 11 and HAZEBROUCK 5a 1/100,000

- 1 MOVE The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to Billets in MARLES LES MINES, tomorrow the 30<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 STARTING POINT Starting Point will be in front of Town Major's Office, BARLIN, at 8.30 am. Head of Col: facing SOUTH. "B" company, Transport and Quartermaster Personnel will make own arrangements to join Battalion at BRIGADE STARTING POINT which is CROSS ROADS half a mile WEST of the L in LABUISSIERE at 10.31 am
- 3 ORDER OF MARCH Order of March as per new organization
- 4 OFFICER'S BAGGAGE ETC: Officer's Baggage and Mess Utensils will be placed outside Bn Hd Qrs Mess by 7.00 am tomorrow. Transport Officer will arrange to collect same. Orderly Room equipment will be collected at 7.30 am
- 5 MARCHING OUT STATES Marching Out States will be in Bn Orderly Room by 6.00 am tomorrow
- 6 BATTN: Hd QUARTERS Present Battalion Headquarters will close at 7.00 am tomorrow and will open again at 1.00 pm at MARLES LES MINES (Map location will be notified later)
- 7 BLANKETS Surplus Blankets will be placed outside Battn Orderly Room by 7.00 am. It is essential that these by securely tied and plainly labeled.

(signed by AP Christmas)

Lieut

A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.45 am

- Copy No. 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Company
  - 3 "B" Company
  - 4 "C" Company
  - 5 "D" Company
  - 6 M.G.O.
  - 7 Bombers
  - 8 Scouts
  - 9 Signals
  - 10 TO
  - 11 QM
  - 12 MO
  - 13 RSM
  - 14 Office
  - 15 to 17 War Diary

Transcriber's Note: Attached to this month in the diary are several hand written reports from the Company Commanders that were sent back to the HQ during the trench raid outlined in Operation Order No. 73. These may be viewed in original war diary.

**WAR DIARY**  
OF  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.**  
(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
MARLES LES MINES	1/2/17 to 7/2/17		The battalion continued to carry out special training. Weather cold, little snow.
	8/2/17		The battalion was inspected by the GOC 2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division. Weather extremely cold.
	9/2/17 to 11/2/17		The battalion carried on with training, weather a little warmer, snow disappearing, men were able to get a bath during this time. This was appreciated by them all.
RUITZ	12/2/17		The battalion marched to RUITZ, starting at 9.00 am and arriving there at 11.30 am. Weather fine. See Operation Order # 78
BOIS des ALLEUX	13/2/17		The battalion marched to NEW "A" HUTS. BOIS des ALLEUX by way of REOREUVE-GUACHIN-LEGAL-LES 4 VENT, starting at 8.20 and arriving there at 2.00 pm. See Operation Order # 79
LEFT SUB SECTOR THELUS SECTION	14/2/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion relieved the 58 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the C2 Sub Sector today. Relief completed by midnight. See Operation Order # 80
	15/2/17		Enemy artillery quiet. Trench Mortars fairly active. 30 Fish-tails being fired in Front Lines. Our artillery nil. Casualties 1 OR killed, 7 OR wounded, 7 enemy aeroplanes over this area at great height. Patrols had nothing to report.
	16/2/17		Enemy artillery fairly active on our Reserve and Support lines, also Trench Mortars very active on Front Line. Our artillery retaliated very strongly. Observers report that during activity of the enemy, there were several single red flares fires. Patrols covered the front but found everything normal Casualties 1 OR killed, 5 OR wounded.
	17/2/17		Our artillery quiet. Enemy artillery NIL. Enemy Trench Mortars and Machine Gun fire fairly active, during the night enemy transport was heard, our artillery opened up in that direction and transport was then heard to gallop. Patrols covered our front during the night but found everything quiet and normal, no enemy patrols seen. Casualties for the day 1 OR killed.
	18/2/17		Our artillery quiet, enemy artillery NIL. Patrols covered our front during the night, but found everything quiet. Casualties NIL
	19/2/17		Everything normal during the day. The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Bn during the evening and the Battn went to form Brigade Support as per Operation Order # 80. The Battalion was divided into two portions. 2 Coys being placed under Command of the 18 <sup>th</sup> Battn and 2 Companies under the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion. Battalion Headquarters proceeded to MAISON BLANCH.



MAISON BLANCHE	20/2/17 to 24/2/17	The battalion Headquarters remained in MASON BLANCHE
	25/2/17	The battalion proceeded to relieve the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in the Left Sub Sector, all the Companies rejoining the Battalion, as per Operation Order # 81. 2 companies of the 18 <sup>th</sup> Battalion being placed under our Command. Relief completed by 12.50 pm. Trenches in an awful state, mud being in some places knee deep. Patrols covered front but found everything quiet.
LEFT SUB SECTOR THELUS SECTION	26/2/17	Our artillery very active. Enemy artillery active, also Trench Mortars fairly active. Our snipers made two hits. Sniper Montgomery and Sniper Barber each claiming an Hun. Enemy aeroplane attacks one of our planes, causing it to descend in the vicinity of Maison Blanche. Patrols covered whole frontage during the night and found everything normal.
	27/2/17	Enemy artillery fairly active. Our artillery retaliated. Sniper Montgomery claims that he shot one of the enemy at A.10.b.45.75 today at 11.00 am, he was wearing neat fitting uniform and a steel helmet. During the afternoon enemy Trench Mortars very active mostly in vicinity of Windmill. 5 enemy aeroplanes maneuvered over our lines at 3.45 pm flying off in a SW direction. Patrols covered our front but found nothing unusual.
	28/2/17	Artillery normal on both sides. Weather too misty for observations.

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 78 Copy No 17

SECRET

Ref: HAZEBROUK 5 A...1/100,000  
 LENS 11.....)  
 Sheet 36 B.....) 1/40,000  
 Sheet 51 C.....)

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1<br>MOVE              | The 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will march from MARLES LES MINES to RUITZ on the 12 <sup>th</sup> inst. The Battalion will form up in LINE on RUE DE PERNES, facing NORTH WEST with Right Flank resting on BRUAY-LOZINGHEM ROAD<br>TRANSPORT will form up in column on the BRUAY-LOZINGHEM ROAD facing South East, with head of Transport resting on NORTH WEST side of Railway Crossing at D.19.c.9.0. (Sheet 36 B) |
| 2<br>STARTING<br>POINT | Starting Point will be Main Cross Roads, MARLES LES MINES.<br>(D.25.b.1.9. Sheet 36 B)   |
| 3<br>TIME              | Head of Column will pass Starting Point at 9.05 am   |
| 4<br>ORDER OF<br>MARCH | Order of March will be as per new organization.  |
| 5<br>SANITATION        | All Billets will be left clean and sanitary, and will be inspected by the Medical Officer before the Battalion marches off.  |

- 6  
PARADE  
STATES
- Marching Out States will be rendered to Bn Orderly Room by 8.00 am on the morning of the 13<sup>th</sup> inst.  
Marching In States will be sent to Battalion Headquarters, RUITZ, within one hour after arrival there.  
Forms for this purpose may be obtained in advance from present Battalion Orderly Room.
- 7  
OFFICER'S  
BAGGAGE,  
ETC.
- Company Officer's Baggage will be placed outside each Company Mess Room by 7.30 am on the morning of the 12<sup>th</sup> inst. together with cooking utensils.  
Headquarters Officer's baggage will be placed outside Battalion Orderly Room by 7.30 am on the morning of the 12<sup>th</sup> inst together with Battalion Orderly Room Equipment. Transport Officer will arrange to collect same.
- 8  
MOVE (b)
- The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from RUITZ to BOIS DES ALLEUX (New Huts A) on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 9  
STARTING  
POINT
- Road Junction ½ mile South of D in HOUDAIN.
- 10  
ROUTE
- REBREUVE – GAUCHIN – LEGAL-LES 4 VENTS
- 11  
ORDER OF  
MARCH
- As in para. 4 above
- 12  
TIME
- Will be notified later.
- 13  
SANITATION
- Instructions as in para 5 above will hold good when the Battalion moves from RUITZ.
- 14  
PARADE  
STATES
- Instructions as in para 6 above will be carried out when the Battalion marches from RUITZ and on arrival at BOIS DES ALLEUX

(Signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 4.15 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 "A" Company  
3 "B" Company  
4 "C" Company  
5 "D" Company  
6 Scouts  
7 Bombers  
8 Signals  
9 M.G.O.  
10 M.O.  
11 T.O.  
12 Q.M.  
13 RSM  
14 Office  
15 - 17 War Diary

Feb 12.1917

Ref: LENS 11..... France 1/100,000  
 Sheet 36 B.....) France 1/40,000  
 Sheet 51 C.....)

SECRET

- 1 MOVE The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will march from FUITZ to New "A" Huts BOIS DES ALLEUX tomorrow the 13<sup>th</sup> inst  
Route: REBREUVE – GAUCHIN-LEGAL – LES 4 VENTS
- 2 STARTING POINT The Battalion will form up in Line on Road in front of Orderly Room facing SOUTH with Right Flank resting at Church RUITZ. TRANSPORT will form up in Column opposite Main Horse Lines facing WEST with head of Transport resting at Brewery.
- 3 TIME Head of Column will pass Starting Point at 8.20 am
- 4 OFFICER'S BAGGAGE ETC Company Officers Baggage and cooking utensils will be piled outside Battalion Orderly Room by 7.20 am.
- 5 BLANKETS Extra blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10's, securely tied and plainly labeled and placed in Main Horse Stables opposite Brewery by 7.30 am
- 6 DRESS Over-coats and STEEL HELMETS will be worn
- 7 SANITATION One NCO and 3 men per Company and one man per Headquarters Section will report to the Medical Officer at 8.00 am tomorrow outside Dressing Station, and will not proceed to join their Units until dismissed by the MO.
- 8 SICK All NCOs and men who in the opinion of Company and Section Commanders are unable to make this march, will report to the Battalion Orderly Room tomorrow at 8.00 am. Lieut DA Raymond will be in charge of this party and will report to Orderly Room at 7.55 am for instructions.
- 9 RATIONS Dry rations will be carried by all ranks and water bottles filled before moving off.
- 10 PARADE STATES Marching out States will be in Battalion Orderly Room by 7.45 am and Marching In States will be sent to Battalion HdQrs Bois des Alleux 15 minutes after arrival there.
- 11 ORDER OF MARCH Will be as per New Organization, Details as usual, Companies in the following order D.C.B.A.
- 12 Cancelled
- 13 CANCELLATION With reference to OO 78 of the 11<sup>th</sup> inst. Paragraphs 8 to 14 inclusive are hereby cancelled.

(signature not readable)

Capt

A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn.

Copy No 1  
2 Issued by orderly at 10.35 pm  
3  
4 Commanding Officer  
5 "A" Coy  
6 "B" Coy  
7 "C" Coy  
8 "D" Coy  
9 Scouts, Bombers M.G.  
10 Signals  
11 MO  
12 TO  
13 - 15 QM  
RSM  
Office  
War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 80 Copy No.....  
Feb 14<sup>th</sup> 1917  
SECRET

- 1 RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 58<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battn in the C.2 Sub Section today at times as under. Guides from the 58<sup>th</sup> Battalion will report to Ocs Companies and Sections previous to moving off.  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve "B" Coy 58<sup>th</sup> Battn on the LEFT  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve "A" Coy 58<sup>th</sup> Battn In the CENTRE  
"A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve "D" Coy 58<sup>th</sup> Battn on the RIGHT  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will relieve "A" Coy 43<sup>RD</sup> Battn in RESERVE at RHINE SHELTERS
- 2 PARADE The Battalion will parade at 3.50 pm. Markers will report to the RSM at 3.45 pm. The Battalion will move off in the following order:  
Battn HdQrs, "A" Company, "B" Company, "C" Company, "D" Company. Transport Officers and Quartermaster will make their own arrangements for relief. Intervals of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies up to BARRIER just SOUTH of MONT ST.ELOI and from thence 100 yards between Platoons.
- 3 REPORTS Relief complete will be reported to Battalion Hd.Qrs by wire using the following Code Words:  
"A" Company LAUGH  
"B" Company BANK  
"C" Company MOND  
"D" Company BROCK  
Headquarters Sections will report by runner.
- 4 BAGGAGE Officers Baggage etc will be placed at TERRITORIAL DUMP by the Transport Officer. Local arrangements will be made for transportation past this point.
- 5 RATIONS Each man will carry tomorrows dry rations.
- 6 STORES Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given, two duplicates of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 am tomorrow. Distribution States in detail will be sent to Battalion Hd.Qrs by 11.00 am tomorrow.

7 3 men per Company will report to Cpl Prestidge at 3.30 pm and the RSM will detail 3  
SANITATION men for Headquarter Sections.  
Huts must be scrupulously clean. This detail will report to their respective units before  
marching off.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 12.30 pm

Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 "A" Coy  
3 "B" Coy  
4 "C" Coy  
5 "D" Coy  
6 Scouts, Bombers, MG  
7 Signals  
8 MO  
9 TO  
10 QM  
11 RSM  
12 Office Copy  
13-15 War Diary  
16 9<sup>th</sup> CIB  
17 58<sup>th</sup> Battn  
18 43<sup>rd</sup> Battn

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 80A Copy No 16  
Feb 18<sup>th</sup>.17  
SECRET

Ref: Map ROCLINCOURT 1/10,000  
51.B. 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the evening of the 19<sup>th</sup> Feb  
RELIEF as follows:  
"A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion by "B" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion by "A" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion by "D" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion by "C" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
Headquarters Sections will be relieved by the corresponding Headquarters Sections  
of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion
- 2 On completion of relief the Battalion will move into Brigade Support as follows:  
MOVE "D" Coy in NORTH SUPPORT LINE, RIGHT SUB SECTOR  
"C" Coy in SAPPER SHELTERS, RIGHT SUB SECTOR  
"B" Coy IN VISTULA SHELTERS, LEFT SUB SECTOR  
"A" Coy in RHINE SHELTERS, LEFT SUB SECTOR  
Headquarters, Communications and Specialists Section to MAISON BLANCHE
- 3 One officer per Company, one officer from Headquarters and one NCO from each  
GUIDES platoon and Headquarter Sections will report to their new positions at 8.00 pm for  
the purpose of taking over. This party will be accompanied by one guide from each  
platoon, who will return and guide their respective platoons etc. out.

One guide per platoon and one Lewis Gun NCO per Company will report at 8.00 pm as follows to guide the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in.  
"C" and "D" Company Hd.Qrs 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in VISTULA SHELTERS.  
"A" Company at "C" Company Hd.Qrs 19<sup>th</sup> Battn in RHINE SHELTERS  
One NCO per Headquarters Sections to Headquarters 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion at MAISON BLANCH.

- 4 ROUTE Communication Trenches are inclusive to 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion as follows:  
For SUPPORTS in CAVE – TERRITORIAL  
For LEFT FRONT – STAFFORD-RIETZ-ASHTON and TERRITORIAL  
For RIGHT FRONT – TERRITORIAL  
For CENTRE FRONT – GUILLERMONT  
Communication Trenches are inclusive to 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion as follows:  
For SUPPORTS in CAVE – GUILLERMONT and ZIVY  
For LEFT FRONT – GUILLERMONT-RIETZ and STAFFORD  
For RIGHT FRONT – GUILLERMONT-ZIVY-MILL and TERRITORIAL (from MILL to Front Line)  
For CENTRE FRONT – GUILLERMONT-ZIVY and MILL  
Trenches containing TRAMWAYS are PROHIBITED
- 5 TIME Reliefs to arrive as follows:  
SUPPORTS – ZERO HOUR  
LEFT COMPANY – ZERO HOUR plus 10 minutes  
RIGHT COMPANY - ZERO HOUR plus 40 minutes  
CENTRE COMPANY - ZERO HOUR plus 90 minutes  
ZERO time to be fixed by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion
- 6 REPORTS Completion of relief to be reported by runner using the following code word: FIFTY-FIFTY (50-50)
- 7 TRENCH STORES Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts taken which will be forwarded to Battn Orderly Room by 10.00 am 20<sup>th</sup> inst. VERY PISTOLS, PERICCOPES and B.A.B. Codes will not be treated as trench stores.
- 8 COMMAND The Companies in the RIGHT SUB SECTOR will come under orders of the Officer Commanding 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion.  
The Companies in the LEFT SUB SECTOR will come under orders of the Officer Commanding 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
All Companies will automatically take over all fatigues and duties.
- 9 SANITATION Officers Commanding Companies and Sections will ensure that their lines are left in a clean and sanitary condition. Sanitation Certificates signed by the Officer taking over will be sent to Battalion Orderly Room by 10.00 am 20<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 10 RATIONS Rations at same dump.
- 11 TRENCH STORES TAKEN OVER List of Trench Stores taken over will be sent to Battalion Orderly Room by 10.00 am the 20<sup>th</sup> inst.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.30 am

Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde  
2 OC 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
3 OC 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
4 OC 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
5 "A" Company  
6 "B" Company  
7 "C" Company  
8 "D" Company  
9 Specialists  
10 Signals  
11 MO  
12 TO  
13 QM  
14 RSM  
15 Office  
16 to 18 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 81

Copy No 10  
Feb 25<sup>th</sup> 1917  
SECRET

Ref Maps: ROCHLINCOURT 1/10,000  
51.B.1/40,000

- 1 RELIEF The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Headquarters in SUPPORT will be relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion Headquarters today, and will move to Headquarters (as before) in LEFT SUB SECTOR in ELBE TRENCH relieving the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion Headquarters. Headquarters Sections will relieve corresponding Sections of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion, and will report completion of relief by runner.
- 2 TRENCH STORES Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts taken which will be sent to Battalion Orderly Room by 10.00 am tomorrow the 26<sup>th</sup> together with lists of Stores taken over from the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in new position.
- 3 DISPOSITION OF COMPANIES On completion of relief the disposition of the Companies will be as under:  
"A" Company on the RIGHT  
"B" Company in the CENTRE  
"C" Company on the LEFT  
"D" Company in SUPPORT
- 4 TIME Headquarters Sections will not move from their present positions before 2.00 pm

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.30 am

Copy No 1 "A" Coy  
2 "B" Coy  
3 "C" Coy  
4 "D" Coy  
5 Specialists  
6 Signals  
7 RSM  
8 Officer Copy  
10 - 12 War Diary

## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
Left Sub Sector THELUS Section	3/1/17		Enemy Artillery active, our artillery replied very strongly Patrols covered the front but had nothing to report, weather clear Casualties NIL
	2/3/17		Enemy fairly quiet, our artillery fairly active. Weather very clear, many aeroplanes around. Patrols covered the whole front, everything normal; Casualties nil.
	3/3/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Battn and proceeded to BOIS DES ALLEUX to form Divisional Reserve; Weather fine. Casualties NIL See Operation Order 82
BOIS DES ALLEUX	4/3/17 to 8/3/17		The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve, every available man being on fatigue daily. Weather fine. During this period the men obtained a bath which was greatly appreciated.
	9/3/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion proceeded to relieve the 20 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion in Brigade Support. Casualties NIL. Relief completed about 11.00 pm. Trenches in an awful State, mud in some places knee deep. See Operation Order 83
BOIS DES ABRIS TRENCH	10/3/17 to 14/3/17		The Battalion remained in Brigade Support first very large fatigue parties including 760 men for permanent fatigue with 185 Tunnelling Company and several other large parties for the building of Artillery emplacements, Dressing stations etc. while the remainder were employed in the cleaning up of Communication Trenches. Weather bad during this trip. Casualties 3 ORs wounded
	15/3/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion was relieved by the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn in Brigade support and proceeded to BOIS DES ALLEUX. Relief complete 11.30 pm. Casualties NIL See Operation Order 84
BOIS DES ALLEUX	16/3/17 to 20/3/17		The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve supplying very heavy fatigue parties for the building of Gun emplacements, Ammunition Dumps etc. Weather very bad and the camp very muddy.
	21/3/17		The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 20 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion in Brigade Reserve at Bois Des Abris. Enemy Artillery very active during the relief, shelling all the main roads to trenches. One of our aeroplanes brought down by an enemy plane just behind reserve line. Relief completed 10.30 pm. Casualties NIL See Operation Order #85
BOIS DES ABRIS	22/3/17 & 23/3/17		The Battalion formed many fatigues and working parties. Enemy artillery & our artillery very active during these days and much aircraft around, many battles being fought. Casualties 1 OR wounded.
BOIS DES ALLEUX	24/3/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn were relieved by the 28 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and proceeded to BOIS DES ALLEUX. Relief complete 11.00 pm. Casualties NIL Enemy artillery very active, our artillery replying very heavily See Operation Order #86



BOIS DES ALLEUX	25/3/17	The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion moved from BOIS DES ALLEUX to Billets in W.17.c.4.9 (sheet 36.B.SE) as per Operation Order 87 and proceeded to pitch the tents etc.
W.17.C.4.9	26/3/17 31/3/17	The Battalion remained in this area, undergoing strenuous training, such as "Platoon & Company in Attack, Physical drill, Bombing etc." During this period the weather remained very bad raining most of the time.

21<sup>st</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 82 Copy No 18

SECRET  
March 1<sup>st</sup>, 1917

Ref: Maps – ROCLINCOURT  
51B. 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved in the Left Sub Sector on the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst. by the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and will move into Divisional Reserve (BOIS DES ALLEUX). "C" and "D" Companies 16<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (now under command of 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion) will be relieved by two Companies 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and will immediately come under the command of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, moving into Right Sub Sector as ordered by the OC 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion.
- 2 Relief of permanent details to CE., Tunnelling Coy etc., will be arranged so that there will be no discontinuance of the work.
- 3 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts taken which will be forwarded to Bn. Hd. Qrs. By 8.00 am the 4<sup>th</sup> inst, GUM BOOTS are TRENCH STORES and are on no account to be taken from the line.  
VERY PISTOLS and PERISCOPES are not Trench Stores, and will therefore be taken out by Companies.
- 4 Sanitation Certificates will be taken from relieving Units and will be forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs together with Trench Store Receipts.
- 5 Companies will report relief completed by wire using the following codes. Details will report by Runner.  
(These reports to be sent to present Bn Hd Qrs)  
"A" Company.....PAT  
"B" Company.....PUT  
"C" Company.....PIT  
"D" Company.....POT
- 6 The Quartermaster will arrange that CQMSs proceed to quarters the Battalion will occupy in Divisional Reserve and take over same, prior to the Battalion reaching there.
- 7 Rations for the 4<sup>th</sup> inst will be to Billets in BOIS DES ALLEUX.
- 8 Officer's Baggage and Cooking Material will be placed ready for the Battalion Transport by 6.00 pm. 3/3/17.  
Transport Officer will arrange for the transportation of this Baggage etc., and also for Medical Stores.  
The Commanding Officer's 2<sup>nd</sup> In command, 4 Company Commanders and Medical Officer's horse will be at TERRITORIAL DUMP by 8.00 pm the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst.
- 9 Company and Details Commanders will report their Units correct or otherwise on reaching Billets, to Bn Orderly Room.

- 10 The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will commence moving not later than 100.p.m. (*possibly should by 10.00 pm?*) the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst.

(signed by AP Christmas)

Lieut  
A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 9.30 pm

- Copy No 1 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
2 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
3 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
4 Commanding Officer 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion  
5 "A" Company  
6 "B" Company  
7 "C" Company  
8 "D" Company  
9 Specialists  
10 Communication Section  
11 MO  
12 TO  
13 QM  
14 RSM  
15 Office  
16 - 18 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATIOAN ORDER No 83. Copy No.....

SECRET

Ref Map: ROCLINCOURT  
51BN.W.1.5a. 1/10,000

8/3/17

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Brigade Support on the 9<sup>th</sup> inst as under:  
"A" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "A" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in GLASGOW DUMP SHELTERS  
"B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "B" Company 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in GLASGOW DUMP SHELTERS  
"C" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "C" Company 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in ZIVY CAVE  
"D" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "D" Company 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in RHINE SHELTERS  
Headquarters Sections will relive corresponding Sections of 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in RHINE SHELTERS  
HEDQUARTERS will be about A.9.a.3.3.
- 2 Guides from the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn will meet each Platoon fo the 21<sup>st</sup> Battn at the entrence to GUILLENOT TRENCH on the BETHUNE – ARRAS ROAD at the following hours:  
"A" and "B" Companies at 7.00 pm  
"C" and "D" Companies at 4.00 pm  
Companies will move from the present Billets by Platoons at 200 yds intervals.
- 3 The 100 ORs of "A" Coy now in charge of Lieuts Fraser, More billeted at LA TARGETTE will be relieved in the morning by a corresponding number of ORs of the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn and upon relief will be taken to the new position of their Company in Support by their Officer in charge.  
The 160 ORs now in charge of Lieuts Bechraft, Jones and Gourley billeted at F.18.c.9.7. will be relieved by a corresponding number of Ors of the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn and upon relief will proceed to ZIVY CAVE (The Headquarters of "C" Company)  
The 100 ORs now in charge of Lieut Hazlett at CAMBLIGNEUL will be relieved by a corresponding number of ORs from either the 1<sup>st</sup> Division or the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn before 9.00 am the 9<sup>th</sup> and will immediately proceed to Billets in BOIS DES ALLEUX.

- 4 The Quartermaster will arrange to have all extra Blankets taken up with Rations tomorrow evening.
- 5 In this respect Company and Sections Commanders will see that all extra blankets are rolled in bundles of 10s, labeled and placed at the WEST end of the Officer's Huts, by 9.30 am tomorrow morning.
- 6 Each Company and Section will leave a Guard over same.  
The following are the IN TRENCHES, and will under all circumstances be used as such: GUILLERMOT, MERCIER, ZIVY, RIETZ (From it's junction with GUILLERMOT eastwards) and STAFFORD STREET.
- 7 Trench Turnover Receipts and Distribution States will be sent to Bn Hd Qrs by 9.00 am the 10<sup>th</sup> inst at the latest.  
Relief complete will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by RUNNER IN ALL CASES using the following codes:  
"A" Coy BAT, "B" Coy BET, "C" Coy BIT, "D" Coy BUT. Details FULL

Lewis Guns will in all cases be taken up by Transport with rations tomorrow night. Company Commanders will arrange for their crews to meet these at TERRITORIAL DUMP

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

- Copy No 1 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  
 2 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  
 3 Commanding Officer  
 4 "A" Company  
 5 "B" Company  
 6 "C" Company  
 7 "D" Company  
 8 Communication Section  
 9 Scouts  
 10 TO  
 11 QM  
 12 MO  
 13 RSM  
 14 Office  
 15 - 18 War Diary

OPERATION ORDER No 84

SECRET  
15/3/17

NOTE: This is transcribed from a hand written note by the Asst Adjutant Lieut. AP Christmas

The 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will be relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battn on the night of 15<sup>th</sup> – 16<sup>th</sup> aaa (?) On completion of relief 21<sup>st</sup> Battn will proceed to BOIS DES ALLEUX where CQMS will be ready to guide Coys etc to Billets aaa (?) The working party of 72 ORs now supplied to 185<sup>th</sup> T Coy RE by "B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will be relieved by a corresponding detail of "A" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Battn and will proceed direct to BOIS DES ALLEUX aaa (?) Each Coy will supply one Guide per platoon who will rendezvous at junction of GUILLERMOT and BETHUNE – ARRAS ROAD at 4.30 pm aaa (?)

Companies will be relieved by corresponding Coys of 20<sup>th</sup> Bn aaa (?) 21<sup>st</sup> Scouts will furnish two Guides for Headquarters and will rendezvous at same time and place as above aaa (?) Officer's Baggage and cooking material will be placed together with extra blankets at TERRITORIAL DUMP by 6.30 pm and each Coy and Section will place a guard on same who will remain in charge till handed over to Coys and Sections at BOIS DES ALLEUX aaa (?) Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts taken which will be forwarded to BN Hd Qrs together with Sanitation Certificate aaa (?) All Lewis Guns will be taken out with Coys and not until they have been relieved aaa (?) Completion of relief will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by runner and OCs Coys and Sections will report their arrival at BOIS DES ALLEUX to REAR Bn Hd Qrs aaa (?) Lines must be left in as clean and Sanitary Condition as circumstances permit.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 85 Copy No .....

20/3/17

REF: Maps Roclincourt  
5.B.N.W.1.5a 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Brigade Support on the night of 21<sup>st</sup>/22<sup>nd</sup> inst.  
Disposition as follows:  
"A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieving "D" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in RHINE SHELTERS  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieving "C" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in ZIVY CAVE  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieving "B" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in GLASGOW DUMP & ELBE TRENCH  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieving "A" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in GLASGOW DUMP & RENNIE TRENCHES  
HEADQUARTERS SECTIONS will relieve corresponding HEDQUARTERS SECTIONS, occupying their former positions.
- 2 GUIDES from 20<sup>th</sup> Bn for each Platoon and one for HEADQUARTERS will be at entrance to GUILLERMOT TRENCH on the BETHUNE – ARRAS ROAD at 4.30 pm.  
Companies will move from present Billeets at the following times:  
"A" Company 2.30 pm  
"B" Company 2.00 pm  
"C" Company 3.00 pm  
"D" Company 3.30 pm  
Headquarters 4.00 pm  
A distance of 200 yards between Platoons will be kept in all instances, while Companies and Sections are marching on the roads.
- 3 ALL EXTRA BLANKETS will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and placed at end of huts nearest road by 10.30 AM. Each Company and Section will leave a guard on same until blankets are handed over at TERRITORIAL DUMP by Transport Officer.
- 4 The Lewis Gun Officer will see that all guns are packed on Transport and a gurard placed over same, from each Company, by 12.30 PM tomorrow. Guards will be placed in charge till Guns etc are handed over to companies at Territorial Dump.
- 5 Trench Stores certificates and Distribution States in detail will be sent to Bn Orderly Room by 9.00 am 11/3/17  
Relief complete will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by runner in all cases.

- 6 All present Billets are to be left clean and Sanitary
- 7 Officer's Baggage and Cooking Material will be placed at WEST end of Officer's Huts ready for Transport by 3.00 pm.
- 8 Rations tomorrow to TERRITORIAL DUMP as usual.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn

Issued by Orderly at.....

- |         |         |                        |
|---------|---------|------------------------|
| Copy No | 1       | Commanding Officer     |
|         | 2       | 20 <sup>th</sup> Battn |
|         | 3       | OC "A" Coy             |
|         | 4       | OC "B" Coy             |
|         | 5       | OC "C" Coy             |
|         | 6       | OC "D" Coy             |
|         | 7       | OC Specialists         |
|         | 8       | OC Communication       |
|         | 9       | TO                     |
|         | 10      | QM                     |
|         | 11      | MO                     |
|         | 12      | RSM                    |
|         | 13      | Office                 |
|         | 14 - 16 | War Diary              |

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 86. COPY No.....

SECRET  
23/3/17

REF: MAP ROCLINCOURT 1/10,000  
51.B.& 51.C 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by the 28<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the night of the 24<sup>th</sup>/25<sup>th</sup> March 1917, in the following order:  
 "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieved by "A" Coy 28<sup>th</sup> Bn.  
 "B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieved by "D" Coy 28<sup>th</sup> Bn.  
 "C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieved by "C" Coy 28<sup>th</sup> Bn.  
 "D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn relieved by "B" Coy 28<sup>th</sup> Bn.  
 Headquarters Sections by corresponding Headquarters Sections  
 On being relieved the Battalion will proceed to Billets in Bois des Alleux, where CQMS will be ready to guide their respective Companies and Sections to their Billets in the above named place.
- 2 One Guide per platoon and one per Headquarters Section will rendezvous at AUX REITZ CORNERS at 7.30 pm on the evening of the 24<sup>th</sup> inst to guide the 28<sup>th</sup> Battalion in. It is essential that these guides receive implicit instructions as to which platoon they are to guide in.
- 3 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts in duplicate obtained which will be forwarded to Battalion Orderly Room by 9.00 am the 25<sup>th</sup> inst. Forms for this purpose are issued with these orders.

- 4 All Lines, Cook-Houses, Latrines, etc., are to be left in a clean and sanitary condition, and a certificate obtained from the relieving Company to his effect. These certificates will be forwarded to Battalion Orderly Room with Trench Stores receipts.
- 5 Companies and Details will report Relief Complete to Bn Hd Qrs in Line and again on reaching billets in BOIS DE ALLEUX, to rear Battn Headquarters.
- 6 Officer's baggage and cooking utensils will be laced ready for Transport at Territorial Dump by 6.30 pm. Guards will be placed over same and will remain in charge until all articles have been handed over to Companies and Sections at BOIS DES ALLEUX.  
Lewis Guns will not be taken out until Companies have been relieved after which time they will be taken to TERRITORIAL DUMP and placed on Transport. The LGO will see that these are properly packed, and that a guard from each crew remains in charge until they are handed to Companies at BOIS DES ALLEUX.
- 7 On arrival at BOIS DES ALLEUX Companies and Sections will hold themselves in readiness to move at three hours notice.
- 8 With ref to para 6 above, All extra blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10 and plainly labeled and placed at TERRITORIAL DUMP at 6.30 pm.
- 9 All Officer's Horses will be at TERRITORIAL DUMP by 10.00 pm the 24<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 10 REITZ TRENCH is "OUT OF BOUNDS" for all ranks.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn.

Issued by Orderly at 8.00 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
 2 28<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 3 OC "A" Company  
 4 OC "B" Company  
 5 OC "C" Company  
 6 OC "D" Company  
 7 QM  
 8 TO  
 9 MO  
 10 RSM  
 11 Specialists  
 12 Communication  
 13 Office

Ref Para 1, CQM Sgts will meet Coys and Sections on road at 4<sup>th</sup> CI Bde, Rear Headquarters.

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 87 Copy No 12

25/3/17

Ref Maps 51 CNE  
36 BSE

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will move to Billets in W.17.c.4.9 (Sheet 36 BSE) today in the following order:  
 "C" Company moving off at 8.00 am  
 "A" Company moving off at 8.10 am  
 "D" Company moving off at 8.30 am  
 "B" Company moving off at 8.40 am  
 Headquarters and Headquarters' Sections will move at 8.45 am
- 2 Captain Gillman will proceed to take over new billets at W.17.c.4.c (Sheet 36 BSE) and CQMS will report to him at QM Stores together with one NCO per Headquarters Section, at 7.30 am.  
 Each representative will be responsible for guiding his respective Company or Section to their new billets.
- 3 All huts and lines are to be left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 4 Officer's Baggage will be placed outside Officer's Huts ready for Transport at 7.45 am. Transport Officer will arrange to collect same also Company Cooking Utensils at this hour.  
 Transport Officer will arrange to collect Orderly Room equipment at 8.00 am.
- 5 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and placed ready for Transport by 7.45 am.  
 Guards will be placed over these and will accompany same to new Billets
- 6 Company and Section Commanders will report their arrival at new billets to Bn Hd Qrs W.17.c.4.9 (Sheet 36 BSE)
- 7 Quartermaster Stores and Transport Lines will remain in present positions until further orders.
- 8 Officer's horses will be at Officer's Quarters by 8.00 am

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Lieut  
 Asst Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 2.45 am

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
 2 OC "A" Company  
 3 OC "B" Company  
 4 OC "C" Company  
 5 OC "D" Company  
 6 Specialists  
 7 Communication  
 8 TO  
 9 QM  
 10 MO  
 11 RSM  
 12 Office  
 13 - 15 War Diary

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

W17.c.4.9	1/4/17	The Battalion remained in Camp area having lectures on bombing etc.
	2/4/17	The Battalion participated in a Brigade Practice Attack on the special marked training area as per Operation Order 88
	3/4/17	The Battalion continued to train and practice for attack. Weather fine.
	4/4/17	The Battalion again participated in a Brigade Practice Attack on the training area (similar to the one which was carried out on the 2/4/17 Two platoons of the Battalion proceeded to relieve two platoons of the 31 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn in the Right Sub Section, THELUS SECTOR as per Operation Order 89
	5/4/17	Two platoons proceeded to the Forward area to prepare trenches and cut wire prior to the Battalion taking over.
	6/4/17 to 7/4/17	The Battalion continued to carry on special training for the attack. Weather still fine.
	8/4/17 to 9/4/17	The Battalion moves to Mont St Eloy during the afternoon and stayed in Bois Des Alleux, resting till about 8.15 pm when they proceeded by a new overland route to the forward area to take up their position in the Jumping Off Trench, which was a new trench dug about 100 yards EAST of MILL STREET. Trenches and approaches to Jumping Off Trench were in a very bad condition, though a comparatively safe overland route was in good shape, as per Operation Order # 89 The Battalion was reported to Brigade as being in position by 4.00 am.
MILL STREET	9/4/17	On the morning of the 9 <sup>th</sup> inst Personnel was: Lieut Col EW Jones DSO, Major HE Pense, Capt RJ Manion, Capt HCL Gillman, Lieut RJ Davidson, Lieut WM Nickle, Lieut WG Hazlett, Lieut AP Christmas, Lieut EGR Jones, Lieut F Beecraft, Lieut R Henderson, Lieut HR Cluff, Lieut J de G Audette, Lieut G Millar, Lieut HM Kennedy, Lieut GT Evans, Lieut AS Scott, Lieut ES Sawell, Lieut HR Kincaid, Lieut CW Topping, Lieut HT Deane, Major A O'Donahue, Major H Horace ( <i>possibly should be "Hora" as there is no soldier in the LAC by the name of Horace</i> ), RSM TF Jordan and 677 other ranks. From 4.00 am up till Zero (5.30am) we sustained 1 Officer casualty. Lieut WM Nickle, who remained at duty, and three other ranks wounded. Battalion Headquarters was situated in Zivy Cave. Punctually at Zero our Artillery Barrage opened up and the 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion following the 18 <sup>th</sup> and 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalions proceeded to the attack. Disposition of the Battalion previous to attack was: "A" Coy RIGHT from the MILL to ZIVY AVENUE "B" Coy CENTRE from ZIVY AVENUE to GUILLERMOT "C" Coy LEFT from GUILLERMOT to STAFFORD STREET "D" Coy from the MILL to STAFFORD STREET, in support Each Company was three platoons strong with the surplus platoons remaining at Transport Line.  At Zero plus 35 it was reported that "the Black objective gained and everything going fine" At this point the 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion reorganized and at Zero plus 60 it proceeded to capture the final (RED) Objective, which was accomplished at Zero plus 105 and in so doing completed the advance of the 4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde.: all objectives being captured.



The enemy Machine Guns and Trench Mortars were the chief resistances encountered as their Artillery was outclassed at every point. Wire was conspicuous only by its absence as an obstacle of resistance, our Artillery having completely demolished same. Further proof of the thorough manner in which our Artillery has done their work was demonstrated by the state of the Jim Trenches, only the outline of same remaining. During the advance "B" Company took 10 prisoners of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Bavarian Regiment and one German Field Gun at Les Tilleuls, the appearance of the prisoners was very poor and morale low.

"C" Company met with a considerable amount of resistance before reaching their final objective, a Machine Gun causing most of same, but the Officer Commanding this Company soon had this put out of action.

Soon after arriving at their objective Lieut Evans with one man made a capture of 30 prisoners who were immediately sent to the rear.

After being at their objective for about half an hour, a large cave – Les Tilleuls – was discovered in which 6 officers and 100 men were found. Bombs etc had to be used to persuade them to come out and their hopeless position soon became apparent and they filed out with the usual "Kamarad" cry.

Our casualties to this point were 10 Officers (killed 2, wounded 7, missing 1), other ranks 205.

ULMER  
HAUS

At Zero plus 80 Lieut Col Jones DSO, who was on his way with his staff, Capt R Manion, Capt HCL Gillman, Capt WE Kidd, Lieut Christmas and Lieut H Cluff to advanced Battalion Headquarters, was wounded in three places, by shrapnel. The party took him back to ZIVY CAVE and the command of the Battalion then evolved upon Major HE Pense, who at once proceeded to advanced Battalion Headquarters at ULMER HAUS, in accordance with programme of Operations.

Trophies captured up to this point were: 1 Field Gun, 5 Machine Guns with spare parts, 3 Trench Mortars (Minenwerfers).

The 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade passed through the Red Objective on its way to the Final Objective at Zero plus two hours.

The remainder of the day was spent by the Battalion in reorganizing and consolidation, weather conditions remaining fine with a very strong drying wind.

The Battalion was soon in touch with the right and left Battalions and it was apparent that the practice which the Battalion had undergone previous to the Attack was of the greatest value, each man concerned being familiar with exactly what was required of him. Owing to casualties in Officers, Lieut Sawell of "D" Company took command of "A" Company.

Congratulatory messages were received from GOC Corps and Division.

The night passed without any special item of importance occurring.

CRAMER 10/4/17  
HAUS

During the day orders were received for the Battalion to proceed to relieve the 2<sup>nd</sup> Battalion KOSB, who were situated on our Left, occupying a line from B.1.a.2.7 to S.30 central.

This relief was carried out without a hitch or casualty, though Overland Routes were in all cases taken and the Battalion was reported to Brigade as "OK" in its new position by 11.00 pm, disposition as under:

Bn Hd Qrs at CRAMER HAUS, "D" Company on Left, "C" Company in Centre, "B" Company on Right, "A" Company in Support.

The morale of the men continued to be fine. The night passed quietly and patrols who covered our front, had little to report.

11/4/17 Major TF Elmitt took over Command of the Battalion about 4.00 pm on the 11<sup>th</sup> inst.

12/4/17 During the morning Major Pense attended a Brigade Conference at which a further advance was discussed

On returning to Battalion an Officer's Conference was held and the above matter was again discussed.

During these periods the battalion was supported by the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> CRA and 95<sup>th</sup> Army Reserve Bde of Artillery, with the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the right, 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Support, 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Reserve and the 3<sup>rd</sup> Division Canadians on our left.

Lieut Bechraft's body was buried at ECQOIVRES on the 12<sup>th</sup> inst.

The weather was very cold and a strong wind with snow made life very hard in the open.

13/4/17 About 12.30 pm on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst the Battalion was warned to put out Patrols to reconnoiter VIMY with the 3<sup>rd</sup> Division operating on our Left, and the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion on our Right. Lieut J de G Audette and two men proceeded to patrol the FLICK and FLICKER trenches. Later we were ordered to push on to the RAILWAY STATION at VIMY, and to attack with one platoon and to establish ourselves on the railway line from T.20.c.9.0 to T.20.a.7.0.

Major Elmitt was personally in command of the operation and position was established by the platoon at 7.00 pm as under:

1 platoon in support west of Railway Station, one platoon on the right joining up with the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion and one platoon forming outpost line and joining up with the 60<sup>th</sup> Battalion on our Left.

The Battalion established telephone communication to all these points soon after being established there. Capt Brocklebank and Lieut PG Hall and 10 ORs casualties.

The Battalion was relieved by the 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn on the night of the 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup> (as per Operation Order attached) and took up positions as follows:  
Three Companies in STELLUNG ZELUNG and one in MAIN LINE of resistance with Battalion Headquarters at junction of 0.62 and DENNIS LA ROCKE TRENCH

MAIN LINE  
RESISTANCE

14/4/17 The Battalion proceeded to Billets in BOIS DES ALLEUX during the morning and remained there till the morning of the 16<sup>th</sup> reorganizing and re-equipping.

16/4/17 The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 24<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Support (see Operation order #91) with headquarters in VOLKER HOUSE A.4.1.9.9

Major Elmitt attended a conference at Brigade at 8.30 pm where a further advance was planned.

	17/4/17	The Battalion remained in support. Weather cold with snow and rain.
	18/4/17	The Battalion still in support finding a working party of 400 men. Operation Order 92 was issued this date.
VOLKER HOUSE	19/4/17	The Battalion still in support finding a working party of 400 men for the 186 <sup>th</sup> Tunneling Company
	20/4/17	The Battalion relieved the 27 <sup>th</sup> Battn in close support of the Divisional Battle Front with the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion holding the Line (see Operation Order 93). Headquarters situated at T.26.a.7.4 Throughout the night of 21 <sup>st</sup> /22 <sup>nd</sup> the enemy barraged our lines and constantly shelled the area about the Railway
T.26.a.7.4	23/4/17	On the night of the 23/24 the Battalion relieved the 20 <sup>th</sup> Bn in the Front Line, Headquarters remaining at T.26.a.7.4 as per Operation Order 94
		<p>Although the enemy shelling was intermittent and intense at times particularly at the Quarries, along VIMY-FARBUS Railway Embankment and VIMY itself, we sustained comparatively few casualties. During the nights of this tour we improved our front line and second line, holding an outpost line while so doing. The 4<sup>th</sup> Battalion was on our right and the PPCLI on our Left. The enemy were opposite. Our front was thick and in good condition and observation of the destruction of same by our artillery was carried out by our Observers from an OP on the RIDGE west of the Railway Embankment</p> <p>We were supported during this tour by the 5<sup>th</sup> Divisional Artillery and communication was only maintained with great difficulty owing to constant enemy shelling.</p> <p>Lamps were used from the Quarries to Bn Hd Qrs.</p> <p>The enjoyable Spring weather continued making life in the open quite pleasant</p> <p>Lieut GT Evans was wounded during this tour.</p> <p>The Battalion was relieved on the night of the 26/27<sup>th</sup> by the 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion and proceeded to Brigade Camp NW of AUX RIETZ CORNERS, see Operation Order #94</p>
BRIGADE CAMP AUX RIETZ	27/4/17	The Battalion was resting all day after its hard tour in the Line
	28/4/17	The day was devoted to cleaning up and reorganizing and issuing such necessaries as could be supplied from Stores.
	29/4/17	The Battalion proceeded to Baths at CHATEAU DE ACQ and during the morning a Church Service was held with Brigade Headquarters and 18 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn.
		All ranks have thoroughly appreciated the three days rest
	30/4/17	The Battalion furnishes Fatigue Parties of 150 ORs and two of 50 ORs for engineers at AUX RIETZ CORNERS.

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 88. Copy No 15

2/4/17

Ref: Map 36B SE 1/10,000

- 1. INFORMMATION The Battalion will participate in a Brigade Practice Attack on the Training Area today. Barrages will be represented by Mounted Orderlies. Smoke Bombs will be set off on the German front line at Zero hour.
- 2. INTENTION Each Unit will carry out in practice its allotted task as laid down in 4<sup>th</sup> CIB "Instructions for the Offensive" Nos 1, 2, 3 and 4, approximating as nearly as possible the actual conditions.
- 3. PARADE The Battalion will parade (less one platoon per Company) in front of Cookers at 12.30 pm. Markers will report to the RSM at 12.10 pm.  
Dress: - Normal Fighting Order, Greatcoats will be worn.  
Moppers Up from the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion will be attached.
- 4. RUNNERS The Signalling Officer will arrange to have four runners report to the Brigade Signalling Officer at 1.00 pm at PHILIP CRATER.
- 5. BATTLE FLAGS Will be carried in accordance with para 8 (ii) Section III S.S. 135
- 6. ARMS AND EQUIPMENT All ranks will be armed and equipped as they will be for the actual assault, (or as nearly as possible)
- 7. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS Battalion Headquarters will be established in accordance with instructions issued.
- 8. TIME Lieut ULLMAN will report to the Brigade Major in the Training Area at 10.00 am for the purpose of synchronizing watches.
- 9. REPORTS Reports and Messages will be sent to Battn Headquarters care being taken to observe the regulation form of message.
- 10. BOMBS AND GRENADES Dummy bombs and rifle grenades will be thrown by assaulting troops.
- 11. FLARES White flares will be put up by leading platoons on reaching their objectives. Officers of these platoons will carry 1" Very Pistols.

3.A. ASSEMBLY The Battalion will be in its position at the Assembly Area by 1.20 pm.

(signed by HE Pense)

Major

A. Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 OC "A" Company
- 3 OC "B" Company
- 4 OC "C" Company
- 5 OC "D" Company
- 6 OC Specialists
- 7 OC Communication
- 8 MO
- 9 TO
- 10 QM
- 11 RSM
- 12 Office
- 13 – 15 War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 16

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 89

April 7<sup>th</sup>, 1917

Ref: ROCLINCOURT 1/10,000  
NEUVILLE ST VAAST 1.5,000  
SECRET MAP "O"  
TABLES "A" & "B"  
BARRAGE MAP  
S.S. 135  
4<sup>TH</sup> Canadian Inf Brigade instructions numbered 1,2,3,4,5, and 6  
BLUE PRINTS

- 1 INFORMATION The Canadian Corps in conjunction with an operation by the 3<sup>rd</sup> Army, on right, will capture VIMY RIDGE and consolidate a system of trenches in the defence thereof.
- 2 INTENTION The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will capture a line in the above defences, from a point A.11.b.2½.3. to A.5.d.4.6.
- 3 PERSONNEL The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion less exemptions as laid down in S.S. 135 Section XXX para 1. and 2. with amendment
- 4 TIME Zero hour will be notified later
- 5 HEADQUARTERS 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Headquarters will be situated in ZIVY CAVE from 12.00 midnight "Y/Z" night until ZERO plus 60 when it will move to ULMER HAUS Dugout at A.11.a.3/4.5¼

(signed by HE Pense)  
A Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.35 pm

- Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde  
2 Commanding Officer  
3 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
4 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
5 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
6 OC "A" Company  
7 OC "B" Company  
8 OC "C" Company  
9 OC "D" Company  
10 Scout Officer  
11 Signal Officer  
12 Bombing Officer  
13 Lewis Gun Officer  
14 MO  
15 TO  
16 QM  
17 RSM  
18 Office  
19 - 22 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
MEMORANDA TO ACCOMPANY OPERATION ORDER No 89

April 7<sup>th</sup>, 1917  
Copy No 10

Ref: ROCLINCOURT 1/10,000  
NEUVILLE ST VAAST 1/5,000  
SECRET MAP "O"  
TABLES "A" & "B"  
BARRAGE MAP  
S.S. 135  
4<sup>TH</sup> Cdn Inf Bde Instructions  
Nos 1,2,3,4,5, and 6 Blue Prints

1 Concentration (First Phase) The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, less eight platoons, will assemble in BOIS DES ALLEUX, moving by cross country routes in bodies of not larger than one Company, on "Y" day, F.8.a. – close to OTTAWA CAMP, in the following order:  
"A", "B", "C", "D" Companies, Specialists, Communication Sections and Headquarters.

"A" Company passing a line LE PENDU- VILLERS AU BOIS at 2.12 pm and all units must be clear of this line by 2.45 pm.

DRESS: Dress and equipment will be that as laid down in S.S. 135 Section XXXII para 2, with additions as in Table (1) and (2).

Every effort must be made to conceal movements from hostile aircraft, once the concentration area is reached, and men will not be allowed to straggle outside the wood.

All Details of the Battalion, not required in Forward Area on "Z" day will remain in this (MACKENZIE CAMP) W.17.c.4.9. on "Y" afternoon.

2 CONCENTRATION (Second Phase) The move from BOIS DES ALLEUX to the Forward Area will be as under:  
Starting Point – Junction of ROAD EXIT from BOIS DES ALLEUX and MONT ST ELOY ROAD, at F.8.c.8.7.  
"A" Company 8.15 pm  
"B" Company 8.23 pm  
"C" Company 8.25 pm  
"D" Company 8.33 pm

Specialists, communication and Headquarters 8.37 pm and will proceed in a South Easterly direction along the MONT ST ELOY – ARRAS Road to a point F.15.d.5.1., thence to a point F.17.d.8.1. on the MAROEUIL – NEUVILLE ST VAAST ROAD, thence North Easterly to a point A.8.c.3.4½., thence Easterly to a point A.8.c.7.4. on the BETHUNE – ARRAS ROAD (which point the Battn will be clear of by 11.00 pm) thence to the ASSEMBLY TRENCHES (MILL STREET) by overland Mule Tracks as far as possible.

The four platoons of "B", "C", and "D" Companies now in the THELUS forward area, will report to their respective Companies in ASSEMBLY TRENCH (MILL STREET) at 9.30 am on the 9<sup>th</sup> inst. Lewis Gun Crews following instructions of Lewis Gun Officer.

The rate of march will be 2 miles per hour.

Distance of 100 yards between platoons will be observed.

Scout Officer will make necessary arrangements for platoon guides.

All Communication Trenches in the 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde Area will be treated as IN TRENCHES from 9.00 pm till concentration is complete, after which time the following will be considered as IN TRENCHES:  
GUILLERMOT, MERCIER AND ZIVY.

The following will be considered as OUT TRENCHES:  
STONE STREET, THELUS ROAD, MILL STREET and TERRITORIAL.

No traffic will be allowed to proceed to the rear after 3.30 am on the 9<sup>th</sup> inst.

No transport will be allowed EAST of MONT ST ELOY TILL REAR OF 6<sup>TH</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade is clear of line F.15.a.0.6. – F.10. Central

The Battalion will be in its Assembly Position by 3.30 am on the 9<sup>th</sup> inst.

3 FRONTAGE Previous to Zero, Companies will take up the following positions on "Z" Day.

"A" Company from THE MILL (A.10.a.5½.½. to ZIVY AVENUE (Inclusive)

"B" Company ZIVY AVENUE to GUILLERMOT (inclusive)

"C" Company GUILLERMOT to STAFFORD STREET.

"D" Company from the MILL to STAFFORD STREET.

4 OBJECTIVE The Objective of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion is the German Reserve Line from a point A.11.b.2½.3. (South Boundary) to a point A.5.d.4.6. (North Boundary) known as the Red Objective (SCHEN STELLUNG – TURO GRABEN TRENCH) approx: 730 yards.

The objectives of the respective Companies will be as under:

"A" Company A.11.b.2½.3 (Southern Boundary) to (on right) NEUVILLE ST VAAST – THELUS ROAD, approx 255 yards.

"B" Company NEUVILLE ST VAAST – THELUS ROAD (in center) inclusive to A.5.d.2½.2. approx 250 yards

"C" Company A.5.d.2½.2. to A.5.d.4.6. (on left) (Northern Boundary) approx 225 yards

"D" Company Battalion Reserve, and will have as its objective the mopping up of the German Front Line from A.4.d.2½.4.5½. to A.10.b.3½.1½. and assisting in the consolidating of the Battalion Objective.

5 HEADQUARTERS Battalion Headquarters will be situated in ZIVY CAVE from 12.00 midnight "Y"/"Z" night to ZERO plus 60 when it will advance to ULMER HAUS Dugout at A.11.a.3/4.5¼

6 ADVANCE The Attack will be made in three waves

First wave, consisting of two platoons each "A", "B" and "C" Companies

Second wave, one platoon each "A", "B" and "C" Companies in Support

Third wave, three platoons of "D" Company as reserve mopping up and consolidating party.

Two platoons (eight Sections) from the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion are allotted as moppers up, as follows:

"A" Company – three Sections

"B" Company – two Sections

"C" Company – three Sections

The Moppers Up will advance as an intermediate wave between the first and second waves.

One platoon (20<sup>th</sup> Battalion), is allotted as a carrying party and will advance immediately in rear of "B" Company, between the second and third waves.

The Battalion in the above formation, will advance at ZERO in rear of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalions, who are attacking a line from a point A.11.a.7½.3. to a point B.29.c.3½.2. Known as the BLACK OBJECTIVE and are timed to reach that objective at ZERO plus 35. The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion on reaching the BLACK OBJECTIVE will immediately reorganize, and will recommence the advance at ZERO plus 75. The Leading waves will go straight through to and capture the RED OBJECTIVE. The Sections of Moppers Up allotted to the Right Company will mop up and consolidate the Sections of the German Reserve and Communication Trenches between the BLACK and RED OBJECTIVES, North of the SOUTHERN BOUNDARY and SOUTH of the NEUVILLE ST VAAST – THELUS ROAD.

The Sections of Moppers Up allotted to the Centre Company will mop up and consolidate the sections of German Reserve and Communication Trenches, between BLACK and RED OBJECTIVES, North, and inclusive of the NEUVILLE ST VAAST – THELUS ROAD and South of a Lind drawn A.5.d.2½.2. to A.5.a.4½.2.

The Sections of Moppers Up to the Left Company will mop up and consolidate the sections of the German Reserve and Communication Trenches between the BLACK and RED OBJECTIVES, North of a line drawn from A.5.d.2.½.2. to A.5.a.4.½.2. and South of the Northern Boundary.

The Platoon detailed as carrying party will advance to the RED OBJECTIVE, where material Tools, etc., will be dumped, and the men will assist in the consolidation of same. In the event of any Company or Platoon being held up, the units on the flanks will on no account check their advance, but will form defensive flanks toward the unit held up, and press forward themselves so as to overlap the strong point or center of resistance which is preventing the advance. With this object in view reserves will be pushed in behind those points which are successful rather than those which are held up.

- 7 CONSOLIDATION After capturing the RED OBJECTIVE platoons will, as far as possible, dig themselves in and consolidate a new line 100 yards in advance of the captured trench. Lewis Guns will be pushed out and blocks placed 100 yards up C.T.s and every effort be made to facilitate the advance of the 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade.
- 8 REORGANIZATION As soon as the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion has arrived at the BLACK OBJECTIVE, every effort will be made to reorganize in preparation to commence its advance to the RED OBJECTIVE. When the RED OBJECTIVE has been captured and its consolidation underway, it is imperative that for the purpose of exploiting initial success, no time should be lost by Commanders to again effect a reorganization. All reorganizations will be reported to Battalion Report Centre.
- 9 FLANK FORMATIONS The 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion and the 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion will attack on the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion's right and left respectively.
- The Commanding Officers of right and left Companies will arrange to get in touch with Officers Commanding Companies on their flanks as soon as possible after the objective has been reached, with a view to securing flanks.
- 10 SUPPORTING COMPANIES One Company from each of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Battalions has been detailed to support the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion should they be required to assist in taking or holding the RED OBJECTIVE.
- The 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion has been detailed as a Reserve for the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion.



- 11 ATTACK At zero plus 245 the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will attack through the RED OBJECTIVE, and capture the Final Objective, known as the BROWN OBJECTIVE (The Enemy guns in BOIS DE LA VILLE – GOULOT WOOD and BOIS DU GOULOT.)
- 12 DISTINGUISHING FLAGS The assaulting platoons of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will carry the Divisional Battle Flag, a yellow disc with a black Maple Leaf center: two discs per platoon being carried.
- 13 COMMUNICATION (a) A Brigade Report Centre will be established before zero hour in a sap behind Phillip Group Craters (A.10.b.2½.3½.)
- (b) As soon as possible after the Black OBJECTIVE has been captured the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will establish a Report Centre at ULMER HAUS (A.11.a.3/4.5 1/4.)
- (c) They will lay a line from 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion Report Centre (A.10.b.8.3.) to this point (ULMER HAUS)
- (d) As soon as possible after zero plus 75 (when the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will recommence its advance from BLACK OBJECTIVE) a line will be carried forward to a Report Centre established at A.11.a.7.8.

While the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion Headquarters remains in ZIVY CAVE all messages will be sent to Brigade Report Centre at Phillip Craters. When (b) is established reports will be sent to ULMER HAUS (A.11.a.3/4.5 ¼) When (c) is established reports will be sent to A.11.A.7.8.

Pigeons will remain at Battalion Headquarters and will move forward with them.

Ground Sheets and Signal Panels will be kept at Battalion Headquarters with Lyons Lamps and other Visual equipment, except Rifle Signal Flappers, which will be carried by each signaller.

When Battalion Headquarters is moved from ZIVY CAVE to ULMER HAUS an Officer with signalers and runners will remain at old Headquarters until the new one is opened.

Every effort must be made to maintain communication with Brigade Report Centre.

If telephone wires are cut from advanced Report Centre, French Lamps will be used, working back to a station established at ULMER HAUS. If the barrage renders visual signalling impossible, messages will be sent to Battalion Headquarters and the power buzzer at the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion Headquarters will be used. If necessary the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will endeavour to use this means of communication by sending their messages to this station.

Runners will take all messages to Battalion Advanced Report Centre.

It is improbable that messages will be sent to AEROPLANES. French Lamps will be used for this purpose if it is attempted.

No telephones will be taken over by Company Signallers, they will endeavor to get in communication by visual, using Rifle Flappers. Battalion and Company Runners will be instructed regarding the location of Report Centres.

- 14 TRENCH MORTARS At zero plus 75 when the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion passes the BLACK OBJECTIVE, eight guns of the 4<sup>th</sup> TMB will be placed at the disposal of the Officer Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion.
- 15 TANKS Two Sections of Tanks will advance at Zero to the RED OBJECTIVE which they are timed to reach at ZERO plus 4 hours, advancing astride the NEUVILLE ST VAASE – THELUS ROAD. The Advance from the RED OBJECTIVE will be made in line with the 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade, following immediately behind the barrage.
- 16 DUMPS 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Dumps are established as follows:  
 (a) Main Dump just off VUSTULA at A.9.6.3.4.  
 (b) Right Advance Dump in Zivy Tunnel  
 (c) Left Advance Dump at A.?.4½.2½.  
 (d) Expense Dump, Junction of GUILLERMOT TRENCH and ARRAS – LA TARGETTE ROAD.  
 The following may be drawn from (d):  
 No. 5. Mills Bombs  
 No. 25. Rifle Grenades  
 From (b) and (c):  
 SOS Rockets and Picks and Shovels
- The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion Rear Dump will be located at the MAREUIL – NEUVILLE ST VAAST ROAD at A.8.c.1.1., where No. 23 Mills Grenades, areo flares and SOS Rockets will be drawn as the Battalion moves into the Line.
- A Battalion Dump is also established at A.10.a.6.7½. for Picks and Shovels.
- SAA and Sandbags and No. 5. Mills Bombs will be issued at Rear Battalion Headquarters, previous to the move into the Line.
- 17 PRISONERS Vide SS 135 Section XXVI  
 Prisoners will be taken to Brigade Headquarters.
- 18 BATTLE STRAGGLERS POSTS The RSM will detail and mount the necessary Traffic Control and Battle Stragglers Posts in the Battalion Jumping Off Area as soon as the area is occupied.  
 Personnel will be found from platoons at Transport Lines Vide. SS 135 App “A” para 9. sub. Section 1 and ii
- 19 MEDICAL Until the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion RAP is established at ULMER HAUS Dugout, all casualties will be taken to :  
 (i) 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion RAP at ZIVY DEDOUBT, Junction of TERRITORIAL and MILL STREET  
 (ii) 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion RAP at Junction of STONE STREET and MILL STREET  
 (iii) 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion RAP at Junction of BESSAN and TERRITORIAL
- Walking Wounded treated at (iii)
- Vide SS 135 Section XXVII, Stretcher Bearers will not carry casualties in rear of RAPs
- 20 TIME Day and hour of Zero will be notified later  
 The Battalion will be in it's assembly Position by 3.30 am on the 9<sup>th</sup> inst.  
 Watches will be synchronized at 9.05 am and 11.05 pm daily commencing the 7<sup>th</sup> inst.

- 21 BOX RESPIRATORS From 5.00 pm on the 8<sup>th</sup> inst. all ranks will wear Box Respirators at the "Gas Alert" position.
- 22 LEWIS GUN AMMUNITION All surplus Lewis Gun Ammunition may be left at Battalion Headquarters at ZIVY CAVE where it may be later obtained when required.
- 23 BARRAGE Artillery Barrage will commence on the enemy Front Line at Zero, when the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will advance in rear of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Battalions.
- The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will recommence it's advance from the BLACK OBJECTIVE at Zero plus 75, and go through and capture the RED OBJECTIVE at Zero plus 99, 103 and 103 for "A", "B", and "C" Companies respectively. Vide Barrage Map and Machine Gun Schemes.
- 24 SOS The SOS Signal will be made by a rapid succession of either RED Rockets or VERY LIGHTS (1½ or 1")
- 25 SIGNALS Three White Very Lights will be fired by assaulting Platoons as a signal to show they have reached the RED OBJECTIVE. These will only be fired by order of the Officer or NCO in command at the time.
- 26 CONTACT PLANES A Contact Aeroplane Patrol will fly at zero plus 2 hours over the RED OBJECTIVE. The Platoons will be ready to Light White Very Lights at above hour, as soon as Aeroplane calls for flares. Supplies of White Flares should be conserved for this purpose.
- The Machines working under the Canadian Corps will be distinguished by:  
 2 Black Bands under Right Hand bottom plane.  
 2 Streamers, one on each right interplane strut.
- Care should be taken that all ranks are acquainted with the significance of the above signals.
- 27 LIAISON Lieut Hutten, 65<sup>th</sup> Battery Royal Field Artillery, will set as Liaison Officer with this battalion.

(signed by HE Pense)  
 Major

A Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
 2 27<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion  
 3 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion  
 4 OC "A" Company  
 5 OC "B" Company  
 6 OC "C" Company  
 7 OC "D" Company  
 8 Scout Officer  
 9 Signals  
 10 Bombing Officer  
 11 LGO  
 12 MO  
 13 TO  
 14 QM  
 15 RSM  
 16 Office  
 17 - 19 War Diary

FURTHER MEMORANDA TO ACCOMPANY 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
OPERATION ORDER No 89

MOPPERS UP Ref; para 2. Memoranda to accompany 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn Operation Order No 89 after para 2 add:

“The Platoons of Moppers Up from the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion will report to their respective Companies of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion to whom they are attached, in ASSEMBLY TRENCHES (MILL STREET) at 2.30 am on the 9<sup>th</sup> inst.”

(signed HE Pense)  
Major  
A Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 89/1

Ref: 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn OO No 89 para 20

ZERO HOUR has been fixed for 5.30 am April 9<sup>th</sup>.

(signed HE Pense)  
Major  
A Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION OREDER 91

Copy No.....  
15/4/17

Ref : Maps THELUS N.W. 1/5,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in SUPPORT, tomorrow the 16<sup>th</sup> inst with Battn Hd Qrs situated in VOLKER HOUSE (A.4.d.9.9.)
- 2 The Battalion will move by Companies and Section, in the following order: “A”, “B”, “C”, “D”, Coys, Communication and Specialists Sects and Bn Hd Qrs, via MONT ST ELOY – LA TARGETTE ROAD to CROSS ROADS at A.8.a.5.7. and from there by platoons with intervals of 100 yards between same. Companies and Sections will parade independently. DRESS: Fighting Order with greatcoats.
- 3 Major McLaughlin and one Officer per Company will proceed ahead and arrange details of relief, also guides from 24<sup>th</sup> Battn to meet Coys and Sections of 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion at CROSS ROADS at A.10.a.6.8 at 11.00 am. Major McLaughlin will arrange location for cookers.
- 4 Breakfast will be served at 5.30 am tomorrow.
- 5 Stores will be taken over and receipts given, copies of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 6.00 pm tomorrow.

- 6 Sick Parade will be held at 7.15 am tomorrow
  - 7 Companies will not go forward in Support Area with more than 3 Platoons per Company. All Personnel in excess of this establishment will be left at the Transport Lines.
  - 8 The Carrying Party of 9 men per Company (already detailed) will report to the RSM at Advanced Bn Hd Qrs (VOLKER HOUSE) at 3.00 pm tomorrow. This detail will be rationed at Bn Hd Qrs till further Orders.
  - 9 Lewis Guns will be taken in by transport. The TO will arrange for necessary Limbers to report to Bn Hd Qrs by 9.00 am tomorrow for the transportation of same. One guard per crew will be left with these and will accompany same to their destination.
- Two Cookers will be taken to Cross Roads at A.10.a.6.8. and from thence to a point selected by Major McLaughlin.
- 10 Relief complete will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by runner.

(Sgd) H.E. PENSE. Major  
A.Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- |         |       |                    |
|---------|-------|--------------------|
| Copy No | 1     | Commanding Officer |
|         | 2     | OC "A" Company     |
|         | 3     | OC "B" Company     |
|         | 4     | OC "C" Company     |
|         | 5     | OC "D" Company     |
|         | 6     | Specialists        |
|         | 7     | Communication      |
|         | 8     | MO                 |
|         | 9     | RSM                |
|         | 10    | Office             |
|         | 11-13 | War Diary          |

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 92

Copy No. 13-15  
SECRET  
April 18, 17

Ref: Map WILLERVAL 1/20,000

- 1 On a date to be notified later the Canadian Corps will capture and consolidate the enemy's position from ARLEUX on GOHELLE and FRESNOY to ACHEVILLE inclusive, in conjunction with XIII Corps on the right, which will be attacking GAVRELLE and OPPY. The Third ARMY will also be attacking further SOUTH.
- 2 Objectives are allotted as follows:
  - 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division – ARLEUX on GOHELLE to FRESNOY
  - 2<sup>ND</sup> Canadian Division – ACHEVILLE and ridge immediately SOUTH of it.
  - 3<sup>rd</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Divisions – Will form a defensive flank facing NORTH.

The approximate line of final objectives will be C.11.b.3.5. – U.25.a.9.6. – CROSS ROADS U.13.c.4.2. – U.13.a.0.0. – T.1s.Central

3 BOUNDARIES

Between 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisions:  
SUNKEN ROAD T.22.c.2.0. T.23.d.2.0. – U.25.a.3.6.  
Between 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Divisions:  
T.17.c.1.0. – T.168.CENTRAL – U.13.a.0.0.

- 4 The 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division will be responsible for forming a defensive flank linking up with the left of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division at T.17.d.5.6.
- 5 The 6<sup>th</sup> Cdn brigade will push forward their outpost line to the General Line T.23.d.0.0. – T.23.b.CENTRAL – T.17.d.CENTRAL with a view of establishing a jumping off line for the attack.
- 6 The attack will be carried out by the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade on the RIGHT and the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade on the LEFT, the approximate dividing line between Brigades being T.23.b.4.3. – T.24.b.4.5. – U.19.a.5.6.

7 Plan of Attack

The 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade attack will be carried out by the 21<sup>st</sup> Battn on the RIGHT and the 20<sup>th</sup> Battn on the LEFT, the 19<sup>th</sup> Battn will be in SUPPORT and the 18<sup>th</sup> Battn in RESERVE.

- 8 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will attack with “C” Company on the RIGHT and “D” Company on the LEFT, on a three platoon front and each platoon in tow ranks. “A” Company will support the RIGHT Company and “B” Company the LEFT Company in similar formation to the attacking Companies. The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion will support the Battalion with two Companies.

9 BOUNDARIES

The dividing line between the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battalions will be approximately a line drawn through T.23.d.3½.8. and U.10.c.7.7. The Battalion frontage will be equally divided between the two assaulting Companies.

10 OBJECTIVES

The Objectives of the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade are the Trenches running SOUTH from ACHEVILLE, known as OPPY – MERRICOURT line, and a SWITCH which runs from this trench in a SOUTH WESTERLY direction through T.24.e. and d. T.23.d., all within the boundaries marked on sketch map already issued.

The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion objectives are defined by the Island Traverse inclusive in the support trench at U.19.c.3.6. on the left and U.25.a.4.7. on the right, as marked on sketch map already issued.

11 TASKS

The leading waves formed by the attacking Companies will capture and consolidate the trenches forming the Battalion objective, the waves of the supporting Companies will pass through to an imaginary line running from U.19.c.7.7. to U.25.a.9½.6. where it forms a junction with the SUNKEN ROAD, where they will halt and dig in.

12 FORMING UP

The assaulting Companies will form up on the 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade Outpost line from T.23.d.4.8 to T.23.d.0.0. The supporting Companies will form up in rear. The Battalion Scout Officer will arrange to guide the Companies to assembly positions, silently on the Y/Z night. He will also arrange to designate the position by means of posts marked with luminous paint and with tapes.

- 13 ARTILLERY  
Proposed barrage will advance at rate of 50 yards per minute to the enemy trench where it will dwell for five minutes and then advance at the rate of 25 yards per minute to the objective line (Further details later)
- 14 Arms and equipment same as on April 9<sup>th</sup> with the exception, no "P" Bombs. The Supporting Companies only will carry shovels.
- 15 Position of Headquarters, RAP and Dumps also methods of communication will be notified later.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 8.30 PM

Copy No 1 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
 2 OC "A" Company  
 3 OC "B" Company  
 4 OC "C" Company  
 5 OC "D" Company  
 6 Specialists  
 7 Signals  
 8 MO  
 9 RSM  
 10  
 11 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
 12 Office  
 13-15 War Diary

### A REVIEW OF THE ATTACK ON VIMY RIDGE

The Battalion moved to Mont St. Eloy during the afternoon of April 8<sup>th</sup>, and stayed in Bois des Alleux, resting till about 8.15 pm when they proceeded by a new overland route to the forward area, to take up their position in the "Jumping Off" trench, which was a new trench dug about 100 yards east of Mill Street. Trenches and approaches to "Jumping Off" trench were in a very bad condition though comparatively safe overland route was in good shape.

The Battalion was reported to Brigade, as being in position by 4.00 am on the morning of the 9<sup>th</sup> inst.

Personnel was: Lieut Col EW Jones, DSO, Major HE Pense, MC, Capt RJ Manion, Capt HCL Gillman, Lieut RJ Davidson, Lieut WM Nickle, Lieut WG Hazlett, Lieut AP Christmas, Lieut AER Jones, Lieut T Bechraft, Lieut R Henderson, Lieut HR Cluff, Lieut J De G Audette, Lieut G Millar, Lieut HM Kennedy, Lieut GT Evans, Lieut AS Scott, Lieut ES Sawell, Lieut HR Kincaid, Lieut CW Topping, Lieut HT Deane, Major A O'Donohue, Major H Hutchins, Reg Sgt Major TF Jordan and 677 other ranks.

From 4.00 am up till zero (5.30 am) we sustained 1 officer casualty: Lieut WM Nickle, who remained at duty, and three other ranks wounded. Battalion Headquarters was situated in Zivy Cave.

Punctually at zero our artillery barrage opened up and the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, following the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalions proceeded to the attack.

The disposition of the Battalion previous to attack was:

“A” Company, Right, from the Mill to Zivy Avenue.

“B” Company, Centre, from Zivy Avenue to Guillermot

“C” Company, Left, from Guillermot to Stafford Street.

“D” Company, Support, from Guillermot to Stafford Street.

Each Company was three platoons strong, with the surplus platoons remaining at Transport Lines.

At Zero plus 35 minutes it was reported that the “Black Objective” had been gained and everything going fine.

At this point the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion re-organized and at Zero plus 60 minutes it proceeded to capture the final (Red) Objective, which was accomplished at Zero plus 105, and in doing so, completed the advance of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade: all objectives being captured.

The enemy machine guns and trench mortars were the chief resistances encountered, as their artillery was outclassed at every point. Wire was conspicuous only by its absence, as an obstacle of resistance, our artillery having demolished same. Further proof of the thorough manner in which our artillery had done their work was demonstrated by the state of the Hun trenches, only the outline of same remaining.

During the advance “B” Company took 10 prisoners of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Bavarian Regiment and one German Field Gun at Les Tilleuls: the appearance of the prisoners was very poor and morale low.

“C” Company met with a considerable amount of resistance before reaching their final objective, a machine gun causing most of same, but the officer commanding this Company soon had this put out of action.

Soon after arriving at their objective, Lieut Evans with one man, made a capture of 30 prisoners, who were immediately sent to rear. After being at their objective for about half an hour, a large cave – Les Tilleuls – was discovered, in which 6 Officers and 100 men were found. Bombs etc., had to be used to persuade them to come out, and their hopeless position soon became apparent and they filed out with the usual “Kamerad” cry.

Our casualties to this point were 2 Officers killed, 7 wounded and 1 missing and 250 other ranks killed, wounded and missing.

At zero plus 80, Lieut Colonel Jones DSO, who was on his way with his staff: Capt R Manion, Capt HCL Gillman, Capt WE Kidd, Lieut AP Christmas and Lieut H Cluff, to advanced Battalion Headquarters, was wounded in three places by shrapnel. The party took him back to Zivy Cave and the command of the Battalion evolved upon Major H Pense, who at once proceeded to advanced Battalion Headquarters at Olmer Haus, in accordance with programme of Operations.

Trophies captured up to this point were: 1 Field gun, 5 machine guns with spare parts, 3 Trench Mortars, (Minenwefer).

The 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade passed through the “Red Objective” on its way to the final objective at zero plus 2 hours.

The remainder of the day was spent by the Battalion in re-organizing and consolidating, weather conditions remaining fine, with a very strong drying wind.

The Battalion was soon in touch with the right and left battalions, and it was apparent that the practice which the Battalion had under-gone previous to the attack was of the greatest value, each man concerned, being familiar with exactly what was required of him. Owing to casualties in Officers, Lieut Sawell of “D” Company took command of “A” Company.

Congratulatory messages were received from GOC Corps, and Division.

The night passed without any special items of importance occurring.



During the day orders were received for the Battalion to proceed to relieve the 2<sup>nd</sup> Battalion KOSB, who were situated on our left, occupying a line from B.1.a.2.7. to S.30. central.

This relief was carried out without a hitch or casualty, though overland routes were in all cases taken and the Battalion was reported to Brigade as "OK" in its new position by 11.00 pm, disposition as under: "D" Company on Left, "C" company in Centre, "B" Company on Right, "A" Company in support.

The morale of the men continued to be fine. The night passed quietly and patrols who covered our front, had little to report.

Major TF Elmitt took over Command of the Battalion about 4 pm, 11<sup>th</sup> inst.

During the morning (12th) Major Pense attended a Brigadier's Conference at which a further advance was discussed.

During these periods the Battalion was supported by the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> CRA and 95<sup>th</sup> Army Reserve Bde of Artillery, with the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the right, 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Support, 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Reserve and the 3<sup>rd</sup> Division Canadians on our Left.

Lieut Bechraft's body was buried at Ecoivres on the 12<sup>th</sup> inst.

The weather was very cold, and a strong wind with snow made life very hard in the open.

About 12.30 pm on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst, the Battalion was warned to put out patrols to reconnoiter Vimy with the 3<sup>rd</sup> Division operating on our left, and the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion on our right. Lieut J de G Audette and two men proceeded to patrol Flick and Flicker trenches. Later we were ordered to push on to the Railway Station at Vimy, and to attack with one platoon and to establish ourselves on the Railway Line from T.20.c.9.0. to T.20.s.7.0. Major Elmitt was personally in command of the operation and position was established by three platoons at 7.00 pm as under: 1 Platoon in support west of Railway Station, one platoon on the right joining up with the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion and one platoon forming outpost line and joining up with the 60<sup>th</sup> Battalion on our left. The Battalion established telephonic communication to all these points soon after being established there. Captain P Brocklebank, Lieut PG Hall and 10 other ranks casualties.

The Battalion was relieved by the 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn on the night of the 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup> and took up positions as follows: Three Companies in Stelling Zelung and one in Main Line of resistance with Battalion Headquarters at junction of 0.62 and Dennis La Roche trench.

The Battalion proceeded to billets at Bois des Alleux during the morning (14<sup>th</sup>) and remained there till the morning of the 16<sup>th</sup>, reorganizing and re-equipping.

WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
AUX RIETZ	1/5/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion was inspected by Brig Gen Rennie at 11.15 am on Battalion Parade Ground, everything looking fine.
	2/5/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion proceeded to the support area Divisional Battle front this date. Headquarters will be situated at BERLINER HAUS (A.5.c.6½.8¾) See Operation Order 96
A.5.c.6½.8¾ Map WILLERVAL	3/5/17 to 5/5/17		The Battalion remained in this sector during the period enjoying the beautiful weather and rest.
	6/5/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 22 <sup>nd</sup> French Canadian Bn in the Observation Line with Battalion Headquarters situated at THELUS CAVE (A.6.c.8.5.) see Operation Order 97
THELUS CAVE	7/5/17		The 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion will proceed to hold the 3 <sup>rd</sup> LINE (RAILWAY EMBANKMENT) with Battn Headquarters at T.20.c.3.5. as per Operation Order # 98  The enemy shelled this area during the night very heavy with gas shells causing may casualties two of which proved fatal.
T.20.c.3.5.	8/5/17		Two Companies of the Battalion "C" & "D" Companies, were ordered up to forward to support the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion who were in the Front Line.  The remainder of the Battalion proceeded to forward area at 6.00 pm. See OO 99 Weather very dull & raining, casualties Nil  Enemy again very active with Gas Shells
	9/5/17		At 1.30 am "C" and "D" Companies who were under Command of the 20 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion took up their positions in accordance with orders received from Colonel Rorke OC 20 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn. At 2.00 am our barrage opened up, but attack upon our front did not materialize (see attached Bttns from Officers Commanding C & D Coys). The enemy retaliated very slightly. The remainder of the day passed very quietly until 4.00 pm when the enemy placed a heavy barrage lasting 3 minutes upon our front line. We retaliated. At 4.45 pm the enemy put up a creeping barrage to which our artillery retaliated heavily which had the effect of stopping any further operation the enemy may have had in mind. Our casualties were two officers wounded Lieut P Barber and Lieut JB Gourley and about 50 ORs killed and wounded.
	10/5/17		From 9.30 pm to 2.00 am the enemy shelled in the vicinity continuously with gas shells with little effect.  The remainder of the day passed quietly until 5.00 pm when word was received from the Corps on our RIGHT that the enemy had been observed massing troops in the vicinity of FRESNOY and OPPY. All wearing Gas Masks. At 7.10 pm enemy attacked commencing with a creeping barrage of gas shells on our front line. Our artillery being prepared opened up almost immediately and the enemy Infantry who had left their trenches walked into our barrage.

The Bombardment lasted until 8.20 pm when our artillery were given the order to stand by as the situation was absolutely under control.

Our casualties were slight.

The Battalion moved from Brigade Support to the Front Line on the Left Sub Sector as per Operation Order 100, relieving the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion, the distribution as under: "A" Coy on RIGHT, "B" Coy on LEFT, "D" Coy in SUPPORT, "C" Coy in RESERVE, Battalion Headquarters was situated at T.22.a.9.3. Relief completed by 12.00 midnight. Casualties NIL.

- T.22.a.9.3
- 11/5/17 The situation remained very quiet except for about 20 minutes at 8.40 pm when the enemy shelled our Front Lines with Gas Shells and Heavies. These did very little damage and caused no casualties.
- Great aerial activity on both sides.
- 12/5/17 The day passed fairly quiet until about 7.00 pm when the enemy artillery opened up for a few minutes on our Reserve Line causing 11 casualties.
- A patrol consisting of 1 officer and 4 ORs patrolled out front from 12.30 am until 2.30 am but found nothing unusual except that the enemy continuously dropped Trench Mortars about 200 yards in front of our lines.
- 13/5/17 The day passed very quietly, nothing unusual occurred
- The 21<sup>st</sup> Battn was relieved by the 22<sup>nd</sup> French Canadian Battalion during the evening and upon completion of relief proceeded to Divisional Rest at AUX RIETZ, see Operation Order 101
- 14/5/17 The Battalion remained in Camp enjoying the weather and rest. The 1<sup>st</sup> day was spent to in cleaning up. The Battalion enjoyed a much needed bath and change of clothes.
- 18/5/17
- 19/5/17 The Battalion paraded in heavy marching order with the Brigade at 9.00 am and was inspected by the Corps Commander Lieut Gen Sir J Byng KCB, KCMG, MYO, after which the following were presented with Military Medals: 454640 Cpl Gordon W., 469038 Sgt Spence CV, 59218 LCpl Crossey J., 59081 Pte L Bosswell, 195669 Cpl Cpl Spring, 60026 CQMS Ward JT., 59737 LCpl McNab JG., 59368 Sgt FH Gillette (Bar to Military Medal)
- The Corps Commander addressed all officers of the Brigade congratulating the troops on their splendid appearance, and also praising the Brigade for the record in the Field, particularly mentioning the great success it accomplished at VIMY RIDGE.
- The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 28<sup>th</sup> Bn in Support, Battn Hdqrs at 0.62 left, as per Operation Order #102.
- 20/5/17 Morning rather misty, our planes out early. At 10.10 am an enemy plane crossed our lines. Great activity with AA Guns.
- The Battalion found several fatigue parties. 1 OR accidentally wounded by Trench Bomb.
- The remainder of the day passed very quietly.

- 21/5/17 Morning rather dull, strong wind blowing.
- Aircraft activity on both sides, our AA guns succeeded in turning back an enemy machine.
- A draft of 149 ORs arrived for Companies during the evening bringing effective strength of companies up to average of 125.
- No fatigues were called and the Battalion with the exception of "Cleaning Up" remained resting.
- 22/5/17 Weather dull and wet. No observation possible.
- Artillery on both sides less active than previous days.
- Fatigue party of 7 officers and 300 ORs were found as follows: 75 ORs from each of 4 Companies, and under command of Major A O'Donohue proceeded to CRAMER HAUS leaving Battn Hdqs at 8.15 pm. 1200 feet of trench were dug to a depth of 7'x2½' wide for the purpose of burying a cable. Party commenced work at 9.45 pm and finished at 1.45 pm. Casualties Nil.
- 23/5/17 Fairly fine although cloudy during morning.
- Fatigue party for carrying of Barbed Wire was found as follows: 25 ORs from A, B, & C Coys under charge of Lieut Oldham.
- German plane over our lines at 9.15 pm. Our Triplane at once gave chase. Enemy plane dropped bombs on our Transport Lines. 1 OR wounded.
- 24/5/17 Bright, rather strong NE wind, but ground haze.
- Each Company Commander inspects his Company once per day & Headquarters and Details inspected daily by Commanding Officer & 2<sup>nd</sup> in Command.
- Fatigue party of 6 officers, 28 NCOs and 300 men and 8 stretcher bearers under command of Major O'Donohue reported to Brigade and proceeded to Forward Area in T.27 square and there dug approximately 500 yds of trench 4 feet deep and 4 feet wide. Party paraded 9.00 pm, started work at 11.15 pm, finished at 1.15 am and arrived back at Camp 3.30 am. Casualties Nil, which considering previous fatigue parties of other Battalions was extremely good.
- 25/5/17 Very Hot, little wind and hazy. Aeroplane activity on both sides, nothing unusual happening. About 1.10 pm enemy heavily shelled the Railway Track on our Right for about 15 minutes. Apart from this, nothing to report.
- 1 OR left for leave of absence
- Fatigue Party 4 officers and 300 ORs for cable burying reported at CRAMER HAUS at 9.30 pm. Casualties Nil.
- 26/5/17 Relief Orders received for support. No parties allowed to go over Ridge before 9.30 pm. Disposition of Battalion as under:

Headquarters T.27.d.3.6,  
"A" Coy from T.28.6.8.7 to T.28.b.5.0  
"B" Coy One Platoon from T.21.a.6.6 to T.21.d.4.4, Hdqrs, 2 Platoons from T.21.c.3.0 to T.21.c.7.1  
"C" Coy Hdqrs & 2 Platoon from T.28.b.0.6 to T.22.d.8.1, One Platoon from T.28.a.7.8 to T.28.a.8½.7  
"D" Coy from T.20.b.5.6 to T.21.a.4.5 as per Operation Order #103  
Relief complete at 1.25 am

- T.27.d.3.6      27/5/17      Glorious fine hot day, very little wind. Early in morning two German aeroplanes flew over our lines, but for short time only.
- All cooking for Battalion was done at Transport Lines and brought up in evenings. No runners could be used by day and all done during night, even Brigade runners do not report in daylight.
- Casualties to 1.00 am Nil
- 28/5/17      Day hot, little wind, usual air activity.
- Found fatigue party of 200 ORs for wiring and working on CTs (Communication Trenches?)
- Casualties Nil
- About 1.05 am SOS was seen on our left and a rather strong barrage was put up by each side, apparently the Hun was ?????? an identification but was caught too soon and we (18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn) captured some prisoners, one of whom was wounded and was sent to Dressing Station and ?????? Bn HdQrs early in the morning
- Rest of day quiet with usual aircraft activity
- Fatigue party of 400 ORs in the evening.
- 29/5/17      Weather dull but good for observation, no aircraft activity.
- The Battalion to relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn in the Left Sub Sector tonight as per Operation Order 104
- T.22.a.9.2      30/5/17      Relief of 18<sup>th</sup> Battn completed by 12.30 am. The disposition of Battalion as under: "D" Company on the Left, "C" Company on the Right, "A" Company in Support, and "B" Company in Reserve. Casualties NIL
- 31/5/17      Day very quiet except for usual aerial activity.
- Casualties 1 officer and 2 ORs wounded (Major A O'Donohue)

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No. 96.

SECRET

Copy No 15  
May 2<sup>ND</sup> 1917

Ref: Map ROCLINGOURT 51.b.n.w.1.

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will proceed to the SUPPORT AREA, DIVISIONAL BATTLE FRONT, today at 5.00 pm and will move into positions which Companies and Sections occupied when the Battalion relieved in this area on the 20<sup>th</sup> ult. (*transcribed as written*)  
  
Battalion Headquarters will be situated at BERLIMER HAUS (A.5.c.6 $\frac{1}{2}$ .8 $\frac{3}{4}$ .) RAP at DENNIS LA ROCKE and CONBOW TRENCH JUNCTION.
- 2 Lieut Oldham with 1 Officer and 3 NCOs per Company and 1 NCO per Headquarter Section will proceed to this area at 3.00 pm today and make provisions for the arrival of the respective Units. All Packs will be delivered to Coy and Details QMSs by 3.30 pm today.
- 3 Officers Baggage together with men's blankets which are to be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and placed ready for Transport by 4.00 pm. The Transport Officer will arrange to collect same at this hour.
- 4 All Lines must be left in an absolutely clean and sanitary condition
- 5 Companies will arrange for their own cooking. Cookers will not be taken up. Rations will be delivered to same place as cookers were situated last tour. Supper will be served today at 4.00 pm
- 6 Overcoats will be rolled and carried bandolier.
- 7 Order of March will be: "A" Coy, "B" Coy, "C" Coy, "D" Coy, Communications Section, Specialists, Headquarters.
- 8 The under mentioned officers horses will be at Bn Hd Qrs at 5.00 pm today, accompanied by grooms. Commanding Officer, MO, and four Company Commanders.
- 9 Immediately Coys and Sections are situated in their new positions a report of same will be sent to Battalion Headquarters
- 10 Lewis Guns with spare parts and ammunition will be ready for Transport at 4.30 pm. One man per crew will remain with same until guns are handed over to Companies. Officer's and Company Cooking utensils will be ready for transportation at this hour.

(signed HE Pense)  
Major

A.Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 "A" Coy  
3 "B" Coy  
4 "C" Coy  
5 "D" Coy  
6 Communications  
7 Specialists  
8 MO  
9 QM  
10 TO  
11 RSM  
12 Office  
13-15 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 97

Ref Map WILLERVAL 1/20,000

6/5/17

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve the 22<sup>nd</sup> Battalion tonight at 9.00 pm in the OBSERVATION LINE
- 2 The Battalion Headquarters will be situated in THELUS CAVE A.6.c.8.5
- 3 Lieut Oldham with one Officer and four NCOs per Company and one NCO per Headquarter Section will proceed at 7.00 pm today and make provision for the arrival of the respective Units
- 4 The 22<sup>nd</sup> Battalion will furnish Guides to meet Headquarters Sections and Platoons at 9.00 pm at LENS – ARRAS and THELUS-NEUVILLE ST VAAST CROSS ROADS
- 5 On completion of relief Companies will occupy the positions as under:  
“A” Company relieving “B” Company 22<sup>nd</sup> Battn on the RIGHT  
“B” Company relieving “C” Company 22<sup>nd</sup> Battn in the CENTRE  
“C” Company relieving “D” Company 22<sup>nd</sup> Battn in the CENTRE  
“D” Company relieving “A” Company 22<sup>nd</sup> Battn on the LEFT  
Communication Section, specialists and Headquarters relieving corresponding Units
- 6 Completion of Relief will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by use of Battalion Code Words

Sgd A.P. CHRISTMAS  
Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

- Copy No 1 22<sup>nd</sup> Battalion  
2 OC “A” Company  
3 OC “B” Company  
4 OC “C” Company  
5 OC “D” Company  
6 Specialists  
7 Signals  
8 MO  
9 RSM  
10 Office  
11-13 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 98

SECRET

Copy No.....

7/5/17

Ref Map WILLERVAL 1.20.000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will on the night of May 7/8<sup>th</sup> move from its present position in the OBSERVATION LINE and will hold the THIRD LINE (RAILWAY EMBANKMENT) and will be disposed with its four Companies in the RAILWAY EMBANKMENT or immediately EAST of it. Battalion Headquarters will be located at T.2.c.3.5
- 2 Lieut P Barber will proceed in advance to this area and arrange the disposition of Companies and Sections
- 3 Immediately Companies and Sections are in positions in the NEW AREA a report of same will be sent to Battalion Headquarters in Battalion Code.
- 4 Companies and Sections will move independently, but not earlier than the hour of 9.00 pm

Sgd A.F. CHRISTMAS  
Lieut  
A.Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER 99

SECRET

May 9, 1917

Ref Map WILLERVAL 1:20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will proceed to Brigade Reserve on the night of April 9<sup>th</sup> (**Transcriber's Note:** / *believe this should read May 9<sup>th</sup>*) and will move into positions as under:

Bn Hd Qrs & Sections will start first and be located at T.2.7.d.3.4  
A & B Coys in GERMAN C.T. about T.2.7.d  
C Coy in VANCOUVER ROAD at from T.2.8.c.3.7 to T.2.8.a.5.4  
D Coy in VANCOUVER ROAD at from T.2.8.c.1.1 to T.2.8.c.3.7

Immediately Companies are situated in their new position a report of same will be sent to Bn Hdqrs using Bn Code.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Lieut  
A.Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn



From Lieut L Frazer  
"D" Company  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

To The Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Sir,

I have the honour to report as follows on the action on the 9<sup>th</sup> May, 1917. Counter Attack on FRESNOY and TRENCHES running NORTH.

Co-operation with Imperials on the right and 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the left.

INTENTIONS  
1.15 am. Brigade Support. In co-operation with the Artillery at 2.00 am on the 9<sup>th</sup> May to regain and consolidate a position between German Front and Support Line from U.25.a.2.8 to U.19.c.2.2. Operation to commence from WINNIPEG ROAD at position due WEST of objective.

OPERATION  
1.55 am In position about 80 yds in advance of WINNIPEG ROAD connected up on the right with the 1<sup>st</sup> Devons.

2.00 am Commencement of operations

2.01 am Attack cancelled. To defend left flank of the Imperials, Lewis Gun Section of No 16 platoon was detailed to move ahead with the 1<sup>st</sup> wave of the troops, on the right, at the same time keeping in touch with the remaining Sections who advanced in echelon to keep the whole line intact. All Officers on the left flank of the troops on our right were notified previously, personally, as to cancellation of our operations and action taken to protect their left flank. A number of troops (estimated at about sixty) including our Lewis Gun Section reached the objective and did great execution to the enemy with bombs and Lewis Guns and improved their original gains.

During this time the enemy were on both flanks. The enemy barraged the trench captured but failed to develop a counter attack. Communication was cut off entirely during daylight and at 8.00 pm the 9<sup>th</sup>, our new position and German defences were bombarded by our Artillery – evidently due to the contact patrol (aeroplane) not having picked up our improvised signal – necessarily used on account of German aeroplane over our position at the same time.

Owing to their right flank being exposed completely it was decided to withdraw under cover of darkness (9.15 pm) to the Supports already dug in series of Rifle Pits, from T.30.c.9.4 NORTH to T.30.b.1.2 and NORTH WEST to T.30.a.5.7 and North West.

The line from T.30.b.1.2 NW being held during the day of the 9<sup>th</sup> by the remainder of "C" and "D" Companies.

We were relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion at midnight the 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup>.

I have the honour to be

Sir

Your obedient servant

(signed by L Frazer)

Lieut

"D" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Ref: Sheet WILLERVAL 1/20,000

From: The Officer Commanding  
"C" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn

To: The Adjutant,  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Sir,

I have the honour to report on operations as carried out by "C" and "D" Companies, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion during the period from 6.00 am May 8<sup>th</sup> to 4.30 am May 10<sup>th</sup>, 1917.

At 6.00 am on the 8<sup>th</sup> inst "C" and "D" Coys were ordered to proceed from Support at RAILWAY EMBANKMENT to ARLEUX LOOP TRENCH and report to OC 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion.

We relieved two Companies of 20<sup>th</sup> Battn who had been sent forward to reinforce 19<sup>th</sup> Batt. "D" Company took up position in Support at T.29.c.3.4. "C" Company in Support at T.27.d.2.6.

At 1.00 pm orders were received for a Counter Attack as follows: Two Coys each of the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battns were to proceed to Jumping Off Trench in WINNEPEG ROAD. "D" Coy on Right from T.29.d.9.0 to T.29.d.9.9½. "C" Coy joining from T.29.d.9½.9½ to T.29.b.8½.8 and the two Coys 20<sup>th</sup> Battn on Left. The Devons were to be on our Right and in touch. I received orders to proceed ahead and consult with the OC 19<sup>th</sup> Battn who was in charge of operations, leaving the Companies to follow and be in position ready for Zero Hour at 7.00 pm. While at Headquarters orders were received about 5.30 pm postponing operations until a later hour here "C" Coy was ordered to return to VANCOUVER ROAD and "D" Coy were ordered to take up positions in strong points near MANITOBA ROAD. I was then informed by OC 19<sup>th</sup> Battn that he would send further information and guides to meet VANCOUVER ROAD. At 10.30 pm I heard from OC 21<sup>st</sup> Battn, Major Elmitt, that Zero Hour was to be 2.00 am the 9<sup>th</sup> inst, and as I received no further information from the OC 19<sup>th</sup> Battn whom I understood was OC Operations, at midnight I proceeded to Jumping Off Position with "C" Coy. En route runners from 21<sup>st</sup> Battn Headquarters reported to me that they could not locate "D" coy. "C" Coy was in position at 1.15 am.

About this time runners arrived enquiring for "A" and "C" Coys 20<sup>th</sup> Battn who had not arrived to take up positions assigned to them. I was unable to direct these runners.

At 1.40 am, No 16 Platoon "D" Coy under Lieut Frazer arrived and took up their position. At 1.45 am I realized that the operation, as far as the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade was concerned, could not be carried out as arranged. I therefore sent Lieut Frazer with part of his platoon and a Lewis Gun Section to get in touch with the Devons and operate on their left flank until such time as I could reinforce him, and complete the defence of that flank with the balance of his platoon with No 14 platoon "D" Coy which had arrived at 1.55 am and "C" Coy complete. In person I reported the situation to OC 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion, who had in the meantime taken over command of the operation, and who issued to me the following order (attached) covering the disposition I had already ordered and partially carried out. At 2.20 a defensive flank was pushed out on a line from T.29.b.8½.8 where it joined with the 19<sup>th</sup> Battn on left, to a junction with the Devons at T.30.d.5.9 on right.

This was completed by 3.00 am.

After the flank had been pushed out Lieuts Jones and Gillie made a reconnaissance of our Front. Lieut Gillie capturing a Patrol of three Germans. He later worked up the ARLEUX LOOP TRENCH as far as ALBERTA ROAD and found five wounded – 1- 19<sup>th</sup> Bn, 2 – 29<sup>th</sup> Bn and 2 – 28<sup>th</sup> Battalion who had been there since the withdrawal from the line. We had a block placed in the trench quite near ALBERTA ROAD and this was held until relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battn late the following afternoon.

We also pushed forward our left flank in advance of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battn and the line then ran from BLOCK in ARLEUX LOOP TRENCH near ALBERTA ROAD to the former location of the right flank. At 1.00 pm the 10<sup>th</sup> inst an order was received from OC 20<sup>th</sup> Battn to the effect that two Coys of the 20<sup>th</sup> Battn would work their way up ALBERTA ROAD and to Front Line, and that "C" and "D" Coys 21<sup>st</sup> Battn would withdraw from the position they were holding, assemble in WINNEPEG ROAD and for "C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn to work up ROAD from T.29.d.8½.2 EAST to Front Line, joining up with Devons on right and 20<sup>th</sup> Battn on left.

As "C" and "D" Coys 21<sup>st</sup> Bn were in shell holes and exposed from all sides and every movement sniped at by rifle and machine guns from FRENOY WOOD, we were unable to make this withdrawal rapidly. I again reported the situation as it stood to OC operations and we were very pleased to hear that this order had also been cancelled. I doubt whether ten men of the two Companies would have arrived in the assembling position laid down on account of this excellent German observation, and artillery activity. Nothing further was heard until 8.00 pm when I received an order saying I might withdraw after midnight 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup>. The withdrawal commenced at 12.15 am and we arrived at VANCOUVER ROAD at 4.00 am.

I regret to say that during the operation we had two Officers and eighty other ranks casualties.

I cannot speak too highly of the manner which all ranks carried on. Lieuts Jones, Gillies and Frazer and L/Cpl Haggerty were the most conspicuous.

This covers the operation, as far as my command was concerned.

I have the honour to be  
Sir  
Your obedient servant

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Major  
Commanding "C" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER 100

SECRET

10/5/17

Ref Map WILLERVAL 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will, on the night of May 10/11 relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn in the forward LEFT SECTOR, Brigade Front, with LEFT FLANK resting approx T.17.d.5.5 and RIGHT FLANK T.23.d.5.4  
  
Battalion Hd Qrs will be located at T.22.a.9.3
- 2 The disposition of the Coys and Sections will be as follows:  
"A" Coy on RIGHT  
"B" Coy on LEFT  
"D" Coy in SUPPORT (approx T.17.c.6.2 to T.23 central)  
"C" Coy in RESERVE (Reserve Trench)  
Headquarters Sections in RESERVE TRENCH
- 3 Completion of relief will be notified to Battn Hd Qrs by runner, using Bn Code

- 4 One guide per platoon will be supplied by the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn to guide the 21<sup>st</sup> Bn to their positions
- 5 Rations etc will be brought up and deposited at Company Hd Qrs in RESERVE TRENCH. "D" Coy will supply ration carrying parties for "A" & "B" Coys in the line, who in turn will have guides report at DUMP to guide carrying parties in.
- 6 "C" Coy will supply carrying party to carry wire as arranged verbally with OC said Company.
- 7 "C" Coy will furnish a report center at Coy Headquarters and Coys will furnish 2 runners to report to OC "C" Coy in this connection.
- 8 Usual daily reports when Battn is in the line will be forwarded to Report Centre by 3.30 am. "A" & "B" Coys will submit a report on condition of line by 9.00 pm 11<sup>th</sup> inst.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Lieut  
 A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn

SECRET  
 Copy No.....

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION OREDER No 101

13/5/17

Ref Map WILLERVAL 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will on the night of May 13/14<sup>th</sup> be relieved by the 22<sup>nd</sup> Battalion in the Front Line Left Sub Section and, immediately upon completion of relief will come into Divisional Reserve in rest Camp. Battalion Headquarters will be located at AUX RIETZ CAMP.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will supply one Guide per Platoon, one Guide per Headquarters Sections and one Guide per Headquarters who will report to the Headquarters 22<sup>nd</sup> Battalion in the RAILWAY EMBANKMENT (Third Line) at 10.00 pm 13<sup>th</sup> inst to guide relieving Battalion into its position.
- 3 Upon completion of reliefs Battalion Headquarters will be notified using Battalion Code Words
- 4 All Picks and Shovels will be turned over as Trench Stores together with all No 5 and 23 Grenades, surplus SAA and Very Lights. ALL rifle grenade cups, Very Pistols and Wire Cutters of all sorts MUST be carefully collected and TAKEN OUT of the Line.

Water Cans will be carried out to Rest Camp.

Sgd AP CHRISTMAS Lieut  
 A.Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 102

Ref Map WILLERVAL 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 28<sup>th</sup> Battalion with Headquarters at O.62 left, in SUPPORT
- 2 One Officer and four NCOs per Company will proceed ahead and take over. These NCOs will also act as guides for their own platoons.
- 3 Companies will relieve corresponding Units of the 28<sup>th</sup> Battalion.
- 4 Battalion will move off as under:  
"A" Company 5.30 pm "B" Company 5.45 pm  
"C" Company 6.00 pm "D" Company 6.15 pm  
Headquarters Sections 6.30 pm  
Headquarters 6.30 pm
- 5 All Lines must be left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 6 Officer's Baggage and Cooking Utensils will be ready for Transport by 5.00 pm
- 7 Completion of Relief to be reported to Battalion Headquarters by Battalion Code.
- 8 Disposition, showing Map locations, and strength of Units, will be submitted to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 pm today
- 9 Cookers will be taken to a position to be chosen by the Sergeant Master Cook.

Sgd AP CHRISTMAS Lieut  
A.Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battaion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy 1 CO  
2 "A" Company  
3 "B" Company  
4 "C" Company  
5 "D" Company  
6 Specialists  
7 Communication  
8 MO  
9 QM  
10 TO  
11 RSM  
12 Office  
13-15 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 103

Ref Map WILLERAVAL 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve the 31<sup>st</sup> Bn on the night of 26<sup>th</sup>/27<sup>th</sup> and will be in Bde Support with Bd Bns at T.24.d.3.6
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by a unit of the 5<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bd. No unit or advance party will proceed to new area until this relief is complete.
- 3 Coys and Sections will relieve corresponding sections of the 31<sup>st</sup> Bn. Guides will meet platoons of 21<sup>st</sup> Bn at LONE TREE T.26.a.9.6 not before 10.30 pm to guide them into position. All movements in forward area to be restricted to a minimum during daylight.
- 4 All Lines, Latrines, dugouts etc are to be left in a clean and sanitary condition.
- 5 Completion of relief will be reported to Bn Hdqrs by Bn Code.
- 6 Rations, with exception of Hd Qrs to LONE TREE at T.26.d.9.6. Hd Qrs rations to T.27.d.3.6
- 7 Water to be drawn from VIMY after dark
- 8 TO will arrange to collect all surplus baggage etc by 4.30 pm today.
- 9 Disposition showing locations and number of men to be rendered (on special maps already supplied) to Bn Hdqrs before 3.30 am 27<sup>th</sup> inst
- 10 Runners to be used as little as possible. No person to be allowed in open during daylight
- 11 One map 36.c.SW 1/20,000 herewith corrected to 15/5/17 acknowledged.

(signed) AP Christmas Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn

OC COYS AND SECTIONS

Amendment to OO 103 of this date - Para 6 Rations is cancelled.

Rations for tomorrow will be carried in tonight. Tomorrow night rations will be delivered as in OO 103 para 6.

(signed) AP Christmas Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn

OPERATION ORDER No 104

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn in LEFT SUB SECTOR with hdqrs at T.22.a.9.2 on the night of 29<sup>th</sup>/30<sup>th</sup> May
- 2 Disposition of the Coys as follows:
  - “C” Coy on RIGHT
  - “D” Coy on LEFT
  - “A” Coy in SUPPORT
  - “B” Coy in RESERVE
- 3 Guides will be supplied by 18<sup>th</sup> Bn as follows:
  - For “A” & “C” Coys to be met at T.22.b.8.6
  - For “B” & “D” Coys to be met at New Bn Hdqrs T.22.a.9.2
  - Two guides per platoon will be supplied by 21<sup>st</sup> Bn to guide 18<sup>th</sup> Bn to position after being relieved by 21<sup>st</sup> Bn.
- 4 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts in quadruplicate sent to Bn Hdqrs as soon as possible after relief. 1 NCO per Coy will remain to hand over.
- 5 Completion of relief to be reported to Bn Hdqrs by Battn Code
- 6 Distribution state (as special maps already issued) to be rendered to Bn Hd Qrs before daylight the 30<sup>th</sup> inst
- 7 All Lines to be left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 8 No movement of any kind to be allowed before dark

Acknowledge

(signed) AP Christmas Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

**WAR DIARY**  
OF  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.**  
(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
22.a.9.2	1/6/17		<p>The battalion remained inline, nothing unusual occurred. Much aerial activity during the afternoon, some enemy planes crossed our lines &amp; came down very low firing their machine guns at same time.</p> <p>The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved the 13<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn tonight &amp; take up positions in PAYNESLEY – NEUVILLE ST VAAST with Hd Qtrs in O.62 Trench as per Operation Order 105.</p>
O.62	2/6/17		<p>The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by the 8<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn and proceed to Divisional Rest Camp AUX RIETZ as per Operation Order 106</p> <p>Relief complete 2.00 pm</p>
AUX REITZ	3/6/17		<p>The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn upon being relieved by the 1<sup>st</sup> Cdn Inf Bde, will move to the BARLIN TRAINING AREA via MONT ST ELOY – VILLERS AU BOIS – GRAND SERVINS, and will be billeted in COUPIGNY HUTS as per Operation Order 107.</p> <p>March completed by 4.00 pm. Weather very warm and roads dusty</p>
COUPIGNY	4/6/17		<p>The day was spent in cleaning up and resting.</p> <p>Weather fine</p>
	5/6/17		<p>The Battalion paraded for baths and change of clothes which was greatly appreciated.</p> <p>Weather fine</p>
	6/6/17		<p>During the morning all NCOs of the Battalion were given a lecture by the RSM. The afternoon was devoted to recreation.</p>
	7/6/17		<p>The Battalion commenced training in Musketry, Bombing, Bayonet Fighting etc. at 8.00 am. &amp; finished at 12.00 noon for dinner. The training re-commenced at 2.00 pm until 4.00 pm</p> <p>National Service Cards were issued to Battalion for completion.</p>
	8/6/17 & 9/6/17		<p>The Battalion continued training as previous day, finishing for the day at 12.45 pm. The balance of the day being devoted to Sports etc.</p>
	10/6/17		<p>The Battalion paraded for Divine Service at 9.50 am. This service was much enjoyed by all ranks, as it was held in the shadow of the trees.</p> <p>Weather fine.</p>
	11/6/17 to 16/6/17		<p>The Battalion carried out training daily from 8.00 am to 12.45 pm. The afternoons were spent in sports of all description.</p>
	17/6/17		<p>The Battalion paraded for Divine Service at 8.30 am</p>



- 18/6/17 The Battalion paraded for the purpose of attending the Brigade Sports which were held on the COUPIGNY SPORTS ground. In these sports the Battalion did exceptionally well, carrying off six first prizes, one second, & one third.
- Weather beautiful.
- 19/6/17 The Battalion continued to carry out training during the mornings & sports during the to afternoon.  
22/6/17 Weather continued to be fine.
- 23/6/17 The Battalion attended the Divisional Sports which were held on COUPIGNY SPORTS GROUNDS. A massed band concert was also given on these grounds during the afternoon.
- 24/6/17 The Battalion paraded for Divine Service at 9.00 am.
- Weather fine.
- 25/6/17 The Battalion carried on training as per schedule.
- Weather dull, slight showers
- 26/6/17 The Battalion paraded for inspection by the Officer Commanding
- Weather dull, heavy storm in evening.
- 27/6/17 The Battalion paraded for inspection by the GOC 2<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Div at 10.30 am on the Battalion Parade Ground. He gave the Battalion a very minute inspection, examining many rifles & kits.
- After the inspection the General said many complimentary things about the Battalion, especially mentioning the clean rifles & equipment, Transport etc.
- Weather fine.
- 28/6/17 The battalion continued to carry out training as per previous days.  
to  
30/6/17 Weather fairly fine, with showers.

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 105

31/5/17

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will be relieved by the 13<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn on the night of 1/2<sup>nd</sup>. Units on completion of relief will take up positions in PAYNESLEY AUX – NEUVILLE ST VASST with Hd Qrs in O.62 Trench.
- 2 CQMS will meet Coys at O.62 Trench and guide respective units to positions above mentioned places.
- 3 Coys will have all tools in their areas collected into well defined dumps, location of which to be sent to this office. Receipts will be obtained for tools in quadruplicate and forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs by 10.00 am 2/6/17

- 4 All trench stores, delivery schemes, aeroplane photos and maps to be turned over and receipts for same forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs by 10.00 am 2/6/17
- 5 QM will arrange for rations to be delivered to Coys and Hd Qrs as in Para 1 this order.
- 6 All lines and dugouts to be left in a clean and sanitary condition.
- 7 TO will arrange for limbers for Lewis Guns to be at VANCOUVER ROAD ration dump at 1.00 am 2/6/17. Guards from each Coy will accompany them to support position. LG NCOs will supervise loading etc.
- 8 Completion of relief to be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by wire using Battn Code
- 9 All water cans will be taken out by Coys and Sections.
- 10 TO will arrange to have filled water carts brought to O.62 by 1.00 am 2/6/17
- 11 Acknowledge.

Signed AP Christmas  
Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bttn

OPERATION ORDER 106

2/6/17

TO OC SECTIONS

On being relieved by the 8<sup>th</sup> Battn today, you will proceed to AUX RIETZ CAMP. Intervals of 200 yards to be maintained between Companies. Present camp is situated in a south westerly direction from old camp and is about 1000 yards distant from old camp. You will move directly relieved.

(signed) AP Christmas  
A/Adj

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 107

2/6/17

Ref Map LENS 11 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn after being relieved by the 1<sup>st</sup> Cdn Inf Bde will move to the BARLIN TRAINING AREA on the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst. via MONT ST ELOY – VILLERS AU BOIS – GRAND SERYINS, and will be billeted in COUPIGNY HUTS
- 2 Hd Qrs and Sections will move at 11.00 am followed by "D", "C", "B", & "A" Coys and Tspt at 500 yds interval (Tspt immediately behind last company)
- 3 Halt will be made for lunch. However sack lunch will be carried. Water bottles will be filled.
- 4 Dress will be Heavy Marching Order, Steel Helmets and Box Respirators.

- 5 The TO will arrange to collect Officer's Baggage and Mess Utensils etc at 19.00 am
- 6 OCs will report their Coys and Sections to Bn Hd Qrs immediately on arrival in new area.
- 7 OC Coys & Sections will ensure that their areas are left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 8 2 Pipers and 1 Drummer will be attached to each Coy

Signed AP Christmas  
Lieut  
A/Adjt 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.  
(Erased heading not required.)

Army Form

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
COUPIGNY	1/7/17		The Battalion remained in this area and continued to train.
	to 2/7/17		
	3/7/17		The Battalion proceeded to BOUVIGNY – BOYEFFLES as per Operation Order No 108 with Battalion Headquarters at the CHATEAU. Relief complete 8.30 pm.  Weather fine.
BOUVIGNY	4/7/17		The Battalion remained in billets in this location & continued to carry out training
	to 6/7/17		Weather fine
	7/7/17		The Battalion proceeded to Billets in FOSSE 10 as per Operation Order 109 with Battalion Headquarters at Engineers House FOSSE 10
FOSSE 10	8/7/17		The Battalion remained in this area during this period and carried out training.
	to 10/7/17		
	10/7/17		The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 22 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion in Brigade Reserve LENS SECTOR as per Operation Order No 110 with relief complete 1.45 am July 11 <sup>th</sup> .  Casualties Nil
ANGRES	11/7/17		The enemy artillery active all day, throwing numerous shells mostly of 5.9 calibre in village. Our artillery retaliated heavily. Our aircraft very active while the enemy only had two machines around.  Casualties 1 OR killed, 6 ORs wounded.
	12/7/17		Enemy Artillery Nil  Our aeroplanes very active all day. Weather fine.  The Battalion proceeded to relieve the 29 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion in the RIGHT FRONT LINE – LAURENT SECTION as per Operation Order 111  Headquarters located at M.17.c.9½.9½ Relief completed at 2.00 am.  Casualties Nil
M.17.c.9½.9½	13/7/17		The day passed fairly quiet 10.00 am when the enemy up with Trench Mortars for two short periods.  Much Aerial activity and many fights took place during which 1 enemy plane was brought down out of control.  Casualties Nil

LAURENT  
SECTION

14/7/17 Enemy artillery fairly quite except for occasional burst of shrapnel. Our artillery very active.

Aircraft same as usual, very active.

Casualties, 6 ORs wounded

Patrols covered our front during the night, but found nothing unusual to report.

15/7/17 At 2.15 am enemy shelled heavily in the vicinity of Battalion Headquarters using 4.1s and 5.9s about every 30 seconds. This was discontinued at 2.45 am

Our snipers very active. L'Cpl Montgomery claims an officer who was observing artillery fire.

Day passed very quickly, weather fine

Casualties Nil

16/7/17 At 2.30 am "B" Bty Special Company RE fired 375 Gas Bombs into enemy defences opposite our front. The 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Artillery co-operated by firing Gas-shells on the enemy rearmost lines. The enemy appeared to get very nervous & continued to fire rockets of all colours. He retaliated very slightly with his artillery.

One German prisoner was captured in "No Mans Land". His regiment was the 156<sup>th</sup> & he states that he left his lines as soon as the Gas Alarm was sounded. The remainder of the day passed normally. Aerial activity not so great as previous days.

Casualties Nil

Patrols covered the front during the night and during same met an enemy outpost and we had to return to our lines.

The Battalion was relieved by the 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion commencing at 10.30 pm as per Operation Order 112

ANGRES

17/7/17 Relief complete at 3.45 am 17/7/17. Upon completion of relief the Battalion proceeded to ANGRES to form Brigade Reserve for the LENS SECTION.

Casualties 1 OR killed, 3 ORs wounded

The remainder of the day was fairly quiet except for 1½ hours during the morning, when the enemy shelled in this vicinity trying to locate some batteries.

One Platoon of the Battalion remained in the forward area on outpost duty.

18/7/17 The day very quiet. There was a great decrease in the aerial activity owing to the weather being dull.

Casualties 1 OR wounded.

19/7/17 Enemy shelling this area fairly heavy, but casualties from same Nil. Our artillery retaliated which seemed to quieten him. The Platoon in the forward area on support duty suffered 1 OR Killed and 4 ORs wounded during relief which takes place nightly.

20/7/17 Day fairly quiet, only an occasional shell from the enemy. Aerial activity again great. Two enemy planes flew over our lines this morning but were driven back by our planes

Casualties for the day Nil

21/7/17 Enemy Artillery fairly active in vicinity of RED MILL, but doing little damage around this area. Aerial activity continued to be great.

22/7/17 Enemy Artillery very active in this area but doing little damage. The Battalion proceeded to FOSSE 10 as per Operation Order 113 to form Divisional Reserve

FOSSE 10 23/7/17 The Battalion rested today and enjoyed a bath & clean change of clothes

24/7/17 The Battalion paraded for special training on taped course.  
to

25/7/17 Weather very hot.

The Battalion carried out a practice attack on the taped course as per Operation Order 114

Weather still fine

28/7/17 The Battalion carried out another practice attack on Special Taped Course as per Operation Order 115

29/7/17 Battalion making preparations prior to proceeding to Front Line

30/7/17 Battalion proceeded to make final arrangements to proceed to Front Line

SECRET  
Copy No.....

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 108

Ref Map: 36.b S.E. 1/10,000

July 2<sup>nd</sup> 1917

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade has been ordered to relieve the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, in Divisional Reserve, on the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (Units relieving corresponding Units), moving to billets at BOUVIGNY-BOUYEFFLES at 3.30 pm the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst.

Transport will take over Lines vacated by Unit of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, in Staging Area, approximately 250 yards S.E. of Battalion Headquarters. Dress: Marching Order

- 3 Route will be:  
Q.17.a.9.6. (Starting Point) thence to Cross Roads at I.7.d.3½.6. thence to "T" roads at Q.24.?.?.? thence to Q..24.b.5.1, thence to R.19.c.4.6. thence to billets.
- 4 Order of March will be as under:  
Specialists, Communications Section, Battalion Headquarters, "A" Company, "B" Company, "C" Company, "D" Company, Medical Section, Quartermaster's Section, Transport Section.

Intervals of 400 yards will be maintained between Companies, with 400 yards between Quartermaster's Section and Transport Section.

- 5 Units will pass Starting Point (Battalion Parade Ground) as under:
 

Specialists	)	
Communication	)	3.30 pm
Battalion Headquarters	)	
“A” Company	)	3.35 pm
“B” Company	)	3.40 pm
“C” Company	)	3.45 pm
“D” Company	)	
Medical Section	)	3.50 pm
Quartermaster’s Section	)	
Transport Section	)	3.55 pm
- 6 All Lines, Huts and Billets will be left in a scrupulously clean condition.
- 7 Strict March Discipline will be maintained throughout the march.
- 8 Battalion Headquarters will close at HERSIN – COUPIGNY at 3.15 pm and reopen at BOUVIGNY –BOYEFFLES at 3.15 pm (R.19.c.4.6.)
- 9 Officers Commanding Companies and Sections will report their arrival at new Battalion Headquarters, giving, at the same time, location of their Headquarters.
- 10 An Advance Party of one officer and CQMS per Company and one NCO per Communication, Specialists, Quartermaster’s and Transport Sections will report to Lieut Christmas at Battalion Headquarters the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst at 10.30 am, and proceed ahead to make arrangements for relief.
- 11 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer’s Baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room equipment at 2.00 pm the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst
- 12 The Signalling Officer will arrange to establish telephonic communication between Battalion Headquarters and Companies as soon as possible after relief is completed.

(Signed) HE PENSE  
Major and Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.20 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
 2 Major HW Cooper  
 3 Lieut AP Christmas  
 4 “A” Company  
 5 “B” Company  
 6 “C” Company  
 7 “D” Company  
 8 Medical Officer  
 9 Quartermaster  
 10 Transport Officer  
 11 RSM  
 12 Communication  
 13 Specialists  
 14 Office  
 15 - 17 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 109

Ref Map Sheet 36 B/SE 1/20,000

July 6<sup>th</sup> 1917

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to billets at FOSSE 10 at 8.00 am the 7<sup>th</sup> inst

Transport Section will take over lines as arranged between Staff Captain and Transport Officer this morning

- 2 Starting Point will be VILLAGE SQUARE, BOUVIGNY
- 3 Route: - BOUVIGNY – BOYEFFLES – FOSSE 10 – BILLETS
- 4 Order of March will be as under:

Specialists  
Communication  
Headquarters  
"A" Company  
"B" Company  
"C" Company  
"D" Company  
Medal Section  
Quartermaster's Section  
Transport Section

Intervals of 400 yards will be maintained between Companies with 400 yards interval between Quartermaster's Section and Transport Section.

- 5 Units will pass Starting Point at times as under:

Specialists	)
Communication	) 8.00 am
Battalion Headquarters	)
"A" Company	8.05 am
"B" Company	8.10 am
"C" Company	8.15 am
"D" Company	)
Medical Section	) 8.20 am
Quartermaster's Section	)
Transport Section	8.25 am

- 6 All Lines, Huts and Billets will be left in a scrupulously clean condition.
- 7 Strict March Discipline will be maintained throughout the march.
- 8 Battalion Headquarters will close at BOUVIGNY at 8.00 am and will open at FOSSE 10 at 8.00 am
- 9 Officers Commanding Companies and Sections will report their arrival at new Battalion Headquarters, giving at same time the location of their Headquarters.



- 10 An advanced party of CQMS per Company and one NCO per Specialists, communication, Quartermaster's and Transport Sections will report to Captain Gillman at Battalion Headquarters at 6.00 am the 7<sup>th</sup> inst, and will proceed ahead to make necessary arrangements for billeting.
- 11 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer's Baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room equipment at 7.00 am the 7<sup>th</sup> inst
- 12 The Signalling Officer will arrange to establish telephonic communication between Battalion Headquarters and Companies as soon as possible after arrival at FOSSE 10.

(signed HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 8.30 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 Major Cooper  
3 "A" Company  
4 "B" Company  
5 "C" Company  
6 "D" Company  
7 Communication  
8 Specialists  
9 Medical Officer  
10 Quartermaster  
11 Transport Officer  
12 RSM  
13 Office  
14 - 16 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
July 10<sup>th</sup> 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 110

Ref Maps      36.C.S.W.      ) 1/20,000  
                  36.B.S.E.      )

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade in the Line on the night of July 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup>.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relive the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion in RESERVE, with Battalion Headquarters at M.27.c.7.0.

Companies and Sections will relieve corresponding Units.

Dress: Fighting Order with Greatcoats, as laid down.

Three platoons per Company will proceed to forward area.

- 3 Starting Point R.O. central

- 4 Order of march and units passing starting point will be as under:
 

"A" company	10.00 pm
"B" company	10.10 pm
"C" company	10.20 pm
"D" company	10.30 pm
Communication	10.40 pm
Specialists	10.50 pm
Headquarters	11.00 pm
  
- 5 Route will be as follows:  
 Starting point (R.O. central) thence to AIX NOULETTE, thence to CROSS ROADS at R.36.a.2.3., thence to JUNCTION of ROADS at M.26.d.8.3.  
 Movement EAST of a line BULLY GENAY – AIX NOULETTE will be by platoons at suitable intervals, WEST of that line, by platoons at 400 yards intervals.
  
- 6 Guides will be at JUNCTION of ROADS M.26.d.8.3 to guide Companies and Sections to their respective positions.
  
- 7 Completion of Reliefs will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by use of the code word "VIMY"
  
- 8 Advance parties of one officer and three NCOs per Company, one officer Headquarters and one NCO per Communication and Specialist Sections, will report to new Battalion Headquarters at 7.00 pm to take over, and arrange for guides to report as above.
  
- 9 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given, copies of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 12.00 noon the 11<sup>th</sup> inst.
  
- 10 Reports showing dispositions by map locations and numbers of officers and ORs to be submitted to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am the 11<sup>th</sup> inst.
  
- 11 Rations will be delivered to ANGRES STATION as per instructions attached.
  
- 12 Officer's baggage, Lewis Guns and cooking utensils will be ready for loading at 8.30 pm  
  
 Transport Officer will arrange to deliver same to JUNCTION of ROADS at M.26.d.7.4.
  
- 13 List of reports required to be submitted to Battalion Headquarters is attached hereto.

(signed by HE Pense)  
 Major & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
 2 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion  
 3 "A" Company  
 4 "B" Company  
 5 "C" Company  
 6 "D" Company  
 7 Specialists  
 8 Communication  
 9 MO  
 10 TO  
 11 QM  
 12 RSM  
 13 Office  
 14 to 16 War Diary

Agenda to accompany OO No 110

- 1 Company Commanders will detail Company Scouts to reconnoiter route to forward area.
- 2 One Runner per Company will be detailed to report to Battalion Headquarters to remain until further orders, immediately relief is complete.
- 3 "A", "C" and "D" Company cooks will be sent to Transport Lines as soon as possible after 6.00 pm
- 4 Packs will be piled by 4.00 pm for removal to QM Stores and guard placed over same until they are taken over.
- 5 Officer's and surplus baggage will be ready by 8.00 pm for transportation to QM Stores.
- 6 Rations will be sent up by Light Railway to ANGRES STATION. They will be delivered for loading by 5.00 pm daily, to Light Railway Dump at R.22.b.5.3 where tramway crosses road running South East from AIX NOULETTE. (CQMSs) and on arrival at ANGRES STATION will remain in charge until relieved of rations by parties which will be detailed as soon as possible.  
  
Approx: Map Location ANGRES STATION – M.33.a.2.4.
- 7 The best route for Transport is AIX NOULETTE on to COLONELS HOUSE thence Westerly through R.36.c. – M.31.b. – M.26.c. to junction of Roads at M.26.d.7.4.

Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 "A" Company  
3 "B" Company  
4 "C" Company  
5 "D" Company  
6 Specialists  
7 Communication  
8 MO  
9 TO  
10 QM  
11 RSM  
12 Office

21<sup>ST</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No. 111

Ref Map 36c SW.1 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the RIGHT SUB-SECTION, LAURENT SECTION on the night of July 12<sup>th</sup>/13<sup>th</sup>, proceeding at 10.30 pm
- 2 Companies and Sections of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve corresponding Units of the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion.  
  
Headquarters will be situated at M.17.b.9½.9½  
  
One Guide per platoon and section of the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion will meet corresponding units of this Battalion in CORKSCREW TRENCH at M.17.a.4.8. at 11.00 pm
- 3 Completion of relief will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by Code Word "AVION"
- 4 Officer's and surplus baggage will be taken to CHURCH (M.27.c.3½.0 by 9.45 pm for removal by transport to Ration Dump (M.17.b.6½.3½)
- 5 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given, copies of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 7.30 am 13<sup>th</sup> inst
- 6 Reports showing disposition by map locations and numbers of Officers and ORs to be submitted to Battalion Headquarters by 7.30 am the 13<sup>th</sup> inst
- 7 The Transport Officer will deliver rations at Ration Dump M.17.b.6½.3½. at 11.45 pm. He will have the necessary transport at CHURCH M.27.c.3½.0 at 10.00 pm to move Officers' and surplus baggage to same dump.
- 8 Officers Commanding Companies and Sections will ensure that their lines and dugouts are left in a clean and sanitary condition.

(Sgd) HE Pense Major & Adjt  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 5.15 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  
3 "A" Company  
4 "B" Company  
5 "C" Company  
6 "D" Company  
7 Specialists  
8 Communication  
9 MO  
10 TO  
11 QM  
12 RSM  
13 Office  
14 - 16 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 112

July 15<sup>th</sup> 1917

Ref Map LENS 36.c.SW 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved in the LAURENT SECTION by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of July 16/17.  
  
Immediately on relief the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will move into Brigade Reserve in ANGRES (LENS SECTION) and will occupy same positions as previously occupied by them.
- 2 Each Company will leave one Sergeant and 2 men and the Scout Section 1 NCO in the line, until 12.00 noon 17<sup>th</sup> inst, to give information to incoming Battalion, after which they will rejoin their respective Units.
- 3 One guide per platoon, one per Section and one per Headquarters will meet corresponding Units of the 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion at CROSS ROADS M.17.a.25.7.0 at 10.30 pm to guide them into their positions.
- 4 Receipts for Trench Stores will be taken, and forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 7.30 am 17<sup>th</sup> inst. Petrol Cans MUST be taken out of the Line.
- 5 The Transport Officer will collect surplus baggage, cooking utensils, etc, at Ration Dump (LONE HOUSE by 12.00 midnight July 15/17)
- 6 The Quartermaster will deliver rations night of 16<sup>th</sup> inst to Ration Dump in New Area.
- 7 Completion of Relief will be reported to present Battalion Headquarters using Code Word "NOEL". When in position at New Area to New Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word "ARRAS"
- 8 Disposition States showing No of Officers and Other Ranks together with rough sketch of position will be turned into Battalion Headquarters by 7.30 am 17<sup>th</sup> inst.

(signed by AP Christmas)

Captain

A.Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn

Issued by Orderly at 11.50 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
3 "A" Company  
4 "B" Company  
5 "C" Company  
6 "D" Company  
7 Specialists  
8 Communication  
9 MO  
10 TO  
11 QM  
12 RSM  
13 Office  
14 - 16 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 113

Ref Maps Sheet            36.c.SW 1/10,000  
                                     36.b SE 1/20,000

July 22<sup>nd</sup> 1917

- 1 In accordance with the relief of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade in the LENS SECTION, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, less parties on detached duty, upon relief by the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, will move to Billets in FOSSE 10 on the night of July 22<sup>nd</sup>/23<sup>rd</sup>. Units will proceed independently as soon as their respective reliefs are complete. Movement EAST of the Line BULLY – GRENAY – AUX NOULETTE will be by platoons at suitable distances.
- 2 Details of relief will be notified later
- 3 Reliefs will be reported to present Battalion Headquarters by code word "PERU at .....time"
- 4 Trench Stores will be handed over, receipts taken and programme of work explained.
- 5 The Transport Officer will arrange to have Medical Cart at CHURCH, ANGRES (M.27.c.35.00) at 10.00 pm, and the necessary transport for Lewis Guns and Cooking Outfits, as well as the horses of the 2<sup>nd</sup> in Command, Adjutant, MO and Company Commanders, at the same point 10.30 pm. Units will have all Lewis Guns, Equipment, etc, at this point at 10.15 pm

ACKNOWLEDGE.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 5.00 pm

- Copy No 1    Commanding Officer  
              2    20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion  
              3    27<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion  
              4    "A" Company  
              5    "B" Company  
              6    "C" Company  
              7    "D" Company  
              8    Specialists  
              9    Communication  
             10    MO  
             11    TO  
             12    QM  
             13    RSM  
             14    Office  
          15 - 17    War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 114

July 26<sup>th</sup> 1917

Ref Sheet: BOYEFFLES 26.B.SE.2 1/10,000

- 1 In accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> CIB instructions, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will report at MARQUEFFLES FARM R.26.c.35.95 tomorrow the 27<sup>th</sup> inst. Companies and Sections will parade and proceed independently to the taped course, and will be in position ready for the advance at 8.15 am for Brigade Practice.
- 2 Zero hour will be at 8.30 am
- 3 Practice will be carried out in accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> CIB Instructions for the Offensive No 2.
- 4 Watches will be checked and corrections made at 8.00 am
- 5 Contact aeroplanes will fly over our lines at 11.30 am for the first objective and at 12.30 pm for final objective.
- 6 Flares will be lighted when called for by aeroplane. Very lights will be fired on reaching objectives
- 7 Dress will be Fighting Order
- 8 All personnel who will go into the actual operation will be present
- 9 Reports to Battalion Headquarters at YMCA Tent R.26.a.85.20.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 10.15 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 2<sup>nd</sup> In Command  
3 Major Cooper  
4 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Trench Mortar Battery  
5 "A" Company  
6 "B" Company  
7 "C" Company  
8 "D" Company  
9 Communication  
10 LGO  
11 Bombing Officer  
12 Scout Officer  
13 Medical Officer  
14 Transport Officer  
15 Quartermaster  
16 RSM  
17 Office  
18 - 20 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 115

July 27<sup>th</sup> 1917

Ref Sheet: BOYEFFLES 26.8.SE.2 1/10,000

- 1 In accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> CIB instructions, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will report at MARQUEFFLES FARM R.26.c.35.95 tomorrow the 28<sup>th</sup> inst. Companies and Sections will parade and proceed independently to the taped course, and will be in position ready for the advance at 8.35 am for Brigade Practice.
- 2 Zero hour will be at 9.00 am
- 3 Practice will be carried out in accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> CIB Instructions for the Offensive No 2.
- 4 Dress will be Fighting Order
- 5 Watches will be checked and corrections made at 7.00 am on the 28<sup>th</sup> inst
- 6 There will be no contact aeroplanes, nor will any Very Lights or flares be shown
- 7 All personnel who will go into the actual operation will be present as far as possible
- 8 Reports to Battalion Headquarters at YMCA Tent R.26.a.85.20. and Forward Battalion Headquarters as on this date.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 10.45 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 2<sup>nd</sup> In Command  
3 Major Cooper  
4 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Trench Mortar Battery  
5 "A" Company  
6 "B" Company  
7 "C" Company  
8 "D" Company  
9 Communication  
10 LGO  
11 Bombing Officer  
12 Scout Officer  
13 Medical Officer  
14 Transport Officer  
15 Quartermaster  
16 RSM  
17 Office  
18 - 20 War Diary



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

FOSSE 10	1/8/17	Instructions were received that proposed operations were postponed indefinitely. The Battalion therefore remained in Divisional Reserve in FOSSE 10.		
		Three Officers reinforcements received.		
	2/8/17 to 4/8/17	The Battalion remained in FOSSE 10 carrying on with light drills. On the night of Aug 4 <sup>th</sup> /5 <sup>th</sup> the Battalion relieved the 27 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in Brigade Reserve at BULLY GREPAY in accordance with Operation Order #118.		
BULLY GREPAY	5/8/17	The Battalion remained in Brigade Reserve in a state of readiness to move forward.		
	6/8/17 to 8/8/17	The Battalion paraded from 8.00 am to 10.00 am daily for Physical Drill, Respirator Drill, Bayonet Fighting and Fire Discipline & Fire Control.		
	9/8/17	The Battalion carried out a raid, as per attached appendix & Operation Order #119		
	10/8/17	On the night of Aug 9 <sup>th</sup> /10 <sup>th</sup> the Battalion was relieved by the 28 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn and proceeded to Billets in Divisional Reserve at FOSSE 10 in accordance with Operation Order #120		
FOSSE 10	11/8/17	The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve FOSSE 10 and the day spent in bathing and changes of under wear issued.		
	12/8/17	The Battalion remained in billets resting & cleaning up.		
	13/8/17 to 18/8/17	The Battalion proceeded to the forward area as per Operation Order #116 & #117 and carried out an attack as per attached appendix, after which the Battalion was relieved and proceeded to billets at FOSSE 10 as per Operation Order # 119		
	19/8/17 to 20/8/17	The Battalion remained in this area, cleaning up, resting, and enjoying a much needed bath and change of underwear.		
	21/8/17	In accordance with relief of 2 <sup>nd</sup> Cdn Div, the 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion moved from FOSSE 10 to billets in VILLERS AU BOIS as per Operation Order #121.		
		Weather fine, March completed by 3.00 pm		
VILLERS AU BOIS	22/8/17 to 24/8/17	The Battalion remained in this area carrying out training such as Physical Drill, Bayonet Fighting, Squad Drill & Ceremonial, from 9.00 am to 12.00 pm daily		
	25/8/17	The Battalion paraded for Divine Service at 9.15 am  Brigade Staff, 18 <sup>th</sup> , 19 <sup>th</sup> , 20 <sup>th</sup> , Battalions, 4 <sup>th</sup> MG Company & 4 <sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery, together with the 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion assembled at X.19.d.5.5 for combined Church Service. On Completion of the Service, the Brigade carried out some ceremonial drill preparatory to the visit of the Commander in Chief, Field Marshall Sir D. Haig.		

- 26/8/17 At 10.45 am the Battalion, as a Unit with the 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde, was reviewed by the Commander in Chief, North West of VILLERS AU BOIS. As a message received states, Sir Douglas Haig was exceedingly pleased with the appearance of the Brigade after its fighting during the month North West of LENS.
- 27/8/17 The Battalion remained in this area, carrying out training as before.  
to
- 30/8/17 Weather rainy
- 31/8/17 Lieut Gen Sir AW Currie visited the Battalion during the instruction this morning. He spoke very highly of the work of the "21<sup>st</sup>" in the action North West of LENS August 15<sup>th</sup> to 18<sup>th</sup>. The Officers were presented to him by Colonel Jones and all ranks were impressed by his remarks regarding the Canadian Corps and its achievements.

SECRET  
Copy No 13  
Aug 4<sup>th</sup> 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 118

Ref Map 36b.S.E. 1/20,000

- 1 In conjunction with the relief of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, in the Divisional Front, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, in Brigade Reserve at BULLY GREYAY to-night Aug 4<sup>th</sup>/5<sup>th</sup>.
- 2 Units will pass Starting Point (R.3.c.3.2.) as under:
  - "A" Company 7.00 pm
  - "B" Company 7.20 pm
  - "C" Company 7.40 pm
  - "D" Company 8.00 pm
  - Bn Hd Qrs, Communication and Specialist Sections 8.20 pm

Companies will move in formations of not larger than two Sections at 100 yard distance.
- 3 Guides will meet incoming Units at SQUARE at R.5.c.Central and will conduct them to respective billets, arranged by advanced Parties.
- 4 DRESS – Marching Order
- 5 Relief will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by Runner
- 6 All billets will be left in a clean and Sanitary Condition
- 7 Rations will be delivered to respective billets at BULLY GREYAY
- 8 Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officers' baggage, Lewis Guns and Cooking outfits of Bn Hd Qrs, Companies and Sections, as well as Orderly Room equipment at 6.30 pm and deliver same to respective billets at BULLY GREYAY
- 9 Horses of the 2<sup>nd</sup> in Command, Major Cooper and Company Commanders will be at Battalion Headquarters and respective Company Headquarters at 7.00 pm

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain for  
Major and Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 4.20 pm

Copy No 1 27<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
2 Commanding Officer  
3 "A" Company  
4 "B" Company  
5 "C" Company  
6 "D" Company  
7 Communication  
8 Specialists  
9 MO  
10 QM  
11 TO  
12 RSM  
13 Office  
14 - 16 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No 10  
August 8<sup>th</sup> 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 119

Ref Map 36c.N.W.LENS 1/10,000

- 1 A raid on the enemy front system of trenches, in conjunction with details from the 18<sup>th</sup>, 20<sup>th</sup> and  
INFORMATION 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalions will be carried out on the night of August 8<sup>th</sup>/9<sup>th</sup>.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, less 13 platoons, will raid the enemy trenches from N.7.d.56.55 to  
INTENTION N.7.d.70.20 including COIN and COKE TRENCHES to a depth of 100 yards for the purpose of  
securing prisoners, identification, and information, to ascertain condition of enemy defences  
and to effect casualties.
- 3 Lieut DJ Moore  
PERSONNEL Lieut HJ Wood  
Lieut A Cockeram  
and  
113 Other Ranks
- 4 A Patrol of one Officer and 20 Other Ranks with Lewis Guns will form a Covering Party from  
COVERING 10.00 pm till Zero Hour minus 30 minutes  
PATROL
- 5 Report Centre will be located at N.7.d.00.70  
REPORTS
- 6 Zero Hour will be notified later  
ZERO HOUR

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 7.00 pm

Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
2 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
3 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
4 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
5 Commanding Officer  
6 Major Miller  
7 Lieut More  
8 Medical Officer  
9 Office  
10 - 13 War Diary

BULLY The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, less 13 platoons in command of Major AF Miller, MC, and, in  
GRENAY accordance with Operation Order No 119, proceeded at 9.30 pm to the front line, LAURENT  
9/8/17 SECTION.

The raiding party consisted of Lieuts DJ More, HJ Wood and A Cockeram, together with 113 other ranks. The party assembled at the jumping off points one hour before Zero, with the right flank resting at M.?.d.10.25 and the left flank at ?.?.d.05.?6. (*Transcriber's Note: This page in the diary is a carbon copy and many of the letters and numbers are blurred, thus the ? in places where I could not read clearly*)

The morale of the men was excellent and all were anxious for the opportunity to get into touch with the enemy.

Zero hour had been given as 4.15 am, and, at that appointed time, our artillery and machine guns opened up a barrage, the intensity of which, was beyond human imagination. Immediately we advanced, and, while the enemy promptly replied with a heavy barrage on our positions, we were well over the top, and suffered no casualties. Our men followed our barrage and proceeded to advance, meeting with slight resistance until reaching the junction of Coin and Counter trenches, where an enemy machine gun was in operation.

The machine gun was quickly put out of action, leaving the men free to continue the advance. After passing "X" building (N.?.d.30.40.) the character of the ground presented few difficulties to overcome, and we were fortunate in not having incurred any casualties before reaching Contract Trench (our objective).

Three lines of wire were encountered, the first two of which had been thoroughly cut by our artillery fire, and did not form a serious obstacle, but the third line was very thick, being about 25 feet in depth and 3 feet high. This caused only a temporary check, as the men having wire cutters attached to their rifles, found little difficulty cutting lanes through (the effective work of these wire cutters is note-worthy and a demonstration was given a few days later before Major-General Burstall, GOC, 2<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Division).

The wire having been cleared the party rushed Contract Trench meeting with little individual opposition, with the exception of bombs being thrown from a house on the Left flank (N.7.d.55.75). Lieut Cockeram with a few other ranks undertook to rush the house, and succeeded in silencing the opposition emanating there from. In this minor operation No 445495 L/Cpl R Dobson, particularly distinguished himself.

The raid was timed to finish 26 minutes after Zero hour. A minute before that time Lieut More gave the pre-arranged signal (a white flare) showing that we had reached our final objective. At the same time red ground flares were lit, being the signal for the withdrawal of our party from the enemy trenches.

The total casualties suffered by us were only eight, all of a slight nature.

The enemy trench was found to be deep, no bays or fire steps. It was wide at the top and narrow at the bottom, more the nature of a ditch than a trench.

While no prisoners were taken, identification was secured showing that the 156<sup>th</sup> Regiment were holding the enemy line.

Upon being withdrawn, the raiding party proceeded to billets in Bully Grenay.

(signed by Elmer W Jones)

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
August 9<sup>th</sup> 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 120

Ref LENS 11. 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by a Unit of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night of the 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup> August.
- 2 Immediately on relief the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will proceed to billets in FOSSE 10 (as previously occupied before coming to this area).
- 3 Unit will move independently, upon relief, with 200 yards intervals between platoons and Sections.
- 4 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officers' baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room equipment at 9.00 pm and will deliver same to respective billets at FOSSE 10.
- 5 All lines, billets etc, must be left in a clean and sanitary condition, and a certificate to this effect obtained from the relieving Unit.
- 6 Units will report their arrival at FOSSE 10 to Battalion Orderly Room FOSSE 10.

Captain  
Asst Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at .....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 "A" Company  
3 "B" Company  
4 "C" Company  
5 "D" Company  
6 Communication  
7 Specialists  
8 Medical Officer  
9 Quartermaster  
10 Transport Officer  
11 RSM  
12 Office  
13 - 16 War Diary

**Transcriber's Note:**

***Although the following Operation Orders are from the previous month, they pertain to action that was postponed until the current month (Aug 13 to 18). These are the operational plans for the attack at Hill 70. It should also be noted that the pages for these plans are physically placed in the War Diary with the month of August 1917.***

Ref: Sheets

RESERVOIR HILL 1/10,000

BOIS RASE 1/10,000

LENS 36.c.S.W.1. 1/10,000

Artillery and Machine Gun Barrage Maps

4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde Instructions for the Offensive Nos 2 and 3

4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde Administrative Instructions

Diagram In and Out Trenches.

- 1 INFORMATION In conjunction with the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division, the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division will attack HILL 70 and trenches in the vicinity.
- The attack will be carried out by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the RIGHT, and the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the LEFT. The 4<sup>th</sup> CIB will form the RIGHT flank of the attack.
- The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will have on its RIGHT flank the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and on its LEFT flank the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion.
- 2 INTENTION The Battalion will capture and consolidate a line in the German Defences known as the GREEN OBJECTIVE – CHICORY TRENCH from N.13.b.95.55 – CONDUCTOR TRENCH – COMMOTION TRENCH – N.8.c.65.70.
- 3 PERSONNEL The Battalion, less exemptions as laid down in SS.135 Sect. XXX para 1 and 2 with amendments.
- 4 DRESS Dress will be Fighting Order as laid down in SS.135 para XXXI.
- 5 Day and hour of ZERO will be notified later.
- 6 BATTALION HEADQUARTERS Battalion Headquarters will be situated at N.7.c.00.70 from 1.00 am Y/Z night until after the capture of the GREEN OBJECTIVE, when it will move forward to the vicinity of N.7.d.40.40 or N.7.d.70.60

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.30 pm

Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
2 18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
3 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
4 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
5 4<sup>th</sup> Bde TM Battery  
6 4<sup>th</sup> Bde MG Company  
7 4<sup>th</sup> Field Coy RE  
8 Special Coy CE  
9 Commanding Officer  
10 2<sup>nd</sup> In Command  
11 "A" Company  
12 "B" Company  
13 "C" Company  
14 "D" Company  
15 Communication  
16 Medical Officer  
17 Scout Officer  
18 LG Officer  
19 Bombing Officer  
20 Quartermaster  
21 Transport Officer  
22 RSM  
23 Office  
24 - 26 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No 8  
July 29<sup>th</sup> 1917

MEMORANDA TO ACCOMPANY 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
OPERATION ORDER No 116

Ref: Sheets

RESERVOIR HILL 1/10,000  
BOIS RASE 1/10,000  
LENS 36.c.S.W.1. 1/10,000  
Artillery and Machine Gun Barrage Maps  
4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde Instructions for the Offensive Nos 2 and 3  
4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde Administrative Instructions  
Diagram In and Out Trenches.

1 At ZERO minus 90 minutes the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will assemble on ROAD from  
ASSEMBLY FORKED ROADS at N.7.c.85.15 – NORTH WESTERLY along ROAD to N.7.c.60.75 (LEFT  
BOUNDARY) as under:

"A" Company on RIGHT  
"C" Company in CENTRE  
"D" Company on LEFT,

"B" Company in RESERVE, in position immediately SOUTH WEST of COMBAT  
TRENCH.

The Battalion will move to above ASSEMBLY POSITION as per Diagram of In and  
Out Trenches, via COWCATCHER – CORSAIR – CORET – CORKSCREW –

COWDEN – COLLEGE – COMBAT – and will be in position by ZERO hour minus 90 minutes.

At ZERO hour minus 30 minutes the Battalion will be in position on JUMPING OFF LINE, which will be from FORKE ROADS at N.7.d.10.20. along ROAD in a NORTHERLY direction to N.7.d.00.70.

- 2 Artillery and Machine Gun Barrages will commence at ZERO hour, as per barrage maps, when the Battalion will advance to the attack from JUMPING OFF LINE.
- 3 The Battalion (CENTRE attacking Battalion) will have boundaries as under:  
BOUNDARIES RIGHT  
N.13.b.95.55 along ROAD to N.14.b.90.65 – N.13.b.70.70 – N.7.d.75.10 – N.7.d.65.15 – FORKED ROADS at N.7.d.10.20 – JUNCTION CORNWALL and COMBAT TRENCH at N.7.c.85.20 – CORNWALL – COLLEGE – CYCLIST – CORKSCREW.
- 4 LEFT  
BOUNDARIES (continued) N.8.c.55.70 – COUNTER TRENCH at N.7.d.90.80 – N.7.d.30.70 – COMBAT TRENCH at N.7.c.25.75
- COMPANY BOUNDARIES are as under:
- RIGHT COMPANY  
RIGHT boundary same as RIGHT boundary for Battalion
- LEFT BOUNDARY  
N.14.a.30.70 – COMBAT TRENCH at N.7.c.65.30
- CENTRE COMPANY:
- RIGHT BOUNDARY  
RIGHT boundary same as LEFT boundary for RIGHT COMPANY
- LEFT BOUNDARY  
CONDUCTOR TRENCH at N.8.c.55.25 – COMMOTION TRENCH at N.8.c.10.40 to GERMAN Front Line trench at JUNCTION with COIN TRENCH at N.7.d.70.50 – COMBAT TRENCH at N.7.c.50.55
- 5 The OBJECTIVE of the Battalion is the GERMAN RESERVE LINE, known as the GREEN OBJECTIVES OBJECTIVE, running from CHICORY TRENCH at N.13.b.95.55 – CONDUTOR TRENCH – COMMOTION TRENCH to N.8.c.65.70
- COMPANY OBJECTIVES are as under:
- RIGHT COMPANY  
N.13.b.95.66 (on CHICORY TRENCH) along CHICORY TRENCH to N.14.a.25.70
- CENTRE COMPANY  
From latter point along CHICORY and CONDUCTOR to JUNCTION of CALIPER and CONDUCTOR at N.8.c.55.25 (on CONDUCTOR TRENCH)
- LEFT COMPANY  
From latter point to N.8.c.65.70 (JUNCTION of COWLEY and COMMOTION)



6 Battalion Headquarters will be situated at N.7.c.00.70 from 1.00 am Y/Z night, until after  
BATTALION the capture of the GREEN OBJECTIVE, when it will move forward to the vicinity of  
HEADQUARTERS N.7.d.40.40 or N.7.d.70.60

7 Day and hour of ZERO will be notified later.  
ZERO HOUR

8 "A", "C" and "D" Companies will attack the German Front and Support Lines in three  
ADVANCE waves, each on a one platoon front, at 50 yards distance.

At COMMOTION and COUNTER TRENCHES each Company will increase its frontage and advance to the FINAL OBJECTIVE on a two platoon front.

The third platoon of each Company will be responsible for the mopping up of BLUE OBJECTIVE and all intervening trenches, works, houses, etc., between German Front Line and FINAL OBJECTIVE.

"B" Company (SUPPORT) will advance 100 yards in rear of attacking Companies, mopping up intervening houses and works and German Front Line.

When the FINAL OBJECTIVE has been gained it will advance to and consolidate the BLUE OBJECTIVE.

9 The general system of consolidation will be as below:  
CONSOLIDATION

- 1 (a) Front Line (ie GREEN OBJECTIVE) with outposts
- (b) Line of Machine Guns supporting Front Line, to be detailed by the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Machine Company, placed in suitable positions near N.7.d.95.40
- (c) Reserve or Main Line of Resistance – COMMOTION TRENCH (BLUE LINE)

All the above will be consolidated immediately they are gained and will be wired throughout as quickly as possible.

- 2 Lewis Gun Posts will be established in all trenches leading to enemy's lines and in advance of FINAL OBJECTIVE, immediately it is gained.

10 Reports will be sent to Battalion Headquarters prior to the establishment of Battalion  
REPORTS Report Centre, after which time they will be sent to Battalion Report Centre.

11 (1) BARRAGE: The Machine Gun Barrage (4<sup>th</sup> Bde MG Company) will consist  
EMPLOYMENT OF of one gun per 35 yards of front of FINAL OBJECTIVE  
MACHINE GUNS (2) MOBILE GUNS: On the Battalion Front, one half Section will take up position as in para (1) (b) CONSOLIDATION

12 Lieut Elwood of the 25<sup>th</sup> Battery will act as Laison Officer with this Battalion.  
LAISON

13 It is imperative that for purposes of exploiting initial success no time be lost by  
REORGANIZATION Commanders to effect a reorganization. All reorganizations will be reported to Battalion Report Centre.

- 14 SIGNAL COMMUNICATION As soon as possible after ZERO HOUR telephonic communication will be established from Battalion Headquarters to Battalion Report Centre, which will be established in the vicinity of N.7.d.70.60.
- Power Buzzer Station will also be established at this point, and will be used in the event of the telephone lines being down.
- As soon as objectives have been reached, two Runners per Company will report to Battalion Report Centre for duty until relieved.
- Two Runners from Battalion Headquarters will go in with the Report Centre Personnel, six other Headquarter Runners will remain at Battalion Headquarters for duty.
- Report Centre will be marked by a White Signal Flag.
- All messages and reports will be taken to Report Centre for transmission to Battalion Headquarters. As soon as Report Centre is established, pigeons will be brought forward. This method of communications will only be used when all other means fail.
- Company Signallers will go forward with their respective Companies with Phone and reels of Wire. They will endeavor to establish lateral communication to Companies on flanks, and as soon as possible connect up with Battalion Report Centre.
- 15 LIGHT SIGNALS (1) SOS
- The Corps SOS Signal is RED, either rockets or very lights, as many as possible being fired in rapid succession. In addition heavy rifle or MG fire breaking out at any time after the GREEN LINE has been captured, will be treated as an SOS SIGNAL
- (II) CAPTURE OF OBJECTIVES
- As soon as the BLUE and GREEN LINES respectively have been captured, three WHITE VERY LIGHTS will be fired by the assaulting troops as a signal to show that they have reached their objectives. These signals will only be fired by order of OC Assaulting Companies.
- 16 MEDICAL Until the Final Objective is captured the RAP will be established at N.7.c.00.70
- As soon as possible after this has been gained, and advanced RAP will be established in the proximity of N.7.d.70.60
- Vide Administrative Instructions issued with 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde Instructions for the offensive No 2
- 17 OBSERVATION POSTS The Scout Officer will arrange for location and establishment of Observation Posts.
- 18 TRENCH MORTAR BATTERY Two guns of the 4<sup>th</sup> Bde Trench Mortar Battery will advance with and in rear of the first waves of "A" and "C" Companies.
- Two guns will advance with "D" company/in rear of the first wave and one on the left flank – position to be left to the discretion of the Gun Commander
- 19 AEROPLANES Signals to aeroplanes will be by means of red ground flares which will be used when called for by Claxton Horn from aeroplane.

20 The instructions contained in SS.135 Sections XXVI, XXVII, XXVIII and XXXIII will be fully explained to all ranks taking part in the assault.

INSTRUCTION TO  
ASSAULTING  
TROOPS

21 The Battalion Dump will be established at Battalion Headquarters at N.7.c.00.70.  
DUMPS  
Brigade Dumps as in administrative Instructions issued with 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde Instructions for the Offensive No 2.

22 Vide SS.135 Section XXVI, Prisoners will be taken to Brigade Headquarters.  
PRISONERS

23 The RSM will arrange to establish Battle Stragglers Posts in COLLEGE TRENCH at M.12.d.90.60 and in CAVALRY TRENCH at M.12.a.95.30.  
BATTLE  
STRAGGLERS  
POSTS

24 Watches will be synchronized at 9.00 am, 6.00 pm and 11.00 pm daily commencing the 29<sup>th</sup> inst.  
TIME

25 From the hour of leaving Billets to proceed to the forward area, all ranks will wear Box Respirators at the "ALERT" position.  
RESPIRATORS

26 After operations, Units will arrange to collect all salvage articles into dumps on roads as near as possible to Battalion Headquarters. Location of these dumps to be notified to Battalion Headquarters at once.  
SALVAGE

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.30 pm

Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
2 18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
3 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
4 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
5 4<sup>th</sup> Bde TM Battery  
6 4<sup>th</sup> Bde MG Company  
7 4<sup>th</sup> Field Coy RE  
8 Special Coy CE  
9 Commanding Officer  
10 2<sup>nd</sup> In Command  
11 "A" Company  
12 "B" Company  
13 "C" Company  
14 "D" Company  
15 Communication  
16 Medical Officer  
17 Scout Officer  
18 LG Officer  
19 Bombing Officer  
20 Quartermaster  
21 Transport Officer  
22 RSM  
23 Office  
24 - 26 War Diary

MEMORANDA NO 2 TO ACCOMPANY 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
OPERATION ORDER NO 116

Ref Sheets as per Operation Order No 116

- 1 References para 3 "BOUNDARIES" the part relating to the RIGHT BATTALION BOUNDARY is cancelled and the following substituted:  
  
N.13.b.95.40 along ROAD to N.7.d.70.15 (Trench from COMBAT to COWDRAY) inclusive to the Battalion, thence to ROAD JUNCTION N.7.d.15.20 to JUNCTION of COMBAT and Cornwall, thence along CORNWALL, COLLEGE, and CYCLIST, (M.12.d.85.65./ to CORKSCREW, - (M.18.b.40.60.)
- 2 OBJECTIVES Reference para 4 "OBJECTIVES" The attention of all concerned is drawn to Instructions for Offensive No 3 para 4 OBJECTIVES, sub paras (d), (f) and (g)
- 3 ALLOTMENT OF TRENCHES On Y/Z night all trenches will be used for forward traffic, and there must be no known traffic to interfere with the troops going to ASSEMBLY POSITIONS.  
  
After ZERO HOUR the traffic Map for In and Out Trenches will be strictly adhered to.
- 4 CONSOLIDATION Reference para 9 CONSOLIDATION sub par (1) (b) is cancelled and the following substituted:  
(b) Line of Machine Guns supporting Front Line, to be detailed by the 4<sup>th</sup> Be MG Coy, placed in suitable positions near N.8.c.00.40 and N.8.c.20.55
- 5 GERMAN TRAPS Reference Instructions for the Offensive No 3 para 14 GERMAN TRAPS. Particular attention should be paid to the instructions contained therein, and all ranks should be made familiar with same.
- 6 AEROPLANES Reference para 19, AEROPLANES, this is cancelled and the following substituted:  
Signals to aeroplanes will be by means of Ground Flares. These will be shown at once when called for. The Signal to Light Flares is a succession of "A" in Morse Code on the Klaxton Horn of a Very Light.
- 7 LIGHT SIGNALS Reference para 15 Light Signals, which is hereby cancelled and the following substituted:
  - (i) SOS The Corps SOS Signal is RED, either Rockets or Very Lights as many as possible being fired in rapid succession. These lights will be fired until Artillery replies  
  
In addition heavy Rifle or MG fire breaking out at any time after the GREEN LINE has been captured will be treated as an SOS Signal
  - (ii) CAPTURE OF OBJECTIVES: As soon as the BLUE and GREEN LINES respectively have been captured, three WHITE VERY LIGHTS will be fired by the Assaulting Troops as a Signal to show that they have reached their objectives.  
  
These signals will only be fired on the order of the OC Assaulting Company and must be sent up in rapid succession.

8 NOTE:  
SIGNAL Until ZERO hour the wires will not be used for any purpose whatever except to OK  
COMMUNICATION and to send Code Word "LENS" which means "All troops in Assembly Position"

9 The attention of all concerned is drawn to para 26 of Instructions for Offensive No 3  
SPECIAL "Special Arrangements to Protect Flank" this should be carefully noted.  
ARRANGEMENTS  
TO PROTECT  
FLANK

10 The attention of all concerned is drawn to Instructions for Offensive No 3 para 31  
CONTACT CONTACT AEROPLANES: more especially sub paras (ii) and (iii)  
AEROPLANE

11 Owing to the great danger from the New German Gas Shells, the moment the enemy puts  
DANGEROUS GAS up a heavy Artillery Barrage – Box Respirators are to be worn.  
SHELLS

Box Respirators will be worn in the "ALERT" position on leaving billets and throughout the  
entire operation.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Distribution  
As OO 116

SECRET  
Copy No .....  
Aug 1<sup>st</sup> 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 117

Ref Sheets Map:  
36.c.S.W.1. 1/10,000  
36.b.S.E. 1/10,000

- 1 In accordance with the relief of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, in the LAURENT SECTION, Divisional Front, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will take over its Battle Front from the 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of August 1<sup>st</sup>/2<sup>nd</sup>.
- 2 Dress as per Operation Order No 116 para 4
- 3 One platoon per Company will move into and occupy the Front Line, leaving eight platoons in Reserve at M.10.d., M.11.c., and M.16.b.
- 4 Battalion Headquarters will be situated at M.17.b.9.9.
- 5 The night of Aug 1<sup>st</sup>/2<sup>nd</sup> will be considered as X/Y night

- 6 Starting Point will be CROSS ROADS at R.3.c.2.3.  
Units will pass Starting Point as under:

“A” Company	8.15 pm
“C” Company	8.30 pm
“D” Company	8.45 pm
“E” Company	9.00 pm

Headquarters, communication and Specialist Sections at 9.15 pm.

- 7 Route will be:

R.3.c.2.3. (Starting Point) – BULLY GREY – ROAD JUNCTION M.1.d.65.30 – “T”  
ROADS M.2.c.05.30. along ROAD to JUNCTION OF ROADS M.8.d.35.90. – M.8.b.75.05.  
along ROAD to M.17.a.25.85. thence CORKSCREW TRENCH.

- 8 An advance party of one Officer, three NCOs and three men per Company and One NCO and one man per Communication, Specialist and Headquarters Sections will proceed to Forward Area at 1.00 pm to make arrangements for disposition and billets as per para 3 above.
- 9 Guides from details as in para 8 above will meet Units at M.17.a.25.85.
- 10 Completion of Relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word “SPUR” at ..... (time)
- 11 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts given, copies of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 12.00 noon the 2<sup>nd</sup> inst.
- 12 Rations will be delivered to JUNCTION OF ROADS at M.16.a.55.40., with the exception of rations for the platoons proceeding to the Front Line, which will be delivered to respective billets by 4.00 pm and will be carried by them.
- 13 All billets will be left in a scrupulously clean condition.
- 14 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Lewis Guns and cooking outfits at Battalion Headquarters and Unit’s billets by 8.00 pm, and will deliver same with rations at dump at M.16.a.55.40.
- Officers’ and surplus baggage will be collected at 5.00 pm and taken to Quartermaster’s Stores.
- 15 All packs and Greatcoats of the personnel proceeding to the Forward Area will be taken to the Quartermaster’s Stores by 4.00 pm.
- 16 Platoons proceeding to the Front Line will pick up their complement of extra bombs, Nos 5, 23, and 2” as well as Stokes Shells, Flares and tools at dump M.17.b.90.60.
- 17 On the night of August 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup> the Battalion will move into its ASSEMBLY Position as per MEMORANDA TO ACCOMPANY OPERATION ORDER No 116 para 1.
- Para 16 above applies to these platoons moving forward.
- 18 Rations to be delivered at Dump M.16.a.55.40 at 10.30 pm.

- 19 Battalion Headquarters will close at M.17.b.90.90. at 1.00 am the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst and will open again at BATTLE HEADQUARTERS N.7.c.00.70. at 1.00 am the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst.
- 20 Reports to Battalion Headquarters as para 19 above.
- 21 All personnel, less Quartermaster's Stores and Transport Sections, not proceeding to the Forward Area, will remain in present billets, reporting to Major McLaughlin at 5.30 pm the 2<sup>nd</sup> inst. Major McLaughlin will proceed and report to the Commandant, 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Training Battalion at AIX NOULETTE WOOD at 8.00 pm the 2<sup>nd</sup> inst.
- Quartermaster will arrange to ration this party there and until further orders.
- One cooker will be taken with this detail.
- DRESS: Marching Order.
- 22 Reference Para 3 above, disposition of platoons will be "A" Company RIGHT, "C" Company CENTRE, "B" Company LEFT, "B" Company SUPPORT.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

- Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
2 18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
3 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
4 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
5 4<sup>th</sup> Bde TM Battery  
6 4<sup>th</sup> Bde MG Company  
7 4<sup>th</sup> Field Coy RE  
8 Special Coy CE  
9 Commanding Officer  
10 2<sup>nd</sup> In Command  
11 "A" Company  
12 "B" Company  
13 "C" Company  
14 "D" Company  
15 Communication  
16 Medical Officer  
17 Scout Officer  
18 LG Officer  
19 Bombing Officer  
20 Quartermaster  
21 Transport Officer  
22 RSM  
23 Office  
24 Major McLaughlin  
25 Commandant 4<sup>th</sup> Bde Trg Bn  
26 – 28 War Diary  
29 28<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

To all recipients of  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 116  
Memoranda to accompany OO 116 and  
Operation Order No 117

- 1 This officer letter 21-Z/1630, addressed to all Units of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion is cancelled.
- 2 Reference OO No 117
- 3 Operation Order No 117 will therefore be amended as under:
  - (a) Para 1 for august 1<sup>st</sup>/2<sup>nd</sup> read August 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup>
  - (b) Para 5 for august 1<sup>st</sup>/2<sup>nd</sup> read August 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup>
  - (c) Para 11 for 12.00 noon 2<sup>nd</sup> read 12.00 noon 14<sup>th</sup>
  - (d) Para 17 for night 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup> read night 14<sup>th</sup>/15<sup>th</sup>
  - (e) Para 18 for 10.30 pm night 2<sup>nd</sup> read 10.30 pm night 14<sup>th</sup>
  - (f) Para 19 for 1.00 am the 3<sup>rd</sup> read 1.00 am the 15<sup>th</sup> in two places
  - (g) Para 21 4<sup>th</sup> line for 2<sup>nd</sup> inst read 14<sup>th</sup> inst., 6<sup>th</sup> line for 2<sup>nd</sup> inst read 14<sup>th</sup> inst

(signed HE Pense)  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

13 – 8 – 17

*Transcriber's Note: What follows is a report of the battalion's actions during the attack on Hill 70. This report is part of the War Diary.*



After a day of final preparation the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion under the command of (Lieut-Col. stricken out and replaced by) Major T.F. Elmitt (Lieut-Col. R.W. Jones, D.S.C., Officer Commanding, having been detailed for duty at the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters), moved from billets at Fosse 10 to the forward area prior to the attack on the German trenches North-West of Lens. This was considered as X/Y night. The battalion was 20 officer and 537 other ranks strong. The Officers under (Lieut-Col. stricken out and replaced by) Major T.F. Elmitt major H. E Pense, M.C. (Adjutant), Major A.P. Miller, M.C., Captain E.A. McCusker (M.O.), Lieut. E.S. Sawell, M.C. (L.G.O.), Lieut. J.deG Audette (Scout Officer), Lieut. D.J. More, H.G. Wood, A Cockeram ("A" Company) : Lieuts. H.T. Deane M.C., C. Menpes, C.R. Widdifield, J.O. Smythe ("B" Company); Lieuts. A.E.R. Jones, M.C., G.T. Mowat, B.L. Irwin, W.T. Govan ("C" Company); Captain R.J. Davidson, M.C., Lieuts. L. Fraser, P. Barber, J.S. Davie ("D" Company).

C.S.M. G.H. Fishenden acted as R.S.M.

Nos. 4, 5, 9 and 13 platoons took over the battle front of the Battalion, while Battalion Headquarters, Communication Section, Scouts and remaining eight platoons were located in Cité St. Pierre.

During that night and the day of the 14<sup>th</sup>, although the enemy shelled consistently, there was little unusual to report. Our final artillery preparation was carried out. Colonel Elmitt conferred with the company commanders at the Battle Headquarters, in the "Hospice", in the afternoon, regarding final details for assembly position, as planned.

The reconnaissance of Major Miller and Lieut Audette and Scouts, the patrols which had on nights previous worked over our section of the "No Man's Land", and the experiences of the two platoons which raided the German trenches about a week previous all assisted greatly in familiarizing the Battalion with "No Man's Land", and little difficulty was experienced while the Battalion took up its position, which was reported complete to Brigade, by use of Code Word "Lens", at 3.50 a.m.

The time of Zero had been notified as 4.25 a.m. and at this hour our barrage of hundreds of guns, howitzers, and machine guns opened on the German positions for miles on the now famous battle front North-West of Lens. Our artillery roared accompanied by the familiar sound of the machine gun. The weather was ideal, officers and men (seasoned soldiers and those with shorter experiences at the front) were keen and in the highest of spirit, and at Zero hour the assaulting waves of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion with the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the right, and the 20<sup>th</sup> on the left, advanced to the assault on their section of the enemy's trenches which were the objectives of the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisions in the attack on Hill 70.

The Division of the enemy who held the front we assaulted lost little time in responding. First, the usual S.O.S. Signals, followed by their barrage which opened up at about two minutes after Zero.

Our artillery preparation had been thorough, remnants of wires which remained were little obstacle, and the enemy's front line trench was soon in our hands. The Boche who resisted were disposed of and our assaulting waves, accurately keeping their direction, following our barrage, continued their advance to and captured his second line, and then on to the final objective- Chicory and Commotion trenches. In what remained of his strong points the enemy resisted to the last, particularly on the front of our Right Company ("A") where Lieut. Cockeram and a small party, showing marked courage and determination, rushed one of these and put a machine gun and crew out of action.

Day had broken and messages were at once despatched to Battalion Headquarters regarding the situation and wounded, able to walk, commenced to arrive at the R.A.P., which was located with the Battalion Headquarters in the "Hospice". One of these, Lieut. Fraser, who had accompanied his Company to the final objective, came in after being wounded in the leg. He reported that the final objective had been gained, casualties slight, and scores of prisoners of the 156<sup>th</sup> R.I.R. taken. He gave particulars of the advance, also stated that our barrage had been entirely satisfactory. The enemy had been seen retiring to Lens, but Cinnabar trench appeared to be still manned.

The messages from Officers in command in the front line confirmed this. Prisoner, most of whom were in good physique, arrived in small parties, a fair proportion being wounded and apparently shaken by our artillery and infantry assault.

The regular use was made of the services of the unwounded who carried in our wounded. Comrades and prisoners were at once given first-aid by our M.O. and his staff, and transferred to rear by stretcher bearers of the 4th field ambulance.

Major W.E. Kidd, M.C., senior chaplain of the brigade, assisted at the R.A.P. throughout. Lieut. Audette had advanced with signallers and scouts to establish the Battalion Report Centre. Crews and guns of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Machine Gun Company and 4<sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery, advanced with the infantry and established themselves in positions which had been allotted to them. Lieut. Elwood, 26<sup>th</sup> battery C.F.A. was the Liaison Officer with the Battalion.

Communication had been established with the Battalion on our flanks, and, during the usual lull after the assault, work was commenced on the captured trenches. "A" Company was holding our Right frontage, with "C" Company in the Centre, "D" Company on the Left, and "B" Company in support in Commotion trench. "C" Company pushed forward posts up Conductor trench and Lieut. Jones reported that with co-operation on the flanks, he thought that we could occupy Cinnabar trench. Casualties up to this time had been comparatively light, but of the Officers, Lieut. G.D. Mowat had been killed, and Capt. Davidson, as well as Lieut. Frazer (Fraser?) wounded. Late on the afternoon of the 14<sup>th</sup> Lieut. Barber had been injured by falling. This left Lieut. Davie in command of "D" Company.

The Hun aircraft, soon after daylight, flying low, ascertained our position and fired at our men, which accounted for many of our casualties. Early in the afternoon his reconnaissance was followed by counter-attacks, all of which were repulsed, until about 3.00 p.m., when he gained a temporary footing in our new position. From Conductor trench to the 18th Battalion on our Right. This counter-attack was launched from some houses near the Lens-La Bassee road. Our men at this point ran short of ammunition and bombs.

At this time major Miller arrived at our forward Headquarters and organized our counter-attack, which was launched at 5.00 p.m.

Owing to heavy casualties on our Right, we were reinforced by four platoons of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion. In conjunction with these platoons, the remnants of our "A" Company, under Lieut. More, forced the Germans out of our lines.

"A" Company took that part of the line to the Right of the Quarrie, while the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion looked after the section to the Left, covering the Lens-La Bassee Road. From here, a party was pushed Northward along Chicory to Conductor trench, and a bombing post established in the latter by the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion. Valuable assistance was rendered throughout by the Officers and crews of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Machine Gun Company and 4<sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery, but particularly during the attempts of the enemy to re-occupy his lost positions.

During the following day (Thursday the 16<sup>th</sup>) the Boche aircraft was again very active, otherwise he contented himself with putting down very heavy barrage at intervals, principally on commotion trench, on his original front line, and in the vicinity of the Lens-Bethune Road.

On Thursday night we were reinforced from the Brigade Training Battalion, by one of our platoons under the command of Lieut. D.A. Currie.

Further Officer casualties, up to this time had been, in wounded, Lieuts. Wood, Cockeram, Jones, Irwin, Widdifield, J.C. Smythe, while Lieuts. Deane and Davie, although slightly wounded, remained at duty. Later, Lieut. Deane was again wounded in the leg.

On Friday night an inter-Battalion relief took place. "B" Company, under Lieut. Menpes, and Lieut. Currie's platoon of "C" Company taking over a section of the front line, with the remnants of "A", "C" and "D" Companies in close support.

Lieuts. A.W. May, R. (or H. or K.) Cameron, and E.B. Smythe took the places of casualties.

The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion continued to hold the Right of our front. They also relieved during the night.

The enemy had not given up his intention of re-occupying his lost positions, and, during the night 16<sup>th</sup>/17<sup>th</sup>, he made several attempts to this end. At 11.30 p.m., 2.00 a.m. and 4.15 a.m. he placed heavy barrages on our new positions and Battalion Headquarters, around which point he had noticed movement during the day--- our carrying parties. About daybreak over one hundred Huns succeeded, by the use of bombs, etc., in entering Chicory trench via Nabob Alley and Conductor trench. But Major Miller at once organized and led a counter-attack and the enemy were forced to evacuate, leaving dead and wounded. Five prisoners were sent to Battalion Headquarters.

The 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion attached to us, worked in conjunction with the counter-attack and parties of the Boche retiring across "No Man's Land" were engaged by three of our Lewis guns and few reached their lines in safety. The Hun had come over, well rationed, apparently intending to stay. In this attack Lieut. Govan was seriously wounded. The prisoners were of the 55<sup>th</sup> R.I. Regt.

During Saturday there was little unusual to report. His sniping was active, but there was less movement behind his lines, and that night the Battalion was relieved by the 27<sup>th</sup> and 29<sup>th</sup> Battalions of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, and proceed to billet at Fosse 10.

Lieut-Col. Jones, who had trained the Battalion for the attack, had recently returned from England after recovering from wounds received in the Vimy fight last May. He and Lieut-Col. Elmitt and Majors Pense and Miller were original Officers of the Battalion, while Capt. Davidson and Lieuts. More, Deane, Jones, Frazer, Cockeram, May and Currie are among the warrant officers and non-commissioned officers of the original personnel appointed to commission for their outstanding work since mobilization. The remainder had joined the Battalion as reinforcement and had, at all times proved capable leaders and untiring in the execution of their duty. Lieut. Mowat was courageous and highly esteemed by all ranks. He met his death by a sniper's bullet while leading his platoon. Lieut. Govan, who died of wounds, at the Casualty Clearing Station was in command of what remained of "C" Company when wounded. He will be remembered as a brave leader, always concerned about the interests of his men. Major H.W. Cooper, Capt AP Christmas, R.S.M. T.F. Jordan, M.C. and a percentage of our N.C.O.'s and men had been left out of the action in order that their services might contribute to the success of re-organization.

Many thrilling stories have been related of the experiences of officers and men during the four days' action, stories of the bombing of dug-outs, where the Boche had taken cover, the capture of machine gun positions, the capture of trophies and the repeated attempts of the Hun to re-establish his position in our objectives.

As in the fight at the Somme, at Vimy and in minor operations since the Division landed in France, in September 1915, there were many acts of gallantry and devotion to duty by all ranks. During all phases of the four days' action situations as they developed were admirably handled by Colonel Elmitt, and other officers whose work and initiative should be specially mentioned are Major Miller, Capt. McCusker, Lieuts. Cockeram, Audette, More, Deane, Jones, Frazer, Govan, Wood and Davie. C.S.M. T. Jackson and Sergt. H.A. Templeman displayed marked courage and appreciations of the situations as they occurred. Amongst the others mentioned are Sergt. Spenceley, Lance/Sergt. R.H. Stewart, Corpls. R. Dobson and C. Byrne, Lance/Corpls. C.M. Killett, E.G. Draper, A.E. Powles, R. McCloskey, F. Bedell and Pte J.W. McLennan.

The followings have been commended for deeds or valour: - Sergt. P. Pirie, Lance/Corpls. H.G. Correll, O. Switzer, F.H. Williams and Ptes. T.G. Wagg, L.D. Hall, H. Douglas, L.C. Kelly, R. Price and T.F. Noble.

Owing to the enemy's heavy shell fire the work of the signallers was most dangerous and difficult. Except in the heavy bombardments on the night Aug. 16<sup>th</sup>/17<sup>th</sup>. communication was maintained. Lance/Corpl. F.E. Davern was one of the original members of this Battalion, who has since died of wounds, lived up to the reputation for which he had previously been awarded the Military Medal. Lance/Corpl. F.W. O'Connor remained in charge of the Report Centre until compelled to retire owing to wounds. Among those whose works deserve special commendation in this connection and, as runners, are Lance/Corpls. F.C. Shotter, G.A. Brown, and J. Sergeant, and Ptes. W.W. McGuire, C. Colwell and W. Lloyd.

First-aid men and stretcher bearers carried out their dangerous duties, conspicuous among whom being Corpl. J. Holden, Lance/Corpl. J.R. Logue and Ptes. Minnaker, C. Cable, F.A Osborne, D.H. Holbrook and C.W. Brewer.

Our Pipe Band who again (as at Vimy) volunteered to "pipe" the battalion over the parapet, were employed in carrying up rations and supplies. The carrying parties suffered many casualties. Our casualties totalled one officer killed, one died of wounds, twelve wounded, thirty eight other ranks killed, one hundred and ninety six wounded and twenty-three missing.

Most of the bodies of our dead were taken to the light railway terminus and transferred to rear for burial.

Prisoners captured totalled ninety. Three machine guns, in addition to an heavy trench mortar, and a quantity of minor equipment were captured.

Congratulatory messages were received from the Commander-in-Chief, the Army, Corps. Divisional and Brigade Commanders.

There were many outstanding acts of bravery, by officers, warrant officers, N.C.O's and men, and the decorations awarded in recognition were a small percentage of these. The work of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion officers and men who reinforced us was greatly appreciated, as well as that of the 4<sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery, 4<sup>th</sup> Machine Gun Company and the 4<sup>th</sup> Field Ambulance, which cleared our casualties from the R.A.P All ranks of these Units were accorded highest praise by our Battalion, as well as the support given by our artillery. The cooperation of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion was at all times throughout the action all that could be desired.

Though ever mindful of our splendid comrades who sacrificed their lives, our Battalion highly appreciates the honour of participating in this British success. We feel that it has again taken no small part in the destruction of the forces of the Kaiser.

SECRET  
Copy No .....  
August 18<sup>th</sup> 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 119

#### Ref Sheet Maps:

36c S.W. 1/10,000  
36b S.E. 1/20,000

- 1 In accordance with relief of the 4<sup>th</sup> CIB from the Divisional Front, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by elements of the 27<sup>th</sup> and 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalions tonight August 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> 1917

Upon completion of relief the Battalion will proceed to reserve at FOSSE 10

- 2 The relief will be carried out as under:
  - (a) Headquarters, Communication and Specialists Sections by corresponding Units of the 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - (b) Two Companies of 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion (Attached) by two Companies of 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - (c) Elements of 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion South of CALIPER and COKE Trenches (inclusive) by one company of 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - (d) Elements of 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion North of CALIPER and COKE (inclusive) by two platoons of 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion
- 3 Reports will be sent to Major Miller at present forward Hd Qrs who in turn will report completion of relief to Battalion Headquarters.

- 4 All platoons of 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion relieving Units of 19<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will report to forward Headquarters at M.7.d.90.15 where Guides will be available. Two Guides will report at 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion Headquarters at 9.00 pm to guide the two relieving platoons of the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion to forward Headquarters at M.7.d.90.15
- 5 All Lewis Guns, Water cans, equipment etc will be taken to Light Railway Terminus at M.11.s.50.05 by 2.30 am 19<sup>th</sup> inst from which point they will be moved to the rear terminus.  
  
Transport Officer will arrange transport from the point to Billets and QMS Stores.
- 6 Captain Christmas will arrange for guides to meet incoming Units at YMCA FOSSE 10, from which point they will be taken to Billets arranged by QM.
- 7 Periscopes, Very Pistols, Wire Cutters, Bomb Bags and extra water bottles will be carried out.
- 8 Trench Stores will be handed over on relief and duplicate receipts sent to Battalion Orderly Room by 6.00 pm 19<sup>th</sup> inst
- 9 Transport Officer will arrange for horses of Lieut Col Elmitt, Adjutant and Major Miller report at Dressing Station M.1.d.70.30 (GRENAY) 2.00 am 19<sup>th</sup> inst

ACKNOWLEDGE

Major & Adjutant

Issued by orderly at 8.00 pm 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

- Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
 2 18<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 3 20<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 4 27<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 5 29<sup>th</sup> Battn  
 6 Commanding Officer  
 7 "A" Coy  
 8 "B" Coy  
 9 "C" Coy  
 10 "D" Coy  
 11 Specialists  
 12 Communication  
 13 QM  
 14 TO  
 15 RSM  
 16 Office  
 17 - 19 War Diary

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 121

20<sup>th</sup> August 1917

Ref Sheet:  
36.b. 1/40/000

1 In connection with the relief of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division by the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division, on the night of August 21<sup>st</sup>/22<sup>nd</sup> and 22<sup>nd</sup>/23<sup>rd</sup>, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to billets at VILLERS AU BOIS tomorrow the 21<sup>st</sup> instant.

2 Starting Point Cross Roads R.8.c.55.80.

Units will pass the starting point as under:

Headquarters	)	
Communications	)	9.20
Specialists	)	
"A" Company		9.25 am
"B" Company		9.30 am
"C" Company		9.35 am
"D" Company	)	
Medical Section	)	9.40 am
QM Stores	)	
Transport		9.45 am

500 yards distance will be maintained between units, as above during the march.

3 ROUTE: From Starting Point to BOYSEFFLES – BOUVINGY –GOUY – SERVINS – VILLERS AU BOIS via GRAND SERVINS – VILLERS AU BOIS Road to destination.

4 Dress: Marching Order

5 On arrival at Billets the Brigade will be ready to move at 6 hrs notice.

6 An advance Party of Captain Christmas and CQMS's will proceed ahead and report to Major Rispin (4<sup>th</sup> CIB) at Town Major's Office, VILLERS AU BOIS at 9.00 am 21<sup>st</sup> instant.

7 Billets will be left in a scrupulously clean condition

8 Dinner will be served enroute.

9 Officer's kits will be collected at respective Company and Section Headquarters at 7.45 am and Mess Boxes at 8.15 am. Lewis Guns will be taken to QM Stores for loading at 7.30 am. The Quartermaster and Transport Officer will mutually arrange for loading of stores, SAA, Bombs, Tools, etc., by 7.15 am

10 The Pipe Band will be apportioned to the companies and will report to respective Headquarters by 8.15 am

11 The Transport Officer will arrange that horses of Lieut Colonel Elmitt, Adjutant and Company Commanders report at respective Headquarters at 8.15 am

Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.15 pm

Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 "A" Company  
3 "B" Company  
4 "C" Company  
5 Specialists  
6 Communication  
7 Medical Officer  
8 Transport Officer  
9 Quartermaster  
10 RSM  
11 Office  
12 – 14 War Diary  
15 "D" Company

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.  
(Erased heading not required.)

Army Form

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
VILLERS AU BOIS	1/9/17		The Battalion carried out training from 8.00 am to 12.30 pm  Weather very fine
	2/9/17		The Battalion paraded for Divine Service at 10.00 am. This was conducted by Major the Rev WE Kidd MC
	3/9/17		The Battalion during this period carried out the usual training from 8.00 am to 12.30 pm to
	8/9/17		The weather remained fine, and we had very little rain at all
	9/9/17		The Battalion paraded to attend Brigade Divine Service at 9.30 am. The service was conducted by the Army Chaplain in the presence of the Army Commander, (Gen Sir HS Horne KCB)
	10/9/17 to 14/9/17		The Battalion carried out training during this period, such as Physical Drill, Bayonet Fighting, Musketry exercise, etc.  Weather still continued to be fine.
	14/9/17 to 15/9/17		On night of 14 <sup>th</sup> /15 <sup>th</sup> the 21 <sup>st</sup> Battalion relieved the 4 <sup>th</sup> & 5 <sup>th</sup> CMRs in the Front Line with Battalion Headquarters situated T.14.c.20.60 as per OO 122  Relief completed 11.50 pm  Casualties Nil
T.14.c.20.60	15/9/17		The day passed very quietly, absolutely no artillery activity on our frontage. Wiring parties & patrols were out, but nothing unusual occurred
	16/9/17		The enemy on this front, very quiet, no artillery.  Wiring parties & patrols as previous night, but nothing to report. Casualties Nil  Weather fine
	17/9/17 to 18/9/17		Day passed very quietly, nothing at all to report to  Weather fine
	19/9/17		Our artillery shelled rearward area of the enemy but he did not retaliate at all on our front.  Casualties Nil
	20/9/17		The day very quiet, our artillery shelled behind the enemy's lines but he still remained quiet



VILLERS  
AU BOIS

- 21/9/17 During the night of 20<sup>th</sup>/21<sup>st</sup> the Battalion was relieved by units of 5<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde. Upon completion of relief the Battalion proceeded to Port George (LA TARGETTE), stayed here for breakfast, & then proceeded to billets at VILLERS AU BOIS (as previously occupied) as per Operation Order 123
- 22/9/17 The Battalion spent the day in carrying out training and bathing
- 23/9/17 The Battalion paraded for Divine Service at 10.00 am. The service was conducted by Major the Rev WE Kidd MC
- 24/9/17 The Battalion paraded daily at 8.15 am & proceeded to the taped course to carry out special training. A concert was given during the evening by the 21<sup>st</sup> Bn Party.  
28/9/17
- 29/9/17 The Battalion was inspected by the Officer Commanding the 4<sup>th</sup> CI Bde during the morning. The Corps Sports were held on the YMCA grounds.  
  
The weather was fine.
- 30/9/17 The Battalion paraded for Divine Service at 10.30 am. The service was conducted by Maj the Rev WE Kidd MC

SECRET  
Copy No 8  
Sept 20<sup>th</sup> 1917

#### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER 123

Ref Map VIMY & ROUVROY 1/10,000

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde will be relieved by the 5<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde on in the MERICOURT SECTOR on the night Sept 20<sup>th</sup>/21<sup>st</sup>
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by the 24<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in the RIGHT SUB SECTION.  
  
Upon relief Units will proceed independently by platoons to billets recently occupied by them at VILLERS AU BOIS, halting on route at FORT GEORGE (LA TARGETTE) for breakfast which will be served at Transport Lines at 6.00 am.
- 3 Two Guides for Battalion Headquarters and four guides per Company will report to Lieut Hamley at Bn Hd Qrs at 5.00 pm and proceed to THE CROCS at S.29.a.14 to guide relieving Units to their respective positions.
- 4 All Trench Stores, maps etc will be handed over on relief and receipts in duplicate taken which will be sent to Bn Hd Qrs by 7.00 am the 21<sup>st</sup> inst
- 5 Water Cans and Very Pistols will be brought out by Units
- 6 All Lines and dugouts will be left in a clean and sanitary condition. Certificates to this effect signed by Officer taking over will be forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs by 7.30 am the 21<sup>st</sup> inst.
- 7 Lewis Guns will be taken out to RATION DUMP and a LG NCO will supervise loading of same.

Officer's baggage and cooking utensils will also be placed on Transport at this location.

- 8 Horses for mounted Officers will be at RATION DUMP at 11.30 pm
- 9 Completion of relief will be reported to Bn Hd Qrs by wire by use of code word "MARBLE"
- 10 Headquarters Sections will ration with Companies tomorrow as under:

Communication Section - "A" Coy  
 Scouts and Specialist - "B" Coy  
 RSM's Party - "C" Coy

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Captain  
 Asst Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 12.15 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
 2 24<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
 3 "A" Company  
 4 "B" Company  
 5 "C" Company  
 6 "D" Company  
 7 QM  
 8 TO  
 9 MO  
 10 RSM  
 11 Office  
 12 Specialists  
 13 Communication  
 14 - 16 War Diary

SECRET  
 Copy No .....  
 Sept 14<sup>th</sup> 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 122

Ref Sheet  
 36.B.?? 1/20,000  
 VIMY & ROUVROY 1/10,000

- 1 In accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Operation Order No 153, the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 8<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade in the forward Area on the night Sept 14<sup>th</sup>/15<sup>th</sup>
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve elements of the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Mounted Rifles as under:
  - "A" and "D" Companies relieving two Coys 5<sup>th</sup> CMRs
  - "C" and "B" Companies relieving two Coys 4<sup>th</sup> CMRs
  - Headquarters and Headquarters Sections relieving corresponding Units of the 4<sup>th</sup> CMRs

3 Upon completion of relief, disposition of Units will be as under:

“D” Company right Sector Front Line from T.15.b.20.25 to T.15.a.70.80, with one platoon in TOLEDO TRENCH from T.10.c.70.60 to JUNCTION VESTA TILLEY and TOLEDO TRENCH.

“A” company Left Sector Front Line from JUNCTION VESTA TILLET (VESTA TILLEY inclusive to “A” Coy) and TEDDY GERRARD TRENCH to T.9.?.20.20, with one platoon in TOLEDO TRENCH from JUNCTION VESTA TILLEY and TOLEDO TRENCH to T.9.b.60.30.

“C” Company Right Sector Support (CANADA TRENCH)

“B” Company Left Sector Support (CANADA TRENCH)

Headquarters will be situated at T.14.c.20.60, with Headquarters Sections in the immediate vicinity.

4 Dress: Fighting Order, greatcoats will be carried

5 Starting Point will be Unit's private parade grounds

6 Order of March as follows, and Units will leave Starting Point at times as under:

Specialists	)	
Communication	)	
Headquarters	)	2.00 pm
Medical	)	

“D” Company	2.10 pm
“A” Company	2.20 pm
“C” Company	2.30 pm
“B” Company	2.40 pm

500 yards will be maintained between Units on this march.

7 Route will be – Cross Country from Starting Point – North of BERTHONVAL WOOD, thence to JUNCTION ROADS at A.2.?.20.90 (approximate), where a Battalion Scout will direct Units, via board walk, on route to Halt for tea.

8 The Quartermaster will arrange for Tea to be served at approx: S.20.d.00.20 at 5.00 pm. Cookers will be in this position by 4.00 pm. Scout Officer will detail one Scout to guide Cookers to this position.

9 Guides from the 8<sup>th</sup> Brigade (one per platoon and two per Battalion Headquarters) will be at S.22.a.10.40 at 7.30 pm, to guide Units to positions as in para 2

10 No movement on VIMY RIDGE to be allowed before dark.

11 Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer's surplus baggage and Cooking Utensils at 1.30 pm.

All surplus Officer's baggage and OR's kits will be left in charge of respective CQMS

12 Units will see that all lines and huts are left in a clean and sanitary condition

13 An advance party of one Officer and one NCO for Headquarters and Headquarters Section, and one Officer per Company and one NCO per platoon will proceed ahead to take over. This party will report to Capt Gillman at Battalion Headquarters at 1.30 pm this date.

14 All Trench Stored, maps etc, will be taken over on relief and receipts given, copies of which will be forwarded to Bn Hd Qrs, as per 21<sup>st</sup> Bn letter 21-1726 of the 14<sup>th</sup> inst.

Disposition States and returns will be submitted in accordance with instructions contained in the above mentioned letter.

15 Completion of relief will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word "TIN HAT" (.....time)

16 The Lewis Gun NCO will arrange for the packing of Lewis Guns and ammunition. These will be transported in the immediate rear of the Battalion.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at .....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 4<sup>th</sup> CMR
- 3 5<sup>th</sup> CMR
- 4 "A" Company
- 5 "B" Company
- 6 "C" Company
- 7 "D" Company
- 8 Communication
- 9 Specialists
- 10 Quartermaster
- 11 Medical Officer
- 12 Transport Officer
- 13 RSM
- 14 Office
- 15 - 17 War Diary

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
VILLERS AU BOIS	1/10/17		The Battalion carried out usual schedule of training
VIMY RIDGE	2/10/17 to 7/10/17		<p>The Battalion relieved the 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in Support of the Divisional Front on the night of Oct 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup>. Move was commenced for Suburban Camp Villers au Bois at 3.00 pm and tea was served East of Neuville St Vaast, where a halt was made before completing the move forward, as per Operation Order 124</p> <p>The Battalion was located East of Vimy Ridge and was employed on working parties</p> <p>Few casualties were sustained</p> <p>Lieut Col EW Jones, DSO, proceeded to England on leave on Oct 6<sup>th</sup> and the command of the Battalion was taken over by Major HE Pense, MC.</p>
CHAUDIER SECTION	8/10/17 to 9/10/17		<p>On the night of Oct 8<sup>th</sup>/9<sup>th</sup> the Battalion carried out a relief of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Chaudiere Section, taking over the Left Battalion Front of the Division as per Operation Order 125</p> <p>The 3<sup>rd</sup> Cdn Inf Bde was on our Left. The rain of the previous days continued.</p> <p>There was little of importance to note, our patrols reported the enemy quiet.</p> <p>Periodically he treated Avion Trench with Trench Mortars, but few casualties resulted.</p>
	10/10/17		In accordance with the relief of the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 6 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night of Oct 10 <sup>th</sup> /11 <sup>th</sup> , the Battalion was relieved by the 31 <sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion and proceeded to VILLERS AU BOIS, where Suburban Camp was again taken over as per Operation Order 126
VILLERS AU BOIS	11/10/17 to 14/10/17		<p>During this period, the Battalion prepared for the move of the Division to Flanders, which had been made known while we were in the Line.</p> <p>On Sunday Oct 13<sup>th</sup> Major WE Kidd, MC, conducted the Church of England Service while the Roman Catholics attended Mass at VILLERS AU BOIS.</p>
	15/10/17		At 8.30 am on the 15 <sup>th</sup> Oct the Battalion paraded and proceeded with Headquarters and the other units of the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade from Villers au Bois to the Ourton Billeting area, via Grand Servins – Fresnicourt – Rebreuve – La Comte as per Operation Order 127.
OURTON			<p>The weather was ideal for marching and the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion was inspected by Major General H Burstall, CB, CMG, ADC, Divisional Commander, en route.</p> <p>March casualties Nil</p>

OURTON 16/10/17 to 23/10/17 From the evening of the 15<sup>th</sup> to the morning of the 24<sup>th</sup> the Battalion occupied comfortable billets at Ourton and carried out its training, the attack being practiced, and route marches indulged in.

With the other units of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, the Army Commander inspected the Battalion on the morning of the 20<sup>th</sup> as per Operation Order 128. His remarks to the Officer Commanding during the inspection and march past were most complimentary, he wished it "good luck" in the fighting in Flanders, and with the Canadian Corps, an early return to the First Army.

Lieut Col EW Jones, DSO, returning from leave, assumed the command of the Battalion from the 20<sup>th</sup>.

24/10/17 to 31/10/17 At 1.10 pm on the 24<sup>th</sup>, the Battalion, less B Company entrained at Ligny St Flochel Station for Godewaersvelde, where it arrived at 7.30 pm. During the morning a march had been made from Ourton, via Dieval – Monchy – Breton – Bailleul aux Cormailles to Ligny St Flochel station, as per Operation Order 130.

Detrainment was carried out quickly at Godewaersvelde and the Battalion moved in the rain to Caestre, where it occupied tents, with Headquarters and B Company in an adjacent farm for the remainder of the month.

B Company had proceeded to entraining point the previous day on fatigue duty as per Operation order 129, and detrained at Godewaersvelde at 4.30 am 25<sup>th</sup> inst.

Preparations for the attack of the Division early in November were continued during the remaining days of the month.

Having been recalled to accept a senior command, Major TF Elmitt severed his active connection with the Battalion on Oct 28<sup>th</sup>, when he left for England. During the three years which he had loyally served the 21<sup>st</sup>, he had won the respect and best wishes of all ranks. This was expressed in many ways by hundreds from the Commanding Officer down. Both bands and hundreds of Officers and men were at the station to bid him "good luck" and numerous were the expressions of our appreciation of his work and good comradeship.

SECRET  
Copy No  
Oct 2<sup>nd</sup> 1917

## 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 124

Ref Map MAROEUIL 1/20,000

- 1 In accordance with the relief of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night of the 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup> Oct, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in SUPPORT, in the Divisional Front, on the night of 2<sup>nd</sup>/3<sup>rd</sup> October.
- 2 Units will relieve corresponding Units of the 31<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion with Battalion Headquarters situated at S.23.a.6.5

- 3 The Battalion will parade at 2.30 pm, this date, preparatory to moving to the forward area. Units will move at 500 yards distance. The Pipe Band will be apportioned to the four Companies.

Order of March will be as under:

Headquarters  
Communication  
Specialists  
"A" Company  
"B" Company  
"C" Company  
"D" Company  
Transport

Dress: Fighting Order. Greatcoats

- 4 Route will be: VILLERS AU BOIS, cross country route to BERTHONVAL WOOD, thence to CROSS ROADS at F.11.a.6.0, thence to CROSS ROADS at A.8.a.4.7, thence by NEUVILLE ST VAAST ROAD to Halting Place at S.28.c.7.3, thence to JUNCTION HUMBER TRENCH and LA FELIE FARM ROAD where guides from 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will meet units at 8.00 pm (one per Platoon and two per Battalion Headquarters)
- 5 No movement EAST of VIMY RIDGE to take place before 8.00 pm
- 6 All Officer's Kits, men's packs and surplus baggage will be delivered at the Canteen by 1.30 pm for storage.
- 7 The Quartermaster will arrange with the Transport Officer for tea to be served to the Battalion at S.28.c.7.3
- 8 Water Cans, cooking utensils, blankets and Lewis Guns will be placed in front of QM Stores, ready for transport, by 1.45 pm, under one guard per Company and Section, which will accompany the transport to the forward positions. Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s and tagged.
- 9 Present Camp and huts will be left in a scrupulously clean condition by 1.30 pm, when Units will fall in on private Parade Grounds.
- 10 Trench Stores, Maps etc, will be taken over and duplicate receipts forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 9.00 am the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst
- 11 Maps showing disposition of platoons also posts and Lewis Guns will be sent to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst
- 12 Completion of relief will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by runner by giving relief time only
- 13 Transport Officer will arrange to deliver rations commencing tonight, Guides from Companies and Sections will meet Transport at JUNCTION of ROADS at S.29.d.8.6
- 14 Transport and Quartermaster's Stores will move from present position to Lines adjoining F.11.b.1.2

(Signed) HE PENSE  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.00 am

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 3 "A" Company
- 4 "B" Company
- 5 "C" Company
- 6 "D" Company
- 7 Communication
- 8 Specialists
- 9 MO
- 10 QM
- 11 TO
- 12 RSM
- 13 Office
- 14 - 16 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Oct 8<sup>th</sup> 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 125

Ref Sheet 36.c.S.W.

- 1 In accordance with an inter-Battalion relief in the CHAUDIERE Section on the night of Oct 8<sup>th</sup>/9<sup>th</sup> the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in the LEF BATTALION frontage.
- 2 "C" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve "C" Company 20<sup>th</sup> Bn on the LEFT  
"B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "D" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn on the RIGHT  
"A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "A" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in SUPPORT  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "B" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Bn in SUPPORT  
Headquarters and Headquarters Sections will relieve corresponding Units, but will be situated at T.8.d.6.6  
RAP will be situated in HAYTER TRENCH approx 200 SW of DORIS
- 3 Reconnoitering parties consisting of 1 Officer per Company and 1 NCO per platoon, Signalling Officer, Scout Officer and Works Officer will reconnoiter the area they will respectively take over.
- 4 Guides from the 20<sup>th</sup> Battn will meet Units of 21<sup>st</sup> Battn (1 per platoon and 2 for Bn HQ) at VICTORIA DUMP at 7.45 pm

Units will move in the following order:

- "C" Company (arriving VICTORIA DUMP 7.45 pm)
- "B" Company
- "A" Company
- "D" Company
- Communication, Specialists, and Battalion Headquarters

Battalion Headquarters will close at present location at 7.15 pm and will open as in para 2 at 7.15 pm. Lieut Sawell will present at latter location at that hour.



- 5 All Trench Stores and Salvage will be handed over and receipts taken and forwarded to Bn HQ in duplicate by 8.30 am the 9<sup>th</sup> inst, along with a disposition map by platoons showing strength and locations.

Also receipts in duplicate of trench stores etc taken over in new position

- 6 TO will arrange to deliver rations at Junct Roads T.8.d.6.5

He will also call at present Bn and Company ration dumps for all surplus articles being taken forward. Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s and tagged and moved to QM Stores in charge of respective CQMS's

Lewis Guns will be carried forward.

- 7 Sanitary Certificates to be forwarded to Bn HdQrs by 8.30 am the 9<sup>th</sup> inst
- 8 Completion of relief will be notified by use of Code "ARC" at .....time
- 9 Acknowledge

(Signed) ES SAWELL  
Lieut for  
Major Commanding  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 2.35 pm

SECRET  
Copy No .....  
Oct 10<sup>th</sup> 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 126

Ref Sheet      51.b.N.W.  
                    51.c.N.E.

- 1 In accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde OO 160, the 6<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde will relieve the 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde in the CHAUDIERE Section on the night of 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup> Oct

31<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn in the Left Sub Section

- 2 Units will be relieved as under:

Headquarters and Headquarters Sections by corresponding Units

"A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "A" Coy 31<sup>st</sup> Bn  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "C" Coy 31<sup>st</sup> Bn  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "D" Coy 31<sup>st</sup> Bn  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "B" Coy 31<sup>st</sup> Bn

- 3 On relief Units will proceed to SUBURBAN CAMP in billets previously occupied by them.  
 "A" and "D" Companies will entrain at Junction of Railway and Road near entrance to HUMBER CT on top of RIDGE at 10.00 pm.  
 "B" and "C" Companies will entrain same place at 1.00 am  
 Further particulars will be issued later
- 4 Lewis Guns and surplus baggage will be placed ready for transport at Bn Ration Dump by 12.00 mn and guards from respective Units placed over same.
- 5 All Maps, trench stores, photographs etc will be handed over and receipts in duplicate, together with sanitation certificates forwarded to Bn HQ by 9.00 am Oct 11<sup>th</sup>. Very Pistols and water cans will be carried out also Rifle Grenade Cups.
- 6 Battalion Headquarters will close at present position at 12.30 am and operate at same hour at SUBURBAN CAMP
- 7 Completion of relief to be reported to Battalion Headquarters by use of code word "GLASS" at .....time.
- 8 TO will arrange to collect Lewis Guns and surplus baggage at Bn Ration Dump at 12.00 mn
- 9 Tracer ammunition will be turned over and an equal number of drums taken in exchange.
- 10 Guides as under will report to Lieut Robinson at Bn HQ at 6.45 pm today:

"A" Coy five	"B" Coy three	"D" Coy five	"C" Coy Nil
Headquarters two	(Scouts will supply three guides for "C" Company)		

ACKNOWLEDGE

Issued at 4.30 pm

(Signed) AP CHRISTMAS  
 Captain  
 Asst/Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET  
 Copy No 14  
 Oct 14<sup>th</sup> 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 127

Ref Maps	LENS 11.	1/100,000
	36.B	1/40/000

- 1 The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division is being relieved by the 48<sup>th</sup> Division.

Relief to be completed by the 18<sup>th</sup> inst. On completion of relief the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will be concentrated in the OURTON AREA

In accordance with above the 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Brigade will march tomorrow the 15<sup>th</sup> inst, to its billeting area.

Order of March will be:

4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade  
19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  
20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Trench Mortar Battery  
18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

2 Route will be: STARTING POINT – GRAND SERVINS – FRESNICOURT – REBREUVE – LA COMTE – OURTON

3 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will parade tomorrow the 15<sup>th</sup> inst at 8.30 am

Dress: Marching Order

Officers (except mounted Officers) will carry packs

Order of March will be as under:

Specialists  
Communication  
Headquarters  
Pipe Band  
"A" Company  
"B" Company  
Brass Band  
"C" Company  
"D" Company

Transport will follow in rear of the Battalion in the following order:

4 Lewis Gun Limbered GS Wagons  
6 SAS Pack Animals  
4 SAS Limbered GS Wagons  
2 Tool Carts  
1 Maltese Cart  
2 Water Carts  
4 Cookers  
1 Mess Cart  
Spare Horses

Baggage wagons will march immediately in rear of the Mess Cart. The following personnel only will be allowed to march in rear of Transport Vehicles to act as brakesmen:

- (i) 10 Limbered GS Wagons – 1 Pioneer to each wagon, the Pioneer Sergeant to march with one of the Tool Wagons
- (ii) 2 Water Carts – the 5 OAMC men divided between the 2 Carts
- (iii) 4 Cookers – The four platoon cooks and the Coy Officer's Cook behind the Coy Cooker
- (iv) Mess Cart – The Mess NCO, Mess Waiter and Bn Hq Officer's Cook

4 The Battalion will march in the above mentioned order, and will pass STARTING POINT (Light Railway Crossing  $\frac{3}{4}$  immediately NORTH of the E in VILLERS AU BOIS) at 9.30 am

5 Sections will be attached to Companies for rations as under:

“A” Company – Specialists, QM Stores and CAMC

“B” Company – Transport Sections

“C” Company –RSM Party, and Brass Band

“D” Company – Communication Sections

The Quartermaster will arrange for dinner to be served at mid-day, probably between REBREUVE and LA COMTE

6 Billeting Parties consisting of each CQMS and Sergt Maheux for Headquarters, Communication and Specialists Sections, will report to Captain H Hora at Battalion Headquarters at 4.30 pm the 14<sup>th</sup> inst. The OC Communication Section will arrange to supply this detail with bicycles. Captain Hora will proceed with this detail and report to the Town Major or Maire of OURTON not later than 10.00 am the 15<sup>th</sup> inst to take over billets. He will report to the Staff Captain “Q” 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde at Maire OURTON at 12.30 pm the 15<sup>th</sup> inst.

7 Marching out States will be submitted to Bn Orderly Room by 7.30 am tomorrow the 15<sup>th</sup> inst.

Marching In States will be submitted to Bn HQ OURTON within one hour after Units have reached their destination.

8 All Lines and Huts in the present area are to be left in a clean and sanitary condition.

9 The Transport Officer will arrange for a Limber to report to Bn Hd Qrs for loading of all Lewis Guns at 4.30 pm.

He will also arrange to collect Officer’s Baggage, Mess Outfits and Orderly Room equipment by 7.30 am tomorrow the 15<sup>th</sup> inst.

10 Refilling Point will be opposite the SCHOOL HOUSE at LA COMTE

11 The Divisional Train will deliver rations to QM’s Billet

Arrangements for guides to conduct these supply wagons will be notified later.

12 The strictest march discipline will be maintained throughout the march

13 Battalion Headquarters will close at SUBURBAN CAMP at 8.30 am the 15<sup>th</sup> inst, and re-open at OURTON at 4.30 pm same date.

14 No 2 Divisional Train will detail two GS Wagons to report to the Quartermaster not later than 7.00 am

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 3.30 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Company
- 3 "B" Company
- 4 "C" Company
- 5 "D" Company
- 6 Communication
- 7 Specialists
- 8 MO
- 9 QM
- 10 TO
- 11 RSM
- 12 Office
- 13 - 15 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No 13  
Oct 19<sup>th</sup>, 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 128

Ref Map LENS 11. 1/100,000

- 1 The Army Commander will inspect the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, less Transport, on Saturday the 20<sup>th</sup> inst, at 10.00 am at 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Brigade Headquarters, 500 yards immediately EAST of the last N in MIN DEVIRON
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will parade at 7.30 am on ground as previously notified. Dress: Fighting Order.

Officers will not carry sticks but will wear gloves.

Markers for this parade will report to CSM Jackson at 7.20 am

Markers for Brigade Parade, one per Company, will report to RSM Jordan at Battalion Headquarters at 7.35 am.

- 3 Order of March from Battalion Parade Ground will be:

- Specialists
- Communication
- Battalion Headquarters
- Pipe Band
- "A" Company
- "B" Company
- Brass Band
- "C" Company
- "D" Company
- Quartermaster Section
- Medical Section

Interval of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies.

- 4 Head of Column will pass ROAD JUNCTION ½ (?) mile SW of B in BEUGIN at 8.37 am

- 5 Parade States will be in Battalion Orderly Room by 7.00 am
- 6 Bands will be massed under Bandmaster MOORE, 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.40 pm

(signed by HW Cooper)  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

- Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
2 Commanding Officer  
3 "A" Company  
4 "B" Company  
5 "C" Company  
6 "D" Company  
7 Specialists  
8 Communication  
9 MO  
10 QM  
11 TO  
12 RSM  
13 Office  
14 - 16 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Oct 23<sup>rd</sup> 1917

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 130

Ref Maps        LENS 11 1/100,000  
                    Hazebrouck Sheet 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, less "B" Company, Cooker and LG Wagon, will entrain at LIGNY ST FLOCHEL at 12.40 pm on the 24<sup>th</sup> inst, and detrain at GODEWAERSVELDE, proceeding to the CAESTRE Billeting area.
- 2 In accordance with above, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will parade on Battalion Parade Ground, at 6.30 am the 24<sup>th</sup> inst.

DRESS: Marching Order

- 3 Order of March will be as under:

Specialists  
Communication  
Battalion Headquarters  
Pipe Band  
"A" Company  
Brass Band  
"C" Company  
"D" Company  
QM Section  
Medical Section

- 4 Starting Point will be Battalion Parade Ground
- 5 Route will be: STARTING POINT – DIEVAL – CROSS ROADS 1,100 yards SW by S of the A in ANTICHEUL – ROAD JUNCTION 1,300 yards WEST of first L in LA THIEULOYE – MONCHY BRETON – BAILLEUL AUX CORNAILLES – LICHY ST FLOCHEL STATION.  
  
A halt will be made at 10.00 am for dinner, in vicinity of MONCHY BRETON – CHELLERS and MAGNICOURT EN COMTE – BAILLEUL AUX CORNAILLES CROSS ROADS.
- 6 Strictest March Discipline will be maintained en route to entraining point and form detraining point.
- 7 All billets will be left in a scrupulously clean condition
- 8 Marching Out States will be submitted to Orderly Room by 6.00 am the 24<sup>th</sup> inst
- 9 Officer's Baggage, cooking utensils etc, will be piled at Battalion headquarters by 6.00 am the 24<sup>th</sup> inst, and a guard of one batman per Company and one batman per Headquarters Section will be placed over same until loaded on transport.
- 10 Lewis Guns will be loaded under the supervision of the LGO by 6.30 pm the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst.  
  
Orderly Room equipment will be ready for transport by 6.30 pm the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst  
  
Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly marked and placed at Battalion Headquarters by 6.00 pm the 24<sup>th</sup> inst.  
  
A lorry will convey same to CAESTRE Billeting Area. A guard of one NCO and one man will proceed with lorry to this point.
- 11 March Casualties will be reported to Major HW Cooper at Dinner halt
- 12 Supply wagon of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Train will be loaded with one day's rations (for consumption 25<sup>th</sup> inst)
- 13 The OC "D" Company will detail a Picquet of one Officer twenty NCOs and men. This picquet will report to the Entraining Staff Officer immediately on arrival at STATION. This will be posted under the orders of the Entraining Staff Officer (Captain VN SMALLPIECE) to prevent men wandering away or leaving the train after entrainment. They will be on duty during the journey and until the Battalion has completed detrainment. At intermediate stations where the train stops the picquet will prevent men leaving the train, except to ease themselves.
- 14 Water Carts will be filled before entrainment.
- 15 Horses will be watered before proceeding to entrainment station. If possible troughs will be filled at LIGMY STATION by Lorry Tanks.  
  
Breast ropes for horses trucks are to be provided  
  
Ropes for lashing vehicles to flat trucks are provided by the Railway Company.  
  
Heel ropes will serve as breast ropes.
- 16 The Transport Section will proceed independently, arriving at entraining station at 11.10 am the 24<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 17 Lieut Robinson is detailed as Train Officer

- 18 Major HE Pense, MC, with two orderlies, will report to entraining Staff Officer (Captain VN SMALLPIECE) at 10.40 am the 24<sup>th</sup> inst. He will hand to this Officer and also to the RTO, a copy of Marching Out State.

(signed by HW Cooper)  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

- Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> CIB  
2 Commanding Officer  
3 "A" Company  
4 "B" Company  
5 "C" Company  
6 "D" Company  
7 Specialists  
8 Communication  
9 MO  
10 QM  
11 TO  
12 RSM  
13 Office  
14 - 16 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Oct 22<sup>nd</sup>, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO. 129

Ref Maps LENS 11. 1/100,000  
HAZEBROUCK Sheet 1/100,000

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will entrain at LIGNY ST FLOCHEL STATION on October 23<sup>rd</sup>/24<sup>th</sup>.

"B" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will act as Working Party for the Brigade Group at the entraining point.

- 2 In accordance with above "B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will parade on their private parade ground at 10.45 am the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst.

Dress: MARCHING ORDER. Water bottles will be filled.

Company Cooker, Company Transport and Lewis Gun Section Wagon will parade with Company.

Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, tagged and placed ready for transport by 10.00 am the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst.

The Transport Officer will arrange to collect the Officer's baggage of this Company, blankets and rations for the 24<sup>th</sup>, by 10.30 am the 23<sup>rd</sup>. This limber will march with "B" Company.

Current day's rations will be carried by the men.

Rations for the 25<sup>th</sup> will be delivered by the OC 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Train at LIGNY ST FLOCHEL STATION.



- 3 Marching Out States, in duplicate, will be submitted to Battalion Orderly Room by 10.00 am the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst.
- 4 ROUTE. The Company will march via LA COMTE – HOUVELIN –BAILLEUL AUX-CORMAILLES – LIGNY ST FLOCHEL STATION, arriving at entraining point at 4.30 pm the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst (16.30)  
  
Strict March Discipline will be maintained throughout this march, particular attention being paid to transport.
- 5 On arrival at entraining point Officer Commanding “B” Company will report to the RTO and Entraining Staff Officer (CAPTAIN VN SMALLPIECE) to each of whom he will hand a Marching In State.
- 6 Any instructions given by the RTO with regard to entraining or detraining will be obeyed by all ranks.
- 7 Sheds will be available for billets at LIGNY ST FLOCHEL STATION.
- 8 The Company will entrain at 10.00 pm (22.10) Oct 24<sup>th</sup>, on Train No 19. The entraining serial number will be C/214.A.
- 9 Horses will be watered before entrainment and water bottles will be filled. Breast ropes for horse trucks are to be provided.  
  
Ropes for lashing vehicles to trucks are provided by Railway Coy.  
  
Heel ropes will serve as breast ropes.
- 10 The Company will detrain at GODEWAERSVELDE and OC Company will report to the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Detraining Officer (Captain JH CHIPMAN)
- 11 The Officer Commanding Company will detail a Picquet of one Sergeant, two Corporals and eight men. This picquet will report to the Entraining Staff Officer immediately on arrival of the Company at STATION. They will be on duty during he journey, and until Unit had completed its detraining. The picquet will be posted under instructions of the Entraining Staff Officer to prevent men wandering away or leaving the train after entrainment. At intermediate Stations where the strain stops, the picquet will be used to prevent men leaving the train, except to ease themselves.
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by HW Cooper)  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 OC “B” Company  
 2 Quartermaster  
 3 Transport Officer  
 4 4<sup>th</sup> CIB )  
 5 Commanding Officer ) For information  
 6 File  
 7 - 9 War Diary

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

CAESTRE	1/11/17	<p>A reconnoitering party of 4 officers and 35 ORs proceeded to the 72<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Battalion, by bus and received information regarding the relief of that Unit by the 21<sup>st</sup> Battn on the following night.</p> <p>Transport moved to POTIJZE as per Operation Order 131</p>
	2/11/17 to 5/11/17	<p>The Battalion proceeded to the POTIJZE area East of Ypres in accordance with Operation Order 132, entraining at CAESTRE STATION at 12.45 pm. It was dark when the Battalion arrived at POTIJZE, and after a hot meal had been served, they proceeded forward to relieve the 72<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Bn in the front line SW of PASSCHENDAELE as per Operation order 132A.</p> <p>Relief completed at 2.15 am the 3<sup>rd</sup> inst</p> <p>Balance of summary up to the 5<sup>th</sup> is attached in appendix marked "D"</p>
ERIE CAMP	6/11/17 to 7/11/17	<p>The Battalion remained in Camp resting and being re-equipped.</p>
	8/11/17	<p>The Battalion moved from ERIE CAMP at 7.50 am with 529 all ranks, entrained at BRANDHOEK, detrained at YPRES, marched to POTIJZE arriving there at about 10.30 am. A hot meal was served, and the Battalion marched off at 1.30 am (<i>should probably read "pm"</i>) for area D16, arriving there at about 5.30 pm with only 1 casualty. Our instructions were to use J track. This we did and found it to be absolutely impossible, and after 1 ½ hours hard marching through shell holes, again reached the road through ZONNEBEME and to our area.</p> <p>On coming into our area, the men &amp; officers dug themselves in, making funk holes and such protection against the weather as was possible.</p> <p>The "Pill boxes" suggested as Battalion Headquarters were entirely away from the area occupied, and through the kindness of Lt Col Moore of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Battalion Australians, Headquarters were established in a pill box, almost at SEINE DUMP.</p> <p>During the march in our artillery put on a "Show" at 3.05 pm and the enemy answered by shelling back areas, but happily they Battalion came through as above.</p>
PASSCHENDAELE	8/11/17 to 12/11/17	<p>The Battalion took over the ground held by the 26<sup>th</sup> Battalion but not at all in the nature of a relief.</p> <p>The Commanding Officer visited all companies at 8.00 am on the morning of the 9<sup>th</sup> and found all correct. The trench strength approximately 21 Officers and 286 other ranks.</p> <p>This day the Battalion supplied a working party for the Brigade of 200 ORs and 4 Officers and 8 NCOs. They suffered heavy casualties.</p> <p>1 Officer wounded and 61 ORs (some of the other ranks turned up later).</p> <p>During the whole tour the Enemy Aircraft was very active over our area.</p>

		<p>The Battalion being in support were ordered to reinforce the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Battalions in the front line. One Company was sent to each Battalion under Major Miller &amp; Lieut More respectively. Our area was heavily shelled during the tour and many casualties resulted.</p> <p>The Battalion was relieved on the afternoon of the 12<sup>th</sup> by the 45<sup>th</sup> Battalion commanded by Lieut Col Harbottle.</p>
POTIJZE	13/11/17	<p>The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion left POTIJZE AREA and marched to YPRES STATION for entraining for BRANDHOEK, arriving at BRANDHOEK at 1.30 pm. Weather clear.</p> <p>Operation Order #139</p>
BRANDHOEK	14/11/17	<p>The Battalion rested and cleaned up after the strenuous trip.</p> <p>Weather misty with showers.</p> <p>The Transport moved to HAVERSKERGUE at 8.00 am</p>
	15/11/17	<p>The Battalion moved to HAVERSKERGUE by bus, via LA CLYTTE – BAILUEL Road arriving at HAVERSKERGUE 2.30 pm.</p> <p>See Operation Order 140</p>
	16/11/17	<p>The Battalion moved to MARLES – LES MINES by bus at 10.00 am and arriving there at 1.00 am.</p> <p>See Operation Order 141</p>
MARLES – LES MINES	17/11/17	<p>The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved from MARLES – LES MINES to Billets in CAMBLAIN L'ABBE by bus via Hersin Coupigny, arriving there at 2.30 pm.</p> <p>Weather fine</p> <p>Operation Order #142</p>
CAMBLAIN L'ABBE	18/11/17	<p>The Battalion spent the day in re-equipping and re-organizing of Companies and Sections.</p>
	18/11/17 to 20/11/17	<p>The Battalion bathed and received a clean change of clothes.</p> <p>The usual syllabus of training was carried out viz Physical Drill, BJ, and Respirator drill.</p> <p>75 (<i>could read 95</i>) Reinforcements were received.</p>
T.23.d.8.4	21/11/17	<p>The Battalion paraded on Battalion Parade Grounds CAMBLAIN L'ABBE at 8.30 am under the command of Lieutenant Col CW Jones, DSO, and marched to the outskirts of the village on the CAMBLAIN L'ABBE – MONT ST ELOY ROAD, where they embossed at 9.30 am and were conveyed to LES TILLEULS CORNER. From this point the Battalion marched to the front line, relieving the 13<sup>th</sup> York &amp; Lancs Regiment, 94<sup>th</sup> Inf Bde, under the command of Major Currin, DSO, in the ACHEVILLE SECTION at 3.45 pm. Battalion Headquarters being located in WINNIPEG ROAD T.23.d.8.4. The strength of the Battalion being 19 officers and 432 ORs. The Commanding Officer visited all Company Headquarters and all posts during the evening. The line was quiet, and the men</p>

SUPPORT LINE  VANCOUVER ROAD		<p>Soon settled down to conditions of Trench Warfare. The weather was misty and a light rain fell all day. Patrols were out continuously all night, keeping in touch with the 31<sup>st</sup> Cdn Inf Bn on our left flank and the 18<sup>th</sup> Durham Light Infantry, 93<sup>rd</sup> Inf Bde on our right flank. These patrols reporting situation as quiet. There were no casualties.</p>
	22/11/17	<p>Operation Order #143</p> <p>The Commanding Officer made a tour of the front line in the early morning, and found the situation quiet and satisfactory. The men spent the day in improving their dug outs and trenches. A patrol of 1 officer and 3 ORs on reconnaissance left our front line 7.00 pm and on returning reported not having come into contact with any of the enemy.</p> <p>Casualties 1 OR slightly wounded.</p> <p>Weather continued misty all day.</p>
	23/11/17	<p>Brigade Major Corrigan (?) and Major Walker, ??03 Division called.</p> <p>The morning was very quiet. The Acting Brigadier, Lieut Col Bell, visited the front line with the Commanding Officer about 10.30 am. During the afternoon the weather cleared up and there was considerable aeroplane activity. The enemy shelled in the vicinity of Bn HQ between the hours of 3.00 &amp; 4.00 pm. A reconnaissance patrol covered our right company frontage for several hours during the night, had nothing to report. A Battle patrol of 12 ORs in charge of Lieut AW May was out all night endeavoring to locate the enemy, without success. The night was clear and moonlit.</p>
	24/11/17	<p>Nothing of interest to report during the day. A battle patrol again went out, during the night under Lieut AW May and noticed several of the enemy, apparently on patrol. After pursuing the enemy for about 100 yards, no contact could be made, owing to them being out of bombing distance.</p> <p>Weather clear, no casualties.</p>
	25/11/17	<p>The Battalion was relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn under Lt Col Rorke, Officer Commanding at 12.05 pm and proceeded to the Support trenches, with Battalion Headquarters situated on VANCOUVER ROAD. T.28.A.4.1. Battalion supplied two scouts to the OC 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn for the purpose of explaining the duties of our right and left flank patrols and area covered. The day was misty and cold, and about 1.30 pm a snowstorm took place, lasting for half an hour. This was the first snowstorm of the season. The balance of the day was spent on the men getting settled.</p> <p>Situation quiet. No casualties.</p>
	26/11/17	<p>Operation Order # 144</p> <p>The Battalion spent the day in improving trenches and dug-outs, also cleaning up VANCOUVER ROAD in the vicinity of Battalion Headquarters (laying trench mats etc). Working parties were supplied to Cdn Engineers (4<sup>th</sup> Field Coy) for completion of new Battn Headquarters Orderly Room, and Brigade Bombing store. Major General H Burstall CB, Divisional Commander and Major Walker GSO 3, visited the OC during the morning.</p>

SUBURBAN CAMP	27/11/17	<p>The day passed quietly. Parties were supplied to the Cdn Engineers to continue the work on new Battn Headquarters in Hudson C.T. in close proximity of VANCOUVER ROAD.</p> <p>Weather clear. Companies carried on improving trenches etc.</p>
	28/11/17	<p>During the morning, weather was misty and slight rainfall. Brig Gen R Rennie CMG, visited the lines about 1.30 pm. Battalion supplied usual working parties to CEs and in addition, attached 2 Officers and 54 ORs to the Cdn Engineers temporarily.</p> <p>Enemy shelled in vicinity of Bn HQ during the afternoon.</p> <p>Casualties 1 OR wounded.</p>
	29/11/17	<p>The Battalion was relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn in the morning and proceeded to embus at LES TELLEULS CORNER for Brigade Reserve at SUBURBAN CAMP, VILLERS-AU-BOIS. Relief was completed at 11.30 am, and Battalion arrived at SUBURBAN CAMP at 3.30 pm.</p> <p>Weather clear. Casualties nil</p> <p>Operation Order #145</p>
	30/11/17	<p>The day was spent in cleaning up and bathing.</p> <p>Weather misty, slight rainfall.</p>

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Nov 1<sup>st</sup>. 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 131

Ref Maps Sheets 27 and 28 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Transport will move as per attached March Table to the POTIJZE Area, tomorrow the 2<sup>nd</sup> inst.
- 2 Head of Column will reach Starting Point at 6.10 am
- 3 Strict March Discipline will be maintained throughout this march
- 4 In accordance with para 1 above, Breakfast will be served at 4.30 am, Kits, surplus baggage, mess boxes of all officers billeted in the Tented Area will be piled outside QM Stores not later than 5.00 am the 2<sup>nd</sup> inst.

Officer's kits and mess boxes of Headquarters and "B" Company will be piled at Battalion Headquarters at 5.20 am the 2<sup>nd</sup> inst. The Quartermaster will ensure that all stores are loaded by 5.30 am.

The Medical Cart will be loaded, and report to Transport Officer at 5.30 am.

Officers Commanding Companies will detail a sufficient number of batmen to act as loading party.

All Water Bottles will be filled by 5.00 am. One Water Cart will be at Battalion Headquarters at 4.30 am.

5 Marching Out State will be submitted by Transport Officer to Battalion Orderly Room by 5.30 am.

6 Two Cooks per Company will accompany Cookers, and will have hot meal ready for the Battalion on its arrival in the POTIJZE Area.

7 Lewis Gun Officer will ensure that all Lewis Guns are loaded by 4.30 am.

(signed by HW Cooper)  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Company
- 3 "B" Company
- 4 "C" Company
- 5 "D" Company
- 6 Communication
- 7 Specialists
- 8 MO
- 9 QM
- 10 TO
- 11 RSM
- 12 Office
- 13-15 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No .....  
Nov 2<sup>nd</sup>. 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 132

Ref Sheet 27 & 28 1/40,000

1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to a new area EAST of YPRES this date

2 The Battalion less Transport will commence entraining at CAESTRE at 12.45 pm

3 The Battalion will parade on the Battalion Parade Ground at 11.30 am this date.

Dress: - Heavy Marching Order

Both Bands will be in attendance

Markers report to the RSM at 11.30 am

- 4 All lines to be left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 5 Lieut Sawell will act as Train Officer
- 6 Marching Out States to be rendered in accordance with instructions already issued.

(signed by HW Cooper)  
 Major for  
 Major & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 10.20 am

- No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Company
- 3 "B" Company
- 4 "C" Company
- 5 "D" Company
- 6 Specialists
- 7 Communication
- 8 MO
- 9 QM
- 10 RSM
- 11 Pipe Band
- 12 Brass Band
- 13 Office
- 14-16 War Diary

SECRET  
 Copy No .....  
 Nov 2<sup>nd</sup> 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 132 A

Ref Map

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, Less "B" Company, will relieve the 72<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion, in Left Section, 4<sup>th</sup> Divisional Front, tonight Nov 2/3<sup>rd</sup>.

- 2 When relief is complete dispositions will be as follows:-

Battalion Headquarters. HAMBURG, approx: D.16.b.70.80  
 Front line. "A" Coy (left) relieving "A" & "B" Coys 72<sup>nd</sup> Bn  
 "D" Coy (right) relieving "C" Coy 72<sup>nd</sup> Bn  
 "C" Coy Support relieving "D" Coy 72<sup>nd</sup> Bn

- 3 "B" Company will remain at POTIJZE, with Transport and QM Sections
- 4 Relief complete will be sent by runner to Battalion Headquarters
- 5 Battalion will proceed from POTIJZE CORNER at 6.30 pm in following order:- "A", "D", "C", "HdQrs", Communication Section.

Companies will be equipped with extra SAA (*transcriber's note: Small Arms Ammunition*), Bombs etc.

- 6 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will be at DUMP, POTIJZE
- 7 Guides from the 72<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Bn, (4 per Coy, and 4 for HD Qrs, Comm and Spec) will meet Companies and Sections at Junction of H and K TRACKS at D.24.b.95.45.
- 8 All Maps, Photos and Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts in duplicate forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 8.00 am 3<sup>rd</sup> inst. All disposition maps and states to be in at same hour.
- 9 Rations for 3<sup>rd</sup> will be carried in on the men. Rations will be delivered at SEINE DUMP, D.16.d.20.50.
- 10 Each man will carry in two full water bottles.

(Sgd) HW Cooper  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 5.30 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 72<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Battalion
- 3 "A" Coy
- 4 "B" Coy
- 5 "C" Coy
- 6 "D" Coy
- 7 Specialists
- 8 Communication
- 9 MO
- 10 RSM
- 11 TO
- 12 QM
- 13 Office
- 14-16 War Diary

#### APPENDIX "D"

Early on the morning of November 3<sup>rd</sup> after the Battalion had relieved the 72<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion in front of Passchendaele, the enemy made a determined attack and entered our trenches NE of CREST FARM, but was quickly ejected.

During the relief, and until the enemy opened his barrage at about 4.45 am, the night had passed comparatively quiet. While proceeding with the relief we suffered twelve casualties.

At 5.10 am enemy "Storm Troops" attacked the front of our right Company, and his leading wave forced our men to withdraw fifty yards. We quickly re-organized and counter-attacked, and our line was re-established.

At 5.40 am the enemy again attacked, but was beaten back by Lewis Gun and rifle fire. Eight prisoners were captured, five of whom were wounded.

Our casualties during the 48 hours in the line were 2 Officers killed, 1 Officer died of wounds, 2 Officers wounded, 41 Other ranks killed and 89 other ranks wounded.



Shortly after our line had been re-established, two Platoons from our Support Company replaced casualties in the front line and close support. One light German machine gun which was captured, was used against aeroplanes until its supply of ammunition was exhausted.

The Battalion Headquarters was located at HAMBURG in a pillbox. From this point forward to the front line it was most difficult to maintain communication. Runners were the only means of transmitting messages.

During the night of November 3-4<sup>th</sup>, in conjunction with the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion on our right, a line of out-posts was established about 75 to 120 yards in advance of our front line.

The night of Nov 4-5<sup>th</sup>, during which we were relieved by the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, another out-post was established. No casualties were sustained in establishing same.

Upon completion of relief, the 21<sup>st</sup> Can Battalion proceeded to POTJZE AREA, leaving there and entraining for BRANDHOEK at 11.20 am. Upon arrival at BRANDHOEK, the Battalion detrained and marched off to ERIE CAMP.

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Nov 3<sup>rd</sup> 1917

#### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 133

Ref Map Message Map PASSCHENDAELE

- 1 In conjunction with 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion on Right, the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion will establish an Outpost line as per attached sketch (*not in diary*) approx D.6.c.60.50 to D.6.b.10.00, the road being inclusive to the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion on the night Nov 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup>.
- 2 Zero hour will be 2.30 am
- 3 Lieut NJ MacCrimmon will be in charge of the operations, and will make the necessary arrangements with OC's Coy's concerned.
- 4 At Zero hour patrols will move simultaneously to the allotted objectives, (previously arranged by Lieut MacCrimmon) and will drive in any hostile patrols and posts encountered. The posts will be consolidated as necessary to hole.
- 5 If the fighting for outpost line becomes severe, patrols will not become too involved in order to establish a new outpost line
- 6 The operation will be carried out without the assistance of artillery or barrage MG fire, but the Artillery and MGs will be in readiness to open their barrage lines if called upon.
- 7 Personnel of posts will be detailed as under:

Left by "A" Coy	10 ORs
Centre by "C" Coy	1 Officer and 10 ORs, 1 Lewis Gun
Right by "D" Coy	10 ORs

Personnel of these posts will be equipped with the necessary extra bombs and SAA (*small arms ammunition*)

<p>8</p> <p>9</p> <p>Copy No 1</p> <p>2</p> <p>3</p> <p>4</p> <p>5</p> <p>6-8</p>	<p>OCs Coys in front line and close support will warn all ranks of this operation and ensure that our outposts are not fired on. They will "Stand to" from 2.15 am night Nov 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup>, until the situation is again normal.</p> <p>ACKNOWLEDGE</p> <p style="text-align: right;">(Sgd) HE PENSE Major for Lieut Col Cmdg 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion</p> <p>Issued by Runner at 9.10 pm</p> <p>Lieut MacCrimmon</p> <p>"A" Coy</p> <p>"C" Coy</p> <p>"D" Coy</p> <p>Office</p> <p>War Diary</p>
	<p style="text-align: right;">SECRET Copy No.... Nov 4<sup>th</sup>, 1917</p> <p style="text-align: center;">21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 134</p> <p>Ref Map Message Map Passchendaele</p> <p>1 At a time to be decided upon by the Officer in charge of operation, the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn bn will push forward its post at D.12.95.95 to D.6.d.05.05 (capturing the suspected enemy post at the latter point – D.6.d.05.05) and will also establish a new post about D.6.90.20 – as soon as possible after dark on the Night of Nov 4<sup>th</sup>-5<sup>th</sup>.</p> <p>2 Lieut NJ MacCrimmon will be in charge of the operation, and will make the necessary arrangements with OC "C" Coy re the personnel for the new post as under:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">1. Post to be pushed forward from D.12.a.95.95 to D.6.d.05.05 - 1 Officer, 10 ORs, 1 LG</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">2. New post to be established at D.y.0.90.20 - 10 ORs</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The personnel of these posts will be equipped with the necessary extra bombs and SAA</p> <p>3 The operation will be carried out without the assistance of Artillery or barrage MG fire and new positions will be consolidated.</p> <p>4 Ocs Coys in front line will warn all ranks of this operation also OC Right Company will warn left company of HAMLET to ensure that the outposts are not fired upon and that there is no conflict between our outposts and those of HAMLET situated at D.12.6.95.95 and D.12.6.30.70</p> <p>5 As soon as possible after the objectives have been gained, Lieut MacCrimmon will forward report to Bn HQ.</p>

(SIGNED) HE PENSE  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn

By runner at 3.05 pm

- Copy 1 Lt MacCrimmon
- 2 OC Hamlet
- 3 A Coy
- 4 D Coy
- 5 Office
- 6-8 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Nov 4<sup>th</sup>, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 135

Ref: Map Sheet 28. 1/40,000

- 1 The Battalion will be relieved on night of Nov 4<sup>th</sup>/5<sup>th</sup> by the 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion (less two Coys).
- 2 On Relief, the Battalion will proceed to POTIJZE
- 3 The relief will be carried out and guides will meet Units of 29<sup>th</sup> Battalion as previously detailed in out T.1261 of this date.
- 4 The Battalion will go out by K and H Tracks.
- 5 All maps, photos etc to be turned over on relief and triplicate receipts for these and stores turned over will be sent to Battalion Headquarters by 9.00 am 5<sup>th</sup> inst.  
  
On relief being completed, each Unit will notify advanced Battalion Headquarters by Runner.
- 6 On arrival at Rest Area (POTIJZE) each Unit will notify Battalion Headquarters of its arrival and state number of March Casualties in any.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(Sgd) HW COOPER  
Major  
HR

By runner at 5.15 pm

- No 1 "A" Coy
- 2 "B" Coy
- 3 "C" Coy
- 4 "D" Coy
- 5 Lieut Robinson
- 6 RSM
- 7 TO & QM
- 8 Office
- 9-10 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Nov 4<sup>th</sup>, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 136

Ref Map 28 NW 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will move to the BRANDHOEK area on the 5<sup>th</sup> inst, and will be billeted in ERIE Camp
- 2 The Battalion will entrain at YPRES STATION at 10.45 am
- 3 Companies and Sections will parade and [undecipherable] at 8.45 am and will move to YPRES STATION in single file in the following order:  
A Coy, B Coy (less evacuation & burial party), C Coy, D Coy and Details.
- 4 Lieut Sawell is detailed to report with one NCO and 10 Other Ranks to RTO YPRES STATION at 9.30 am for entraining duties.
- 5 Capt Hora is detailed as billeting Officer and each CQM Sgt will report to him at 6.00 am ready to proceed to report to Staff Captain BRANDHOEK STATION at 9.00 am.
- 6 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer's baggage etc at 8.00 am
- 7 The Transport will be Brigaded under the Brigade Transport Officer, and will pass starting point gates in front of Rear Bde Hd Qrs on the MENIN-UYPRES ROAD at 9.15 am.
- 8 Arrangements for evacuation and burial parties as previously arranged.
- 9 Breakfast will be served at 7.00 am
- 10 The Lewis Gun Officer will arrange to have all Lewis Guns packed before 8.00 am

Captain  
Assistant Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bttn

Issued by Orderly at 11.20 pm

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Nov 7<sup>th</sup>, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 137

Ref Map: Sheet 28. 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will proceed to the forward area tomorrow the 8<sup>th</sup> inst.  
  
The Battalion, less Transport Section, will arrive at BRANDHOEK STATION at 7.30 am, and entrain for YPRES.

- 2 The Battalion will parade on the Battalion Parade Ground at 6.30 am.  
Dress: Heavy Marching Order.  
Markers report to RSM at 6.20 am.  
The Transport will move independently  
Divisional Train wagons will be returned as soon as the Battalion arrives at POTIJZE
- 3 On detraining at YPRES the Battalion will proceed to POTJIZE and occupy the area where it camped on the night Nov 4<sup>th</sup>/5<sup>th</sup>.
- 4 Rations for consumption on the 9<sup>th</sup> inst and one extra day's Hard Ration will be delivered at POTJIZE tomorrow morning. They will be carried in on the men.
- 5 Dress from POTIJZE to the forward area will be Fighting Order with greatcoats. Each man except Lewis Gunners, Signallers and Rifle Grenadiers will carry in 100 extra rounds SAA, also Ground Flares, Bombs and Rifle Grenades as laid down.  
These will be delivered at POTIJZE
- 6 Breakfast will be served tomorrow at 5.15 am  
Hot Meal will be served at POTJIZE
- 7 All Lewis Guns will be loaded, under the supervision of the LGO by 6.00 am tomorrow. Officer's Kits, mess boxes and surplus baggage will be piled at Pipe Band Hut by 6.15 am tomorrow.
- 8 Sick Parade will be held tomorrow at 5.30 am
- 9 All lines and huts will be left in a clean and sanitary condition and will be inspected by Major HE Pense, MC, at 6.15 am
- 10 The Officer Commanding "C" Company will detail one Officer and 10 ORs to report to Captain JH Chipman at BRANDHOEK STATION, at 7.00 am tomorrow for entraining duties.
- 11 On relief, Companies and Sections will forward receipts in triplicate, to Battalion Headquarters of Trench Stores taken over.
- 12 Completion of relief to be reported to Battalion Headquarters by runner, who will be detained at Bn HdQrs for duty.

Issued by Runner at 10.30 pm

(Sgd) HW COOPER  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

<p>Copy No 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14-16</p>	<p>Commanding Officer 2<sup>nd</sup> in Command "A" Coy "B" Coy "C" Coy "D" Coy Communication Specialists MO TO QM RSM Office War Diary</p>
	<p style="text-align: right;">SECRET Copy No..... Nov 12<sup>th</sup>, 1917</p> <p style="text-align: center;">21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 138</p> <p>1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion will be relieved by the 75<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion on the afternoon 12<sup>th</sup> Nov</p> <p>2 Two guides from "A" Company and two guides from "B" Coy and six scouts will report to the Intelligence Officer at Battalion Headquarters at 12.15 to act as guides. The Intelligence Officer and guides will meet the 75<sup>th</sup> Battalion at JUNCTION of H and K TRACKS at 1.45 pm</p> <p>3 On relief Battalion will proceed to POTIJZE via MULE TRACK and YPRES-ZONNEBEKE ROAD. Not more than 10 ORs will march in a party 25 yards between parties.</p> <p>4 All maps and trench stores will be handed over and triplicate receipts sent to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 pm 12<sup>th</sup> inst</p> <p>5 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by runner and OCs Coys and Sections will report the arrival of their command to the Asst/Adjutant at POTIJZE.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">(Sgd) HW Cooper Major for Major &amp; Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion</p>
	<p style="text-align: right;">SECRET Copy No..... Nov. 12<sup>th</sup>, 1917</p> <p style="text-align: center;">21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 139</p> <p>REF MAP 28 N.W. 1/20,000</p> <p>1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to the BRANDHOEK AREA on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst and will be billeted in ERIE CAMP</p> <p>2 The Battalion will entrain at YPRES STATION at 10.30 am</p> <p>3 Companies and Sections will parade independently at 8.45 am, and will proceed to YPRES STATION, in single file, in the following order: Headquarters, "A" Coy, "B" Coy, "C" Coy, and "D" Coy and Details.</p>

- 4 Lieut Sawell is detailed as entraining Officer, and will report to the RTO with 1 NCO and 10 ORs for entraining duties
- 5 All Officer's Baggage, Cooking Utensils etc will be placed near the QM Stores by 7.30 am
- 6 The Transport will be Brigaded under the Brigade Officer, and will pass the starting point (Rear Brigade Headquarters) at 8.00 am and will be clear of YPRES STATION by 8.45 am
- 7 Breakfast will be served tomorrow at 6.30 am
- 8 The LGO will arrange to have all Lewis Guns packed by 7.30 am
- 9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(Sgd) AP CHRISTMAS  
 Captain & Asst/Adjt  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 10.35 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Coy
- 3 "B" Coy
- 4 "C" Coy
- 5 "D" Coy
- 6 Communication
- 7 Specialists
- 8 RSM
- 9 MO
- 10 TO
- 11 QM
- 12 Office
- 13-15 War Diary

SECRET  
 Copy No.....  
 Nov 14<sup>th</sup> 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 140

Ref Belgium 28. NW 1/20.000  
 Hazebrouck 5.a 1/100.000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion less Transport will move from the BRANDHOEK Area by bus, tomorrow the 15<sup>th</sup> inst to HAVERSKERQUE
- 2 The Battalion will parade at 8.30 am on the Battalion Parade Ground  
 DRESS: Heavy Marching Order  
  
 Markers will report to RSM at 8.20 am  
  
 The Battalion will pass CROSS ROADS at H.7.c.4.5 by 9.40 am

- 3 Officer's kits and surplus baggage will be piled at QM Stores by 7.30 am and one batman per Company and one batman per Headquarters will remain in charge and act as loading party.
- 4 Rations for consumption 16<sup>th</sup> inst will be delivered to new billets on arrival of the Battalion
- 5 All huts and lines will be left in a clean and sanitary condition and will be inspected by CAPTAIN AP CHRISTMAS, who will obtain a clearance certificate from the Area Commandant, before the Battalion moves off.
- 6 LIEUT ES SAWELL will act as embussing Officer
- 7 No baggage other than men's kits and dixies will be carried on busses.

(signed by HW Cooper)  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at.....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Coy
- 3 "B" Coy
- 4 "C" Coy
- 5 "D" Coy
- 6 Captain Christmas
- 7 Communication
- 8 Specialists
- 9 MO
- 10 QM
- 11 RSM
- 12 Band
- 13 Pipe Band
- 14 Office
- 15-17 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Nov 15<sup>th</sup>, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO. 141

Ref Map HAZEBROUCK 5 a 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to MARLES LEZ MINES on the 16<sup>th</sup> inst  
The Battalion will parade on MAIN ROAD to front of Battalion Headquarters at 9.15 am  
Markers report to the RSM at 9.00 am  
Dress: Heavy Marching Order, Great coats and Service Caps will be worn.
- 2 Marching Out States will be submitted to Bn Orderly Room by 8.00 am tomorrow the 16<sup>th</sup> inst
- 3 All lines and Billets are to be left in a clean and sanitary condition. Capt Christmas will inspect the line before the Bn moves off and obtain clearance.



- 4 Advance Party for billeting will consist of:  
Lieut Robinson.  
One NCO per Company, and one NCO for Transport Section and L.Cpl Davey for Headquarters.  
These NCOs will report to Lieut Robinson at BnHdQrs at 6.00 am tomorrow the 16<sup>th</sup> inst and party will be at ST VENANT CHURCH at 7.00 am in readiness to proceed by bus.  
On arrival at MARLES LEZ MINES arrangements will be made with the Town Major for billets, and confirmed by Staff Captain "Q", who will arrive at 12.00 noon.
- 5 Transport will move in accordance with attached Table and 4<sup>th</sup> CIB Administrative Instructions
- 6 Guides from billeting party will meet Transport on its arrival at MARLES LEZ MINES
- 7 Officer's Kits and mess utensils will be loaded at Bn Hd Qrs by 6.00 am the 16<sup>th</sup> inst, on Battalion Transport.  
Ocs Companies and Sections are responsible for the detailing of loading parties for their own baggage.
- 8 Breakfast will be served tomorrow at 5.30 am
- 9 Ration Dump: LE BEUVRIERE

(sgd) HW Cooper  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Coy
  - 3 "B" Coy
  - 4 "C" Coy
  - 5 "D" Coy
  - 6 Spec
  - 7 Communication
  - 8 MO
  - 9 QM
  - 10 TO
  - 11 RSM
  - 12 Pipe Band
  - 13 Brass Band
  - 14 Office
  - 15 Capt Christmas
  - 16-18 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 142

Ref Map HAZEBROUCK 5a 1.100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to billets in CAMBLAIN L'ABBE tomorrow the 17<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 The Battalion will parade in column of route at 8.30 am with head of column resting at "T" ROADS 200 yards EAST of Battalion Headquarters Mess  
Dress: Heavy Marching Order. Greatcoats and Service Cap will be worn
- 3 Marching out states will be submitted to Orderly Room by 7.00 am the 17<sup>th</sup> inst
- 4 Advance parties for billeting consisting of:  
Lieut Robinson  
One NCO per Company and L/Cpl Davey for Headquarters will report to Lieut Robinson at Battalion Headquarters at 7.00 am and will proceed to Town Major's Office LAPUGNOY, arriving there at 8.00 am and proceeding from thence by bus.  
Billets will be allotted in conjunction with the Town Major of CAMBLAIN L'ABBE and will be confirmed by the Staff Captain 4<sup>th</sup> CIB who will arrive at Town Major's Office at 1.00 pm
- 5 Breakfast will be served tomorrow at 6.00 am
- 6 Transport will move independently in accordance with attached March Table
- 7 Transport Officer will arrange for the collection of Officer's baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room equipment, which will be ready for transport by 6.30 am and all of which will be carried by the Battalion Transport.
- 8 Ration Dump – VILLERS AU BOIS
- 9 All billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition. The Transport Officer will arrange for all manure etc to be cleared to the Town Major's Manure Dump, before leaving, and Captain Christmas will inspect all billets and obtain the necessary clearance from the Town Major

Lieut Sawell will act as embussing officer

(Sgd) HW Cooper  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer  
2 "A" Coy  
3 "B" Coy  
4 "C" Coy  
5 "D" Coy  
6 Communication  
7 Specialists  
8 MO  
9 QM  
10 TO  
11 Capt Christmas  
12 Lieut Sawell  
13 RSM

- 14 Pipe Major  
15 Bandmaster  
16 Office  
17 –19 War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 143

Ref Maps

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the York and Lancaster Battalion in the front line, ACHEVILLE SECTION, tomorrow the 21<sup>st</sup> inst. On completion of relief units will be situated as follows:  

“D” Company – Right	“A” Company – Left
“B” Company – Support	“C” Company – Reserve

Battalion Headquarters will be situated at T.23.d.8.4 on WINNIPEG ROAD
- 2 The Battalion, less QM Stores and Transport Section will parade at 7.45 am tomorrow the 21<sup>st</sup> inst on Battalion Parade Ground.  
Dress: Heavy Marching Order. Both Bands will be in attendance.  
The Battalion will embuss on the CAMBLAIN L'ABBE – MONT ST ELOY ROAD at W.29.a.9.0 at 8.20 am
- 3 Guides from the 13<sup>th</sup> Y & L Battalion will meet the Battalion at LES TILLEULE CORNER at 10.00 am, at the rate of two for Bn HQ and two per Company
- 4 On proceeding to the forward area, Units will move in the following order:  
“D” Coy, “A” Coy, “B” Coy, Bn HQ, Communication, Specialists and “C” Company.
- 5 The following instructions regarding movement will be observed:  
WEST of VIMY RIDGE....500 yds between Companies  
EAST of VIMY RIDGE.....100 yds between Platoons  
ACROSS of VIMY RIDGE...100 yds between Platoons (if visibility is bad)  
No movement over ridge in daylight except by trenches
- 6 Transport and QM Stores will move to new lines at A.8.c.4.6 independently
- 7 Relief complete will be reported to Bn HQ by runner, giving time of relief only.
- 8 An advance party consisting of Lieut Mempes for Bn HQ, 1 Officer and 1 NCO for each “A”, “B”, and “D” Companies, 1 Sergt for “C” Company and 1 OR for Communication Section will report to Lieut Mempes at Bn HQ at 6.30 am tomorrow and proceed to the Town Major’s Office, CAMBLAIN L'ABBE, reporting there at 6.50 am and will proceed from thence by bus to LES TILLEULE CORNER.  
Receipts will be given by this advance party for all water cans, stores, defence schemes etc, copies of which will be forwarded in duplicate, together with detailed dispositions of units, to Bn HQ by 6.00 am the 22<sup>nd</sup> inst. Guides for this party will be at LES TILLEULE CORNER at 8.30 am

(Sgd) HW Cooper  
Major for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion

	Issued by Orderly at .....	
Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	
2	13 <sup>th</sup> Y & L Battalion	
3	"A" Company	
4	"B" Company	
5	"C" Company	11 TO
6	"D" Company	12 RSM
7	Communication	13 Pipe Band
8	Specialists	14 Brass Band
9	MO	15 Office
10	TO	16 – 18 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Nov 24<sup>th</sup>, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 144

Ref Map MARCEUIL 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion in the ACHEVILLE SECTION, front line, on the morning of Nov 25<sup>th</sup> inst, and will proceed to Brigade Support. Units will relieve corresponding units, on completion of relief, units will proceed to occupy the Support Trenches, vacated by 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Upon relief, Battalion Headquarters will be at VANCOUVER ROAD T.28.a.4.1
- 2 Advance parties of 1 NCO per Company, and 1 OR from Hdqrs Section, will report to Lieut Mempes, at Battalion Headquarters, at 7.00 am 25<sup>th</sup> inst, and will proceed to take over the new position.
- 3 2 ORs per Company, 1 OR for Hdqrs Section, and 1 OR for Hd Qrs will report to 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion, by 8.30 am 25<sup>th</sup> inst, to guide respective units into their positions.
- 4 Officer's Baggage, and Cooking Utensils, will be moved independently to their respective Headquarters
- 5 All arrangements and Code Words, for visiting patrols must be handed over.
- 6 Relief complete will be forwarded to Battalion headquarters by runner, using the word "CRUMP"
- 7 All Trench Stores, Defence Schemes, will be handed over to incoming unit, and receipts in duplicate taken for same, and to be in Battalion Headquarters by 9.00 am 26<sup>th</sup> inst
- 8 ACKNOWLEDGE

(Signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

<p>Copy No 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13-15</p>	<p>Commanding Officer 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion "A" Company "B" Company "C" Company "D" Company Specialists Communication MO RSM TO &amp; QM Office War Diary</p>
	<p style="text-align: right;">SECRET Copy No..... Nov 28<sup>th</sup> 1917</p> <p style="text-align: center;">21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 145</p> <p>Ref Map MARCEUIL 1/20,000</p> <p>1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, will be relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion, in the Support Line, ACHEVILLE SECTION, on the morning of Nov 29<sup>th</sup>, 1917. On completion of relief, the Battalion will move to billets at Suburban Camp VILLER AU BOIS</p> <p>2 Units will relive corresponding units</p> <p>3 2 guides per Company, and 2 Battalion Runners, for HdQrs Staff, will report to Battalion Orderly Room at 6.00 am sharp. OC Specialists will detail a reliable NCO to take charge of these guides. They will meet the Companies of the relieving Battalion at LES TILLEULS CORNER, at 7.30 am, and guide them to their respective Companies.</p> <p>4 Upon relief, the Battalion will move by HUDSON CT and MERCER CT where they will embus at LES TILLUILES CORNER, at 11.00 am for Suburban Camp, VILLERS AU BOIS</p> <p>5 All trench stores to be handed over and receipts taken for same. Duplicate copies of trench stores, to be in Battalion Orderly Room by 9.00 am 30<sup>th</sup> inst</p> <p>6 All lines and dug-outs will be left in a clean and sanitary condition, and receipts taken for same.</p> <p>7 All petrol tins to be taken out of the line</p> <p>8 The QM will arrange to take over billets, Suburban Camp, and have a hot meal ready for the troops on their arrival</p> <p>9 Previous instructions issued, regarding movement of troops will be strictly observed</p> <p>10 Lieut ES Sawell has been detailed as embussing Officer, and will proceed to LES TILLEULS CORNER, for this purpose.</p>

11	Relief complete will be wired in to Battalion Headquarters by giving time of relief only.
	(Signed by AP Chirstmas) Captain Asst/Adjutant 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
Copy No 1	Commanding Officer
2	18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
3	"A" Company
4	"B" Company'
5	"C" Company
6	"D" Company
7	Specialists
8	Communication'
9	MO
10	RSM
11	TO & QM
12	Office
13-15	War Diary

WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
SUBURBAN CAMP	1/12/17 to 6/12/17		The Battalion remained in this Camp, carrying out usual syllabus of training. On the 1 <sup>st</sup> , polling for the General Election commenced and much enthusiasm was displayed
	7/12/17		The Battalion proceeded to CELLARS CAMP, NEUVILLE ST VAAST and formed Brigade Reserve as per Operation Order No 146
CELLARS CAMP	8/12/17 to 12/12/17		The Battalion remained in this camp and was employed in supplying very large fatigue parties for Engineers 182 <sup>nd</sup> Tunneling Company etc.
			Baths were allotted the Battalion during this period
	13/12/17		The Battalion left CELLARS CAMP, NEUVILLE ST VAAST at 8.00 am and proceeded to the Front Line ACHEVILLE SECTION, to relieve the 19 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn and was in position by 1.15 pm. Disposition as follows: B on RIGHT FRONT, C Coy LEFT FRONT, A Coy SUPPORT and D Coy in RESERVE. Battalion Headquarters located at T.23.d.8.4 as per Operation Order 147.
			Major George Whitmore visited the Battalion and made a tour of the front line with the Commanding Officer. Lieut Col Elmer W Jones, DSO, Lt Riley & 12 ORs patrolled the left Company front, but had nothing to report.
			Casualties NIL
T.23.d.8.4 ACHEVILLE SECTION	14/12/17		Morning fine & clear. At about 7.30 am few shells were dropped near Bn HdQrs & one exploded on WINNIPEG ROAD causing 5 casualties (3 killed & 2 wounded). The day was rather quiet, but for spasmodic bursts of enemy artillery fire. Lieut Riley & 12 ORs were out on patrol, but had nothing to report. B & C Companies put out wire during the night.
	15/12/17		Day fine, very little shelling during the day.  Our Brig Gen Rennie proceeding to take a Flying Course. Lieut Col Elmer W Jones, DSO, assumed command of the 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB leaving Major McLaughlin in command of Battn. Patrols as per previous night covered the front, but had nothing unusual to report.
			Lieut GG Bowie accidentally wounded & 1 OR wounded
	16/12/17		The day was quiet and the 20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion relieved us in the front line during the morning and relief was completed by 1.30 pm. On completion of relief the Battalion proceeded to form Brigade Support as per Operation Order 145.
			Battalion Headquarters located on VANCOUVER ROAD
			Snow fall for first time this season

VANCOUVER ROAD 17/12/17 Day very quiet. Working party supplied to Engineers & Pioneers for work in the area. Polling for Canadian Gen Election done at 8.00 pm this date.

*(Transcriber's Note: Sir Robert Borden's Conservatives won the election based on a platform that would impose conscription)*

18/12/17 The Battalion "stood to" from 6.30 am to 7.15 am, but all quiet. The usual fatigue parties were supplied to the Canadian Engineers and day continued quiet but very cold. Casualties NIL

19/12/17 Day quiet & very misty, but considerable aeroplane activity was displayed. During the day the Battalion was relieved by the 13<sup>th</sup> York & Lancs Regiment. Relief completed at 4.00 pm. The Battalion entrained at BEN SUMMIT (VIMY RIDGE AREA) for GOUY SERVIMS, arriving there at 7.45 pm and marched to billets in ESTREE CAUCHIE, arriving there at 9.30 pm as per Operation Order No 149.

Casualties NIL

ESTREE CAUCHIE 20/12/17 The Battalion embussed at ESTREE CAUCHIE for billets at AUCHY-AU-BOIS (ST HILIARE AREA) arriving there about 2.15 pm & the men soon settled down in their new quarters.

Weather very cold. Operation Order 150

AUCHY-AU-BOIS 21/12/17 During this period the Battalion carried out syllabus of training as follows: PT & BF, MUSKETRY, SPECIALISTS TRAINING ETC.

24/12/17 Divine Service was held on the 22<sup>nd</sup> by Major WE Kidd

25/12/17 This being Christmas Day, the Battalion was free from training. A Voluntary Service was held in the School House, by Major WE Kidd, MC.

Congratulatory messages were received from Mrs Elmer W Jones, Brig-Gen WSP Hughes, DSO, and Lieut Col TF Elmitt.

The Battalion enjoyed their Christmas Dinner by Companies and the Officers held their dinner in the School House with Lieut Col EW Jones presiding.

26/12/17/ The remainder of the month was spent in strenuous training.  
to Weather rather cold, much snow on the ground.  
31/12/17

SECRET  
Copy No.....  
Dec 6<sup>th</sup>, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 146

Ref. 36.b.S.E. 1/20,000  
MAROEUIL 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will proceed to CELLARS CAMP, NEUVILLE ST VAAST, and relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in BRIGADE RESERVE tomorrow the 7<sup>th</sup> inst.



- 2 The Battalion will parade at 9.30 am on Battalion Parade Ground.  
DRESS: Heavy Marching Order
- 3 The Battalion will move via BERTHONVAL FARM – LA TARGETTE CORNER on BETHUNE ARRAS ROAD to NEUVILLE ST VAAST, at distance of 100 yards between Companies.
- 4 Advance party of Major CG McLaughlin, 1 NCO per Company and 1 NCO of Specialists Section, who will represent Headquarters, will proceed at 8.00 am to take over.
- 5 The extra blanket will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and piled in front of Quartermaster's Stores by 8.00 am.  
Officer's Baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room material will be collected in front of Battalion Headquarters at 8.30 am.  
The Transport Officer will arrange to move Canteen.
- 6 The Transport Officer will arrange to have horses of the CO, Adjutant, Medical Officer and Company Commanders at Battalion Headquarters by 9.00 am.
- 7 The Quartermaster will secure clearance certificate from Town Major before the Battalion moves off.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.50 pm

- Copy No 1 Commanding Officer
- 2 "A" Company
  - 3 "B" Company
  - 4 "C" Company
  - 5 "D" Company
  - 6 Specialists
  - 7 Communication
  - 8 MO
  - 9 TO
  - 10 QM
  - 11 RSM
  - 12 Pipe Band
  - 13 Brass Band
  - 14 Office
  - 15-18 War Diary

SECRET  
Copy No 15  
Dec 12, 1917

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 147

Ref MAROEUIL 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the FRONT LINE, ACHEVILLE SECTION, during daylight December 13<sup>th</sup>.

- 2 On completion of relief, disposition will be as under:
  - “B” Company on RIGHT
  - “C” Company on LEFT
  - “A” Company in SUPPORT
  - “D” Company in RESERVE
 Battalion Headquarters and Headquarter Sections at JUNCTION OF WINNIPEG ROAD and HUDSON CT, (T.23.d.8.4)
- 3 The Battalion will parade at 8.00 am tomorrow the 13<sup>th</sup> inst, in Line, on PLANK ROAD, facing SOUTH, in the following order:
  - “B” Company, “C” Company, “A” Company, “D” Company, Headquarters Sections and Battalion Headquarters. Head of line at Battalion Headquarters. DRESS: Heavy Marching Order.
- 4 Route will be via NEUVILLE ST VAAST – THELUS ROAD to LES TILLEUIL CORNER, thence by trench mat to MERSEY TRENCH.
  - 100 yards interval between Companies.
- 5 Advance Party consisting of Lieut Hamley, 1 NCO per Company and 1 NCO of Specialists Section, to represent Headquarters, will proceed at 1.30 pm today to take over. This party will take over all Trench Stores, Maps, Defence Schemes, etc, forwarding receipts in duplicate to Battalion Headquarters by 3.00 pm tomorrow the 13<sup>th</sup> inst.
  - Disposition States, together with rough sketch to be sent to Battalion Headquarters by 9.00 am the 14<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 6 The extra blanket will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and piled in front of Canteen by 7.30 am. Officer’s Baggage, Cooking Utensils and Orderly Room material will be collected in front of “C” Company Headquarters at 7.30 am.
  - The Transport Officer will arrange to collect this.
- 7 The Lewis Gun Officer will arrange to have all Lewis Guns packed by 2.30 pm today, when they will be transported to JUNCTION of VANCOUVER ROAD and HUDSON CT tonight.
- 8 Party of 1 Officer and 39 Other Ranks, attached to 182<sup>nd</sup> Tunneling Company at BOIS CARR, will rejoin their Company at HEAD of MERSEY TRENCH at 9.30 am 13<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 9 The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will arrange to have guides at JUNCTION of VANCOUVER ROAD and HUDSON CT at 11.00 am, 13<sup>th</sup> inst to guide the Battalion in.
- 10 Previous instructions regarding movement of troops will be strictly observed.
- 11 The Quartermaster will secure Clearance Certificate from Town Major before the Battalion moves off.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Captain  
 Asst/Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at.....

Copy No 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	Commanding Officer 19 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion “A” Company “B” Company “C” Company “D” Company Specialists Communication	9 10 11 12 13 14 15-18	MO TO QM Lieut Hamley RSM Office War Diary
--	--	--	--

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 148

Ref Map MARCEUIL Sheet 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the front line, ACHEVILLE SECTION, during daylight on the 16<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 2 On completion of relief, the Battalion will take over positions in Brigade Support as follows:  
"A" Company                CANADA TRENCH  
"B" Company                NEW BRUNSWICK TRENCH  
"C" Company                NEW BRUNSWICK TRENCH  
"D" Company                OTTAWA TRENCH  
Headquarters                VANCOUVER ROAD (T.28.a.4.2)
- 3 Advance party, consisting of Lieut Sawell, 1 NCO per Company, and 1 NCO Specialists Section to represent Headquarters, will proceed at 9.00 am to take over. This party will take over all Trench Stores, maps, etc forwarding receipts for same in duplicate to Battalion Headquarters by 9.00 pm 16<sup>th</sup> inst.  
Disposition States, together with rough sketch, to be sent to Headquarters by 9.00 am 17<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 4 All Very Pistols, Periscopes, etc and Water Cans borrowed from the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be taken over.
- 5 Certificates for sanitation and Cleanliness will be taken.
- 6 Officer's Baggage, Cooking Utensils etc will be carried out independently to new positions after relief.
- 7 The QM will arrange for water and rations to be delivered at Battalion Headquarters, VANCOUVER ROAD, 16<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 8 Relief complete to be sent by wire, using time of relief only, further, when in position in support, Battalion Headquarters will be notified by runner using the Code Word "LOU LOU".
- 9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(Sgd) AP Christmas  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at 7.20 pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	MO
2	20 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	10	RSM
3	"A" Coy	11	TO
4	"B" Coy	12	QM
5	"C" Coy	13	Office
6	"D" Coy	14-16	War Diary
7	Communication Sections		
8	Specialists Sections		

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 149

Ref MAP, LENS. 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved in Brigade Support by the 13<sup>th</sup> York & Lancaster Regiment, during daylight, 19<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 2 Immediately upon relief, Units will move independently, via HUDSON CT, MERSEY CT, BOARD WALK to LENS-ARRAS ROAD, where they will entrain at BON SUMMIT for GOUY SERVINS, and march from there to billets in ESTREE CAUCHIE.
- 3 All Maps, Defence Schemes, Trench Stores, etc will be handed over. Company and Unit Commanders will hand in receipts in duplicate for same to Battalion Headquarters, when passing through.
- 4 Guides will be held in readiness as follows:

Headquarters	2 guides
Communication & Specialists Sections	1 guide each
Companies	1 guide per Platoon

Rendezvous notified later
- 5 Lieut ES Sawell is detailed as entraining Officer
- 6 All Very Pistols, Periscopes, Water Cans etc, will be carried out of Line
- 7 Certificates for sanitation and cleanliness will be taken, and handed in to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 pm 19<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 8 The Quartermaster will arrange for a hot meal on arrival at destination.
- 9 Relief complete will be sent in by wire, using the Code Word SMEED
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at .....pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
2	13 <sup>th</sup> York & Lancaster Reg't	10	Quartermaster
3	"A" Company	11	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	12	RSM
5	"C" Company	13	Office
6	"D" Company	14-16	War Diary
7	Specialists Section		
8	Communication Section		

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 150

Ref Map  
LENS 11 1/100,000  
HAZEBROUCK 5a 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from billets in ESTREE CAUCHIE, on the morning of the 20<sup>th</sup> inst, and will embuss for billets at AUCHY AU BOIS. (St HILIARE AREA)
- 2 The Battalion will parade in line at 9.30 am, 20<sup>th</sup> inst, Head of column resting in front of Battalion Headquarters, facing NORTH.
- 3 Officer's Kits, Extra Blankets, (rolled in bundles of 10s and plainly labeled) etc, will be placed outside QM Stores, where lorries will pick up same.
- 4 Captain H Hora is detailed as embussing Officer, and will report to Captain VN Smallpiece at 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters, not later than 9.45 am
- 5 All kits will be packed and billets ready for inspection 9.00 am when Major GSS Bowerbank MC, will inspect billets
- 6 The Quartermaster will arrange for clearance certificate from Town Major
- 7 Breakfast will be served at 7.00 am
- 8 Sick Parade will be held at 6.30 am

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at .....pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	QM
2	"A" Coy	10	RSM
3	"B" Coy	11	Office
4	"C" Coy	12-14	War Diary
5	"D" Coy		
6	Specialists		
7	Communication		
8	MO		

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
AUCHY- AU-BOIS	1/1/18 to 5/1/18		The Battalion remained in this Reserve Area carrying out a syllabus of training which included sports. The weather continued cold with snow falling.
	6/1/18		Divine Service was held for Anglicans and Protestants at 10.00 am, Major WE Kidd, MC, conducted the service. Roman Catholics attended mass in the Parish Church.
	7/1/18		Major General HE Burstall, CB, CMG, ADC, the Divisional Commander, inspected the Battalion in Marching Order at 9.00 am on the Battalion Parade Ground with 23 Officers and 525 Other Ranks on parade. This inspection was very thorough, and at the conclusion, General Burstall expressed his satisfaction of the appearance of the parade, and of the degree of efficiency which had been attained during its period of training. The Battalion then marched past the GOC in column of route on the ST HILAIRE- WESTREHEM ROAD.
	8/1/18 to 11/1/18		The list of New Year Honours of His Majesty included the names of Major TF Elmitt, Major CC Bennett and Major JH Gills for the decoration of the Distinguished Service Order, and those of Captain WM Nickle and Captain SS Cunningham for the Military Cross. The Battalion extended its congratulations to all the recipients, whose loyal service highly warranted the distinctions. Captain Hora (Canadian Army Pay Corps), who had served as Paymaster of this unit since mobilization in 1914 ceased to be attached from the 9 <sup>th</sup> instant. Captain JR Purdy succeeded him. The departure of Captain Hora from the Battalion is greatly regretted by all ranks, but particularly by those of the original personnel who remain. He has accepted a post with the APC in England. The training program was continued with a little milder weather, most of the snow disappearing.
	12/1/18		The Battalion paraded in Fighting Order at WESTREHEM with the other units of the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, for inspection by the Corps Commander, Lieut General Sir Arthur W Currie, KCB, KCMG. After the March Past of the Brigade, the Corps Commander took occasion to compliment the Commanding Officer upon the turn out of this Battalion. The following were presented with ribands of decorations which they had been awarded for conspicuous service during the last few months. The Military Cross – Captain EA McCusker, Lieut AW May, Lieut HC Cameron, Lieut DJ More. The Military Medal – 59704 Sergt W McCullagh, 405163 Sergt LA Anderson, 195922 L/Cpl JH Clark, 124153 Pte WA Hefford, 195362 Sergt N Saxby, 144519 Pte W Lloyd, 455208 Sergt H Wykes, 59676 Sergt C Morris, 725049 Pte J Taylor, 144904 Corpl GA Brown, 59127 Sergt C Byrne, 190266 Corpl EA Powles, 124304 Sergt CB Anderson, 408056 Corpl JA Robb, 59980 L/Cpl F Thorley, 60115 Pte H McKenzie, 724228 Pte FA Smith, 454495 CSM JJ Barber, 190172 Corpl LC Cable, 142365 Corpl H McLaughlin, 59918 Sergt RH Stewart, 805165 Pte TG Wagg, 59537 Pte LC Kelly.  Lieut Col EW Jones, DSO, proceeded to England on leave, and the command of the Battalion was assumed by Major HE Pense, MC.
	13/1/18		Divine Service conducted by Major WE Kidd, MC, was held on the Battalion parade ground at 3.30 pm for Anglican and Protestants. Roman Catholics attended mass in the Parish church at 7.40 am, Capt McDonald officiating.

	14/1/18	<p>This day was chiefly spent in preparing for the move to the forward area, commencing on the following day. All Companies and Sections carried out a short Gas Drill parade and the Musketry Practices were completed at the range.</p> <p>Weather continued wet.</p>
RAIMBERT	15/1/18	<p>Battalion moved from AUCHY-AU-BOIS to RAIMBERT, in accordance with Operation Order No 151, arriving at its destination at 1.00 pm. Rain fell continuously during the march. The 21<sup>st</sup> left AUCHY-AU-BOIS with the best wishes of the civilian population, who voted the Battalion the best behaved that had been billeted in that village for some months.</p>
ESTREE CAUCHIE	16/1/18	<p>Rain fell heavily during the night of January 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup> and the Battalion moved early in the morning en route to ESTREE CAUCHIE, in accordance with Operation Order No 152. Billets at ESTRE CAUCHIE were occupied by 3.30 pm.</p> <p>The rain continued during the march.</p>
VILLERS AU BOIS	17/1/18	<p>At 10.00 am the Battalion left ESTREE CAUCHIE and proceeded, via CAMBLAIN L'ABBE, to VILLERS-AU-BOIS, where it went into its old camp – Suburban, as per Operation Order No 153.</p> <p>In spite of the inclement weather during the three days move from AUCHY AU BOIS, the turn-out and march discipline of the Battalion was reported as very satisfactory. The Brigadier, who inspected the unit en rout, made special mention of the Transport Section as being outstanding. During the three days, the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade had moved as a unit.</p>
LA COULOTTE	18/1/18	<p>All preparations and the necessary reconnaissance had been carried out for the move of the Battalion to the trenches ordered for the night of January 18<sup>th</sup>/19<sup>th</sup>. At 12 noon on the 18<sup>th</sup> inst, the Battalion left VILLERS-AU-BOIS for its relief of the 50<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the left support of the AVION SECTOR. Companies and Sections proceeded from Suburban camp to SOUCHEZ via CARENCY. At SOUCHEZ, dinner was served from the cookers, and at 3.30 pm the Battalion continued its move forward via ANGRES, GIVENCHY and CLUCAS CT, to the support area between LA COULOTTE and L'HIRONDELLE SPUR. Battalion Headquarters was located in the "Piano" dugout at SG CENTRAL. Distribution was "B" Company at Battalion Headquarters, "D" Company in RED TRENCH, "A" and "C" Companies in the Brewery at LA COULOTTE. The arrangements of the 50<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion had been thorough, and the relief was complete at 7.10 pm.</p>
	19/1/18 to 22/1/18	<p>The tour in support passed off quietly. The Battalion supplied large working parties, which were employed in improving trenches in the front. Only one casualty was sustained. Particular attention was paid to the prevention of trench feet, but fortunately the weather turned out to be more favorable than had been anticipated. General Rennie, CMG, MVO, DSO, the Brigadier, visited our Headquarters several times. A Defence Scheme was drafted, and the necessary reconnaissance and arrangements made, in order that all units might move without delay into their "Stand to" positions in the event of an enemy attack.</p> <p>Having been warned that the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion was to relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the front line (left sub-sector) on the night of January 23<sup>rd</sup>/24<sup>th</sup>, the front which was to be taken over was reconnoitered and a proportion of Officers, NCOs, Scouts and Runners became familiar with the dispositions.</p>

23/1/18 On the night of January 23<sup>rd</sup>/24<sup>th</sup> the relief above referred to took place without  
to casualties. The disposition was "A" Company –right front, "D" Company – left front, "B"  
28/1/18 Company – right support, "C" Company – left support, Battalion Headquarters – LA  
COULOTTE. "A" Company was distributed in a series of posts in front of AVION, with  
"B" Company in support in the ruins of AVION. The front of "D" Company was  
protected by the swamp, which extended southerly from the SOUCHEZ RIVER.

Both Company fronts were actively patrolled each night. Lieut AW May, MC, was in charge of the patrols on the right front where all movements of the enemy were closely watched.

A raid on one of his advanced posts was planned, but though the post was vacated on the night of January 27<sup>th</sup>/28<sup>th</sup> when our raiding party prepared to rush it, and arrangements had been made with the Stokes Battery to engage two suspected machine gun posts of the enemy.

Owing to the brightness of the nights throughout the tour, movement in No Man's Land was very difficult, but all our listening posts and patrols, which covered the Battalion front, reported no encounters with the Boche.

During the tour, much work was executed on the improvement of the front line trenches, posts and the approaches thereto, but owing to the bright moonlight, wiring parties were unable to work in No Man's Land. The attitude of the enemy throughout the tour was fairly quiet. On January 23<sup>rd</sup> Lieut AH Cameron joined the Battalion as a reinforcement. Lieut J Robins, of the 104<sup>th</sup> Regiment, United States Infantry was attached to Battalion Headquarters for two days and was given an opportunity of seeing the work of a Battalion in the line, particularly at night, when he accompanied the Commanding Officer and Second in Command on their tours of inspection.

Throughout the five days the weather continued fine. The casualties were one man killed and four men wounded.

On the night of January 28<sup>th</sup>/29<sup>th</sup> the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade was relieved by the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 28<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion relieving the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. Reconnoitering parties of the 28<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion had previously visited the sub sector, and the relief was carried out without interruption, with the exception that the enemy shelled AVION, chiefly "B" Company's area, between 6.40 pm to 7.15 pm.

After the relief, our Battalion marched to CAMBLAIN L'ABBE, via GIVENCH, SOUCHEZ, CARENCY, and VILLERS-AU-BOIS. Tea was served from the cooks at SOUCHEZ.

CAMBLAIN 29/1/18 The Battalion remained in billets at CAMBLAIN L'ABBE (Canadian Corps  
L'ABBE to Headquarters). The time was divided to the usual periods for kit inspection, pay,  
31/1/18 baths, specialists training and musketry practices on the ranges.

Lieut Colonel EW Jones, DSO, returned from leave on the 29<sup>th</sup> instant, but at once assumed temporary command of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, the GOC having proceeded to England on leave.

The necessary reconnaissance and arrangements were made for the Battalion to move from Reserve to its assembly in the RED LINE in the event of an enemy attack on the Divisional front.



21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 151

Copy No 18  
Jan 14<sup>th</sup> 1918

Ref HAZEBROUCK 5a 1/100,00

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from AUCHY-AU-BOIS to RAIMBERT on the 15<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 The Battalion will parade in Column of Route, facing NORTH WEST at 10.20 am on the AUCHY-AU-BOIS ROAD, with head of column resting at Quartermaster's Stores.

DRESS:

Heavy Marching Order with Greatcoats, Service Caps and Small Box Respirators slung.

- 3 ROUTE will be STARTING POINT (200 yards WEST of first A in AUCH-AU-BOIS) – FERFAY – ROAD JUNCTION 400 yards NORTH of Y in CAUCHY-A-LA-TOUR – RAIMBERT. Distances of 500 yards between Battalions, 100 yards between Companies and 100 yards between rear unit and Transport will be maintained.
- 4 A billeting party consisting of 1 NCO for Headquarters, Company Quartermaster Sergeants together with 1 NCO representing Quartermaster's Stores and Transport will report to Lieut Sawell at Battalion Headquarters at 6.45 am and proceed and report to TOWN MAJOR, RAIMBERT at 8.00 am to be allotted billets for their respective units.
- 5 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect Officer's baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room baggage at 9.00 am. All Officer's horses will be in front of Quartermaster's Stores by 10.30 am.
- 6 The extra blanket will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and placed outside Quartermaster's Stores by 9.30 am. One man per Company will be detailed as a guard to accompany transport.
- 7 Battalion Headquarters will close at AUCHY-AU-BOIS at 10.30 am and re-open at RAIMBERT at 2.00 pm 15<sup>th</sup> inst. Reports during march to head of column.
- 8 Lieut Menpes will arrange for a clearance certificate from the Town Major. All Salvage will be handed over by the Quartermaster to the Town Major. Receipts in duplicate to be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters.
- 9 Watches will be synchronized by Battalion runner at 10.25 am

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	MO
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	10	TO
3	"A" Company	11	QM
4	"B" Company	12	RSM
5	"C" Company	13	Pipe Band
6	"D" Company	14	Brass Band
7	Specialists	15	Office
8	Communication	16-18	War Diary

21<sup>st</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

MEMO TO ACCOMPANY OPERATION ORDERS Nos 151, 152, & 153

All Officers will conform to dress worn by the men and will carry packs, with the exception of mounted Officers.

All Officers will conform to Battalion Standing Orders re Dress, paying particular attention to para (a) "GENERAL", Sheet No 4.

Officers Commanding Companies and Sections will ensure that their commands are clean and uniform in every respect.

Knee boots and sheep skin jackets of Other Ranks may be rolled inside extra blanket and carried on transport.

Dismounted personnel with transport will carry packs and wear steel helmets.

All Other Ranks will be warned that they are forbidden to fall out en route without the written permission of an Officer. With this permission they will report to Lieut Riley who will march in rear of the transport during the entire move forward.

There will be no Rear Parties. Sergt Mantell and Ptes Fraser, Leake and Bailey will be left in charge of surplus packs and stores being stored at the Quartermaster Stores. They will have 48 hours rations with them, and will be rationed by the Town Major. The extra blanket will be rolled cross-wise in bundles of 10s, and plainly labeled. These will be turned in to Sergt Woodrow at the Quartermaster Stores, and Sergt Woodrow will be in charge of these blankets throughout the entire move forward. Any surplus pack not turned in to Sergt Mantell at the Quartermaster Stores will be pm the responsibility of Officers.

All latrine seats and buckets will be turned in by 9.00 am to the Quartermaster Stores.

PH Helmets will be carried in the pack.

Box Respirators will be slung.

Breech Covers will be worn on rifle.

Steel Helmets to be oiled.

All Fire Orders will be taken down prior to leaving billets and posted in billets from day to day as occupied.

Battalion Quarter Guard will be dismounted at 7.30 am 15<sup>th</sup> instant, by the Orderly Officer.

On account of Units of the Battalion marching at distances, the Brass Band will march with Headquarters Sections and leading Company. The Pipe Band will be apportioned to the remaining three Companies.

All men's feet must be rubbed with whale oil every night during the move forward.

On the move forward the units will be attached for meals as follows:

Specialists Sections and Quartermaster Stores with "A" Company  
Brass Band with "B" Company  
Regimental Sergeant Major's Party with "C" Company  
Communication Section with "D" Company.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst. Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
14-1-18

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 152

Copy No 18  
15/1/18

Ref: HAZEBROUCK 5a 1/100,000  
LENS 11 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from RAIMBERT to ESTREE CAUCHIE on the 16<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 2 The Battalion will parade in column of Route, facing SOUTH WEST at 8.25 am on the LILLERS – ST POL ROAD, with head of column resting at Quartermaster's Stores.  
  
Order of March for Companies will be "D" "B" "C" and "A"  
DRESS  
Heavy Marching Order with great-coats and Service Caps, Box Respirators will be slung
- 3 ROUTE will be STARTING POINT (CROSS ROADS LILLERS – ST POL ROAD with FEFAY – DIVION ROAD) – CAUCHY-A-LA-TOUR – DIVION – HOUDAIN – GAUCHIN LEGAL – ESTREE CAUCHIE.  
  
Distances of 500 yards between Battalions, 100 yards between Companies and 100 yards between rear unit and transport will be maintained.
- 4 A Billeting Party consisting of 1 NCO, representing Specialists Section, Communication Section and RSM Party (detailed by Lieut Menpes) Company Quartermaster Sergeants, together with 1 NCO representing Quartermaster Stores and Transport will report to Lieut Sawell at Battalion Headquarters at 5.30 am and proceed and report to TOWN MAJOR, ESTREE CAUCHIE at 8.00 am to be allotted billets for their respective units.
- 5 The Transport Officer will collect Officers' baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room baggage at 8.00 am at the Quartermaster's Stores. All Officers horses will be in front of Quartermaster's Stores by 8.15 am.
- 6 The extra blanket will be rolled in bundles of 10's, plainly labeled and placed outside the Quartermaster's Stores by 7.30 am. One man per Company will be detailed as guard and will accompany transport.
- 7 Battalion Headquarters will close at RAIMBERT at 9.10 am and re-open at ESTEE CAUCHIE at 2.00 pm. Reports during march to head of column.

- 8 Haversack lunches will be carried, as no halt for noon day meal will be made.
- 9 Lieut Menpes will arrange for reconnoitering and locations of starting points.
- 10 The Quartermaster will arrange for a clearance certificate from the TOWN MAJOR.
- 11 Watches will be synchronized by runner at 8.30 am.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Captain  
 Asst/Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	MO
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	10	TO
3	"A" Company	11	QM
4	"B" Company	12	RSM
5	"C" Company	13	Pipe Band
6	"D" Company	14	Brass Band
7	Specialists Section	15	Office
8	Communication Section	16-18	War Diary

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 153

Copy No 18  
 16/1/18

Ref: LENS 11 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from ESTREE CAUCHIE to SUBURBAN CAMP (VILLER-AU-BOIS) tomorrow the 17<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 2 The Battalion will Parade in Column of Route, facing SOUTH EAST, at 9.50 am on the CAUCHIE LEGAL – ARRAS ROAD with head of Column resting at Battalion Headquarters Mess.  
  
 Order of March for Companies will be "C" "D" "A" "B"  
 DRESS:  
 Heavy Marching Order with Greatcoats and Steel Helmets. Box Respirators will be slung
- 3 ROUTE will be STARTING POINT (CROSS ROADS 200 yards South of A in ESTREE CAUCHIE) – CAMBLAIN L'ABBE – VILLERS-AU-BOIS. Distances as in OO 151 will be maintained.
- 4 A Billeting Party consisting of 1 NCO, representing Specialists Section, Communication Section and RSM Party (detailed by Lieut Menpes), Company Quartermaster Sergeants, together with 1 NCO representing Quartermaster's Stores and Transport, will report to Lieut Sawell at Battalion Headquarters at 7.00 am and proceed and report to the TOWN MAJOR, VILLERS-AU-BOIS at 8.00 am.
- 5 The Transport Officer will collect Officers' Baggage, cooking utensils and Orderly Room Baggage at 9.00 am at the Square in front of Battalion Orderly Room. All Officers' horses will be in front of Orderly Room by 9.50 am.

- 6 The extra blanket will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside Quartermaster's Stores at 9.00 am. One man per Company will be detailed as guard and will accompany transport.
- 7 Battalion Headquarters will close at ESTREE-CAUCHIE at 10.15 am and re-open at VILLERS-AU-BOIS at 12.30 pm. Reports during march to head of column.
- 8 Marching Out States will be handed in to Battalion Orderly Room by 9.00 am and Marching In States one hour after arrival in new area.
- 9 The Quartermaster will arrange for clearance certificate from the Town Major.
- 10 Watches will be synchronized at 9.45 am.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Captain  
 Asst/Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	MO
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	10	TO
3	"A" Company	11	QM
4	"B" Company	12	RSM
5	"C" Company	13	Pipe Band
6	"D" Company	14	Brass Band
7	Specialists Section	15	Office
8	Communication Section	16-18	War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 154

SECRET

Copy No 19  
 17<sup>th</sup> January, 1918

Reference Sheets:    35.C.    1/40,000  
                               VIMY    1/10,000

- 1 In accordance with a relief of the 10<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade in the AVION Section, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 50<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Left Support.
- 2 Companies and Sections will relieve corresponding units. Upon completion of relief, Battalion Headquarters will be situated at S.6.Central.
- 3 Lieut Sawell, two (2) NCOs for Battalion Headquarters, communications and Specialists Sections, one (1) Officer per Company and One (1) NCO per Platoon will proceed as advanced parties to the 50<sup>th</sup> Battalion Headquarters by 3.30 pm and arrange details of relief.
- 4 Officers' baggage and mess outfits for forward area will be handed over to Quartermaster at Quartermaster's Stores by 10.30 am, in addition to surplus baggage and extra blankets rolled in bundles of tens (10s), plainly labeled.

- 5 The Battalion will parade at 11.30 am (units on private parade grounds), and will proceed in the following order with distances as in para 11: "A", "B", "C", "D", Communication and Specialists Sections and Battalion Headquarters.  
  
Dress: Heavy marching order with greatcoats and steel helmets.
- 6 Route: CARRENCY-SOUCHEZ to CLUCAS TRENCH
- 7 Dinner will be served from cookers at SOUCHEZ at 1.15 pm where Lewis Guns will be picked up from Limbers. Quartermaster and Transport Officer will make the necessary arrangements.
- 8 Rations, Officers' kits and cooking utensils will be delivered by light railway at Ration dump near Battalion Headquarters. The Transport Officer will arrange to load same at LENS JUNCTION at 9.00 pm and will detail necessary guards on train. Ration Parties at ration dump at 10.15 pm.
- 9 Guides of the 50<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, at the rate of two (2) per platoon, one (1) per Company Headquarters, and two (2) for Battalion Headquarters, Specialists and Communication Sections will meet units at the junction of CLUCAS AND RED TRENCHES at 5.00 pm.
- 10 Lieut Menpes will arrange to reconnoiter and post guides on route to junction of CLUCAS AND RED TRENCHES
- 11 There will be no movement over VIMY RIDGE by daylight, except by trenches.

The following intervals will be maintained between units on route:

WEST OF VIMY RIDGE	500 Yds between Companies
EAST OF VIMY RIDGE	100 yds between Platoons
ACROSS VIMY RIDGE	100 yds between Platoons

- 12 All Trench Stores, Maps, Defensive Schemes, etc, will be taken over and receipts given, duplicate copies of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 8.00 am 19<sup>th</sup> instant. Particular attention will be given to the checking and condition of gum boots. Disposition States and Maps will be forwarded at the same time.
- 13 Relief complete will be notified by time of relief only.
- 14 At 2.00 pm the Transport and Quartermaster Stores will move to old Transport Lines at AUX RIREZ CORNER
- 15 Quartermaster will arrange with the Town Major for a clearance for SUBURBAN CAMP and HORSE LINES.

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Captain  
 Asst/Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	MO
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	11	TO
3	50 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	12	WM
4	"A" Coy	13	RSM
5	"B" Coy	14	Pipe Band
6	"C" Coy	15	Brass Band
7	"D" Coy	16	Officer
8	Specialists Section	17-18	War Diary
9	Communication Section		

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION ORDER No 155

SECRET

Copy No 16

Reference Sheet  
LENS ) 1/10,000  
VIMY )

- 1 On the night of 23<sup>rd</sup>/24<sup>th</sup> January, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Front Line, on the Left Sub-Section of the AVION Section
- 2 Upon relief, the disposition of the Battalion will be as follows:
 

"A" Company	-	Right Front
"D" Company	-	Left Front
"B" Company	-	Right Support
"C" Company	-	Left Support
"Hdqrs"	-	N.31.c.65.10
- 3 Units will move as follows:
 

"A" Company	at 5.45 pm
"D" Company	at 5.55 pm
"C" Company	at 6.05 pm
"B" Company	at 6.15 pm
"Hdqrs" and "Sections"	at 6.25 pm
- 4 The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will have 1 guide per Platoon and 1 for Battalion Headquarters at LA COULOTTE (N.31.c.65.10) to direct units to their positions
- 5 All Trench Stores will be turned over to the advanced party of the incoming unit, and duplicate receipts taken for same, which will be turned in to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 pm, 23<sup>rd</sup> instant
- 6 Lieut Menpes, representing Headquarters, 1 Officer per Company and 1 NCO per Platoon, will proceed to their respective positions before 4.00 pm, 23<sup>rd</sup> instant, to arrange relief. They will take over all Maps, Photographs, Defence Schemes, Trench Stores, etc., duplicate receipts of which will be handed in to Battalion Headquarters by 8.00 am, 24<sup>th</sup> instant, together with a rough sketch of disposition of units.
- 7 Officers' kits, cooking utensils, etc, will be taken in to the forward area independently
- 8 Relief complete will be sent in by wire, using code word "SHELL"

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)

23<sup>rd</sup> January, 1918

Issued by runner at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	8	Communication Section
2	19 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion	9	Transport Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Quartermaster
4	"B" Company	11	Medical Officer
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists Section	14-18	War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 156

SECRET

Copy No 16  
Jan 28<sup>th</sup> 1918

Reference Sheet  
LENS ) 1/10,000  
VIMY )

- 1 On the night of the 28<sup>th</sup>/29<sup>th</sup> January 1918, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 28<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, in the Front Line, on the Left Sub-Sector, of the AVION SECTOR.
- 2 Upon relief the Battalion will proceed to billets in CAMBLAIN L'ABBE via GIVENCHY – ANGRES – BOUCHEZ – CARENCY – VILLERS AU BOIS – CAMBLAIN L'ABBE. The following distances will be maintained:
  - 100 yards between Platoons, to VILLERS AU BOIS
  - 100 yards between Companies, to CAMBLAIN L'ABBE
- 3 Guides will be detailed as follows:
  - (a) Two from the Specialists Section to meet advanced party at twelve noon, 28<sup>th</sup> inst, at Junction of CLUCAS & RED TRENCHES
  - (b) Two for Battalion Headquarters (detailed by OC Specialists), one per Company Headquarters, and one per Platoon, to meet incoming units at 4.00 pm at CRUMP CORNER (S.10.d.9.5). Further guides for isolated posts should be ready at each Company Headquarters. Lieut Gardiner is detailed in charge of all Battalion Guides.
- 4 All Trench Stores, Maps, (with the exception of linen maps), Defence Schemes, Petrol Cans, Gum Boots, etc, will be turned over to advanced party, and duplicate receipts together with clearance certificates will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters before unit leaves this area.
- 5 Officers' Baggage, Cooking Utensils, etc, will be at Battalion Headquarters by 5.00 pm, 28<sup>th</sup> inst, with one man per unit, to act as guard on same on Light Railway. Arrangements for Lewis Guns to be notified later.
- 6 Capt Gillman will proceed to the Transport Lines by 9.00 am 28<sup>th</sup> inst, and will make arrangements to take over billets in new area.
- 7 Transport Officer will arrange for a hot meal for the men, to be ready at SOUCHEZ by 7.30 pm, 28<sup>th</sup> inst, and also will have horses for the Battalion Staff and Company Commanders at LA CHAUDIERE ADVANCED DRESSING STATION by 9.00 pm, 28<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 8 Completion of relief will be sent in by wire to Battalion Headquarters, using the Code Word "HAROLD"
- 9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	Communication Section
2	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	10	Medical Officer
3	28 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion	11	TO
4	"A" Company	12	QM
5	"B" Company	13	RSM
6	"C" Company	14	Office
7	"D" Company	15-18	War Diary
8	Specialists Section		



## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
HILLS CAMP	1/2/18 to 7/2/18		The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve during this period and was employed in finding large fatigue parties for the forward area.
	8/2/18		The 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 5 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion relieving the 22 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion in the front line, LEFT SUB-SECTION, MERRICOURT SECTION, in accordance with OO 158. The Battalion left HILLS CAMP at 3.30 pm on 8 <sup>th</sup> February. Upon relief the disposition of the Battalion was as follows: "C" Company – Right Front, "B" Company – Left Front, "D" Company – Right Support, "A" Company Left Support. Relief was carried out uninterrupted and there were no casualties.  Patrols were out, and on their return had nothing unusual to report.
	9/2/18		Clear day. Members of the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade visited Headquarters at 9.30 pm. Our new SOS Rockets were fired from a point in S.16.c for demonstration purposes. Patrols were sent out and had nothing to report.  There were no casualties.
	10/2/18		Little misty in the morning, but cleared off before noon. During the day, gas shells were dropped in the neighbourhood of Battalion Headquarters and "A" Company. Two children, about ten years of age each were seen in enemy's close support line by one observer. Patrols were sent out during the night but had nothing unusual to report.  There were no casualties.
	11/2/18		Day very clear. Situation quiet. The Brigadier visited Battalion Headquarters. Patrols were sent out, but on their return had nothing unusual to report. There were no casualties
	12/2/18		Day bright. Situation quiet. Patrols were sent out but had nothing unusual to report.  There were no casualties
	13/2/18		Morning misty. Situation quiet. Officer of the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion visited Headquarters and went for a tour around the trenches. Patrols were sent out but on their return had nothing unusual to report. There were no casualties.
	14/2/18		Misty during the greater part of the day. Officers of the 6 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Mounted Rifles reported to Battalion Headquarters and had a tour around the trenches.  Patrols were sent out but on their return had nothing unusual to report.  There were no casualties.
	15/2/18		Fairly bright morning and slightly cold. The 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion was relieved by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and proceeded to the Brigade Support Area in accordance with OO No 159. Relief was uninterrupted and complete at 9.30 pm. There were no casualties.

During the tour of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in the front line, a salvage party composed of members of the Brass Band did good work in salvaging wire.

16/2/18 to 18/2/18 During this period the Battalion remained in Brigade Support, finding fatigue parties for the 6<sup>th</sup> Field Company, Canadian Engineers, for the improving of the trenches in this sector. There was much aeroplane activity during this period. The Enemy sent a number of "Red Balloons" over our lines for the purpose of testing the wind and air currents.

Members of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Mounted Rifles visited the Battalion and looked over the lines. The only casualties sustained were 3 other ranks who were accidentally wounded.

19/2/18 The Battalion was relieved by the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Mounted Rifles (3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division) and upon relief, proceeded to Divisional Reserve at "Alberta Camp" CARENCY, in accordance with OO 160. Relief was uninterrupted and there were no casualties.

20/2/18 to 27/2/18 The Battalion remained in the Billets, finding large parties for the forward area. On the 22<sup>nd</sup> the Battalion were paid and had the use of the baths. During this period parties were sent to the Ranges for a course in firing. On the afternoon of the 27<sup>th</sup> an advance party, consisting of 6 Officers and 18 non-commissioned officers proceeded to LENS SECTION and reconnoitered the area to be taken over by the Battalion on the following day.

LIEVEN 28/2/18 In the afternoon, the Battalion proceeded to relieve the 26<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade) in the LENS SECTOR. Upon relief, the Battalion was distributed in billets in LIEVEN with Battalion Headquarters located at M.23.c.35.35. The Relief was completed by 9.00 pm and there were no Casualties.

See OO 161

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 158

Copy No 16  
7<sup>th</sup> February, 1918

Reference Map 36B SE      36C SW  
   51C NE      51B NW

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion in the LEFT SUB SECTION, MERICOURT SECTION, on the night of February 8<sup>th</sup>/9<sup>th</sup>.
- 2 Upon relief, the disposition of the Battalion will be as follows:

"C" Company	- RIGHT FRONT
"B" Company	- LEFT FRONT
"D" Company	- RIGHT SUPPORT
"A" Company	- LEFT SUPPORT
Headquarters	- T.8.d.50.55
- 3 The Battalion will parade at 3.00 pm. DRESS: Fighting Order with greatcoats, and will move off in the following order:

"B" Company	- 3.30 pm
"C" Company	- 3.40 pm
"A" Company	- 3.50 pm
"D" Company	- 4.00 pm
Headquarters	- 4.10 pm

Route: LA FOLIE FARM – VIMY – PEGGY TRENCH

- 4 The 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion will have 1 guide per Company Headquarters, 1 per Platoon and 2 for Battalion Headquarters, at JUNCTION of PEGGY and TEDDY GERARD, at 6.00 pm to direct units to their positions
- 5 All maps, photographs, defence schemes, trench stores, etc, will be taken over on relief, and duplicate receipts taken, together with dispositions accompanied by ROUGH MAP will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 12.00 midnight, 8<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 6 Lieut Menpes, representing Headquarters, 1 Officer per Company, 1 NCO per Platoon and 1 per Communication Section will proceed and take over for their respective units at 1.00 pm 7<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 7 All cooking utensils and Officers' baggage will be piled at cookers by 1.00 pm, from where it will be transported to TERRITORIAL DUMP and conveyed forward with rations.
- 8 The Lewis Gun Officer will arrange to load all Lewis Guns on limber by 3.00 pm the 8<sup>th</sup> inst. These limbers will go forward with the Battalion to VIMY STATION, where the guns will be taken over by their respective Companies.
- 9 The Quartermaster will arrange for the delivery of rations to TERRITORIAL DUMP by 2.00 pm daily, thence by Light Railway to VICTORIA DUMP.
- 10 The extra blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled at cookers, together with Officers' kits and men's packs by 12.00 noon, 8<sup>th</sup> inst. Each Company will place a guard (composed of other ranks for course) on same until transported.
- 11 The Scout Officer will arrange to have guides posted en route to direct units, until taken over by guides of the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 12 The Transport Officer will arrange to have all Officers' Mounts at Battalion Headquarters by 3.15 pm, also collect material as in paras 7, 10 and 13.
- 13 All huts and surroundings will be left in a clean and sanitary condition by 2.00 pm, when they will be inspected by the Orderly Officer. All salvage will be collected and piled at the cookers by 2.00 pm.
- 14 Capt HCL Gillman will obtain a clearance certificate from the Area Commandant, prior to the Battalion moving off.
- 15 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code word "WINDSOR".
- 16 ACKNOWLEDGE.

(signed by JG Wiggins)  
 Captain  
 For Major  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 8.30 pm

Copy No 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Commanding Officer 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Officer Commanding 22 <sup>nd</sup> Cdn Bn OC "A" Company OC "B" Company OC "C" Company OC "D" Company OC Specialists Section OC Communication Section Quartermaster	11 12 13 14 15 16-18 19	Transport Officer Medical Officer Regimental Sergt Major Pipe Band Brass Band War Diary File
---	--	---	--

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 159Copy No.....  
February 15<sup>th</sup> 1918REF MAP      36 CSW  
                  51B NW

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, in the Left Sub-Section, of the MERICOURT SECTION, on night of 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup> February, 1918
- 2 Relief will be made as follows:
  - “C” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by “A” Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn
  - “B” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by “D” Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn
  - “D” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by “B” Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn
  - “A” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by “C” Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn
- 3 On completion of relief, Companies will proceed as follows:
  - “C” Company to the CHAUDIERE BRICKFIELDS, by the shortest route to billets
  - “B” Company to CHAUDIERE WOOD, by the shortest route to billets
  - “A” Company to T.20.c.5.5, via PEGGY TRENCH & TEDDY GERARD
  - “D” Company to T.20.b.35.65, via PEGGY TRENCHBattalion Headquarters will be located at S.24.c.2.0, taking shortest route.
- 4 1 Officer & 2 NCOs per Company, 1 NCO from Specialists & Communication Sections, & Lieut ES Sawell, MC, for Headquarters, will proceed this afternoon to take over Trench Stores, Maps, Defence Schemes, Gum Boots, etc for which receipts will be taken and duplicate copies handed into Battalion Orderly Room by 6.00 am 15<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 5 Quartermaster will arrange to deliver rations for the 16<sup>th</sup> inst by Light Railway to VICTORIA DUMP for “A”, “B” & “D” Companies. Rations for Battalion Headquarters & “C” Company will be delivered by limber.
- 6 All Maps, Defence Schemes, Trench Stores, Gum Boots, etc, taken over from the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion, will be turned over on relief and receipts taken in duplicate, these with complete disposition maps, will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 6.00 am 16<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 7 All petrol tins will be taken out by the Companies
- 8 Cooking Utensils, Officer’s Mess Boxes, etc, will be carried out independently by the Companies
- 9 Two Company runners will report to Battalion Headquarters, as soon as Companies have taken over new quarters.
- 10 All lines & quarters will be left in a clean condition
- 11 Relief complete will be sent in by wire, using the Code Word “BINDER”
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by JG Wiggins)  
Captain for  
Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	Communication Section
2	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	10	MO
3	19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	11	TO
4	"A" Company	12	QM
5	"B" Company	13	RSM
6	"C" Company	14	Office
7	"D" Company	15-18	War Diary
8	Specialists Section		

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 160

Copy No.....  
February 18<sup>th</sup> 1918

REF MAP 36 C SW

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 2<sup>nd</sup> CMRs in the Support Area, of the MERICOURT SECTION, night of 19<sup>th</sup>/20<sup>th</sup>, February 1918
- 2 Units will relieve corresponding Units
- 3 On completion of relief, Battalion will proceed, via GIVENCHY – SOUCHEZ to ALBERTA HUTS, CARENCY ROAD.
- 4 Advance Parties of One Officer per Headquarters, one Officer and two NCOs per Company, and one NCO per Section, will report to Captain FK Ludlow at ALBERT HUTS, CARENCY ROAD, by 4.00 pm the 19<sup>th</sup> inst to take over billets.
- 5 Guides will be furnished for the incoming Unit as follows:  
2 for Battalion Headquarters  
1 per Company Headquarters and 1 per Platoon  
These guides will report to Lieut C Menpes at Battalion Headquarters by 3.45 pm 19<sup>th</sup> inst, and will be at JUNCTION of the ANGRES & LA COULEOTTE ROADS (S.11.c.3.8) at 5.00 pm
- 6 All Trench Stores, Maps, Defence Schemes, etc taken over from the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be turned over on relief, and receipts in duplicate taken for same, these will be handed in to Battalion Headquarters before leaving the Area.  
  
All Petrol Tins will be carried out by Companies
- 7 Officers' Baggage, Cooking Utensils, etc will be piled at the JUNCTION of the LENS-ARRAS ANGRES ROAD (S.18.c.90.25) by 6.30 pm 19<sup>th</sup> inst. One Limber & Mess Cart will report to HdQrs at 6.30 pm
- 8 Lewis Guns will be placed at the JUNCTION of the LENS-ARRAS ANGRES ROAD, where they will be picked up by limbers. Lewis Gun Officer will arrange for the packing of same.
- 9 All lines will be left in a clean and sanitary condition and receipts will be taken for same.
- 10 Relief complete will be sent in by wire using the Code Word "FLASH"
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by JG Wiggins)  
Captain  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	Communication Section
2	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	10	MO
3	2 <sup>nd</sup> CMRs	11	TO
4	"A" Company	12	QM
5	"B" Company	13	RSM
6	"C" Company	14	Office
7	"D" Company	15-18	War Diary
8	Communication Section		

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 161

Copy No.....  
Feb 26<sup>th</sup>, 1918

REF MAP      36 C SW 1      1/10,000  
                  36 B SE            1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 26<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, in Left Support, LENS SECTION, on the night of 27<sup>th</sup>/28<sup>th</sup> February 1918
- 2 Units of the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion will relieve units of 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion as follows:
  - "A" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion "C" Company 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion
  - "B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion "B" Company 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion
  - "C" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion "A" Company 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion
  - "D" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion "D" Company 26<sup>th</sup> Cdn BattalionTwo Platoons of "C" Company will relieve two platoons of 26<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion at N.19.a.8.2  
Specialists & Communication Sections will relieve corresponding units  
Battalion Headquarters will be located at M.23.c.30.55
- 3 Advance Parties of 1 Officer per Company, 1 NCO per Platoon, 1 NCO per Section, will report to Lieut GAF Riley (Representing Headquarters) at 10.30 am 27<sup>th</sup> inst at Battalion Headquarters to proceed to take over.
- 4 Guides will be supplied by the 26<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion as follows – 2 per Battalion HdQrs, 1 Per Company HdQrs, 2 per Platoon. Reporting at junction of LENS-BROAD STREET at 7.30 pm
- 5 Battalion Parade on the Battalion Parade Ground at 6.00 pm.  
  
DRESS: "Fighting Order", with one blanket rolled.
- 6 All Trench Stores, Maps, Photos, Defence Schemes, etc relating to the Area, will be taken over on relief, and duplicate receipts together with dispositions of Companies & Sections, will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.30 am 28<sup>th</sup> inst
- 7 Petrol Tins will be taken into the Line
- 8 The Lewis Gun Officer will arrange to pack Lewis Guns in limbers, and superintend the leading of same, on cars, at LENS JUNCTION, The No 1 Lewis Gunner will set as guard, and will proceed with guns to unloading point. Limbers report at 3.30 pm

- 9 Quartermaster & Transport Officer will arrange mutually for loading of rations, Officers' Baggage, Cooking Utensils, etc at LENS JUNCTION, same to be loaded by 5.00 pm. Ration Parties will be detailed to pick up rations, etc at N.93.e.15.80
- 10 Packs and extra blankets, rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, will be delivered to QM Stores before 1.00 pm.
- 11 Completion of relief will be wired in, using the Code Word "HORTON"
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Captain  
 Asst/Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at 11.00 pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	Communication Section
2	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	11	TO
3	26 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion	12	QM
4-7	Companies	13	RSM
8	MO	14	Office
9	Specialists Section	15-17	War Diary

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
-------	------	------	-----------------------------------

LIEVEN	1/3/18		On this date the Battalion was in Brigade Support in the LENS SECTOR. The Companies were distributed in billets in LIEVEN with Battalion Headquarters located at M.23.c.35.35. During the evening Lt Col EW Jones DSO rejoined the Battalion and took over Command. The Majority of the Battalion were employed on day and night fatigues, consisting in the improvement of the defences in the LENS SECTOR.
	2/3/18		The Battalion was again employed on fatigues and the run of good fortune continued, there being no casualties.
	3/3/18		In the morning advanced parties proceeded to take over the front line, left Sub-Sector, LENS SECTOR from the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  The relief commenced early in the evening and was complete by 11.30 pm. Battalion Headquarters was located at M.18.d.80.10. There were no casualties during the relief (see Op Order #162 3-3-18)
FRONT LINE	4/3/18		An enemy raid on a large scale commencing at 5.45 am resulted in Casualties of: Officers wounded 3, Other Ranks killed 3, wounded 38. A complete narrative of the raid is contained in App B
	5/3/18		On this date calm succeeded to the storm of the day previous. The enemy was remarkably quiet, presumably as the result of his lesson of the previous morning.
	6/3/18		In accordance with Operation Order #163, 5-3-18, attached, a raid was carried out on the enemy trenches. A complete narrative is contained in Appendix D.  In the evening the Battalion was relieved by the 29 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. The relief was complete by 10.00 pm and the Battalion then proceeded by Light Railway to billets in GOUY SERVINS, where a period of training was to be entered upon.
GOUY-SERVINS	7/3/18		The Battalion having arrived in GOUY- SERVINS by 4.30 am the remainder of the day was spent in resting and cleaning up.
	8/3/18		Training was commenced under good weather conditions.
	9/3/18		The morning was spent in Training. In the afternoon a programme of sports was carried out. All ranks entered into these sports with great zest.  Daily Orders of this date mention the award of a Military Medal to 59779 Pte (A/Cpl) J Paudash. It is interesting to note that Pte Paudash is a full blooded Indian and was the chief of the Missaugas of Rice Lake. During his service with the Battalion he accounted for over 42 Huns by sniping.
	10/3/18		Church of England and RC parades were held in the morning.
	11/3/18		Training was continued, the weather being remarkably favourable
	to		
	13/3/18		



- 14/3/18 Lieut WT Bredin reported to the Battalion as reinforcement and was taken on the strength.
- 15/3/18 A draft of 105 other ranks arrived as reinforcement to the Battalion from the 156<sup>th</sup> Battalion of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division. These men have been in England training, some of them as long as 16 months with the 5<sup>th</sup> Division. After such a long period of training it has been a very keen disappointment to them to see their Division broken up for reinforcements. The draft which has come to the Battalion were, in their former Battalion, largely employed men, among them are some 25 Bandsmen, 15 Signallers, 10 Scouts, several cooks, transport drivers etc. The Battalion can use some of these men at once in their special capacities, and in time, the majority of them will be used as far as possible. The men are all of good physique and made a most creditable appearance. Lt-Col EW Jones DSO, made a short speech to the men welcoming them to the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion. He referred to their late Battalion and Division in the highest terms, which pleased the men very much. He expressed the hope that in the course of a very short time, the men would feel as much at home in the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion as they had in the 156<sup>th</sup> Battalion.
- 16/3/18 The weather continued unusually favorable and a syllabus of training and sports was carried out.
- 17/3/18 Church of England and Roman Catholic Church Parades were held
- 18/3/18 Daily Routine Orders mentioned the award of 14 Military Medals and 3 Bars to this decoration. These were for men who had particularly distinguished themselves in the raids of March 4<sup>th</sup> and 6<sup>th</sup>.
- 19/3/18 Training was continued under ideal weather conditions. On the 22<sup>nd</sup> Lieut J McC Potts to reported as a reinforcement and was taken on the strength of the Battalion. On this date Capt AW Black was admitted to hospital sick.
- 22/3/18
- 23/3/18 The day was a busy one for all ranks as the Battalion is under orders to be ready to move at one hours notice. It was a beautiful day and the square in front of the Chateau where the Battalion was billeted presented a very busy and picturesque scene. Transports were being loaded at the Quartermaster's Stores and everywhere the men had moved their kits out of doors and were packing up. At 11.30 am orders were given that dinner be served at once and an early move was expected. However the Battlalion stood to during the afternoon and evening and at 10.00 pm orders came to move to NEUVILLE-ST-VAAST in the morning.
- The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion moved from NOEUX-LES-MINES during the afternoon and were billeted with us.
- NEUVILLE-ST-VAAST 24/3/18 The Battalion embussed at 7.00 am for HILLS CAMP, NEUVILLE-ST-VAAST. An advance party i/c of Major HW Cooper proceeded in the first lorry and took over the camp, and when the Battalion arrived at 8.00 am companies marched at once to their huts and in a very short time the men had settled down in their new quarters. HILLS CAMP was a very familiar spot as the Battalion had occupied it the first 10 days of February. The Transport arrived at 10.00 am and horse lines were located in rear of camp.
- A voluntary church service was held at 3.00 pm by Capt Davis of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Mounted Rifles. The parade largely attended.

Several rumours were current regarding the success of the German offensive which had commenced several days ago, and all ranks are more or less excited over the rumours. No official reports have been received and we have been unable to obtain newspapers for several days.

The Battalion Band rendered a concert in the afternoon and again in the evening. Both were very much appreciated by the men.

The Battalion was in Army Reserve here and were under one hour's notice.

25/3/18 The weather continued fine. A fatigue party of 100 men was sent to the 250<sup>th</sup> Tunneling Coy at 8.00 am. At 5.30 pm a party of 10 officers and 578 other ranks i/c of Capt AP Christmas left for the Forward Area for fatigue work. Every available man was on this party.

At 8.35 pm the following Priority message was received:

“All units will be prepared to move at one hour's notice from 5.30 am 26<sup>th</sup> onwards. All working parties cancelled. Working party will be recalled.”

Orders were also received to have all reserve bombs detonated.

The working party had reached rail head at 8.10 pm where they were taken over by the 4<sup>th</sup> Field Company, Canadian Engineers. They had been at work improving a defense line for two hours when the order to return reached them. They proceeded back at once, arriving at HILLS CAMP at 1.00 am, 26<sup>th</sup>.

26/3/18 The expected move did not come during the night. There was a heavy bombardment by our Artillery immediately in front of us, commencing at 4 am.

At 4.19 pm we received orders to Stand To for an immediate move and at 7.40 pm we received the order to move to BASSEUX. We passed the starting point at 9.20 pm and marched via ANZIN, ST. AUBIN, WAGNONLIEU, DAINVILLE STA., BEAUMETZ-LES-LOGES to BASSEUX, arriving at 5.00 am. Battalion Headquarters and “A” Coy were billeted in BASSEUX, the remainder of the Battalion in BAILLEULVAL. The Battalion is now in the 3<sup>rd</sup> Army.

BASSEUX 27/3/18 The day was spent in resting. The fatigue party of 100 men reported from the 250<sup>th</sup> Tunneling Coy at noon.

Announcement was made of the following awards:

Lieut-Colonel EW Jones DSO – Bar to DSO  
Capt AW Black )  
Lieut GE Burt )  
Lieut EB Smythe ) – Military Cross  
Lieut JR Smith )  
145710 Pte Seed RJ – DCM

28/3/18 the Battalion stood to from midnight, the men sleeping with boots and puttees on. A heavy German attack was being made on this front. The Battalion stood to on the Alarm Post from 11.00 pm to 1.00 am. The Guards are holding the front line in this sector and a counter attack at noon drove the enemy back. This front was quiet during late afternoon and evening.

At 7.30 pm we again stood to and at 9.30 pm we moved to WAILLY as per Operation Order #167. The transport moved to BELLACOURT where horse lines and a rear Headquarters were established.

SUPPORT LINE 29/3/18 The Battalion proceeded from WAILLY to relieve the KRR's in close Support north west of NEUVILLE-VITASSE and was finally in position at 7.00 am. Front very quiet.

FRONT LINE 30/3/18 During the night of 29/30 the Battalion moved into the front line relieving the 1<sup>st</sup> Gordons, 8<sup>th</sup> Kings Own, and 2<sup>nd</sup> Suffolk Battalions. (see OP Order #168, 29-3-18). The relief was complete at 3.40 am. Battalion Headquarters was located at M.24.c.1.9 and the companies were dispersed as detailed in Operation Order.

There was a heavy bombardment on our left and front at 4.30 am. It lasted an hour. At 1.00 pm the enemy shelled beyond Headquarters with gas shells. A light rain fell and at periods during the late afternoon and evening our artillery was quite active. The night passed quietly and the Battalion on our right joined up with our right flank making a continuous front.

31/3/18 From 3.30 am to 4.30 am our heavies and 4.5 Howitzers carried out from 5 to 10 minute shoots on NEUVILLE VITASSE and at 5.30 am a one minute shrapnel barrage was thrown on the Boche positions a the same point.

Rations were delivered nightly at Battalion Headquarters and were carried to the Front and Support Companies. A reserve of SAA and Bombs was also brought up.

Enemy aerial activity was marked during the morning.

The Brigade Major visited the Officer Commanding this morning and Lt-Col Rourke DSO of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion paid a visit in the afternoon.

Our casualties thus far during the tour are: Lieut FG Robinson wounded: 1 OR Killed and 16 ORs wounded.

SECRET  
Copy No.....

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 162

March 3<sup>rd</sup> 1918

Ref: 36.C.S.W. 1/10,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Bn in the LEFT Sub Section, LENS SECTION, on the night of 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup> March 1918
- 2 Units of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will relieve Units of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion as follows:
  - "B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "A" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn on the RIGHT
  - "C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "C" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn in the CENTER
  - "D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "D" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn on the LEFT
  - "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "B" Coy 19<sup>th</sup> Bn in SUPPORT

Sections will relive corresponding Sections  
Battalion Headquarters will be located at M.18.d.80.10  
RAP located at M.18.d.90.40.
- 3 One platoon of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion will be attached to the SUPPORT COMPANY for the tour. Special Party of "A" Company will remain in billets they now occupy.
- 4 Guides of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion will meet "B" Company at M.18.d.80.10 at 6.15 pm  
Guides for "C", "D" and "A" Companies will be at JUNCTION of CRAZY and CROCODILE TRENCHES AT 6.15 pm. These three Companies will move off in the order named, leading Company to be at JUNCTION of CRAZY and CROCODILE Trenches at 6.15 pm, allowing 15 minutes between Companies.

- 5 All Trench Stores, Maps, Photos, Defence Schemes, etc., relating to the Area will be taken over and receipts given, copies of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters, together with Disposition Sketches, by 6.00 am, 4<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 6 All Petrol tins will be turned in to Battalion Headquarters before 3.00 pm today.
- 7 Quartermaster will arrange to deliver rations (meat cooked) and 60 petrol tins of water to CROW DUMP by ration train during the tour.
- 8 OC SUPPORT COMPANY will detail three parties of 12 men with a senior NCO in charge to meet push trucks at his Headquarters nightly during the tour. These parties will carry the FRONT LINE COMPANIES rations and water. He will also detail 8 ORs to report nightly at CROW DUMP and push rations forward with push cars to SUPPORT COMPANY Headquarters, where they will be taken over by the carrying parties. This party will return trucks to CROW DUMP when empty.
- 9 Necessary dixies will be taken forward by Companies to make hot tea at night. Balance of cooking utensils will be piled at present ration dump by 5.30 pm and two cooks per company will take charge of and proceed with same to rear.
- 10 Completion of relief will be wired in using code word BRISTOL (and time)
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signature not legible)  
 Captain for  
 Major & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer		
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	8	Specialists
3	19 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn	9	Communication
4	"A" Company	10	MO
5	"B" Company	11	QM & TO
6	"C" Company	12	RSM
7	"D" Company	13	Office
		14-17	War Diary

Headquarters  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
 March 5<sup>th</sup>, 1918

Reference Sheet  
 C. SW.1 1/10,000

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
 NARRATIVE OF ENEMY RAID LENS SECTION (SEFT SUB-SECTION),  
 MORNING OF MARCH 4<sup>TH</sup>, 1918

By stern resistance and prompt action the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion foiled the efforts of the enemy when the Boche attempted a raid on a large scale against the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division front (LENS SECTION) at daybreak on March 4<sup>th</sup>, 1918. The hostile infantry operated under cover of liquid fire and were supported by the heaviest bombardment which has featured raiding operations on this front during the past winter. According to the statements of 55 RIR prisoners, four parties each of 60 and 40 from a special Storm-Troop Battalion were engaged in the raid. Though a party of Huns forced an entrance, and occupied our trenches for a short period, they were driven

out and retired to their line carrying their wounded, but leaving at least two score of dead in our trenches and "No Man's Land". None of our men were taken prisoner, but three of his seriously wounded were brought in by us from "No Man's Land", and they gave valuable information to the Intelligence Staff when interrogated. Our casualties were: Officers wounded 3; Other Ranks, killed, 3, wounded, 98.

At 5.54 o'clock, upon signal of a red flare, a heavy hostile barrage was laid on our front and support trenches. About four minutes later it lifted, and the attack of parties of the Infantry were launched. Heavy shelling of the whole Divisional front and active counter-battery work increased in intensity. Particular attention was paid to Battalion Headquarters. Our artillery, Trench Mortars and Machine Guns quickly responded to the SOS and accounted for many of the enemy's casualties.

The raid was chiefly directed against the front of our left ("D") Company – ALOOF Trench from a point N.13.d.55.90 (south-west of Divisional Boundary) to the railway at N.13.d.35.47. The party observed working along the railway embankment at the southern Company boundary, attempted to force an entrance into our line at this point was broken up by Lewis Gun and rifle fire. A party heading through the culvert in the railway embankment at N.13.d.68.35 was dispersed by Lewis Gun and rifle of "C" (the Centre) Company, directed by Lieut EB Smythe. The raiders presented another good target, when from twenty-five to thirty mounted the embankment near the culvert. Again the Boche endeavored to scale the embankment at the point of the salient in this Company's line, and threw "Cylindrical Sticks". Firing at such excellent targets and observing decisive results was greatly enjoyed by our men. Even "B" Company, on the right, had a share in registering the expensive toll which the enemy paid for his raid. Its Lewis Gunners and riflemen, firing enfilade, took full advantage of the appearance of the Huns on the embankment.

But the right hostile party, operating against our left flank, met with a small but temporary measure of success. Upwards of 75 reached our front line and using liquid fire lost no time in immediately working down COTTON C.T. towards the Company Headquarters, bombing dugouts and throwing "Cylindrical Sticks". At the point where this party entered, the personnel of the night posts had five minutes previously retired to the support line on account of the necessity of evacuating these posts before daylight. The observers in the nests at the time were driven out due to the might of the enemy's numbers. Also, a Lewis Gun in position in close support was put out of action during the preliminary bombardment.

The Officer Commanding the Company, Captain AW Black, quickly appreciating the situation, organized and led the counter-attack, which resulted in the Boche being ejected. They hastily retired into "No Man's Land", assisting their wounded.

The defeated enemy were followed by the rifle fire of our men. After the re-establishment of our line, the garrison was quickly re-organized and casualties, the more serious of which were dressed in the front line by Captain EA McCusker, MC, (Medical Officer), were evacuated. Our casualties in Officers were Captain AW Black, who returned to duty after having a head wound dressed, Lieuts HR Cluff and Lieut GE Burt. Both Platoon Commanders were seriously wounded, when directing the defense of the line. Lieut JHW Cobb (4<sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery) took an active part in the fight.

Major HE Pense, MC, who was returning to Battalion Headquarters after an inspection of the front, established an advanced Battalion Headquarters.

Lieut NJ MacCrimmon and Lieut DJ More, MC, Commanding "B" and "C" Companies respectively, kept Headquarters in touch with the situation on the Southern part of the Battalion front. Thirteen of the casualties (killed 2, wounded 11) were sustained by "A", "B" and "C" Companies. The support Company under Captain JG Wiggins, "Stood To" ready for counter attack if necessary.

Lieuts STS Sawell, MC, and RJ Gill reported to "D" Company to replace Lieuts Cluff and Burt. Many distinctive acts of gallantry will stand to the credit of Non-Commissioned Officers and men as well as Officers.

Lieut-Colonel EW Jones, DSO, Commanding, and the Battalion, received congratulatory messages from Brigadier General HDB Ketchen, CMG, (Commanding 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division) and Brigadier General R Rennie, CMG, MVO, DSO, (Commanding 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade).

SECRET  
Copy No.....

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 163

Mar 5<sup>th</sup>, 1918

Ref Sheet 36.c.S.W.1 1/10,000

1  
INFORMATION From information received in examination of prisoners and from our observations, it is believed that the enemy occupy houses at N.20.a. central.

INTENTION A raiding party will raid the houses in N.20.a.central for the purpose of securing identifications and for destroying the enemy moral.

PERSONNEL Lieut AW May  
Lieut JR Smith  
And  
65 Other Ranks

ZERO HOUR 2.15 am, Mar 6<sup>th</sup>, 1918

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at .....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	8	Communication
2	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde	9	MO
3	"A" Company	10	Lieut May
4	"B" Company	11	RSM
5	"C" Company	12	Office
6	"D" Company	13-15	War Diary
7	Specialists		

Appendix D

Reference Sheet  
36.??S.W. 1 1/10,000

NARRATIVE OF 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION RAID ON  
ENEMY TRENCHES, LENS SECTION (LEFT SUB-  
SECTION), ON MORNING OF MARCH 6<sup>TH</sup>, 1918.

One prisoner was captured, many known casualties and a severe shock to the morale of the enemy was inflicted by a raiding party of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion on the morning of March 6<sup>th</sup>. The prisoner, wearing two decoration ribbons, and of fine physique, was brought to our trenches wounded. He was of the 99<sup>th</sup> RIR. Documentary evidence and letters found on his person revealed valuable information. Though our casualties (in other ranks, 2 killed and 10 wounded) were heavy in comparison to the number of Boche taken alive, the raid may be registered as a success. The enterprise is considered a quick retaliatory measure for the large hostile raid against our positions on the morning of March 4<sup>th</sup>. The personnel of our parties is all accounted for. Most of the wounds were slight.

The assembly (in cellars at N.20.a.20.55) and all details were carried out as planned. The light at Zero hour (2.15 am) was satisfactory, and our artillery and trench mortar support all that had been called for. The enemy's line for one mile on each side of the point penetrated was at once in a state of alarm, his artillery responding, in retaliation, in five minutes time.

Lieut AW May, MC, who personally accounted for five of the enemy, captured the prisoner. He was OC Raid, and to him is attributed, to a very large degree, its successful issue. Again on this occasion he displayed great gallantry, his splendid example to all ranks being outstanding.

Our Artillery and Trench Mortar Batteries played on selected points of the Red Objective from Zero to Zero plus one minute, and treated targets on the Blue Objective from Zero plus one minute to Zero plus two minutes. For the following eight minutes a box barrage was placed around the objectives and the raiding parties operated. Commencing at Zero plus ten minutes a five minute Machine Gun barrage was placed on all avenues of approach.

With the assistance of screens and rifle attachment wire cutters, Lieut JR Smith led "A" Party of 35 other ranks through or over the wire and rushed the Red Objective (houses on road from N.20.a.40.70 to N.20.a.35.35). Slight resistance was encountered, but three Boche were observed withdrawing overland. They were killed. Two Lewis gun and two rifle bombing teams established covering posts at N.20.a.50.60, N.20.a.40.42, N.20.a.45.60 and N.20.a.50.45. Owing to the density of smoke and brickdust, and the thickness of wire between the houses, difficulty was experienced in locating dugouts, but all such, as well as cellars, were searched and bombed. Lieut Smith reports that, from sounds heard, he suspects that the enemy made use of tunnels through which to retire, but the entrances to these could not be located. "Cylindrical Sticks" were thrown at our party from the left, but the enemy at this point were silenced by our Lewis gun covering party.

Lieut May, with "B" Party, passing through "A" Party, rushed the houses at the Blue Objective (Houses at N.20.a.55.47, known as Boche Orderly Room), covering parties establishing posts at N.20.a.50.35 and N.20.a.55.55. Though an enemy headquarters was not located, four dugouts were entered. The occupants refused to come out, even when entered by Lieut May and his men. In the one at N.20.55.45, from which the prisoner was taken, nine Boche are known to have been killed before the dugout was by phosphorous and Mills bombs. Five fleeing Germans were cut down by our Lewis gun fire. Upon warning of the time of return by a signal rocket (red over green over yellow), fired by "A" Party, Lieut May's party, after inflicting as much damage as possible, withdrew to the assembly position, followed by "A" Party, with our casualties. Upon a second rocket signal, our barrage fell again upon the objectives.

As soon as the hostile barrage had subsided the raiders returned to our trenches. An advanced Battalion Headquarters and RAP was established at N.19.b.90.48 thirty minutes before Zero hour. Our companies holding the line sustained no casualties. The prisoner was escorted to Brigade Headquarters for interrogation.

SECRET  
Copy No.....

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 164

Mar 6<sup>th</sup>, 1918

Ref 36.C.S.W. 1/20,000  
36.B.S.E. 1/20,000

1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by the 29<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in the Front Line, Left Sub-Section, LENS SECTION on the night of Mar 6<sup>th</sup>, 1918 and will move into Corps Reserve at GOUY SERVINS.

2 Units of the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be relieved by Units of 29<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn as follows:

“A” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn by “C” Coy 29<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
“B” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn by “A” Coy 29<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
“C” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn by “B” Coy 29<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
“D” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn by “D” Coy 29<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn

Headquarters Sections will be relieved by corresponding units.

3 Upon completion of relief, the Battalion will proceed to entrain at RED MILL SIDING, M.27.d.70.70. Lieut N Nicholson is appointed entraining Officer, and will report to Lieut STEGMAN at Brigade Headquarters at 6.00 pm 6<sup>th</sup> inst.

4 Guides will be furnished for incoming unit at the rate of one per Battalion Headquarters, one per Headquarters Sections, one per Company Headquarters and one per Platoon. They will report to Lieut Riley at Battalion headquarters by 5.00 pm and will then proceed to the JUNCTION of CRAZY and CROCODILE Trenches (M.23.B.50.55) to meet incoming Battalion.

5 The Officer Commanding, Company 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn under orders 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will provide as guides, 1 Officer, 1 OR per Company Headquarters and 1 OR per platoon to report to Headquarters 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn LIEVEN, at 5.00 pm and will proceed and guide corresponding company 27<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn to billets in LIEVEN vacated by them on 4<sup>th</sup> inst. This Company (19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn) will upon relief of units to which they are attached, proceed to entrain as per para 3, remaining under orders of the 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn until reaching SUMMIT SIDING where they will detrain and report back to their own unit, at CANADA CAMP, LA HAIE.

6 All Trench Stores, Maps, Photos, Defence Schemes, etc will be turned over on relief, receipts taken, duplicates of which will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 8.00 am 7<sup>th</sup> Inst.

7 Officers baggage, Lewis Guns and Cooking Utensils will be carried out to LENS-LEIVEN ROAD, ad approx M.23.D.10.80, and placed for collection by limbers. Guards will be in charge of same. Lewis Gun NCO will supervise loading of guns, and No 1 and 2 Lewis Gunners will proceed with limbers to billets.

8 ALL Petrol cans will be carried out with the exception of the RSM turning over 25 tins as trench stores.



- 9 The Transport Officer and Quartermaster will arrange for transport also for Officer's chargers to be at LENS-LEIVEN ROAD approx M.23.d.10.80 by 8.30 pm.
- 10 Present area will be left in a clean and sanitary condition, and certificates to that effect will be obtained from relieving units.
- 11 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters by code word "BANJO".

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)  
 Captain  
 Asst/Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at .....

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	MO
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	11	TO & QM
3	29 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn	12	RSM
4 to 7	Companies	13	Coy 19 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn
8	Specialists	14	Office
9	Communication	15 – 17	War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

DECORATIONS AWARDED 18-3-18

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

454156 Sgt Cattanach, WJ (MM)  
 59053 Cpl DB Bell, MM  
 59127 Sgt C Byrne, MM

MILITARY MEDAL

454549 Sgt WP Doolan  
 726039 Sgt S Cooper  
 636523 Pte (A/L/Cpl) H Ashcroft  
 400596 Sgt WS Taylor  
 636689 Cpl T Baird  
 59420 Sgt E Hanrahan  
 636688 Pte R Creighton  
 805079 Pte TH Hames  
 455558 L/C CR Kirkland  
 59509 Sgt A Berry  
 59690 Sgt WH Murney  
 1263320 Pte AL Johnson  
 445712 L/C R DeRochie (*note this number should be 455712*)  
 59671 Pte WH Moore

SECRET

Copy No 18  
23<sup>rd</sup> March 1918

Reference Sheet  
36.B S.E 1/20,000

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 165

1. a The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to NEUVILLE ST VAAST, and occupy HILLS CAMP, tomorrow 24<sup>th</sup> instant.
- b Units will be prepared to load on lorries at Battalion Orderly Room, commencing at 6.30 am, in the following order; "A" Coy, "B" Coy, "C" Coy, "D" Coy, Communication and Specialist Sections, Battalion Headquarters, Brass Band, Pipe Band, Medical Section, Quartermaster Section.
- c Dress: Marching Order
- d Major Cooper will proceed on the first lorry and take over HILLS CAMP, where units will go into huts previously occupied during the first 10 days of February.
- e Transport will move independently to HILLS CAMP, where it will receive instructions regarding Lines, passing starting point (CROSS ROADS at W.5.c.60.70) at ?.00 am. Route: VILLERS AU BOIS – MONT ST ELOI – NEUVILLE ST VAAST.
- 2 a All Officers' baggage and mess outfits will be collected at "Canada Row" huts and Battalion Orderly Room by 6.15 am.
- b Extra blankets will be transported by lorry as notified in our BIX.365/765, of this date.
- c Sergt Mantell and 2 Other Ranks will remain in charge, until further notice, of surplus baggage and stores at the billet at the Quartermaster Stores.
- 3 Billets and area will be left in a clean and sanitary condition. The Quartermaster will obtain a clearance certificate from the Town Major to this effect and will also take receipts from him for all surplus training material.
- 4 Upon arrival at HILIS CAMP units will submit to Battalion Orderly Room Marching In States.
- 5 The Battalion will remain in readiness to move on one hour's notice, and all ranks will be warned that they are confined to camp.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by runner at 11.30 pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	Transport Section
2	"A" Company	10	Quartermaster Section
3	"B" Company	11	RSM
4	"C" Company	12	Brass Band
5	"D" Company	13	Pipe Band
6	Specialist Section	14	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
7	Communication Section	15	File
8	Medical Section	16-18	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 18  
26<sup>th</sup> March, 1918

Reference Sheet  
LENS 11 1/100,000

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 166

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will march, with the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade group, to-night 26/27<sup>th</sup> March to BAILLEUVAL and occupy billets in that area
- 2 Starting point – Cross roads – SOUCHEZ-ARRAS and ECURIE-ANZIN roads
- 3 Route – ANZIN-DAINVILLE-BEAUMETZ-les-LOGES-BASSEUZ-BAILLEULVAL
- 4 Battalion will pass starting point at 9.20 pm
- 5 The Battalion will parade on Battalion parade ground at 7.45 pm. Dress: Heavy Marching Order. Distances of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies and sections en route, and 200 yards between rear unit and Transport
- 6 The Quartermaster, Company QM Sgts, 1 NCO for Headquarters, Communication and Specialist Sections and 1 NCO for Transport will proceed ahead and report to Staff Captain “Q”, 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, at BASSEUX at 10.00 pm, to arrange billets.
- 7 All Officer's baggage and mess outfits will be loaded at QM Stores by 7.30 pm. All extra blankets (rolled in bundles of 10s and labeled) will be turned over to the Quartermaster at his stores by 7.30 pm, and will be left under guard until loaded on lorries at 10.00 pm for transport to new area at BAILLEULVAL
- 8 Billets and area will be left in a clean and sanitary condition. Lieut Nicholson will obtain a clearance certificate from the Town Major.
- 9 At BAILLEULVAL, the Battalion will remain in readiness to move on 1 hour's notice.

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 6.45 pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	Medical Officer
2-5	“A”, “B”, “C” and “D” Companies	11	RSM
6	Specialist Section	12	Pipe Band
7	Communication Section	13	Brass Band
8	Quartermaster	14	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
9	Transport Officer	15	File
		16-18	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 15  
28<sup>th</sup> March, 1918

Reference Sheet  
LENS 11, 1/100,000

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 167

- 1 The Battalion will move, with the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, to-night, 28/29<sup>th</sup> March, to WAILLY – FICHEUX Area.
- 2 Starting Point \_ Church, BASSEUX
- 3 Battalion will pass Starting Point at 9.30 pm
- 4 Route, - BASSEUX – BEUMETZ-les-LOGES – WAILLY
- 5 Battalion will assemble at Alarm Post at 9.30 pm. Dress: Marching Order with greatcoats. Transport (already loaded), will move 200 yards in rear. Company Lewis Gun limbers and Pack Animals will move in rear of their respective Companies.
- 6 Major Cooper and Lieut Sawell will report to a representative of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade at Church, WAILLY, at 11.00 pm, and arrange details re disposition of the Battalion for the night.
- 7 “B” Echelon of Transport and personnel of QM Stores will receive instructions at BEAUMETZ-les-LOGES regarding billets.
- 8 Billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition.

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 8.45 pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	11	RSM
2-5	“A”, “B”, “C” & “D” Companies	12	Pipe Band
6	Specialist Section	13	Brass Band
7	Communication Section	14	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
8	Quartermaster	15	File
9	Transport Officer	16-18	War Diary
10	Medical Officer		

SECRET

Copy No 17  
29<sup>th</sup> March, 1918

Reference Sheet  
51.B, 1/40,000

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 168

- 1 In accordance with the relief of the 76<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, to-night, March 29/30<sup>th</sup>, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the Battalions at present holding our LEFT Battalion Frontage and Close SUPPORT – 1<sup>ST</sup> GORDONS (HQ in N.13.a.5.0), 8<sup>th</sup> KINGS OWN (HQ M.23.b. Central), and 2<sup>nd</sup> SUFFOLKS (HQ N.13.a.5.9)
- 2 BOUNDARIES: Brigade SOUTHERN (Approx) M.30.b.7.9 – M.20.Central – Crucifix in R.20.c.  
Brigade NORTHERN, N.13.a.9.9 – M.17.a.4.5 – M.11.c.1.0, along Grid Line  
WESTWARD  
BOUNDARY BETWEEN BATTALIONS – N.13.c.9.0 – M.15.d.4.0
- 3 Upon completion of relief the Battalion will be disposed as under:  

Bn HQ at M.24.c.1.9  
“A” Company, (RIGHT FRONT and CLOSE SUPPORT)  
“B” Company, (LEFT FRONT)  
“C” Company, (RIGHT SUPPORT in M.18.c & d)  
“D” Company, (LEFT SUPPORT in M.18.a & b)  
RAP at M.24.c.1.9
- 4 The Battalion to be relieved will furnish guides as under, which will report at CARLYLE LINES, (M.17,c.7.7) at 10.00 pm, in charge of an Officer of the 76<sup>th</sup> Brigade. Lieut Nicholson will report at CARLYLE LINES at 9.45 pm to ensure arrangements.  

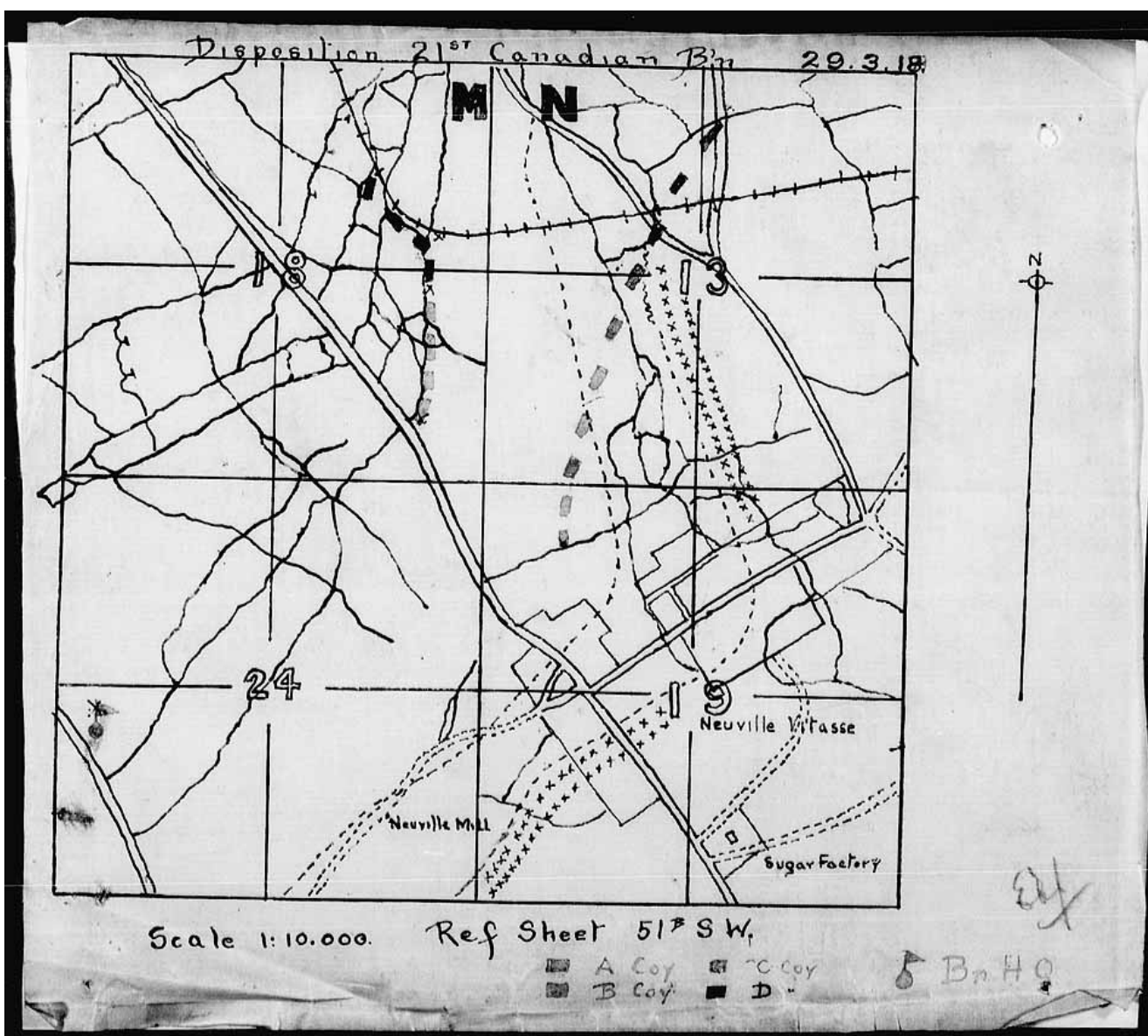
For 2 FRONT LINE COMPANIES, 8 guides will be supplied  
For RIGHT SUPPORT COMPANY (“C”), 2 guides will be supplied  
LEFT SUPPORT COMPANY (“D”), will follow RIGHT SUPPORT COMPANY and place itself as per para 3
- 5 Dress will be Fighting Order with greatcoats. Packs and blankets will be piled on road at CARLYLE LINES, by 9.50 pm for transport to Rear.
- 6 Rations and water will be delivered on Road at CARLYLE LINES by 9.15 pm, and will be picked up by Companies and Sections before proceeding forward with guides as per para 4.
- 7 The SOS will be 2 Reds and 2 Greens fired in succession. These will be taken over from Units relieved. 35 1” Very Lights will be issued to each Company with rations.
- 8 Completion of relief will be notified to Bn HQ by runner. Two runners per Company will report to Bn HQ at time of delivery of relief reports.
- 9 Disposition States with rough sketches will be forwarded to Bn HQ by 7.00 am 30<sup>th</sup> inst. Returns and reports in accordance with Battalion table previously issued will be submitted to Bn HQ.

ACKNOWLEDGE

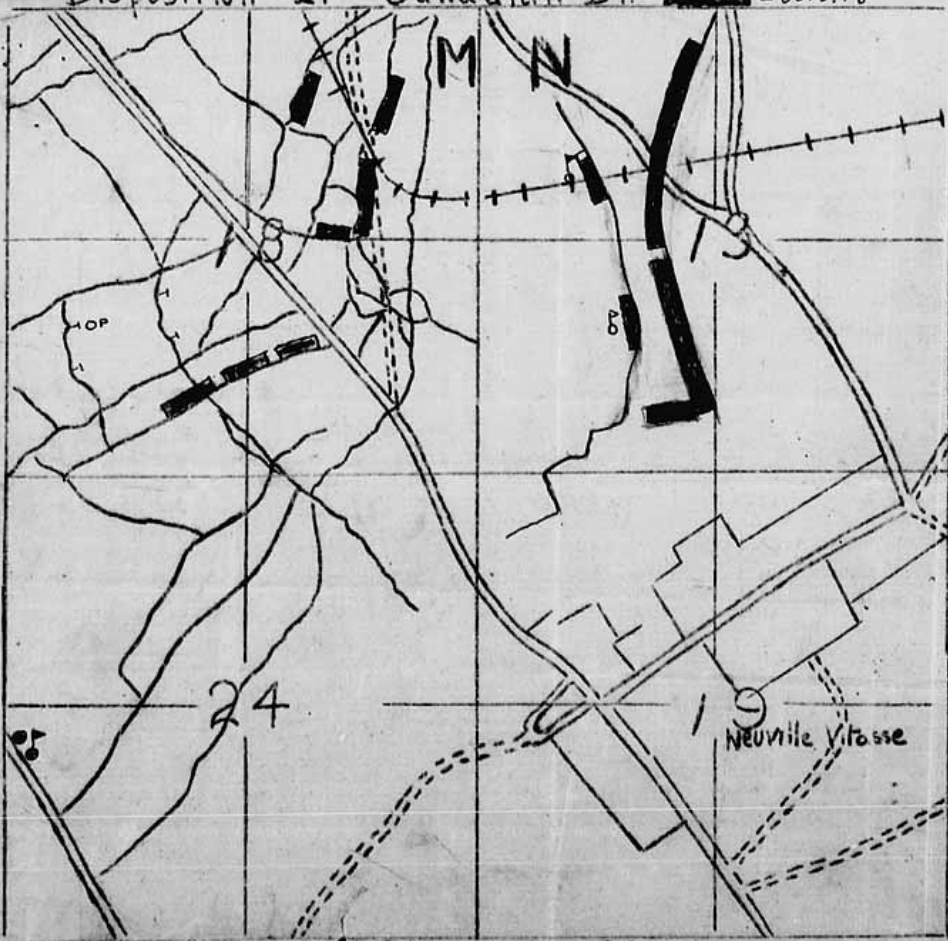
(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by runner at 8.30 pm

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	Medical Officer
2	"A" Company	11	RSM
3	"B" Company	12	Pipe Band
4	"C" Company	13	Brass Band
5	"D" Company	14	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
6	Specialist Section	15	File
7	Communication Section	16-18	War Diary
8	Quartermaster		
9	Transport Officer		

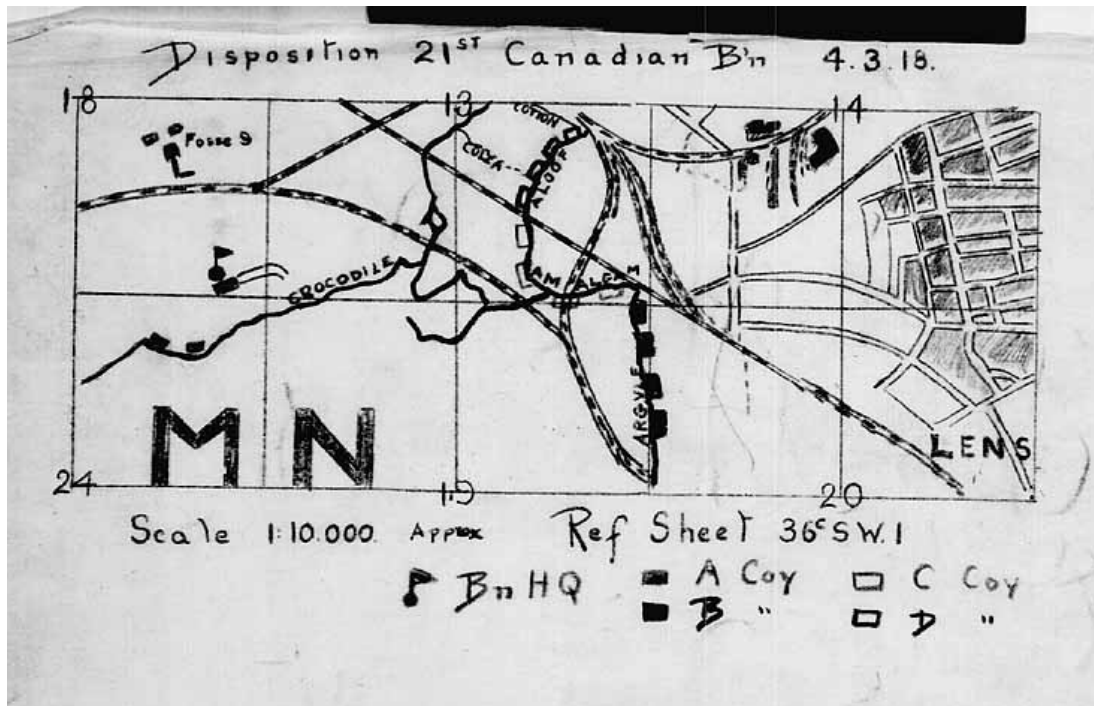
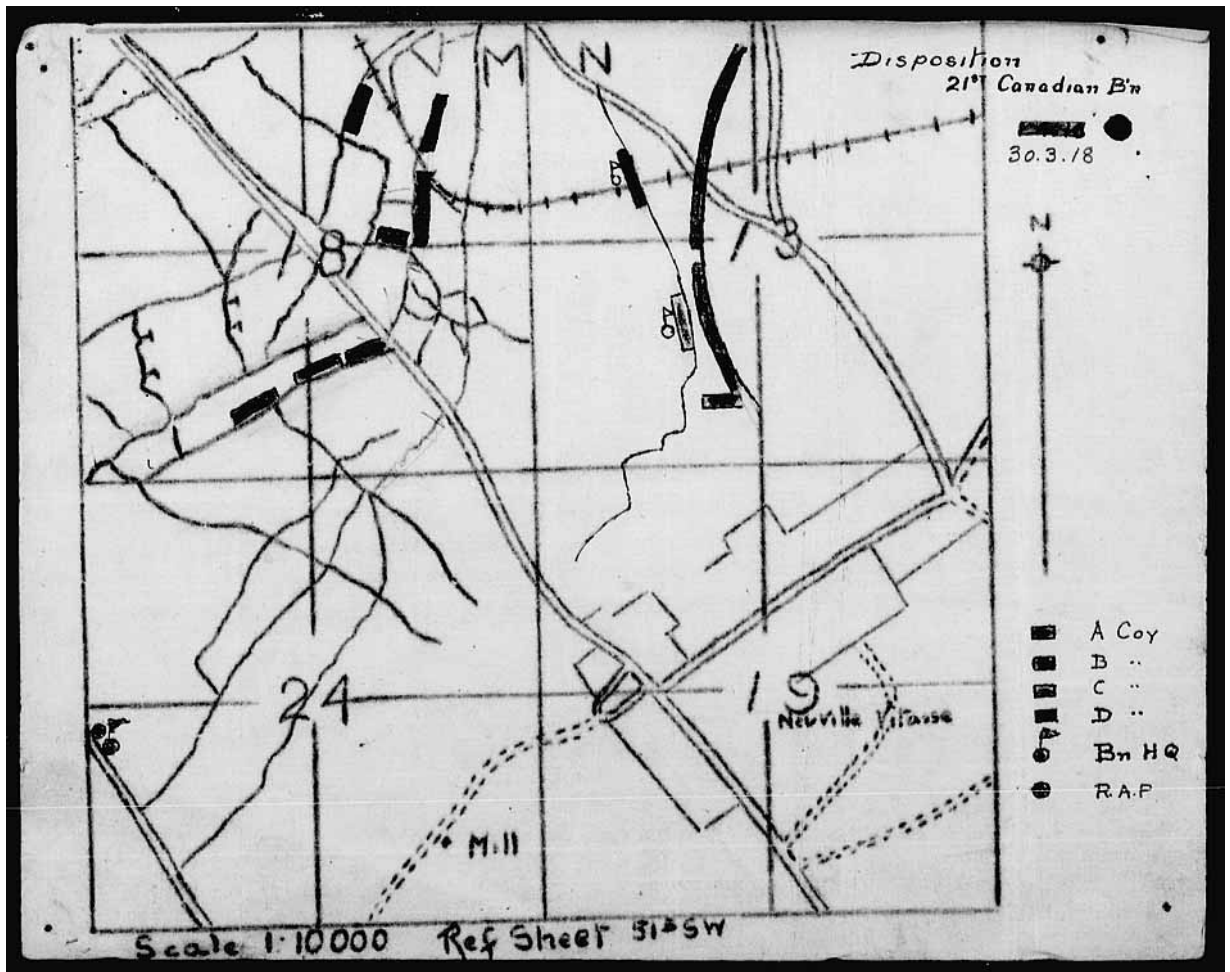


Disposition 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn - 30.3.18



- A Coy
- B ..
- C ..
- D ..
- B'n HQ
- R.A.P.

Scale 1:10000 Ref Sheet 51<sup>B</sup>SW





EXTRACT from TORONTO "GLOBE"

CURRIE TELLS  
OF  
LAST RAID

GERMANS COMPLETELY BEATEN IN  
EFFORTS TO GET INFORMATION

(Canadian Associated Cable)

LONDON, March 10. - General Curried writes Sir Edward Kemp, on March 6:  
"Yesterday morning the enemy attempted a very large raid against us. Nearly three hundred of his specially picked assaulting troops raided our trenches. He put on a tremendous artillery fire, stretching for many hundred yards on each side of his point of entry. No sooner had he entered our lines then he was immediately counter-attacked and driven off. Our chaps killed a great many Boches in the trenches, and during his retirement many Germans were lying dead in No Man's Land. Not a man of ours is missing, so he failed absolutely in his mission, which we learn from prisoners was himself and gain information. Furthermore, the troops which he raided went back at him last night, entered his lines, killed many, and brought back a prisoner. Our losses were very light. The weather is quite fine, and everyone I working very hard.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY <i>OF</i> INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

Front  
Lines

1/4/18 This tour of the Battalion in the front line north-west of NEUVILLE VITASSE (left brigade, left Sub-Section) terminated on the night of April 1/2, when we were relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. The 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade continued holding the line on the left, but the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, on the right, was relieved by the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion.

The first of April was uneventful until 9.30 pm. Our artillery carried out the usual harassing fire during the night and the heavies fired on targets at NEUVILLE VITASSE for fifteen minutes commencing at 5.30 am. Hostile artillery paid particular attention to our rear area at 12.00 noon, 2.00 pm and again at 6.30 pm, when the relief was soon expected, enemy artillery suddenly opened on our trenches in M18 and N13. This hostile activity was confined to our battalion frontage, "C" Coy and "D" Coy (in support) being chiefly affected. Our companies, in poor trenches, or an irregular line of shell holes, had no protection, and consequently, suffered many casualties from the barrage. The suspicion of a possible enemy attack or raid was incorrect. Our artillery response was timely and effective, but it was not until 10.10 pm that the front was again reported quiet. During the bombardment all available information was communicated to Brigade and a short report, with an estimate of casualties, was transmitted by Fullerphone at 11.15 pm.

Our right support company ("C") suffered most from the enemy's bombardment. Three men were killed and 22 wounded. The total casualties of the Battalion were: One officer (Major HW Cooper) slightly wounded, at duty, 6 ORs killed, 2 ORs died of wounds, and 51 ORs wounded.

Sgt WJ Cattanach MM, (Acting CSM of B Coy) was one of the killed. The loss of this NCO was deeply regretted, not only by the men of his own company, who knew him best, but by officers and men of long standing in the Battalion. His record had been an excellent one and his loyalty and devotion to duty during the most trying times had been marked.

Owing to the enemy bombardment, the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, proceeding to our relief, received orders from Brigade to "Stand By". Consequently, it was late in arriving for the relief which was not complete until 5.20 am on the 2<sup>nd</sup>. Although the enemy shelled consistently over the whole area throughout the night, the relief was affected without further casualties.

(see OO 169 attached)

Support  
Line

2/4/18 Upon relief the Battalion moved into support of the left Sub-Section, and was disposed in Telegraph Hill Switch. The 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion was on our right. Our "A" and "B" Companies took over the front line, while "C" and "D" Companies were in the trenches in close support. Battalion Headquarters was located at M.15.a.50.25, with the Communication and Specialist Sections in the old trenches around this point. A Battalion Observation Post was situated near the railway cutting at M.15.c.70.28, and our observers reported much movement in the enemy's lines, chiefly back of NEUVILLE VITASSE (see map attached).

All ranks took the opportunity for a day's rest after a rather strenuous tour, under trying conditions, in the front line.

On this date three new officers reported to Forward HQ, viz Capt HH Edwards, Lieut PH Wills, and Lieut GD Woodcock, all formerly of the 156<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division. They were posted to "D", "A", and "C" Companies respectively.

3/4/18 Considerable enemy activity was observed on our front during the day. The guns on both sides were engaged in counter battery work and organized shoots.

Our observers at the OP saw considerable movement on the WANCOURT-CHERISY Road. Two parties of 200 to 250 each were observed. These targets were engaged by our artillery and the parties dispersed. Some horse and motor transport was also seen.

Aircraft was also very active on both sides. Enemy planes attempted several times to cross our lines, but each time they were driven back by Lewis Gun and Ante-Aircraft fire.

Daily Orders of this date announced the award of a bar to the Military Medal to No 59127 Sgt C Byrne.

During the night a working party of 350, under supervision of the 6<sup>th</sup> Field Company Canadian Engineers, improved the trenches of Telegraph Hill Switch.

4/4/18 The day passed quietly, a slight rain falling at intervals, and the night closed down very dark and heavy with fog and rain. A party similar to that of the previous night, continued the work on our trenches.

At 7.55 pm a message was received from Brigade to the effect that the enemy had attacked in force south of the SOMME and from information of prisoners, it was expected that the offensive would be resumed on the entire front immediately.

In view of the above, preparations were made to meet an attack which would probably be delivered the following morning. The Commanding Officer called a meeting of Company and Section Commanders at 9.30 pm, in the course of which the situation was fully discussed, and plans made.

A further wire was received at 11.40 pm stating that the enemy had gained a little ground south of the SOMME, and that it was quite likely that he would attack astride the SCARPE in the morning.

5/4/18 The Battalion was under orders to hold, at all costs, the ridge line which the Telegraph Hill Switch commanded. The Scheme of defense was reviewed and "Stand To" ordered for 5.00 am.

Nothing unusual transpired during the night, the enemy being chiefly concerned with scattered shelling of the rear area. But at 5.00 am the hostile activity became more intense, and the artillery positions in rear of us were given special attention. At 6.00 am gas shells were reported to be falling in the neighborhood of our Regimental Aid Post, also around Battalion HQ, though it was not necessary to adjust respirators. Our batteries were the main targets for this gassing, but our guns were silent.

At 8.55 am our OP reported heavy shelling of our forward area and on our own trenches, also some bursts of Machine Gun fire. At 9.00 am our artillery commenced a slow rate of fire which gradually increased. At 9.05 am an SOS was reported from the direction of the division on our left, but by 9.15 am the enemy fire had slackened on our front, and our guns closed down to normal at 9.20 am. The situation resumed normal and the Battalion "Stood Down" at 10.00 am. Our casualties were 2 ORs killed and 4 ORs wounded, all of "A" Coy.

The Battalion having been ordered to be prepared to be relieved by the 22<sup>nd</sup> (French Canadian) Battalion on the night of the 5/6, arrangements were made accordingly.

In view of the instructions received regarding the action of the Brigade in Divisional Reserve, Major HW Cooper and 12 Battalion scouts reconnoitered, in the evening, the section of the firing line of the Purple System (running through R.18.a, M.13.d, and M.19.b & d) which would be occupied by the Battalion in the event of hostile attack. Instructions outlining this move were issued upon completion of relief.

Our relief by the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion was carried out without delay (see OO No 170 attached). It was reported to Brigade as complete at 11.50 pm.

The total casualties for the tour in the trenches (front line and support) were as follows:

2 officers wounded (Major HW Cooper, and Lieut FG Robinson)  
11 ORs killed  
2 ORs Died of Wounds  
72 ORs wounded

WAILLY 6/4/18

Upon relief, the Battalion proceeded to WAILLY where billets, in the north-eastern section of the village, which had been vacated by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, were occupied. Battalion HQ was located at R.22.b.95.95. Before "turning in" all ranks were served with a hot meal, which was very welcome on account of the restrictions regarding cooking, enforced in the forward area. The Transport and Quartermaster's Stores and other rear details remained at BELLACOURT.

6/4/18 The four days spent at WAILLY were devoted to pay, bathing, refitting, and reconnaissances to  
9/4/18 of the Purple System, both of our divisional front and that of the Guard's Divisional front on our right. Parties were also sent to the forward area to reconnoiter the MERCATEL sub-section of the Right Brigade Front which we were to take over on the night of April 10/11. We had received a warning order to this effect.

The Regimental Canteen was opened and the stock was quickly bought up, the supply of biscuits, chocolate, cigarettes, and tinned goods lasting but a few hours.

On April 6<sup>th</sup> the Purple System of our Divisional front was again reconnoitered, special attention being given to the Sub-Section which we were under orders to occupy. (Firing line situated in R.18.a, M.13.d, and M.19.b & d). Orders were later amended to the effect that the Battalion would assemble in the Reserve Line at R.17.b & d.

On April 7<sup>th</sup> bathing parades were carried out at BELLACOURT, companies and sections marching fully equipped. The weather was fine, although a heavy rain had fallen during the night. On this date a party proceeded to the Headquarters of the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, and reconnoitered the Sub-Section held by that unit which we had been warned to be prepared to relieve.

On the 7<sup>th</sup> a detail of 2 officers (lieutenants RJ Gill and GAF Riley) and 59 ORs proceeded on detached duty with the Divisional Working Party. The Sub-Party of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, of which Lieut Gill was in charge, was billeted at WAILY. This party was employed nightly in constructing defences and improving those already built on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Front.

During the night of April 7/8 there was increased Artillery activity on the 7<sup>th</sup> Corps front. The heavy batteries in position in and about WAILLY were in action for some hours.

On April 8<sup>th</sup> rain fell at 9.00 am and continued intermittently throughout the day. On this date Lieut-Colonel EW Jones, DSO, who had been ill for upwards of a week, was admitted to hospital, and Major HE Pense, MC, assumed command of the Battalion. Major GSS Bowerbank, MC, took over, temporarily, the duties of Adjutant.

At 6.00 pm on the 8<sup>th</sup>, a draft of 44 ORs reported from the CCRC as reinforcements to the Battalion. The majority of these men came from the 164<sup>th</sup> Battalion of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division. After reading of the Standing Orders, the acting Commanding Officer spoke to the reinforcements, referring briefly to the history of the Battalion, the present situation on the Western Front, and expressing the hope that they would soon feel at home in this unit, and that their work and conduct would always reflect upon it, the highest credit.

April 9<sup>th</sup> was ushered in dark and cloudy, but cleared up somewhat in the afternoon.

During the day a party, representative of all companies and battalion scouts, reconnoitered the reserve line of the Purple System of the Center Sector, VI Corps. This sector was held by the Guards Division, on our right. The line which we reconnoitered was located east of BLAIREVILLE and RANSART.

FRONT LINE 9/4/18 In accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade O.?????? our relief of the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion was carried out on the night of April 9/10. Our Brigade, having taken over the right section from the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion was disposed in the left Subsection. Our flanking units were the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade) on the left, and the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the right. On the night of the 12/13, when the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade took over the left Brigade front from the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion moved in on our left, relieving the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. During the tour the 2<sup>nd</sup> British Division relieved the Guards Division on the right of our Brigade. (see Map and OO No 171 attached)

Owing to the mist, combined with the darkness of the night, completion of relief was somewhat late, it being reported to Brigade at 11.50 pm. Small parties of our Battalion had spent the previous night in the line. Every assistance and all available information was given by the 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion. Our strength on taking over was 23 officers and 607 ORs.

During the relief an unusual incident was reported. Soon after "B" Coy (in reserve) were in position an unknown man, from all appearances a Canadian private soldier, was found in the trenches. He was at once placed under arrest, and particulars sent to Battalion Headquarters. Later, when examined, he proved to be 1090310, Pte Yerex, formerly of the 164<sup>th</sup> Battalion, 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division. He admitted that he had crossed from England with a draft for the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, and, although not warned, had accompanied a party of reinforcements sent up to this unit from the CCRC. He had later "sneaked" his way from WAILLY into the line. Yerex was returned to the Base. Although the spirit which prompted this soldier's irregular despatch to the line was appreciated, the incident created considerable amusement particularly among the older members of the Battalion.

10/4/18 The Battalion spent seven days in the line. A warning order that the Brigade to would be relieved on the night of April 12/13 by a Brigade of the 5<sup>th</sup> British Division, was 17/4/18 cancelled on the afternoon of the 10<sup>th</sup>.

Weather conditions were favorable and "C" and "D" Companies were not relieved in the front line. The trenches newly constructed, were taken over in good condition, and were improved upon each night. Upon orders from Brigade, a support trench was dug, approximately 200 yards behind the front line. Parties of "A" and "B" Companies were employed nightly on this work, also a party of 2 officers and 100 ORs of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, which was in Brigade reserve. Before we were relieved this trench – known as the MARCATEL SWITHCH – was completed, and partially wired in rear of the right company ("C").

Owing to the enemy's possibilities for observation, and the absence of communication trenches the front line companies were out of touch with Battalion Headquarters (except by Fullerphone and DIII) during the hours of daylight.

The defense scheme was carefully explained to all ranks, and special vigilance exercised in view of the unsettled situation on the Western Front. "A" Company, at MERCATEL, was issued special instructions regarding the defense of the high ground around MERCATEL.

The Battalion front was actively patrolled each night, Lieuts JR Smith, AM Scott and JM Potts being in command of the battle patrols, which were each composed of 2 Battalion Scouts and 18 ORs with a Lewis Gun. "A" and "B" Companies detailed these patrols, and a percentage of the newer men had their first experiences of "No Man's Land". In addition to these two battle patrols nightly, the companies in the front line detailed their own protective patrols of 7 ORs each.

During the tour three German prisoners were secured, and two escaped British prisoners, taken by the enemy during his offensive at the end of March, were observed endeavoring to return to our lines. All were despatched to Brigade Headquarters without delay, and upon interrogation, gave valuable information regarding hostile dispositions and probable intentions.

A protective patrol of "D" Company was responsible for securing the two prisoners in M.30.C at 4.45 am on the 11<sup>th</sup>. These German Non Commissioned Officers, having apparently lost their direction in the mist, endeavored to return to their lines when challenged by our patrol. But 59021 Pte CR Armstrong, at once grasping the situation, outflanked them and forced their surrender. After handing the prisoners over at his Company Headquarters, he returned to "No Man's Land" and located one of his comrades who was reported missing from the patrol. Pte Armstrong's excellent work was rewarded by the immediate award of a Military Medal.

The prisoners were of the 119<sup>th</sup> RIR 26<sup>th</sup> Division (normal)

Lieut Scott's battle patrol, when examining a suspected night post of the enemy, captured a wounded prisoner at M.36.C.3.6 on the night of April 13/14. A hostile party of 6 or 8 was observed at M.36.C.2.8 (approximately) and were immediately pursued. All but two made good their escape. These were fired upon by our patrol, and one 180<sup>th</sup> RIR 26<sup>th</sup> Div) wounded in the shoulder, was carried back via our "C" Company Headquarters to the Regimental Aid Post, and was at once despatched to Brigade by Ambulance. The other German could not be located, although Lieut Scott and our patrolmen searched the area for 25 minutes after he was fired upon. The night was dark with a ground mist.

Between 2.45 am and 3.10 am on the 15<sup>th</sup> the two escaped British prisoners – No 10101 L/Cpl Ashby (1<sup>st</sup> West Yorks) and No 30891 Pte JH Botten (2<sup>nd</sup> South Staffords) – were brought back to our lines. Lieut Smith's patrol encountered the former, who had become separated from his comrades after his identity had been confirmed, L/Cpl Ashby's expression of delight at being once again in British hands threatened to result in a "jollification" in "No Man's Land". Pte Botten worked his way up to the wire of our right company. Early that night these men had escaped from a camp at (*blank*) and had succeeded in making good their return to our lines. They gave information regarding the enemy's forces opposite our front. The advanced lines, they said, were lightly held, and there were no indications of preparations for a hostile offensive.

(see copy of Patrol report and extract from Divisional Intelligence summary)

Until noon on the 14<sup>th</sup> our front was covered by the 6<sup>th</sup> Brigade CFA. From noon onward the Right Group, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Artillery, under Lieut-Colonel JK MacKay, DSO, was supplemented by the 76<sup>th</sup> Army Brigade RFA, commanded by Lieut-Colonel WY Rogers, DSO. This brigade, which was allotted our front to support, had recently returned from Italy, where it had been in action on the River PIAVE, and was, in all respects, in good condition.

The morning of the 10<sup>th</sup> was quiet, the visibility was very poor owing to a heavy ground mist. The night of the 10/11 also passed quietly. Commencing at 4.55 am on the 11<sup>th</sup> gas shells were thrown in rear of Battalion Headquarters and continued until 6.15 am, occasioning the use of Small Box Respirators for a short period only. At 6.50 am hostile shelling of a heavy character was placed on the front line of the Battalion on our left, and continued until 9.00 am, when it reached it's maximum strength. At this juncture our artillery opened up and placed a heavy barrage opposite the line affected. At 9.00 am our OP notified Battalion Headquarters that a party of 20 of the enemy were visible at NEUVILLE VITASSE. Brigade were notified and the party was dispersed by our Artillery. In consequence of our barrage the enemy fire slackened and at 9.40 am ceased. Towards 1.30 pm visibility improved and intermittent hostile shelling took place between 2.15 pm and 5.20 pm. Aeroplane activity was fairly brisk. Two enemy planes hovered over our lines for a period of 20 minutes; they were engaged by our Lewis and Ant-Aircraft guns. At 6.00 pm Major HD Fearman DSO, and Capt L Younger MC, (GS 2<sup>nd</sup> Cdn Div) visited Battalion Headquarters. The night was very dark and special bursts of harassing fire were conducted by our artillery extending from 11.15 pm to 12.35 am.

On April 12<sup>th</sup> visibility was good from early morning and several enemy balloons were up, also some hostile planes. There was no artillery activity. Brigadier General R Rennie CMG, MVO, DSO, and Capt MS Gooderham visited Battalion Headquarters at 10.00 am. The afternoon passed quietly visibility remaining good. At 7.20 pm six enemy planes passed over our lines flying low, and were energetically engaged by the Lewis Gun and Ante-Aircraft fire. The night was also quiet.

The morning of the 13<sup>th</sup> broke extremely cold and misty, brightening towards noon. Brigadier General Rennie CMG, MVO, DSO, again visited Battalion Headquarters at 11.20 am. Later Lieut-Colonel JK MacKay DSO of the Divisional Artillery also called. The day passed quietly, the atmosphere remaining extremely cold.

On the 14<sup>th</sup> there was slight artillery activity, a few shells were placed in the rear vicinity of Battalion Headquarters.

The 15<sup>th</sup> continued very quiet, the weather remaining cold and clear with good visibility. Major Coulter, together with 4 officers of the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, called at Battalion Headquarters to ascertain dispositions preparatory to relief.

The morning of April 16<sup>th</sup> broke dull and misty and conditions remained quiet until 10.05 am when a very heavy bombardment was placed on the left flank of the 2<sup>nd</sup> British Division which was on the right of our Brigade. This was followed by hostile infantry action and the front line of the 1<sup>st</sup> King's Liverpools was penetrated by the enemy. The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, (right flank Battalion), following a barrage laid down by our Artillery detached two platoons and bombed the enemy from the captured trenches. At 2.10 pm hostile artillery fire was again placed on this point, under cover of which reinforcements attempted to cross, but they were beaten back by rifle and Lewis Gun Fire. Later the occupied position was entirely cleared and reoccupied by the 1<sup>st</sup> King's Liverpools. The situation then remained quiet.

Casualties during the tour numbered, 1 officer wounded, 3 ORs killed, and 16 ORs wounded. They occurred on the following dates:

April 10 <sup>th</sup>	Capt AW Black, MC, slight gunshot wound, leg
April 12 <sup>th</sup>	3 ORs wounded
April 13 <sup>th</sup>	1 OR killed, 2 ORs wounded
April 14 <sup>th</sup>	4 ORs wounded
April 15 <sup>th</sup>	4 ORs wounded
April 16 <sup>th</sup>	2 ORs killed 3 ORs wounded

Capt FD Raymond, MC, one of the original officers of the Battalion, how had been with the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Reserve Battalion, Seaford, Sussex, for nine months, returned to us on the 10<sup>th</sup> and reported to our advanced Headquarters on the evening of the 11<sup>th</sup>. During the tour he carried out the duties of Second-in-Command.

Capt F McPhun, formerly of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division, who reported to the Battalion as a reinforcement on the 12<sup>th</sup>, was posted to "C" Company, and commenced his duty with that unit in the front line on the night of 13/14.

On the 11<sup>th</sup>, Brigade called for an additional 25 men for the Divisional Working Party. The detail was made up at rear, and was composed largely of men of the Brass Band.

On the 12<sup>th</sup>, a draft of 50 ORs arrived, followed by another of 20 ORs on the 13<sup>th</sup>. These reinforcements were, as a body, satisfactory in appearance, and had, according to their documents, received good training. They were sent up the line 24 hours after their arrival, and reported to the companies to which they had been posted.

On the night of the 12/13 Lieut AH Cameron and 50 ORs were withdrawn from the line and despatched to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Machine Gun Battalion. This detail, later to be struck off our strength, was called for in view of the organization of double companies in the Machine Gun Battalion.

On April 15<sup>th</sup>, Lieut-Colonel EW Jones, DSO, returned to the Battalion from hospital and resumed command.

On the 17<sup>th</sup> a small party of officers and men assembled at BELLACOURT Cemetery to pay their respect to two comrades who had been killed in action in the line. They were No 2098919, Pte AE Leslye, "D" Coy, and 535987, L/Cpl JR Matheson, "A" Coy. The former had joined the Battalion on the 12<sup>th</sup>, and had spent only two days in the line when he was killed. L/Cpl JR Matheson had been with the Battalion since October 1917. His cheerful spirit and work as an NCO had been highly spoken of by officers



And men. Already at the cemetery at BELLACOURT there have been interred the bodies of the following:

1093349 Pte Hoover RJ  
444911 Pte Hanson O  
2098919 Pte Leslye AE (aka Lionel Hanneman)  
1093164 Pte Richardson MG  
633111 Pte Edwards P  
535987 L/Cpl Matheson JR  
246308 Pte Fregin HW  
675130 Pte Redfearn A  
639624 Pte Henderson N  
412312 Pte Taylor H

On the night of the 16/17 the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved our Brigade in the Divisional right section. We were relieved by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. It was complete at 10.55 pm and the Battalion marched to WAILLY where it went into the billets which it had occupied from the 6<sup>th</sup> to the 10<sup>th</sup> inst. The same orders regarding the move of the Battalion in the event of an enemy attack applied as during the previous stay at WAILLY.

WAILLY 17/4/18 The Battalion remained for this period in reserve at WAILLY. The Brigade was  
to again in Divisional Reserve. The weather had turned colder and some snow fell during  
20/4/18 the morning of the 19<sup>th</sup>. On the 18<sup>th</sup> the Battalion carried out Bathing Parade at  
BRETENCOURT baths. On the 17<sup>th</sup> a draft of 6 ORs arrived as reinforcements from the  
CCRC and on the 19<sup>th</sup> Lieut HD Wightman reported to the Battalion. He was posted to  
"D" Coy. On the 19<sup>th</sup> an order was received warning us to be prepared to take over the  
support positions of the left sub-section, left brigade frontage, then held by the 31<sup>st</sup>  
Canadian Battalion. Accordingly parties of 1 officer and 1 NCO per Company proceeded  
to the Headquarters of the 31<sup>st</sup> Battalion and were taken over corresponding company  
positions.

On the night of the 20/21 we relieved the 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in NEUVILLE  
VITASSE support trenches. The relief was complete and Brigade notified at 10.25 pm.  
There were no casualties.

SUPPORT 21/4/18 At 2.30 am gas was reported on our "C" Coy front. All companies were notified. During  
LINE the morning the CO and Adjutant made a tour of the lines and, on returning to  
Headquarters, met Lieut-Colonel HC Hatch, DSO, 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. During the  
afternoon Brigadier General R Rennie, CMG, called. Later a conference of Company  
Commanders was held at Headquarters when the scheme of defence was discussed. At  
6.30 pm an enemy working party of approximately twenty men, observed in  
N.34.G.10.40, was dispersed by our 60 pounders.

Aerial activity was above the average during the day. Our scouts and  
observation planes were busy all day, and enemy planes crossed our line several times.  
They were actively engaged by our Lewis Gun and Ante-Aircraft fire, and driven back.  
Several enemy balloons were also up at different times during the day. The visibility was  
poor, although the weather was fine.

The night was quiet. A working party of 350 was employed in improving the  
defences, under the supervision of the 6<sup>th</sup> FCCE.

22/4/18 The day was quiet. The weather continued fine but visibility was poor. Aerial activity increased during the afternoon. At 12.15 one of our observation planes came down, apparently out of control at approximately S1.D. No hostile planes were visible at the time, and no Ante-Aircraft guns were in action.

During the morning the CO and the Adjutant visited the company headquarters and the support line. Capt MM Wallis MC, Capt GW Brown MC, and Lieut FH Stegman of the Brigade Staff called at Battalion Headquarters at noon, and Major Hendrie, Commanding the 18<sup>th</sup> Bty, CFA, also visited the CO.

From 11.00 pm to 2 am night of 22/23 the enemy trenches opposite our line were bombarded with gas shells. There was little retaliation.

23/4/18 The day was again quiet. Brigadier General R Rennie, CMG, visited Battalion Headquarters at 2.30 pm. Between 3.00 pm and 4.00 pm, an enemy aeroplane, which persistently flew over our lines, was brought down out of control near MONCHY.

In the evening Lieut C Menpes proceeded to the Headquarters of the 15<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion regarding the relief of that unit in the front line, left Sub-Section, on the following night.

24/4/18 The situation continued very quiet. Capt EV Benjamin MC, of Brigade visited the CO in the morning, and CO and Lieut N Nicholson returned to Brigade with him in the afternoon for a conference on the proposed minor operation, which was being planned.

During the night of 24/25 the Battalion relieved the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the front line. On account of previously the positions, the companies were familiar with the frontage. The relief was completed without casualties by 12.20 am. The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion moved in on our right.

During the relief there was a very heavy bombardment on our left. It was occasioned by a raid which the 56<sup>th</sup> British Division carried out. The situation was quiet again by 3.00 am.

FRONT 25/4/18 Immediately after taking over the line from the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, a battle LINE patrol of 2 officers (Lieuts W Currie MM, and CMV Spence MM,) 3 scouts and 18 ORs, was sent out at M.13.a.7.2. The patrol had nothing to report, the night was too bright for much movement.

The morning was quiet, but at 2.00 pm, and again at 4.30 pm, several enemy shells fell near Battalion Headquarters, and at 8.00 pm, gas shells were dropped at the same point. At 3.30 pm Lieut-Col HC Hatch DSO, of the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, visited the CO, and at 7.30 pm, Lieut J Meredith of "A" Bty, 18<sup>th</sup> Army Bde. RFA, called at Battalion Headquarters.

A battle patrol and a reconnoitering patrol went out from our lines during the night, but had little to report.

26/4/18 Rain fell intermittently during the day and there was little aerial activity. Artillery was very active. The enemy shelled our back areas, and our guns carried out a continual harassing fire. Brigadier General R Rennie CMG, called on the CO again at 11.30 am, and a few minutes later Lieut-Colonel Clarke RFA visited our Headquarters.

At 6.15 am Lieut W Currie and one selected scout, left our lines at N.13.a.9.7, and took up an advanced position for observation in a shell hole at N.13.b.50.85. They remained in the position until 4.30 pm, and brought back considerable important information (see extract from Div Daily Intelligence Summary).

At 10.00 pm "B" Coy reported that two escaped British prisoners had been brought into their lines at N.13.a.9.8. Both were NCOs, one of the 2/5 Sherwood Foresters, the other of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Oxford and Bucks LI. They were captured during the German offensive in March. They were despatched to Brigade at once.

During the night a defensive patrol of 1 NCO and 8 ORs, and a reconnoitering patrol of 2 officers and 8 ORs, were sent out. The night was very bright and the reconnoitering patrol was fired on by enemy machine guns.

27/4/18 The day was quiet with only normal artillery activity, and practically no aerial activity. At 3.00 pm Major Debue and the IO of the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion visited our Headquarters regarding dispositions and details for our relief by that unit on the night of 29/30.

During the night 3 defensive patrols went out. No 2 Patrol, of 1 NCO and 6 ORs encountered an enemy patrol about 25 strong, and after a short fight, our patrol was forced to withdraw to our trench, where it was found that No 400596 Sgt WS Taylor MM, who had, in all probability, been wounded, was missing. Lieut WA Stewart and 3 ORs immediately left our lines to find the missing NCO. They discovered his steel helmet and a new enemy rifle and cap, but from all appearances, Sgt Taylor had been taken prisoner, probably wounded.

28/4/18 At 9.00 am the Brigade Major called on the CO, and final arrangements were made for the proposed raid. At 11.00 am Lt-Col HC Hatch, DSO, 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, called and plans for the combined raid of that unit and ours were discussed.

The day was quiet on our immediate front, but at 1.10 pm, the enemy made a raid on the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. It was supported chiefly by Machine Gun Fire. By 2.00 pm the situation was again quiet. There was heavy shelling on our left at 11.20 pm but from midnight until 2.00 am the situation was very quiet.

29/4/18 With conditions favorable, a combined raid of the 19<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalions, on the enemy's position at NEUVILLE VITASSE, was carried out on the night of 28/29. at zero hour (2.00 am), the raiding parties (4 officers, 100 ORs of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, and 5 officers and 150 ORs of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion) jumped off from their respective assembly positions. The artillery support was excellent, and the result achieved considered most satisfactory. Three un-wounded prisoners were brought back to our lines and one wounded prisoner who later died. Two Machine Guns were taken. The parties of the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion captured six prisoners, and two Machine Guns. Our casualties were 1 officer (Lieut CMV Spence) wounded, 1 OR died of wounds and 17 ORs wounded.

The information which the prisoners gave upon preliminary examination was considered by the General Staff as highly important. Laudatory messages from the Army Commander and others were received by the Battalion.

The day passed quietly and at night we were relieved by the 22<sup>nd</sup> (French Canadian) Battalion.

WAILLY 30/4/18 The relief was complete at 1.30 am and the Battalion moved to WAILLY and occupied the usual billets. The total casualties for the tour of 9 days in Support and front line, (exclusive of raid) were

Missing	- 1 OR
Killed	- 1 OR
Died of Wounds	- 1 OR
Wounded	- 16 ORs

Also 2 ORs attached to the Divisional Working Party died of wounds, and 2 ORs were wounded.

From the 21<sup>st</sup> to the 30<sup>th</sup>, while the Battalion was in the line, a detail of NCOs and men which had been left at rear, were given a course of special training.

On the 21<sup>st</sup> a draft of 22 ORs arrived at rear headquarters, as reinforcements. They were sent up the line two days later.

On the 25<sup>th</sup> Daily Orders contained three appointments of interest:

Dating from 11-4-18 Major HE Pense MC, who had been Adjutant since 25-2-17, was appointed Second-in-Command of the Battalion, vice Major TF Elmitt DSO, who was recalled for duty with the Forestry Corps in England in October 1917.

Captain FD Raymond MC, succeeded Major HE Pense as Adjutant with effect from 11-4-18.

Lieut JB Ellis was appointed Transport Officer, vice Lieut AF Northcote, detached to Eastern Ontario Regimental Depot, 31-3-18.

On the 27<sup>th</sup> the bodies of No 1093335 Pte C Parks and 238037 Pte HG Traill were interred in BELLACOURT Cemetery, and again on the 29<sup>th</sup> the bodies of No 246321 Pte M Moran and No 1042535 Pte JF Dunlop were similarly buried.

During the month the following officers were admitted to hospital (sick):

Lieut PH Wills	- 29-4-18
Lieut WT Bredin	- 19-4-18
Lieut RJ Gill	- 17-4-18
Lieut CT Hamly	- 3-4-18

Lieut CT Hamly returned from hospital on the 21<sup>st</sup>.

The 30<sup>th</sup> was spent in rest at WAILLY.

SECRET

Copy No 18

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 169

Reference Map  
Sheet 51 B 1/40,000

1<sup>ST</sup> April, 1918

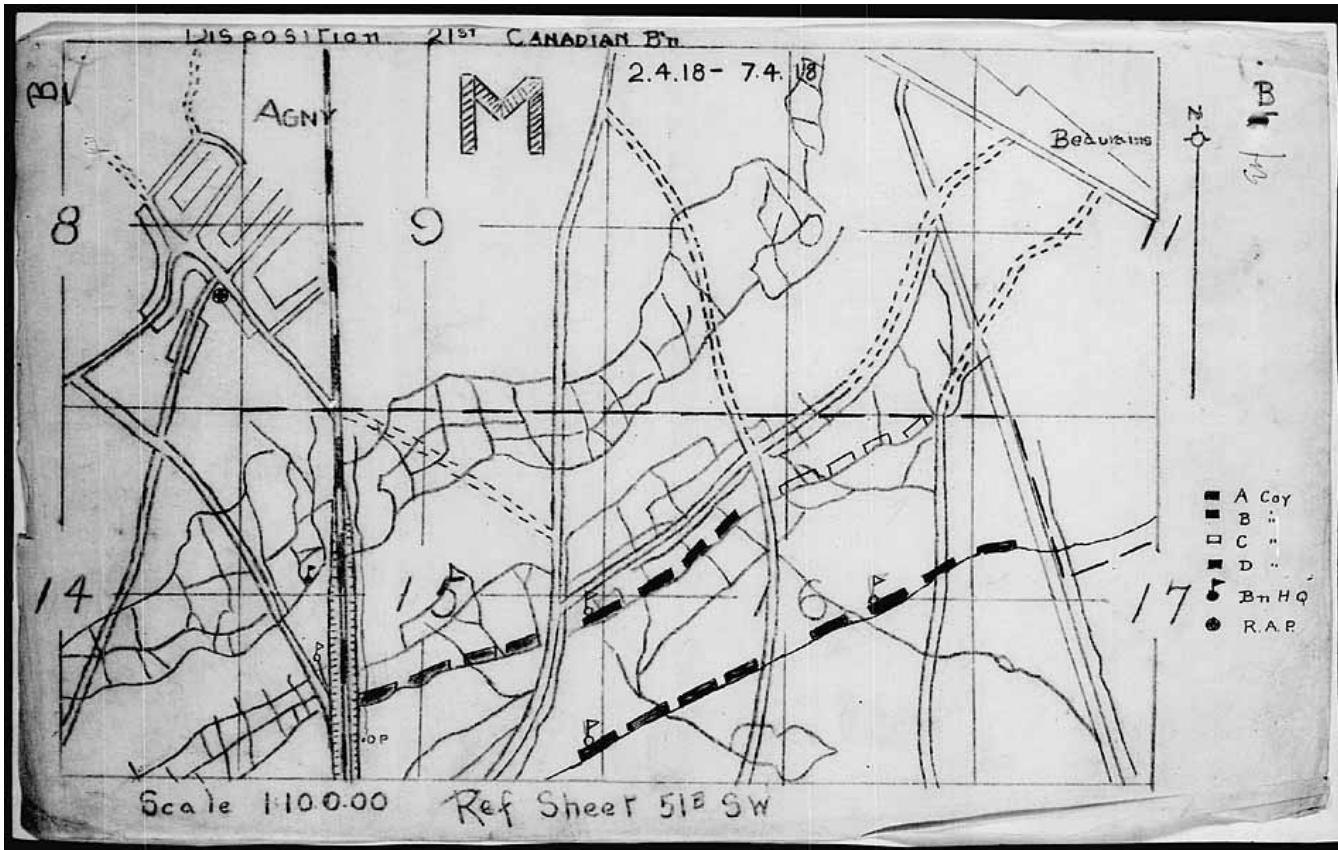
- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Front Line to-night April 1<sup>st</sup>/2<sup>nd</sup>, 1918, and upon completion of relief, will proceed to and occupy positions in the PURPLE LINE, vacated by the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 2 Headquarters, Communication and Specialist Sections of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by corresponding units of the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion. Companies as under:
  - "A" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn (RIGHT FRONT) will be relieved by "C" Coy, 18<sup>th</sup> Bn
  - "B" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn (LEFT FRONT) will be relieved by "D" Coy, 18<sup>th</sup> Bn
  - "C" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn (RIGHT SUPPORT) will be relieved by "A" Coy, 18<sup>th</sup> Bn
  - "D" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn (LEFT SUPPORT) will be relieved by "B" Coy, 18<sup>th</sup> Bn
- 3 (a) Guides for the incoming Companies of the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn, at the rate of 1 per Company Headquarters and 1 per Platoon will report to Lieut Spence at the Ration Dump, (Adjacent to Bn HQ), at 8.30 pm
- (b) Upon completion of relief the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion companies will be met at Bn HQ by their respective NCOs who proceeded to reconnoiter the PURPLE LINE this morning. They will act as guides for their units to the PURPLE LINE.
- 4 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts in duplicate taken, which will be forwarded to new Bn HQ by 7.00 am tomorrow, 2<sup>nd</sup> inst. Rough distribution sketches will be submitted at the same time.
- 5 All empty Petrol Cans will be carried from the Front and Support Lines
- 6 Rations and Water for tomorrow will be delivered at the 18<sup>th</sup> Bn dump (PURPLE LINE), location of which will be notified later.
- 7 Completion of relief will be notified to Bn HQ by use of our Code name (with time)
- 8 New Bn HQ will be located at M.15.a.3.7

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	Quartermaster's Section
2	"A" Company	11	RSM's Section
3	"B" Company	12	Pipe Band
4	"C" Company	13	Brass Band
5	"D" Company	14	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
6	Specialist Section	15	18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
7	Communication Section	16	File
8	Medical Officer's Section	17-19	War Diary
9	Transport Officer's Section		



SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 170

Copy No 18

Reference Map  
Sheet 51 B SW

5<sup>th</sup> April, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved in the Left Support in the TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH, by the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion tonight, April 5<sup>th</sup>/6<sup>th</sup>, and will move to billets at WAILLY, at present occupied by 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion.
- 2 Advanced Parties as under, with the Quartermaster will report at WAILLY before 6.00 pm this date, to take over billets:

Bn HQ,	Lieut Riley and 1 NCO
Communication Section	1 NCO
Spec Section	1 NCO
Each Company	1 Officer and 2 NCOs
- 3 The Quartermaster will deliver rations and packs, and arrange for a hot meal to be served to the Battalion upon its arrival in billets at WAILLY

- 4 Guides for the incoming Battalion, as under, will report to Lieut Spence at M.9.c.50.15 (Point where ARRAS-BOISIEUX-AUMONT Railway crosses AGNY ROAD) at 6.30 pm this date.

Bn HQ	2 ORs
Communication Section	1 OR
Specialist Section	1 OR
Each Company	1 OR per Platoon and 1 OR for Company HQ

Lieut Spence will proceed with guides to PETIT CHATEAU (R.18.a.0.2) where he will supervise the allotment of guides to units of relieving Battalion

- 5 All disposition maps, trench stores, tools, less 80 shovels, etc., will be handed over and receipts in duplicate taken which will be forwarded to new Bn HQ by 7.00 am tomorrow 6<sup>th</sup> instant.
- 6 Trenches and area will be left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 7 "A" and "B" Companies will each carry out to new Bn HQ, 40 shovels which will, from there be delivered to Brigade Transport Lines by Transport to-night.
- 8 All Petrol Cans will be carried out.
- 9 At WAILLY, Battalion will be in Divisional Reserve, and prepared to move on short notice.
- 10 Bn HQ will close at M.15.a.4.2 upon completion of relief, and re-open at same hour.
- 11 Completion of relief will be notified to Bn HQ by use of Code Word "BISTOL" (and time)

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by HE Pense)  
Major  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy to 1	Commanding Officer	10	Medical Officer's Section
2	22 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion	11	Quartermaster's Section
3	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	12	Transport Officer's Section
4	"A" Company	13	RSM's Party
5	"B" Company	14	Pipe Band
6	"C" Company	15	Brass Band
7	"D" Company	16	File
8	Specialist Section	17-18	War Diary
9	Communication Section		

SECRET

Copy No 17

Reference Sheets  
51.B SW )  
51.C SE )120,000

April 9<sup>th</sup>, 1918

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 171

- 1 In accordance with relief of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade to-night, April 9/10<sup>th</sup> the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Sub-Section, with Bn HQ at M.22.c.75.40

2 The relief will be carried out as under:

Bn HQ and Communication and Specialist Sections will relieve corresponding unit of 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
"C" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "A" Coy, 27<sup>th</sup> Bn (Right Front Line)  
"D" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "D" Coy, 27<sup>th</sup> Bn (Left Front Line)  
"A" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "C" Coy, 27<sup>th</sup> Bn (Right Support)  
"B" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "B" Coy, 27<sup>th</sup> Bn (Left Support)  
RAP will be located at M.35.a.20.65

3 Guides as under of the 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion will report at M.27.c.65.95 at 6.00 pm:

1 per Platoon and Company Headquarters  
3 for Bn HQ, Communication and Specialist Sections

4 Upon completion of Brigade relief the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be on our Right, and 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on our Left.

5 Companies and Sections will move from their present billets and pass starting point (CRUCIFIX" R.23.c.7.7) at times as under:

Fifty yards distances will be maintained between Platoons and Sections on route.

"C" Company, 6.20 pm  
"D" Company, 6.30 pm  
"A" Company, 6.40 pm  
"B" Company, 6.50 pm  
Communication Section 7.00 pm  
Specialist Section, 7.05 pm  
Bn Headquarters 7.10 pm

Lieut Menpes will post guides along route

6 Dress of all ranks moving forward will be "Fighting Order with greatcoats". All Other Ranks (less Lewis Gunners) will carry in two bandoliers of SAA, to be drawn from reserve at each Coy HQ

7 One Officer and 1 NCO per Company and 1 NCO per Communication and Specialist Sections will rendezvous at Bn HQ at 4.00 pm to proceed to the line to take over Trench Stores, etc.

8 The SOS will be one 1" Red Very light followed by one 1" Green Very light and repeated until answered.

9 Receipts, in duplicate, of Trench Stores taken over will be forwarded, together with dispositions accompanied by maps, to Bn HQ by 7.00 am, 10<sup>th</sup> inst.

Returns and reports in accordance with Battalion tables, previously issued, will be submitted to Battalion Headquarters.

10 Rations and water will be delivered as previously arranged through the Quartermaster.

11 Officer's baggage and mess outfits, together with men's packs, will be delivered to forward QM Stores, by 5.30 pm, for transport to Rear. One man per Company and Section (selected from the party proceeding to Rear) will be left as guard. The TO will arrange for the move of cooks to Transport Lines.



12 Completion of relief will be notified to Bn HQ, using code word Machine" (and time)

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GS Bowerbank)  
Major  
For Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

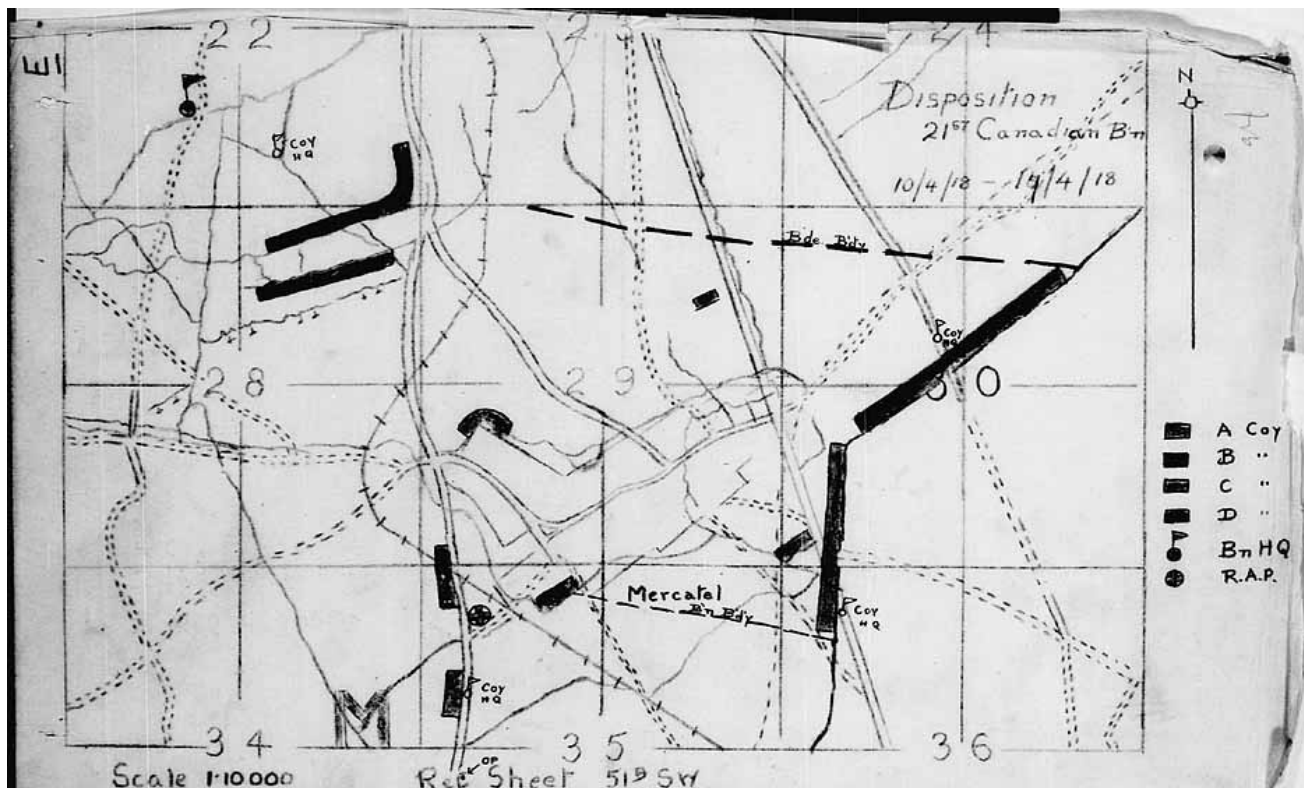
Issued by orderly at 11.30 am

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	Transport Officer's Section
2	"A" Company	11	RSM's Section
3	"B" Company	12	Pipe Band
4	"C" Company	13	Brass Band
5	"D" Company	14	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
6	Specialist Section	15	27 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
7	Communication Section	16	File
8	Medical Officer's Section	17-19	War Diary
9	Quartermaster's Section		

FURTHER TO OPERATION ORDER No 171

All personnel not proceeding forward to relief will parade (in Marching Order with greatcoats) at Bn HQ at 6.30 pm and proceed, under Lieut Glasgow, to Transport Lines at BELLACOURT. The QM will arrange for the rationing and billeting of same.

(signed by GS Bowerbank)  
Major  
For Major & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion



EXTRACT FROM  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION PATROL REPORT

NIGHT, April 10/11<sup>th</sup>, 1918

Left Defensive Patrol. 1 NCO and 6 Other Ranks patrolled our wire from M.30.c.7.8 to M.30.b.4.7 from 9.00 pm to 5.00 am. They reported wire four rows double apron on wood and metal stakes.

At 4.45 am, patrol encountered and captured two of the enemy – An NCO and private of the 119<sup>th</sup> Infantry Regiment, 26<sup>th</sup> Division. These men were immediately sent to Battalion Headquarters, thence to Brigade Headquarters. The private was evidently acting as guide to NCO to visit another Company. The reported no attack impending. Information invaluable. Prisoners were captured to approx M.30.b.5.3.

2<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION  
11<sup>th</sup> April, 1918

PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION OF TWO PRISONERS OF 1<sup>ST</sup> AND 2<sup>ND</sup> BNS, 119 RIR, 26<sup>TH</sup> RD,  
CAPTURED IN M.30.b. ON 11-4-18

METHOD OF CAPTURE. Prisoners were taking over posts from each other in the front line, and lost their way.

ORDER OF BATTLE. From N to S – Order of Battle appears to be 119<sup>th</sup> RIR – 180<sup>th</sup> RIR – 121<sup>st</sup> RIR (Normal)

DISPOSITIONS. The 6<sup>th</sup> Coy appears to be in the line in posts, but prisoners refused all information, though they said posts were about 50 yards apart, with 4 or 5 posts on Coy front and 5 men on post. Coy front is therefore 200/250 yards. The Reserve Battalion is stationed just behind ST MARTIN in the usual shelters and dugouts. One post given approx at N.25.a.5.5.

ROUTES TO TRENCHES. The roads most used are:

- (1) The St MARTIN – NEUVILLE VITASSE Road as far as about N.26.a.9.4, then cross country along tracks
- (2) The HENIN – NEUVILLE VITASSE Road to about N.26.c.2.4 then along tracks.
- (3) The HENIN Road to about N.31.a.5.0 is also believed to be used.

Where there is much harassing fire, however, reliefs are carried out as far as possible across country.

RELIEFS. The 1<sup>st</sup> Coy, 1<sup>st</sup> Bn, relieved the 6<sup>th</sup> Coy 2<sup>nd</sup> Bn last night (10/11<sup>th</sup>) in the front line. The 6<sup>th</sup> Coy had been in for 5 days and this appears to be the usual period.

COMPANY STRENGTH. Coy strength in the 2 Bns vary between 60/80.

LOSSES. Recent losses have not been heavy but fairly consistent.

HARRASING FIRE. Our concentration shoot on tracks and roads last night in view of this suspected relief caused considerable confusion among the relieving Battalion, and new tracks had to be taken across country, one or two platoons must have got lost in consequence as they had not turned up yet early this morning. Three casualties caused to one platoon.

DRAFTS. When in reserve behind ST MARTIN the 1<sup>st</sup> Coy received a draft of 20 men. These are all youths of about 19 years old. No older men came with them. This is the only substantial draft the Coy has received for some time.

RELIABILITY. One of the prisoners is an Underofficer and the other a Corporal, and both knew more than they say, but refuse all information.

INTENTIONS. Prisoners state that they know of no offensive likely to take place on this front, but this cannot be relied on in view of their refusal to speak.

EXTRACT FROM  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION PATROL REPORT

NIGHT, April 13/14<sup>th</sup>, 1918

No 1 Patrol

At 12.00 midnight this patrol encountered a party of the enemy, and inflicted casualties on it, retaining one wounded prisoner in their hands.

Party of 2 Officers, Lieut Scott and Lieut Ellis, Sgt Tilbrook, Scout Scott, Scout Ross and 18 Other Ranks with Lewis Gun (Lieut Scott in Command) left our lines from M.36.a.4.8 at 10.00 pm.

Patrol moved in an Easterly Direction towards BANK at M.36.b.90.95, thence SE along BANK. A party of 6 to 8 Huns were observed at approx M.36.b.2.8 who, upon approach of our patrol, made for trench at M.36.b.3.6. Four men were seen to disappear up trench in NE Direction while two passed over trench and were fired on by our people. One man fell immediately, while the other was seen to fall a little further away. Lieut Scott then detailed 4 of his patrol to carry the wounded Hun back to our lines while he and the remainder worked up trench from M.36.b.20.55 to M.36.b.45.70. Nothing further was seen of the enemy nor of the man who was seen to fall further away, although the patrol searched the area for 20 minutes.

Patrol returned to our lines via ARRAS-BAPAUME Road entering our trenches at M.36.a.4.8 at 4.00 am.

Enemy artillery over this period – Normal. Our artillery active, carrying out harassing fire – Nil. General attitude of the enemy quiet.

EXTRACT FROM  
DAILY INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY No 679, 2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN  
DIVISION, FOR PERIOD ENDING 6.00 am, 14/4/18

PATROL  
(Right  
Brigade)

A patrol of 2 Officers and 21 ORs with LG left from M.36.a.4.8 at 10.00 pm, moved in easterly direction towards bank at M.36.a.90.95, thence SE along bank. A party of from 6 to 8 Huns was observed at M.36.b.2.8, who, upon approach of our patrol, made for trench at M.36.b.3.6. Four men were seen to disappear up trench in a North Easterly direction, while two passed over trench and were fired on. One man fell immediately, and the other was seen to fall later. Four of the patrol carried wounded Hun back to our lines, while remainder worked up trench from M.36.b.20.55 to M.36.b.15.70. Nothing further was seen of the enemy. Patrol returned to our lines via ARRAS-BAUPAUME Road, entering at M.36.a.4.8 at 1.00 am. MG fire nil.

Other patrols were out during the night and have nothing to report

GENERAL

Wounded prisoner captured on night of 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup> in M.36.b.3.6 belonged to 4<sup>th</sup> Coy, 120 IR, 26<sup>th</sup> Res Div. He was a stretcher bearer and had been detailed for a ration party to the FL.

Prisoner states he knew of no offensive on this front, but an attack to the immediate South is spoken of as likely to take place shortly. The 2<sup>nd</sup> Bn came into the line on night of 11/12t for 5 days. Prisoner was partly delirious and could give no connected replies.

Identifications were obtained on Left Brigade front from dead German belonging to 1<sup>st</sup> Ersatz Bn, 165<sup>th</sup> IR (probably since detailed to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Gds Res Div) at approx N.19.c.2.2 apparently killed several days ago.

On left Bn front of Left Brigade a German of 4<sup>th</sup> Coy, 10<sup>th</sup> Pioneer Bn (2<sup>nd</sup> Gds RD) was shot and identification secured.

EXTRACT FROM  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION PATROL REPORT

NIGHT 14/15<sup>th</sup> April, 1918

No 2 PATROL Patrol of 18 Other Ranks with Lewis Gun and 2 Bn scouts, under Lieut JR Smith, MC, left our lines from M.30.a.9.1 at 1.30 am and proceeded in SE direction along road to M.30.d.2.4. They then moved NE to approx M.30.d.6.6 with a view to locating enemy outpost line. Here patrol was checked from penetrating further by our Artillery which was firing short. At about 3.00 am a man was seen at this point and was immediately seized. He proved to be an escaped British prisoner – 10191 L/Cpl Ashly, H., 1<sup>st</sup> W./Yorks. He was escorted to our lines. Patrol then moved S to approx M.30.d.8.4 thence NW to our lines at M.30.a.9.1 at 4.30 am.

Patrol reports our Artillery very active and firing short.

NOTE Escaped British prisoner who came into our Lines on Right Company Front was 30891 Pte Betten, C., 2<sup>nd</sup> S/Staffs. He was separated from his companion ) L/C Ashby) while making his way over.

Both British prisoners were escorted to Bde HQ as soon as possible.

SECRET  
Copy No 15  
April 15<sup>th</sup>, 1918

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 172

Ref Map 51.C SE)  
51.B SW) 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian in the LEFT SUB-SECTOR, on the night of 16<sup>th</sup>/17<sup>th</sup> April, 1918
- 2 The relief will be carried out as under:  
Battalion Headquarters, Communication & Specialists will relieve corresponding Units of the 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion.  
"C" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion  
"D" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion  
"A" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion  
"B" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion
- 3 Guides as under will be at M.27.a.65.10 at 8.00 pm, 16<sup>th</sup> inst.  
1 per Platoon and Company Headquarters  
3 for Battalion HdQrs, Comm & Spec Sections  
Lieut ES Sawell MC, will be at this point to supervise arrangements.

- 4 Upon relief, Companies and Sections will move, via Route taken when proceeding to the Forward Area from billets at WAILLEY, and will be met by their respective CQMS's at CRUCIFIX, to be guided to Billets
- 5 Fifty Yards distances will be maintained between Platoons and Sections en Route.
- 6 Receipts in duplicate of Trench Stores handed over will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 am 17<sup>th</sup> inst. All Maps, with the exception of Disposition Maps, will be retained by Officers Commanding Companies.
- 7 Petrol Tins, Periscopes and Very Pistols will be carried out.
- 8 The QM will arrange to have all Packs, Officer's Baggage, Mess Outfits, etc, brought up to billets at WAILLY, and a hot meal to be ready at 11.30 pm for all ranks.
- 9 One limbered wagon will report to Battalion Headquarters Dump at 11.00 pm
- 10 Completion of relief will be notified Battalion Headquarters by using Code Word "DEVON" and time
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GS Bowerbank)  
 Major for  
 Major & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at 11.50 pm

Copy 1	Commanding Officer	8	Communication Section
2	25 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	TO
4	"B" Company	11	QM
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	Office
7	Specialists Section	14-16	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 18

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 173

Ref Map Sheets  
 51.C SE & 51.B SW

20<sup>th</sup> April, 1918

- 1 In accordance with the relief of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian to-night, April 20<sup>th</sup>/21<sup>st</sup>, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in Left Support (PURPLE LINE), in support of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion.
- 2 The relief will be carried out as under:  
 Bn Hdqrs, Communication and Specialist Sections, MO and Companies will relieve corresponding units of the 31<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 3 Guides of the 31<sup>st</sup> Battalion as under will be awaiting the arrival of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion at Cross Roads M.9.c.45.15 from 8.00 pm  
 1 per Platoon and Company Headquarters  
 3 for Bn Hdqrs, Communication and Specialist Sections

- 4 Companies and Sections will move from their present billets, and pass Starting Point, Road Junction at R.17.d.2.5, as under:  
50 yards interval will be maintained between Platoons and Sections en route.

"A" Company	7.00 pm
"B" Company	7.10 pm
"C" Company	7.20 pm
"D" Company	7.30 pm
Communication Section	7.40 pm
Specialist Section	7.45 pm
Battalion Headquarters	7.50 pm

The Intelligence Officer will post guides along route

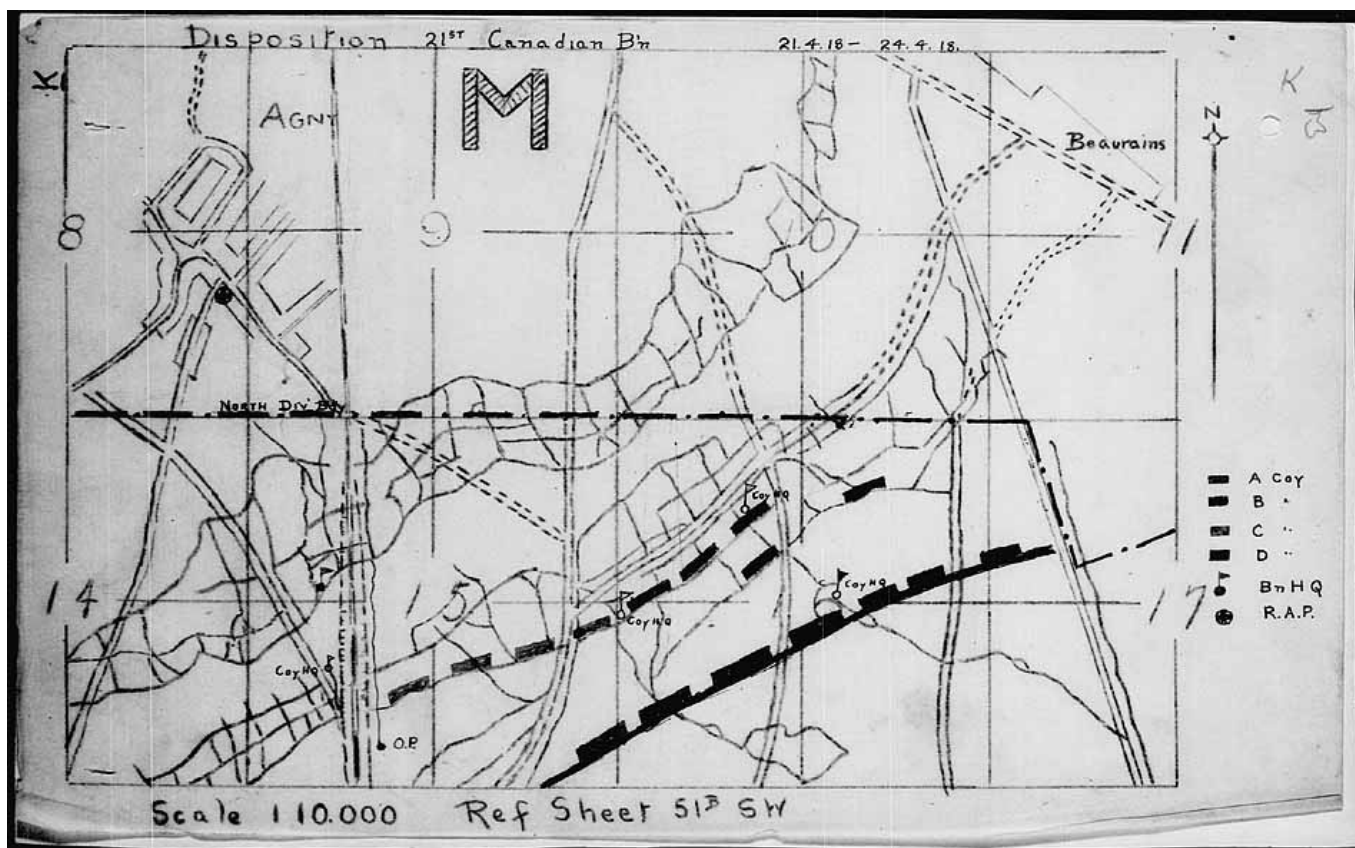
- 5 Dress: Fighting Order with greatcoats
- 6 One Officer and 1 NCO per Company, and 1 NCO per Section, will rendezvous at Battalion Headquarters at 5.00 pm, to proceed to the line and take over Trench Stores etc.
- 7 Receipts in duplicate of Trench Stores taken over will be forwarded, together with dispositions, accompanied by Maps, to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am 21<sup>st</sup> inst.
- Returns and reports, in accordance with Battalion table, previously issued, will be submitted to Battalion Headquarters daily.
- 8 Rations and Water in accordance with arrangements made with QM
- 9 Completion of relief will be notified to Bn Hdqrs using Code Word "BRISTOL" and time
- 10 Transport Officer will detail one limber per Company for the transportation of Lewis Gun and ammunition.
- 11 Officer's baggage and mess outfits, together with men's packs, will be deposited at Regimental Canteen by 5.30 pm, for transport to QM Stores. One man per Company and Section (selected from the party proceeding to Rear) will be left as guard. Transport Officer will arrange for the removal of Cookers to Transport Lines.
- 12 RAP will be situated at M.8.d.8.7
- 13 Battalion Headquarters will be situated at M.15.a.45.30
- 14 The SOS will be one 1" Red very light followed by one 1" Green very light, and repeated until answered.
- 15 All personnel not proceeding forward to relief will parade (in Marching Order with greatcoats) at Battalion Headquarters at 6.30 pm and proceed, under Lieut JR Smith MC, to Transport Lines at BELLACOURT. The Quartermaster will arrange for the rationing and billeting of same.

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain,  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 11.45 am

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	Transport Officer's Section
2	"A" Company	11	RSM's Section
3	"B" Company	12	Pipe Band
4	"C" Company	13	Brass Band
5	"D" Company	14	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
6	Specialist Section	15	31 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
7	Communication Section	16	File
8	Medical Officer's Section	17-19	War Diary
9	Quartermaster's Section		



Copy No 16

SECRET

### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 174

Reference Map:  
51.C SE & 51.B SW

24<sup>th</sup> April, 1918

- 1 Inter Battalion relief will be carried out within the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade on the night of April 24<sup>th</sup>/25<sup>th</sup>.  
The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Sub Section
- 2 The relief will be carried out as under:
  - "A" Company will relieve RIGHT Company FRONT LINE
  - "B" Company will relieve LEFT Company FRONT LINE
  - "C" Company will relieve RIGHT Company SUPPORT
  - "D" Company will relieve LEFT Company SUPPORT

Headquarters, Communication and Specialist Sections will relieve corresponding units.

3 5 guides from each of the Front Line Companies of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will meet "A" and "B" Companies at the JUNCTION of TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH and BRURAIN-MERCATEL ROAD, M.17.a.40.25, at 8.30 pm

4 Companies and Details will arrange to carry rations for the 25<sup>th</sup> inst forward from present dumps.

WATER The Transport Officer will arrange to have water taken to the front line ration dump at aprx M.18.a.5.7

5 RAP will be situated at M.18.b.10.10

6 Report Centre will be situated at "D" Company Headquarters M.18.b.10.30

7 Battalion Headquarters will be situated at M.17.c.70.20

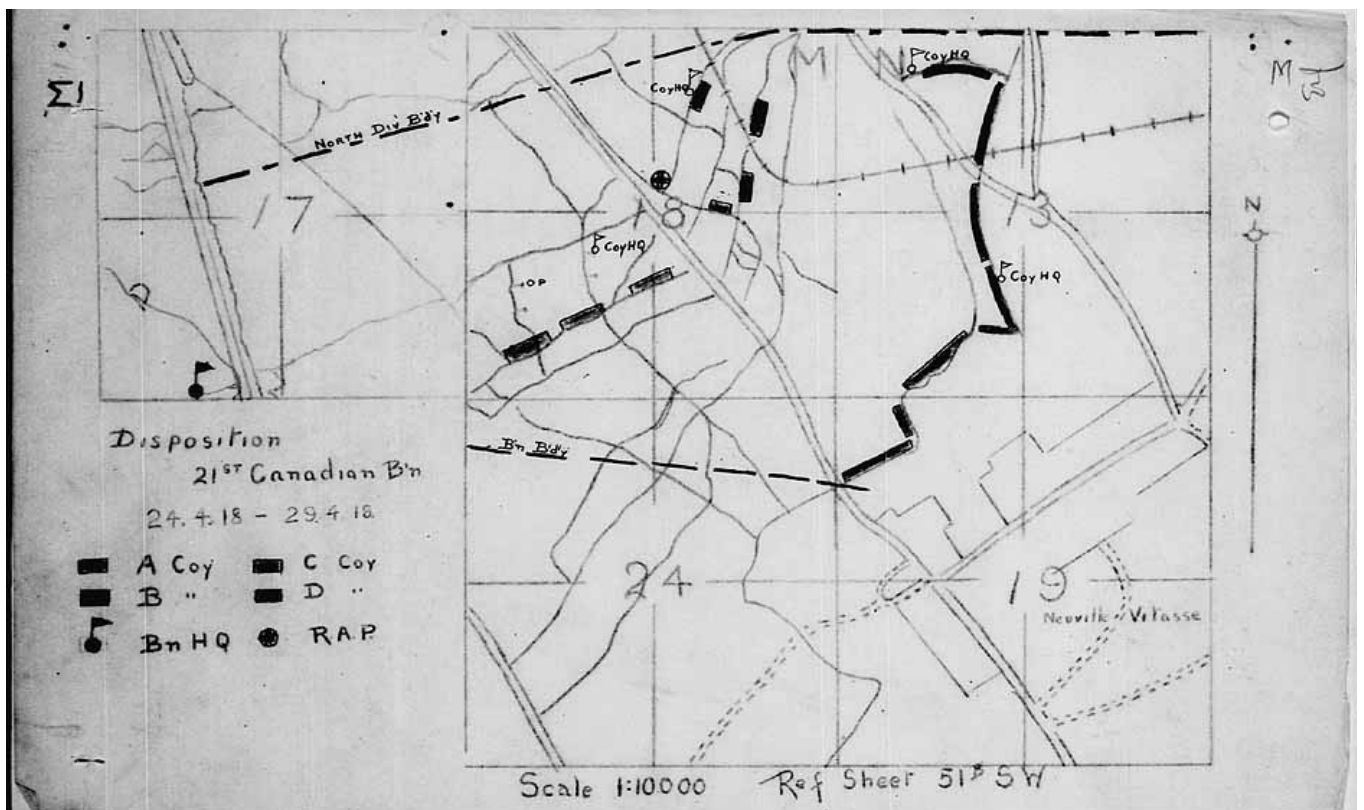
8 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by wire, using Code Word "VALERIE" and time

9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

- |           |   |       |                             |
|-----------|---|-------|-----------------------------|
| Copy No 1 | Commanding Officer                        | 9     | Communication Section       |
| 2         | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 10    | Medical Officer's Section   |
| 3         | 18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 11    | Transport Officer's Section |
| 4         | "A" Company                               | 12    | Quartermaster's Section     |
| 5         | "B" Company                               | 13    | RSM's Section               |
| 6         | "C" Company                               | 14    | Office                      |
| 7         | "D" Company                               | 15-17 | War Diary                   |
| 8         | Specialist Section                        |       |                             |





EXTRACT FROM  
DAILY INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY No 692, 2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN  
DIVISION, FOR PERIOD ENDING 5.00 am APRIL 27<sup>TH</sup>, 1918

PATROLS Left Brigade Patrol of Lieut Smith and 5 OR with covering party of 6 OR and LG proceeded along sap to within 50 yards of hedge at N.19.c.60.45 where an enemy post was located, and voices were heard here. At N.19.c.2.7 a hostile patrol of 10 men was seen on the sky line moving forward where sap meets hedge at N.19.c.3.7. Talking was heard near trench at N.19.c.65.10.

Lieuts SMITH and MENPES with 7 OR left our lines at N.19.a.3.7 at 9.30 pm and proceeded SE up disused trench for 150 yards where some German equipment and a fairly new gas mask were found. The disused trench is deeper here and shows signs of having been worked on recently, but no sign of the enemy was seen. Patrol followed trench up to a hedge and then off towards the NEUVILLE VITASSE-BEAURAINS Road and proceeded up road for 100 yards.

There are several good funk holes apparently dug by our Artillery along this road, and several dumps of 6" ammunition nearby. Patrol returned to our lines but went off again at 12.15 am from same spot, moving NE. A trench was discovered, as marked on the map, and was followed until a wire block was discovered. MG opened up on patrol from lone house at N.19.a.9.6, and patrol returned to our line at 1.30.am.

Lieut CURRIE and 1 OR left our lines at N.13.a.9.7 at 6.15 am and took up position for observation in a shell hole at N.13.b.50.65. Three Germans seen walking South at N.13.d.5.1, and one sentry seen in trench at N.19.b.5.9. N.13.d is very strongly wired and there is a regular chain work of trenches. At N.13.d.2.2 there is a dugout with something like a trench mortar gun projecting. At N.13.d.7.3 there is a MGE which has been used for AA as there is a pole erected for this purpose. At N.13.d.6.4 there is a strong block across the road built of sandbags about 5' wide and 6' high.

Shell holes at N.13.d.1.3, N.13.d.12.28, N.13.d.15.25, N.13.d.2.2, N.13.d.25.18, N.13.d.30.17 look as if they have had new work done on them. Patrol returned at 4.30 pm.

2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION  
GI 169  
27<sup>TH</sup> APRIL 1918

PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION OF TWO NCOs OF 2/5<sup>TH</sup> SHERWOOD FORESTERS, 59<sup>TH</sup>  
DIVISION AND 2<sup>ND</sup> OXFORD & BUCKS LI, 2<sup>ND</sup> DIVISION CAPTURED AT BULLECOURT ON  
2.3.1918 AND BERTINCOURT ON 24.3.1918 RESPECTIVELY AND ESCAPED FROM HORDAIN  
ON NIGHT OF 24.4.1918

- 1 NCO of 2<sup>nd</sup> Oxford and Bucks LI was marched on capture to CAMBRAI with a few others, going next day to LOUAI where prisoners were billeted in brick factory at E.11.c and were engaged on loading and piling up ammunition and putting it into camouflaged shelters. On 28<sup>th</sup> March prisoner went to DENAIN, where there is a camp for 6,000 men in the town, staying there about 3 weeks, and proceeding then to HORDAIN, where they were employed on general fatigues.

NCO of 2/5<sup>th</sup> Sherwood Foresters went to MORCHINES 23.3.18 with 700 men. Proceeded to DOUAI with 600 men on 27.3.18 till 8.4.18, when he returned to MORCHINES. Went to DENAIN on 13.4.18 and arrived at HORDAIN on 14.4.18. HORDAIN is to be a registered prisoners camp.

- 2 METHOD OF ESCAPE

Men followed railway to within 4 kilometres of CAMBRAI where they crossed the Canal, then hit the railway, later following main ARRAS Road for about 5 miles, when they struck across country, passing on the left of WANCOURT and reaching the enemy front lines around NEUVILLE BITASSE in N.13 and 14 reaching our lines in N.13.c.

### 3 ENEMY MOVEMENT

When at HORDAIN, men saw from the 17<sup>th</sup> to 24<sup>th</sup> instant heavy guns all over 5.9 cm calibre, drawn by tractors going through from CAMBRAI towards DENAIN. A battery of 4 guns went through every half hour regularly during those 6 or 7 days, and movement was heard by night as well, but men cannot be certain that this was also heavy guns. This artillery appeared to be all fit for action and not guns being withdrawn from the line for repairs. Numerous limbers with MGs were also seen moving North during this period. No movements of troops were seen in this area and men state greater part of troop movements are made by rail from (*following words blanked out*).

For 3 or 4 days the 27.3.18 regiments from the Russian front were seen detraining in DOUI. No identifications were obtained. HTMs and personnel also detrained. Men think at least 8,000 troops were about the same as those used for moving a British battalion plus transport. Three or four of these trains were unloaded a day. HTM personnel stated to be about 400 to 500.

### 4 ARTILLERY

A big gun, said to be about 12" calibre, is reported as firing from houses on the outskirts of DOUI at E.9 central, big guns on railway just N of BREBIERES used to fire between D.24.a.2.5 and D.23.b.4.5 at junction of road and railway. Another big gun also on railway siding fired from approx E.14.c.4.8. Two more guns were also seen between these points but are believed now to have gone from there.

### 5 FOOD

Food was bad and very inadequate. Bread, coffee substitute and Swedes with soup and an occasional jam issue formed the principle food. Occasionally a little salt fish was found in the soup. At DENAIN we had steady losses among prisoners through debility every day and 5 deaths are reported.

### 6 ARROPLANE ATTACKS

Our aeroplanes carried out several bombing attacks on the railway junction at DOUI between 27<sup>th</sup> March and 8<sup>th</sup> April. On night of 31<sup>st</sup> and during daylight on April 1<sup>st</sup> there were two successful raids on the railway. Traffic was entirely suspended for 3 days and big enemy working parties were at work continually repairing damage done to junction.

### 7 TRANSPORT

Lorries were seen on CAMBRAI-DENAIN Road and round DOUI carrying ammunition. The outer rims of the wheels were of iron with rubber underneath.

Men are convinced that losses among enemy transport were very heavy, especially round CAMBRAI where dead horses were seen everywhere. French carts are much used for transport, those being drawn by Russian ponies, oxen and even milk cows. Losses were caused equally by gun fire and aeroplane bombing and the enemy had great fear of our aeroplanes, at once seeking the nearest cover when one of our machines comes in sight.

### 8 AMBULANCES

Very few were seen and all had trailers attached behind.

## 9 DUMPS

There are ammunition dumps in underground shelters at DOUI between railway and road in E.10.b.0.3 to E.10.b.8.4

There are many French civilians working under guards and dumps and railway round DOUI; some of these wear a red armband. There are 5 dumps of ammunition each about 100 yards in length, and 50 yards on the right of the DENAIN-ABSCON Road stretching from the railway to within 800 yards of ABSCON.

## 10 ENEMY WORKSHOPS

At DENAIN there is a munition and a gun factory in the middle of the town. There is also a large machine gun works (mostly said to be light MGs). Men report that a new pattern of light MG firing belts of cartridges similar to the heavy machine gun is being tested, and that many of our Lewis Guns are being experimented with. There is also a big gun foundry in the town where many heavy guns are taken for repairs.

## 11 RAILWAYS

The single railway track from the station at BREBIERES running SW is being made into a double track and about 5 kilometres have so far been made from the station to the SW.

## 12 AERODROMES

A large aerodrome of about 6 hangars is just off the road half way between MONTIGNY and PECQUENCOURT. Another smaller one is in PECQUENCOURT and the aeroplanes here are hidden among the houses and camouflaged. The personnel are billeted in this village.

## 13 UNITS SEEN

On 24.3.18 one of the men was captured by men with 49 on their shoulder straps belonging to a Field Company. At HORDAIN guards had 109 on shoulder straps (artillery men). At DOUI guards had 304: 3 and 4 on shoulder straps. Those of the 304 were mostly young men of 19-20, the others were about 40 years old. Men with plain blue shoulder straps were also seen in DOUI.

## 14 GENERAL

It seems a general practice for enemy troops behind the line to have shoulder straps turned in in such a way as to hide their number.

### NOTES –

Reference Para 3 Enemy Movements. Routes taken by guns from 17<sup>th</sup> – 24<sup>th</sup> inst was through HORDAIN, BOUCHAIN-SOMAIN and thence Northwards.

SECRET

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 175

Copy No 6

April 28<sup>th</sup>, 1918

Ref Sheet 51.B SW.1

NEUVILLE VITASSE 1/10,000

- 1 INFORMATION The Village of NEUVILLE VITASSE in N.19.B and C, is held by the enemy. The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion are raiding the enemy lines in N.19.A and B on the southerly side of the BEAURAINS ROAD on the night of the 25<sup>th</sup>/26<sup>th</sup> April at an hour to be notified later. Information from escaped British prisoners is to the effect that the village is held by posts.
- 2 INTENTION The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion will raid the lines of the enemy in NEUVILLE VITASSE in N.19.a and b, on the northerly side of the BEAURAINS ROAD, and bounded by a line commencing at N.19.a15.4, thence along the BEAURAINS ROAD, southerly to a point at N.19.a.55.0. Thence easterly to a point at N.19.b.30.50, thence northerly to a point at N.13.d.0.15, for the purpose of inflicting casualties, gaining information and obtaining identification.
- 3 PERSONNEL Major HW Cooper  
Lieut C Mepes  
Lieut JR Smith MC  
Lieut CMV Spence MM  
Lieut W Currie MM  
100 Other Ranks
- 4 SCHEME Raid personnel will assemble, and be in position at 1.30 am 29<sup>th</sup> instant. At Zero hour the Artillery barrage will open and the assaulting troops will immediately advance as close under the barrage as possible.  
  
At Zero plus 2 minutes the barrage will lift and the assaulting troops will advance to their objectives, dealing with the enemy and mopping up as they go.  
  
At Zero plus 20 minutes the assaulting troops will commence to withdraw to their assembly positions.
- 5 TIME Zero hour will be notified later.
- 6 RAP Advanced RAP will be located at N.19.a.20.70
- 7 SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES Watches will be synchronized at 10.00 pm 28<sup>th</sup> instant under arrangements of Signalling Officer.
- 8 WITHDRAWAL The signal for withdrawal will be a Red over Green over Red Rifle Grenade fired from advanced Headquarters at Zero plus 20 minutes.
- 9 RAIDING HEADQUARTERS Raiding Headquarters will be located at N.19.a.20.70

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Signals at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Brigade  
2 16<sup>th</sup> London Regt  
3 18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Battalion  
4 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Battalion  
5 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Battalion  
6 Office

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

Adverting to 21/77:

All parties were in position by 1.35 am, April 29<sup>th</sup>. The operations of the four parties are reported as follows:

Party under Lieut Menpes was in three sections and followed barrage to enemy barrier, N.19.a.20.30, two sections working along bank East of BEAURAINS-NEUVILLE VITASSE road, and one section following road. At N.19.a.20.35, a MG emplacement was discovered with camouflaged loop hole covering ground North to North-West; this was examined by Lieut Menpes and Scout White and found to be empty.

An MG located at N.19.a.28.35 was sweeping road on approach of party fired directly upon them, another MG, West of road, was also firing. The Machine Gun in orchard was mounted upon the parapet of a narrow sap. Two sections took cover behind a low bank and discharged rifle grenades and bombs at the MG upon which the enemy showed flares. By mutual arrangement the sections worked outwards and outflanked the gun. Corporal Warman, finding the road swept by MG fire, filled the gap between the sections and discharged rifle grenades at the MG, the outer section simultaneously threw bombs from the flank upon which, the crew ran up the sap. Lieut Menpes and Scout White entered the sap from the road and found a splinter proof shelter with a candle burning. L/Cpl Kirkland and Scout Scott rushed the gun and, fearing a booby trap, Scout Scott warned everyone to stand clear and then pulled the belt also examining the gun. L/Cpl Rattray met the six huns running towards him, and, bayoneting the first, called upon the remainder to put up their hands. Two of them did so, but the remaining three endeavored to escape but were killed by L/Cpls Rattray and Correll. Upon the silencing of the MG Sgt Crossman ran up a trench meeting a German whom he shot and killed. Observing a German sniping from a shell hole, Sgt Crossman crawled up to him, and jumping from a shell hole, Sgt Crossman took him prisoner. A party of six men were observed running up to support from the rear, but hurriedly retreated when fired upon. Pte Hodge, finding he had lost his grenade cup, threw his grenades by hand. The enemy barrier on main road consisted of barbed wire or small knife rests, and while blocking the road was easily worked around upon the banks No 1 party with three prisoners and one MG returned to the our lines having suffered on casualty.

No 2 party, charge of Lieut JR Smith MC, approached MG post at N.19.a.4.4. Trench appeared to run from rear of post. The post was heavily manned, and besides the MG, heavy rifle fire and bombing was encountered. The enemy could be seen standing waist high above the trench. The party lined a small bank and many huns were seen to fall as a result of the party's bombing and rifle fire. The right section worked to the flank, and after bombing the gun rushed it, finding the crew dead with the exception of one man whom they took prisoner. In this operation the section suffered two casualties. The withdrawal signal being given the party returned to our lines, but the remainder of the right section escorting the prisoner and gun became casualties – the prisoner being killed and the MG left in No Man's Land.

Upon returning to our lines, Lieut Smith MC, discovering the loss of the gun, and that one man had been unaccounted for, searched No Man's Land with Sgt Cooper MM, and Pte Aris. The missing man, Pte McKenna, was found and brought to our lines but daylight made further search of the gun inadvisable.

No 3 party, under Lieut Spence, following the barrage, encountered wire at M.13.c.70.90, but cut their way through working forward. A MG was encountered at n.19.a.7.8. Lieut Spence and Sgt Crerar with a party endeavored to outflank the gun on the left, but the gunner, swinging his gun, wounded Lieut Spence in the knee. Sgt Crerar placed Lieut Spence in a shell hole and endeavored to push forward but was met by heavy rifle fire and bombs from the rear. Sgt Crerar twice attempted with his bombing and rifle grenade sections to silence the post and MG, but both his section leaders became casualties. The Liaison was made by No 4 party who attended the post in rear while the MG was silenced by rifle fire. At this junction the withdrawal signal was given and the party withdrew to our line having suffered casualties – 1 Officer and 4 Other Ranks, all wounded.

No 4 party, under Lieut Currie MM, left our lines at M.13.c.19.35, but encountered bombing posts within our barrage at N.19.b.29.98. This post was strongly protected by wire knee high on iron knife rests. Under cover of rifle grenades and bombs a path was cut through the wire and the post rushed, where six Germans were discovered dead or unconscious. The party pushed forward, but came under fire of rifles and bombs from posts in vicinity of N.19.a.90.90. These posts were protected by wire. The attempt to silence and rush these posts were hampered by fire from rifle grenades from No 3 party by which Liaison was ultimately established by Lieut Currie. At this stage the withdrawal signal was given, and the party withdrew having suffered four casualties.

During the operation about 25 huns, advancing from East of the Railroad track were dispersed by the flanking party. Ptes Lavigne and Woodcock, although wounded early in the attack insisted upon carrying on. Scout Ross did valuable work in effecting Liaison and carrying in wounded.

April 29, 1918

2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION  
G.I. 294  
April 29<sup>th</sup>, 1918

PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION OF 9 PRISONERS OF 7<sup>TH</sup> AND 8<sup>TH</sup> COYS  
AND 2<sup>ND</sup> M.G.C. 121<sup>ST</sup> R.I.E., 26<sup>T</sup> R.D. CAPTURED IN N.19.a & c ON 29-4-18

METHOD OF CAPTURE

Prisoners were in enemy outpost line during our raid and were taken prisoner

ORDER OF BATTLE

This is given from N to S as:- 121 R.I.R. – 119 R.I.R. – 180 I.R. The 21<sup>st</sup> Bav R.I.R. is stated to be on the right of 26<sup>th</sup> Res Div. The NCO of 7<sup>th</sup>/Coy who seems very reliable is quite positive that on the 16<sup>th</sup> instant the 2<sup>nd</sup> Bn 121 R.I.R. relieved in the Sector in front of NEUVILLE VITASSE a Bn of the 452 I.R. He stated that the 451 I.R. was North and believed that on relief the 452 I.R. went into line also North. This Prussian Division on their right was, however, relieved on the 27<sup>th</sup>/28<sup>th</sup> by the 16<sup>th</sup> Bav Div.

DISPOSITIONS

The Regimental Sector extending from N.13.c.80.95 to N.19.c.7.4 approx is held by the 11 Bn, all four Coys being in the line, the order N to S being 5,6,7,8. Bn is in support in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Switch system, one Company from N.14.c.4.2 and three companies S of road from N.20.a.6.6 to N.20.d.6.7. There are sufficient dugouts in this system to hold all the Battalions.

The 111 Bn is in reserve in the WOTAN STELLUNG North and West of CHERISY.

## COMPANY DISPOSITIONS

The 7<sup>th</sup> Company is in the outpost line from M.24.d.92.93 to N.12.c.6.7. It holds the following posts by night, each of 3 or 4 men:-

Post N19.a.6.7		
Post & dugout (1 platoon)	N.19.a.45.50.	West N.19.a.16.20
Heavy M.G.	Post, N.19.a.37.44	L.M.G. Post N.19.a.19.21
	Post, N.19.a.34.38	L.M.G. Post N.24.b.93.19
L.M.G. Post	N.19.a.30.35	L.M.G. Post M.24.b.92.93
Barrier & Post	N.19.a.82.28	
Post & dugout (1 platoon)	N.19.a.25.28	

The following posts are located in 8<sup>th</sup> Coy Sector:-

M.G. Post	N.24.d.95.81
Barrier and Post	N.24.d.95.76
Platoon shelter	N.19.c.36.91

The two remaining platoons are in cellars at N.19.b.95.50 approx

## RELIEFS

During the last tour only three days were done in the line, but this time the period has been increased to four days. Prisoners say it is done in the hope of deceiving us as to days of relief, as lately many casualties have occurred from our harassing fire during reliefs.

## ROUTES TO TRENCHES

The route from the WOTAN STELLUNG to the front line is as follows:- Follow railway track N of CHERISY to HENINEL, to N.29.d.0.7, along trench to road at N.27.b.3.7, then along road to N.21.a.1.6 track to N.20.b.3.6 and along trench through N.25.a.65.55, N.20.a.20.45, or N.20.a.50.00, N.19.b.3.2 to front line

## M.G's & T.M's

The 7<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> Companies have 4 to 6 L.M.Gs each and in addition a heavy M.G. from 2<sup>nd</sup> M.G.X. is attached to each Company. There are about 6 LTM's (Fish-tails) in position close together at about N.19.a.2.0. There are also 5 MTMs spaced at intervals along N side of road from N.19.a.20.25 to N.14.b.65.40. Casualties are caused at times by our MG Harassing fire, but it seems that this is too high to be effective. TM ammunition is brought up in horse drawn vehicles as far as the neighbourhood of the church, at night, generally unloading there between midnight and 4.00 am.

## HEADQUARTERS

The church in NEUVILLE VITASSE is no longer a company headquarters which has been moved across the road to N.19.b.05.50. The 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> Company HQ are both there. HQ of the Battalion in the line is in trench at N.20.a.5.4.

Headquarters of Support Bn is on road at N.21.c.8.4. HQ 121 RIR, in dugouts just off road between M.22.a.1.8 and cross roads at N.22.a.65.30.

## TRANSPORT

The transport lines are about 400 to 500 yards S of FONTAINE. 8 horses were killed there a few days ago by a direct hit. Losses are steady among the regimental transport through our night harassing fire.

## RATION PARTIES

Rations and field kitchens come to the West edge of HENINEL where they are met by ration parties from the Support Battalion at about 8.45 to 9.00 pm. Ration parties come down road from N.20.b.65.75 to cross roads at N.27.b.3.7, then follow old trench to road at N.26.c.9.6 and along road to HENINEL.

## COMPANY STRENGTH

Is given as 60.

## LOSSES

The whole Division is said to have suffered 60% casualties in the attacks on 24<sup>th</sup> to 28<sup>th</sup> March near ST MARTIN. The 7<sup>th</sup> Company had 20 killed and 45 wounded out of 120 and casualties in other companies were equally severe. Since then losses have been normal till last night when severe casualties were believed to have been inflicted on the 7<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> companies. The 11 Bn Commander and his Headquarters Staff were killed by a direct hit on the 28<sup>th</sup> March and the other two Battalion Commanders were wounded.

## DRAFTS

A draft of 14 men received a week ago from the Recruit Depot at ECLOO is the only reinforcements they have had lately. All the men of this draft are 19 years old, and their moral under shell fire is distinctly poor. They came out from the Ersatz Bn of the 121 RIR from Germany about 3 weeks ago.

## DEFENCES

There is no wire to speak of in front of the outpost line in front of the Support position in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Switch.

## PATROLS

These go out every night but appear to be mostly defensive patrols and have for their object principally the location of our posts, as these were not known at all accurately.

## MOVEMENTS OF 121 RIR

This Regiment had been so severely handled on the 28.3.18 that it did not go in to the line again till the 16.4.18 being refitted and made up to strength during this period in the WOTAN STELLURG. The Divisional sector was therefore held during this fortnight by the remaining two Regiments.

## INTENTIONS

NCO of the 7<sup>th</sup> Company is certain that no attack is intended on this front. He states that there are no troops in reserve and that Divisions in the line are not considered likely for the same reasons. During the first of April when in the WOTAN STELLUNG this NCO states that roughly 15 to 20 batteries of heavy guns were taken out from this part of the line and was told that they were destined for the Northern battle front. No troop movements have been seen or heard of.

## AIRCRAFT

When in the Support Line the 11 Bn was fired on by our aeroplanes with MGs and three or four casualties caused.



## GENERAL

In case of an attack the orders were for Companies to hold Support Line at all costs. The Support Bn in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Switch was to carry out immediate counter attacks if the Outpost Line was driven back.

Prisoners state that they were told that if taken prisoner they will be very badly treated by the British. NCO admits that British prisoners are treated very badly on the whole by the Germans, especially by the Prussians.

Prisoners had no idea that we would raid last night.

Food conditions in Germany are said to be very bad and even worse in Austria where there is a certain amount of famine. Great discontent prevails among the working classes in BERLIN and other large towns and there would have been strikes of a serious nature before this were it not for the official threats that all strikes would at once be drafted into the Army and sent to the front.

## COMMANDERS

26 <sup>th</sup> RD	-	Lieut-General v FRITSH
121 RIR	-	Oberst-Leut v DIELER
11 Bn	-	Ober-Leutenant STARK
7 <sup>th</sup> Coy	-	Lt ELWANGER

## HARASSING FIRE

Prisoners state that reliefs are changed periodically on account of our harassing fire. One platoon had 3 killed when coming into the trenches on the 27<sup>th</sup>. The platoon had great difficulty in getting in and had to lie in shell holes on several occasions on account of our artillery and MG fire. Steady casualties have been caused by our harassing fire at night. Trench from N.31 central to N.21.b.1.5 has been evacuated on account of artillery fire, but prisoners state that it is occupied from N.31 central south by troops of the 120 IR.

## OBSERVATION MOVEMENT

There are two Ops in NEUVILLE VITASSE, one in old house at N.19.b.10.45 and another in the ruins of the church at N.19.b.05.35. These are manned by Battalion observers and artillery FOOs. The TM OP is at M.24.b.95.10

Battalion observers make sketches of the surrounding country and note all movement. FOOs and TM observers have orders to engage all movement within range. Attached map shows approx field of view from those Ops. Prisoners state observers reported a headquarters at M.18.b.8.1 as runners could be seen frequently coming and going from this point. Prisoners state that there is no sniping organization in their battalion and movement was left for the artillery to engage. Prisoner stated that they had located 3 of our TMs in M.34 by their flash. (locations given fairly accurate).

LAUDATORY MESSAGES RECEIVED BY 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN  
BATTALION AFTER RAID OF NIGHT 28/29<sup>TH</sup> APRIL 1918

From GENERAL HON. SIR JHG BYNG, KCB, KCMG, MVO  
COMMANDING 3<sup>RD</sup> ARMY:

"Please convey my congratulations to all ranks who took part in last night's successful enterprise aaa"

From LIEUT-GENERAL SIR A HALDANE, KCB, DSO  
COMMANDING 6<sup>TH</sup> CORPS

"Best congratulations on your successful raid aaa Please convey my congratulations to GENERAL RENNIE and all ranks of "LACK" who took part in it aaa"

From MAJOR-GENERAL HE BURSTALL, CB, CMG, ADC,  
COMMANDING 2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION

"Hearty congratulations on success of raid aaa Please convey to all ranks "LAMENT" and "LANKY" my appreciation of the gallant manner in which it was carried out aaa The resulting identifications are most valuable aaa"

From 169<sup>th</sup> INFANTRY BRIGADE

"Hearty congratulations"

From 5<sup>th</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE

"Hearty congratulations on your success this morning"

From BRIG-GENERAL R RENNIE, CMG, VMO, DSO  
COMMANDING 4<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE

"Please extend my hearty congratulations to all ranks taking part in the operations of this morning aaa The results reflect great credit on the Battalion and the Brigade aaa"

Extract from 21<sup>st</sup> Column

52

~~W. J. HANKY~~

PATROL REPORT

NIGHT April 10/11 1918

N<sup>o</sup> 1 Patrol

18 O.R. and two Battle Scouts with Lewis gun under Lieut Scott left our lines from ~~M. 30. d. 48.~~ M. 36. d. 35. 80. at 10.00 pm and travelled in an easterly direction to BANK at M. 36 b. O. 9. Thence across road to approx M. 36 b. 7. 7. Patrol then moved N. to approx M. 30. d. 52. returning to our lines in S. W. direction to M. 36. d. 35. 80. at 1.00 am.



owing to the extreme darkness of the night, observation by patrol was difficult.

The enemy was reported as very quiet. M. G. fire over this period nil. The ground bore no traces of having been recently used and there was no indication of enemy establishing himself closer to our lines. 7 or 8 flares were sent up from behind

Patrol Report 2.

C. W. R. V.

53

April 19, 1918

No. 1 Patrol. ridge from approx N. 25 d.

No. 2 Patrol. 13 O.P.s and Lewis Gun with 2  
Bath Bombs under Lieut. SMITH  
left our lines from M. 30. 6. 02 at  
2.00 am and proceeded in ~~the~~ S.E.  
direction to ~~the~~ trench in M. 30. d. 8. 8.  
This was found to be a good piece  
of trench. A Steel plate was found  
set up on our side of parapet appar-  
ently for sniping but there was no  
sign of recent occupation. Patrol  
then proceeded in N.E. direction  
to road in N. 25 d. This road was  
followed in S. direction to approx N. 25 c. 15  
where the trench ~~was~~ went ~~back~~  
to our lines at M. 30. 6. 02.

Patrol report to remain quiet  
while they were in it - no fire  
and only very faint. Condition of  
ground good ~~in~~ ~~the~~ ~~area~~  
Very few shell holes. Ground  
did not show signs of having  
been used by enemy.

Patrol Report 3.  
M. H. NICKY

54  
Abie 10/11 1918

No 2 Patrol. The patrol was returning to our  
line during activity commenced  
by gas shelling to the S. MERRITT  
abandon back areas.

Right Defensive Patrol. 1 N.C.O. and six  
O.R. patrolled in front of our  
wire between M 35 & S. 2. To  
M. 30 C.T. + 1 They used our  
wire as being four rows double  
abandon work and metal stakes.  
No news of enemy observed.

Left Defensive Patrol. 1 N.C.O. and six O.R.  
patrolled our wire from M. 30 C. 18  
to M. 30. 6 + 1 from 9.00 am to 5 am.  
They report wire four rows double  
abandon work and metal stakes.  
at 4.45 am patrol encountered  
and captured to the enemy  
~~two men~~ of the 114<sup>th</sup> I.R.B.  
26<sup>th</sup> Div. These men were  
immediately sent to Ben H.A.

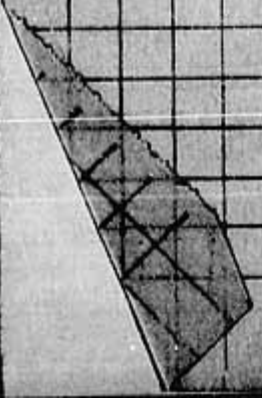
Other Report #

55  
Apr. 11, 1948

L. H. D. [unclear] Patrol. [unclear] to [unclear] [unclear]  
H.Q. The private was [unclear]  
acting as guide to N.C.O. to visit  
[unclear] company. They reported  
no attack impending. Information  
unreliable. Prisoners were  
captured at approx M. 306 S. 3.

8.20 am

[unclear] [unclear]  
L.O. [unclear]  
for Major - Candy  
LANKY





~~LAUREY~~ PATROL REPORT

56  
14/15 Apr

M.1 Patrol. Patrol of 15 ORs - four batten with Lewis guns and two Batten Scouts under Lieut POTTS left our lines from M.36 a.4.8 at 10 pm.

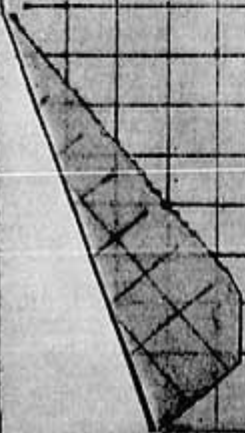
Patrol moved E. towards Bank at M.36 b.2.8. Moved S. to approx. M.36 b.0.5.

They then turned in an N. direction towards the ARRAIS-  
M.36 b.0.5 <sup>ROAD</sup> following it to our lines at M.36 a.4.8.

Patrol reported in at 1.00 am.

Patrol was prevented from penetrating further into V. main's land owing to our antitank fire some of which was falling short.

They report nothing unusual. Waves were normal and very little M.G. fire. Our antitank very active. Mines remain



Oral Report

Apr. 14/15/44

N<sup>o</sup> 2 Patrol. Patrol of 18 ORs with Lewis Guns and 2 Battery Scouts under Lieut. SMITH left our lines from M. 30 a. 9.1. at 1.30 am and proceeded in S. E. direction along road to M. 30 d. 2.4. They then moved N. E. to approx. M. 30. d. 6.6. with a view to locating enemy outpost line. Here patrol was checked from penetrating further by our Artillery which was firing short. At about 3.00 am a man was seen at this point and was immediately seized. He proved to be an escaped British prisoner ~~10191~~ 10191 Lt Col Ashby. 1st W/ Yates. He was escorted to our lines. Patrol then moved S to approx. M. 30. d. 8.4. thence N. W. to our lines at M. 30 a. 9.1. at 4.30 am.

Patrol reports our Artillery very active & firing short.



Patrol Report

N<sup>o</sup> 2 Patrol. Enemy Artillery fairly active.  
 H.E. shells seen ~~and~~ bursting  
 on left that broke into  
 two red flares. M.C. fire  
 Nil. flares normal.

Defensive Patrol 2 Patrols of 1. N.C.O & 6 ORs  
 Right Company continuously patrolled  
 our wire from 9.30 pm  
 to 4.30 AM. Confirmed  
 report of short firing of Art-  
 illery.

Left Company 2 Patrols of 1. N.C.O & 6 ORs  
 patrolled our wire con-  
 tinuously from 9.30 pm to 4.30 am.  
 Nothing unusual to report.

NOTE Escaped British prisoner who came into  
 our lines on ~~Left~~ Company front - was  
 30891 Pte Botten. C. 2<sup>nd</sup> S/Staff. He  
 was separated from his companion  
 (A/cpl Ashby) while making his way over.

Outlook Report

Both British prisoners were  
~~to be sent~~ to Bde H.Q. as soon  
as possible.

8.30 pm

Major Macpherson  
10. sent

SECRET

Cpy No 16

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 176

Ref Sheet 51.b.SW 120,000

April 29<sup>th</sup>, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Sub Section, on the night of April 29<sup>th</sup>/30<sup>th</sup>.

On completion of relief the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be in Division Reserve at WAILLY.

- 2 Disposition in WAILLY:

“B” and “D” Companies, Headquarters, Specialists and Communication Sections will take over Billets as last tour in Divisional Reserve.

“A” Company will take over billets previously occupied by “C” Company

“C” Company will take over trenches and billets occupied by “A” Company

- 3 Five guides per Company and two from Battalion Headquarters will meet the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion at M.17.a.46.20 at 9.00 pm. Lieut CT Hamly will be in charge of guides.
- 4 Trench Stores will be handed over to relieving Battalion and receipts in duplicate forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 am April 30<sup>th</sup>.
- 5 Officers Commanding Companies will be held responsible that all Very Pistols and Water cans are taken to WAILLY.
- 6 The Transport Officer will arrange to have two double limbers at the ration dump at 11.30 pm for the conveyance of Lewis Guns and ?????? to rear.  
  
Headquarters Limber will report to Battalion Headquarters at 9.00 pm
- 7 The Quartermaster will arrange to have a hot meal for the Battalion on their arrival in billets
- 8 Officer's Baggage, Mess outfits and Men's packs will be brought from Quartermaster Stores.
- 9 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word “??????” and time
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 6.30 am

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	Communication
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	10	MO
3	22 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion	11	QM
4	“A” Company	12	TO
5	“B” Company	13	RSM
6	“C” Company	14	File
7	“D” Company	15-17	War Diary
8	Specialists		

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION INSTRUCTIONS FOR RAID TO BE  
CARRIED OUT AGAINST ENEMY POSTS IN NEUVILLE VITASSE  
Night of APRIL 28<sup>th</sup>/29<sup>th</sup>.

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion detail will be divided into 4 parties as under:
  - No 1 Lieut C MENPES, 6 Battalion Scouts, and 14 Other Ranks from 15 Platoon "D" Company
  - No 2 Lieut JR SMITH MC, and 25 Other Ranks from No 3 Platoon "A" Company
  - No 3 Lieut CMV Spence MM, and 25 Other Ranks from No 10 Platoon "C" Company
  - No 4 Lieut W Currie MM, and 25 Other Ranks from 13 Platoon "D" Company

Major HW Cooper will be Officer in charge of operations
- 2 OBJECTIVES No 1 party with RIGHT FLANK on the BEURAINS-NEUVILLE VITASSE ROAD and objective from N.19.a.60.0 to N.19.a.70.25 will move at Zero hour, in Artillery Formation, through this area, clearing posts, demolishing defences and capturing any enemy in the area.
 

No 2 party, with RIGHT FLANK on N.19.a.30.70 and objective, Road N.19.a.70.25 to N.19.a.90.30, will move at Zero hour in Artillery Formation, Mopping up TREELANE TRENCH and clearing the area of the enemy.

No 3 party, will "jump off" from Trench at N.13.c.70.30 at Zero with objective on Road from N.19.a.90.30 to N.19.b.10.45. This area will be mopped up, particular attention to be paid to PILL BOXES and defences marked on Special Map.

No 4 party, will "jump off" from Trench at N.13.c.90.35 at Zero hour with objectives on Road from N.19.b.10.45 to N.19.b.30.50, and will mop up enemy posts and demolish defences in the area.
- 3 ARTILLERY Barrage will be laid down in accordance with Barrage Sketch attached.
- 4 MACHINE GUNS Machine Gun Barrage will be laid down in accordance with Sketch attached
- 5 LIAISON Liaison will be maintained by No 1 Party with 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion party on RIGHT
- 6 COMMUNICATION Communication will be maintained between Officer Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Raid Party and Battalion Headquarters by Telephone.
 

Between Parties and Officer Commanding Raid, by runner.
- 7 EQUIPMENT Equipment will NOT be worn
- 8 SAA Bandolier will be carried by each Rifleman, SAA Dump at M.18.c.35.80 and M.18.b.0.25

- 9 Dumps for No 5, No 35 Grenades situated M.18.c.35.80 and M.18.b.0.25.  
BOMBS  
Dump for No 23 and No 27 at Battalion Headquarters M.23.a.70.00
- 10 Two blankets will be carried by each party for the evacuation of wounded.  
WOUNDED
- 11 (i) Withdrawal signal will be RED over GREEN over RED, Rifle Grenade fired  
WITHDRAWAL from Headquarters of Officer Commanding Raiding Party  
SIGNAL (ii) Red Port Lights will be lighted in our line
- 12 Watches will be synchronized at 10.00 pm, 28<sup>th</sup> inst  
SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES
- 13 Fixed hour will be midnight 28<sup>th</sup>/29<sup>th</sup> April  
FIXED HOUR  
Zero Hour will be so many minutes plus or minus Fixed Hour, and will be notified later
- 14 N.19.a.20.70  
ADVANCED HEADQUARTERS
- 15 N.19.a.20.70  
ADVANCED RAP
- 16 A nominal roll of ALL RANKS taking part in the operation will be sent to Battalion  
NOMINAL ROLL Headquarters by (blank) pm 28<sup>th</sup> inst.

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

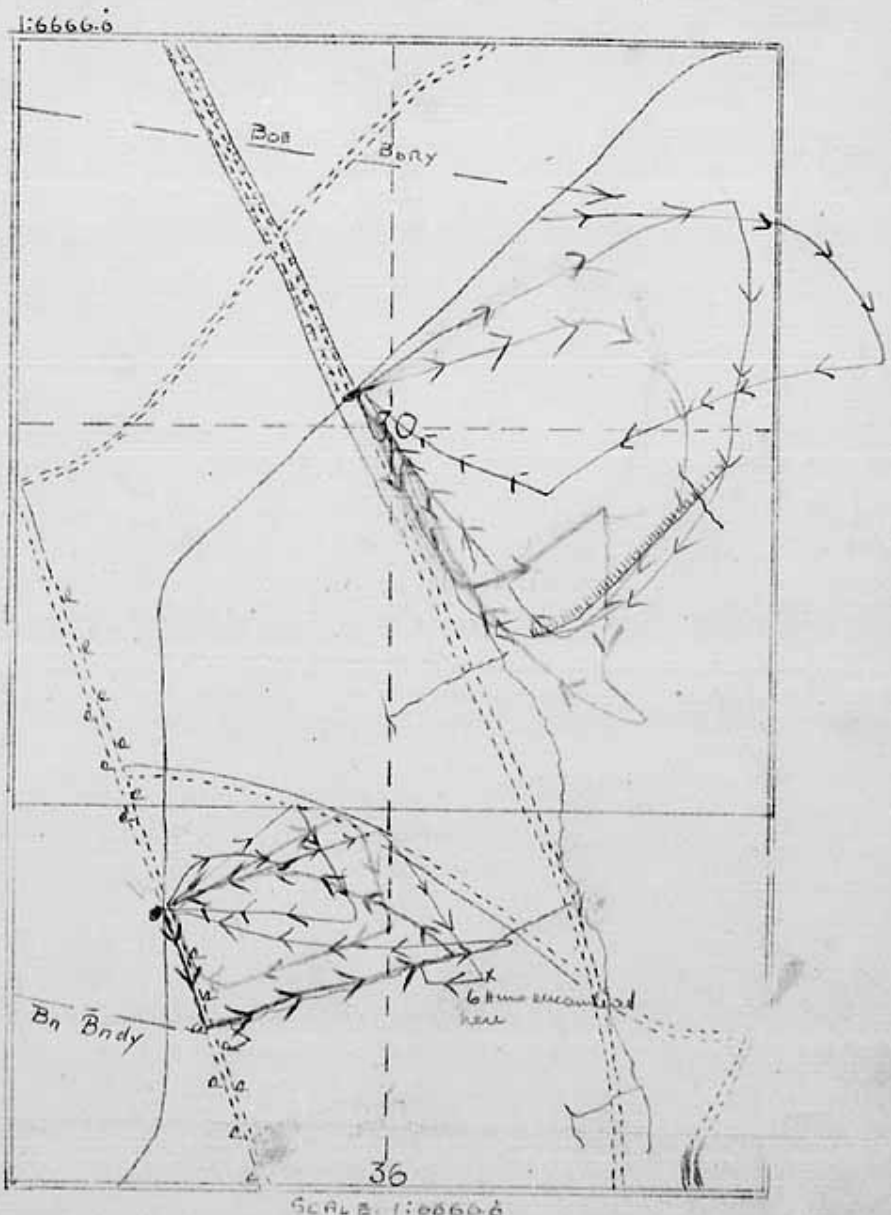
Issued by Signals to

- Copy No 1 Major HW Cooper  
2 Lieut C Menpes  
3 Lieut Smith  
4 Lieut Spence  
5 Lieut Currie  
6 Office

MONKY

PART OF 51<sup>st</sup> J.W.  
SQUARE "M"

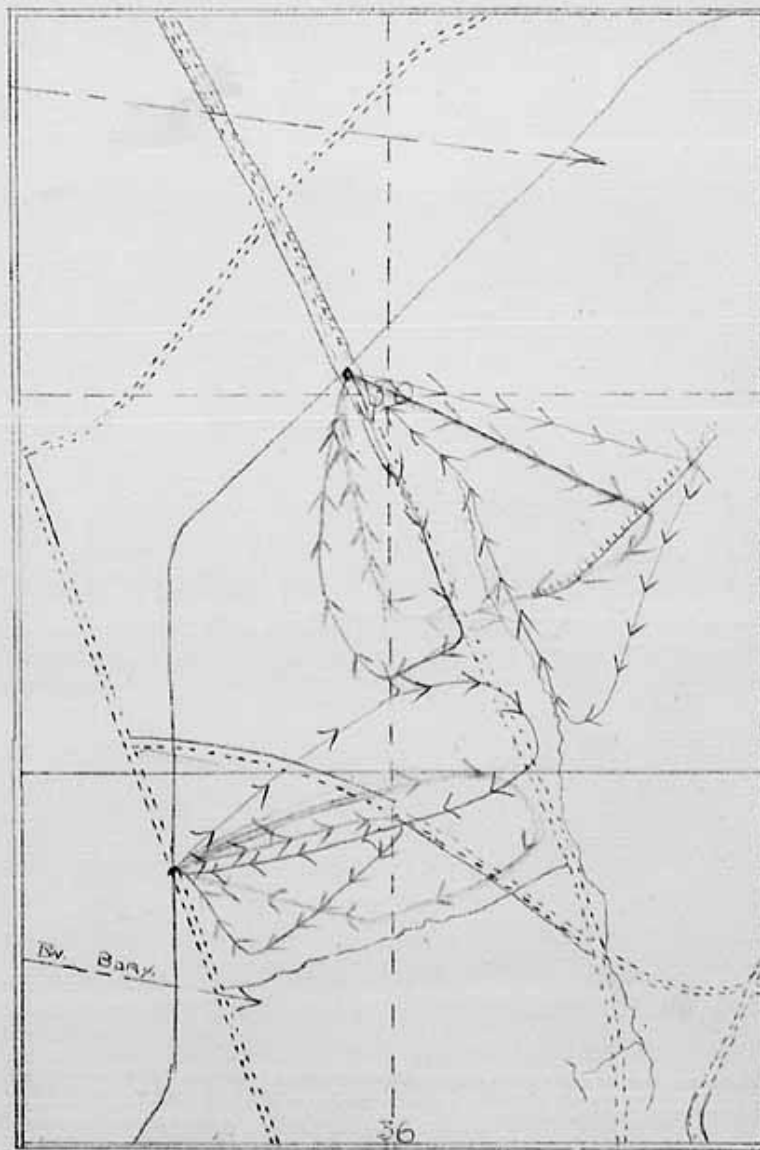
62



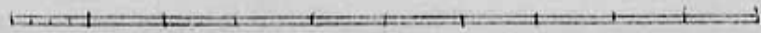
PAIROL ROUTES

- thick solid line — night of Apr 12/13<sup>th</sup> 1918
- thick dashed line — " " 13/14<sup>th</sup> 1918
- thin solid line — " " 14/15<sup>th</sup> 1918
- thin dashed line — " " 15/16<sup>th</sup> 1918

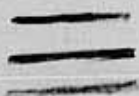
PART OF 51 & 5 W.  
SQUARE "M"



SCALE 1:10000



PATROL ROUTES



night of Apr 9/10<sup>th</sup> 1918  
 " " " 10/11<sup>th</sup> 1918  
 " " " 11/12<sup>th</sup> 1918

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

WAILLY 1/5/18 to 3/5/18 The Battalion spent the first three days of the month in Divisional Reserve at WAILLY. On May 1<sup>st</sup>, all Companies paraded for pay, and "A" and "B" Companies for bathing at BRETENCOURT baths. Bathing parties for "C" and "D" Companies and the Details were held on May 2<sup>nd</sup>, and in the afternoon, the Armourer Staff-Sergeant inspected the rifles. On May 3<sup>rd</sup>, training was carried on, and during the night of May 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup> the Battalion moved into the Front Line, relieving the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Sub-Section of the Right Brigade (MERCATEL) Section.

(See Operation Order 177)

FRONT LINE 4/5/18 to 15/5/18 The twelve days which the Battalion spent in the Front Line was the longest tour which has been done on this front. During the whole time the Battalion was kept on the alert as a German attack on this front seemed imminent.

However, no such attack took place, and the chief event of importance during the tour was the re-adjustment of disposition which took place following the change in the Divisional inter-Brigade boundary. These changes may be summed up as follows:

On taking over the lines from the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of May 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup>, we were holding the Left Sub-Section of the Right Brigade (MERCATEL) Section, from M.30.b.20.50 to M.36.a.35.50. The Battalion was disposed in depth, with two Companies in the Front Line, one in Support, and one in Reserve in the intermediate line. Battalion Headquarters was at M.22.c.75.55. "C" Company was in the Right Front Line, "D" Company in the Left Front Line, "B" Company in Support, and "A" Company in Reserve. This disposition was maintained until the night of May 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup>, when an inter-Company relief took place. "A" Company relieved "D" Company in Left Front Lines, "B" Company relieved "C" Company in Right Front Line, "C" Company took up the Support position, and "D" Company moved back to Reserve.

(See Operation Order 178)

During this period, the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion was on our Right, and until the night of May 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup>, the 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, was on our Left. On the night of May 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup>, when the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion moved in on our Left.

On the night of May 12<sup>th</sup>/13<sup>th</sup>, a change was made in the inter-Brigade boundary, resulting as follows:

"A" Company (Left Front Line) was relieved from M.30.b.50.80 to M.30.a.80.00 by the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, and from M.30.a.80.00 to the inter-company boundary (M.30.e.40.70) by "B" Company of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. "A" Company took up a position in Support, with two platoons in Rifle Pitts, M.29.b.55.45, and two platoons in Sunken Road from M.29.c.10.30 to M.35.b.15.40. This relieved "D" Company's forward platoon, which rejoined "D" Company in reserve.

(See Operation Order 179)

Following the changes in the inter-Brigade boundary, and our Defence Scheme, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Disposition was affected as under, on the night of May 15<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup>.

1. One platoon of "C" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, relieved two Platoons of "A" Company in Rifle Pitts, M.29.b.55.45.



2. "A" Company relieved elements of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Front Line from M.36.a.35.50 to inter-Battalion boundary (S.6.a.00.60)
3. Two platoons of "D" Company relieved Support Company of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Sunken Road, M.35.d. "D" Company, less the two platoons, relieved Reserve Company of the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Sunken Road and MERCATEL SWITCH, M.35.c.
4. Headquarters and Details of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion relieved corresponding units of the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion, and new Battalion Headquarters was at M.34.d.80.80.  
(See Operation Order 180)

A new Defence Scheme was drawn up and the Battalion remained in this position until relieved by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of May 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup>. The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion moved in on our Right on the night of May 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup>, relieving the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and elements of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion.

The relief of the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of May 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup>, was completed without casualties at 11.15 pm. Patrols were sent out at once: a battle patrol of 21 Other Ranks, in charge of Lieutenant W Currie MM, and two Defensive Patrols of 1 NCO and 6 ORs each, operated on our front from 11.00 pm to 4.00 am. Nothing unusual was reported by them.

Enemy aircraft was very active during the day (May 4<sup>th</sup>), and reports from the Battalion Observation Post stated that the enemy seemed to be more on the alert than usual, probably on account of the numerous successful raids which have been made by the units on the Sixth Corps Front. Lieutenant Colonel Rogers DSO, 76<sup>th</sup> Army Brigade RFA, and our Brigade Major called at Battalion Headquarters at 9.30 am. Captain GG McMurtry, "E" Company, 308<sup>th</sup> Infantry AEF and two American NCOs joined the Battalion on the night of May 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup> for instruction. They spent a day at Battalion Headquarters, and in the evening, Captain McMurtry joined "D" Company in the Front Line, and went out on Battle Patrol with Lieutenant JR Smith MC. The NCOs joined "C" and "D" Companies, after having been out on patrol with Lieutenant W Currie MM.

May 5<sup>th</sup> was the third anniversary of the day which our Battalion entrained at Kingston Ontario for Overseas. Of the 35 Officers and 996 ORs which left Kingston on May 5<sup>th</sup> 1915, only 6 Original Officers, 7 Officers who came over as ORs and 175 ORs are with the Battalion now. Very little "celebration" was possible but, during the day, the original men could be seen gathered together in groups reminiscing on their three years service overseas. The morning was dull, misty and wet, and although it cleared towards 1.00 pm, rain fell again at 3.30 pm. Brigadier-General R Rennie OMG, paid a visit to the Commanding Officer at 11.00 am and the Brigade Major called at 3.30 pm. The day was quiet owing to the bad weather, and the night continued very wet, the extreme darkness hampered the movement of our patrols very much. The enemy was very quiet, and constantly put up white flares. Our artillery's activity was above normal, but there was little retaliation. At 4.50 am an SOS went up on our left. The artillery responded at once, and continued intense fire for a few minutes when the situation became normal again.

On May 5<sup>th</sup> Captain HH Edwards, of "D" Company, proceeded to Rear, and the following morning he was admitted to Hospital suffering from acute Appendicitis. He died in No 3 Casualty Clearing station, Officer's Hospital on May 11<sup>th</sup>. Captain Edwards had only been with the Battalion for a few weeks. He came to us from the 156<sup>th</sup> Battalion, of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division, in which unit, with the rank of Major, he had commanded "A" Company from the time of the formation of the 156<sup>th</sup> Battalion in January 1916. Captain Edwards' home was in Brockville Ontario. For some years previous to his service overseas he had commanded a Company of the 41<sup>st</sup> Brockville Rifles. Although he had only been with the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion a short time, he had made many friends, and his loss as such, and as an Officer, will be deeply regretted by all ranks.

The weather continued changeable on May 6<sup>th</sup>, and, except for considerable counter-battery work, the situation was quiet. The night was again wet and very dark, and patrols experienced the same difficulties as on the previous night. Our artillery carried out a heavy strafe on NEUVILLE VITASSE from 3.00 am to 3.30 am.

The morning of May 7<sup>th</sup> was clear. Rain commenced again in the afternoon and continued during the night. There was little artillery activity on either side, and practically no aerial work. The attitude of the enemy was noticeably quiet. During the night, the enemy dropped a number of shells on MERCATEL.

The weather cleared on the morning of the 8<sup>th</sup>, and our artillery became very active. There was little retaliation. At 8.30 pm the enemy placed a short sharp burst of Trench Mortar fire on our Front Line. We had one casualty, Lieut HJ Glasgow, (acting OC "D" Company), being wounded by a shell splinter in the right side. He died a few days later at No 5 Canadian Stationary Hospital. The news of the death of this Officer was keenly felt by the Commanding Officer and all who had been fortunate to know and work with him since he came to the Battalion in September 1917. Lieutenant Glasgow enlisted in the 154<sup>th</sup> Battalion, (Stormont and Glengarry Highlanders). He reverted from the rank of Captain to join our Battalion in France. He had served with "B" Company, but the appreciation of his value was not confined to the members of that unit. His work as an Officer was highly satisfactory, and his interest in his men, and in out of the line, had been marked. Many instances of personal bravery on his part have been recalled. He will be remembered by all ranks as one of our most loyal and valued Officers.

May 9<sup>th</sup> was fine, with good visibility. Our planes were very active during the day. Both our Observation Post Intelligence Reports and our Patrol Reports note the singular quietness of the enemy. At 10.00 pm the vicinity of Battalion Headquarters was shelled with gas. A dense cloud of gas hung around for some time. Again at 3.25 am Battalion Headquarters was shelled with gas and 5.9s, but no casualties occurred.

May 10<sup>th</sup> continued fine. Captain B Brook, "D" Company, 308<sup>th</sup> Infantry, AEF, and two American NCOs were attached to the Battalion for instruction. Brigadier-General R Rennie CMG, called at Battalion Headquarters at 11.15 am. The situation continued very quiet, hostile artillery was chiefly directed on Back area targets. During the night of May 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup>, the inter-Company relief, already mentioned, was carried out.

On the morning of the 11<sup>th</sup>, Lieutenant Colonel EW Jones DSO, proceeded to Rear and from there to FORT MAHON, to attend a Commanding Officer's Conference, Third Army School. Major HE Pense MC, took command of the Battalion. The morning was quiet, and during the afternoon and evening, activity increased on both sides. Enemy activity showed a considerable increase over the previous 24 hours.

At 3.30 am on the 12<sup>th</sup>, the enemy placed a barrage on our Front Line for 15 minutes, resulting in seven casualties. Enemy activity continued to increase during the day. At 5.00 pm seventeen of his observation balloons were visible from Battalion Headquarters. At 7.30 pm nine of our planes crossed the German Lines, with the apparent intention of attacking the enemy balloons. A German anti-aircraft barrage was placed across the whole front in an attempt to stop our planes. The sky from North to South was a streak of black from the bursting shells. All of our planes pierced the barrage and returned safely: several enemy balloons were pulled down as a result. Aerial activity continued above normal during the evening until dark. The night of the 12<sup>th</sup>/13<sup>th</sup> was quiet, our patrols had nothing to report.

The weather on the 13<sup>th</sup> was changeable during the day, and towards night, became very wet. On this date two new Officers reported to forward headquarters - Lieutenants LC Boswell, MM, and RA Stewart. Both of these Officers were original 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion men who have won their commissions in the Field. They were posted to "D" Company. With the change of weather, the situation became quiet again. During the night of May 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup> new dispositions were taken up, as already outlined. The relief was reported to Brigade as completed at 12.45 am.

May 14<sup>th</sup> was fine, with good visibility. At 1.00 pm Brigadier-General R Rennie CMG, and Captain MS Gooderham of the Brigade Staff, called at Battalion Headquarters, and remained to lunch. During the day and night, parties of men worked in shifts of 5 hours, under the 5<sup>th</sup> Field Company, Canadian Engineers, completing the work on new dugout at Battalion Headquarters. This dugout which had been commenced by the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, will, when complete, make an excellent Battalion Headquarters. Our artillery was very active during the day and carried out a two minute shoot of gas on NEUVILLE VITASSE at 11.30 pm. Much enemy movement was reported from our Battalion Observation Post. Major Wise, Officer Commanding the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, and a reconnoitering party called at Battalion Headquarters at 10.00 am, regarding our relief by that unit on the night of May 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup>. A large fire was seen burning in the enemy's lines between 9.30 pm and 12 midnight, in the direction of MONCHY. During the night our patrol engaged two enemy machine gun posts, and succeeded in silencing the guns. The patrols reported that the enemy appeared to be on the alert and inclined to be nervous.

May 15<sup>th</sup> was very fine and warm. Lieutenant Colonel LR Bertram DSO, (GSO1 Canadian Division) and the Brigade Major called at Battalion Headquarters at 10.00 am. During the day our heavies were very active shelling the enemy's back areas. Aircraft on both sides took advantage of the fine weather and were active during the day and also in the night.

On the night of May 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup>, we were relieved by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. The relief was completed without casualties at 12.10 am, and the Battalion moved to WAILLY, where "C" and "D" Companies and Headquarters Details occupied the usual billets in the village, while "A" and "B" Companies took up positions in WAILLY WOOD, adjacent to our Brigade Headquarters. (R.10.d.)

The total casualties for the tour of twelve days in the Front Line were – killed, 1 OR; died of wounds, 1 Officer (lieutenant EJ Glasgow) and 1 OR; wounded, 13 ORs. Sick (later died) Capt HH Edwards.

## BELLACOURT

While the Battalion was in the Line. The Transport and Quartermaster's Stores moved, with the Brigade Details, from BELLACOURT to MONCHIET. This move took place on May 6<sup>th</sup>. On the night of May 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup>, the enemy heavies shelled the new horse-lines with the result that 1 OR was wounded (since died of wounds), 2 horses were killed and two wounded. Those killed were two of our best animals, having come from Canada with the Battalion.

On May 7<sup>th</sup>, reinforcements of 6 ORs reported to Rear Battalion Headquarters from the Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp, and on the 12<sup>th</sup>, another draft of 25 ORs arrived. These reinforcements were posted to Companies and sent up the line on the 8<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> respectively. Another draft of 7 ORs which arrived on May 14<sup>th</sup>, joined the Battalion at WAILLY on the night of May 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup>.

Daily Orders of May 15<sup>th</sup> contained two items of importance. First, the announcement of the award of the Military Medal to the following, - 636286 Lance Corporal JS Adams, 59572 Private WR Leach, 725534 Private GE Scott, 1090403 Private G Ross, 195631 Lance Corporal SE Hill, 805406 Private KO White, 59957 Lance Corporal FW Taylor, 412353 Sergeant TH Crossman, 636219 Private (Lance Corporal) A Rattray. (*Transcriber's Note: I have corrected some errors that occurred with service numbers*) These were in recognition of conspicuous gallantry and devotion to duty on the part of the recipients during our raid on the enemy's position at NEUVILLE VITASSE on the night of April 28<sup>th</sup>/29<sup>th</sup>. Second, the following promotions, Temporary Captain (Acting Major) HW Cooper, to be temporary Major, 14-3-17, but with seniority from 24-2-17. To be temporary Captain – Lieut DJ More, MC, 29-10-17, Lieut ES Sawell, MC, 16-12-17, Lieut NJ MacCrimmon 17-2-18. Major Cooper, as an original Officer of the Battalion, has been acting Major since July 1916. During this period he has at different times acted as Adjutant and Second in Command of the Battalion. He has also commanded the Battalion on several occasions. Captain More, who joined the Battalion in Kingston in 1914, was given his commission in the Field on July 21<sup>st</sup>, 1916. Since August 1917, he has commanded "C" Company. Captain Sawell came to the Battalion as a reinforcement on November 21<sup>st</sup>, 1916. After the VIMY attack in April 1917, he was appointed Lewis Gun Officer. Captain MacCrimmon's promotion comes after 13 months service with the Battalion. He has been second in Command of "D" Company for some months, and on several occasions has been acting Officer Commanding.

WAILLY 16/5/18 On May 16<sup>th</sup>, all Companies were paid, and on May 17<sup>th</sup> Bathing Parades were held at BRETENCOURT BATHS. The remainder of the time spent at WAILLY was devoted to training, which was chiefly that of open warfare. Parades commenced at 7.30 am with Inspection, PT or BF, the remainder of the morning was devoted to Gas and Bolt Drill, Extended Order, artillery formation practice, Platoon attack and Company in attack. Signallers, Stretcher Bearers, Scouts, Snipers, and Observers received special instruction. Each Company spent three hours on the Miniature rifle Range. Platoon Commanders and NCOs received instruction in map reading, and the use of the compass. Two afternoons were devoted to schemes for Officers and senior NCOs and special attention was given to gas instruction. On May 20<sup>th</sup>, Captain Mortimer, the Divisional Gas Officer, gave a lecture to all ranks on Yellow Cross gas shells.

On May 18<sup>th</sup>, seven bronze medals were received for the winners for the Falling Plate competition, Canadian Corps Rifle Meeting in September, 1917. The list was as follows: 469128 Sergeant JD MacGillivray, 633152 Lance Corporal SW Eamer, 195631 Lance Corporal SE Hill, 805530 Pte V Souliere, 636315 Private JJ Laird, 633212 Private AJ McLellan, 454602 Pte A Doran. (*Transcriber's Note: some corrections were made to errors in numbers*) The Medals were presented by the Acting Commanding Officer to the three NCOs who were the only ones available. The remaining medals were sent to the winners.

On May 19<sup>th</sup>, Protestant and Roman Catholic Church Parades were held. On this date, Lieutenant GD Woodcock proceeded on a Musketry Course to the Third Army School.

SUPPORT 23/5/18 On the night of May 22<sup>nd</sup>/23<sup>rd</sup>, the Battalion moved into Brigade Support in TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH, NEUVILLE VITASSE SECTION, left Sub-Section, relieving LINE to the 28<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. The details left out of the Line proceeded to billets at BAILLEULVAL, where Rear Headquarters were established; the transport and QM Stores remained at MONCHIET.

The disposition of the Battalion in TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH was similar to that taken up in the tour in this Section commencing April 20<sup>th</sup>, 1918. Battalion Headquarters was located at M.15.a.45.30 and the Battalion Observation Post at M.15.c.66.18. There were no casualties during the relief, which was complete at 11.30 pm and the night passed quietly.

The morning of the 23<sup>rd</sup> was bright and clear. Aircraft were very active: at about 9.00 am a squadron of ten enemy aeroplanes crossed our front. They were heavily engaged by anti-aircraft and machine gun fire and driven back. During the morning Brigadier General R Rennie, CMG, and his Orderly Officer, visited the Commanding Officer. The night was quiet. Several working parties were engaged improving the defences of the position.

May 24<sup>th</sup> was very wet. There was no aerial activity, and the artillery was quiet on both sides.

The 25<sup>th</sup> was fine again, and activity increased. During the morning the enemy shelled AGNY very heavily. At 10.55 am he commenced an hour's bombardment of the positions East of the ARRAS-BAPAUME Railway Cutting. Enemy shelling continued all day, and our casualties were only three ORs wounded. Second Lieutenant RG McCarthy of the 306<sup>th</sup> US Infantry, AEF, and two American NCOs were attached to the Battalion for instruction from May 25<sup>th</sup> to May 27<sup>th</sup>.

May 26<sup>th</sup> was fine. The enemy continued his shelling of the battery positions in front of the ARRAS-BAPAUME Railway Cutting.

At 2.00 am on the 27<sup>th</sup> the enemy put down on our area an intense bombardment of gas mixed with High Explosive. It's duration was an hour. At 5.30 am hostile artillery again shelled our area, and the battery positions south of AGNY for an hour and a half. Our artillery carried out a heavy shoot at about 3.30 pm. Casualties for the day were three ORs wounded.

On the 28<sup>th</sup>, enemy artillery activity decreased considerably, while our guns and howitzers showed a marked increase in activity. Our planes patrolled the enemy lines during the whole day, and were active during the night, numerous chain flares being put up by the enemy.

FRONT LINES 30/5/18 to 31/5/18

On the night of May 29<sup>th</sup>/30<sup>th</sup>, the Battalion moved into the FRONT LINE, Left Sub-Section of the NEUVILLE VITASSE SECTION, relieving the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. "C" Company was disposed in the Right Front Line, with one Platoon of "A" Company in Close Support; "D" Company was in the Left Front Line, with one Platoon of "B" Company in Close Support; "A" Company, less one Platoon, occupied the Right Support Position, while "B" Company, less one Platoon, held the Left Support Position. Battalion Headquarters was located at M.16.d.90.50, and Battalion Observation at M.12.d.95.15.

The Battalion was in position at 12.40 am on the 30<sup>th</sup>, and the relief was reported to Brigade as complete. There were no casualties. The 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion was on our Right, and a Battalion of the 56<sup>th</sup> British Division was on our Left. Patrols consisting of 1 Reconnoitering Patrol and two Defensive Patrols were sent out immediately after taking over the Front Line. They had nothing of unusual interest to report. Hostile machine guns were active, but otherwise the attitude of the enemy was quiet. Our artillery and Stokes Guns were very active during the day. A large part of their fire was directed on NEUVILLE VITASSE.

The enemy was quiet, although his planes showed considerable activity during the morning, and in the evening a few gas shells were dropped near Battalion Headquarters. Our casualties for the day were three ORs wounded. During the night, two reconnoitering patrols and two defensive patrols operated on our front.

May 31<sup>st</sup> was fine, and the aerial activity was above normal. The enemy shelled our back areas during the day, and our artillery replied with a shoot from 3.00 pm to 7.45 pm. Lieutenant-Colonel JH Clark, DSO, Commanding 18<sup>th</sup> Brigade RFA, called at Battalion Headquarters in the evening in regard to artillery support, his Brigade being responsible for covering our front.

During the past three days, the Battalion had been preparing to participate in a raid which the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade proposed to carry out against NEUVILLE VITASSE on the morning of the 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> of June. The necessary plans and reconnaissance had been made. The personnel had been selected. But on the evening of the 31<sup>st</sup>, a wire was received that the proposed operation had been cancelled.

Patrols, similar to those of the 30<sup>th</sup>/31<sup>st</sup>, were sent out during the night, and reported the enemy as being generally quiet.

BAILLEULVAL 23/5/18  
to  
31/5/18

While the Battalion was in the line, the details left out for the tour were billeted at BAILLEULVAL, where Rear Battalion Headquarters was located.

Notification of the re-opening of Courses at CCRC and Canadian Corps Schools (those courses had been closed for two months) was received, and on the 24<sup>th</sup>, six NCOs proceeded to the CCRC, and on the 26<sup>th</sup> Lieut ES Webb and three NCOs left for the Canadian Corps School.

On the 26<sup>th</sup> Lieutenant-Colonel EW Jones DSO, returned from Commanding Officer's Conference, FORT MAHON, and assumed command of the Battalion. He proceeded to advanced Headquarters at once.

Daily Orders of the 29<sup>th</sup> announced the award of the Military Cross to Lieutenants C Menpes and W Currie MM. The award to Lieut Menpes was for conspicuous gallantry while in charge of No 1 Party during the combined raid of the 19<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalions on the morning of April 29<sup>th</sup>. Lieutenant Currie's decoration came as a reward for his particularly daring daylight reconnaissance on April 26<sup>th</sup>.

During this period, reinforcements of six Officers and seventeen ORs reported from the CCRC as follows: 24<sup>th</sup> – Lieut PG Hall, 28<sup>th</sup> – Lieuts JG Caldwell and L Fraser. 30<sup>th</sup> – Lieuts HT Deane MC, RL Perry and WL Bonnell, and 17 ORs. These reinforcements proceeded forward on the night following their arrival. Lieuts Fraser and Deane, original NCOs of the Battalion who were appointed to their commissions in the Field, had returned after recovering from wounds received in the attack of our Division at HILL 70, while attached to the 4<sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery. These Officers were later posted as under: Lieut Bonnell to "A" Company, Lieut Hall to "B" Company, Lieut Caldwell to "B" Company, Lieut Deane to "C" Company, Lieut Fraser to "D" Company and Lieut Perry to "D" Company.

On the 27<sup>th</sup> Lieut HCL Gillman returned to duty with the Battalion, on ceasing to be Area Commandant, ABLAYN ST NAZAIRE.

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO 177

Reference Maps:  
Sheets 51 B SW  
51 C SE

3<sup>rd</sup> May 1918

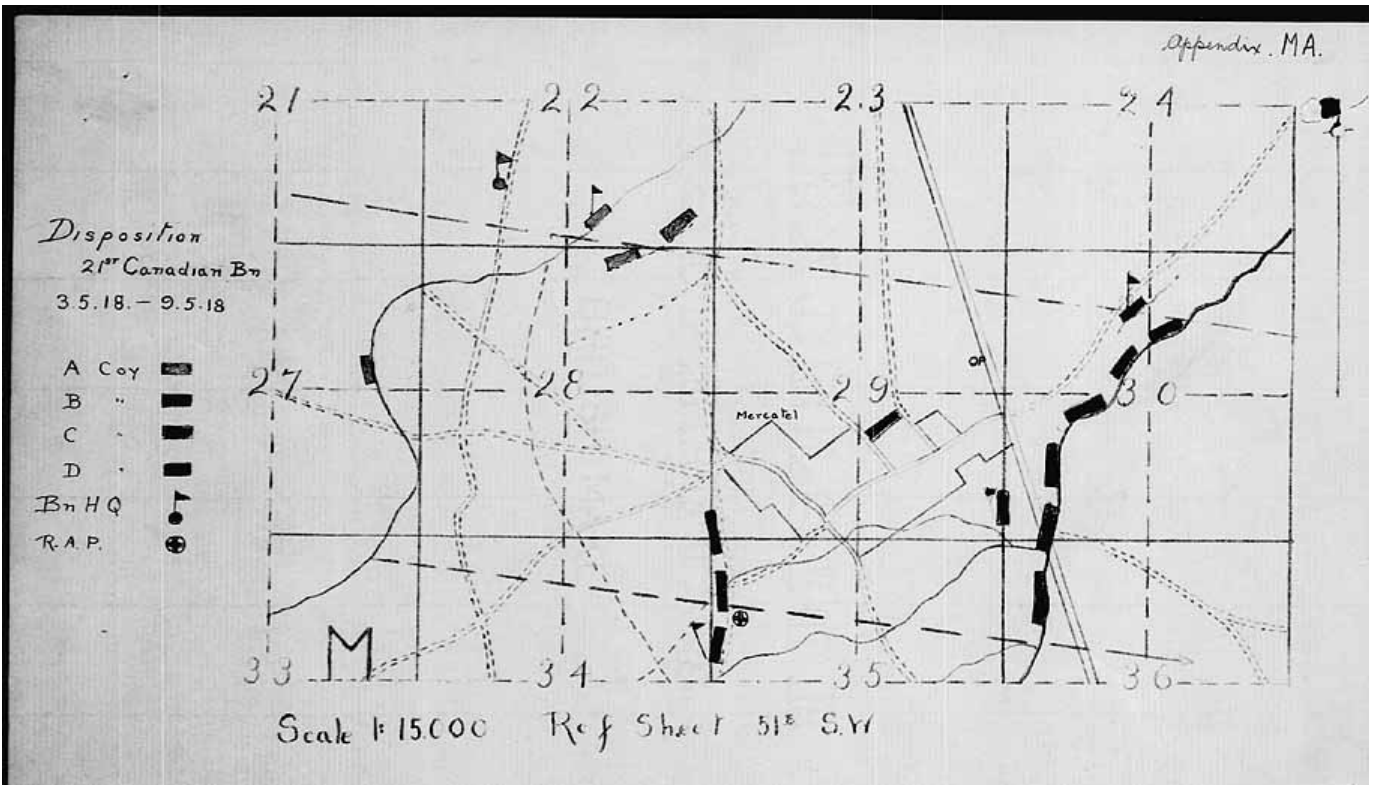
- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Front Line (MERCATEL SECTOR), on the night of 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup> May, 1918
- 2 Dispositions will be taken up as under:
  - "C" Company – Right Front Line
  - "D" Company – Left Front Line
  - "B" Company – Right Support
  - "A" Company – Left SupportHeadquarters, Specialist and Communication Sections will relieve corresponding units
- 3 Companies and Sections will move from their present billets and pass Starting point, WATER TANK, R.23.a.4.6 as under:
  - "D" Company – 8.00 pm
  - "C" Company – 8.10 pm
  - "B" Company – 8.20 pm
  - "A" Company – 8.30 pm
  - Communication, Specialist and Headquarters – 8.40 pm
- 4 Five guides per Company will meet the Battalion at M.27.c.7.9 (Junction of Standard Gauge and disused Light Gauge Track at 9.00 pm.
- 5 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts in duplicates will be forwarded, with dispositions, accompanied by map, to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am, 4<sup>th</sup> instant.
- 6 A report on Condition of Defences will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 pm, 4<sup>th</sup> instant
- 7 One Officer and 1 NCO per Company, and 1 NCO per Section will rendezvous at Battalion Headquarters at 6.30 pm to proceed ahead and take over trench stores etc.
- 8 Rations for the 4<sup>th</sup> will be carried, and water bottles will be taken in filled. Extra water and tea will be taken in to Dump by Transport. One can of water for Medical Officer will be sent with "B" Company's supply
- 9 Cancelled
- 10 Officer's baggage and mess outfits, together with men's packs, will be deposited at Regimental Canteen by 6.45 pm, for transport to Quartermaster Stores. One man per Company and Section (selected from party proceeding to rear), will be left on guard. Transport Officer will arrange for the removal of this baggage and cookers to Transport Lines.
- 11 All personnel not proceeding forward will parade (in Marching Order with greatcoats), at Battalion Headquarters at 6.30 pm, and will proceed under Lieut ES Sawell MC, to Transport Lines at BELLACOURT. The Quartermaster will arrange for the rationing and billeting of same.

- 12 Ration Dump "B", "C" and "D" Companies at M.29.c.16.25  
"A" Company and Headquarters at M.22.c.6.0
- 13 RAP – M.29.c.16.25
- 14 Battalion Headquarters – M.22.c.75.40
- 15 The SOS, until May 5<sup>th</sup>, will be one 1" Red very light followed by one 1" Green very light, and repeated until answered. May 5<sup>th</sup> and after, a Rifle Grenade Rocket bursting White over White over White.
- 16 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word "KENT", time.
- 17 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 1.00 pm

- |           |                           |       |   |
|-----------|---------------------------|-------|---|
| Copy No 1 | Commanding Officer        | 10    | Transport Officer's Section               |
| 2         | "A" Company               | 11    | RSM's Section                             |
| 3         | "B" Company               | 12    | Pipe Band                                 |
| 4         | "C" Company               | 13    | Brass Band                                |
| 5         | "D" Company               | 14    | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade |
| 6         | Specialist Section        | 15    | 27 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       |
| 7         | Communication Section     | 16    | File                                      |
| 8         | Medical Officer's Section | 17-19 | War Diary                                 |
| 9         | Quartermaster's Section   |       |   |





SECRET

Copy No 6

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
PROVISIONAL DEFENCE SCHEME  
LEFT SUB-SECTION. MERCATEL SECTION

---

Ref Map  
51 B SW

- 1 (a) FRONTAGE The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion is holding the Left Sub-Section of the Right Brigade, MERCATEL SECTION, from M.36.a.35.50 to M.30.b.50.50.
- (b) A Battalion of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade is on the right and a Battalion of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade is on the left.
- 2 The prominent features and points of Tactical Importance in the Area of the Left Front Line Battalion are as follows:
  - a NEUVILLE VITASSE Ridge running North-Easterly through M.35, M.30, and N.19 and terminating East of NEUVILLE VITASSE
  - b The Intermediate Spur running parallel to the NEUVILLE VITASSE Spur through M.28.a, M.22.d to M.23.a
  - c The village of MERCATEL
- 3 DISPOSITIONS The Battalion is disposed in depth with Two Companies in the Front Line. One in Support, and One in Reserve.
  - a RIGHT FRONT LINE COMPANY Three Platoons in Front Line from Inter-Battalion Boundary, M.36.a.35.50 to M.30.c.40.70. One Platoon in Close Support in Trench at M.30.c.25.20, to M.30.c.05.05, Company Headquarters, M.30.c.05.05
  - b LEFT FRONT LINE COMPANY Three Platoons in the Front Line from Inter-Company Boundary, M.30.c.40.70 to Northern Brigade Boundary M.30.b.30.60. One Platoon in Close Support in Trench M.30.a.85.35, to M.30.b.20.70. Company Headquarters M.30.a.90.19.
  - c SUPPORT COMPANY One Platoon in old trench from M.29.d.45.95, remainder of Company disposed along Sunken Road from Cross Roads M.29.c.10.30, to M.35.m.20.60. Company Headquarters M.35.a.20.50.
  - d RESERVE COMPANY Disposed in Inter-Mediate Trench Area in old Trench System. One Platoon, M.27.d.70.90 – M.27.b.70.35. Two Platoons in Old Trench from M.28.a.95.65 to M.22.d.97.30. One Platoon in Support to Left Front Company in rifle Pits at M.29.b.55.45. Company Headquarters M.22.d.25.30
  - e BATTALION HEADQUARTERS Sunken Road at M.22.c.75.55. Details organized as two complete Platoons.
- 4 ACTION IN CASE OF AN ATTACK Immediately an attack takes place, or it appears that an attack is about to take place, the following action will be taken:
  - a FRONT LINE COMPANIES will "Stand To" in their respective positions.
  - b SUPPORT COMPANY less One Platoon will take up position in Fire Trench 30 yards East of living quarters SUNKEN ROAD. The Left Platoon of Support Company will man Old Fire Positions in old Trench M.29.d.45.85 to M.29.b.65.95, and be prepared to support the flank on which attack develops.

- c RESERVE COMPANY Forward Platoon on which attack develops, will take up positions in Trench East of ARRAS-BAPAUME ROAD at M.29.b.98.20 to M.30.a.10.40, and will be under orders of OC Left Front Line Company. Remaining three Platoons will 'Stand To' in present Battle Positions, and await orders from Battalion Headquarters.
- d In the Event of the Reserve Company being ordered to occupy Intermediate Line, the Platoon in M.27.b will Stand fast, remaining two Platoons will be disposed as follows:  
One platoon will occupy Intermediate Line astride road in M.28.a, approximately from M.28.a.20.70 to M.28.c.25.40 to approximately M.22.d.65.60.
- e BATTALION HEADQUARTERS already organized as Two Platoons, will occupy Intermediate Line from M.22.d.25.25, to approx M.28.a.90.95
- f ACTIN IN THE EVENT OF RAID OR LOCAL ATTACK Should the Enemy succeed in effecting a lodgement in the GREEN LINE by means of a Raid or Local Attack, the Commander of the Reserve Platoon will deliver a Counter-Attack on his own initiative with a view of restoring the Line. This Counter-Attack should be made as quickly as possible, but care must be taken that it is properly organized and well directed.
- A good look-out at all times and speedy and accurate reconnaissance will enable the Commander to make the best possible use of his Unit.
- g ACTION IN THE EVENT OF AN ATTACK IN FORCE In the event of the Enemy attacking in force along the whole front, there will be no voluntary withdrawal. Each successive Line will be held to the last.
- Officers Commanding Front Line Companies will be prepared to form defensive flanks and issue such orders as appear necessary. The fact that the Enemy has obtained a footing in a part of the Line will be no reason for withdrawing the remainder.
- h THE SUPPORT AND RESERVE COMPANIES (Less One Platoon in M.29.b.) will only move from Intermediate Line on receipt of orders from Battalion Headquarters.
- 5 WORK PARTIES Work Parties from Support and Reserve Companies will, in event of an attack developing while on the way to work, report to their Battle Positions. In the event of such parties being in the Front Line when an attack or raid develops, they will come under orders of nearest Company Commander.
- 6 SAS BOMBS and TOOLS All Companies have an ample supply. Dumps are situated in the vicinity of Company Headquarters, and there is a Reserve Dump of SAA & Bombs at Battalion Headquarters, also large Dump of SAA in MERCATEL, M.29.e.10.65. Brigade Dumps are situated as under:  
BLAIRVILLE QUARRY R.34.d.5.3, and M.27.c.6.7  
MAIN DAC DUMP, BLAIRVILLE, X.4.a.5.9
- 7 MACHINE GUNS The guns of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Machine Gun Battalion in the Area are situated as under:  
M.30.a.97.10 (Two Guns) M.36.a.22.50 (Two Guns)  
M.23.c.40.15 (Two Guns)  
For disposition of other guns covering Brigade Front, see attached tracing.
- 8 SOS The SOS Signal on the VI Corps Front is a Rifle Grenade Rocket, WHITE over WHITE over WHITE, sent up and continued until barrage comes down.

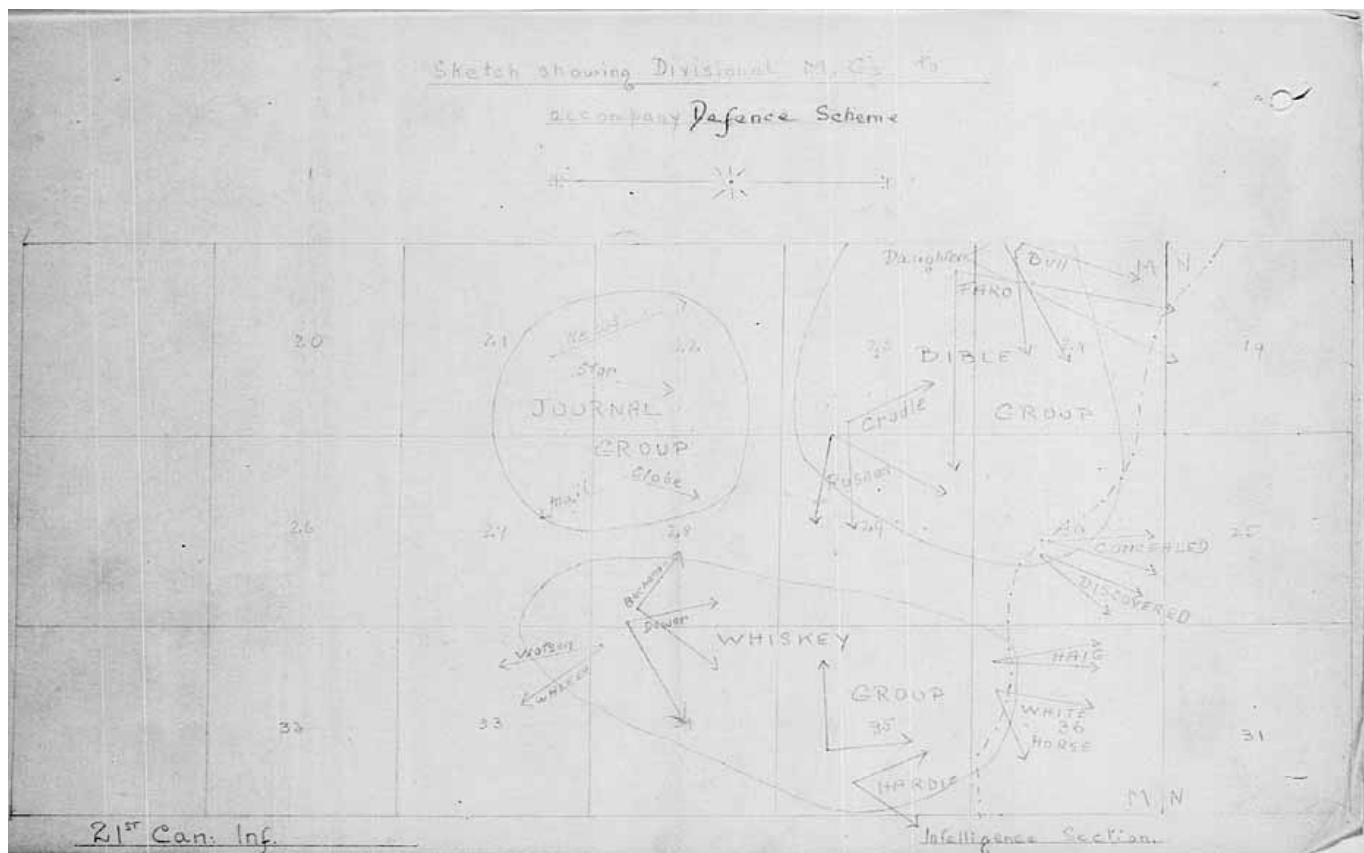
9 COMMUNICATIONS Communications between Companies and Battalion Headquarters is maintained by Fuller-Phone. Lucas Lamps are used from forward Platoons M.29.b.55.45, and from Headquarters Support Company, M.35.a.20.50. Communication with Brigade is maintained by Fuller-Phone, Power Buzzer, Lucas Lamp, and indirectly by Pigeon Service.

THIS SCHEME MUST NOT BE TAKEN FURTHER FORWARD THAN SUPPORT COMPANY

- Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
- 2 "A" Company
- 3 "B" Company
- 4 "C" Company
- 5 "D" Company
- 6-8 War Diary

(signed by FD Raymond)  
 Captain  
 Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

May 8<sup>th</sup>, 1918



SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 178

Copy No 12

Ref Map  
51 B SW

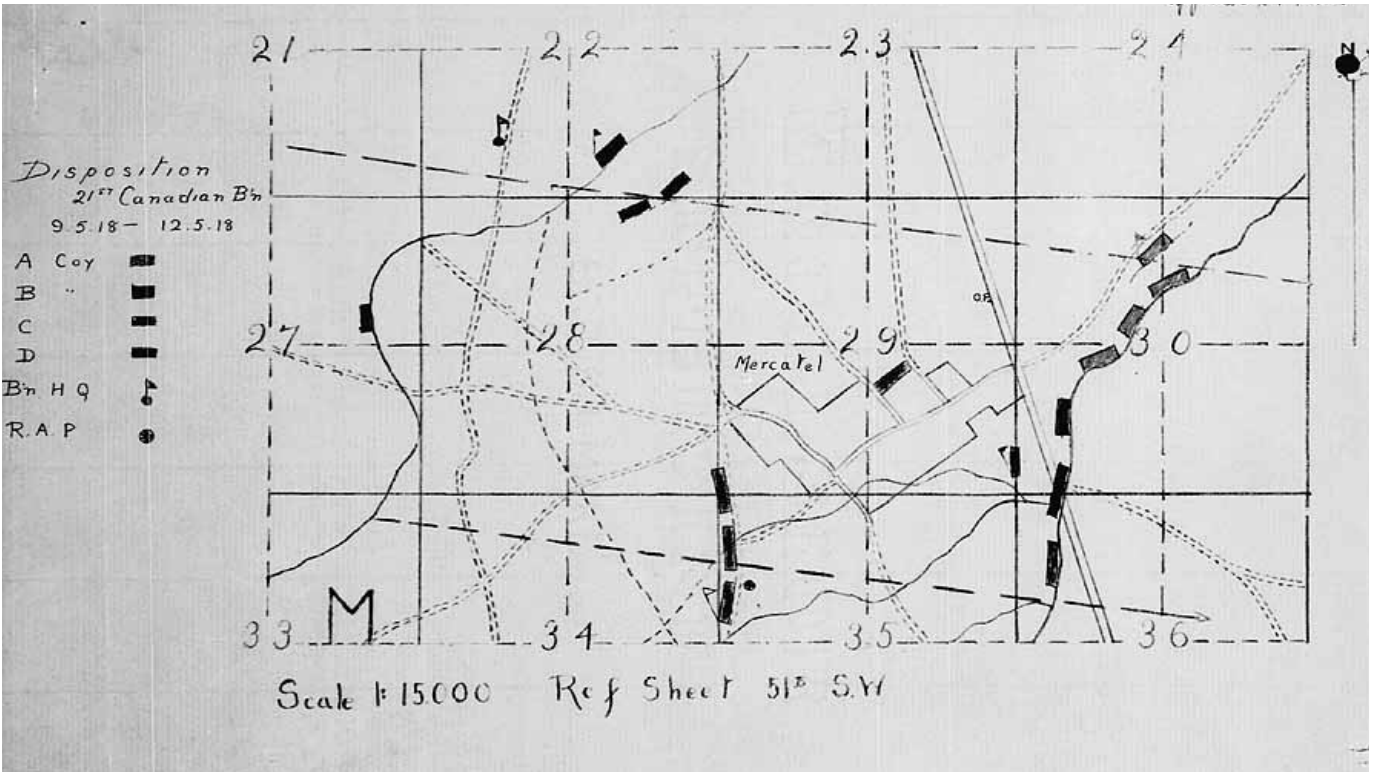
9<sup>th</sup> May, 1918

- 1 An Inter-Company relief will be carried out within the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, on the night of 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup> May, 1918.  
    “A” Company will relieve “D” Company, LEFT FRONT LINE  
    “B” Company will relieve “C” Company, RIGHT FRONT LINE.
- 2 On Completion of relief “D” Company will occupy Reserve Company position vacated by “A” Company  
  
    “C” Company will occupy Support Company position vacated by “B” Company.
- 3 All Trench Stores, Maps, etc will be taken over by the relieving Companies.
- 4 Rations and Water for the 11<sup>th</sup> inst, will be taken forward by “A” & “B” Companies. “A” Company will arrange to take rations and water for “D” Company to Forward Platoon, to Headquarters, LEFT FRONT LINE Company.
- 5 Completion of relief and notification that relieved Companies have taken up new positions, will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word “FULER”
- 6 Dispositions will be taken up in accordance with 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Defence Scheme.
- 7 Acknowledge

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	7	“C” Company
2	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	“D” Company
3	20 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	9	Transport Officer
4	22 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion	10	Quartermaster
5	“A” Company	11	Office
6	“B” Company	12-14	War Diary



SECRET

Copy No 10

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO 179

Reference Map:  
51.b SW, 1/20,000

May 12<sup>th</sup>, 1918

- 1 In view of the alteration of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade's Left Boundary, the following changes in the disposition of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be made on the night of May 12<sup>th</sup>/13<sup>th</sup>, 1918
- 2 On completion of relief, "A" Company will take up position as under:  
Two Platoons in Rifle Pits, M.29.b.55.45  
Two Platoons in Sunken Road from M.29.a.10.30 to M.35.b.15.40  
Company Headquarters at approx M.35.a.30.50  
"D" Company's Forward Platoon, upon being relieved in Rifle Pits at M.29.b.55.45, will return to "D" Company's Headquarters, M.22.d.25.30 and will be disposed of by OC Company
- 3 "B" Company on completion of relief will hold Front Line from M.36.a.35.50 to New Inter-Battalion boundary, M.30.a.50.00  
Company Headquarters at approx M.30.a.05.05
- 4 Two "A" Company Platoons situated at M.29.b.55.45, will, until further notice, come under the orders of OC Front Line Company
- 5 Trench Stores and Maps pertaining to the Left Front Line Company will be turned over and receipts in duplicate forwarded to this Headquarters by 10.00 am 13<sup>th</sup> inst.

- 6 All Water Cans, Flare Pistols, Periscopes, etc, will be brought out by the Relieved Company
- 7 Notification that relief has been completed and new dispositions taken up, will be wired to Battalion Headquarters, using Code Word "BLACK"
- 8 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

- |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| Copy No 1<br>2<br>3<br>4<br>5<br>6<br>7<br>8 | Commanding Officer<br>4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade<br>29 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion<br>"A" Company<br>"B" Company<br>"C" Company<br>"D" Company<br>Specialist Section | 9<br>10<br>11<br>12<br>13<br>14<br>15-17 | Communication Section<br>Medical Officer<br>Transport Officer<br>Quartermaster<br>RSM<br>File<br>War Diary |
|--|--|--|--|

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 180

Reference Map:  
 51.b SW, 1/20,000

May 13<sup>th</sup>, 1918

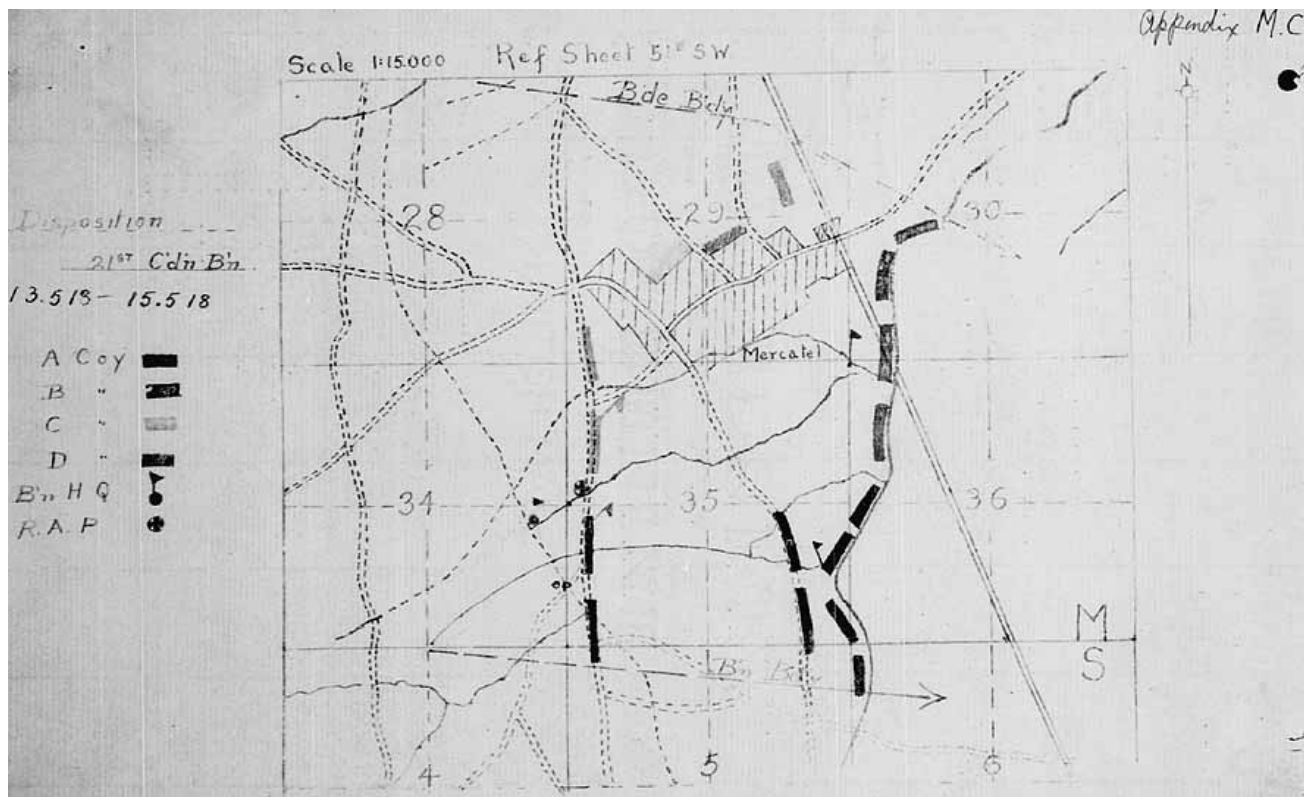
- 1.a Pursuant to the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 179, dated 12-5-18, the alteration of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Left Boundary and Defence Scheme, "A" and "D" Companies of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve elements of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, in the Center Sub-Section, on the night of May 13<sup>th</sup>/14<sup>th</sup>, 1918
  - b Previous to the relief of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, One Platoon of "C" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, will relieve two platoons of "A" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, situated in Rifle Pits, M.29.b.55.45.
- 2.a "A" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, will relieve elements of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion occupying Front Line Trench from M.36.a.35.50 to Inter-Battalion Boundary (8.6.a.0.6). Embankment inclusive to 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion.
  - b Two platoons of "D" Company will relieve Support Company of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Sunken Road, M.35.d. "D" Company, less two Platoons, will relieve Reserve Company, 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Sunken Road and MERCATEL SWITCH, M.35.a.
  - c Headquarters Details, Communication and Specialist Sections will relieve corresponding units of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. (approx M.34.d.8.6.)
- 3 Ocs Companies and Sections concerned will arrange to have representatives proceed forward and reconnoiter dispositions during daylight.

- 4 One guide per Platoon and one for Company Headquarters will be supplied by the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Officers Commanding "A" and "D" Companies, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, will arrange with Companies of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion as to rendezvous and time.
- 5 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts in duplicate forwarded, together with Disposition Sketch to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am, 14<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 6 All Rations and Water will be dumped at the RAP
- 7 RAP will be situated at M.35.a.20.50
- 8 New Battalion Headquarters will be situated at M.24.d.8.6
- 9 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using the Code Word "SUSSEX" and time.
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

- |           |   |       |                   |
|-----------|---|-------|-------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 11    | Medical Officer   |
| 2         | 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 12    | Transport Officer |
| 3         | 20 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 13    | Quartermaster     |
| 4         | Commanding Officer                        | 14    | RSM               |
| 5         | "A" Company                               | 15    | Pipe Band         |
| 6         | "B" Company                               | 16    | Brass Band        |
| 7         | "C" Company                               | 17-19 | War Diary         |
| 8         | "D" Company                               | 20    | File              |
| 9         | Specialist Section                        |       |                   |
| 10        | Communication Section                     |       |                   |



SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 181

Ref Map  
51.B SW 1/20,000

May 15<sup>th</sup>, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, in the Left Sub-Section, MERCATEL SECTION, on the night of May 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup>, 1918
- 2 "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will be relieved by "A" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will be relieved by "B" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will be relieved by "D" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will be relieved by "C" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
Communication & Specialists Sections and Headquarters Details will be relieved by corresponding Units of the 25<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battn
- 3 On completion of relief, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move into Divisional Reserve and positions will be taken up as under:  

"A" & "B" Companies	WAILLY WOOD
"C" & "D" Companies	WAILLY
Communication, Specialists & Headquarters Sections	WAILLY
- 4 5 guides per Company and 2 for Battalion Headquarters will meet the relieving Battalions at the RAP, M.35.a.20.50, at 9.30 pm (Lieut W Currie will be in charge of these guides)
- 5 Rear Battalion Headquarters will arrange to have new billets taken over, and have guides posted at WATER TANK, WAILLY, to direct Companies to billets.
- 6 Trench Stores, Defence Schemes and Disposition Maps will be turned over to incoming Unit, and receipts in duplicate forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 am May 16<sup>th</sup>.
- 7 All Water Cans, Flare Pistols, Periscopes, etc will be taken out of the line by relieved Units. (Water Cans to be sent to RAP as soon as possible after dusk.)
- 8 Transport will be supplied as arranged with Transport Officer.
- 9a The Quartermaster will arrange to have Officers Baggage, Mess Outfits and men's Packs sent to new billets previous to the arrival of Battalion
- b A hot meal will be provided for the Battalion on its arrival
- 10 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using the Code Word "VIOLET" and time.
- 11 The instructions previously issued for Battalions in Divisional Reserve will come into effect on arrival of Battalion in billets
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion



Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Communication Section
2	25 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	10	MO
3	Commanding Officer	11	TO
4	"A" Company	12	QM
5	"B" Company	13	RSM
6	"C" Company	14	File
7	"D" Company	15-17	War Diary
8	Specialists Section		

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 182

Reference Map  
51.b SW

22<sup>nd</sup> May, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 28<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Left Support, PURPLE LINE, in support of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, on the night of May 22<sup>nd</sup>/23<sup>rd</sup>, 1918. (TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH AND SUPPORT)
- 2 Battalion Headquarters, Communication and Specialist Sections, MO and Companies will take up same positions as were taken up on former tour in this Section (20<sup>th</sup> April, 1918)
- 3 Five guides per Company and two for Battalion Headquarters, of the 28<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will meet Companies and Headquarters at Cross Roads, M.8.d.6.9, at 9.15 pm, in the following order:  
"D", "B", "C", "A" and Headquarters Detail.
- 4 Companies and Section will move from their present billets and pass Starting Point, Toad Junction at R.17.d.2.5, as under. Fifty yard intervals will be maintained between Platoons and Sections en route:  

"D" Company	7.45 pm
"B" Company	7.55 pm
"C" Company	8.05 pm
"A" Company	8.15 pm

Communication Section, Specialist Section and Battalion Headquarters will follow at 5 minute intervals.
- 5 One Officer and one NCO per Company, and one NCO per Section, will rendezvous at Battalion Headquarters at 6.00 pm, to proceed ahead and take over trench stores etc.
- 6 Trench Stores will be taken over, and receipts in duplicate will be forwarded, together with disposition sketch, to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am 23<sup>rd</sup> inst.
- 7 Rations for the 23<sup>rd</sup> will be carried. Water and tea will be taken to Ration Dumps by Transport
- 8 Officer's baggage and mess outfits, together with men's packs, will be deposited at Regimental Canteen by 6.30 pm for transport to QM Stores. One man per Company and Section (selected from party proceeding to Rear) will be left as guard. Transport Officer will arrange for the removal of the above, and the removal of cooks to Transport Lines.

9 All personnel not proceeding forward to relief will parade, in Marching Order, at Battalion Headquarters at 6.30 pm, and will then proceed to BAILLEULVAL. The Quartermaster will arrange for the rationing and billeting of this party.

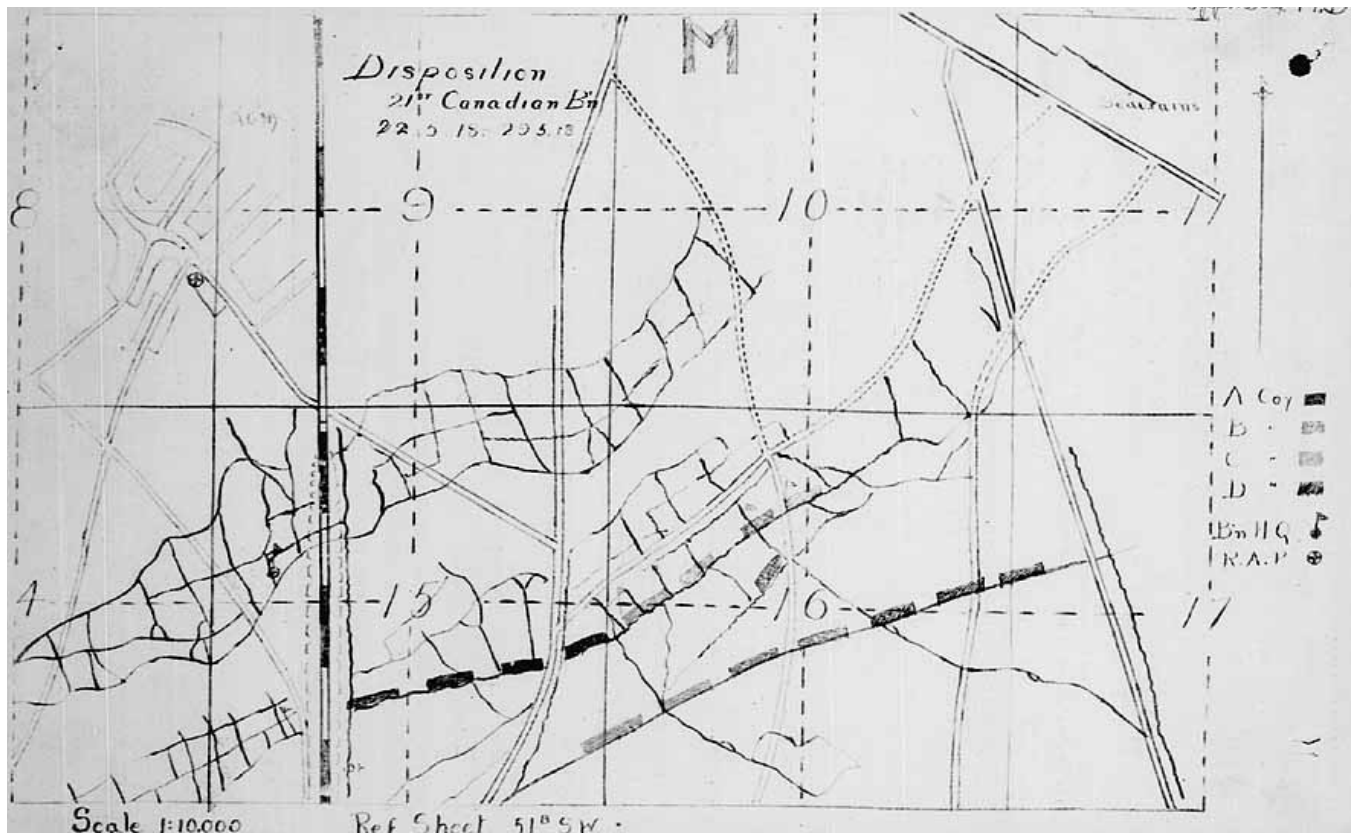
10 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters, using Code Word "TULIP" and time.

11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 9.00 am

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Medical Officer
2	28 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	11	Transport Officer
3	Commanding Officer	12	Quartermaster
4	"A" Company	13	RSM
5	"B" Company	14	Pipe Band
6	"C" Company	15	Brass Band
7	"D" Company	16	File
8	Specialist Section	17-19	War Diary
9	Communication Section		



SECRET

Copy No 16

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALIOIN OPERATION ORDER No 183

Reference Map  
51.b SW

May 28<sup>th</sup>, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the LEFT Sub-Section, NEUVILLE-VITASSE Section, on the night of 29<sup>th</sup>/30<sup>th</sup> May, 1918
- 2 Dispositions will be taken up as under:
  - "C" Company RIGHT FRONT LINE
  - "D" Company LEFT FRONT LINE
  - "A" Company RIGHT SUPPORT
  - "B" Company LEFT SUPPORT

One Platoon of "A" Company will be in CLOSE SUPPORT to "C" Company and one Platoon of "B" Company will be in CLOSE SUPPORT to "D" Company.

Headquarters, Specialists and Communication Sections will relieve corresponding Units of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 3 Companies and Sections will move in the following order, and will be met by guides of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion at times as stated:

"D" Company	10.00 pm
"C" Company	10.10 pm
"B" Company	10.20 pm
"A" Company	10.30 pm
Sections	10.40 pm
- 4 5 guides for Front Line Companies and 3 guides for Support Companies will be provided by the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and will rendezvous at M.17.d.00.70 at 10.00 pm
- 5 One Officer per Company and one NCO per Platoon will proceed ahead and take over Trench Stores, Maps etc.
- 6 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipts in duplicate together with Disposition Sketch will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am 30<sup>th</sup> inst
- 7 Companies will have all tools collected in their areas and dumps made at Company Headquarters
- 8 Rations and water for Companies will be dumped at M.18.a.80.10. Rations and water for Headquarters, Specialists and Communication Sections will be dumped at M.16.d.80.50.
- 9 RAP will be situated at M.18.b.03.18
- 10 Report Center will be situated at M.18.b.08.30
- 11 Battalion Headquarters will be situated at M.16.d.90.50
- 12 Trenches, dug-outs and funk-holes will be left in a clean and sanitary condition

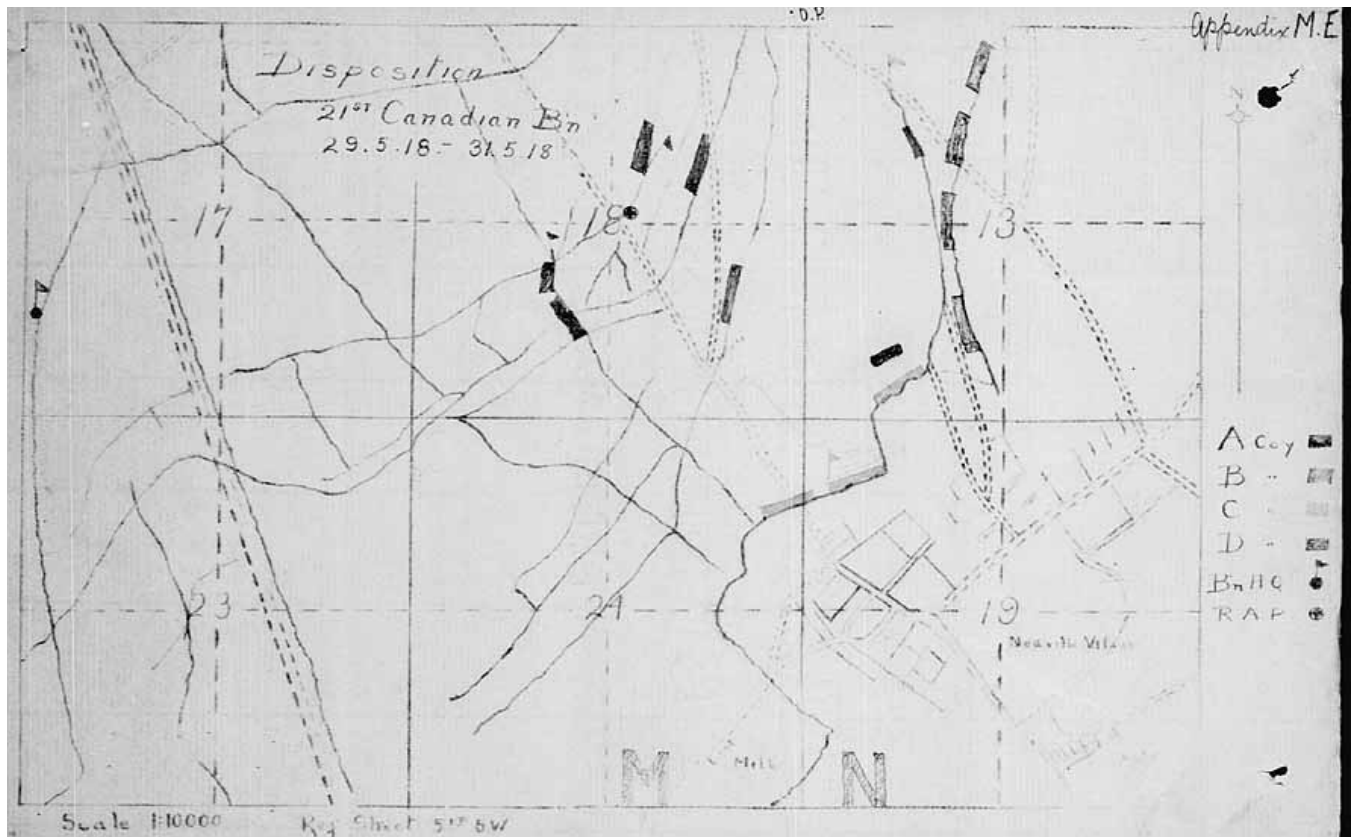
13 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word JEAN

14 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

- |           |                                     |       |           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------|-----------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB                 | 9     | MO        |
| 2         | 18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion | 10    | TO        |
| 3         | "A" Company                         | 11    | QM        |
| 4         | "B" Company                         | 12    | RSM       |
| 5         | "C" Company                         | 13    | File      |
| 6         | "D" Company                         | 14-16 | War Diary |
| 7         | Specialists                         |       |           |
| 8         | Communication                       |       |           |



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erased heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

Transcriber's Note: The first page for the month of June is missing from the archives.

WAILLY 4/6/18  
WOOD to  
9/6/18

Lieutenant EB Smythe MC, assumed the duties of Lewis Gun Officer on June 6<sup>th</sup>, Captain ES Sawell MC, having been posted for Company duty. Captain Sawell had most satisfactorily carried out the duties of Lewis Gun Officer since May 1917. On June 7<sup>th</sup>, Major HW Cooper and Captain DJ More MC, two Company Commanders, proceeded to Third Army School, the former in the capacity of an instructor, the latter on course, but on account of his excellent work Captain More was retained as an Instructor. Lieutenants WT Deane MC, and L Fraser assumed temporary command of "C" and "D" Company, respectively.

On June 9<sup>th</sup> Lieutenant GD Woodcock and three Other Ranks returned from Course of Instruction at the Third Army School. A draft of twenty Other Ranks arrived from the 3<sup>rd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC. These Other Ranks had been despatched from England as reinforcements for Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry. On the night of June 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup> the Battalion moved into Brigade Reserve on the RIGHT (MERCATEL) Section, relieving the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion.

BRIGADE 9/6/18  
RESERVE to  
15/6/18

On the night of June 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup> the Battalion relieved the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Brigade Reserve at 11.05 pm. Upon completion of relief the Battalion was disposed as follows: "A" Company, Left, "B" Company, Right, "C" Center, and "D" Company in Support. Battalion Headquarters were established at R.30.a.80.50. At 11.30 pm warning notice was received that all telephonic communication in advance of Corps Headquarters would cease at 11.00 am June 10<sup>th</sup> for an indefinite period.

(June 10<sup>th</sup>) The day opened bright with considerable aircraft activity. Artillery was below normal, until early hours of evening when an increase was noticed, on the part of the enemy. This increased activity resulted in a sharp strafe being laid down on our front Line (MERCATEL) for a period of twenty minutes. At 11.00 am, in accordance with instructions of the previous night, all telephonic communication ceased, but, communication was carried on by means of Runners and Lamps, without inconvenience. At 5.45 pm a message was received stating that telephonic communication would be re-established at 6.00 pm. The Brigade Gas Officer and NCO inspected the Gas Appliances in the Battalion Area in the afternoon, and found them to be in a satisfactory condition.

The morning of June 11<sup>th</sup> was misty, but it cleared toward noon. Artillery activity was normal until 7.00 pm when our heavies engaged targets in the enemy's rear areas. The Artillery Group, on our right opened up in support of a raid by a Brigade of the 32<sup>nd</sup> Division. Our aircraft were very active during day, crossing the enemy's lines at low altitudes. Enemy aircraft activity was considerably below normal, none of his planes approaching our lines.

June 12<sup>th</sup> was fine and bright. Our artillery was fairly active during the day and increasingly so at night. A heavy barrage was laid down on the 56<sup>th</sup> Divisional Front (left of our Division) at 3.00 pm, in retaliation for a raid. Gas was projected by our Royal Engineers from the front line of the Division on our right at 2.00 am and was supported by a light bombardment. Our aircraft were very active during the day and formations of bombing planes crossed the enemy's lines at night.

June 13<sup>th</sup> was very fine. Our artillery was active on the enemy's rear areas during the afternoon and evening. Enemy artillery was below normal during this period. At 1.00 am the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion of our left Brigade, raided the enemy's outposts. A large number of Red, Green and Split Orange flares were used by the enemy. This raid was unsuccessful, no prisoners or identification being obtained, although it is judged that the enemy's casualties were heavy. The enemy's retaliation was very light.

On June 14<sup>th</sup> the weather continued fine. Heavy artillery was fairly active on both sides. Our aircraft were active all day, patrolling the enemy's lines, and observing over his rear areas. Our reconnoitering party proceeded to the left sub-section, MERCATEL Section, in anticipation of the relief of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, by us, on the night of June 15/16<sup>th</sup>.

FRONT 15/6/18  
LINE to  
21/6/18

On June 15<sup>th</sup> our artillery activity was normal. In the afternoon a very successful shoot was carried out on NEUVILLE VITASSE. Enemy artillery was below normal. Our aircraft were active during the afternoon and evening. At 10.00 pm the battalion proceeded to the left sub-section, MERCATEL SECTION, to relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Relief was completed at 12.00 midnight without casualties.

(see Operation Order No 186 and Map attached)

Enemy artillery was active on our front line, resulting in six casualties at 1.45 am. One enemy plane approached from the direction of MONCHY at 6.55 am, and patrolled our lines. It was engaged by Antiaircraft and Machine Gun fire, and eventually driven down, in the enemy's lines, by one of our scouts. Enemy artillery was very active especially on our rear areas. Our patrol report an object (apparently a plane) falling in the enemy's lines, near HENIN, at 12.00 Midnight.

On June 17<sup>th</sup> the weather continued fine and our artillery was active on the enemy's rear areas. Our aircraft were very active, penetrating well behind the enemy's lines at low altitudes. Formations of our Bombing planes crossed the enemy lines during the night. Five enemy planes patrolled our lines at different times during the day, but, in each case withdrew when engaged by Anti-aircraft and Machine Guns. Our patrols have nothing unusual to report.

June 18<sup>th</sup> was fine. At 2.15 am the 32<sup>nd</sup> Division on our right sent up a false SOS (Green over Red over Green) and the Artillery laid down an exhibition barrage which lasted fifteen minutes. Enemy artillery fired a few rounds on our rear areas, but was otherwise normal. During the day ten enemy planes approached our lines, but withdrew when engaged by Anti-aircraft and Machine Guns. Lieut-Colonel Fernville DSO, Commanding 175<sup>th</sup> Army Brigade RFA, called at Battalion Headquarters in the afternoon. Our patrols, which operated in No Man's Land, during the night, had nothing special to report.

On June 19<sup>th</sup> the weather was fair. Our Artillery was very active on the enemy's rear areas. In the afternoon the enemy laid down a barrage in front of NEUVILLE VITASSE. The enemy's artillery was again active at 10.00 pm, when a few gas shells were sent over. Final preparations were carried out for the raid, on the morning of June 20<sup>th</sup>, 1918.

June 20<sup>th</sup>. The Battalion to carry our raid this morning at one o'clock (see Operation Order attached, No 187). At 12.30 am an enemy plane flew over our lines and dropped ten bombs in the vicinity of Battalion Headquarters. No casualties resulted. At 12.55 am the enemy placed a light barrage in rear of our front line. At 1.00 am the barrage in support of our raid opened. The enemy immediately fired his SOS (split gold rocket ) but his artillery were slow in responding. (See narrative on raid attached). Our withdrawal flare went up at 1.18 am. At 11.30 pm the enemy opened a strafe on No Man's Land. Lieutenant Menpes' patrol had one man wounded. The patrols on our right front were twice driven in by hostile artillery fire.

After many days of enjoyable weather, rain fell during the morning of June 21<sup>st</sup>, but during the afternoon the weather cleared. Our Heavies were active during the day. The enemy's Guns and Howitzers were active at night. Our aircraft were fairly active during the afternoon. Two enemy planes flew over our lines in the early evening. Our Observation Post report an enemy plane falling and turning over at (51.b. SW) T.17.a.40.50. During the day numerous blue balloons, apparently our propaganda literature, were drifting over the German lines. The Battalion was relieved by a Nova Scotia Battalion (25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion) on the night of Jun 21<sup>st</sup>/22<sup>nd</sup> 1918.  
(See Operation Order No 188)

Relief was completed at 4.15 am and the Battalion moved into Divisional Reserve at BRETENCOURT. One other rank was killed during the relief. The total casualties for the tour (June 9<sup>th</sup> to 21<sup>st</sup>) were as follows: Killed in Action – 59672 L/Cpl Moore, W., 59462 Private Hickey C.J., 1093102 Private Smale A.E., 59859 Corpl Russell R., and 1090016 Private Brooks J.G.

59672 Lance Corporal William Moore joined the Battalion upon mobilization in 1914. He arrived in France with the unit and served with "B" Company until February 1916, when he was returned to England on account of illness. In March 1918 he rejoined the Battalion and served in the capacity of a section Commander until June 16<sup>th</sup> when he was killed in action. The deceased was held in high respect by all ranks in his company. Major (Ref) WE Kidd MC, conducted the funeral at Military Cemetery, Bellacourt on June 18<sup>th</sup>.

59462 Private Colin J Hickey, who was killed in action on June 16<sup>th</sup> has been with the Battalion since 1914. This man had seen continuous service with the unit since its arrival in France. Burial took place at Military Cemetery, Bellacourt. The service was by our Chaplin.

1093102 Private Albert E Smale, who was killed in action on June 16<sup>th</sup> 1918, came to the battalion in November 1917. The body of the deceased was interned at the Military Cemetery, Bellacourt on June 18<sup>th</sup> 1918.

59859 Corporal Robert Russell was previous to enlistment employed by the Canadian Pacific Railway at Kingston Ontario. In September 1914 he enlisted with the 14<sup>th</sup> PWOR at Kingston and was employed on guard duty, until he transferred for Active Service with this Battalion in October 1914. He has served with this unit since its arrival in France, until killed in action on June 20<sup>th</sup> 1918. Corporal Russell's work was much appreciated by his officers and comrades in the ranks. He had specialized in the Lewis Gun and had instructed many of the gunners in his company, in their work. At the time of his death, the deceased NCO was engaged in a raid on the German trenches. On this occasion, as on all others, he carried out his duties. The deceased was buried at Military Cemetery, Bellacourt, on June 22<sup>nd</sup> 1918 by Major (Rev) WE Kidd MC.

1090016 Private John G Brooks, who was killed in action on June 22 1918, arrived in France in March 1918. He was posted to "B" Company and had served with No 8 Platoon until his death. His body was interned in WAILLY ORCHARD (51.c SE R22.b.40.70) on June 24<sup>th</sup> 1918.

BAILLEULVAL 9/6/18 During the tour of the Battalion in the Brigade Reserve and Front Line the  
to details and Rear Battalion Headquarters were situated at BAILLEULVAL. On June  
21/6/18 9<sup>th</sup> Lieutenant J Potts, who was attached to 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Working  
Party, was admitted to hospital and Lieutenant WA Stewart was detailed for duty  
with this party. Lieutenant G Edmunds proceeded to England on leave of absence  
on June 12<sup>th</sup>. Lieutenant AH Cameron was transferred to 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Machine  
Gun Battalion on June 12<sup>th</sup>. On June 16<sup>th</sup> Lieutenants AM Scott and D McK Goudy  
reported for duty from hospital, and were posted to "B" and "C" Companies  
respectively. On June 18<sup>th</sup> the Brass Band proceeded to WAILLY to render a  
programme in conjunction with Sports being held by 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade  
Working Party. On June 19<sup>th</sup> one other rank, who was attached to the 4<sup>th</sup>  
Canadian Infantry Brigade Working Party, was wounded. Six NCOs proceeded to  
2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC, to attend courses of instruction. Captain ES Sawell  
MC, returned from the Third Army School and assumed temporary command of  
"D" Company. On June 20<sup>th</sup> the Brass Band in conjunction with the bands of the  
other units of this Brigade, rendered a programme for 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian divisional  
Sports at BASSEUX. As insufficient time was available to hold all scheduled  
events, it was announced that completion of Divisional Sports would take place on  
June 23<sup>rd</sup>. Lieutenant N Nicholson proceeded to England on Leave of absence.  
On the evening of June 21<sup>st</sup> the Rear details moved to BRETENCOURT and took  
over billets from the 24<sup>th</sup> (Victoria Rifles of Canada) Battalion.

BRETENCOURT 22/6/18 During the period the Battalion were in divisional Reserve at  
to BRETENCOURT the weather was fine. June 22<sup>nd</sup> – All ranks devoted their time to  
27/6/18 cleaning clothing, equipment, etc. On this date the following other ranks  
proceeded to England to attend course of instruction with a view to obtaining  
commissions: 60082 W Wilson, 805406 Pte KO Whyte MM, and 640039 Pte CL  
White.

60082 Pte W Wilson, who enlisted with this Battalion in October 1914, has  
seen continuous service with the unit since its arrival in France. Pte Wilson who  
was well known by all members of the Battalion, was born and brought up in  
Ottawa Ontario. All Ranks wish him continued success in his new sphere of  
Military life.

805406 Pte KO Whyte MM, joined the 136<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion at  
Bowmanville Ontario in February 1916. He arrived in France and was taken on  
the strength of this unit in May 1917. In April 1918, Pte Whyte was awarded the  
Military Medal in recognition of his good work in conjunction with a raid carried out  
on the enemy's defences near NEUVILLE VITASSE.

640039 Pte CL White, who joined the Battalion in March 1918, came to  
England in October 1916 with the 156<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion. Pte White  
was born in Brockville Ontario, where he received his commission in the 41<sup>st</sup>  
Brockville Rifles in 1914. In April 1916 he was posted as a supernumerary  
Lieutenant to the 156<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion where he carried out the duties of  
Recruiting Officer for this unit. When the 156<sup>th</sup> Battalion received orders to embark  
from Canada Lieut White resigned his commission and accompanied the Battalion  
overseas as a Company Quartermaster Sergeant. Pte White obtained a degree of  
Bachelor of Arts at the University of Toronto in 1916.



On June 22<sup>nd</sup> Major HE Pense DSO, and party reconnoitered the ground near the Purple Line, TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH, and CHAT MAIGRE Strongpoint, these being the positions would occupy in the event of the enemy attacking. (See Operation Order 189 attached). In the afternoon, Lieut-Colonel PJ Montague DSO, AA, and QMG, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division, called at Battalion Headquarters. On June 23<sup>rd</sup>, Bathing Parades were carried out at BELLACOURT. A Draft of 20 Other Ranks arrived from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing CCRC, and were posted to Companies as follows: "A" Company 8, "B" Company 5, "D" Company 7. In the afternoon the Brass Band proceeded to BASSEUX to render a programme for 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Sports which were completed on this date. Lieutenant ES Webb and Lieutenant AW May MC, reported for duty from school of instruction and hospital respectively. Word was received stating the Battalion would be relieved for Divisional Training by a unit of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division at an early date, and preparations were made accordingly.

On June 24<sup>th</sup> a party from the 52<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion, 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division arrived to take over billets and reconnoiter Divisional Reserve Positions. June 25<sup>th</sup>. The day passed quietly. At 11.00 am a message was received stating that all telephonic communication would be suspended at 12.00 Noon. Confirmation of the message received on the 23<sup>rd</sup> instant, re the relief of the Battalion for Divisional Training was received, stating that relief would take place on June 27<sup>th</sup>. In the afternoon twenty Officers and twenty Warrant Officers and Non Commissioned Officers attended a lecture at Brigade Headquarters, BRETENCOURT, on the practical uses of aircraft in the present war, given by Major James, Royal Air Force. Major James spoke very instructively on this subject, and all ranks who attended found his lecture very interesting. Telephonic Communication, which in accordance with instructions had been suspended was resumed at 12.00 Midnight.

On June 26<sup>th</sup>, Lieutenants WA Stewart and HD Whightman, and the personnel of the Battalion that had been attached to the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Working Party, returned to the Battalion for duty etc. The Officer Commanding inspected the Battalion in the morning. On this date Lieut EB Smythe MC, and Sergt C Armstrong proceeded to Paris on leave of absence.

June 27<sup>th</sup>. On this date Lieut-Colonel EW Jones DSO, proceeded to England on leave of absence, and Major HE Pense DSO, assumed temporary command of the Battalion. Major GSS Bowerbank assumed the duties of second in command, temporarily. On this date the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade was relieved in Divisional Reserve by the 7<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. This was in accordance with the relief of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division by the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division, in the front which it had been holding since the night of March 29/30<sup>th</sup>, last. Although the Divisional Relief was not completed till three days later the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade moved to the LATTEE ST QUENTIN Area, on this date. Our Battalion was relieved by the 49<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion and moved to FESSEUX, with Headquarters at P.16.a.60.65 (Ref Sheet 51.C 1/40,000). The Battalion was billeted in large French and Nissan Huts, immediately North East of Battalion Headquarters. We were notified that the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division was in GHQ Reserve. This move brought the Battalion into the 1<sup>st</sup> Army (XVII Corps) Area, which severed its connection with the 3<sup>rd</sup> Army (VI Corps). An appreciative letter from the SIXTH Corps Commander is as follows:

"As the second Canadian Division is about to leave the VI Corps for a well earned rest, I desire to place on record the sincere regret that I felt at losing its services. The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division joined the VI Corps at a critical time and by its soldier like bearing, strong offensive spirit and hard work greatly strengthened the situation on the left of the Corps, during the three months that the Division held the line SE of ARRAS. The policy of harassing the enemy causing him loss and weakening him morale has been carried out in a most thorough and successful manner.

The Germans have been given no peace. They have been raided time after time and suffered heavy casualties. On the other hand, attempts to raid the Canadian Trenches under very heavy Bombardments failed, and were driven off with loss. The example of active defence work carried out by the Division is one of which it may well be proud. A vast amount of labour has been put in in the defences of the Divisional Front, which are now greatly stronger than they were three months ago. I desire to thank all ranks of the Division which I have been proud to have under my command for their excellent work. I wish, further to thank Major-General HE Burstall for the loyal co-operation and ready assistance he has always given also the staff of the Division for the highly efficient and energetic manner in which they have carried out their duties."

On this date, Lieutenant RJ Gill, who had been in hospital due to illness, reported to the Battalion for duty. Two Other Ranks arrived from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing CCRC, and were taken on strength and posted to "A" Company. A large parade ground was placed at the disposal of the Battalion, with the Transport Lines adjacent to Battalion Headquarters.

On June 28<sup>th</sup> the battalion commenced a period of training. The plans were that each morning would be devoted to training, leaving the afternoon free for sports and games. Major (Rev) WE Kidd MC, and a Committee of which he was Chairman, assembled and prepared preliminary plans.

June 29<sup>th</sup> was fine. Training in Musketry, BF & PT, Platoon Drill etc. Colonel Simpson, ADMS, accompanied by Lieut-Colonel Montague DSO, called at Battalion Headquarters. Colonel Simpson discussed the methods to be adopted by the Regimental Medical Officer towards stamping out the epidemic of influenza, which was becoming prevalent among the members of the Battalion. This epidemic, which on June 27<sup>th</sup> became prevalent throughout the Battalion, is a mild form of influenza, in most cases. The person affected being ill for a period of three to six days. The contacts of this disease were separated from the remaining personnel of the Battalion, and isolated in huts. This epidemic is at present decreasing and a small number of new cases are coming before the Medical Officer each day.

On June 30<sup>th</sup> the battalion attended Brigade Divine Service at J.29.b.6.3 (Ref 51C 1/40,000), Major (Ref) WE Kidd MC, conducted the service, at the conclusion of which the Brigade Commander requested the Hon NW Rowell, who was present, to speak to the Brigade. Mr Rowell's remarks, as a member of the Union Government of Canada, were very fitting. He assured those present of the appreciation of all Canadians, particularly those of the Province of Ontario, of the achievements of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, since its arrival in France in 1915. In no uncertain terms he expressed a message of confidence from all those in Canada. The Battalion paraded to and from the service via HAUTEVILLE. In the afternoon Bathing Parades were carried out at the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Baths at FOSSEUX.

During the month 37 Other Ranks were admitted to Hospital due to illness. 30 Other Ranks reported to the Battalion for Duty from hospital. 70 Other Ranks were taken on strength of the Battalion and 52 Other Ranks were struck Off Strength. 66 Good Conduct Badges were awarded to members of the Battalion during the month.

SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 184

Reference Map:  
51.b SW

June 2<sup>nd</sup> 1918

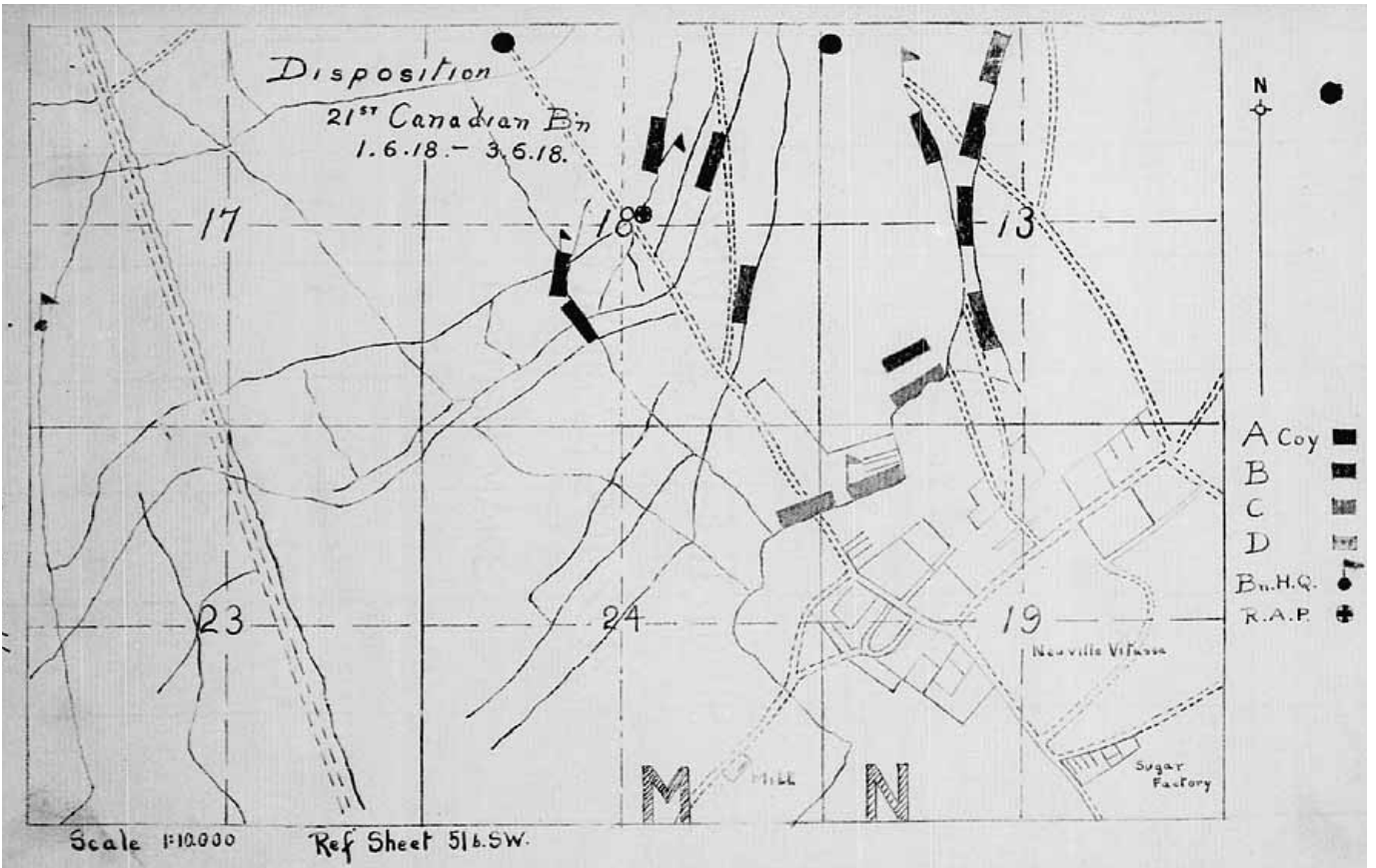
- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved in the LEFT Sub-Section, NEUVILLE-VITASSE Section, by the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of 3<sup>rd</sup>/4<sup>th</sup> June 1918
- 2 On completion of relief, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move into Divisional Reserve, WAILLY WOODS.
- 3 Headquarters, Companies and Sections will be relieved by corresponding Units of the 22<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion.
- 4 5 guides for Front Line Companies, 4 for Support Companies and 2 for Battalion Headquarters, will meet the relieving Unit at M.16.d.95.50 at 10.15 pm.
- 5 Trench Stores, Disposition Maps and Defence Schemes will be handed over and receipts in duplicate taken and forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 am 4<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 6 Officers Commanding Companies and Sections will ensure that all water cans, flare pistols, rifle grenade cups, periscopes etc are taken out of the line.
- 7 Trenches will be left in a clean and sanitary condition, and a certificate to this effect will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters with Trench Stores receipts.
- 8 Rear Headquarters will arrange to take over billets, previous to the arrival of the Battalion and will have guides posted at R.10.d.50.00 (Road, Southern edge, WAILLY WOOD) to meet Companies and Sections.
- 9 The Quartermaster will arrange to have Officer's kits, mess outfits and men's packs taken from rear, and deposited at respective Headquarters.
- 10 A hot meal will be provided for the Battalion on its arrival
- 11 1 GS limbered wagon will report at Headquarters ration dump at 11.30 pm, for the removal of Headquarters Lewis Guns, Signal Stores etc.
- 12 Instructions regarding governing Battalions in Divisional Reserve, will come into effect on the arrival of the Battalion at WAILLY WOOD.
- 13 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters, using code word "ISOBEL (and time)"

14 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	8	Communication
2	22 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion	9	MO
3	"A" Company	10	TO
4	"B" Company	11	QM
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-16	War Diary



SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 185

Copy No 17

Reference Maps

51.C SW)

51.B SW) 1/20,000

8<sup>th</sup> June 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Reserve, MERCATEL SECTION, on the night 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup> June, 1918  
Headquarters at H.30.a.80.50  
Dress: "Fighting Order". Greatcoats will be carried rolled and attached to the waist belt beneath the haversack.
- 2 Battalion Headquarters, Specialist and Communication Sections, MO, and Companies will relieve corresponding units of the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 3 Five guides per Company and two for Battalion Headquarters, of the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, will meet Companies and Headquarters at R.29.d.10.90 where Light Railway crosses WAILLY-FICHEUX road, at 9.45 pm, in the following order: "A", "D", "C", "B" and Headquarters Sections.

- 4 Companies and Sections will move from their present billets and pass Starting Point, CRUCIFIX at R.23.c.60.70, as under:  
Fifty yards interval will be maintained between Platoons and Sections on route.

“A” Company - 9.30 pm  
 “D” Company - 9.40 pm  
 “C” Company - 9.50 pm  
 “B” Company - 10.00 pm

Communication Section, Specialist Section and Battalion Headquarters will follow at 5 minute intervals.

- 5 One Officer and one NCO per Company, and one NCO per Section will rendezvous at Battalion Headquarters at 7.00 pm to proceed ahead and take over trench stores, etc.
- 6 Trench Stores will be taken over, and receipts in duplicate will be forwarded, together with disposition sketch, to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am, 10<sup>th</sup> instant.
- 7 Rations and water will be delivered by the Transport to Ration Dumps. Meat will be cooked at Rear. Tea will be made in the forward positions.
- 8 Officer’s baggage and mess outfits, together with men’s packs, will be deposited at Regimental Canteen, WAILLY WOOD, by 7.30 pm, for transport to QM Stores. One man per Company and Section, (selected from party proceeding to Rear) will be left as guard. Transport Officer will arrange for the removal of the above, and the removal of cookers to Transport Lines.
- 9 Blankets will be piled in bundles of 10 and deposited at Regimental Canteen by 7.30 pm
- 10 All personnel not proceeding forward to relief will parade, in “Marching Order”, on Road, Southern Edge WAILLY WOOD, at 7.30 pm, and will then proceed to Rear. Quartermaster will arrange for the rationing and billeting of this party. Lieut HC Cameron MC, will be in charge.
- 11 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using code word ‘RIDEAU’ and time
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

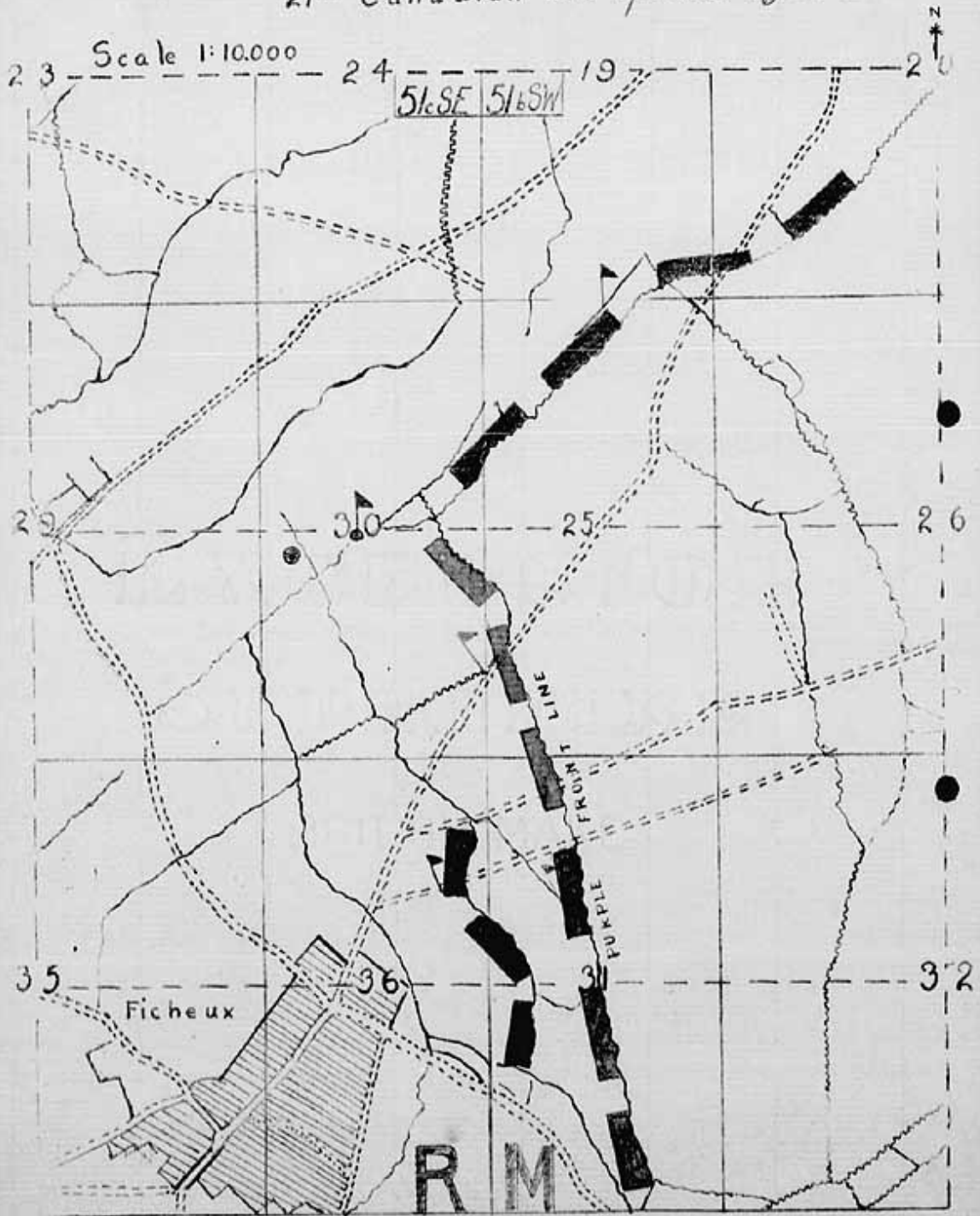
Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	10	MO
2	29 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn	11	TO
3	CO	12	QM
4	“A” Company	13	RSM
5	“B” Company	14	Pipe Band
6	“C” Company	15	Brass Band
7	“D” Company	16	File
8	Spec Section	17-19	War Diary
9	Comm Section		

Appendix "D"

Disposition  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn 9.6.18. - 15.6.18

Scale 1:10,000



A Coy ■ B Coy ■ C Coy ■ D Coy ■  
Bn HQ. ♪ R.A.P. ⊕

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO 186

Reference Map  
51.b SW 1/20,000

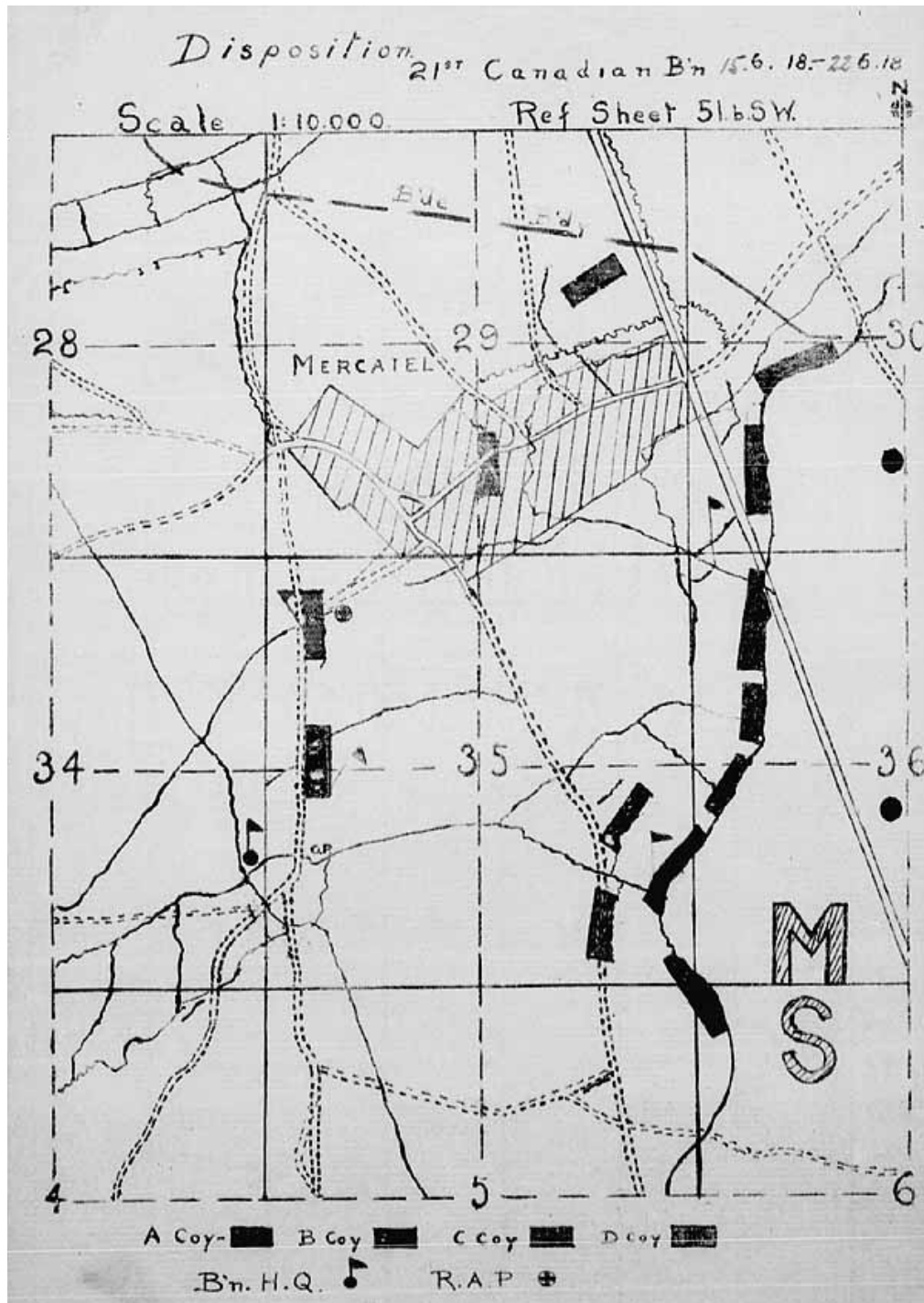
14<sup>th</sup> June, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Sub-Section, MERCATEL SECTION, on the night 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup> June 1918
- 2 "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "B" Coy, 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in Right Front Line  
"B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "D" Coy, 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in Left Front Line  
"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "C" Coy, 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in Left Support  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will relieve "A" Coy, 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in Right Support  
Battalion Headquarters, Specialist and Communication Sections will relieve corresponding units of the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion
- 3 Four guides per Company and 2 for Battalion Headquarters of the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will meet Companies and Sections on Road at M.34.d.06.48 at 10.45 pm, in the following order: "A", "B" "C", "D", Sections and Battalion Headquarters.
- 4 Companies and Sections will pass Starting Point, M.32.c.3.90 as under:  
"A" Company - 10.00 pm  
"B" Company - 10.10 pm  
"C" Company - 10.20 pm  
"D" Company - 10.30 pm  
Sections will follow at intervals of 5 minutes.
- 5 One Officer and one NCO per Company, and one NCO per Section, will proceed ahead to take over trench stores, dispositions etc
- 6 Trench stores will be taken over, and receipts in duplicate, together with disposition sketch, will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am, 16<sup>th</sup> instant.
- 7 All rations, with the exception of Battalion Headquarters Officer's rations, will be sent forward cooked. As much water as possible will be sent from Rear. Tea will be made in Support Lines
- 8 One GS limbered wagon will report to present Battalion Headquarters Dump at 10.15 pm for the removal of Signal Stores, Lewis Guns and Battalion Headquarters mess outfits, to new Battalion Headquarters. This limber will then return to Dump, and remove to Rear all articles not being taken forward. These articles to be piled at Dump by 10.30 pm
- 9 All trenches, dug-outs, and funk holes will be left in a clean and sanitary condition.
- 10 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters, using Code Word "SIMCOE", and time
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 7.00 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	Comm Sect
2	20 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn	10	MO
3	CO	11	TO
4	"A" Coy	12	QM
5	"B" Coy	13	RSM
6	"C" Coy	14	File
7	"D" Coy	15-17	War Diary
8	Spec Sect		





21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 187

Ref. Map Sheet 51.b SW

18<sup>th</sup> June 1918

- 1 INTENTION The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in conjunction with the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will carry out a Minor Operation on enemy defences in M.36.a and M.36.c, on the night of 19<sup>th</sup>/20<sup>th</sup> June 1916, with the object of securing identification, demolishing enemy defences and destroying the enemy's morale.
- 2 OBJECTIVES The objectives of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be posts about Road and Cut Bank Junction in M.36.c.95.95
- 3 PERSONNEL The Raiding Party will consist of 3 Officers and 77 Other Ranks, divided into 3 Parties as under:
- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Right Party               | Lieut L Frazer and 25 Other Ranks  |
| Centre Party              | Lieut RA Stewart and 25 Other Ranks  |
| Left Party                | Lieut W Currie MC, MM, and 25 Other Ranks and 2 Sappers from the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian CE Battalion |
| Covering Party            | Lieut WL Bonnell and 15 Other Ranks  |
| Officer in Charge of Raid | Captain JG Wiggins   |
- 4 EQUIPMENT Each man will carry:
- 1 Bandolier SAA, 50 rounds
  - Rifle and Bayonet
  - 4 Mills No 5 Bombs
  - Steel Helmet
  - Small Box Respirator
- In addition the following will be carried by each party:
- 5 Flashlights
  - 10 Rifle and 9 Hand Wire cutters
  - 4 No 93 Rifle Grenades
  - 3 No 97 Grenades "P"
  - 4 Blankets "GS"
- Bayonets and Steel Helmets will be darkened
- 5 ASSEMBLY POSITIONS AND METHODS OF ATTACK The Raiding Parties will leave Front Line M.36.c at Zero minus 60 and will be disposed at Zero in Assembly Positions as under:
- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| Right Party    | M.36.c.50.60                           |
| Centre Party   | M.36.c.40.40                           |
| Left Party     | M.36.c.50.70                           |
| Covering Party | M.36.c.40.40 (in rear of Centre Party) |
- At Zero Hour the Raiding Parties will move forward as close as possible to the barrage, and at Zero plus three will rush the posts. The Covering Party will stand by in Assembly position and will be ready to give assistance if required.
- 6 PRISONERS Prisoners and Trophies captured will be sent to Advanced Headquarters, and will be despatched from there to Battalion headquarters, M.34.d.20.85 as quickly as possible

7 Withdrawal will commence at Zero plus 18.  
WITHDRAWAL Signal, Rifle Grenade Rocket GOLD and SILVER RAIN will be fired from Advanced Headquarters M.36.d.75.85

Parties will return to Sunken Road, via ROSS LANE and MERCATEL SWITCH LINE, and report to "B" Company Headquarters M.35.c.15.70, where Nominal Roll will be checked.

8 Zero to Zero plus 3 Intense barrage on Objective, Posts and Flanks  
ARTILLERY Zero plus 3 to Zero plus 15 Normal rate of fire, forming protective barrage  
Zero plus 15 to Zero plus 30 Slow rate of fire  
Heavy Artillery will engage specified targets throughout Operation

9 Standing Machine Gun barrage will be maintained on Flanks and rear of Objective  
MACHINE GUN throughout Operation

10 (a) A demonstration or raid by the Brigade on our Right Flank commencing at Zero  
DIVERSIONS (b) An Artillery Barrage on posts in 5.c.d  
(c) An Artillery Barrage on posts in N.25.c and the MAZE in N.25.a  
(d) An Artillery barrage on NEUVILLE VITASSE

11 Zero Hour will be notified later  
ZERO HOUR

12 Watches will be synchronized at Battalion Headquarters at 7.15 pm and at 10.15 pm  
SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES

13 Advanced RAP will be situated at M.35.d.50.67  
RAP

14 Raid Headquarters will be situated in ROSS AVENUE M.35.d.75.55  
ADVANCED HEADQUARTERS

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	10	Lieut W Currie
2	20 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	11	Lieut RA Stewart
3	19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	12	Lieut WL Bonnell
4	27 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion'	13	Specialists Section
5	"A" Company	14	Communication Section
6	"B" Company	15	Medical Officer
7	"C" Company	16	RSM
8	"D" Company	17	File
9	Lieut L Frazer	18-20	War Diary

REPORT ON RAID CARRIED OUT BY  
THE 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
Night June 19<sup>th</sup>/20<sup>th</sup> 1918

On the night of June 19<sup>th</sup>/20<sup>th</sup>, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion carried out a minor operation against suspected enemy posts in the vicinity of M.36.c.95.25

The raiding forces was divided into three parties as follows:

Right Party	-	Lieut L Frazer and 25 Other Ranks
Centre Party	-	Lieut RA Stewart and 25 Other Ranks
Left Party	-	Lieut W Currie MC, MM, 25 Other Ranks and 2 sappers form the 4 <sup>th</sup> CE Battalion
Covering Party	-	Lieut WL Bonnell and 15 Other Ranks

At 11.00 pm the raiders proceeded to the front line and at 11.45 pm commenced to make their way to their assembly positions. At 12.45 am all parties were in position. At Zero Hour our barrage opened up and the parties moved towards the objective. As soon as the barrage lifted, the objective was rushed. The locality was found to be deserted, though every corner was searched. Lieut Currie and his party then crossed the ARRAS-BAPAUME Road with hopes of locating a post among the ruined huts at M.36.c.95.35, but without success. The Right and Centre parties remained in the vicinity of the objective until the withdrawal signal went up. Lieut Stewart of the Centre party claims to have seen one of the enemy running in the direction of his lines in N.31.c. All Parties withdrew in good order and had no difficulty in finding the gaps in our wire.

The objective is reported to have been well damaged by our artillery fire and no wire was encountered. There is a trench running along the top of the bank about three feet deep. At the junction of the ARRAS-BAPAUME Road, M.36.c.95.25, there is a pit, 12 foot square and 3 foot deep, in which 2 new san-bags of expended ammunition were found, also a pile of about 18 "cylindrical sticks."

All parties report enemy machine guns as very active, and all the casualties suffered during the raid were from this cause. The enemy laid his barrage in advance of our line and only one hit on our front line trench has been reported.

It is thought that the enemy now holds his line some distance behind the posts which he mans only by day, or he may withdraw them as soon as our barrage commences.

Our casualties during the raid, were 1 Other Rank killed and 4 Other Ranks wounded.

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Major  
For Lieut-Colonel  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

June 20<sup>th</sup>, 1918

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 188

Ref 51.b SW

June 21<sup>st</sup>, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the LEFT Sub-Section, MERCATEL Section, on the night 21<sup>st</sup>/22<sup>nd</sup> June.

- 2 On completion of relief 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move into Divisional Reserve BRETEHCOURT
- 3 Relief will be carried out as under:
  - "A" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion will relieve "A" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion in Right Front Line.
  - "B" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion will relieve "B" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion in Left Front Line
  - "C" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion will relieve "D" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion in Right Support
  - "D" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion will relieve "C" Company 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion in Left Support
  - Headquarters and Sections 25<sup>th</sup> Battalion will relieve corresponding Units 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
- 4 Five guides from each Company and two from Battalion headquarters will meet relieving Units at M.35.a.30.70. Lieut EB Smythe will be in charge of guides.
- 5 Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts in duplicate taken and forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 am 22<sup>nd</sup> inst
- 6 All Water Cans, Flare Pistols, Rifle Grenade Cups, Periscopes, etc will be taken out of line after relief
- 7 Lewis Guns and ammunition will be piled in Sunken Road M.35.a.20.70 and will be picked up by transport at 1.00 am. Two men from each Company will remain with guns and proceed to rear with Transport
- 8 Headquarters limber will report to Headquarters Ration Dump at 11.00 pm for the removal of Signal Stores, Headquarters Mess outfit etc.
- 9 Trench and funk-holes will be left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 10 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word "SUPERIOR" and time
- 11 Notification that Companies and Sections have arrived in billets will be wired using Code Word "ERIE"

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
 Captain & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	MO
2	25 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn	10	TO
3	"A" Company	11	QM
4	"B" Company	12	RSM
5	"C" Company	13	File
6	"D" Company	14-16	War Diary
7	Specialists		
8	Communication		

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION No 189  
ACTION OF BATTALION IN DIVISIONAL RESERVE

Reference Map  
Sheets 51.b S  
51.c SW

22<sup>nd</sup> June, 1918

- 1 The Battalion in Divisional Reserve, BRETENCOURT, will be prepared to move at one hour's notice between the hours of 6.00 am and 10.00 pm, and at all other times at four hour's notice
- 2 In the event of a hostile attack or should there be indications that an attack is imminent, the order to "Stand To" will be issued to all concerned.
- 3
  - (a) Upon receipt of the order to 'Stand To', the Battalion will move to Assembly Point in R.29.c and R.35.a, Area North of FICHEUX HILL
  - (b) All Transport will be harnessed up and ready to hitch up and move at 15 minutes notice
  - (c) The Battalion will not be deployed in the Assembly Area, but will remain in close formation if situation permits.
- 4 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade may be called upon to act as follows:
  - (a) To occupy the PURPLE LINE
  - (b) To occupy Southern portion of PUTPLE LINE and TELEGRAHP HILL SWITCH
  - (c) To be prepared to move to assist in Defence or re-capture of Hill 120 in X.12, Hill 115 in S.1, and HENIENCOURT VILLAGE SPUR as far South as X.15. Central and X.22.b on the Right Flank of the Division, or TELEGRAPH HILL on Left Flank of the Division

In the event of the Brigade occupying the PURPLE LINE, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will likely be disposed as follows:

Two Companies in PURPLE LINE from R.33.a.90.80 to R.30.a.95.00  
Two Companies in CHAT MAIGEE Strong Point  
Battalion Headquarters, R.20.c.00.40

In the event of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade being called upon to occupy the Southern portion of the PURPLE LINE and the TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will likely be disposed as follows:

From R.30.d.20.70 to a Point in TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH at M.20.c.30.30, with two Companies in CHAT MAIGEE Strong Point.

Headquarters at R.24.c.00.00

- 5 The attention of all concerned is drawn to the necessity of keeping water-bottles filled at all times
- 6 Officers Commanding Companies and Sections will take steps to ensure that all concerned are made familiar with these instructions, and that necessary reconnaissances may be carried out to meet any contingency that may arise.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	8	Medical Officer
2	"A" Company	9	Transport Officer
3	"B" Company	10	Quartermaster
4	"C" Company	11	RSM
5	"D" Company	12	File
6	Specialist Section	13-15	War Diary
7	Communication Section		

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 190

Reference Map:  
51.c 1.40,000

27<sup>th</sup> June, 1918

- 1 MOVE The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to LATTRE ST. QUENTIN Area by train route and march, 27<sup>th</sup> June, 1918
- 2 On completion of move, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be disposed in billets in FOSSEUX: will rejoin the Canadian Corps and will be held in GHQ Reserve.
- 3
  - (a) The Battalion will fall in on WAILLY-BRETENCOURT Road with head of the column opposite Battalion Orderly Room, facing SW at 11.40 am, and will proceed to Entraining Point, TAUNTON DUMP.
  - (b) The Battalion will proceed by train from TAUNTON DUMP to LATTRE ST QUENTIN, detrain, and march to billets in FOSSEUX.
- 100 yards intervals will be maintained between Companies on march from detraining point to FOSSEUX.
- 4 Cookers will proceed to FOSSEUX as soon as possible after 10.45 am meal
- 5 Lewis Gun Limbers will not move off until the Battalion has entrained
- 6 All Defence Schemes, Trench Maps, Aeroplane Photos etc, will be handed over to the advanced parties of the 7<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade.
- 7 The Company Quartermaster Sergeants, and Sergeant AJ Smith from Battalion Headquarters, will proceed to FOSSEUX as early as possible and take over billets. The Quartermaster will arrange to meet the Town Major, FOSSEUX, by 11.00 am
- 8 Transport at MONCHIET will move to FOSSEUX independently during the morning
- 9 The Battalion Pipe Band will move to FOSSEUX independently during the morning
- 10 The Quartermaster will detail one guide to meet No 2 Company, Divisional Train, rations for 28<sup>th</sup> inst, at Billet Warder's Office, FOSSEUX, at 12 noon, 27<sup>th</sup> inst.

11 Present billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition

12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 9.00 am

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Transport Officer
2	Commanding Officer	11	Quartermaster
3	OC "A" Company	12	RSM
4	OC "B" Company	13	Bandmaster
5	OC "C" Company	14	Pipe Major
6	OC "D" Company	15	File
7	OC Specialist Section	16-18	War Diary
8	OC Communication Section		
9	Medical Officer		

SECRET

AMENDMENT TO  
21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 186  
DATED 14<sup>TH</sup> JUNE, 1918

Para 2 is amended to read:

"C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn, less 24 Other Ranks, will relieve "C" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in Left Support  
"D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn, less 2 Officers and 40 Other Ranks, will relieve "A" Coy 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn in  
Right Support  
Specialist Sections, less 1 Officer and 3 Other Ranks, will relieve corresponding unit of 20<sup>th</sup>  
Cdn Bn

Personnel not proceeding forward to relief will be disposed in "A" Coy Lines. Officer  
Commanding "A" Coy will make necessary arrangements. Rations for this party will be  
brought forward by the 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn Transport.

Nominal roll of personnel not proceeding forward to reach Battalion headquarters by  
6.00 pm this date.

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

15<sup>th</sup> June, 1918

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			<b>WAR DIARY</b> <i>OF</i> <b>INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.</b> <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

FOSSEUX 1/7/18 During this period the Battalion were in GHQ Reserve at FOSSEUX. Training in  
to Battalion, Company and Platoon Drill, Arm Drill, BF & PT, Gas, Musketry, Extended Order  
13/7/18 and Ceremonial was carried out in the mornings; the afternoons being devoted to inter-  
company football and baseball matches.

July 1<sup>st</sup>, 1918 On Dominion Day two hundred and fifty Officers and Other Ranks attended the Canadian Corps Sports at TINGUES on the main ARRAS – ST. POL Road. Lorries were provided for transportation. All thoroughly enjoyed the holiday and took great interest in the well arranged program of sports, games and music. Among the huge crowd present many members of the battalion were fortunate enough to meet friends.

July 2<sup>nd</sup>, 1918 At noon on this date Major HE Pense DSO, MC, and Major GSS Bowerbank MC, were among the officers of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division, who were afforded the opportunity of meeting Sir Robert Borden and The Honourable Mr Jr JA Calder at Divisional Headquarters at LE CAUGRY. The Corps Commander was present with the Premier. Sir Robert Borden spoke very briefly. This was followed by the taking of a group photograph. Lieutenant PH Wills and Sergt GC O'Shea proceeded to the 3<sup>rd</sup> Army Musketry School for Course of instruction.

July 3<sup>rd</sup>, 1918 Sergt H Wykes who had been attending a course of instruction at the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC, reported to the unit for duty. He was accompanied by three NCOs of the Instructional Cadre, 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC, who were to be attached to the Battalion as Instructors in Drill, Lewis Gunnery, Musketry and Bombing, during the period the unit were in GHQ Reserve.

July 4<sup>th</sup>, 1918 On this date Sergt J Packer, Sergt WA Glover and four Other Ranks returned from Courses of Instruction at the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC. A draft of eleven Other Ranks who had joined the Canadian Forces at Ottawa, reported to the Battalion, were taken on strength and posted to Companies, after Standing Orders had been read and explained to them by the Adjutant.

July 5<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Brig-General R Rennie CB, accompanied by Captain MS Gooderham inspected the Battalion. At his request Companies were given tests in Company Drill, Gas, etc. The Kits of "Headquarters" and "A" Company were inspected on this parade. During the time the inspection was in progress the Brass Band rendered an appropriate program. The Brigade Commander expressed his satisfaction with the appearance and general condition of the Battalion. Lieutenant RL Perry, Instructional Cadre, 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing CCRC, reported to the Battalion for duty as an Instructor in General Training.

July 6<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Training was carried out during the morning and the afternoon was devoted to Pay Parade for all Companies and Sections. A soccer match between "A" and "B" Batteries, 175<sup>th</sup> Army Brigade RFA, was played on the Battalion Parade Ground in the evening. Lieutenant N Nicholson reported from leave of absence to England.

July 7<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Church Parade for the Protestants was held in the field adjoining the hutments occupied by the Battalion. A service for Roman Catholics was held in the Parish Church, FOLLEUX. Lieutenant HCL Gillman proceeded to Royal Air Force for a term of probation, with a view to his transfer being affected.



July 8<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Daily Orders of this date announced the award of the Medaille Civique de 2<sup>nd</sup> Classe to 59617 Sergt HM MacDonald. This NCO who enlisted with the Battalion in 1914, was awarded this decoration in respect of the following services, "A fire having broken out at POPERINGHE, on the 24<sup>th</sup> January 1917, he distinguished himself by his coolness and courage. Thanks to his efforts it was possible to avoid £8,000 of stores, belonging to the BEF Canteen being burnt." Major WH Kidd MC, and Captain FD Raymond MC, were present at a "Tank Demonstration" at MONTENESCOURT, on this date.

July 9<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Captain FD Raymond MC, proceeded to Paris to take part in celebration on Frances' Day, July 14<sup>th</sup>, 1918. Captain GW Brown MC, of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade called at Battalion Headquarters in the afternoon. The Divisional elimination of Brass Bands, for the VI Corps contest took place on this date. Our Band under Bandmaster ER Hinchey was selected as one to represent our Division. The band excelled in Turn out, Marching and Playing. One Other Rank proceeded to England on this date on leave of absence. Captain JR Purdy, who had been attached to the Battalion since January 1918 as Paymaster, was posted to the 6<sup>th</sup> Battalion Canadian Engineers. All who had been associated with Captain Purdy during his service with this unit deeply regret him leaving, and extend their best wishes for his continued success. Lieutenant HB Smythe MC, reported for duty, on expiration of leave of absence, which he had been granted to visit Paris.

July 10<sup>th</sup>, 1918 July 10<sup>th</sup> dawned very fine, but, the atmosphere became dull toward noon resulting in heavy showers. The Battalion proceeded, in marching order, to AVESNES LE COMTS, where all Small Box Respirators were tested by the Brigade Gas Officer. Training on the adjacent area was combined with the examination of Respirators. Our Band was accorded 1<sup>st</sup> prize among Canadians at the VI Corps Band Contest, which was held in conjunction with the VI Corps Horse Show, near SAULTY on this date. Among the twenty Brass Bands which competed ours was given second place. A Band of the King's Royal Rifles was given first place. The Divisions represented were the Guards, 2<sup>nd</sup> Division, 32<sup>nd</sup> Division, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division and 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division. The Bandmaster and all members of our band were heartily congratulated.

July 11, 1918 On July 11<sup>th</sup> the weather continued with intermittent showers. A message was received warning the Battalion to be ready to move to the BERNEVILLE-DAINVILLE AREA on the 13<sup>th</sup> instant. Word to the effect that the unit would be inspected by the Corps Commander on July 12<sup>th</sup> was received.

July 12<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Heavy showers fell during the morning and afternoon. The Canadian Corps Commander, Lieut-General Sir AW Currie KCB, KCMG, inspected the units of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade in the Field at J.29.d.50.20. Following the inspection the Corp Commander decorated all ranks who had been awarded medals and honours during the year. In the GOC's address to the personnel of the Brigade he referred to the work done by the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division while attached to the 3<sup>rd</sup> Army, VI Corps. He also stated that the Canadian Corps had been allotted an additional frontage of 1700 yards, and it would therefore be necessary for a Brigade of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division to move into the forward area, until a re-adjustment of the line could be arranged. The Corps Commander took the salute from the Brigade as they marched from the Parade Ground (J.28.d.50.20) to the HAUTEVILL – LATTRE ST. QUENTIN ROAD. Units moved from this point to their respective billets independently.

July 13<sup>th</sup>, 1918 On July 13<sup>th</sup> the Battalion moved from GHQ Reserve, FOSSEUX to Divisional Reserve at BERNEVILLE, where they relieved the 1/14<sup>th</sup> London Scottish Battalion. Upon the battalion moving from GHQ Reserve, Lieutenant RL Perry and three NCOs of the Instruction Cadre 2<sup>nd</sup> Division Wing CCRC, ceased to be attached and returned to their Depot. In the afternoon Major GSS Bowerbank MC, and party proceeded to forward area to reconnoiter position to be taken over by this unit. Sergt J Leach and one Other Rank proceeded, for Course of Instruction, to 1<sup>st</sup> Army School.

BERNEVILLE 14/7/18 July 14<sup>th</sup>, 1918 On this date service for the Roman Catholics was held in the Parish Church, BERNEVILLE. The usual parade service for the other denominations was held on the Battalion Parade Ground, in the morning, at which Major (Rev) WE Kidd MC delivered his farewell sermon. The fact that Major Kidd was being returned to England for duty came as a great surprise to all ranks, by whom he is held in high respect. Major Kidd joined the battalion upon mobilization in 1914, and since that time his wholehearted devotion toward the welfare of the men has been a marked feature. Upon leaving he takes with him the well wishes of all ranks. At 8.30 pm when the battalion were on parade ready to move to the forward area, the Officer Commanding, took the opportunity of thanking Major Kidd for the good work he had done while with the unit. The relief of the 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion and Three platoons of the 1<sup>st</sup> London Battalion was completed at 4.30 am July 15<sup>th</sup> without casualties. Battalion Headquarters were located at M.5.a.8.6. and Companies distributed as shown on attached Map. Captain JG Wiggins proceeded to England on leave of absence. Lt-Col EW Jones DSO, who had been absent on leave of absence to England joined the Battalion during the time this relief was being carried out.

BRIGADE  
RESERVE

July 15<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Weather fine. Our aircraft carried out the usual observation over the German lines during the day, and at night our Bombing Planes could be heard crossing the lines flying in a south easterly direction. Six enemy planes patrolled our lines during the day. Artillery activity was normal. Brig-General R Rennie CB called at Battalion Headquarters in the morning.

July 16<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Weather continues fine. Our artillery was active during the afternoon and evening. Enemy artillery below normal. Word was received that the Boche had launched an attack between CHATEAU – THIERRY and ARGONNE on the morning of the 15<sup>th</sup> instant, but, that the advance had been a failure. In the morning the Brigade Gas Officer inspected the Gas appliances in the Battalion Area, which he reported to be in a satisfactory condition. German Bombing Planes could be heard crossing our lines during the night.

July 17<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Slight showers were experienced during the afternoon and evening. Our artillery was fairly active during this period, engaging targets in the enemy's rear areas. Our aircraft were active, penetrating well behind the enemy's lines at low altitudes. A marked increase was noticed in the German air activity, twenty-five of his planes crossing our lines during the day. At 9.25 am an explosion, apparently a small dump was noticed in N.22.d.35.00. The GOC, Canadian Corps passed through the defence system held by this unit in the morning. Lieut-Colonel Jones proceeds to, and assumes temporary command, of 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade during the absence of Brig-General Rennie.

July 18<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Showers fell during the day. Warning notice of our being relieved by the 15<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (48<sup>th</sup> Highlanders of Canada) was received in the morning. Our aircraft were very active and were heavily engaged by the German Anti-Aircraft and Machine Gun fire, when attempting to cross and patrol the enemy's lines. At night the German artillery was very active on our rear areas. The GOC, 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division passed through our lines during the day.

July 19<sup>th</sup>, 1918 The relief of the unit was completed at 4.30 am, and the battalion proceeded to RR Dump, MARCEUIL by Light railway, where they were met by guides. From this point they marched to "Y" Camp (K.1.c.) where they remained until evening, when they moved to AGNES LES DUISANS.

WANQUENTIN

During the period the Battalion were in Brigade Support the rear details were billeted at WANQUENTIN, where they had moved from BERNEVILLE on the evening of July 14<sup>th</sup>, 1918. Sergt C Armstrong returned from leave of absence to Paris and reported for duty.

July 17<sup>th</sup> 1918 Three other ranks proceeded to Paris and one other rank to England on leave of absence. Lieutenant JM Potts and WT Bredin reported for duty from hospital.

July 18<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Captain FD Raymond MC, returned from Paris where he had been on duty in connection with celebration on France's Day, July 14<sup>th</sup>, 1918. Lieutenant GL Edmonds reported for duty from hospital. On the night of July 18<sup>th</sup>/19<sup>th</sup> the rear details moved to "Y" Camp.

AGNEE LEZ 20/7/18 During this period the Battalion occupied Nissan Huts in AGNEE LEZ DUISANS.  
DUISANS to

23/7/18 July 20<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Showers during the afternoon. Bathing parades for companies and sections were carried out during the day. All surplus baggage in the possession of the Battalion was despatched to St OMMER, by lorry. Major (Rev) WE Kidd MC, proceeded to England for duty, and Captain (Rev) RJ Renison assumed the duties of Chaplain for this unit. One other rank proceeded to England on leave of absence.

July 21<sup>st</sup>, 1918 Service for Roman Catholics was held in the Parish Church, AGNEE LEZ DUISANS. Parade service for Protestants was conducted by Captain RJ Renison on the Battalion Parade Ground in the morning. Six other ranks who had been at 1<sup>st</sup> Army Rest Camp reported to the Battalion for duty.

July 22<sup>nd</sup>, 1918 Training in Bayonet Fighting & Physical Training, Musketry, Platoon Drill and Gas was carried out during the morning. Lieutenant HC Cameron MC, proceeded to England on leave of absence. Major HE Pense DSO, MC, and nine other ranks proceeded to 1<sup>st</sup> Army Rest Camp. Lieutenant C Menpes MC, proceeded to 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Brigade for duty as "Staff Learner, I Branch". The undermentioned NCOs who due to special qualifications had been selected for duty in Canada as Instructors, proceeded to Canadian Corps Railhead Depot, for despatch to England, 59163 Sergt CW Clarke, 59479 Sergt KC Hopkinson MM, 59719 Corpl D McGinnis MM. (*Transcriber corrected spelling mistakes in names and numbers*)

July 23<sup>rd</sup>, 1918 On this date the Battalion moved from AGNEE LEZ DUISANS to MANIN leaving the Battalion Parade ground at 9.00 am the units moved via AGNEE LEZ DUISANS – BOUVENS – HABAROQ – NOYELLETTE – NOYELLE – VION – MANIN. It began to rain shortly after the Battalion left the parade ground and continued during the remainder of the day, making the march disagreeable for all ranks. Despite adverse conditions the Brass and Pipe Bands rendered Popular marches, which enabled all ranks to maintain a good steady pace throughout the march. Upon arrival in MANIN all ranks were served with a hot meal and the remainder of the day devoted to drying clothing and equipment. This move brought the battalion into the MANIN AREA, where they were held in GHQ Reserve, with Battalion Headquarters at I.18.c.20.20.

MANIN 24/7/18 During this period the battalion carried out training in the following  
to subjects: Company, Platoon and Section Drill, Ceremonial, Gas, Musketry, BF & PT,  
29/7/18 and Arm Drill. Specialists were given instruction in their respective branches by the Specialist Officers of the Battalion. The weather during this period was inclement and greatly interfered with the programs of training that had been arranged.

July 24<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Fine. Training was carried out in the morning.

July 25<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Rain fell intermittently during the day. Training was carried out in the morning.

July 26<sup>th</sup>, 1918 On this date "A" Company fired General Musketry Course at Ranges near GIVENCHY LE NOBLE. The remaining units of the Battalion carried out training during the morning. Major CG McLaughlin proceeded to England on leave of absence. The following NCOs proceeded to the Guards Division for instruction in General Training etc.: 454445 Sergt J Lewis, 124304 Sergt CB Anderson, 504657 Sergt CW Harlow. Ten Other Ranks arrived from 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC and after standing orders had been read and explained to them they were posted to Companies. This draft was comprised of men who joined the Canadian Forces at Ottawa during January and February 1918.

July 27<sup>th</sup>, 1918 "B" Company fired General Musketry Course on Ranges at GIVENCHY LE NOBLE in the morning. Training for the remaining units of the battalion was cancelled owing to the rain, and the day was devoted to a general cleaning of equipment, etc. One Other Rank returned from England where he had been on leave of absence. Administrative Instructions for move were issued to all companies and Sections. Captain AP Christmas proceeded to England on leave of absence.

July 28<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Church Services were held a usual on this date, the Roman Catholics proceeding to the Parish Church, MANIN, and the Protestants parading for the Divine Service on the Battalion parade ground. Routine Orders of this date contained the following appointment:

Temp/Lieutenant L Frazer to be Acting/Captain, 26.4.18 vice Captain Black, wounded. Lieutenant Frazer joined the Battalion at PETERBOROUGH, Ontario, in October 1914, and served in the capacity of an NCO until appointed to a Commissioned rank in April 23<sup>rd</sup>, 1916. In the capacity of a Platoon Commander he accompanied the Battalion to the SOMME, where on September 15<sup>th</sup> he was wounded. Shortly after rejoining the battalion in 1917 he was again wounded, at LENS.

July 29<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Bathing parades for Companies and Sections were held at IZEL LES HAMEAU. Administrative Instructions contained in Appendix "G" were cancelled. On this date the Platoon Competition of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade was held. The Platoon from this unit was selected as the best and accorded first place. The Battalion were, on this date, warned to be in readiness to move to the SOMME DISTRICT, at short notice.

FLUY & SEUX 30/7/18 to 31/7/18 July 30<sup>th</sup>, 1918 Shortly after Midnight 29<sup>th</sup>/30<sup>th</sup> July the Battalion marched to PETIT-HOUVIN STATION, where after having breakfast, they entrained for the PICQUINGY AREA. The 19<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battalions occupied Number 1 train which arrived at HANGEST-SUR-SOMME at 1.35 pm. The Battalion detrained at this point and after marching through the town rested until 4.00 pm. The unit then moved to billets at FLUY and SEUX via CROUY-CAVILLION-BRIQUEMESNIL. "A" and "B" Companies, Signallers and Brass Band were located in billets at SEUX, the remainder of the battalion in billets at FLUY. Battalion Headquarters were established in the Chateau at FLUY. (this move brought the battalion into the 4<sup>th</sup> Army Area).

July 31<sup>st</sup>, 1918 No training was carried out on this date. Rifle and Foot inspections were carried out by Company and Section Commanders in the morning.

During the month 29 Other Ranks were admitted to hospital, due to Sickness. 21 Other Ranks reported to the Battalion for duty from Hospital. 21 Other Ranks were taken on the strength of the unit and 52 Other Ranks struck off the strength during the month.

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 191

Ref Map 51.C 1/40,000

July 12<sup>th</sup>, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from GHQ RESERVE, FOSSEUX and come into Divisional Reserve, BERNEVILLE on the morning of July 13<sup>th</sup> 1918 and will relieve the 1/14<sup>th</sup> London Scottish
- 2 Battalion will fall in on Battalion Parade Ground at 10.00 am 13<sup>th</sup> inst, Markers report to the RSM at 9.40 am  
DRESS: "Marching Order" Steel Helmets will be worn and SBRs slung
- 3 The battalion will march via FOSSEUX – GOUY – EN – ARTOIS – SIMENCOURT – BERENVILLE. 100 yards distance will be maintained between Companies. Strict March Discipline will be observed on line of march.
- 4 1 NCO per Company, 1 NCO for Specialists, 1 NCO for Communication and 1 NCO from Transport Section will report to Lieut W Currie MC, at Battalion Headquarters at 8.00 am, ready to proceed to take over. They will report to the Town Major, BERNEVILLE Lieut W Currie will represent headquarters
- 5 Lewis Gun Officer will arrange to have guns packed tonight
- 6 All Petrol Cans will be turned in to QM Stores by 8.30 am 13<sup>th</sup> inst
- 7 All Officer's Baggage and Cooking Utensils will be placed outside Battalion Orderly room by 8.30 am 13<sup>th</sup> inst, with the exception of "B" Mess, which will be piled outside their billets at the same hour.
- 8 The Orderly Officer will inspect the billets before the Battalion leaves and will secure a clearance certificate from the Town Major
- 9 Battalion Orderly Room will close at FOSSEUX at 10.00 am and will re-open at BERENVILLE at 10.00 am same date.
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

Issued to Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Captain Asst/Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Medical Officer
2	Commanding Officer	10	Transport Officer
3	"A" Company	11	QM
4	"B" Company	12	RSM
5	"C" Company	13	Pipe Major
6	"D" Company	14	Bandmaster
7	Specialists Section	15	File
8	Communication Section	16-18	War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO 192

Reference Map:  
Sheets 51.b SW  
51.b NW

14<sup>th</sup> July, 1918

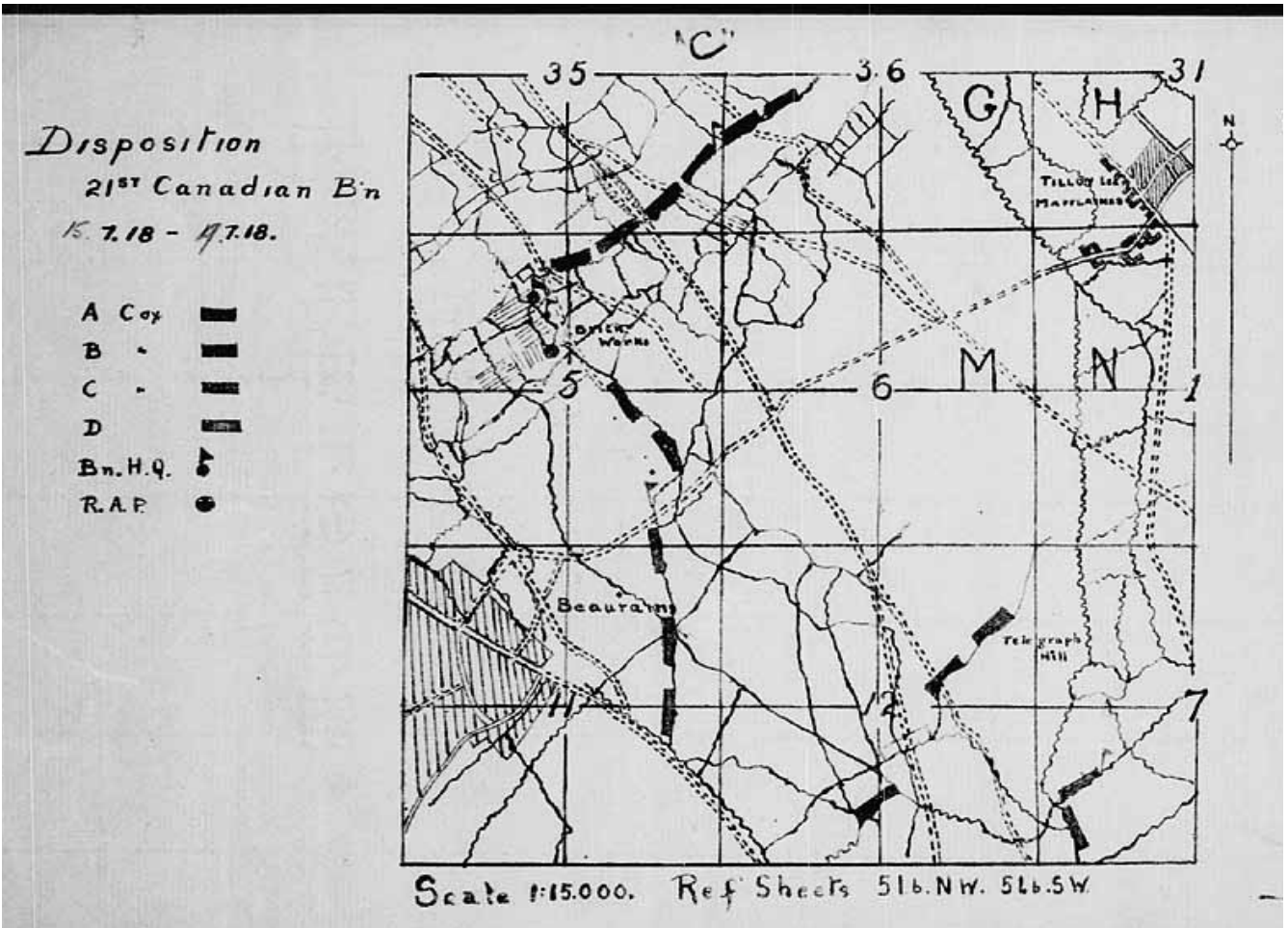
- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion and a portion of the 1<sup>st</sup> London Battalion in Brigade Support, night of 14<sup>th</sup>/15<sup>th</sup> July, 1918
- 2 The Battalion will parade on parade ground at 8.00 pm. Markers will report to RSM, 7.40 pm. Dress: Fighting Order. Greatcoats will be rolled and fastened on belt under haversack. The Pipe Band will be in attendance.
- 3 ROUTE - - BERNEVILLE – DAINVILLE – ACHICOURT. Lieut C Menpes MC, will arrange to post guides on this route. Distances of 100 yards between Companies will be maintained
- 4 The following guides will be supplied:  
By the 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion: 2 for Battalion Headquarters  
5 for "A" Company  
5 for "B" Company  
5 for "C" Company  
1 for "D" Company (No 15 Platoon)  
  
By 1<sup>st</sup> London Battalion 1 for "D" Company  
  
Rendezvous will be at JUNCTION OF DAINVILLE – ACHICOURT and ARRAS ROADS at M.2.b.3.9, at 10.00 pm this date.
- 5 Units will relieve as follows:  
  
"A" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "A" Coy, 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion on Left (BLANGY SUPPORT TRENCH)  
  
"B" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "B" Coy 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion in Left Centre (DODGERS ALLEY AND CENTRAL AVENUE)  
  
"C" Company, less No 12 Platoon, 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "C" Coy 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion in Right Centre (BLANGY SUPPORT TRENCH)  
  
"D" Company, less No 15 Platoon, 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battn will relieve "A" Coy, 1<sup>st</sup> London Battalion on right. (TELEGRAPH HILL SUPPORT TRENCH AND TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH TRENCH)  
  
No 12 Platoon ("C" Company) and No 15 Platoon ("D" Company) 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve "D" Company, 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion on Right (TILLOY RESERVE TRENCH)  
  
Specialist, Communication and Headquarter Sections will relieve corresponding Sections of the 7<sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion
- 6 Order of March will be – Specialist Section, "D" "C" "B" "A" Companies, Communication Section and Battalion Headquarters

- 7 One Officer and 1 Runner per Company, and one NCO per Platoon and one NCO per section will report to Battalion Headquarters at 1.30 pm today ready to proceed forward and take over.
- 8 On completion of relief Headquarters will be as follows:
- Battalion M.5.a.8.6 "A" Company G.35.d.8.4  
"B" Company M.5.a.8.6 "C" Company M.5.d.8.4  
"D" Company N.7.c.25.50  
No 12 Platoon, "C" Company and No 15 Platoon, "D" Company, M.12.a.8.1.  
RAP located at BRICKWORKS, M.5.a
- 9 Lewis Gun Limbers will follow Companies as far as possible to the line, when Lewis Gun Officer will superintend unloading of same.
- 10 The Quartermaster will arrange Rations for Battalion Headquarters, Headquarters Sections, "A" "B" and "C" Companies, less No 12 Platoon to be cooked in the line, and rations for "D" Company and No 12 Platoon to be cooked at Transport. Also water for the latter company and Platoon to be delivered from Transport to N.12.a.8.1. Water for the balance of the battalion may be drawn in Trenches as follows: - Battalion Headquarters and "A" Company at RENVILLE RAOD, M.4.b.6.5, "B" and "C" Companies at BEAURAINS – TILLOY ROAD at M.5.d.5.5.
- 11 Trench Stores in duplicate together with disposition Map will be forwarded to Battalion Orderly Room by 7.00 am, July 15<sup>th</sup> 1918
- 12 Officer's Baggage, Surplus Cooking utensils and men's packs will be delivered to the Quartermaster's Stores by 5.00 pm this date. Officers proceeding to WANQUENTIN will place baggage at Battalion Orderly Room by 5.00 pm, where Transport Officer will arrange to collect same.
- 13 All water bottles will be filled before Battalion proceeds forward tonight
- 14 Transport Officer will arrange horses for mounted Officers
- 15 Two Runners per company will report to Battalion Headquarters when relief is complete
- 16 Personnel being left out of the line will parade on Battalion Parade Ground at 6.00 pm to proceed to WANQUENTIN  
Dress: Marching Order  
Major GSS Bowerbank MC, assumes command of Rear Details
- 17 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using the code word FRANK and time
- 18 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Captain  
A/Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly by \_\_\_\_\_

- |           |   |       |                   |
|-----------|---|-------|-------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 11    | Quartermaster     |
| 2         | 7 <sup>th</sup> Middlesex Battalion       | 12    | Transport Officer |
| 3         | 1 <sup>st</sup> London Battalion          | 13    | Medical Officer   |
| 4         | Commanding Officer                        | 14    | Lewis Gun Officer |
| 5         | OC "A" Company                            | 15    | RSM               |
| 6         | OC "B" Company                            | 16    | Brass Band        |
| 7         | OC "C" Company                            | 17    | Pipe Band         |
| 8         | OC "D" Company                            | 18    | File              |
| 9         | OC Specialist Section                     | 19-21 | War Diary         |
| 10        | OC Communication Section                  |       |                   |





SECRET

Copy No 16

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 193

Ref Maps

Sheets 51.B NW )

51.B SW ) 1/20,000

July 18<sup>th</sup>, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 15<sup>th</sup> Cdn Battalion, in the Line, on the night of 18<sup>th</sup>/19<sup>th</sup> July 1918
- 2 Units will relieve corresponding Units
- 3 Upon relief the Battalion will proceed to billets in "Y" Huts (L.1.c), marching out by Platoons
- 4 Route will be RONVILLE – ARRAS – ARRAS ST POL ROAD – L.1.c. Lieut C Menpes MC, will arrange to post guides on this route, First guide will be at G.34.b.35.10. Distances of 100 yards between Companies will be maintained.
- 5 The following guides will be supplied to incoming Battalions and will report to Lieut W Currie MC, at Battalion Headquarters at 8.00 pm
  - 2 for Battalion Headquarters (Battn Runners)
  - 5 for "A" Company
  - 5 for "B" Company
  - 4 for "C" Company
  - 4 for "D" Company
  - 1 for No 12 Platoon
  - 1 for No 15 Platoon
- 6 The Transport Officer will arrange for limber to rendezvous at Cross Roads RONVILLE, G.34.b.25.10, to take out Lewis Guns, Stretchers and Signalling Material, also limbers to be at respective dumps for cooking utensils etc.
- 7 All Maps, Defence Schemes, Trench Stores, etc will be handed over to the incoming Battalion and receipts in duplicate taken, which will be turned into Battalion Headquarters before leaving the line.
- 8 All petrol cans will be taken out of the line
- 9 Completion of relief will be wired into Battalion Headquarters using the Code Word "PEARL" and time.
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by AP Christmas)  
Capt, Asst/Adj  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion



SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 195

Reference Map  
LENS 11 1/100,000

22<sup>nd</sup> July 1918

- 1 MOVE The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to PENIN Area tomorrow, 23<sup>d</sup> inst
- 2 TIME Units will fall in on Battalion Parade Ground at 8.40 am, and head of the column will pass Starting Point, Cross Roads H.3.90.70, at 9.00 am.
- 3 ORDER OF MARCH Specialist, Communication, Headquarters, Brass Band, "A", "B", "C", "D" Companies and Transport. Pipe Band will be distributed between "B", "C" and "D" Companies.  
100 yard intervals will be maintained between Companies and Transport en route.
- 4 DRESS Marching Order. Service Caps
- 5 BAGGAGE All stores, mess outfits and baggage will be piled near Road by QM Stores, by 8.15 am
- 6 MEAL The Battalion will halt at 11.30 am for the noon meal. Food will be cooked en route.
- 7 Billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition. A clearance certificate will be obtained by Orderly Officer from the Area Commandant.
- 8 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

- |           |   |       |                   |
|-----------|---|-------|-------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 9     | Transport Officer |
| 2         | Commanding Officer                        | 10    | Quartermaster     |
| 3         | OC "A" Company                            | 11    | Medical Officer   |
| 4         | OC "B" Company                            | 12    | RSM               |
| 5         | OC "C" Company                            | 13    | Pipe Band         |
| 6         | OC "D" Company                            | 14    | Brass Band        |
| 7         | OC Specialist Section                     | 15-17 | War Diary         |
| 8         | OC Communication Section                  | 18    | File              |

SECRET

Copy No \_\_\_\_\_

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION INSTRUCTIONS  
IN THE EVENT OF A MOVE

Reference Map:  
LENS 11. 1/100,000

27<sup>th</sup> July, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion is in GHQ Reserve in readiness to move by train at 12 hours notice.
- 2 In the event of a move to the Second Army, the Battalion will entrain at SAVY and detrain at WIZERNES. Units will report to RTO at times as under:  
Battalion, less "D" Company, one cooker and Transport – Z plus 10½ hours  
"D" Company, cooker and team – Z plus 8 hours  
Transport – Z plus 9 hours  
"Z" is used to denote hour at which first troops will depart from Entraining Point, and will be notified on receipt
- 3 TRAIN The Battalion, less "D" Company, cooker and team, will be conveyed by train No 14. Serial No 20244.  
  
"D" Company, cooker and team, by Train No 23. Serial No 2023A
- 4 The entrainment of the Battalion must be completed 1½ hours before the train is due to start.
- 5 "D" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, with field kitchen and team, will act as a Fatigue and Entraining Company, and will report to RTO at time above stated, leaving on the last train.
- 6 ROUTE TO SAVY IZEL LEZ HAMEAU, TULLOY LES HERMAVILLE, Road Junction, D.22.b.Central, D.10.a.6.2
- 7 RATIONS Units will carry the current day's rations
- 8 PICQUET "C" Company will detail a Picquet of one Officer and 20 NCOs and men. This Picquet will report to the Entraining Staff Officer at the station immediately on arrival of the unit. They will be on duty during the journey and until the Battalion has completed its detraining. The Picquet will be posted under instructions of the Entraining Staff Officer to prevent men wandering away or leaving the train after entrainment, and at intermediate stations, to prevent men from leaving the train.
- 9 REPORTING ARRIVAL The Commanding Officer will report the arrival of the Battalion at the Station to the Entraining Staff Officer.
- 10 CAPACITY OF TRAINS The only accommodation on the train for vehicles, animals and baggage up to the Establishment laid down
- 11 MARCHING OUT STATE A Marching Out State will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by all units 3 hours before moving off. This will show Officers, Other Ranks, animals, 4 wheeled vehicles, 2 wheeled vehicles and bicycles.
- 12 WATER Water carts will be filled before entrainment. Transport will water their horses before proceeding to station at SAVY. Water with buckets is the only possible way.
- 13 BREAST ROPES Breast ropes for the horses will be provided by the Transport. Ropes for lashing vehicles will be provided by Railway. Heel ropes will serve as breast ropes.

- 14 BRAKEVANS No personnel or stores will be allowed on the Brakevan on the end of each train
- 15 AUTHORITY OF RTO Any instructions given by the RTO with regard to Entraining or Detraining must be obeyed by all ranks.
- 16 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Medical Officer
2	RTO SAVY	11	Transport Officer
3	Commanding Officer	12	Quartermaster
4	"A" Company	13	RSM
5	"B" Company	14	Pipe Band
6	"C" Company	15	Brass Band
7	"D" Company	16	File
8	Specialist Section	17-19	War Diary
9	Communication Section		

SECRET

Copy No \_\_\_\_\_

AMENDMENT TO 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION INSTRUCTIONS IN THE EVENT OF A MOVE, DATED 27<sup>TH</sup> JULY, 1918

28<sup>th</sup> July, 1918

Reference para 2

For "D" Company, cooker and team, - Z plus 8 hours."  
 Read "D" Company, cooker and team, - Z minus 4 hours."

Reference para 4

For "The entrainment of the Battalion must be completed 1½ hours before the train is due to start".  
 Read "The entrainment of the Battalion must be completed ½ hour before the train is due to start".

(signed FD Raymond)  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Medical Officer
2	RTO SAVY	11	Transport Officer
3	Commanding Officer	12	Quartermaster
4	"A" Company	13	RSM
5	"B" Company	14	Pipe Band
6	"C" Company	15	Brass Band
7	"D" Company	16	File
8	Specialist Section	17-19	War Diary
9	Communication Section		

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 196

Ref LENS, 1/100,000

Copy No 17  
July 29<sup>th</sup>, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move by march route to PETIT HOUVIN, tonight, 29<sup>th</sup>/30<sup>th</sup> July 1918, for entrainment
- 2 ROUTE; - GIVENCHY – LE–NOBLE – AMBRINES – MANICOURT-SUR-CANCHE – MONTE-EN-TENOUS – BERNVILLE – PETIT HOUVIN
- 3 The battalion will fall in on Football Field, Manin at 12.30 am and will move off as under:  

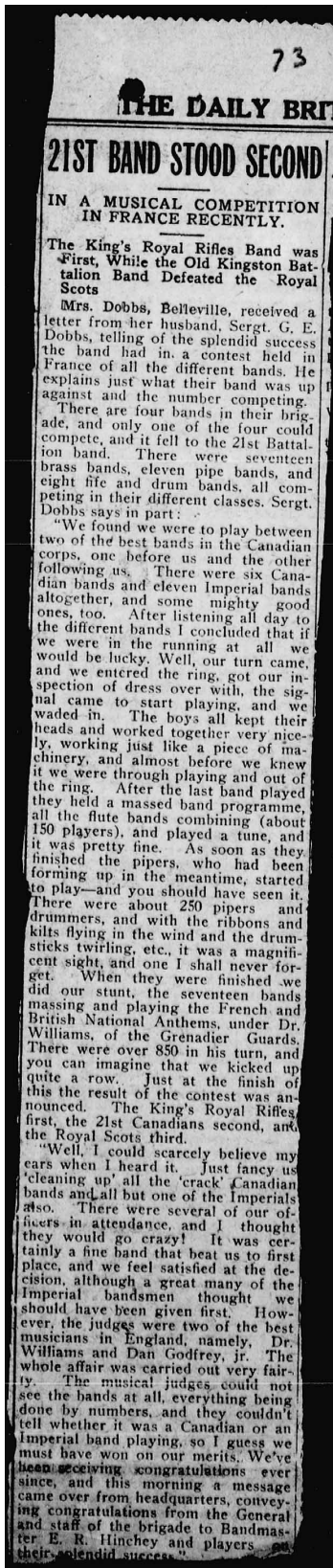
Specialists, Communication Section, RSM's Party, Brass and Pipe Bands, A, B, C, & D Companies, QM Stores and Transport.
- 4 TRANSPORT, 4 Lewis Gun Limbers, 2 Cookers, 1 Water Cart, 1 Mess Cart, 1 Medical Cart and 9 Riding Horses will accompany the Battalion on the march. The remainder of the Transport will proceed under the direction of the Brigade Transport Officer. Separate orders will be issued by the Brigade.
- 5 TRAINS. Personnel will leave detraining point on train No 1 at 7.00 am. Transport will proceed on train No 2, leaving at 1.27 pm
- 6 BILLETING. Capt L Frazer, Sergt Smith and the 4 CQMS's will report to the Brigade billeting Officer at RTO's Office, PETIT HOUVIN at 7.00 am.
- 7 A hot meal will be provided on arrival at PETIT HOUVIN.
- 8 Billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition and the usual certificate forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 10.00 am, 30<sup>th</sup> instant.

(signed) FD Raymond  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at \_\_\_\_\_ pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Medical Officer
2	RTO, Petit Houvin	11	Transport Officer
3	Commanding Officer	12	Quartermaster
4	A Company	13	Pipe Band
5	B Company	14	Brass Band
6	C Company	15	RSM
7	D Company	16-18	War Diary
8	Specialists	19	File
9	Communication		

Transcriber's note: the newspaper article below was inserted into the War Diary, so I have included it here, along with a transcription.



## 21<sup>st</sup> Band Stood Second

In a Musical Competition in France Recently

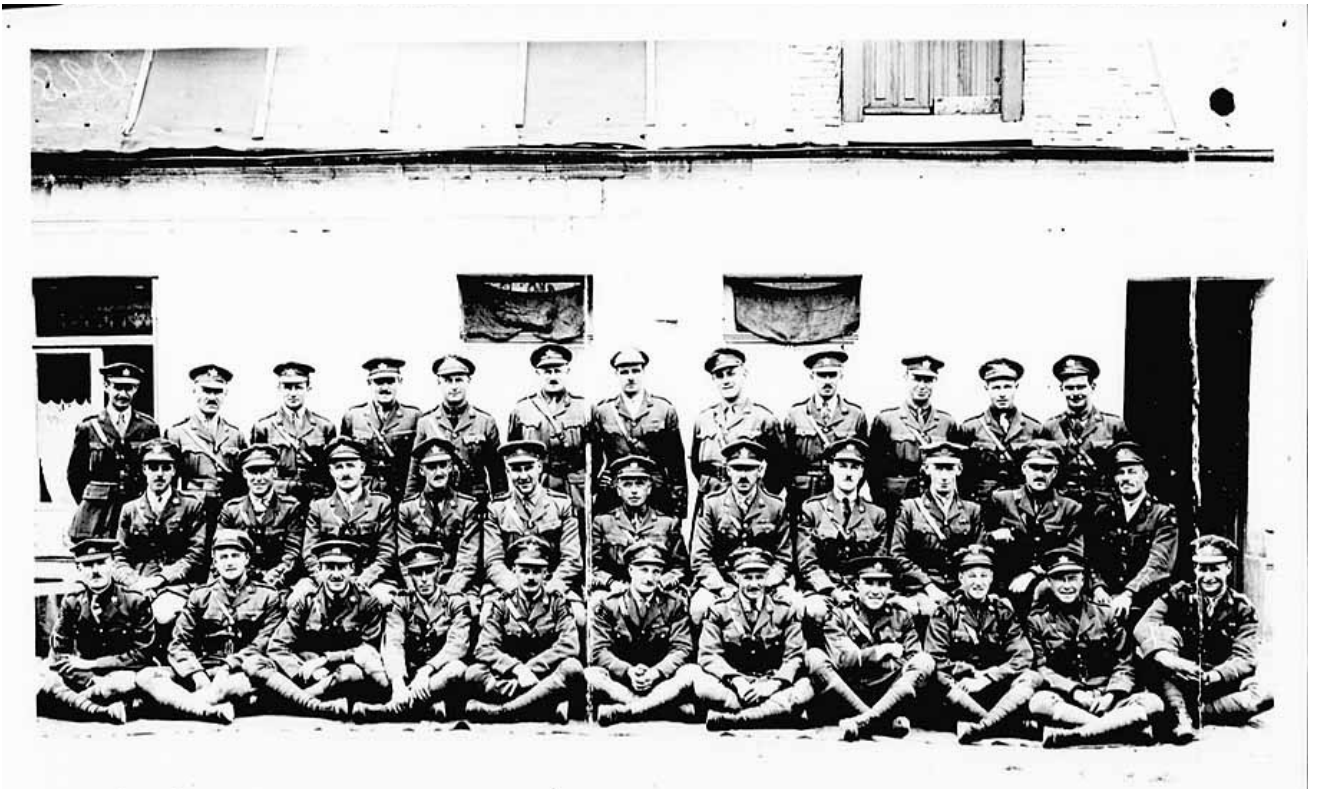
The King's Royal Rifles Band was First, While the Old Kingston Battalion Band Defeated the Royal Scots

Mrs. Dobbs, Belleville, received a letter from her husband Sergt. G. F. Dobbs, telling of the splendid success the band had in a contest held in France of all the different bands. He explains just what their band was up against and the number competing.

There were four bands in their brigade and only one of the four could compete and it fell to the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion band. There were seventeen brass bands, eleven pipe bands and eight fife and drum bands, all competing in their different classes Sergt Dobbs says in part:

"We found we were to play between two of the best bands in the Canadian corps, one before us and the other following us. There were six Canadian bands and eleven Imperial bands altogether, and some mighty good ones, too. After listening all day to the different bands I concluded that if we were in the running at all we would be lucky. Well, our turn came and we entered the ring, got our inspection of dress over with, the signal came to start playing and we waded in. The boys all kept their heads and worked together very nicely, working just like a piece of machinery, and almost before we knew it we were through playing and out of the ring. After the last band played they held a massed band program all the flute bands combining (about 150 players) and played a tune, and it was pretty fine. As soon as they finished the pipers, who had been forming up in the meantime started to play – and you should have seen it. There were about 250 pipers and drummers, and with the ribbons and kilts flying in the wind and the drum sticks twirling etc, it was a magnificent sight, and one I shall never forget. When they were finished we did our stunt, the seventeen bands massing and playing the French and British National Anthems, under Dr Williams of the Grenadier Guards. There were over 850 in his turn, and you can imagine that we kicked up quite a row. Just at the finish of this the result of the contest was announced. The Kings Royal Rifles, first the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadians second and the Royal Scots third.

"Well, I could scarcely believe my ears when I heard it. Just fancy us cleaning up all the crack Canadian bands and all but one of the Imperials also. There were several of our officers in attendance and I thought they would go crazy. It was certainly a fine band that beat us to first place, and we feel satisfied at the decision, although a great many of the Imperial bandsmen thought we should have been given first. However, the judges were two of the best musicians in England, namely, Dr Williams and Dan Godfrey, Jr. The whole affair was carried out very fairly. The musical judges could not see the bands at all, everything being done by numbers, and they couldn't tell whether it was a Canadian or Imperial band playing, so I guess we must have won on our merits. We've been receiving congratulations ever since, and this morning a message came over from headquarters, conveying congratulations from the General and staff of the brigade to Bandmaster E. R. Hinchey and players on their splendid success."



Front Row (left to right)

Lieutenants DM Goudy, AE Gardiner, AM Scott, JR Smith, MC, HT Deane MC, W Currie MC, MM, EB Smythe MC, RA Stewart, CT Hamley, GD Woodcock, C Menpes MC

Centre Row

Captain ES Sawell MC, Captain JG Wiggins (Adjutant), Lieut-Colonel EW Jones DSO, (Commanding), Major HE Pense DSO, MC, (second in command), Major GS Bwoerbank MC, Major (Reverend) WE Kidd MC, Captain NJ MacCrimmon MC, Captain F McPhun

Back Row

Lieutenants PG Hall, HD Wightman, WL Bonnell, WA Stewart, Captain FK Ludlow, Captain JR Purdy, Lieutenants AW May MC, ES Webb, HCL Gillman, PH Wills, HC Cameron MC, JG Caldwell

Officer Commanding and Officers  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion  
France, June, 1918



**"A" Form.**  
**MESSAGES AND SIGNALS.**

Army Form C-121.  
(In pads of 100.)

No. of Message.....

Prefix.....	Code.....	Words.	Charge.	This message is on a/c of:	Recd. at..... m.	
Office of Origin and Service Instructions.					Service.	Date.....
				Sent		From.....
				At..... m.		By.....
				To.....		(Signature of "Franking Officer.")
					By.....	

TO {


Sender's Number.	Day of Month.	In reply to Number.	<b>AAA</b>
------------------	---------------	---------------------	------------

In the event of a business message Company communication will be made. This is to be noted that they will be responsible for mess. etc. and lampshades etc. Sgt. Smith will be responsible for H.Q. etc.

One water bottle will always be kept filled, it is imperative that being Comdis SSS that water is not wasted as it is very difficult to get in this area.

From.....

Place..... at Pt.

Time 21:00

The above may be forwarded as now corrected. (Z)

*[Signature]*

\* This line should be erased if not required.

1925.) Ws. W 492/M1647, 850,000 Pads. 5/17. H. W. & V., Ltd. (B. 1197.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erased heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

FLUY 1/8/18 to  
3/8/18

August 1<sup>st</sup> found the Battalion in FLUY, with "A" and "B" Companies in SEUX, a distance of 1¼ miles from Battalion Headquarters which were located in the old Chateaux, FLUY. At 9.00 am the Battalion proceeded to the Tank Demonstration Area near PICQUIGEY, a march of 6½ miles from FLUY, arriving there at noon and having lunch in the field. At 2.00 pm a lecture was given by the Officer Commanding No 14 Tank Battalion giving general description of co-operation between Infantry and Tanks in Action. Following which, "D" Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, and "B" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, co-operated with one Section of the Tank Corps, three with attacking waves and one in support, in carrying out a practice attack which clearly showed how targets were given to the tanks by the infantry by the use of smoke-bombs (No 27 Grenades) and the use of green and white flag by the tank denoting that opposition has been cleared up and the advance could be resumed; also the use of red and yellow flag denoting that tank is out of action, which is replaced by tank in support moving forward; also the use of the tri-coloured flag denoting the withdrawal of the tank after the completion of the operation.

August 2<sup>nd</sup> On account of rain, the Battalion rested and Pay Parade was held.

August 3<sup>rd</sup> Training by Companies was carried out as usual in the morning. At 2.00 pm, advance party proceeded to CAGNY AREA to arrange for the billeting of the Battalion. At 5.00 pm, the Battalion received warning order to proceed any time after 7.00 pm to the CAGNY AREA. As this move was to be made in Battle Order, all men's packs and surplus baggage were stored at SEUX and FLUY. At 11.00 pm the Battalion moved off, and after marching 12 miles, arrived at 5.45 am August 4<sup>th</sup> in BOUTILLIERE, a small village 2½ miles South East of AMIENS. 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters was situated in the South East Portion of AMIENS. The Battalion were billeted in an old munition factory, in which at that time a party of French Troops were working to evacuate the machinery. A number of the Officers of the Battalion, including the Officer Commanding, were billeted in the convent at CAGNY, which at that time was still inhabited. The Commanding Officer attended, in the afternoon a conference at Brigade Headquarters, after his return a meeting of Company and Section Commanders was held and verbal information regarding impending operations was given. At 9.00 pm the Battalion moved to BOIS L'ABEE, relieving the 16<sup>th</sup> Australian Battalion in Brigade Support by 3.35 am August 5<sup>th</sup>. During this move it was particularly noticed that congestion of traffic was general. Artillery, Infantry, Tanks and ammunition columns, which at that time was understood to have been the case for the past two nights. Evidently enemy reconnaissance had noticed this, as during the move enemy shelling of our Rear areas was very heavy. At 2.00 pm, August 5<sup>th</sup>, advanced parties left the Battalion to reconnoiter positions into which the Battalion would move on the night of August 5<sup>th</sup>/6<sup>th</sup>. The Battalion moved into new positions on the night of August 5<sup>th</sup>/6<sup>th</sup>, this move being completed at 12 midnight. During the move enemy harassing fire was very heavy, resulting in the following casualties occurring when a shell struck a small ammunition dump on the side of the track on which Nos 1 and 2 Platoons were moving:

4/8/18 to  
8/8/18

Killed – 3320178 Pte Belanger, P., 237306 Pte Sheppard, HB., 845109 Pte Potter, AE., 928160 Pte Skuse, H., 663139 Pte Brown, J., 633268 Pte Gollidge, CG., 663291 Pte Hollingsworth, A., 1093428 Pte Bieth, JH., 246749 Pte Petty, SA., 633923 Pte Scott, HV., 639810 Pte Carl, W., 636559 Pte Runnalls, EO., 3320437 Pte Brabant, A., 1087309 Pte Bruno, A., 726076 Pte Hunter GH., 636088 Pte Weese, M., 2265873 Pte Home, RP.

Wounded – 8 Other Ranks

Unusual aerial and artillery activity prevailed during August 6<sup>th</sup>. Lieutenant Young, No 8 Squadron, Royal Air Force, was forced to land in 0.5.b (Reference Sheet 62.d. NE). He sustained minor injuries and was directed to 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters, from which he returned to his Squadron. On the morning of August 6<sup>th</sup>, a conference of Brigade Unit Commanders was held at Brigade Headquarters, BOIS L'ABBE, at which detailed instructions were verbally promulgated regarding the forthcoming attack on the enemy positions: also instructions were issued, at this time, to Battalion Commanders that as many reconnoitering parties as possible were to be sent out with a view to taking up assembly positions as shown on the attached sketch. On return from Brigade Conference, the Commanding Officer immediately held a meeting of all Company and Section Commanders. During this time Operation Order No 199, 2<sup>nd</sup> Final Instructions has been issued for the attack.

At another meeting of Company and Section Commanders, held in the evening, the details of the attack were thoroughly discussed. During the period of reconnaissance, it was particularly noticed that the 50<sup>th</sup> Australian Battalion were holding the line very lightly, with the object that in the event of enemy raids, and captures being made, no identification regarding the disposition of the Australian Corps or of Canadians being in the immediate vicinity would be obtained. On the night of August 6<sup>th</sup>/7<sup>th</sup> enemy artillery was very active, firing on our rear areas.

The morning of August 7<sup>th</sup> being very fine our aircraft was more active than usual. Enemy aerial activity was below normal. In the morning, reconnoitering parties from Scout Section and Companies were sent out in order that as many as possible should be acquainted with the area to be attacked. On the night of August 7<sup>th</sup>/8<sup>th</sup> the Battalion moved into assembly positions, relieving elements of the 50<sup>th</sup> Australian Battalion.

Zero Hour having been set at 4.20 am, August 8<sup>th</sup>, the Battalion was reported in position at 3.20 am to Advance Brigade Headquarters. At 3.40 am the enemy apparently noticed unusual activity in our forward areas, and opened a heavy bombardment on our lines with 4.1s and 5.9s. We sustained no casualties. Without any preliminary bombardment our attack opened at 4.20 am, with Battalion Headquarters located at U.5.b.60.30.

On account of barrage and heavy mist it was found necessary for all officers to retain their direction of the attack by compass. On our Battalion advancing, the only signal flare used by the enemy was a single red, which evidently was his SOS and his artillery did not respond until 4.32 am. In accordance with instructions issued in Operation Order 199 and Final Instructions, Tanks should have been in line with the attacking waves at zero hour, but on account of the heavy mist they lost their direction and did not co-operate with the Battalion as soon as expected, but advanced later in the attack. Enemy resistance to our advance in close support to the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, was where possible, taking into consideration the mist, very strong and some Machine Gun Posts were passed by the attacking waves. All such were effectively dealt with by troops following in the rear of the attacking waves. The Battalion Headquarters left the Assembly Positions at zero plus 75 and on going forward to take up new positions in CAVE COPSE (V.9.d.25.30) were subjected to Machine Gun Fire from isolated Posts on the right flank, which as previously stated had been missed. The Headquarters immediately took cover in a small trench and on a tank arriving near them the direction of the Machine Gun Post was indicated, to which the tank immediately advanced, supported by elements of Infantry organized at the moment. Machine Gun Post was captured. Battalion Headquarters then proceeded forward and when moving along road toward CAVE COPSE, another Machine Gun, about 1,000 yards distant fired on the party. In seeking cover it is regretted to say that Lieut-Colonel EW Jones, DSO, was fatally wounded and RSM Jordan MC, wounded.

Immediate attention was given these casualties and Lieutenant Gardiber, who was being carried by, wounded, at that time, volunteered his stretcher for the use of the Commanding Officer. (*transcriber's note: I could find no record of this officer in the CEF. It is possible that he was with either the BEF or the AEF.*) This Offer was reluctantly accepted by the Officer in attendance. Battalion Headquarters having to press forward the Commanding Officer was left in charge of the Chaplain, Captain RJ Rennison, to be taken to the nearest Dressing Station. On the establishment of new Battalion Headquarters at CAVE COPSE the Battalion was reported to Advance Brigade Headquarters, as passing through MARCELCAVE at 7.15 am. Captain FD Raymond MC, the Adjutant, who had assumed command, immediately reported to Advance Brigade Headquarters and notified the Brigade Commander of Commanding Officer's condition. Captain Frazer assumed the duties of Adjutant. Lieutenant GD Woodcock was sent forward to reconnoiter MARCELCAVE for a prospective Battalion Headquarters. On no information being received from this officer, in a short time, Captain Raymond MC, and two runners went forward and located a Battalion Headquarters at V.10.c.10.25. He immediately sent word back for the personnel of Battalion Headquarters move forward to this position. After the Battalion had arrived at their objective (GREEN LINE) Officers Commanding Companies, supervised by Captain ES Sawell MC, commenced consolidation of the new positions (as shown on attached maps) and organized these positions for defence. During consolidation, the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, as per OO 199, passed through our ranks and pressed forward the attack. After a general report had been received from Company Commanders and a general survey made of the positions passed through during the attack, the captures credited to the Battalion were as follows:

4.1 cm Field Guns.....4  
 7.7 cm Field Guns.....7  
 Machine Guns.....17  
 Range Finders  
 Signalling Equipment  
 Spare Parts for Machine Guns

And approximately 7 Officers and 105 Other Ranks, including two Medical Officers, who were taken from RAP in MARCELCAVE. The 4.1 cm Guns captured were immediately reversed by our advance artillery and all available enemy ammunition fired to the amusement of the Battalion

It must be particularly noticed that Operation was very difficult owing to the heavy mist and it was only through exceptionally good supervision by Officers and NCOs that the Battalion were able to make this their most successful Operation. Not only was this so as regards the depth of the advance made, but, with the exception of the Commanding Officer, our casualties were comparatively light, as follows:

<u>OFFICERS</u>	Killed Lieut-Colonel EW Jones DSO, Lieut JM Potts.
<u>WOUNDED</u>	Captain EA McCusker (Medical Officer), Lieutenants CT Hamley, WA Stewart and AE Gardiner.

Lieutenant – Colonel EW Jones DSO

Perhaps no individual loss in the whole of the Canadian Corps had been more universally lamented than the death of our Commanding Officer, who died when his battalion had accomplished a completely successful attack. Colonel Jones was one of the original Officers of the battalion. An old Brockville boy, he went to Victoria BC, where at the beginning of the war he gave up his law practice and returned to his old province.

He was a veteran of all the Canadian Battles since the Battalion came to France. He was badly wounded at Vimy and recently had thoughts of rest, but was very loath to leave his comrades. His influence upon all ranks of the Battalion was very remarkable. His knowledge of men and his power of teaching them to reach their best, by his confidence in them, was not the least of his great gifts. His relationship with his Officers was very intimate and happy.

He had not been very well for some time but determined to go with the Battalion at whatever cost to himself. The signal success of the operation of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion towards MARCELCAVE, was due in no small degree to his prudence and insight. At zero hour, on August 8<sup>th</sup>, he sat in a trench and watched the Battalion go over, sending messages to Brigade as the operation developed. He was very anxious to follow, and did so at the first opportunity.

At about 7.30 am, while on the highroad, through the cornfields, beyond the lone trees, about half way to MARCELCAVE, he was struck by a Machine Gun bullet through the right lung, and died in a few minutes. He had time to see the complete success of the day before he fell, for already streams of German prisoners were passing to the rear.

His body was carried out by four German prisoners and the next day buried in the little British Cemetery at LONGEAU, on the highroad. It is in the suburbs of AMIENS and as he was laid to rest the sun went down over one of the most beautiful Cathedrals in Europe, only a mile away. When a few days later a great Thanksgiving Service was held in the Cathedral for the deliverance of the City, his spirit must have looked down with the consciousness of duty done, for France, for Canada and the World.

He was a very perfect gentle knight and one of the best of Canada's sons.

Lieutenant John M Potts

Lieutenant Potts came overseas with the First Contingent and saw a great deal of service before joining the Battalion. He was with the Royal Air Force and Artillery in turn, and was injured while with the former branch of the service. He was a member of "B" Company and was in command of No 6 Platoon. He was a good disciplinarian and handled his men with judgment and precision. In the attack of August 8<sup>th</sup> he showed the greatest gallantry and skill, clearing out various strong points with the utmost determination. He was killed almost instantly while rushing a machine gun post. His loss is greatly mourned by his comrades who with unanimous consent bore testimony to his courage and leadership during the day.

(Casualties Continued) OTHER RANKS. Killed in action: 50429 (*Transcriber's note: also had number 59471*) Cpl Holden J, 639188 Cpl (A/Sgt) O'Shea GC, 124333 L/Cpl Skinner W, 1093014 Pte Pearson ON, 3320489 Pte Barr D, 640000 Pte Robinson WN, 1093332 Pte Davis OJ, 636807 Pte Gilroy GA, 1093377 Pte Lavinge A, 2255363 Pte McCullough H, 445204 Pte Morgan GW, 59375 Pte Goldenburg J, 1093058 Pte Terwilliger WW, 2255358 Pte Ballantyne RB, 633308 Pte McLellan JE, 663432 Pte King WJ, 1042202 Pte Pritchard J, and 636713 Pte Ellis TW. (*Transcriber's Note: I have corrected several errors in the service numbers*)

Wounded – 64

Throughout the operation the dash and zeal with which the whole of the Battalion manifested itself was never more marked. As to the reason for this outstanding success in the Battalion, nothing can be said more than the words quoted by Sir Edward Kemp, in his remarks, on the whole of the operation by the Canadian Corps, which is attached as Appendix "H".

Many acts of gallantry and devotion to duty were exhibited by Officers and Other Ranks and a number of recommendations for awards were forwarded.

During this action our air service did magnificent work in flying low and engaging the enemy. The recklessness and daring with which these feats were carried out was clearly shown by the number of casualties sustained by this branch of the service. By their behavior the morale of our troops was even more marked and the enemy's morale broken. This also can be said of the Tank Corps into whose clutches hundreds of the enemy fell. The co-operation of the Battalion with the various branches of the service engaged was never better. The Cavalry forming up, in advance of our new positions created an enthusiasm among the troops never known before.

Our defense positions at the first objective were doubly secured from enemy counter attack by the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade passing through to press forward the success already attained by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, and for the remainder of the day, after consolidation, the Battalion were able to rest.

In the afternoon, our second in command, Major HE Pense DSO, MC, returned to the Battalion and assumed Command. Captain FD Raymond MC, then returned to his position as Adjutant.

9/8/18 to  
16/8/18

On the morning of August 9<sup>th</sup>, the Battalion were ordered to move to area in V.18 (Reference Sheet 62 d NW 1/20,000) around which the personnel of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade were located. Reconnoitering parties were sent forward to reconnoiter a section of the old AMIENS DEFENSE SYSTEM. (W.29 b & d Ref DEMUIN 1/20,000). During the night the enemy aircraft were very active bombing in our rear areas, including our immediate vicinity. The Battalion were deployed in Artillery Formation and we sustained no casualties.

From the time of gaining our first objective the attack proceeded as laid down in Divisional Orders, and by the night of August 9<sup>th</sup> we had received word that the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, which had passed through the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, were in possession of ROISERES, after strong enemy opposition. After the capture of this town the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division were ordered to attack through the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division.

This operation commenced about 8.00 am, August 10<sup>th</sup>. The enemy resistance had, by this time been greatly strengthened, particularly on the Australian Corps Front, North of the AMIENS – ROYE RAILWAY. Although the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division were able to exploit the gains of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division to the extent of capturing MALLU, they were forced to evacuate this village, on account of its making such a pronounced salient, and by the night of August 10<sup>th</sup>, the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division were holding an approximate line from A.8.B.10.15 South to East of CHILLY and line from there South to FOQUEESCOURT. (ref Roiseres 1/40,000)

In these past two days it reminded one of the old tactics we used for practice purposes in open warfare, before we arrived in France. The Artillery moving forward so rapidly, lorries passing to and fro on the roads which a few hours previous had been in enemy territory, being a sight which will never be forgotten by all ranks of the battalion.

During these previous mentioned operations the Battalion were gradually moving forward. On the afternoon of August 9<sup>th</sup> we took up a position in the old AMIENS DEFENSE SYSTEM, about W.26.b & d, with Battalion Headquarters located at W.28.d.35.30. (reference Sheet Roiseres 1/40,000).

About the time of this move it was particularly noticed that enemy aircraft became more active and during the day groups of enemy planes came over lines and at low altitudes bombed and machine gunned troops and horses sheltered in the valleys. On the same day one of our kite balloons was brought down by an enemy plane. Night bombing was again carried out by the enemy.

On the morning of August 10<sup>th</sup> a reconnoitering party was sent forward by the Battalion to gain information as regards the positions then held by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division. This party had an unusual experience in being bombed and machine gunned by ten enemy planes. Fortunately the party, thinking of the old adage "Discretion is the better part of valour", got to the nearest cover and sustained no casualties. This party returned with information regarding the position of the various units of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division.

At 9.30 pm the Battalion moved forward to a position East of ROISERES, South of the RAILWAY. In this position it was noticed that the Cavalry had come to their own. It was pleasing to note the number of dead enemy about who had been lanced or cut with the sword. We also found in this position that the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade had made a great capture in enemy rolling stock. In fact there were three live engines on the tracks and the trucks with the enemy water tanks were appreciated by the thirsty troops. The enemy continuously shelled ROISERES. It should have been stated previously that on the early morning of August 11<sup>th</sup> LIHONS had been captured by the Australians, securing our positions on the North.

In the afternoon the Brigade Commander and his Staff visited Battalion Headquarters informing us that we would possibly be relieving elements of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division. Confirmation of this order was issued in the form of Operation Order No 203, Appendix "L", which stated we would relieve the 46<sup>th</sup> and 78<sup>th</sup> Battalions, in the Front Line.

Advance parties were sent forward and had difficulty in locating the Headquarters of these Battalions. Eventually at the Headquarters of the 78<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion we were notified that our Battalion would relieve the 46<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, only. Owing to arrangements for guides not being completed before dark, the Battalion did not arrive at the rendezvous of the guides of the 46<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, until 2.45 am. With the difficulty of taking over before daylight and the 46<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion clearing without casualties, the relief for that night was cancelled. Previous arrangements being made for the Battalion to rendezvous in the system of trenches East of MAHRICOURT, the Battalion were ordered to remain there from the day.

At 8.45 pm, August 13<sup>th</sup>, the Battalion moved forward and completed the relief of the 46<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion by 1.40 am August 14<sup>th</sup>. Battalion Headquarters and Companies were disposed as shown on the attached sketch.

At 3.00 am a conference was held by the Commanding Officer with all Company and Section Commanders, relative to proposed operations. In the afternoon these contemplated operations were cancelled. The Commanding Officer visited Brigade Headquarters and sent back word that they had received definite information that the enemy were retiring on the immediate South. With this information orders were given to send out fighting patrols on the Battalion frontage, to gain information as to the disposition of the enemy regarding a possible withdrawal on our front. Patrol report is attached as Appendix "A" which definitely shows that the enemy was still there.

About 6.00 pm the Battalion were informed that the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion would be relieving and the Battalion were to move into Brigade Reserve, in our old Front Line System West of FOQUES COURT. The Battalion arrived in new area, after relief, about 4.00 pm, August 15<sup>th</sup>, but, on account of concentration of enemy gas shelling on this area for the previous two hours, the Battalion were moved again through

the trenches to the positions shown on the attached sketch. (appendix "P"). The Gas shelling as "A" Company and some of our details passed through the village of POQUESCOURT, was extremely effective and we were unfortunate in sustaining the following casualties: Officers 6, Other Ranks 36. See attached report re Gas Shelling, Appendix "Q". The following Officers were admitted to Field Ambulance, gassed on this date, Capt FD Raymond MC, Capt ES Sawell MC, Lieuts JR Smith MC, WL Bonnell, JG Caldwell and GL Edmonds.

The morning of August 16<sup>th</sup> passed very quietly with the aircraft very active. In the afternoon the Brigade were ordered to advance its line East as far as the RAILWAY running through G.15.a. - G.9.c & a – G.3.b & d, in conjunction with the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division on our right. This action commenced at 4.30 pm with the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion attacking and two companies of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalions in close support. The remainder of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalions and this Battalion were held in Reserve. Our Battalion supplied the evacuation party for this operation, consisting of Lieutenants A Cockeram DSO, and W Trollope MM, and eighty Other Ranks. In this operation the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade were successful in capturing the village of FRANSART, after strong opposition, sustaining only moderate casualties. Copy of letter received from the Commanding Officer of the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion is attached here to.

The troops found to be opposing us in this operation were the 2<sup>nd</sup> Jaegers of the Alpine Corps. Troops supposed to be equally as good as the renowned Brandenburg CockChaffeurs.

On the night of August 16<sup>th</sup> the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division relieved the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division in the Battle Front. At 11.35 pm the relief of the Battalion by the 44<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion was completed and the Battalion proceeded to the Area North East of CAIX, which they had occupied on the night of August 10<sup>th</sup>/11<sup>th</sup>, and relieved the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. A narrative of the move South and of the attack by the Canadian Corps is attached.

CAIX WOOD 17/8/18

August 17<sup>th</sup> passed quietly and Bathing Parades for the Companies and Section were carried out. In the evening the Battalion moved to GUILLAUCOURT, and Battalion Headquarters were established at W.14.d.50.85 with companies distributed in wood at W.15.a and c (Ref sheet Roisieres 1/40,000) "B" Echelon, Regimental Transport and attached personnel, rejoined the Battalion, in this area at 7.30 pm August 17<sup>th</sup>.

TRANSPORT 4/8/18 to  
& REAR 17/8/18  
DETAILS

"A" and "B" Echelons, Regimental Transport and all details left out of the line, remained at CAGNY until August 8<sup>th</sup>, when they moved to MARCELCAVE. On this date, "A" Echelon, plus Cookers rejoined and remained with the Battalion until August 11<sup>th</sup>, 1918. This branch of the Transport was located on the outskirts of ROSIERES (area F.7.a) on August 11<sup>th</sup>, but, due to enemy shelling had to move to area in F.25.c (ref Sheet ROISERES 1/40,000). On the night of August 16<sup>th</sup>/17<sup>th</sup> "A" Echelon, plus Field Kitchens and Quartermasters Stores rejoined the Battalion at CAIX WOOD.

"B" Echelon was brigaded with the other units of our Brigade and on reaching MARCELCAVE proceeded to Area in V.17.d. (Ref Sheet Rosieres 1/40000) where they remained until August 10<sup>th</sup> 1918. On this date they moved to W.26.b.85.00 (ref Sheet Rosieres 1/40000) where they were located until the night of August 17<sup>th</sup>, when they moved to GUILLAUCOURT and rejoined the Battalion.



Rear Battalion Headquarters and details left out of the line accompanied "B" Echelon during the tour of the Battalion in the Forward Area.

On August 8<sup>th</sup> a draft of forty other ranks, chiefly from OTTAWA ONTARIO, joined the Battalion from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC. Standing Orders were read and explained to this personnel, after which they were posted to companies, and instructed to be ready to proceed forward on short notice. Lieutenants ST Crooks and VR Ullman reported to the unit on August 7<sup>th</sup>, having been despatched from the CCRC as reinforcements. These officers were sent forward on August 8<sup>th</sup> and joined the Battalion at MARCELCAVE. Upon arrival at forward Headquarters they were posted to "C" and "B" Companies respectively: Lieutenant JR Gill, Sergt Wise and two Other Ranks proceeded to Corps School to attend General Course of Instruction. Ninety one other ranks were sent forward and joined the Battalion at MARCELCAVE in the evening.

On August 10<sup>th</sup>, Lieutenant GD Woodcock proceeded to England on leave of absence.

August 13<sup>th</sup> On this date the following officers reported to the Battalion as reinforcements, and on proceeding forward on the night of August 15<sup>th</sup>/16<sup>th</sup> were posted to the Companies shown opposite their respective names: Lieut A Cockeram DSO, "A" Coy, Lieut WH Mackey, "D" Coy, Lieut GA Phillips, "A" Coy, Lieut GW Trollope MM, "C" Coy, Lieut FC Johnstone, "D" Coy, Lieut GA Granger, "A" Coy. Sixty eight Other Ranks arrived from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC. Standing Orders were read and explained to those Other Ranks. Eighty Other Ranks were sent forward to the Battalion on this date. Major CG McLaughlin, who had been absent on leave to England returned to the Battalion.

August 15<sup>th</sup> A draft of 48 Other Ranks arrived from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC, on this date. Major GSS Bowerbank proceeded forward to assume the duties of Adjutant, vice Captain FD Raymond MC, who was admitted to hospital, gassed.

GUILLAUCOURT 18/8/18  
to  
19/8/18

During this period the weather continued fine. On Sunday the 18<sup>th</sup> the Chaplain, Captain RJ Rennison, conducted service, which the Brigadier attended at 10.00 am. Following the service General Rennie spoke briefly to the Battalion congratulating it on its work during the operations, which commenced on August 8<sup>th</sup>. He spoke feeling of the death of our late Commanding Officer, Colonel Jones, and announced that Major Pense, who had assumed command of the Battalion, had been granted the rank of Lieutenant Colonel. Later in the morning a wire was received to the effect that the Divisional Commander had approved of the Acting rank of Lieutenant Colonel for Major Pense, pending publication of appointment. The balance of Sunday and Monday were devoted to refitting, with pay parade on Monday morning.

During the night enemy aircraft were active bombing in our rear areas. No bombs were dropped in our immediate vicinity. On the morning of August 19<sup>th</sup> the battalion received orders to be ready to move on very short notice. At 9.30 pm the battalion moved, via March Route to BOVES, where it rested in the fields adjoining the Railway Station until 12.15 pm August 20<sup>th</sup> at which time they entrained.

20/8/18  
&  
21/8/18

At 3.00 am August 21<sup>st</sup> the battalion detrained at WAVRANS and marched to BEAUVOIS and SIRACOURT. Battalion Headquarters were located at C.E.40.25. (Ref Lens 11 1/10,000)

TRANSPORT	19/8/18 to 22/8/18	<p>“A” Echelon Regimental Transport plus Cookers and Water Carts accompanied the Battalion from GUILLAUCOURT to BOVES, where they entrained on the night of August 20<sup>th</sup>/21<sup>st</sup>. This Section of the Transport arrived in BEAUVOIS at 2.00 pm August 21<sup>st</sup>, 1918.</p> <p>“B” Echelon, Regimental Transport, less Cookers and Water Carts, left GUILLAUCOURT at 9.00 pm, August 19<sup>th</sup>, and moved under Brigade arrangements to BEAUVOIS, where they arrived at 10.00 am August 22<sup>nd</sup>, 1918.</p>				
BEAUVOIS & SIRACOURT	21/8/18 to 23/8/18	<p>Upon arrival in BEAUVOIS and SIRACOURT the Battalion was served with a hot meal and rested during the remainder of the day. On August 22<sup>nd</sup> we received orders to be ready to move on one hour’s notice. At 2.00 am August 23<sup>rd</sup> orders for the unit to move to the BERNEVILLE-DAINVILLE Area were received. The Transport proceeded to new area under Brigade arrangements, leaving BEAUVOIS at 4.00 am and arriving in the new area at 2.00 pm.</p> <p>The Battalion moved from BEAUVOIS at 12.30 pm and proceeded to WAVRANS where it entrained for new area (see OO No 208 attached). At 6.30 pm the unit detrained at MARCEUIL and marched via DUISANS – AGNEE-LES-DUISANS and WARLUS to BERNEVILLE where hutments on the North Western outskirts of the village were occupied.</p>				
	24/8/18	<p>August 24<sup>th</sup> was fine. In the evening the Battalion proceeded to Forward Area relieved the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in TELEGRAPH HILL SWITCH (see Operation Order No 208A attached)</p>				
	25/8/18 to 28/8/18	<p><u>Reference Sheets</u></p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">51.b.N.W. and S.W.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1/40,000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CAMBRAI ROAD</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1/20,000</td> </tr> </table>	51.b.N.W. and S.W.	1/40,000	CAMBRAI ROAD	1/20,000
51.b.N.W. and S.W.	1/40,000					
CAMBRAI ROAD	1/20,000					

FRONT LINE

REPORT ON 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATIONS  
OF AUGUST 26 – 27 – 28

After moving from BERNEVILLE and relieving elements of the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the TELEGRAPH HILL SECTOR, on the night of August 24<sup>th</sup>/25<sup>th</sup>, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion spent the day of the 25<sup>th</sup> in completing arrangements and observing for the attack of the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Divisions, in conjunction with the advance of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Army, slated for early on the morning of the 26<sup>th</sup>.

In accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade OO 254 the Battalion assembled for the attack in TILLOY and HUN Trenches. Zero hour had been notified for 3.00 am. The Battalion was in position at 2.15 am and Brigade was notified at 2.30 am.

We advanced with the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on our left and the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, of the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, was on our right. The 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion advanced in support of our unit.

Our Southern boundary (Brigade Southern) was from N.8.a.0.0 to N.8.b.8.0, thence along ELGIN Trench, inclusive to 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, to N.9.c.6.5, thence to trench junction N.16.b.30. 25 to the COJEUL RIVER at N.24.a.2.S.

The inter-Battalion boundary (our Northern) was N.1.d.80.80 to N.10.b.50.20 along HOSE Trench to Junction of MALTA Trench at N.11.a.05.10, thence along MALTA to N.11.c.05.90, thence East along Sap to N.11.c.25.85 – N.12.c.60.00, thence east along GORDON AVENUE through second objective.

The objectives set for the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion were: First, MINORCA Trench in N.11.c and 16.b.: Second, SOUTHERN AVENUE in N.18.c and b. (North of COJEUL RIVER)

The personnel of the Battalion who participated in the operation was 23 Officers and 593 Other Ranks. The Officers were: Lt-Col HE Pense DSO, MC, Commanding: Capt L Frazer, acting Adjutant: Capt H Black, Medical Officer: Lieut RA Stewart, Intelligence Officer: Lieut W Currie MC, Scout Officer: Capt RJ Renison, Chaplain: Capt F McPhun and Lieut N Nicholson: "A" Company – Lieuts AW May MC, A Cockeram DSO, GA Phillips, GA Granger: "B" Company – Capt NJ MacCrimmon, Lieuts PH Wills, PG Hall, AM Scott: "C" Company – Lieuts HT Deane MC, DM Goudy, ST Crooks, GW Trollope MM: "D" Company – Lieuts VR Ullman C of St S, L Boswell MM, WH Mackney, FG Johnstone.

Commencing shortly after 8.00 o'clock on the evening of the 25<sup>th</sup> a light rain fell and continued at intervals during the early part of the night. But this did not interfere to any extent with the assembly of the Companies in their respective positions, and spirits were high when the sky cleared before 2.00 o'clock and a bright moon gave promise of sufficient light for the advance which was to commence at 3.00 am. It was necessary to cut lanes and clear away broken wire in front of our assembly positions. This was accomplished without attracting the enemy's attention. The artillery and machine gun barrage which opened promptly at the zero hour was followed up by our companies – "C" on the right, "D" in the centre, "B" on the left, with "A" Company in support. Each of the assaulting companies advanced with two platoons in the front line, with the third platoon in close support. The support company moved in artillery formation. No 5 Section, "B" Company, of the 9<sup>th</sup> Battalion Tank Corps, were ordered to co-operate with the Battalion in the operation. But, owing to the difficulty of the three tanks moving into advanced positions in the moonlight, they advanced in support of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Two Stokes guns, of the 4<sup>th</sup> Trench Mortar Battery, moved forward with our support Company.

The Battalion kept its direction well, guided chiefly by compass, and closely followed the barrage which was reported satisfactory. The enemy's artillery did not respond until 3.11 am. This afforded the Battalion time to get well clear of the assembly area and across "No Man's Land". Our Companies encountered little hostile resistance until NOVA SCOTIA TRENCH in M.10.a and c was reached. Here, some of the Germans, chiefly machine gunners, made a stand, but only a temporary one, for the advance of our men was not held up. The machine gun nests were dealt with by rifle grenades, and then rushed. Few of the enemy escaped. Our advance continued unbroken to MINORA Trench (1<sup>st</sup> Objective) and then on to the second and final objective (SOUTHERN AVENUE) which was occupied. At this point the enemy also attempted to make a stand, and a sharp fight ensued. On the left "B" Company vigorously dealt with twenty German gunners who operated three field guns after we had advanced into SOUTHERN AVENUE. These German artillerymen were killed by Lewis Gunners of "B" Company. The final objective having been captured, we re-organized and prepared for a possible hostile counter-attack.

The personnel of Battalion Headquarters, who had been located in VIEW Trench at N.1.c.60.35, advanced at zero plus 50 minutes, and established a new Headquarters in NOVA SCOTIA Trench. Our Report Centre was established at N.16.b.70.90. At 4.00 pm this was occupied as our Battalion Headquarters. Immediately after Battalion Headquarters had been established in NOVA SCOTIA Trench, Capt F McPhun, and Lieuts RA Stewart and W Currie moved forward to SOUTHERN AVENUE to obtain information and make a report upon the situation. Shortly after noon the CO visited the Companies in SOUTHERN AVENUE. From mid-day and during the afternoon and evening they were subjected to considerable hostile artillery fire, resulting in some casualties, among the wounded being Capt NJ MacCrimmon and Lieut Wills, Scott and Cockeram. During the day our casualties totaled – Officers, wounded 9; Other Ranks, killed 12, wounded 53, missing, 69. The Officers wounded during the actual advance were Lieuts AW May MC, VR Ullman, GW Trollope, FC Johnstone, WH Mackey and Capt H Black (at duty). During the night rations were delivered in rear of our front line. At 4.00 am on the morning of the 26<sup>th</sup> our ammunition echelon and pack section assembled, with similar details of the other Battalions of our Brigade, on the WAILLY-ACHICOURT Road, 400 yards South of the R in ACHICOURT. At about 7.00 am on zero day our rear details moved to ACHICOURT. During the afternoon GUEMAPPE was taken by the 16<sup>th</sup> Battalion.

AUGUST 27<sup>TH</sup>. On this day, in conjunction with the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division on the left, and the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the right, the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade attacked, with the 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion in support and the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion in reserve. The boundaries were: Right – Light railway from O.19.c.9.9 to O.27.b.8.2, thence to cross roads O.28.b.8.0 to road junction O.30.c.0.7, thence a line parallel to the CAMBRAI Road, 700 yards on south-west side: Left – CAMBRAI Road, exclusive. The operation was in accordance with 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Operation Order No 00. At 6.00 am the CO was called to Brigade Headquarters regarding this operation, and was given particulars and instructions by the Brigadier. A meeting of Company Commanders was held at Battalion Headquarters at 7.30 am, when the advance of the day was discussed, plans laid and orders issued. Zero hour had been set for 10.00 am, and at this hour our assaulting battalions advanced followed by the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> battalions. The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion moved in artillery formation on a line approximately 400 yards south-east of the CAMBRAI Road. During the advance we sustained casualties to the extent of Officers, wounded 3; Other Ranks, killed 14, wounded 64, missing 48. The three Officers were Lieut HC Cameron MC who replaced Lieut AW May in command of "A" Company and Lieuts PG Hall and L Boswell. After the casualties of the 26<sup>th</sup>, Capt F McPhun and Lieut HD Wightman came up to the line and assumed command of "B" and "D" Companies respectively. Lieut Boswell later died of wounds at No 7 CCS. Our losses in the companies and headquarters were due to the enemy's artillery and machine gun fire. The Battalion arrived at the QUARRIES in O.21.d., 15 minutes after the objective (RIVER SENSEE, south-east of VIS-EN-ARTOIS) was reached by the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Battalions. We remained there during the afternoon, and in the evening Battalion Headquarters was established at O.21.a.10.10. During the afternoon, the CO and Adjutant visited the Headquarters of the 18<sup>th</sup>, 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> Battalions regarding co-operation. One company, "C", was placed under the orders of the OC 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion. During the night 27<sup>th</sup>/28<sup>th</sup> we detailed parties to carry rations, water and ammunition to the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in the line. Upon their return, the three companies – "A", "B" and "D" – withdrew to the trenches in the vicinity of our Battalion Headquarters. During the night our men had little or no rest.

While during the operations of the 26<sup>th</sup> our aircraft proved their superiority to that of the enemy, German machines were very active on the 27<sup>th</sup>. They temporarily held up the advance of our men by machine gun fire and the use of light bombs.

AUGUST 28<sup>TH</sup> The advance continued on the third day, the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division, on our left, moved forward at 11.00 am and our Brigade, with the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on our right, commenced its attack supported by an artillery barrage at 12.30 pm. The disposition of the Brigade in this operation was: 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion attacking on the right, 20<sup>th</sup> Battalion attacking on the left, with the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion in right support and 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion in left support. The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion assembled with three companies in the front lines, -- "A", "B", "C" -- with "D" Company in support. But, owing to the numerical weakness of the Companies and the fatigued condition of the men after two successive days of fighting, combined with the lack of preparation by our artillery on the well constructed enemy's line running through O.29.b. and c. and O.30.a the advance was held up Northwest of OLIVE Trench. The enemy, having the observation, made a stout stand in this position, and we suffered many casualties from his artillery and machine gun fire. His strong point -- OCEAN WORK in O.29.b -- resisted successive attacks by our parties. Upwards of 120 men, under Lieut DM Goudy, assembled in OPERA Trenches in O.29.a and b. and in the sunken roads immediately northwest. Our line was enfiladed by machine gun fire from the BRICKWORKS and OX Trench in O.29.a. and c. The enemy's wire in front of OLIVE trench and OCEAN WORK was continuous. Our men were not equipped to deal with it, and their supply of bombs was soon exhausted. At 2.00 pm the CO and party moved forward, but could not advance further than the SENSEE RIVER, owing to hostile machine gun fire from the ridge. The Headquarters party remained in the valley while the CO and Intelligence Officer advanced up the Ridge where elements of our battalion and the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion, in support, were held up. After a reconnaissance, the CO returned with the Adjutant to the Headquarters of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, where he was acquainted by the Officers Commanding the 20<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> Battalions with a similar situation on the left. At this time he made a report, by telephone, to the Brigadier. The Battalion remained in this position during the afternoon and into the night, when we were relieved by the 8<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. This was in accordance with the relief of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division by the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division. During the afternoon and evening the enemy heavily shelled the SENSEE RIVER VALLEY. (HE and Gas) After the fights of the 26<sup>th</sup> and 27<sup>th</sup> and the severe casualties which were sustained on the 28<sup>th</sup>, only three Company Officers -- Lieuts Deane, Goudy and Crooks -- remained un wounded. On the 28<sup>th</sup> our Officer casualties were: Officers wounded, Capt F McPhun, Lieuts Granger, Currie, Wightman: Gassed, Lieut Phillips.

Numerous Trophies were captured by the Battalion. Those selected as souvenirs were: 3 -- 77 mm Field Guns, 6 Light Machine Guns and 2 Anti Tank Rifles.

Casualties for the three days were as follows:- OFFICERS -- wounded, Captain NJ MacCrimmon and F McPhun, Lieutenants GW Trollope MM, VR Ullman, AW May MC, A Cockeram DSO, FC Johnstone, AM Scott, PH Wills, PG Hall, HC Cameron MC, W Currie MC, MM, GA Phillips (gassed), GA Granger and HD Wightman.

Died of wounds, Lieutenant LC Boswell MM. OTHER RANKS – KILLED – 59348 A/CSM T Galbraith MM (original), 59053 Sergt DB Bell MM, (original), 59690 Sergt WH Murney MM (original), 59676 Sergt C Morris MM (original), 636084 Corpl FB Loveless, 636120 Sergt WA Glover, 455558 Corpl CR Kirkland MM, 59442 L/Cpl J Hawkins (original), 59307 L/Cpl JJ Entwistle (original), 1087029 L/Cpl JW Ferguson, 1042217 L/Cpl WH Logan, 850146 Pte T Atherton, 724303 Pte J Lewis, 59723 Pte JP McGuire (original), 3320197 Pte L Murphy, 636236 Pte CN Kelsh, 124673 Pte JF Wilson, 633372 Pte AJ McDonald, 3320017 Pte J Beaudin, 59656 Pte A Michaud (original), 141914 Pte J Gilson, 237949 Pte A Farquharson, 237444 Pte Hulme, 1090054 Pte JA Locey, 1093196 Pte L Moore, 633552 Pte N Blais, 2309353 Pte WJ Johnston, 639933 Pte NB LaPlante, 3056335 Pte W Weller, 675004 Pte WH Campbell, 2265517 Pte B Phillips (*Transcriber's Note: Pte B Phillips' actual name was Edgar Albert Mitchell, and he is honoured on the Vimy Memorial under that name*), 207052 Pte WM Locock, 3055522 Pte R Barton, 501254 Pte E Wright, 1067347 Pte GH Cousins, 636993 Pte D Fraser, 850871 Pte F Lacey, 455240 Pte AV Newby, 1090106 Pte AR MacDonald, 2255362 Pte ES Spearence, 1093048 Pte AR Fenwick, 675146 Pte M Lubbock.

Wounded, 248 Other Ranks

Missing, 41 Other Ranks

*Transcriber's Note: I have corrected several typing errors that occurred in the names and numbers in the above list.*

WANCOURT 29/8/18

At 5.00 pm in the afternoon of August 29<sup>th</sup> the battalion moved from bivouac area, West of WANCOURT to Southern ARRAS and occupied billets on Rue de BAUPORT, with Battalion Headquarters and Headquarters Sections in a Convent on Rue de PROMINADE.

On account of casualties which the battalion sustained on August 26<sup>th</sup>, 27<sup>th</sup> and 28<sup>th</sup> Lieutenant FG Robinson was appointed to temporarily command "B" Company.

REAR DETAILS 25/8/18  
to  
29/8/18

Rear Headquarters and details left out of the line were stationed at BERNEVILLE until the afternoon of August 26<sup>th</sup>, when they moved to ACHICOURT. At 5.00 pm August 29<sup>th</sup> the rear details, including a draft of fifty five other ranks which had arrived on August 27<sup>th</sup>, moved to ARRAS and rejoined the Battalion.

August 25<sup>th</sup>. On this date Lieutenants AE Gardiner, CT Hamley and WA Stewart, who had been wounded near MARCELCAVE on August 8<sup>th</sup>, were struck off strength of the battalion on being evacuated to England. The following other ranks proceeded to England to attend Canadian Training School, with a view to qualify for commissions:- 454495 Sergt JJ Barber MM, 469128 Sergt JD MacGillivray MM, 59802 Sergt PF Pirie MM, 59523 Sergt EG Jones, 788504 Corpl JC McLaren and 1263320 Pte AL Johnson MM. Lieutenant W Currie MC, MM, reported from hospital and proceeded forward to join the battalion on the night of August 25<sup>th</sup>/26<sup>th</sup>.

On August 27<sup>th</sup> Lieutenants FG Robinson and JA Grant reported to the Battalion as reinforcements and were posted to "B" and "A" Companies respectively. In the afternoon Lieutenant GD Woodcock reported from leave of absence, which he had been granted to England.

VAN QUENTIN 30/8/18  
and  
31/8/18

In the morning of August 30<sup>th</sup> Lieutenant WT Bredin proceeded to England on leave of absence and Lieutenant EB Smythe MC, reported back from leave of absence. At 1.15 pm the Battalion moved to VAN QUENTIN where it was located in hutments. Lieutenant AT Waters reported to the Battalion and was posted to "D" Company.

August 31<sup>st</sup> was devoted to re-organization and refitting. In the morning the following officers reported as reinforcements and were posted to "D", "A", "C" and "B" Companies respectively:- Lieutenants JH Northey, WF Ferrier MM, JH O'Keefe and IR McKenzie. The above officers, with Lieutenant Waters, were formerly NCO's in this Battalion.

Laudatory messages relative to the attack which the battalion carried out on August 8<sup>th</sup> are attached as Appendices "IA" and "JA".

#### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 196

SECRET

Ref: AMIENS 1/100,000

Copy No 14  
August 3<sup>rd</sup>, 1918

- 1
- 2 The Battalion will move to CAGNY by march route this evening. Hour to be notified later.  
  
Packs will not be worn. Packs for "A" and "B" Companies, Communication Section and Brass Band will be stored under the arrangements of OC "B" Company, SEUX. Packs of "C" and "D" Companies, Specialists, Pipe Band, Transport and QM Stores and Headquarters will
- 3 be stored at the Quartermaster Stores by 7.00 pm.
- 4 All Officers kits will be piled outside Quartermaster Stores by 7.00 pm.
- 5 Captain L Frazer will proceed ahead to arrange billets. A Motor Ambulance will call for this officer in a very short time.  
  
One Other Rank per Company will report to Brigade Headquarters, PISSY, as soon as
- 6 possible to proceed by lorry to join billeting Officer.
- 7 The Quartermaster will arrange to have tea served on the march  
  
All mess outfits, Orderly Room boxes will be packed in transport ready to proceed by 7.00
- 8 pm
- 9 The Battalion Transport will accompany the Battalion on the march
- 10 Billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition.  
  
All targets and surplus ammunition will be piled at QM Stores at once.

(sgd) FD RAYMOND  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 6.00 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	8	Communication Section
2	Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-16	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 197

Reference Sheet  
Amiens 1/100000

August 4<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve a Battalion of the 4<sup>th</sup> Australian Infantry Brigade in SUPPORT AREA, tonight August 4<sup>th</sup>/5<sup>th</sup> 1918
- 2 The Battalion will fall in on the AMIENS-CAGNY ROAD, facing SW at 9.45 pm
- 3 Order of March. Specialists, Communication Section. Headquarters, "A", "B", "C" & "D" Companies. Transport. Lewis Gun Limbers will follow companies.
- 4 Intervals 100 yards interval will be maintained between companies and Transport on the march. Platoon Commanders will march in the rear of their command.
- 5 Rations for tomorrow will be carried. The Transport will deliver tea and water. All water bottles will be filled before moving.
- 6 Company Stores ie Very Pistols, Rifle Grenade Cups etc, will be taken forward
- 7 Guides will meet Battalion at LE POINT BLANGY CABET
- 8 On arrival OCs Companies will ensure that all ranks remain under cover during daylight. Not a man is to be visible form an aeroplane. All roads are to be avoided.
- 9 Units will report arrival in position and will forward to Battalion Headquarters by 8.00 am 5<sup>th</sup> instant, a disposition sketch. The usual reports will be submitted.
- 10 Rear Details will report to Lieut JB Ellis at the Quartermasters Stores by 9.30 pm. The Quartermaster will arrange for the billeting and rationing of this party.
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 5.15 pm



Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 198

August 5<sup>th</sup>, 1918

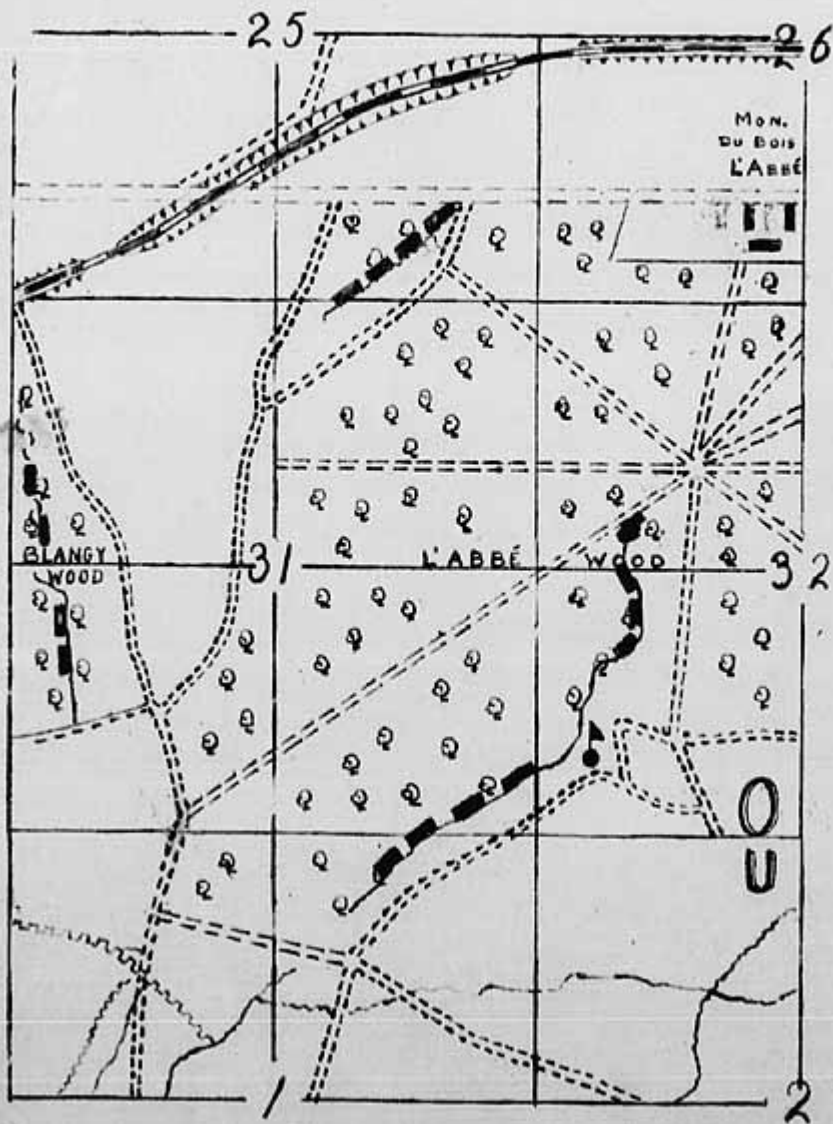
- 1           The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to positions explored today, tonight August 5<sup>th</sup>/6<sup>th</sup>. Officers who reconnoitered positions will guide respective companies
- 2           Order of March "B", "A", "C" and "B" Companies, Sections and Headquarters
- 3           "B" Company will move at 9.30 pm. Other units will follow at 10 minutes interval
- 4           Officers Commanding Units will ensure that all Water Bottles are filled and that all petrol tins in their possession are taken forward filled.
- 5           The strictest supervision must be maintained by Officers and NCOs to keep all ranks from being seen during the day.
- 6           There will be no smoking or lights shown during the move as we are under observation.
- 7           Units will report their arrival in position to Battalion Headquarters as soon as possible after arrival
- 8           Bicycles will be left in charge of two men from communication section until they can be taken forward
- 9           SOS on our front is GREEN over GREEN over GREEN
- 10          ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
 Captain & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 4.39 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

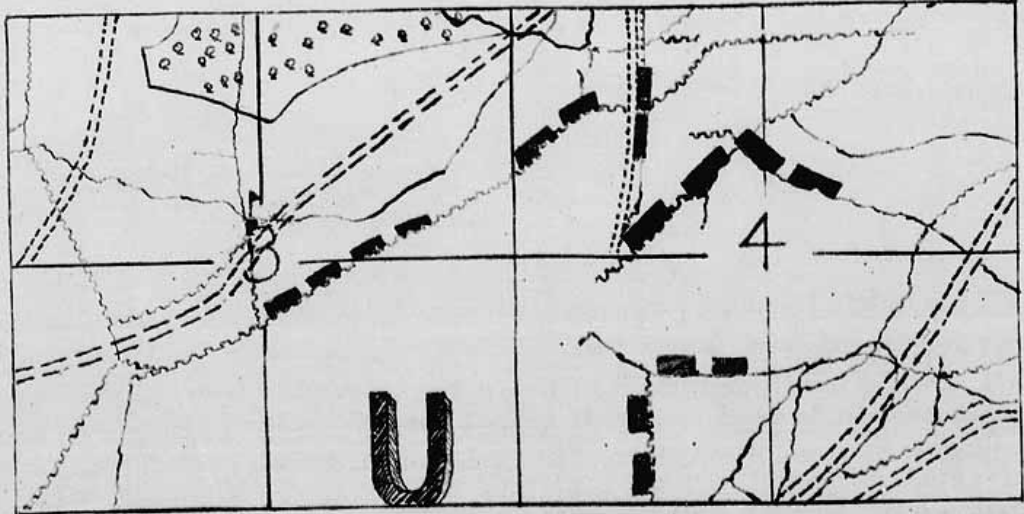
Disposition App- 'BN'  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian B'n  
 5.8.18



- A Coy
- B "
- C "
- D "
- B'n H. Q.

Scale 1:10,000. Ref Sheet 62<sup>nd</sup> SW

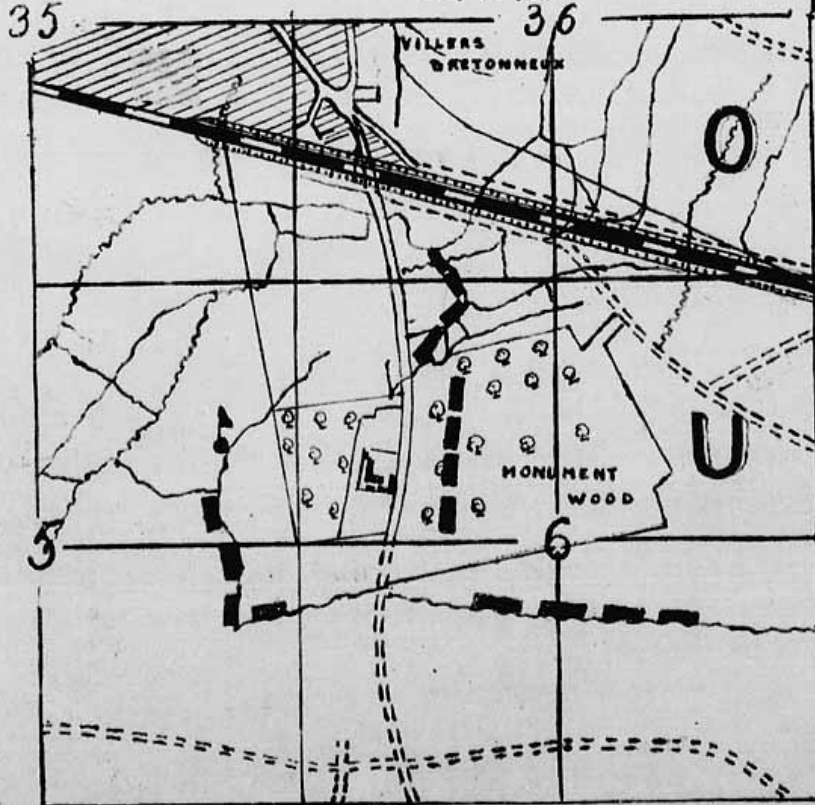
*Disposition*  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn  
6.8.18 - 7.8.18.



Scale 1:10,000. Ref Sheet DEMUIN 1:20,000  
A Coy ■ B Coy ■ C Coy ■ D Coy ■ Bn. H. Q. ♪

*Disposition*  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn

8. 8. 18.



Scale 1:10000 Ref Sheet DEMUIN 1:20.000

A Coy ■ B Coy ■ C Coy ■ D Coy ■ Bn HQ ♪

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 199

Ref Maps  
 Demuin Edition 1  
 & attached sketches

- 1 a The Canadian Corps, in conjunction with the troops on the Right and Left is attacking the enemy's position between AMIENS-ROYE ROAD and the VILLERS-BRETONNEUX CHAULNES Railway (both inclusive) at an hour and date to be notified later.
- The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division will attack as the Left Division of the Corps.  
 The 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division will attack as the Right Division of the Corps  
 The 7<sup>th</sup> Australian Infantry Brigade are attacking on the Left of the Canadian Corps.  
 The 3<sup>rd</sup> Cavalry Division and probably another Cavalry Division will be advancing behind the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division.
- b The information available shows that the enemy is at present holding his position lightly, with his nearest Reserves round BAYONVILLERS and HARBONNIERS, if these dispositions are not changed, the enemy will probably counter-attack on our Left Front. Enemy Pioneers are said to be round WIENCOURT and there is an alert position for Reserves in the re-entrant SW of that village.

2 INTENTION

The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, with two Companies 14<sup>th</sup> Tank Battalion, 1 Mobile Brigade CDA and two Batteries 2<sup>nd</sup> Battalion Canadian Machine Gun Company will attack to the GEREN LINE, and will hold that Line.

3 FRONTAGE AND METHOD OF ATTACK

The Frontage allotted to the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, is from the Railway (Inclusive) V.1.a.60.40 to U.5.c.10.40, objectives divided as follows:

- 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion V.15.b.8.4 to V.22.b.5.8
- 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion V.11.b.8.4 to V.10.d.8.5
- 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion V.10.d.8.5 to V.16.b.8.4
- 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in area about Western edge of MARCELCAVE

At Zero hour the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will move forward from the jumping off position. The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion following closely behind the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, and at V.8.a.65.50 the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will close to the left. The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will then RIGHT FLANK in touch with 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will capture CAVE COPSE and move on and capture the village of MARCELCAVE being responsible for the village South of V.10.a.40.15, to objective. The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be responsible for the Northern part of the village. Jumping off positions will be notified later.

The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will attack on a three Company front in depth, with one Platoon of each Company in Front Line.

"D" Company on RIGHT  
 "B" Company in CENTRE  
 "A" Company on LEFT  
 "C" Company in SUPPORT

4 TANKS

- a Four Tanks have been allotted to the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion and will meet the Battalion on arrival at MARCELCAVE

- b RESERVE AMMUNITION AND LEWIS GUN MAGAZINES  
Each Tank will carry one box SAA and 25 Lewis Gun Magazines, which will be handed over when objective has been gained.
- 5 CARRYING PARTY  
20 men from the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will report to the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion as a Carrying Party and will go forward with the Support Company ("C" Company)
- 6 ARTILLERY  
Artillery will be supplied on lines in accordance with Barrage Map attached.
- 7 MACHINE GUNS  
A Machine Gun Barrage will be laid down on selected points. Elements of the Machine Gun Battalion will follow the advance of attacking Battalion, and when objective is gained, will be used for protection of Infantry when consolidating.
- 8 TRENCH MORTARS  
Two Stokes Guns will operate with the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 9 SIGNALS AND INTER-COMMUNICATION  
Visual Signalling and Contact Aeroplane  
The following Light Signals will be employed
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | No 23 Grenade. RED over RED over RED             |
|   | a SOS  |
|   | b We are held up and cannot advance without help |
|   | c Enemy is Counter-attacking                     |
| 2 | GREEN over GREEN over GREEN                      |
|   | a Lift your fire we are going to advance         |
|   | b Step Firing                                    |
| 3 | 3 White Very Lights in quick succession          |
|   | We are Here                                      |
- 10 CONSOLIDATION  
Immediately objective is gained Units will re-organize, organization of defence will be arranged in depth. Dispositions will be reported to Battalion Headquarters, as soon as possible.
- WORK  
Work must be commenced immediately objective is gained and will be continuous and vigorous until a permanent line is constructed.
- 11 ZERO HOUR and SYNCHRONIZATION of WATCHES
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a | Zero Hour will be communicated on the afternoon of "Y" DAY                                      |
| b | Watches will be synchronized in the afternoon and evening of "Y" DAY. Time to be notified later |
- 12 ANTI-AIRCRAFT  
Every effort must be made to deal with low flying Enemy Aircraft during the attack. Anti-aircraft Lewis Guns must be mounted at every stage of the advance
- 13 PRISONERS  
Prisoners must be sent back quickly for detailed examination

- 14 TRANSPORT  
The Transport of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade and "B" Echelons and attached troops will be grouped, and move forward under Division arrangements.
- 15 ANTI-GAS  
No troops will be allowed to enter BLANGY L'ABBE or AQUENNE WOODS until eight hours after ZERO
- 16 SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS  
The word "Retire" will not be used by any Officer or Other Rank of our Forces. This word is often shouted by the Enemy to retire or deceive our men.
- 17 Battalion Headquarters and Report Centre will be notified later
- |    |                     |                 |            |
|----|---------------------|-----------------|------------|
| 18 | Regimental Aid Post | Walking Wounded | O.34.c.2.8 |
|    | Regimental Aid Post | Stretcher Cases | O.35.c.1.5 |
|    |                     |                 | U.4.a.4.6  |
|    | Relay Post          |                 | O.35.c.5.4 |
- 19 ACKNOWLEDGE

Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

Copy No 15

FINAL INSTRUCTIONS

Re

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 199

- 1 The leading wave of tanks will leave their starting point, 1000 yards from German Front Line, at twelve minutes before zero and will time their advance so as to cross the Infantry Jumping Off Line at Zero
- 2 Aircraft Infantry Contact Patrols will be flying from Zero plus 3 hours to Zero plus 3 ½ hours
- 3 Artillery All guns and Howitzers will lift at Zero plus 123 minutes form MARCELCAVE to tasks allotted to them.
- 4 The assault of MARCELCAVE will take place at Zero plus 123 minutes in conjunction of Tanks. The Tanks will not enter the town from the NORTH as advised yesterday, but they will go forward form your position at Zero plus 123 minutes.
- 5 Light Signal The following light signal will be employed by the Australian Corps on our left. SOS No 32 GREEN over GREEN over GREEN The attention of all ranks will be directed to the difference between the meaning of GREEN over GREEN over GREEN used by the Australian Corps on our left and the Canadian Corps

6 The Battalion will move into Jumping Off Positions reconnoitered today at times as under

“D” Company at 11.30 pm  
“B” Company at 12.00 Midnight  
“A” Company at 12.30 am  
“C” Company at 1.00 am  
Headquarters Sections at 12.00 Midnight

Companies and Sections must be in position by 3.20 am and Battalion Headquarters notified by that time. Battalion Headquarters (Jumping Off Position) will be located at U.5.B.60.30. Battalion Headquarters at Zero plus 123 minutes will move to CAVE COPSE and remain there until objective has been gained.

7 Absolute silence must be maintained on move to Jumping Off Position and all ranks warned to keep down when flares go up. No smoking will be allowed.

8 Company Commanders must send as much information as possible as early as possible to Battalion Headquarters giving location of Company Headquarters, disposition etc.

9 Zero hour will be at 4.20 am

10 Company Commanders will ensure that these instructions are made known to all concerned

11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 3.00 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	9	Specialists Section
2	Commanding Officer	10	Communication Section
3	18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	11	Medical Officer
4	19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	12	Transport Officer
5	“A” Company	13	Quartermaster
6	“B” Company	14	RSM
7	“C” Company	15	File
8	“D” Company	16-19	War Diary

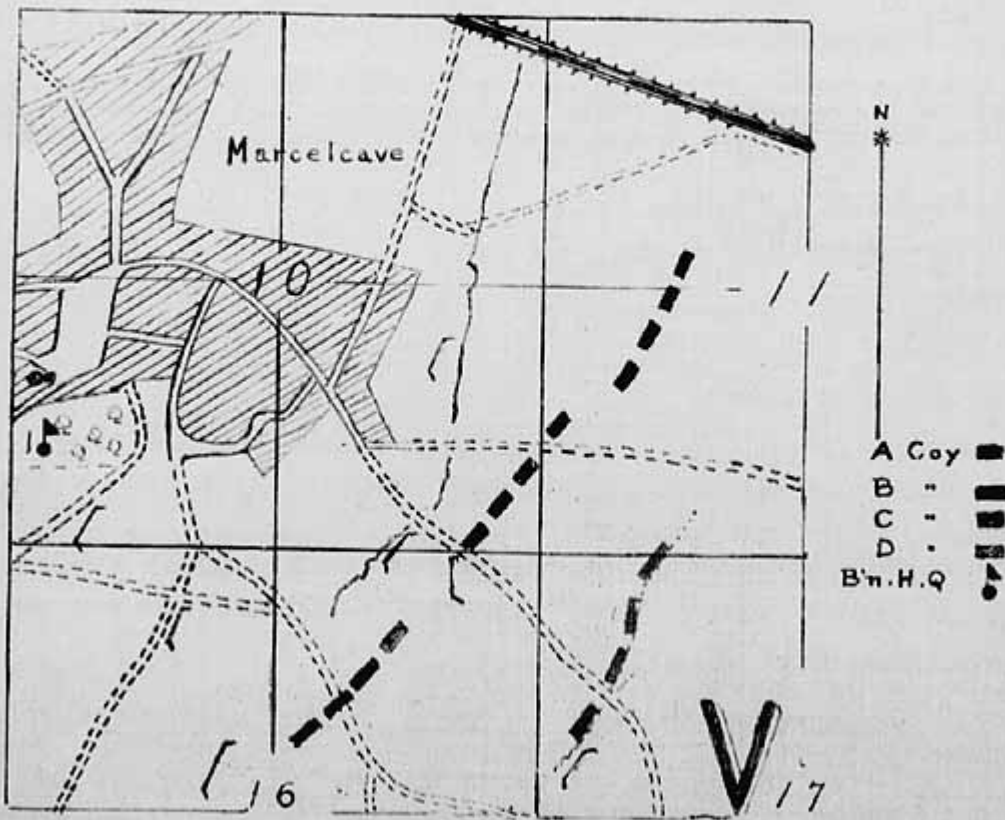


App - "G"

*Disposition.*

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian B'n.

8. 8. 18.



Scale 1:10,000 Ref Sheet DEMUIN

The following telegram has been received by the Canadian Corps Commander, from Sir Edward Kemp.

"My heartiest congratulations to yourself, the Corps, and other attached Canadian Units, including Cavalry and Motor Machine Gun Brigades, on the greatest success in the history of the Canadian Forces."

The Corps Commander has sent the following reply:

"On behalf of all ranks of the Corps, I thank you for your telegram of congratulation. Our men are irresistible and the team work is splendid."

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 200

Aug 9<sup>th</sup> 1918

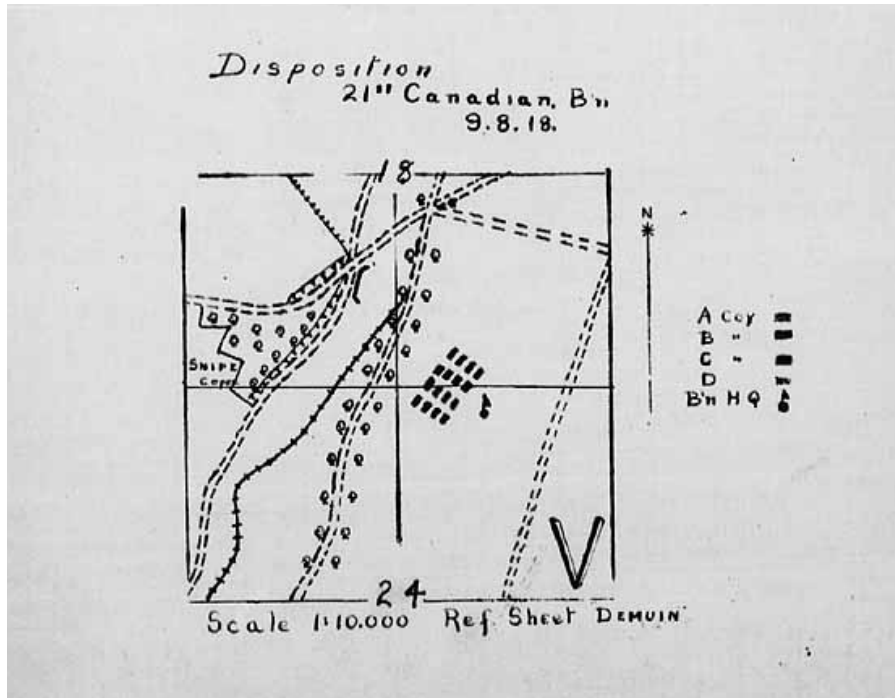
Reference Sheet.  
Demuin 1/20000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to area in V.18.b&d at 10.00 am this date
- 2 Order of March, Specialists, Communication, Headquarters, "A", "B", "C", and "D" Companies
- 3 Officers Commanding Companies will ensure that all water bottles are filled before leaving present area
- 4 Unit Commanders will report to Battalion Headquarters as soon as possible after arrival in new area
- 5 "A" Echelon, Regimental Transport, and Cookers, will accompany Battalion.
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 8.30 am

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary



SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 201

Reference Sheet

August 10<sup>th</sup>, 1918

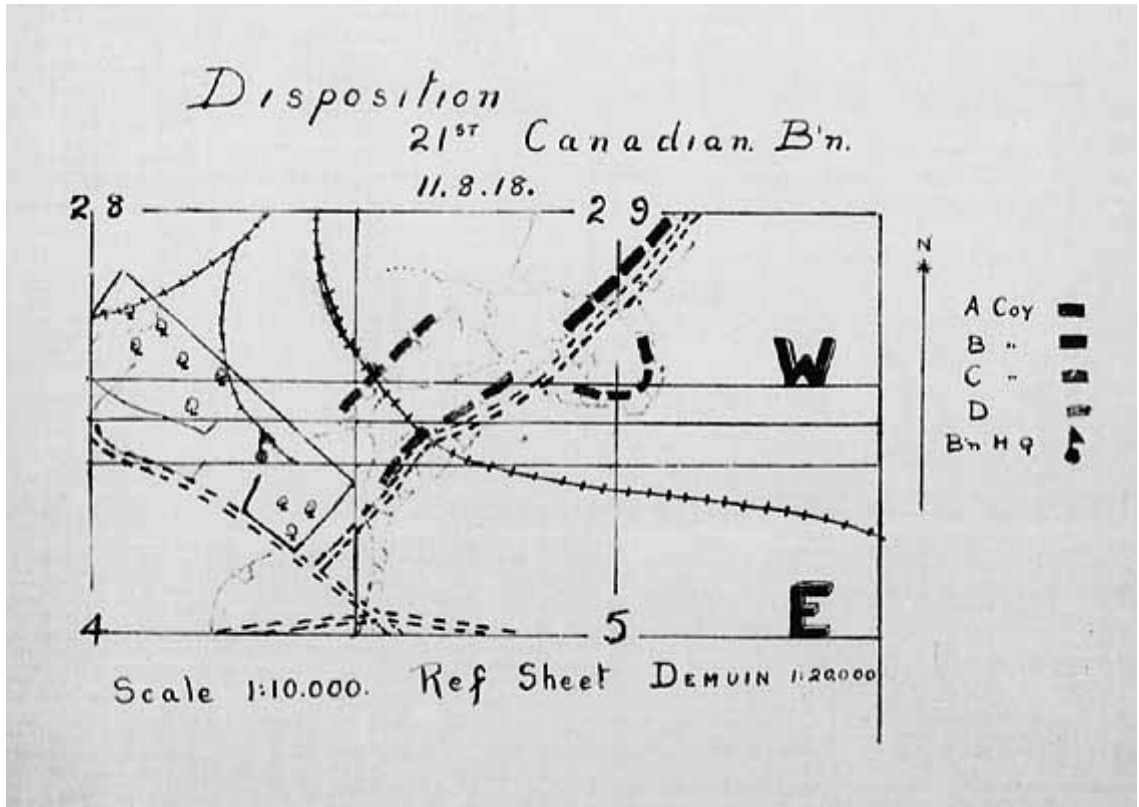
Demuin 1/20000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to CAIX WOOD and take up position in OLD AMIENS DEFENSE LINE, at 4.00 pm this date.
- 2 Order of March. Specialists, Communication Section, Headquarters, "A", "B", "C", and "D" Companies
- 3 Officers Commanding Units will ensure that all water bottles are filled before proceeding to new area
- 4 Officers Commanding Units will report arrival in new positions to Battalion Headquarters. Disposition Sketch will be forwarded as soon as possible.
- 5 "A" Echelon, Regimental Transport, plus Cookers, will accompany Battalion
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
 Captain & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 2.10 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary



SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 202

Reference Sheet  
Roiseres 1/40000

August 11<sup>th</sup> 1918

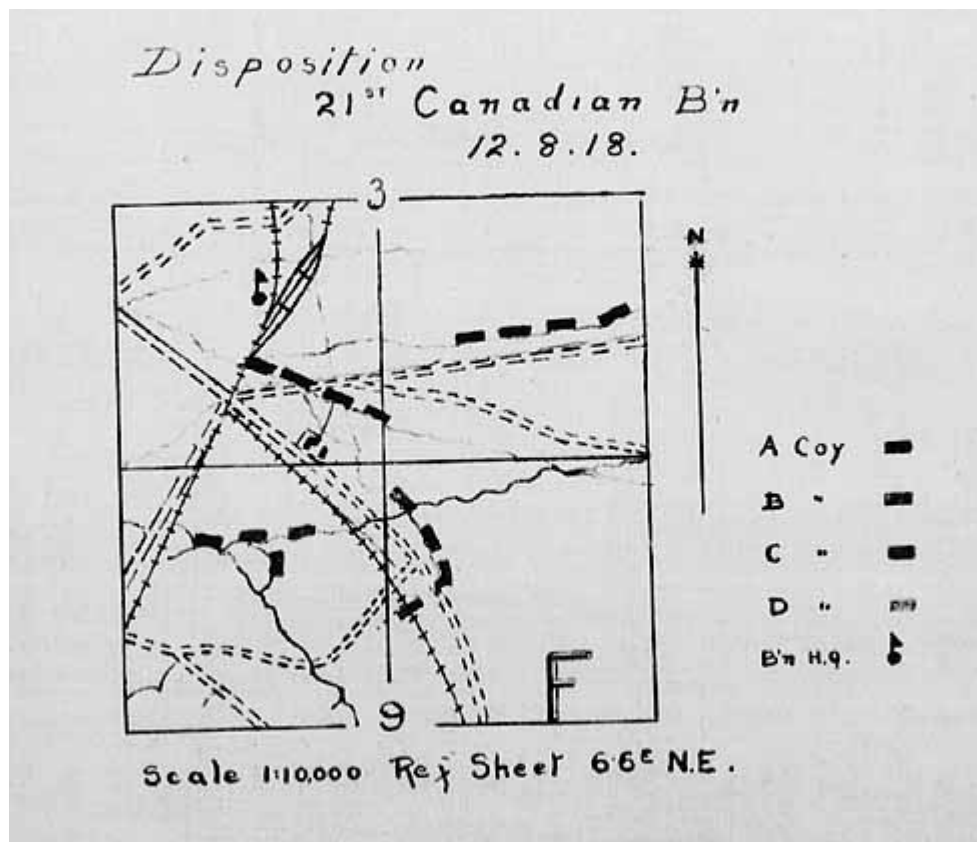
- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to ROISERES AREA at 9.30 pm tonight and relieve the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in AMIENS DEFENSE LINE
- 2 Order of March. Specialists, Communication, Headquarters, A, B, C, D, Companies, Lewis Gun Limbers will follow Companies.

- 3 100 yards interval will be maintained between companies. Platoon Commanders will march in the rear of their command
- 4 Rations for to-morrow will be carried. The Transport will deliver tea and water. All water bottles will be filled before moving off.
- 5 The Intelligence Officer will arrange to have guides posted along route.
- 6 Units will report arrival in position and will forward to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am, August 12 disposition sketch, the usual returns will be submitted.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
 Captain & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 5.40 pm

- |           |   |       |                       |
|-----------|---|-------|-----------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 8     | Communication Section |
| 2         | Commanding Officer                        | 9     | Medical Officer       |
| 3         | "A" Company                               | 10    | Transport Officer     |
| 4         | "B" Company                               | 11    | Quartermaster         |
| 5         | "C" Company                               | 12    | RSM                   |
| 6         | "D" Company                               | 13    | File                  |
| 7         | Specialists                               | 14-17 | War Diary             |



SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 203

Reference Sheet  
Roiseres 1/40000

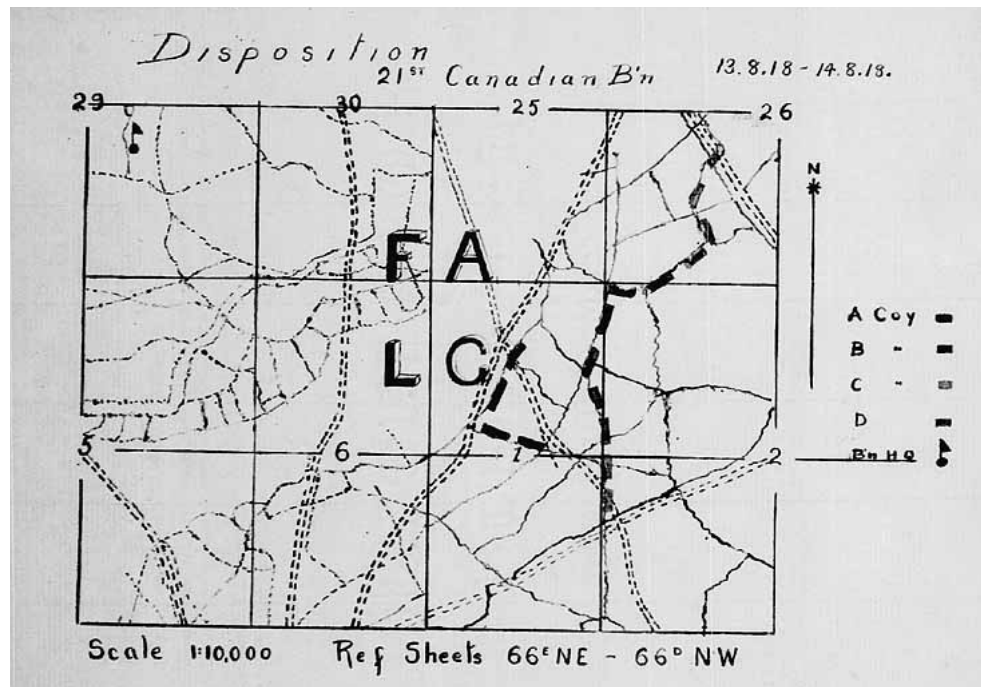
August 12<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to Forward Area, and relieve 45<sup>th</sup> and 76<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in G.1.b and A.26.b & c, tonight August 12<sup>th</sup>/13<sup>th</sup>.
- 2 Dispositions and time of starting will be notified later
- 3 Lewis Guns, Ammunition and Stores will be carried
- 4 Officers Commanding Units will ensure that every man is in possession of extra Bandolier and two Bombs. Cooked rations for to-morrow and hot tea for tonight, will be at Battalion Headquarters at 9.00 pm. Units will arrange to draw same.
- 5 All Water Tins will be taken forward filled
- 6 Units will report completion of relief to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word "ROSE" and time. Disposition sketch will be submitted as soon as possible.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 6.10 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary



COPY OF PATROL REPORTS OF AUGUST 14<sup>TH</sup> 1918

- No 1  
("A" Coy) Patrol A Patrol of nine Other Ranks and one Lewis Gun under Lieutenant JR Smith MC, "A" Company, left our line at G.2.a.0.0 and proceeded South East via DANTZIA ALLEY. The party proceeded about seven hundred yards but were unable to get in touch with the enemy. No signs of recent occupation were found. Bombing was heard to the right rear.
- No 2  
("B" Coy) Patrol A Patrol of nine men and one Lewis Gun, under Lieut ES Webb, left our lines at G.1.b.95.55 and proceeded east along TILLEY ALLEY to G.2.b.15.10. No enemy opposition was encountered. Excreta and other signs of recent occupation were found.
- No 3  
("C" Coy) Patrol A Patrol of Lieut DM Goudy, nine Other Ranks and one Lewis Gun left our lines at G.2.c.0.9 and proceeded along trench beside road leading to FRANSART. About 150 yards up this trench a block was encountered and stick bombs were thrown at the party. Sniping from both right and left at the same time, forced the patrol to retire. Machine Guns were also heard in action on each flank.
- No 4  
("D" Coy) Patrol Lieut Caldwell, nine Other Ranks of "D" Company and one Lewis Gun left our lines at A.26.c.85.50 and proceeded South East out TREECKON TRENCH. On account of being late in starting the patrol was only able to reach the block at A.26.d.25.25. At this point the party was fired on, by snipers, from a distance of about one thousand yards and four salvos of light shells followed immediately.

(sgd) HC Cameron, Lieutenant  
Commanding "A" Company  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

7.15 pm  
August 14<sup>th</sup> 1918

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 204

Reference Sheet  
Roiseres 1/40000

August 14<sup>th</sup> 1918

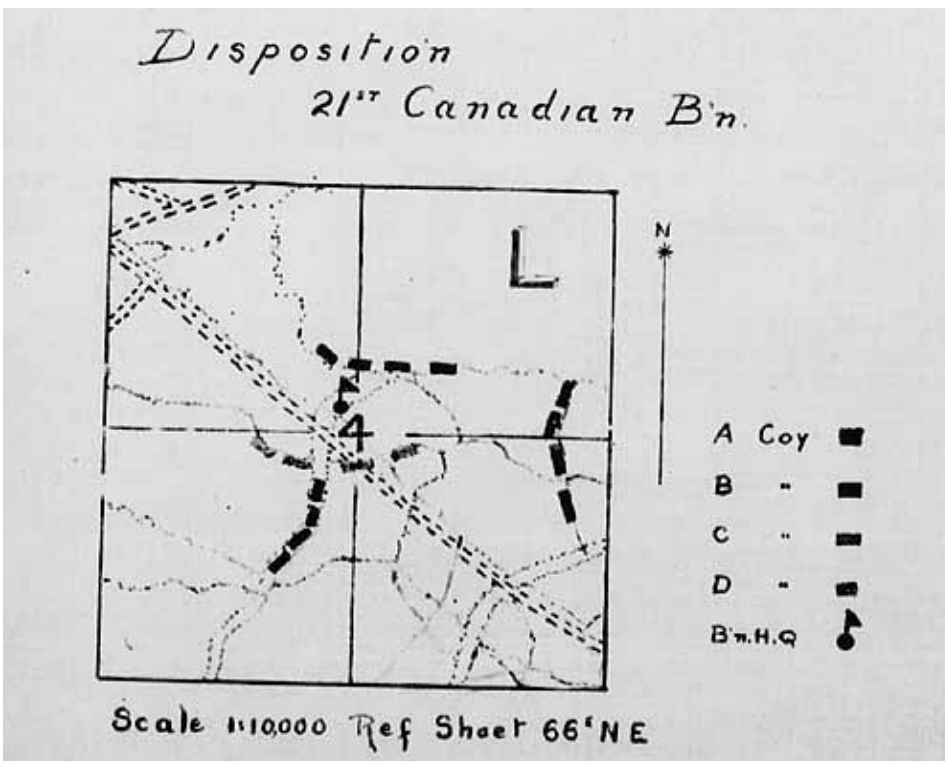
- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved tonight, August 14<sup>th</sup>/15<sup>th</sup>, in Front Line, by the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Relief will be made as under:
  - "D" Coy, 25<sup>th</sup> will relieve "B" & "C" Coys, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn
  - "C" Coy 25<sup>th</sup> will relieve "D" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn.
  - On Completion of relief of Front Line Companies, "A" Coy, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion (SUPPORT) will withdraw without relief.
- 3 The Intelligence Officer will arrange to guide the incoming unit to the Battalion Report Centre in A.26.c.0.0. Companies will arrange to guide units from Report Centre to their units.
- 4 Companies Runners, with the exception of "C" Company will arrange to guide their companies back to Battalion Report Centre, where they will be met by Battalion Scouts who will line the route to new location. "C" Company will be picked up enroute.

- 5 Company Commanders will ensure that every man is in possession of extra bandolier and two bombs before leaving. Shortages may be made up from reserves in the line.
- 6 Trench Stores will be taken over and receipt in duplicate taken and forwarded to Battalion Headquarters together with Disposition Sketch by 6.00 am, August 15<sup>th</sup> 1918
- 7 All Water Cans, Flare Pistols, R.G. Cups, and Rifle Grenade Rockets other than them taken over MUST be taken to new location.
- 8 An officer from each company is at present arranging new disposition
- 9 Completion of relief will be wired to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word "TULIP" and time.
- 10 Arrival in new position will be reported to Battalion Headquarters using Code Word, "PANSY" and time.
- 11 New Battalion Headquarters will be located at L.4.d.50.20
- 12 Password for night of August 14<sup>th</sup>/15<sup>th</sup> "CORNWALL"
- 13 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond  
 Captain & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 8.20 pm

- |           |   |       |                       |
|-----------|---|-------|-----------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 8     | Communication Section |
| 2         | Commanding Officer                        | 9     | Medical Officer       |
| 3         | "A" Company                               | 10    | Transport Officer     |
| 4         | "B" Company                               | 11    | Quartermaster         |
| 5         | "C" Company                               | 12    | RSM                   |
| 6         | "D" Company                               | 13    | File                  |
| 7         | Specialists                               | 14-17 | War Diary             |





21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

August 15<sup>th</sup> 1918

REPPORT ON GAS BOMBARDMENT ON MORNING OF AUGUST 15<sup>TH</sup> 1918

About 3.50 am, 15.8.18, after a short HE Bombardment mixed with Blue Cross Gas, the area in squares L.10 and 11 was subjected to a bombardment of approximately five hundred rounds of Yellow Cross Gas, mixed with HE.

The Battalion was proceeding to area L.10.b – L.10.d – L.16.b – L.11.a and L.11.c, having been relieved in the FRONT LINE. "D" Company had just passed through FOUQUESCOURT from TRENCH in L.12.a.00.03 by Cross Road (L.12.a.10.20) west to above area. "C" Company and "B" Company had already cleared the Village. "A" Company had commenced to move through the village when the bombardment started. Men were being hurried through on account of Heavy HE Shelling of the CROSS ROADS. Small Box Respirators were adjusted as soon as Gas Shells were detected, officers personally seeing that this was done and that they were kept on. Officer casualties were chiefly due to keeping on the SBRs of NCOs and men, while hurrying through shelled area. This also applies to the Commander of "D" Company, the rear platoons of which were caught while moving by GAS bombardment.

When Battalion moved into new area, as in Para 2, enemy gas shelling extended to that area which was evacuated. Brigade Headquarters were notified of this about 5.00 am.

Orders were issued that none of the personnel affected should be subjected to any exertion. About 10.00 am more serious effects of gas was evident, and first cases reported to the Medical Officer. As the day passed the effects of gas became more pronounced, especially on the eyes.

From the front line through G.1.d and L.6.c. gas was detected and SBRs adjusted but no casualties resulted.

Casualties evacuated to Field Ambulance were as follows,

Officers	4
Other Ranks	21

(sgd) HE Pense  
Major  
Commanding, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

15.8.18

19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  
August 18<sup>th</sup>, 1918

Officer Commanding  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

May I express to you my deep appreciation of the valuable services rendered my Battalion by you on the 16<sup>th</sup> instant in the operation which resulted in the Capture of FRANSART.

The assistance rendered me by your evacuation and carrying parties were of the greatest value, and all work was done with the best of spirit and co-operation.

(sgd) LH Miller

Lieut-Colonel  
Commanding, 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 205

Reference Sheet  
66 ENE 1/20,000

August 15<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1           The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will vacate the lines they are holding tonight on receiving word from these Headquarters that the 44<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion are in position chosen to constitute relief in reserve of 10<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade  
  
              Battalion Headquarters will be relieved by the Battalion Headquarters of the 46<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 2           On receiving orders to move Companies and Sections will move to positions formerly occupied near CAIX, with Battalion Headquarters at E.4.b.7.7. and take over from 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Companies and Sections will relieve corresponding Units.
- 3           When in new positions units will be ready to move as follows:  
  
                                  From Dawn to 7.00 am - at 2 hours notice  
                                  Remainder of day         - at 4 hours notice
- 4           The Battalion will be responsible for work on the old AMIENS DEFENSE SYSTEM. The fullest possible use will be made of existing trenches and wire.
- 5           Guides will meet Companies and Sections at CROSS ROADS at E.5.c.9.2.
- 6           Lewis Guns and Ammunition will be loaded on Limbers at Batt'n Dump. Four Other Ranks per Company will be sent to Battalion Headquarters at 8.00 pm to locate Dump, to enable them to guide the company there when outgoing.
- 7           Extra Bandolier and two Bombs, as issued, will be carried out.
- 8           The Intelligence Officer will arrange to picquet route

- 9 One Officer and 2 NCOs per Company and 1 Officer and 2 NCOs for Headquarters will proceed ahead and take over at new area.
- 10 "A" Echelon and Field Kitchens will move, including all personnel with and attached to it and take over lines at present occupied by 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 11 The Quartermaster will arrange to have Hot Tea ready for the arrival of the Battalion at 2.00 am, also rum ready for issue.
- 12 The Transport Officer will arrange to have three GS Limbers at Battalion Dump at 12.00 midnight
- 13 Notification of vacating line will be sent to Battalion Headquarters, using Code Word "WEST" and time.
- 14 Notification of arrival in new positions will also be sent to Battalion Headquarters and a disposition sketch forwarded as soon as possible.
- 15 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank, Major  
for Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 7.00 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 206

Ref Sheet  
ROISERES, 1/40000

August 16th 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move today and occupy positions in Wood NE of GUILLAUCOURT. Companies and Sections will move independently in the following order and time:
- |                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| "A" Company             | 6.35 pm |
| "B" Company             | 6.40 pm |
| "C" Company             | 6.45 pm |
| "D" Company             | 6.50 pm |
| Sections & Headquarters | 7.00 pm |
- 2 Officer Commanding "B" Echelon will arrange to move with all personnel to join Battalion in new location at 7.00 pm
- 3 Sergt Golding will supervise packing of Lewis Guns

- 4 Advance Parties of Companies and Sections will meet respective Units and guide them to their billets.

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank  
Major  
For Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 4.00 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	OC "B" Echelon
5	"C" Company	12	Quartermaster
6	"D" Company	13	RSM
7	Specialists	14	File
		15-18	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 207

Reference Sheet  
AMIENS 1/100000

August 19<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division will move into GHQ Reserve in an area to be notified later.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move on the night of August 19<sup>th</sup>/20<sup>th</sup>, and will entrain at BOVES on August 20<sup>th</sup>
- 3 TRANSPORT. "A" Echelon, Regimental Transport, plus Field Kitchens, will accompany unit. "B" Echelon will move under Brigade arrangements, leaving GUILLAUCOURT on the night of 19<sup>th</sup>/20<sup>th</sup> August
- 4 The strictest secrecy will be observed as to the movement of the Corps. All moves except movements by Train will be made under cover of darkness.
- 5 Unit Commanders will report arrival in new Area to Battalion Headquarters, location of which will be notified later.
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank  
Major  
For Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 6.30 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

August 19<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The Battalion will move at 9.30 pm. Units will "Fall in" on ground near present Transport Lines at 9.20 pm. Dress: - Battle Order.
- 2 ROUTE: - WEINCOURT L'EQUIPEE – SOUTH of MARCELCAVE – SOUTH of CACHY – CACHY BOVES ROAD to BOVES.
- 3 Interval of 100 yards will be observed between Companies and Transport
- 4 The Intelligence Officer will proceed ahead and picquet Route.

(sgd) GS Bowerbank  
Major  
For Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 207A

Reference Sheet  
AMIENS 1/100000

August 20<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will entrain at BOVES Station for WAVRANS at 12.15 pm, August 20<sup>th</sup>, 1918
- 2 The Battalion will "fall in" at 11.45 am.  
Dress: - Marching Order
- 3 "A" Echelon, Transport and Cookers will entrain at BOVES Station at 12.00 Midnight, August 20<sup>th</sup>.
- 4 Captain JG Wiggins will be in chare of train picquet and will supervise entraining at BOVES Station.
- 5 Major CG McLaughlin will proceed ahead on train leaving BOVES for WAVRANS at 11.00 am and will arrange for billeting of the Battalion in new area.
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank  
Major  
For Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 11.15 am

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 208

Reference Sheet  
LENS 1/100000

August 23<sup>rd</sup> 1918

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will move today from present Area to BERNEVILLE-DAINVILLE Area.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to WAVRANS and entrain for new area. Battalion will "fall in" at 12.30 pm.
- 3 TRANSPORT. Transport will move under Brigade arrangements leaving present location at 4.00 am August 23<sup>rd</sup>.
- 4 Billeting Party will meet Battalion at detraining point and will guide respective units to billets in new area.
- 5 Unit Commanders will report arrival in new area to Battalion Headquarters, location of which will be notified later.
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank  
Major  
For Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 2.30 am

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 208A

Reference Sheet  
51.B. NW & SW

24<sup>th</sup> August 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve elements of the 29<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, in the Front Line, TELEGRAPH HILL SECTOR, on the night of August 24<sup>th</sup>/25<sup>th</sup>. The portion of the line to be taken over is from N.7.b.50.05 to N.1.d.40.65
- 2 The Battalion will be disposed as follows:  
"C" Coy (RIGHT), "D" Coy (CENTRE), "B" Coy (LEFT), "A" Coy in SUPPORT. Each Front Line Company will have two platoons in Front Line and one Platoon in Close Support. Battalion Headquarters will be situated at N.1.c.60.35.

3 Captain L Frazer will proceed ahead with the Advance Party as per our A.265 of this date, and will make the necessary arrangements. He will arrange for guides at the rate of 1 per Platoon, 1 per Company Headquarters and 3 for Battalion Headquarters to meet Battalion at CROSS ROADS M.2.b.30.85 at 8.30 pm

4 (a) The Battalion will parade on the parade ground at 6.00 pm this date, August 24<sup>th</sup>, 1918. Markers will report to the RSM at 5.50 pm. Dress: Fighting Order. Tomorrow's rations will be carried.

(b) Lewis Guns will be packed in Company Limbers by 5.00 pm. Limbers will follow respective Companies, also Maltese Cart with Stretchers. Lewis Guns and stretchers will be unloaded at a point enroute, to be notified later.

(c) All packs of personnel proceeding forward will be piled at QM Stores by 4.30 pm

5 ROUTE. ROUTE: - BERNEVILLE – DAINVILLE – ACHICOURT.

6 PERSONNEL Major GSS Bowerbank MC, will remain in charge of Rear Details who will remain with Transport and QM Stores, at BERNEVILLE.

7 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word "JEAN" (and time)

8 Disposition Sketches will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 7.00 am August 25<sup>th</sup>.

9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank  
Major  
For Captain & Adjutant

Issued at 4.00 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 209

Reference Maps  
51.B SW 1/20000

25<sup>th</sup> August 1918

1 In conjunction with the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division, on its left, the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division is attacking the enemy's positions on a day and at an hour to be notified later. The 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade is attacking on the right of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade with the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division on the left of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

2 From information the enemy is holding his front line lightly with one Company in support in SHAMROCK TRENCH, one Company in support in the Area of RANGOON TRENCH, one company in NOVA SCOTIA TRENCH, and one support Battalion in SOUTHERN AVENUE. Enemy disposition Maps have been issued to all concerned.

3            BOUNDARIES

Brigade Boundaries are as follows:

SOUTHERN – From N.8.a.0.0. to N.8.b.8.0., thence along ELGIN TRENCH (exclusive) to N.9.c.6.5., thence to Trench Junction N.16.b.30.25. to the COJEUL RIVER at N.24.a.2.8.

NORTHERN – CAMBRAI ROAD (exclusive) to N.4.a.7.4, thence along CHAPPEL ALLEY to N.4.d.80.95., to CARLISLE TRENCH at N.5.c.3.8., along Communication Trench to N.5.c.65.75., thence to N.6.d.1.0., along PINE AVENUE (exclusive) to O.3.c.3.0, thence due East along the GRID LINE.

INTER-BATTALION – N.1.d.8.8., to N.10.b.5.2., along HOSE TRENCH to Junction of MALTA TRENCH to N.11.c.05.90., thence East along SAP to N.11.c.25.85., to N.12.c.6.0., thence East along GORDAN AVENUE to 2<sup>nd</sup> objective.

4            OBJECTIVES

1<sup>st</sup> Objective – MINORCA TRENCH, from N.11.c.30.80 to N.16.b.25.25.

2<sup>nd</sup> Objective – SOUTHERN AVENUE from N.18.b.30.90 south to CONJEUL RIVER at N.24.a.

5            DISPOSITION

The attack disposition of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will be:

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion (RIGHT)  
20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (LEFT)  
18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (SUPPORT ON THE RIGHT)  
19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (SUPPORT ON THE LEFT)

The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will attack with three Companies (each with 2 Platoons in the Front Line, 1 Platoon in Close-Support) and one company in support. The disposition – “C” Company (RIGHT), “D” Company (CENTRE), “B” Company (LEFT), “A” Company (SUPPORT).

The attacking Platoons will advance in extended formation. The Close Support Platoons and the Support Company will be in artillery formation.

6            ASSEMBLY POSITIONS

The Battalion will assemble for the attack in TILLOY and HUN TRENCHES. Company Commanders will report their assembly complete to Battalion Headquarters by 2.15 am.

7            ARTILLERY, MACHINE GUN and TRENCH MORTARS

The attack will be made, supported from Zero Hour by an Artillery Barrage which will advance 100 yards every 4 minutes. A Machine Gun Barrage will be laid down on selected points. A Mobile Machine Gun Company will take up positions according to the development of the tactical situation. Two guns of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Trench Mortar Battery will advance with the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion.



- 8            ENGINEERS  
A proportion of the Canadian engineers will be distributed among Companies for the purpose of investigating dugouts.
- 9            RE-ORGANIZATION AND CONSOLIDATION  
Immediately the 2<sup>nd</sup> objective is gained, all units will re-organize, in depth, for the defense of the position. Company dispositions will be reported to Battalion Headquarters without delay.
- After re-organization work will be commenced upon the consolidation of the objective.
- 10          ANTI-CRAFT  
Every effort must be made to deal energetically with low flying enemy aircraft, by Rifle and Lewis Gun Fire, during and after the attack.
- 11          SIGNALS  
(a) No 23 Grenade. RED over RED over RED – SOS  
(b) No 23 Grenade. GREEN over GREEN over GREEN – we are going to advance  
(c) Three White Verey Lights in quick succession – we have taken our objective.
- 12          DRESS AND EQUIPMENT  
All Other Ranks, less Lewis Gunners, will each be equipped with 170 rounds SAA, 2 bombs (Mills No 5) and a proportion of Bombs (Mills No 23) and two Water Bottles, filled. The unexpended portion of the days rations will be carried. Each Company will be equipped with a quantity of ground flares, SOS Rockets and Verey Lights White, 1 inch.
- 13          COMMUNICATION  
Communication will be maintained by visual, Fullerphone, D LL1 telephone and runners
- 14          PRISONERS  
Prisoners will be despatched to Battalion Headquarters without delay
- 15          SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS  
The word “retire” is not, and will not be used by any Officer or other rank of the British Armies. All Ranks will be cautioned that the enemy has frequently made use of this word to deceive our men.
- 16          ZERO HOUR AND SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES  
(a) Zero Hour will be communicated to all concerned on “Y” Day  
(b) Watches will be synchronized at 4.00 pm on the afternoon of “Y” Day and at 12.00 Midnight on “Y/Z” night.
- 17          REPORTS AND CASUALTIES  
Battalion Battle Headquarters will be located at N.1.c.60.40. until Zero Hour plus 60 minutes at which hour it will be advanced to N.10.a.60.00 (SCOTIA TRENCH)
- RAP will be located at M.6.d.80.80.
- 18          Advance will be made ESE on Magnetic bearing 123 degrees. All Ranks in possession Compass will set them before Zero Hour.

(sgd) L Frazer  
Captain  
For Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

## THE BATTLE OF AMIENS

A graphic Canadian story by Captain RJ  
Renison, Canadian Chaplain Services

So vast in its conception and covering so much ground, it is difficult to bestow on a modern battle a characteristic name that will live in history, besides so many tides have ebbed and flowed along the western front during the last four years that the same names are constantly reappearing. There are excellent reasons, however, for thinking that to Canadians at least the glorious battle initiated on August 8<sup>th</sup> will be known by the name of the ancient city whose Cathedral Ruskin declared to be the finest example of Gothic architecture in Europe.

When it is remembered that Canadian achievements – those momentous days following August 8<sup>th</sup>, delivered Amiens from the immediate grasp of the enemy and eliminated that dangerous spearhead thrust between the Franco-British Armies, the victory in keeping with the most brilliant exploits of the War, it is easy to conceive the sense of pride which the mere word “Amiens” will ever inspire throughout the land of Canada.

It did not require a prophet to foresee in the months of June and July that sooner or later when the critical moment or moments arrived, Canadians would again engage in a drive on the German lines. The memories of Ypres, Vimy and Passchendaele were with all ranks, and became real living inspirations when the entire Canadian Corps came out of its original line a few weeks ago for special training.

The general opinion seemed to be that we were destined for the north, a country where Canada had already seen much fighting. This was confirmed by orders for our movement, in case of operations, which stated the place of entrainment and, other information of specific kind. Several Canadian units actually went north as the advance guard of the Canadian Corps, and accomplished a couple of successful raids which established their identity and the immediate habitat of Canada.

Suddenly one night the Canadians began to move and for several days saw much of the fertile plains of Picardy. One could not help noticing how admirably suited this part of France is for military operations. The whole country is tilled with laborious care. The splendid roads are lined with trees which give refreshing shade to marching troops and the entire population of the country lives in the villages which nestle among the trees in every valley. The French people are essentially gregarious. The village streets are generally blind white washed walls, percolated here and there with doors in the great barn gates. On entering the visitor steps into a quadrangle floored with manure while all around are geese, hens and cattle. Behind the farm house the guest will find a lovely orchard garden which the passing traveler would never suspect.

The bivouacs in these villages were very comfortable and the welcome by the people more than cordial, although every village was crowded with refugees from northern cities.

In the last resting place before going to the front our battalion headquarters were in an estaminet, where we were waited upon by a mademoiselle with an unforgettable friendly smile, which seemed to radiate equally upon the whole battalion. She wore black, and a medallion around her neck which contained the portrait of her Armand, "Il est fini. Monsieur. a Verdun."

Finally, the moment of departure arrived. The spectacle, once we commenced to move, was something never to be forgotten. Within the area of a few kilometres the pride of the Canadian Overseas Army had assembled. Cavalry, artillery, motor machine-gun brigades, and infantry—units long separated - were suddenly reunited for the greatest adventure on which the Canadian Army had ever embarked.

The roads were crowded with transport, and greetings passed between units from Vancouver, Winnipeg, Ottawa, Toronto, Hamilton, Montreal and Halifax. In the early hours of the morning we passed through the suburbs of a deserted city, whose venerable cathedral pile looked down like the sentinel spirit of France—battered, but unbowed.

At daybreak the brigade entered a wood and slept through the day. When the last night came the line was very near, and the booming of the guns at regular intervals and the occasional flares which lit the sky showed that the Canadians had come to a comparatively quiet front. As each unit in the Canadian Corps passed with unerring precision in the dark to the appointed position in the line, brigades meeting the cavalry and artillery units on a new front, even the veriest novice could see something of the Staff work of Canada's Army, and that we were only part of a greater organisation and general plan. Surely in days of peace these master minds who possess organisation and initiative, progressively developed by each subsidiary commander from Corps to Division and thence to brigade, battalion, company and platoon, will do much for the industrial development of our country - all that is her best will be our legacy for the new world which is to be.

It was known that the Canadians would cover a front of 7,500 yards, extending as the advance proceeded to 10,000 yards. The battalions and brigades had all their appointed objectives, leap - frogging each other as their turn came. There was to be no preparatory bombardment, surprise being an element in the attack. The Tanks were to lead the way.

The non-military reader will best appreciate the scene by a description of what could be seen by one pair of eyes.

Our own battalion was to open the attack on one portion of the sector. The day before, the men occupied the reserve trenches, our cousins the Australians, who had held the line for some time, remaining in the line until the last moment, so that no knowledge of the arrival of Canadians might by any possibility reach the enemy. It had been raining for a day or two, and all day the men lay on the ground above the trenches and rested a few hundred yards from the front line. They spent their time in perfecting their equipment and polishing their arms. The next battalion to us were seen lined up in long queues in a back trench, awaiting their turn to grind their bayonets on the grindstone.

A tour of the trenches gave one an opportunity to estimate the spirit of the men. They were all radiant and confident. and it was evident that as evening drew near almost all were thinking of home. In every dugout men were writing letters — and for many of them it was the last message. I heard an old sergeant say, "Boys, I would give a good deal to read the Toronto papers next Saturday. I don't know what this show will be called, but I am sure it will be a great day in Canadian history." The battalion was very fortunate in its commanding officer. Lt-Col. Elmer Jones, DSO, was one of the most brilliant and beloved officers in the Canadian Army. A man of wide culture, born in Brockville. At the beginning of the war he came over with the battalion early in 1915. A veteran of St. Eloi, the Somme and Vimy, he was a father to every man in the battalion. His influence over his officers was quite extraordinary. He called them all by their Christian names, and his humorous badinage touched the spot with unerring instinct. His last conference with his company officers was a lesson in the power of personality. He sat on a couch in the dug-out with hand and leg bandaged, for he had not recovered from a painful accident of the week before. In his quiet tone he gave each his final instructions. His confidence in them and their affectionate respect for him were beautiful to behold. As they left he said, "Good-bye, boys, God bless you." Several times in the last three days he repeated to himself John McCrae's inspiring poem, "In Flanders Fields".

After dark, as the companies took their positions at the jumping-off point, the whole country seemed .alive with ghostly figures. In the last few hours guns were drawn from the near-by woods. Horses stood in the trenches. In the words of the Sergeant-Major, "The artillery always consider themselves invisible. "The great question in everybody's mind was, "Does the Hun know?" He seemed to have nervous premonitions, for the sky was constantly lighted with all kinds of flares—" every colour except black," as one man put it: "Heinie certainly can get a job after the war in the fireworks department of Toronto Exhibition."

An hour before zero the Germans suddenly began a bombardment on our lines. They must have heard something. The whole ground shook with the explosion of the shells. The platoon wit expressed the situation exactly, "He heaved over everything, from his false teeth to the kitchen stove." The men lay flat on the ground, while flares shot up every few moments, and clearly revealed any object standing against the sky."

At 4.20 to the moment a blaze of crimson lighted the whole horizon behind us for miles. Three seconds later there was a deafening roar from hundreds of guns. The enemy's noise was instantly lost in the din — the shells screamed overhead like countless legions of destroying angels. In front the green turf was churned by an invisible harrow. It was impossible to distinguish the sound of the individual guns, but rather the concussion resembled the throbbing of an engine built to drive a planet on its course.

With one accord along the whole line the men leaped on the parapet and went "over the top." The company officers with synchronised watches and compasses, led their men as if on parade. Stories of the first moments came to us from other sectors. One unit was led over by its pipe band. In another place the Tank "Dominion" led the procession with a piper skirling from its top. The tanks looked like prehistoric monsters as they lumbered over the trenches into the mist with their noses to the ground on the trail of the machine-gun nests.

As wave after wave passed, the Colonel sat in the trench sending messages to Brigade that all was well. Finally he disconnected the wire, and lame as he was, followed his battalion into the haze, now made sulphurous by the smoke of the guns.

After passing over the German trenches the dead and wounded began to appear, the Boche much more numerous than our own. There were evidences of many hand-to-hand conflicts in which the personal superiority of the Canadian was evident. Within a mile the prisoners began to appear, running unarmed from shell hole to shell hole, shouting "Kamarad," as they lifted both hands to any approaching soldier. The conquering spirit was surely with the Canadians that day. We would take no denial. The mist over the cornfields caused some of the tanks to overlook the machine-gun posts which were dotted everywhere. There were numerous stories of personal gallantry. Two men, Fenwick and McPhee, with a Lewis gun, after their party was broken up, made a business of capturing machine guns. One man handled the gun and the other carried several spare drums of ammunition, and rushed post after post single-handed. When the battalion captured Marcelcave (with due respect to the correspondent who credits it to the Australians) Fenwick and McPhee were seen with their helmets askew, loaded with souvenirs and fortified with Hun refreshments, simply eating up the town — the very personification of the Canadian conquering spirit. Every man was slung with all kinds of trophies, which symbolized, not the material gain, but the victory of the Spirit.

The return was a sight for a great painter. The dead and wounded lay upon the ground. Already the stretcher-bearers were hurrying to the sign of the rifle stuck by a bayonet into the sod, with the cap stuck on the butt. Streams of dejected prisoners came through the fields, and soon were set to work carrying out the wounded. The Horse Artillery had already galloped forward and one could not help admiring these glorious animals, who stood unmoved by their blazing guns, while many of their number lay dying all around.

As the sun rose victoriously over the mist the long lines of Canadian cavalry were seen advancing. They cantered by, squadron after squadron. The moment for which they had waited had come. They were about to write a new chapter in the military history of our time. The gleaming lances of the Lancers slanted to the east of Cache Wood, and the Inniskilling Dragoons added a historic touch to the epic of the day. The roads, as if by magic, were already marked. "Walking wounded this way," or "Lorries only," while traffic managers stood at crossings, which three hours before were within the German lines, and answered questions with perfect omniscience. Our path lay through the ruins of a large town, captured by the Australians some weeks before. Here one could appreciate the complete desolation caused by modern heavy artillery. Already the roads were crowded with all the conglomerate traffic of an advancing army. Nothing seemed to have been forgotten. Men ten miles beyond the German trenches would receive their letters from home that night.

At the advanced dressing station the incoming wounded were already being cared for with tenderness and skill. Some of the finest medical skill in the world is to be found in the C.A.M.C., whose staff worked night and day with a devotion beyond all praise. For the following days at every dressing station and camp on every road, everything was wide open. The Y.M.C.A., the Chaplain Services, and the Red Cross all worked together, their personnel and materials being pooled. No wounded man or tired driver went away empty. Coffee stalls ran day and night while the evacuation continued. Without these services much of the work done would have been quite impossible.

We buried the Colonel in a little British cemetery on the main road in an eastern suburb of the city which he had helped to deliver. The evening sun went down over the glorious pile of the cathedral only a mile away. When a few days later a great Thanksgiving Service was held there for the deliverance of the city, his spirit must have felt the reward of duty done for France, for Canada and mankind. A rough oak cross, made from a shovel handle, marks his grave, with the silver identification disc from his wrist as his temporary epitaph.

At three o'clock on the first afternoon there were 2,000 prisoners in a single wire cage. They were petrified with surprise. A German officer told me that it was impossible that we should be Canadians. "We have the most certain information from our Intelligence Department that the Canadians are in Belgium," he said.

They are a remarkable people. Individually they seem very quiet, docile, and most sentimental. On all occasions they are anxious to show the photographs of their women-folks, and yet a "Princess Pat," whose battalion suffered in a counter-attack two days later, told of our wounded who were stabbed in the barbed wire.

The sentimental Hun is a psychological mystery - we must let it go at that.

There is a beautiful, deserted chateau standing in noble grounds shaded with stately trees which, however glorious its history, never played such a distinguished role or sheltered such a splendid gathering as on a certain August day in this year of its desertion.

Early in the morning the G.O.C. of the Canadian Corps might have been seen arriving at its gates, followed by his banner and his orderlies on the way to the front. In the early afternoon we saw him riding over the battlefield, a soldierly figure of Canada in action as he rode resolutely forward. The great rooms of the chateau were fitted with operating tables, while all the grounds were covered with stretchers of the wounded. The walking cases, dusty, tired and blood-stained, but full of fight and enthusiasm, came by as the hours passed in a great procession. Their spirit was wonderful. As for the more seriously wounded, the sight was the greatest lesson that many a Chaplain ever learned.

The striking heroism and resignation of the average man - the greatest sermon I ever hope to hear - was preached to me that day. Some, of course, were terribly wounded, but not many - for as they lay there, waiting their turn, there was not one complaint. I saw one hero with his head bandaged, except for a bright blue eye, who held a cigarette at a jaunty angle through a hole in the bandage. Another man, badly wounded in both legs, lay on a stretcher sound asleep, while his arm was around his little dog who slept beside him. They had gone over the top together that morning. Another happy warrior, badly gassed, lay weak, but smiling, with his haversack full of "souvenirs!" He had captured a battalion headquarters, including a major, two captains and a couple of subalterns - he said he had enough compasses and glasses for all his girls, and he had four Iron Crosses. As the later wounded came in the magnitude of the victory became more apparent. As the men lay in their suffering they refused to talk of themselves, but only of their comrades at the front and Canada. "What would I not give to be at home to night when the news comes in," was the cry of more than one who had earned his rest.

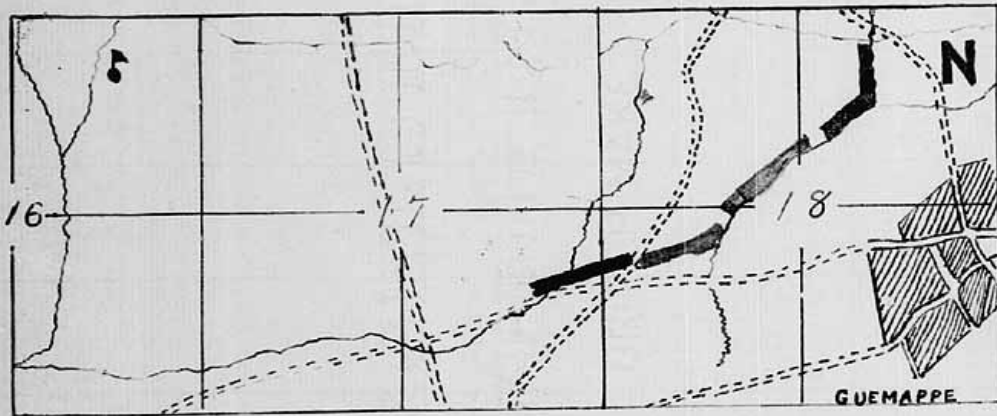
Among the very happiest of all were the very moderately wounded men who had a certain "Blighty." They had done their part and looked forward to their rest. On the whole, and considering the magnitude of the operation, the casualties were remarkably light and the proportion of killed small. The preparations had been well made, and the work of the various branches of the Corps was perfect. We gladly recognize that we are part of a great organization. The advance of the French towards Lassigny on our right, and the indomitable work of the Australians on our left, was a matter of pride and congratulation. But this is a story of Canada's part of the struggle - already 10,000 prisoners have been captured and one hundred and sixty five guns. Our line has advanced nearly fifteen miles. Altogether it will live as the greatest achievement of the Canadian Army. And this has been accomplished by our own people, who, four years ago, never dreamt that Canada would write her name in letters of gold on the portico of one of the most ancient shrines of Christian civilization.

Disposition  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian B'n. 24.8.18



Scale 1:10,000.  
Ref Sheet TELEGRAPH HILL.

Disposition  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian B'n. 8.18



Scale 1:10,000. Ref Sheet TELEGRAPH HILL

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 210

Reference Sheet  
51.b SW 1/200000

August 27<sup>th</sup> 1918

1 Information is received that the enemy is holding Area NW of CHERISY in considerable strength.

2 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will continue the advance today. The 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on our Right; the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division on our LEFT.

3 OBJECTIVES

1 <sup>ST</sup>	RIVER SENSEE
2 <sup>ND</sup>	GAGNICOURT

4 BOUNDARIES

- (a) RIGHT – Light Railway from O.29.c.19.0. to O.27.b.8.2., thence to CROSS ROADS O.28.b.8.0. to ROAD JUNCTION O.30.c.0.7., thence a line parallel to CAMBRAI ROAD, 700 yards on SW side.
- (b) LEFT – CAMBRAI ROAD (exclusive)
- (c) INTER-BATTALION – Line drawn through O.20.a.40.95 to O.29.a.00.95., thence a line 350 yards SW and parallel to CAMBRAI ROAD

5 DISPOSITIONS

19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	RIGHT FRONT
18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	LEFT FRONT
20 <sup>th</sup> Battalion (Canadian)	IN SUPPORT
21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion	IN RESERVE

The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will advance in Artillery Formation, with “A” Company on RIGHT, “C” Company on LEFT, “D” Company in REAR of “A” Company and “B” Company in REAR of “C” Company. Battalion Headquarters will advance 100 yards in REAR of “D” Company.

6 At Zero Hour Companies will advance from their present positions in SOUTHERN AVENUE. All will move north of GUEMAPPE. “C” Company will direct, advancing on a line, approximately 400 yards south of the ARRAS – CAMBRAI ROAD.

7 ARTILLERY

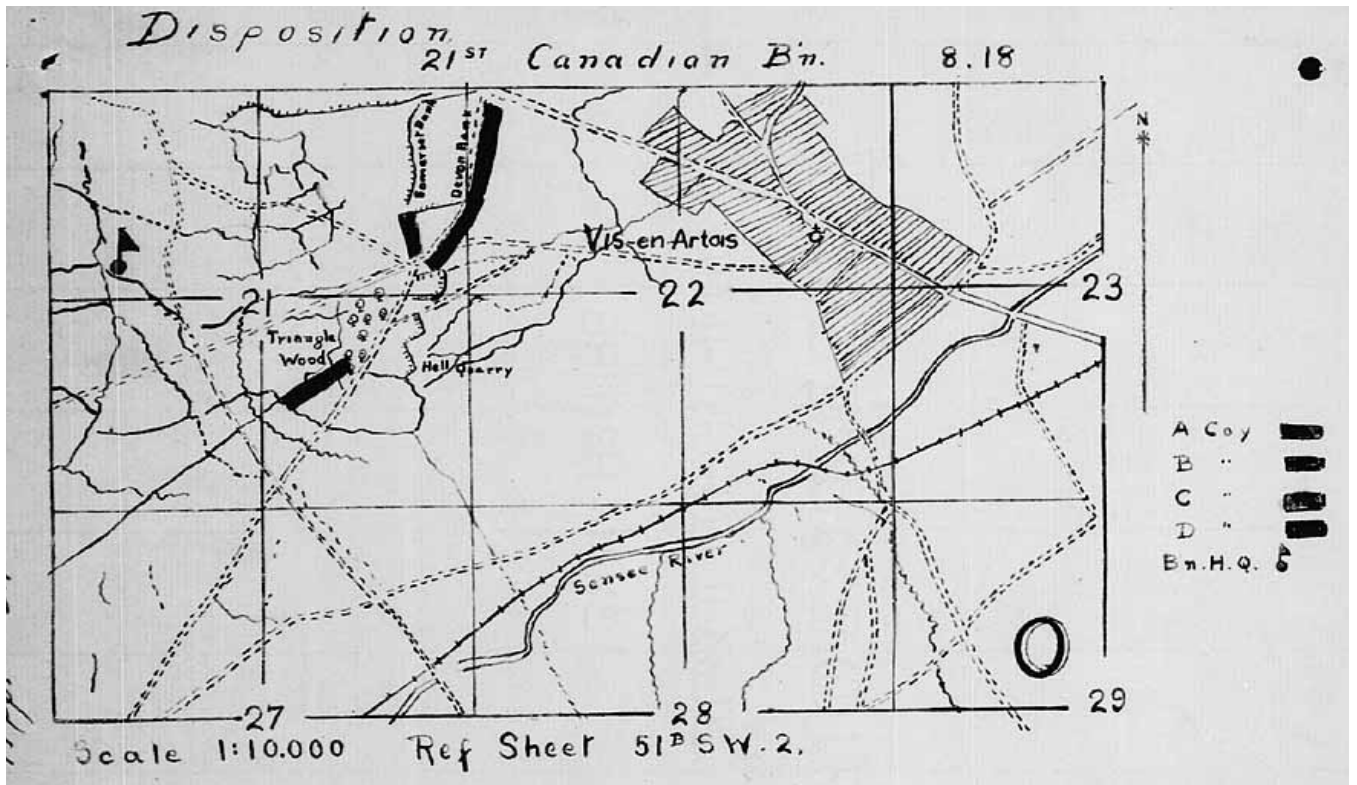
- (a) Rolling Barrage – the initial barrage line 200 yards EAST of EGRET Trench and PANTHER and RAKE Trenches. Barrage lifts at Zero plus 3 minutes and thereafter will lift 100 yards every four minutes, a pause being made and a Protective Barrage formed approximately 300 yards beyond the River SENSEE. This pause will last for 30 minutes, the barrage will then continue at the same rate as before.
- (b) When limit of barrage is reached the CRA shall arrange for one Brigade of Field Artillery to advance in support of 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade.
- (c) Heavy Artillery will co-ordinate with this barrage.
- (d) One Machine Gun Company will co-operate with the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

- 8 Zero hour will be 10.00 am August 27<sup>th</sup>, 1918
- 9 Light Signals as for August 26<sup>th</sup> (see OO No 209)
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) L Frazer  
 Captain  
 For Captain & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 8.00 am

- |           |   |       |                   |
|-----------|---|-------|-------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 9     | "D" Company       |
| 2         | 18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 10    | Specialists       |
| 3         | 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 11    | Communication     |
| 4         | 20 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 12    | Medical Officer   |
| 5         | Commanding Officer                        | 13    | Transport Officer |
| 6         | "A" Company                               | 15    | RSM               |
| 7         | "B" Company                               | 16    | File              |
| 8         | "C" Company                               | 17-19 | War Diary         |





SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion Operation Order No 211

Reference Sheet  
51.b SW 1/20000

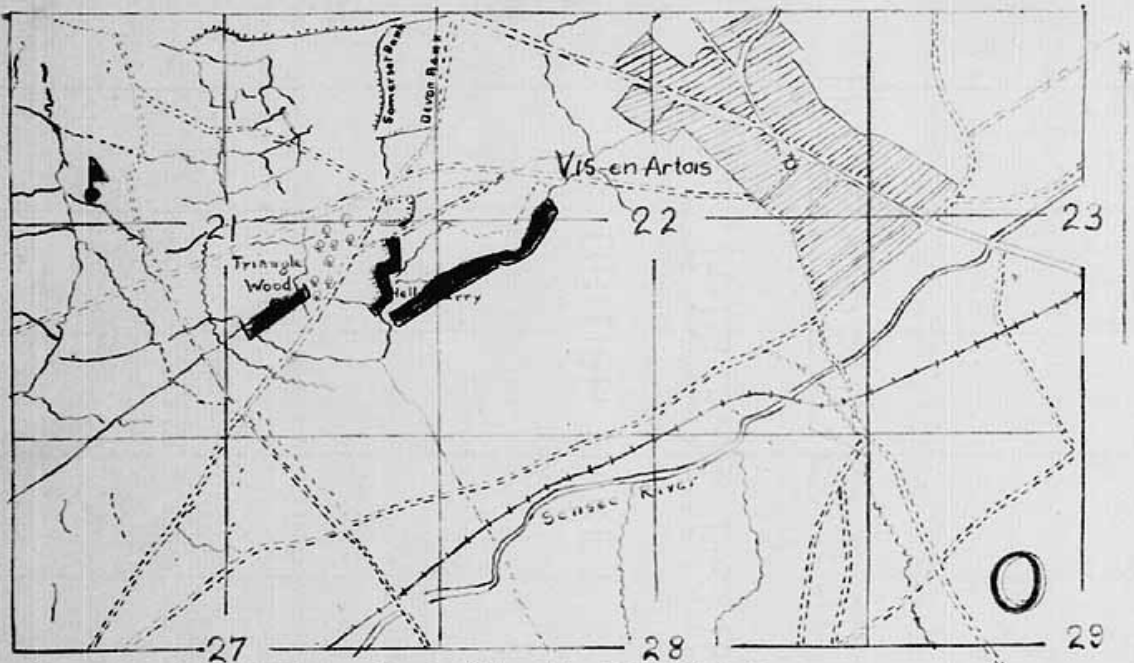
August 28<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 INTENTION The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division will continue its advance today, August 28<sup>th</sup>, 1918. The 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will attack on the Right of 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade and 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will be in Support
- 2 OBJECTIVES FIRST – FRESNES – ROUVROY LINE (U.10.b.0.6. to O.30.b.2.8.)  
SECOND – DROUCOURT – QUEANT LINE
- 3 BOUNDARIES RIGHT – O.27.b.8.2., to CROSS ROADS O.28.b.8.0., to ROAD JUNCTION O.30.c.0.7L, thence a line parallel to CAMBRAI ROAD 700 yards on SW Side.  
  
LEFT – CAMBRAI ROAD (exclusive)  
  
INTER-BATTALION – Line drawn through O.20.a.40.95., to O.29.a.00.95., thence a line 350 yards SW and parallel to CAMBRAI ROAD.
- 4 DISPOSITIONS 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion RIGHT FRONT  
20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion LEFT FRONT  
19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion RIGHT SUPPORT  
18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion LEFT SUPPORT
- 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will attack with 3 Companies in Front Line. "C" Company RIGHT, "B" Company CENTRE, "A" Company LEFT, with "D" Company in Close Support. Lieut RA Stewart will arrange assembly on line at present occupied by 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Assembly to be completed by 11.45 am.
- 5 BARRAGE 1<sup>st</sup> Barrage – U.3.c.2.5., to O.34.a.8.0., to O.28.b.35.00. to O.23.d.2.7  
1<sup>st</sup> lift plus 3 minutes. Afterwards 100 yards every 4 minutes. Pause 30 minutes at 1<sup>st</sup> objective – protective Barrage. Thereafter barrage at same rate as before.  
Heavies will bombard FRESNES – ROUVROY LINE from 9.00 am.  
Artillery Bombardment to increase at 12.00 Noon until it becomes intense at 12.30 pm.
- 6 ZERO HOUR 12.30 pm August 28<sup>th</sup> 1918
- 7 BATTALION HEADQUARTERS & RAP Battalion Headquarters and RAP will be located at the Quarry (O.21.d.6.7)
- (sgd) L Frazer Captain  
for Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 11.00 am

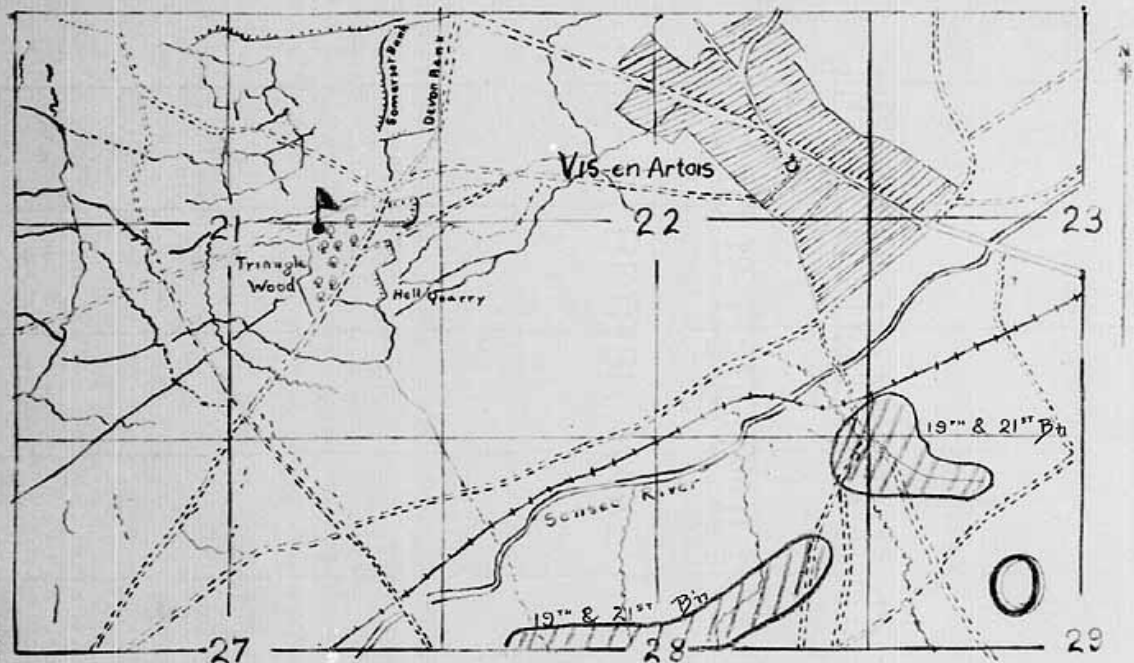
- |           |   |       |                   |
|-----------|---|-------|-------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade | 9     | "D" Company       |
| 2         | 18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 10    | Specialists       |
| 3         | 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 11    | Communication     |
| 4         | 20 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion       | 12    | Medical Officer   |
| 5         | Commanding Officer                        | 13    | Transport Officer |
| 6         | "A" Company                               | 15    | RSM               |
| 7         | "B" Company                               | 16    | File              |
| 8         | "C" Company                               | 17-19 | War Diary         |

Disposition  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn. 8.18



Scale 1:10,000 Ref Sheet 51<sup>P</sup> SW.2.

Disposition  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn. 8.18



Scale 1:10,000 Ref Sheet 51<sup>P</sup> SW.2.

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 212

Reference Sheet  
LENS 11 1/100000

August 30<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1           The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will move to WANQUENTIN – SIMEN COURT Area, today August 30<sup>th</sup> 1918.  
  
              The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will occupy billets at WANQUENTIN by Midnight 30<sup>th</sup>/31<sup>st</sup> August 1918
- 2           21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will pass Starting Point, Road Junction ARRAS – DOULLENS ROAD and ARRAS – DAINVILLE ROAD, at 2.00 pm  
  
              Battalion will “fall in” at 1.15 pm  
              DRESS: - Battle Order
- 3           Interval of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies and Transport
- 4           Lieutenant RA Stewart and billeting party will proceed ahead and arrange for billeting of Unit in a new area.
- 5           Unit Commanders will report arrival in new location to Battalion Headquarters.
- 6           ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank  
Major  
for Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	8	Communication Section
2	Commanding Officer	9	Medical Officer
3	“A” Company	10	Transport Officer
4	“B” Company	11	Quartermaster
5	“C” Company	12	RSM
6	“D” Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-17	War Diary

Fourth Army No GS. 2/7

Canadian Corps

I desire to place on record my sincere appreciation of the conspicuous and highly successful part played by the Canadian Corps in the battle of August 8<sup>th</sup>. The task allotted to them was not easy, especially on the right where the initial attack of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division was delivered under special difficulties.

The need of secrecy, which necessitated the assembly of the whole Corps, including heavy artillery, by night in an area previously unknown to them, enhanced the difficulties, especially when the front line had of necessity to be held by other troops.

The determination with which all obstacles were overcome, the dash and gallantry with which the assault was delivered, and the precision with which each advance was made on scheduled time, reflect the highest credit both on the staff arrangements and the fine fighting spirit of all units which took part in the operation.

The three points which seem to me to deserve the highest commendation are the splendid gallantry of the Infantry, the skill and hard work in "getting in" the artillery (both heavy and Field Artillery) on the nights preceding the battle, and the energy and drive in pushing forward mobile artillery immediately the enemy front line had been broken.

The general control and direction of the battle by Corps, Divisional and Brigade Staffs were admirable and enabled the whole program to be carried through in its entirety without a hitch: this is in itself the highest praise that can be given.

I congratulate the Canadian Corps as a whole and offer them my warmest thanks for their very fine performance.

HQ Fourth Army  
16<sup>th</sup> August 1918

(sgd) H Rawlinson  
General  
Commanding – Fourth Army

SPECIAL ORDER  
By LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR ARTHUR W CURRIE, MCB, MCMG  
Commanding Canadian Corps

13<sup>th</sup> August 1918

The first stage of this Battle of Amiens is over, and one of the most successful operations conducted by the Allied Armies since the War began is now a matter of history.

The Canadian Corps has every right to feel more than proud of the part it played. To move the Corps from the Arras Front and in less than a week launch it in a battle so many miles distant was in itself a splendid performance. Yet the splendor of that performance pales into insignificance when compared with what has been accomplished since Zero hour on August 8<sup>th</sup>.

On that date the Canadian Corps – to which was attached the 3<sup>rd</sup> Cavalry Division, the 4<sup>th</sup> Tank Brigade, the 5<sup>th</sup> Squadron RAF – attacked on a front of 7,500 yards. After a penetration of 22,000 yards the line tonight rests on a 10,000 yards frontage. 16 German Divisions have been identified, of which 4 have been completely routed. Nearly 150 guns have been captured, while over a thousand Machine Guns have fallen into our hands. Ten thousand prisoners have passed through our cages and Casualty Clearing Stations, a number greatly in excess of our total casualties. Twenty five towns and villages have been rescued from the hands of the invaders, the Paris Amiens Railway has been freed from interference and the danger of dividing the French and British army has been dissipated.

Canada has always placed the most implicit confidence in her Army. Now nobly has that confidence been justified, and with what pride has the story of your gallant success been read in the homeland. This magnificent victory has been won because your training was good, your leadership good, your discipline good, given these three, success must always come.

From the depths of a very full heart I wish to thank all staffs and services – the Infantry, the Artillery, the Cavalry, the Engineers, the Machine Gunners, the Independent Forces, consisting of Motor Machine Gun Brigades and the Cyclists, the Tank Battalion, the RAF, the Medical Services, the Army Service Corps, the Ordnance Corps, the Veterinary Services, the Chaplain Services for their splendid support and co-operation, and to congratulate you all on the wonderful success achieved. Let us remember our gallant dead whose spirit shall ever be with us, inspiring us to nobler effort and when the call comes again be it soon or otherwise, I know the same measure of success shall be yours.

(sgd) AW Currie

Lieutenant-General  
Commanding, Canadian Corps.

*Transcriber's Note: The newspaper clippings below were inserted into the War Diary and I felt it appropriate to include them here.*



### CAPTAIN S. L. CUNNINGHAM, M.C.

Particulars have been received by Mrs. Margaret Cunningham as to the death of her son, Stanley. The deceased was G.S.O. (3) on the staff of Major-General Lipsitt, O.C. 3rd Canadian Division. As such it was his duty to keep in touch with the front line at all times during an advance so that his O.C. might know where the front actually was located. On Monday, August 27th, the 3rd Division attacked from Arras, and by seven o'clock in the morning had succeeded in capturing the German position at Monchy. On Tuesday a further advance was made against the Dricourt position with great success, but on that night the location of the Canadian forces was quite obscure, and it was necessary for Captain Cunningham to make a reconnaissance for the purpose of ascertaining their whereabouts. About ten o'clock at night he set out in his motor car from the divisional headquarters, just outside of Arras, along the Cambrai road, accompanied only by a chauffeur. A short time afterwards the car was discovered standing on the road with Captain Cunningham and the chauffeur sitting in it, both dead. Neither of them had a scratch, but had been

killed by the concussion of a large German shell. Brig-General Arthur Ross happened along a few minutes after the discovery, and directed the removal of the remains. Captain Cunningham was buried in the Tilloy cemetery, close to where he was killed.

Letters received from his O.C. and from his comrades on the staff tell of the wonderful work he had done during the month of August, and that he was to have received immediate promotion. In the successful advance in front of Amiens, for three days and three nights he had gone without sleep. During the two days' advance from Arras he had done splendid work and had carried himself with much gallantry.

It seems indeed hard that his death should come after four years' conscientious service, just as the clouds had begun to break; but, after all, his work was not in vain. It was the life and death of thousands of inspired men that overcame the German terror and made the Allies' victory possible. In the future, Kingston's greatest pride will be the memory of her gallant sons who have given their lives for the Empire and for civilization.

## CAPT. STANLEY CUNNINGHAM

27  
WAS INSTANTLY KILLED IN ACTION LAST WEEK.

Well-Known Kingston Officer Struck by a Shell—He Was Awarded the Military Cross For Bravery Some Time Ago.

The toll of war has added still another name to the ever lengthening honor roll of Kingston. Unofficial notification received on Monday brought the sad intelligence that Capt. Stanley Lavell Cunningham, M.C., had fallen in action in France. The first intimation was received by Cornelius Berningham, Barrie street, from Major Willis O'Connor, A.D.C. to Major-General Currie, in a cablegram stating that Capt. Cunningham had been instantly killed by a shell. Lieut.-Col. A. B. Cunningham, the deceased's brother, was notified, and to him fell the sad duty of breaking the news to his mother, Mrs. Henry Cunningham, Barrie street.

The deceased officer was a native of Kingston, having been born here thirty-four years ago. His education was received in the city schools and he later graduated from the School of Mining at Queen's University. Previous to his enlistment in the 21st Battalion he was practising as a successful civil engineer in the city.

A month after war broke out he was taken on the strength of the 14th P.W.O.R. Regiment and qualified for his lieutenant's certificate. He received his appointment to the 21st Battalion under Lieut.-Col. W. St. Pierre Hughes, on its organization, and served with that unit in France until 1916, when he relinquished his rank of acting major and adjutant of the battalion. On the staff of the 1st Infantry Brigade, under Major-General Garnet Hughes, he served as a captain. Later he was transferred to the staff of the 3rd Division as general staff officer, but it is believed by his relatives that he recently returned to the 21st Battalion and was killed in action with that regiment. He was decorated with the Military Cross in January for his gallantry and devotion to duty.

The late Capt. Cunningham was widely known in the city as a courageous and straightforward gentleman of the finest type. The deceased was unmarried, and is survived by his mother, three sisters, Mrs. J. J. MacLennan, Toronto; Misses Louise and Florence, at home, and three brothers, Dr. H. C. Cunningham, of Carmen, Man.; J. E. Cunningham and A. B. Cunningham, of Kingston.

## LIEUT. LEONARD BOSWELL MADE SUPREME SACRIFICE

80  
Young Kingston Officer Died of Wounds on August 28th.



LATE LIEUT. LEONARD BOSWELL. Edward Boswell, 4 Durham street, has received a telegram from the officer in charge of records that his son, Lieut. Edward Boswell, M.M., had died of wounds on August 28th. The deceased officer before enlistment was employed as a carpenter by Thomas Copley. He enlisted in the 21st Battalion early in 1915, and proceeded to France with that unit. His military career was particularly brilliant, and his bravery and fearlessness in the performance of his duty was rewarded with the presentation of the military medal. His devotion to duty also won for him a commission on the field, and he was typical of the best in Canadian soldiery. That he was called upon to make the supreme sacrifice is a matter of pride as well as regret for his many friends, who recognized the embodiment of sterling qualities which were manifested in him. The late Lieut. Boswell comes from a military family, and three brothers, Arthur, Edward and Stanley, are serving in the present campaign.

## HIS MEN ALL LOVED HIM

THE REPUTATION EARNED BY  
LIEUT.-COL. ELMER W. JONES.

Strong Testimony as to the Strength and Beauty of His Character—  
He Has Gone to a Glorious Death.  
The Brockville Record and Times writes soulfully of the loss that city has sustained in the death of Lieut.-Col. Elmer W. Jones, D.S.O. The love and esteem of those confided to his care, bear the strongest testimony to the strength and beauty of his character. It adds: "Lieut.-



LIEUT.-COL. ELMER W. JONES, D.S.O.  
A native of Brockville in command of the 21st Battalion. He had many warm friends in Kingston.

Col. Jones had paid with his life's sacrifice his devotion to the cause of justice and humanity. He has died as many others have that democracy in its best form might survive. He has gone to a glorious death—a death that carries with it the purest aspirations of a Christian manhood. It has been written by an inspired pen that to give one's life for fellow-men is the truest kind of charity. He left all, house, wife, and daughter, in the full bloom of prime manhood, in answer to his country's call. The sacrifice has been made; the last chapter of a vigorous earthly existence has been closed, but the good deeds he accomplished on this mundane sphere are imperishable."

## HOW LIEUT. COL. JONES MET DEATH IN FRANCE

Bullet Entered His Body Under  
The Right Arm.—Died  
Soon Afterwards.

The first particulars to reach Brockville regarding the death of Lieut.-Col. Elmer W. Jones, of the 21st Battalion, came this morning in a letter from Lieut. George Woodcock to his parents, Rev. Canon F. D. and Mrs. Woodcock. In his letter Lieut. Woodcock said:

"Of course you have seen by the papers what we have been doing lately. It was very tiring but great fun and I never had such a good time as I did in the attack until Col. Jones was killed and that spoiled it for us. We made three all-night marches to get to the rear of our jumping-off place and then on Wednesday night we started at twelve o'clock and moved up into position. Of course we were all pretty well keyed up because we did not know whether the Hun knew anything or not and he put a nasty little straffe on for an hour before we went over. It might have been serious as we were jammed into the trench, but fortunately we did not have a casualty. At 4.20 o'clock everything broke loose and away they went, but I was obliged to wait for a while, and finally our party got off. It was so foggy that we could only see about ten yards ahead and had to go by compass. The old Boche simply shoved up his hands whenever we came near and the prisoners were simply coming back in droves. There was a very nasty machine gun fire coming from the right flank and it was this that got Lieut.-Col. Jones. I got to him first and with the help of a couple of Huns we got a first aid dressing on, but it was easy to see that he was gone. The bullet entered under the right arm, pretty well back and as there was no hope for him, we left him with the Padre and went on. Afterwards, we made our objective and had a little sleep."

DO NOT DISTURB CHANGES



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

WANQUENTIN 1/9/18 On September 1<sup>st</sup> the battalion was located in huts at Wanquentin. The day was very fine and church parade was held on the grounds adjacent to Battalion Headquarters, in the morning. The afternoon was devoted to bathing at Simencourt. Seven Other Ranks arrived as reinforcements and were posted to "B" Company.

2/9/18 In the afternoon the Battalion moved to Beaurains where companies and sections were bivouacked in area M.10 and 11. (Reference 51.b) Battalion Headquarters was located at M.10.d.95.50. Lieutenant JB Ellis proceeded on this date to 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC, for duty. Routine Orders announced the award of the Military Medal to No 59528 Corporal J Jordan. Corporal Jordan, an original member of the Battalion, who is attached to the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Trench Mortar Battery was congratulated by his many friends in the Battalion.

BEAURAINS 3/9/18 During the morning of September 3<sup>rd</sup> rain fell intermittently. In the afternoon the battalion moved to N.30.b & d (1/40000) (reference 51.b)

4/9/18 Routine Orders of this date stated that decorations had been awarded as follows: - Bar to the Military Medal, 59690 Sgt WH Murney (now deceased), 726039 Sgt S Cooper MM, 636689 Corp T Baird MM. Military Medals: - 59395 Cpl H Griffiths, 195366 Pte N Jerram, 59200 Sgt HGM Cordes, 60046 Sgt JN West, 454457 Cpl JJ Higgins, 470195 Sgt W Dumaresq, 805355 Pte GP Dalton, 639831 Pte HE Smith, 142105 A/Cpl LM Jonas, 633789 Pte FW Porter, 59885 Cpl A Rollings, 195079 Pte HV Fox, 1093398 Pte AE Baldwin, 49060 Pte T McGeary, 59735 Pte F McMahon, 805272 Pte WH Gay, 59278 Pte VW Dafoe, 195053 Pte H Clarke, 603062 Sgt ST Tilbrooke, 633222 L/Cpl W Campbell, 1087292 Cpl E McK Sullivan, 454970 Cpl WJ Charles, 636095 Pte A McKay, 724261 Pte H McInnis, 455091 Pte WJ Bartlett, 639933 Pte NB LaPlante, 675170 Pte F Bichener, 1093267 Pte GH Doupe, 475277 Pte VA Crotty, 636758 Pte WJ Smith.

These decorations were awarded these other ranks in respect of acts of gallantry by them in the attack carried out on the enemy's positions East of Marcelcave on August 8<sup>th</sup>, 1918. The recipients were congratulated by the Commanding Officer and their many friends throughout the battalion.

In the afternoon the battalion moved forward and took up positions in the DROUCOURT-QUENT line (V13.b & d. Reference 51.b. 1/40000) with Battalion Headquarters located at V.13.a.4.3. Reference 51.B 1/40000.

DROUCOURT 5/9/18 During this period the battalion were held in Divisional Reserve. Enemy  
QUEANT LINE to 12/9/18 bombing planes were very active over our rear areas on the night of 8<sup>th</sup>/9<sup>th</sup> and 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup> September. No bombs were dropped in our immediate vicinity. In cleaning out the Trench system occupied by the battalion many articles of German equipment, etc were found. This salvage was collected and forwarded to Officer i/c Salvage, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division. The total value of salvage handed in by this unit amounted to £1168-19-0.

5.9.18 Lieutenant JG Caldwell reported from hospital on this date and temporarily assumed the duties of Battalion Signalling Officer.

6.9.18 On September 6<sup>th</sup> Captain FK Ludlow proceeded to England on leave of absence and Lieutenant A Cockeram DSO, reported for duty from hospital.

7.9.18 Captain L Frazer proceeded to hospital on this date due to illness

10.9.18 Routine Orders of this date announced the award of the Military Medal to the undermentioned Other Ranks, - 639951 A/Sgt RJ Patterson and 404835 L/Corpl ID Forbes. These other ranks were awarded these decorations in respect of their exceptionally good work in connection with the evacuation of wounded during the advance of the Canadian Corps, East of Amiens. They were heartily congratulated by the Commanding Officers and their many friends in the battalion.

Lieutenant C Menpes MC, attached 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, proceeded to England on leave of absence on this date.

11.9.18 Fifty other ranks arrived as reinforcements from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC, and after standing orders had been read to them, were posted to companies. This personnel consisted chiefly of men who had previously served with the battalion.

12.9.18 Twenty four other ranks reported to the battalion as reinforcements and were posted to Companies and Sections.

BRIGADE 12/9/18 On the night of September 12<sup>th</sup>/13<sup>th</sup> the battalion moved forward to the  
SUPPORT to 16/9/18 BUISSY SWITCH line and relieved the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion. Relief was completed without casualties at 9.30 pm and Battalion Headquarters was located at V.11.d.85.65. Ref Sheet 51.B 1/40000

13.9.18 September 13<sup>th</sup> dawned bright and clear and aerial activity was above normal. In the evening a working party of 4 officers, 25 NCOs and 200 men proceeded forward to construct defenses in area W.1.2 and 8 (ref sheet 51.B 1/40000) under the supervision of Major MacCallum, 4<sup>th</sup> Battalion Canadian Engineers. One other rank of this party was wounded shortly after the party had started work.

14.9.18 The weather continued fine and aerial activity was normal. A working party, as furnished on the night of September 13<sup>th</sup> proceeded forward to work on defenses in area W.1.2 and 8 (ref sheet 51.B 1/40000). Information that the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division would be relieved by 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division was received from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade.

15.9.18 September 15<sup>th</sup> was fine. In aerial combats one enemy machine was driven down and seen to crash in the rear of our lines. The GOC, 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade called at Battalion Headquarters in the afternoon. During his visit he informed Major Bowerbank that the relief of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division by the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division had been cancelled.

16.8.18 Word that the battalion would relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Front Lines was received in the afternoon. Major Bowerbank, accompanied by Lieutenant RA Stewart, proceeded forward to make necessary arrangements re this relief. The relief of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion was completed at 12.45 am and Battalion Headquarters was situated at V.6.d.70.0.

FRONT LINE 16/9/18 to 20/9/18 Immediately after the relief of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion patrols were sent out to cover our front. These patrols had nothing of special interest to report upon their return to our lines. Enemy artillery was fairly active during the afternoon resulting in the area about Battalion Headquarters being heavily shelled. Lieutenant JH O'Keefe and ten other ranks patrolled our frontage on the night of September 17<sup>th</sup>/18<sup>th</sup>.

18.9.18 September 18<sup>th</sup> was very fine and aircraft were very active. On the night of September 19<sup>th</sup> the battalion side-slipped to the right taking over a portion of the front line from the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Mounted Rifles. Major Bowerbank made an inspection of the line immediately this move had taken place.

19.9.18 September 19<sup>th</sup> was very fine, but owing to high winds, aircraft was inactive. The Brigade Major called at Battalion Headquarters in the morning. The enemy shelled the area occupied by the battalion during the afternoon, special attention being given to the ground near the ARRAS-CAMBRAI ROAD. Our engineers projected one thousand drums of gas into the enemy's defences during the night.

20.9.18 September 20<sup>th</sup> was inclement, rain falling at intervals during the day. Despite the adverse weather conditions aerial activity was above normal, resulting in two of our planes being driven down. The Battalion was relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the night of September 20<sup>th</sup>/21<sup>st</sup> and moved to Brigade Support Area in Buissy Switch Line. Battalion Headquarters and Companies were disposed as shown on the attached Sketch. This relief was completed without casualties at 10.15 pm.

BRIGADE SUPPORT 20/9/18 to 25/9/18 September 21<sup>st</sup> and 22<sup>nd</sup> passed very quietly. The usual artillery and aerial activity prevailed. On the night of September 23<sup>rd</sup> the battalion relieved the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the front line. This relief was completed at 9.40 pm. Companies and sections were disposed as shown on the attached sketch. At 1.30 am the enemy raided an outpost held by "A" Company of this unit. His party consisting of about thirty men was completely repulsed. We suffered the following casualties, Killed in Action, 3055813 Private RJ Monds and 3320447 Private JR Gray. Wounded, 6 other ranks. Gas was projected by our engineers at 2.30 am. Enemy shelling of the area about Battalion Headquarters was very heavy from 4.40 am to 5.10 am resulting in the following casualties, when a shell burst at the entrance of a dugout occupied by Battalion Headquarters. Wounded, 4 other ranks. The remainder of September 24<sup>th</sup> passed quietly.

FRONT LINE 25.9.18 September 25<sup>th</sup> was fine. At 2.00 am the Hun raided unoccupied outpost on our front. His attack was repulsed and he gained no information. The following casualties were sustained by the battalion: Killed in Action 3056021 Private Meath W, Wounded 2 other ranks. The remainder of the day passed quietly and the battalion was relieved by the 6<sup>th</sup> Yorkshire and Lancashire Battalion and elements of the 1/5<sup>th</sup> London Rifle Brigade, on the night of 25<sup>th</sup>/26<sup>th</sup> September. When this relief was completed the battalion proceeded to area in U.17. B and D (ref sheet 51.B 1/40000) where they were bivouacked in fields and battalion Headquarters established at U.17.d.75.55. (ref sheet 51.B 1/40000)

REAR DETAILS 12/9/18 to 25/9/18 Upon the battalion moving forward to Brigade Support positions in Buissy Switch Line the Transport and details left out of the line moved from the Brocourt Queant Line to area in U.17.b & d. (ref sheet 51.B 1/40000). Rear Headquarters was located at U.17.d.75.55.

15.9.18 Routine Orders of this date contained the following item of importance "Temp-Major HE Pense DSO, MC, to be Temp-Lieut-Colonel, 9<sup>th</sup> August 1918 and to command 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion. Authority for Lieutenant HT Deane MC, to wear the insignia of a Captain, pending the confirmation of his promotion to this rank, was received from Divisional Headquarters. Lieutenant GW Trollope, who was slightly wounded in the attack carried out by this unit on August 26<sup>th</sup>, reported from hospital on this date.

14.9.18 Captain AP Christmas was, on this date, posted to Eastern Ontario Regimental Depot, Seaford, on being retained in England for duty, effect 27.8.18. A draft of two other ranks arrived from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC.

15.9.18 Lieutenant HB Wightman reported for duty from hospital and Lieutenant RB Smythe MC, was admitted to hospital, sick.

September 15<sup>th</sup>, the third anniversary of the battalion's arrival in France, was very fine. Reminiscences were in order and many recalled the departure from England and the arrival in France of the battalion. After the battalion had spent four months training in England and word to proceed to France was received on September 12<sup>th</sup>, 1915. The news was joyfully received and great excitement prevailed in camp during the next few days. Kits were overhauled and inspected, surplus baggage being packed in kit bags, and stored. The Oliver equipment was turned in and the battalion was issued with new Webb equipment such as is used by the British Armies the world over. Each man was issued with 120 rounds of ball ammunition, field dressing, gas helmet, and all final preparations for the trenches made. The Transport, Machine Gun Section and some of the signalers left Sandling for the front in charge of Major CC Bennett on September 12<sup>th</sup> 1915. The party went via Southampton and Havre.

Two days afterward – on September 14<sup>th</sup> – the remainder of the battalion left for France. Under Lieut-Colonel William St Pierre Hughes the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion fell in for the last time on the West Sandling parade ground just at dusk and moved by a circuitous route to Folkestone. Rain fell heavily, and by the time they reached the pier at Folkestone, officers and men were soaking wet, and were glad to crowd into the warm cabins. Those who had conjured up visions of cheering thousands lining the route and starting on the final stage of their journey to the trenches to music of brass bands were doomed to disappointment. Strict march discipline was observed, talking and smoking being prohibited, and the most secluded route taken. Only a few belated wayfarers were abroad when the battalion reached Folkestone and proceeded to embark. On the transport each man was furnished with a life belt, which he was ordered to strap on, and about midnight the churning of the screws told the battalion that it was at last bound for France.

The sea was very rough, and many who had escaped sea sickness all the way across the broad Atlantic, succumbed to the malady in the short choppy waves of the English Channel. Over half the distance had been covered when a signal message was flashed from one of the destroyers acting as escort ordering the transport to put back to Folkestone. The cause, it was said, was that a mine had gone adrift in the channel and until it had been secured, navigation was unsafe. Some of the men who had got to sleep, were much surprised on being awakened, to learn that though they had been sailing so long, they were still in Folkestone. The sea-sick ones were very glum at the prospects of having to endure the agonies of Mal-de-Mer all over again, but, next morning the sea had abated considerably, and the voyage across was very pleasant.

The battalion arrived in Boulogne about nine o'clock, and it was with a distinct thrill that they first set foot on French soil. It was remarked that the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion had been the first to cross the channel in daylight. Little time was lost in disembarking and forming up on the docks. The 21<sup>st</sup>, headed by the pipe band, which, in honour of the occasion, accomplished "La Marsilisse" and bugle band playing French airs, marched through the streets of Boulogne, following the route over which, so many months before, had passed the "contemptible little army" which had saved France from the Huns and so upset the plans of Kaiser Bill. Cheered on their way by French soldiers and civilians, they marched to a rest camp just outside the city, where all were glad to throw off their heavy packs and enjoy a well earned rest. French people in hundreds visited the camp, and the inevitable small boy who, be he French, English or Canadian, must always be on hand when anything out of the ordinary is going on, quickly made friends with the men from Canada. Time after time the camp was cleared by Military Police and Picquets, but the youngsters only reappeared in larger numbers.

The battalion rested during the afternoon and at eight o'clock that night fell in and marched to the station where they entrained for St Omer. That ride will not be forgotten by members of the old 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion. Cattle trucks had been fitted up for the transportation of troops and in there the men piled, forty to a car. St Omer was reached about 2.00 am, and here the battalion was joined by the Transport and Details under Major Bennett who had come from Havre.

Then commenced the long march to the trenches, undoubtedly the hardest ever tempted by the battalion. It was surely a test of physical fitness for those men. Many of them wore Canadian boots, and they were unsuitable for the hard cobbled roads of France. Their packs were full and each man carried his full compliment of kit and ammunition. Only those who have carried a sixty pound pack, rifle, equipment, ammunition, water bottle, haversack, smoke helmet and the various other parts of a soldier's equipment along the cobblestone roads of France under a broiling September sun, can understand what this march meant. Halts were made ten minutes to every hour, and they threw themselves down by the roadside eager for the few minutes respite. Packs sat heavily on the backs, and like the "Little old man of the sea" seemed to grow heavier at each mile. Feet were blistered and sore, and perspiration almost blinded them, but their spirits never flagged. They were on their way to the trenches. After months of training, they were at least nearing the goal of their ambition so they were happy, and though it sometimes cost an effort they joked and sang as they covered the weary miles. At night they halted in the fields and the barns along the route, and it is safe to say they needed no lullaby to send them to sleep. That the months of hard training in Canada and England had not been in vain was shown on this march, the first of the many which the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion was to make in France and Belgium. Their splendid physical condition told, and though the end of each day found them tired, it also brought them nearer the front line, and all were anxious to get into the big game.

Departing from St Omer the battalion marched all night, making its first halt at RENESURE, arriving at 7.00 am. The Cookers, the gift of patriotic friends of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, accompanied the unit and were never more appreciated than when breakfast was served from them in a large field on the way. A rest of several ours was given here and at 11.00 am the fell in and continued on to Eecke, which point was reached at 6.00 pm. Here the night was spent and on the following day, the battalion was inspected by Major-General Alderson, General Officer Commanding Canadians in France. General Alderson addressed a few remarks to the battalion in which he complimented them on their fine appearance, spoke of the high standard which had been maintained by the Canadians and expressed his confidence in both officers and men of the battalion. A rumour had spread that the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion would not go into the trenches for a week of two, but this was discredited by General

Alderson, who informed the battalion they would go into the firing line immediately. This news was received with cheers and was the sole topic of conversation in billets that night.

On September 18<sup>th</sup> Lieutenant-Colonel Hughes, accompanied by Major EW Jones, Major TF Elmitt, Major SW Gray, Captain F Scott, Captain AH Stroud, Lieutenant FD Raymond and Lieutenant HW Cooper as well as Battalion Sergeant-Major Gilbert and a number of NCOs left billets at 6.00 am and proceeded to the trenches which the battalion was to take over. The battalion under command of Major CC Bennett started early in the morning on the last lap of the journey to the trenches. A halt was made near BALLIEUL shortly after mid-day where dinner was served, and after a rest proceeded to DRANOUTER where they went under canvas. This day was particularly hot and all suffered from the intense heat.

*(TRANSCRIBER'S NOTE: The following paragraph is crossed out by pencil)*

*Some were forced to fall out but caught up again as quickly as possible and when on the following day, Sunday, September 19<sup>th</sup>, a muster parade was held, the battalion was reported present and correct.*

After three years service in France, the personnel which accompanied the battalion from England on September 15<sup>th</sup>, 1915, still serving in France is as follows:

Lieut-Colonel HE Pense DSO, MC, Officer Commanding, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion, Major GSS Bowerbank MC, Second-in-Command, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion, Major HW Cooper, attached 3<sup>rd</sup> Army School of Instruction, Major JH Sills DSO, 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, Major AP Miller, DSO, MC, Canadian Forestry Corps and Captain FD Raymond MC, Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion. Also 182 other ranks carried on the strength of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion.

16.9.18 Lieutenants JR Smith MC, VR Ullman and AM Scott reported from hospital for duty on this date.

Lieutenant VR Ullman, who was transferred to this unit from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on July 22<sup>nd</sup> 1916 was wounded at the Somme on September 15<sup>th</sup> 1916, and evacuated to England. In January 1917 he returned to France and rejoined the battalion as a platoon commander. While serving in this capacity, at Vimy, in April 1917 he was gassed and transferred to England for treatment. When he had recovered from the ill effects of the gas he was attached to the Russian Embassy, London England, for duty. While serving at this office he was awarded the Russian Order of St Stanislus. Early this year he gave up his position with the Russian Embassy to rejoin the battalion, but, upon arrival in France, was retained at the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC, for duty as an instructor, until August 7<sup>th</sup> 1918, on which date he rejoined the unit.

In the attack carried out by the battalion near GUEMAPPE on August 26<sup>th</sup> this officer received slight wounds, which resulted in his being confined to hospital until 16<sup>th</sup> September, on which date he reported for duty and was appointed to command "A" Company.

18.9.18 On this date Lieutenant ES Webb proceeded to England on leave of absence. The following officers who were wounded in the attacks carried out by the battalion on August 26<sup>th</sup>, 27<sup>th</sup> and 28<sup>th</sup> were posted to Eastern Ontario Regimental Depot, Seaford England, Captain F McPhun, Captain NJ MacCrimmon, Lieutenants AW May MC, HC Cameron MC, FC Johnstone and PG Hall.

19.9.18 Captain FD Raymond MC, reported from hospital and resumed his duties as Adjutant. A draft of twenty four other ranks arrived from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Divisional Wing, CCRC.

20.9.18 The undermentioned officers were posted to Eastern Ontario Regimental Depot Seaford, England, Lieutenants W Currie MC, MM, GA Phillips, and J Rutherford. Eighty other ranks reported to the Battalion as reinforcements and after standing orders had been read and explained to them, were allotted to companies.

22.9.18 A draft of 36 other ranks reported to the battalion as replacements. All reinforcements were inspected by the Officer Commanding, also the Transport and Rear Details.

24.9.18 Captain FK Ludlow reported for duty from leave of absence on September 24<sup>th</sup> 1918 and Lieutenant JR Smith MC, proceeded to England on leave of absence. Captain JG Wiggins proceeded to Base Depot, Canadian Forestry Corps, for duty, on this date.

AREA NEAR REINCOURT 25/9/18 to 28/9/18 During the 26<sup>th</sup> and 27<sup>th</sup> September the battalion remained in bivouac area in U.27.b & d. (Ref Sheet 51.B 1/40000). The 26<sup>th</sup> September was devoted to refitting and completing the kits of all other ranks. Bathing parades were carried out at the Divisional Baths, Hendecourt, on September 27<sup>th</sup>. Lieutenant HM Pattison reported to the battalion as a reinforcement and was posted to "A" Company. 805458 Corporal EH Turner and 805693 Private DN Duffy proceeded to England to attend Canadian Training School, with views to obtaining commissions.

HINDENBURG SUPPORT LINE 28/9/18 to 30/9/18 On the afternoon of September 28<sup>th</sup> the battalion moved to Hindenburg Support Line at D.4.c. (Ref Sheet 57.C 1/40000) with battalion headquarters located at D.4.c.50.20. This move was in conjunction with the moves of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division, due to operations by the Canadian Corps in the area. Our division was held in Corps Reserve having held the line up to a day before zero. On the afternoon of September 29<sup>th</sup>, the rear details, who had remained at area near Reincourt joined the battalion.

30.9.18 September 30<sup>th</sup> was very quiet and the battalion rested. In the afternoon a message from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade warned the battalion to be ready to move at two hours notice. This move did not take place during the day.

The ration strength of the battalion on September 30<sup>th</sup> was:

Officers	28
Other Ranks	821

Attention is drawn to Appendices "W", "X", "Y" and "Z" attached.

(signed by HE Pense) Lieutenant-Colonel  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion

SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 213

Ref Sheet  
LENS 1/200000

2<sup>nd</sup> September 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from present area to BEAURAINS (M.10.d.95.50) today, 2<sup>nd</sup> September 1918
- 2 Battalion will fall in at 1.15 pm and march off at 1.30 pm in the following order:  
  
Specialists, Communication and Headquarters Sections, A, B,C, & D Companies, QM and Transport Section.  
  
DRESS: - Battle Order  
  
ROUTE: - WANQUENTIN – WARLUS – DAINVILLE – ACHICOURT – BEAURINS
- 3 All surplus baggage and unnecessary stores will be stored in WANQUENTIN under supervision
- 4 Advance party in charge of Lieut Waters will proceed ahead and arrange for the billeting of the battalion
- 5 Companies will report arrival in new area to Battalion Headquarters

(sgd) JG Wiggins Captain  
for Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 214

Ref Map 51.S 1/40,000

Copy No 15  
Sept 3<sup>rd</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move from present location to an area to be allotted between CHERISY and WANCOURT, on the afternoon 3<sup>rd</sup> inst.
- 2 The Battalion will parade by Companies on private parade grounds at times as under:

Specialists	)	
Communication	)	4.45 pm
Headquarters	)	
“A” Company		4.50 pm
“B” Company		5.00 pm
“C” Company		5.10 pm
“D” Company		5.20 pm
QM Stores		5.25 pm
Bands		5.30 pm
Transport will follow in rear of the Bands		

50 yards interval will be maintained between Sections and Platoons. Dress: - Fighting order, SBRs carried at alert position.



3 Guides will meet the Battalion at X Roads this side of WANCOURT, (N.22.b.30.50)

4 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by JG Wiggins)  
Captain for  
Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by orderly at 2.50

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	RSM
2	"A" Company	10	TO
3	"B" Company	11	QM
4	"C" Company	12	Brass Band
5	"D" Company	13	Pipe Band
6	Specialists	14	Office
7	Communication	15-17	War Diary
8	MO		

SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 215

Reference Sheet  
51.B 1/40000

5<sup>th</sup> September 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to DROCOURT – QUEANT LINE (V.13.B & D) today, September 5<sup>th</sup> 1918
- 2 The battalion will fall in at 1.15 pm and will march off in the following order at 1.30 pm,  
Specialists, Communication and Headquarters Sections, A, B,C, & D Companies, QM and Transport Section.
- 3 Interval of 100 yards will be observed between Companies and Transport
- 4 Advance party will proceed forward and take over from unit at present occupying area. Lieut RA Stewart will be in charge of this party.
- 5 Arrival in new area will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by runner.

(sgd) JG Wiggins Captain  
for Capt & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 11.15 am

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	8	Communication Section
2	Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-16	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 216

Ref Map 51.b. 1/40,000

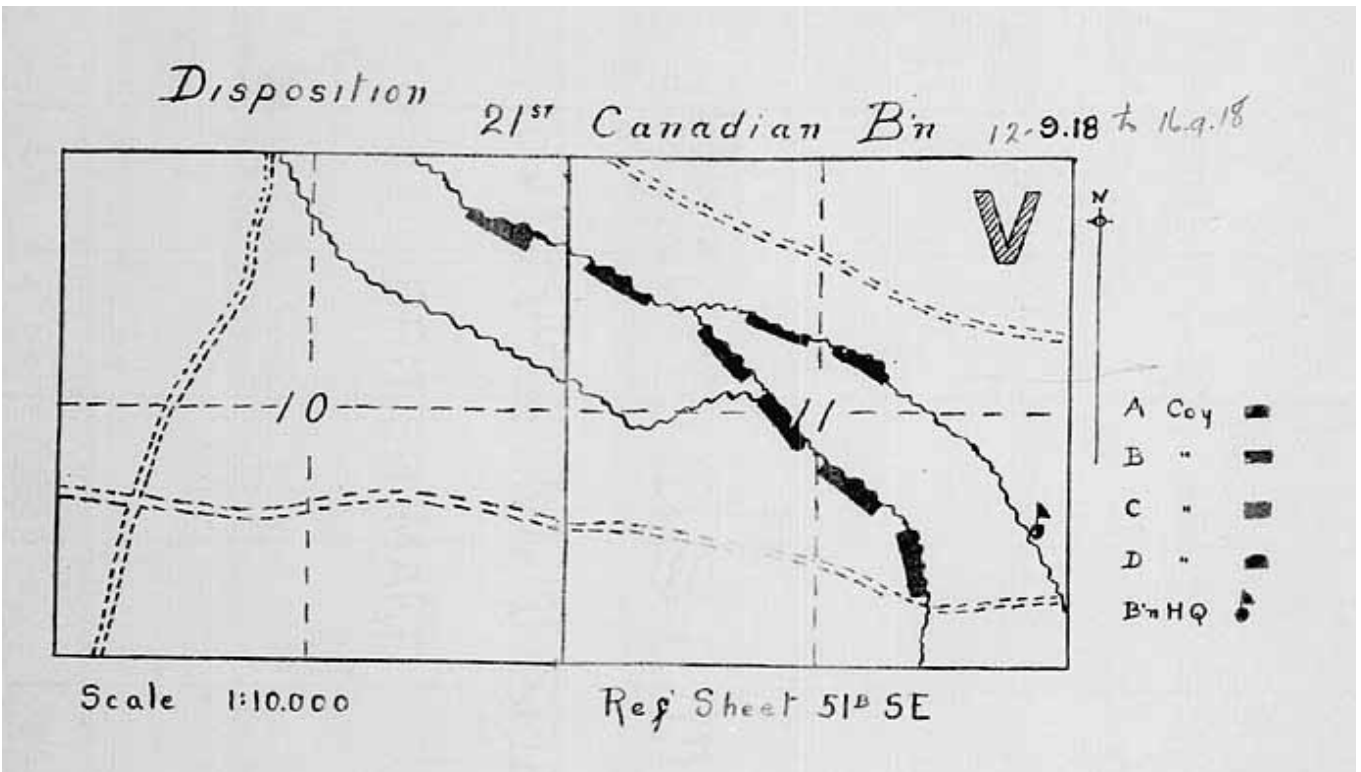
September 12<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in RESERVE on the night of 12<sup>th</sup>/13<sup>th</sup> September 1918
- 2 Companies and Sections of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve corresponding units of the 27<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. Battalion Headquarters will be located at V.11.d.85.65.
- 3 The Battalion will parade by Companies at 7.15 pm on private parade grounds. Specialists Section will move off at 7.30 pm, followed by Communication Section, Headquarters, and Companies at 100 yard intervals between Companies and 50 yard intervals between Platoons.  
  
DRESS: - Fighting Order with greatcoats.  
  
Lewis Gun Limbers will follow in rear of Companies.
- 4 Advance party of 1 Officer and 2 NCOs per Company and 1 NCO for Sections will report to Lieut EB Smythe at Transport Lines at 5.30 pm ready to proceed forward to take over.
- 5 Two guides per Company, 1 guide for Battalion Headquarters of the 27<sup>th</sup> Battalion will meet incoming unit at CROSS ROADS, V.10.c.30.60.
- 6 The Transport Officer will arrange to deliver wet rations and water, dry rations will be issued to the men before moving off. Companies and Sections will arrange to take necessary dixies up to make tea.
- 7 Completion of relief will be sent to Battalion Headquarters by runner, using code word "WOLF and time"
- 8 Disposition sketches will be submitted to Battalion Orderly Room before 7.00 am 13<sup>th</sup> inst. All usual line reports will be submitted.
- 9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by JG Wiggins)  
Captain for  
Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Battalion

Issued by runner at 6.00 pm

Copy No 1	Officer Commanding	8	Communication
2	27 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	9	MO
3	"A" Company	10	TO & QM
4	"B" Company	11	RSM
5	"C" Company	12	File
6	"D" Company	13-15	War Diary
7	Specialists		



SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 217

Sept 16<sup>th</sup> 1918

Ref 51.B  
1/40000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Left Front Line on the night of 16<sup>th</sup>/17<sup>th</sup> September, 1918
- 2 Relief will be carried out as follows:
  - "A" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "C" Coy 18<sup>th</sup> Bn in Reserve
  - "C" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "D" Coy 18<sup>th</sup> Bn in Support
  - "B" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "A" Coy 18<sup>th</sup> Bn in Right Sector
  - "D" Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will relieve "B" Coy 18<sup>th</sup> Bn in Left Sector
- 3 Rations will be carried forward by companies from present location. After tonight they will be carried up by Reserve Company
- 4 All trench Stores, Maps, defence schemes, etc will be turned over to incoming units, receipts taken and forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 6.00 am 17<sup>th</sup> September 1918
- 5 Disposition sketch will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 5.00 am 17<sup>th</sup> September, 1918
- 6 Guides for "B", "C", and "D" Companies will be at 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion Headquarters at 8.30 pm

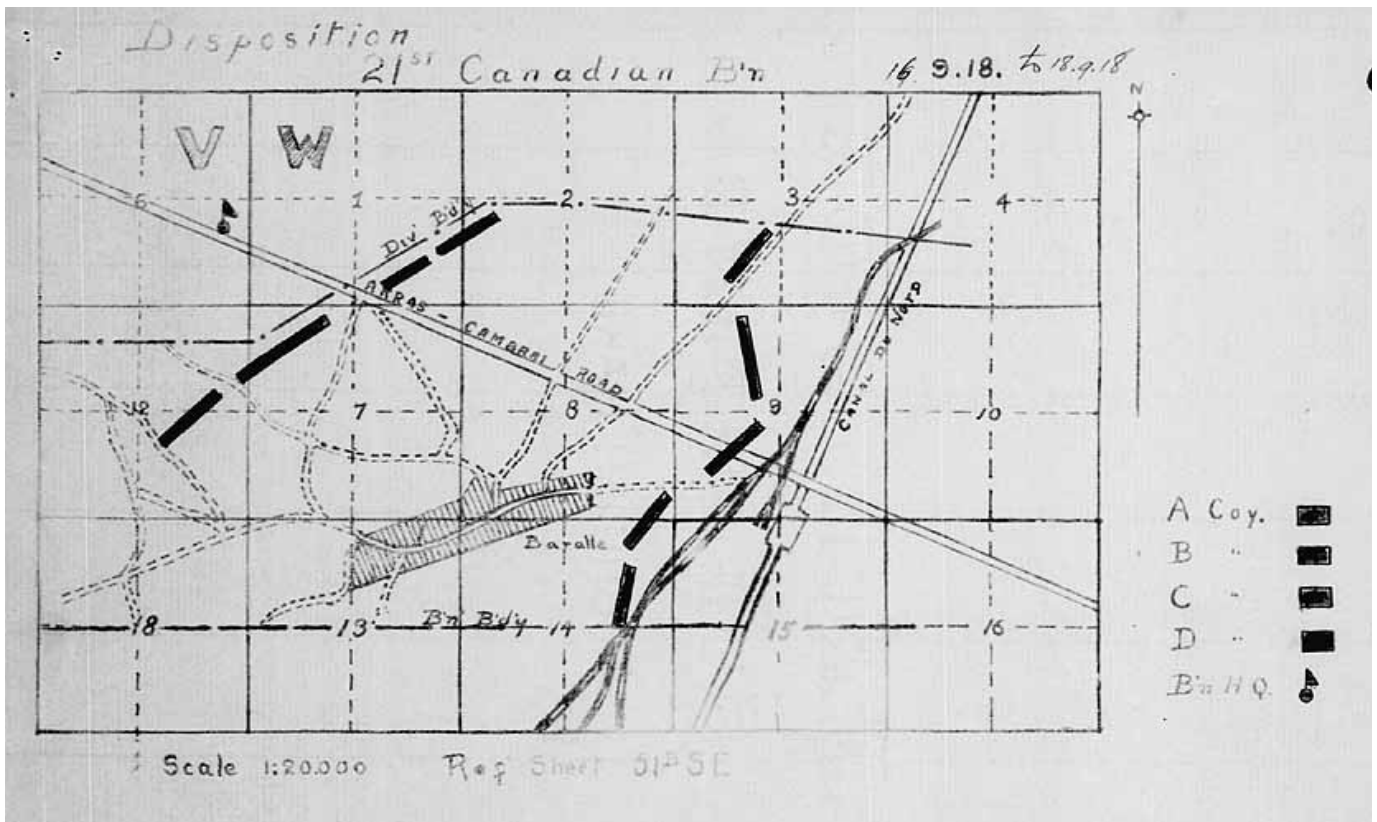
7 Relief complete will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word "Chicago"

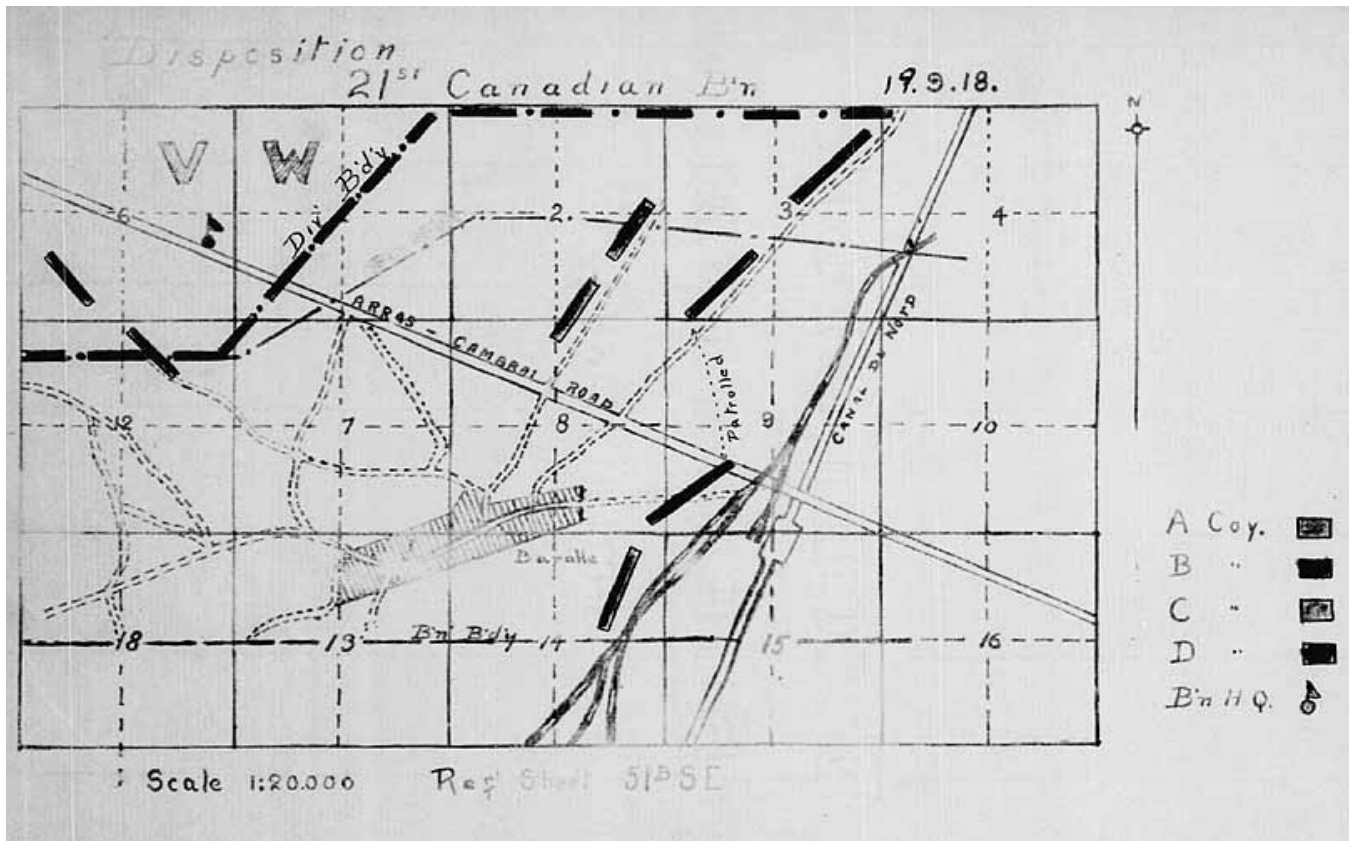
8 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) JG Wiggins Captain  
for Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 5.10 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	8	Communication Section
2	Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-16	War Diary





SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 218

Ref Sheet  
51.B 1/40000

September 20<sup>th</sup> 1918

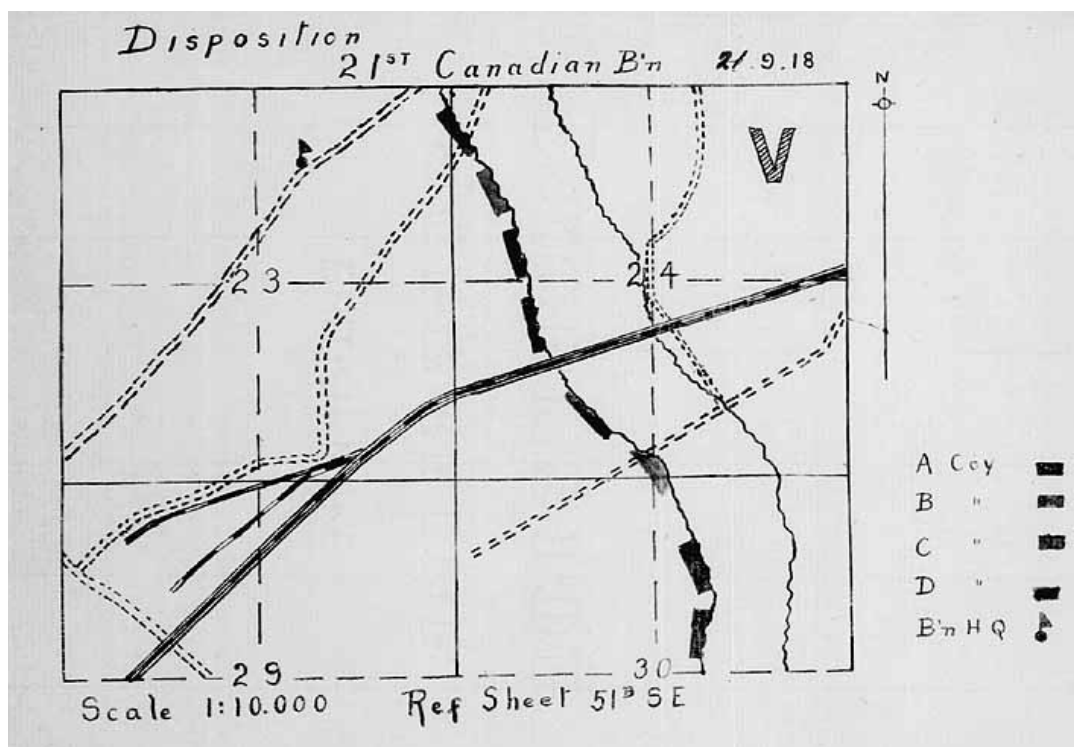
- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Sector Front Line, on the night of 20<sup>th</sup>/21<sup>st</sup> September 1918
- 2 Units of 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will be relieved by Units of the 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion as under:
  - "B" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "C" Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - "D" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "D" Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - "A" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "A" Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - "C" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn by "B" Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion
  - Sections will be relieved by corresponding sections
- 3 On completion of relief the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will move to positions formerly occupied by 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in BUISSY SWITCH
- 4 Guides for 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be as follows:
  - For Left Front Line Company at Battalion Headquarters
  - For Left Support Company at Battalion Headquarters
  - For Right Front Line Company at Battalion Headquarters
  - For Right Support Company at V.13.c.8.3.

- 5 All Trench Stores will be turned over to incoming Battalion, receipts taken and turned over to Battalion Headquarters in duplicate. Advance parties will take over, Trench Stores, Maps, Defense Schemes, etc, in new positions. All receipts together with disposition sketch to be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 6.00 am, 21<sup>st</sup> inst.
- 6 Company Commanders will ensure that all Verey Pistols, Periscopes, Petrol Tins, etc, are carried out with them.
- 7 Rations and water will be delivered to new Battalion Headquarters by Limber
- 8 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word "Bandmaster and time"
- 9 Arrival in new location will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by runner
- 10 Brigade password for night of September 20<sup>th</sup>/21<sup>st</sup> 1918, - "STONE"
- 11 Acknowledge

(sgd) JG Wiggins  
 Captain  
 For Captain & Adjutant  
 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion

Issued at 6.10 pm

- |           |                             |       |                       |
|-----------|-----------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| Copy No 1 | 4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde | 8     | Communication Section |
| 2         | Officer Commanding          | 9     | Medical Officer       |
| 3         | "A" Company                 | 10    | Transport Officer     |
| 4         | "B" Company                 | 11    | Quartermaster         |
| 5         | "C" Company                 | 12    | RSM                   |
| 6         | "D" Company                 | 13    | File                  |
| 7         | Specialists                 | 14-16 | War Diary             |



SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 219

Ref Sheet  
51.B 1/40000

September 23<sup>rd</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in Left Front Line on the night of 23<sup>rd</sup>/24<sup>th</sup> September 1918
- 2 Relief will be carried out as follows:  

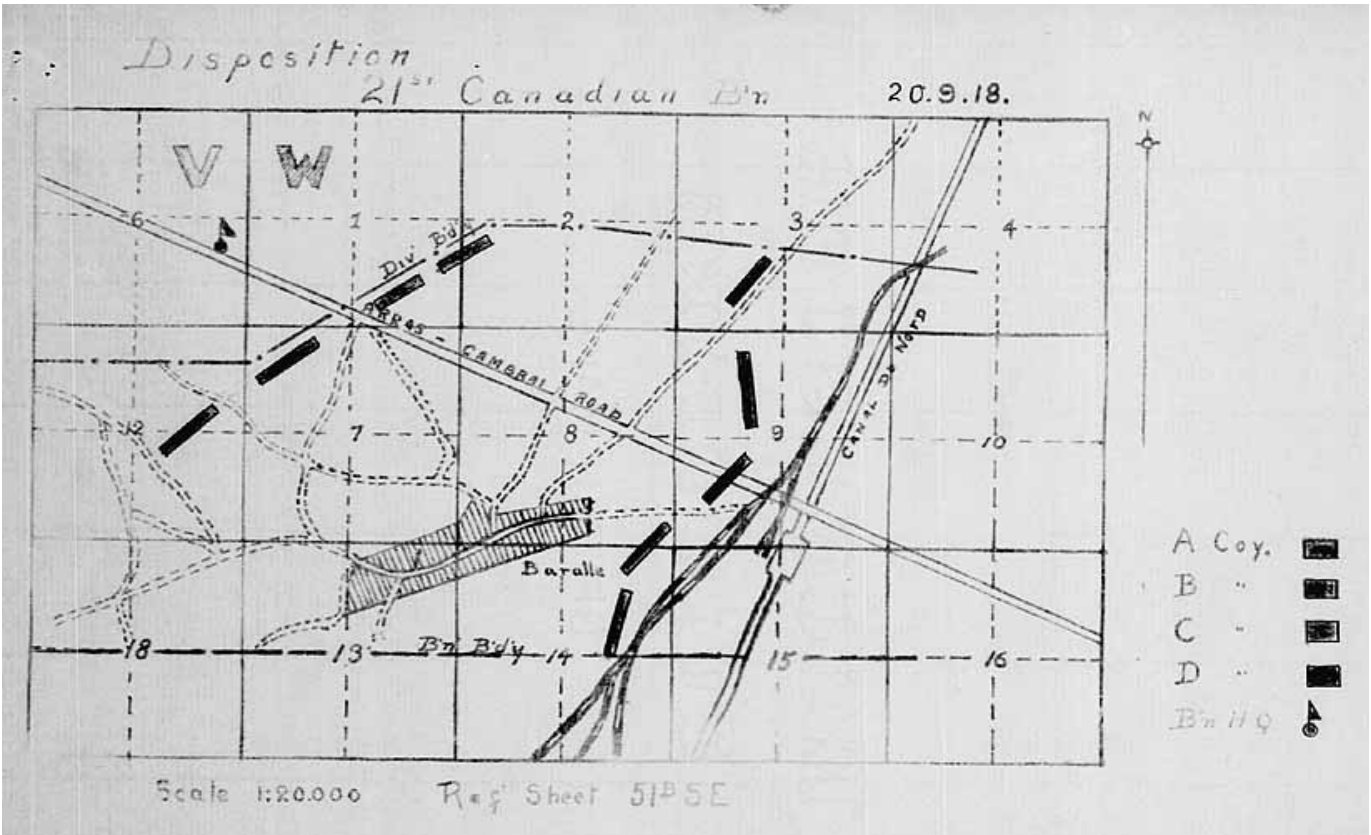
“C” Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn, less 1 platoon which will be attached to “D” Coy 21<sup>st</sup> Bn, will relieve “D” Company 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion in Left Front Line.  
“A” Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn, will relieve “C” Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
“B” Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn, will relieve “A” Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
“D” Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn, will relieve “B” Company, 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion  
Sections will relieve corresponding sections.  
Battalion Headquarters will be situated at V.6.d.7.7.  
RAP will be located in quarries at W.7.a.10.10.
- 3 All Trench Stores, Maps, Defence Schemes, etc will be taken over and list forwarded to Battalion Headquarters in duplicate, by 6.00 am 24<sup>th</sup> instant.
- 4 Guides of 18<sup>th</sup> Battalion at the rate of 4 per company will rendezvous at Joint Front Line Headquarters at W.8.d.00.50., to guide in “A” and “C” Companies at 8.00 pm  

“B” and “D” Companies will arrange to occupy their positions without guides.
- 5 Rations will be delivered to new Battalion Headquarters by limber. Front Line Companies will be carried by their supporting Companies.
- 6 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word “Lincoln” and time.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GSS Bowerbank  
Major  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 5.40 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	8	Communication Section
2	Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
3	“A” Company	10	Transport Officer
4	“B” Company	11	Quartermaster
5	“C” Company	12	RSM
6	“D” Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-16	War Diary



SECRET

Copy No 15

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 220

Ref Sheet  
51.B. 1/40000

25<sup>th</sup> September 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by elements of the 6<sup>th</sup> Y & L Battalion and 1/5<sup>th</sup> London Rifle Brigade complete, tonight September 25<sup>th</sup>/26<sup>th</sup> 1918. Units will be relieved as under:
  - "A" Company and Platoon of "C" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn, on right of ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road will be relieved by "C" Company, 6<sup>th</sup> Y & L Bn.
  - "B" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn will be relieved by "A" and "D" Coys, 6<sup>th</sup> Y & L Bn.
  - "C" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> Bn (less platoon on right of Road) will be relieved by "A" Company, 1/5<sup>th</sup> LRB
  - "D" Company, 21<sup>st</sup> will be relieved by "C" & "D" Companies, 1/5<sup>th</sup> LRB.
  - Sections and Battalion Headquarters will be relieved by corresponding section of 1/5<sup>th</sup> LR Brigade.
- 2 4 guides from "A" Company and 1 from "C" Company will meet "C" Coy, 6<sup>th</sup> Y & L Bn at V.11.c.6.4. at 7.00 pm.  
 3 guides from "C" Coy will meet "A" Company, 1/5<sup>th</sup> LRB at Battalion Headquarters at 8.30 pm  
 3 guides from "C" Coy will meet "B" Coy, 1/5<sup>th</sup> LRB at Battalion Headquarters t guide company to Old support positions recently occupied by "C" Company I W.2.b & d.  
 6 guides from "D" Company will meet "C" & "D" Companies, 1/5<sup>th</sup> LRB at Battalion Headquarters at 8.30 pm for "D" Company relief in present support position.



- 3 On completion of relief the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will proceed to CHERISY AREA. Guides from Rear will meet at Road Junction at W.11.d.10.15
- 4 Trench Stores, with the exception of Aeroplane Photos and Maps will be turned over to incoming units. Receipts in duplicate, will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 8.00 am, 26<sup>th</sup> instant
- 5 All Petrol Tins, Periscopes, Verey Pistols, Aeroplane Photos and Maps, etc will be carried out.
- 6 2 Lewis Gun Limbers will be at V.11.c.40.45 at 10.00 pm for the removal of Lewis Guns and Ammunition to rear. Companies will detail one man to proceed with Limber.
- 7 One Limber will report to Battalion Headquarters at 10.00 pm for the removal of Signal Stores etc, to rear.
- 8 Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word "ERIE" and time.
- 9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond Captain  
Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued at 6.55 pm

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	8	Communication Section
2	Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
3	"A" Company	10	Transport Officer
4	"B" Company	11	Quartermaster
5	"C" Company	12	RSM
6	"D" Company	13	File
7	Specialists	14-16	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 14

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 221

Ref Sheet  
VALENCIENS  
1/100000

28<sup>th</sup> September 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to the HINDENBURG SUPPORT LINE with Headquarters at D.4.c.5.7, today, September 28<sup>th</sup> 1918
- 2 Companies and Sections will "fall in" at 12.45 pm and will march off at 1.00 pm in the following order:  
Specialist, Communication, Headquarters, A.B.C.D Companies, QM and Transport.
- 3 One Officer and one NCO from each company, Lt RA Stewart and three Other Ranks from Headquarters will proceed ahead and take over disposition of unit occupying area.
- 4 Transport and QM Stores, less Officer's Kits, unnecessary stores, packs, Brass and Pipe Band instruments, will not go forward with the battalion.
- 5 Surplus bags, stores, etc left behind will be piled in the present area under the supervision of the Quartermaster.

- 6 The evacuation party under the command of Major CG McLaughlin, will report to Officer Commanding, 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Field Ambulance at 4.00 pm today, carrying current and rations for the subsequent day.
- 7 The burial party will proceed with the Battalion
- 8 Major GSS Bowerbank will remain behind and be in charge of the Rear Details
- 9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond Captain  
Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion

Issued at 11.45 am

Copy No	1 4 <sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Bde	8	Communication Section
	2 Officer Commanding	9	Medical Officer
	3 "A" Company	10	Transport Officer
	4 "B" Company	11	Quartermaster
	5 "C" Company	12	RSM
	6 "D" Company	13	File
	7 Specialists	14-16	War Diary

SPECIAL ORDER BY LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR ARTHUR W CURRIE, K.C.B.  
K.C.M.G., COMMANDING CANADIAN CORPS, 3<sup>RD</sup> OCTOBER, 1918

I wish to express to all groups now fighting in the Canadian Corps my high appreciation of the splendid fighting qualities displayed by them in the successful battle of the last five days.

The mission assigned to the Corps was the protection of the flank of the third and fourth Armies in their advance, and that mission has been carried out to the complete satisfaction of the Commander-in-Chief.

In your advance you overcame the very formidable obstacle of the Canal du Nord, you carried by assault the fortified Brouillon Wood, the Marcoing line, and seized the high ground extending along the Douai-Cambrai road. The towns of Oisy le Verger, Epinoy, Haynecourt, Marquion, Sains lez Marquion, Sancourt, Brouillon, Fontaine Notre Dame, Raillencourt, Saille, St Olle, Neuville St Remy, and Tilloy are now ours, and your patrols have entered Cambrai itself.

How arduous was the task assigned to you, and how valuable to the enemy was the ground that you captured, can be judged by the fact that whereas in the operation of the First, Third and Fourth British Armies thirty-six enemy divisions have been engaged to this date, twelve of these divisions, supported by eleven independent machine gun units, have been met and defeated by the Canadian Corps.

As you formed the flank you suffered enfilade and frontal artillery fire all the way, and the hundreds of machine guns captured testifies to the violence of the opposition from that source. Every evidence confirms the fact that the enemy suffered enormous casualties. He fought stubbornly and well, and for that reason your victory is the more creditable.

You have taken in this battle over seven thousand prisoners and two hundred Field and Heavy guns, thus bringing the total captured of the Canadian Corps since the 8<sup>th</sup> of August of this year to twenty-eight thousand prisoners, five hundred guns, over three thousand machine guns, and a large amount of stores of all kinds.

Even of greater importance than these captures stands the fact that you have wrested sixty-nine towns and villages and over one hundred and seventy-five square miles of French soil from the defiling Hun.

In the short period of two months the Canadian Corps – to which were attached the Thirty-Second Division for the Battle of Amiens, the Fourth and Fifty-First Divisions for the Battle of Arras, and the Eleventh Division for this Battle of Cambrai – has encountered and defeated decisively forty-seven German Divisions – that is nearly a quarter of the total German forces on the Western Front.

In the performance of these mighty achievements all the arms and branches of the Corps have bent their purposeful energy working one for all and all for one.

The dash and magnificent bravery of our incomparable Infantry have at all times been devotedly seconded with great skill and daring by our machine gunners, while the Artillery lent them their powerful and never failing support. The initiative and resourcefulness displayed by the Engineers contributed materially to the depth and rapidity of our advances. The devotion of the Medical Corps has been, as always, worthy of every praise. The administrative services, working at all times under very great pressure and adverse conditions, surpassed their usual efficiency. The Chaplain Services by their continued devotion to the spiritual welfare of the troops and their utter disregard of personal risk have endeared themselves to the hearts of everyone. The incessant efforts of the YMCA and their initiative in bringing comforts right up to the front line, in battle, are warmly appreciated by all.

The victories you have achieved are the fruit of the iron discipline you accepted freely and of the high standard you have reached in the technical knowledge of your arms and the combined tactical employment of your resources.

You must therefore with relentless energy maintain and perfect the high standard of training you have reached, and guard with jealous pride your stern discipline.

Under the lasting protection of Divine Providence, waited in a burning desire for the victory of right over might, unselfish in your aims, you are and shall remain a might force, admired by all, feared and respected by foes.

I am proud of your deeds and I want to record here my heartfelt thanks for your generous efforts and my unbounded confidence in your ability to fight victoriously and crush the enemy where ever and when ever you meet him.

(sgc) AW Currie  
Lieutenant-General  
Commanding, Canadian Corps.

## APPENDIX "W"

On September 12<sup>th</sup>, Brigadier-General R Rennie CB, relinquished his command of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, to assume the duties of a senior command in England. General Rennie took over the command of the Brigade in 1915, a few months after its arrival in France. During his tenure of office he commanded it in the battles in which the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division had been engaged. He had won the respect of Officers, NCOs and men as a thoroughly sound and considerate Brigade Commander. General Rennie took, to England, with him the best wishes of all ranks for success in his new position. To his successor, Brigadier-General GE McCuaig CMG, DSO, the battalion pledge its loyalty. General McCuaig formerly the Officer Commanding, 13<sup>th</sup> Battalion (Royal Highlanders of Canada), like General Rennie, came to France in 1915 with the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division. He has commanded the 13<sup>th</sup> Battalion for two years and his selection as our new Brigadier is a very popular one with all ranks of this unit.

## APPENDIX "X"

The death in action, at the end of August, of Captain Stanley L Cunningham MC, during the operations of the Canadian Corps east of Arras, was keenly felt by his old friends of this battalion. Captain Cunningham, of Kingston, Ontario, came out to France in 1915 with this Battalion as a Platoon Commander in "C" Company. His ability and application were soon recognized and he was appointed adjutant in the summer of 1916, which post he held until February 1917. On that date he was seconded as a staff Officer, and for some time served on the staff of the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade: later became GSO 3, of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division. This post he held at the time of his death, and it was while reconnoitering in the forward area that he was instantly killed by shell fire. Captain Cunningham's remains were interred in the cemetery at Tilloy. His loss is deeply regretted by all, particularly those who were associated with him in the early days of the Division in France. Our late Commanding Officer, Lieutenant-Colonel EW Jones DSO, had a high appreciation of the deceased.

## APPENDIX "Y"

During the latter part of September many officers and other ranks, slightly wounded in the operation of August, rejoined the battalion. They were given a ready welcome by their comrades. But the bulk of the reinforcements were new men, who's training, up to date, and not proved to be up to the standard of previous reinforcements. Due to our reinforcements at our reserve in England not being sufficiently trained, this battalion received the following who were previously posted to other units of the Canadian Corps:

29 <sup>th</sup> (Vancouver) Battalion	50 Other Ranks
19 <sup>th</sup> (Central Ontario) Battalion	36 Other Ranks
85 <sup>th</sup> (Nova Scotia) Battalion	24 Other Ranks

With a few exceptions, these men were of splendid physique, and give promise of developing into worthy successors of men, who for the past three years, have unstintingly contributed to the success of this battalion.

During the latter part of the month the Commanding Officer inspected and spoke to all drafts, briefly outlining the history of the battalion, quoting the example of a few of our outstanding NCOs and men and asking for their loyalty to the battalion and their best endeavours to add fresh laurels to its fighting record.

## APPENDIX "E"

On Sundays, September 15<sup>th</sup> and 22<sup>nd</sup>, the rear details, Transport, etc, attended a combined service of rear details of the Brigade.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

HINDENBURG 1/10/18  
SUPPORT LINE

On October 1<sup>st</sup> the Battalion, less "B" Echelon, Regt'l Transport and Rear Details, moved at 1430 hours from the Hindenburg Support Line to E.4.b and d, as per OO 222. Upon arrival at 0620 hours breakfast was served and the Battalion rested for the remainder of the day. At 1600 hours an advance party of 5 Officers and 16 ORs proceeded ahead to take over new position. The Battalion followed at 1930 hours and, although there were much Bombing by Hostile Aircraft, arrived in their new location in X.14.d at 2200 hours without casualties. The only shelters afforded were Shell and Funk holes. "B" Echelon moved at 0630 hours to an Area South-West of Bourlon (E.11.b and 12.a) and was joined by a portion of "A" Echelon at 2100 hours the same night. The weather continued fair although slightly colder. Lieut JR Gill returned from Course on this date. Capt FD Raymond MC, and Lieut EW Edwards proceeded to England on leave of absence.

3/10/18

As the weather continued fine much aerial activity was observed. The Commanding Officer accompanied by Captain RJ Rennison, proceeded forward to reconnoitre Battalion battle position in event of a hostile attack. At dusk the Battalion moved to a new location in X.19.c., one mile south-west, and was in position by 1930 hours. One of our RE8 planes was brought down under control by enemy aircraft at 2030 hours. Our artillery maintained at periods a heavy bombardment of the front. No casualties at "A" Echelon were reported for this date. On the morning of the 3<sup>rd</sup> the enemy shelled our Transport Lines at E.11.b and 12.a., resulting in the following casualties: One Officer (Capt ES Sawell MC) wounded, two ORs wounded (one at duty), eleven horses Killed and four horses wounded. At 1400 hours the transport and Rear Details moved to another Area (W.28.c). Capt Sawell had only rejoined the Battalion the previous evening from Hospital, he having been Gassed on August 15<sup>th</sup> 1918. A Draft of 156 Other Ranks arrived as reinforcements this date. The majority of these men came from Cape Breton and Prince Edward Island, while the balance were from Eastern Ontario.

4/10/18

Weather continued fine and training was carried on by Companies and Sections. Enemy attempts to bring down our Observation Balloons failed. The Transport lines were Bombed by enemy aircraft at night, but no casualties were reported. Lieut MB Button and Lieut HW Powell reported to the Battalion as reinforcements and were posted to the Specialist Section and "D" Company respectively.

5/10/18

Conditions were normal and during the morning the Commanding Officer inspected the Battalion. Enemy Planes were active during the day and at night. SAINS LES MARQUION in rear of our Echelons was shelled persistently.

Area X.19.c 6/10/18

Rain at intervals during the day, and training was carried on, as usual, in the morning. Bombing along the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road and on the rear areas during the night. Lieut-Colonel Pense attended conference of Commanding Officers at the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Headquarters at 2000 hours.

7/10/18

Weather still unsettled and conditions normal. Lieuts A Cockeram DSO, and MB Button reconnoitered the forward area during the afternoon.

8/10/18

Early in the morning the enemy bombarded the area on our immediate left. Preparations were made by Companies and Sections for a move to the forward area. The Commanding Officer attended conferences at the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Headquarters at 1900 hours and at 2015 hours. Throughout the day enemy aircraft was quite active. Routine Orders of this date announced the following awards: - Bar to MC, Capt FD Raymond MC, Lieut AW May MC. The MC, Capt NJ MacCrimmon, Capt L Frazer, Lieuts D McK Goudy, WA Stewart, HD Wightman. The DCM, RSM TF Jordan, 59530, CSM S Thomas, 59969, Sergt J Packer, 59768, L/Cpl AR Fenwick, 1093048, L/Cpl JC Long, 144933, Pte A McPhee, 633512. The recipients were congratulated by the Commanding Officer and their many friends throughout the Battalion. From this date, 59969 CSM S Thomas temporary assumed the duties of RSM.

MARCOING 9/10/18  
LINE to  
12/10/18

At 0315 hours October 9<sup>th</sup> the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion proceeded from its location in X.19.c and assembled in the MARCOING LINE in X.17.b and d. at 0500 hours. The personnel totaled 24 Officers and 582 ORs. "J" Battery, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Machine Gun Battalion, was attached. 5 Officers and 320 Other Ranks Rear Details (including transport, Quartermaster Stores etc.) were left at the transport lines at W.26.c.50.20. On October 6<sup>th</sup> an Evacuation Party of 1 Officer and 50 Other Ranks reported at SAILLY (X.29.a and c). Battalion Headquarters was established at X.17.d.20.10. At 1230 hours Orders were received from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade to proceed to S.23.d., and the Battalion assembled in the Sunken Road at that location at 1700 hours. The enemy observed the move and shelled the Unit en route. At 1810 hours the Battalion crossed the CANAL DE L'ESCAUT over Bridge at S.30.a.85.55. and occupied billets in ESCAUDOEUVERS. Battalion Headquarters was established at T.25.a.10.25.

10.10.18 In accordance with the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade OO No 23 of October 10<sup>th</sup>, the Battalion assembled in T.19.b and d. at 0545 hours on October 10<sup>th</sup> preparatory to the attack of the Brigade through NAVES (T.23), T.16, T.10. across the EROLIN RIVER with the high ground in U.2.c as the final objective. The Battalion was in Reserve but was ordered to keep in close touch with the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (which advanced north of the Railway) and across the ERCLIN RIVER if the objective in U.2.c. was gained by the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. The Battalion advanced in artillery formation at Zero (0600 hours) to the area north-west of the railroad in T.10.e and T.16.a. Owing to the advance of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion being held up east of the ERCLIN RIVER in T.10.b and T.11.a by heavy hostile Machine Gun fire from their left, the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion remained for the day in T.10.c and T.16.a. At 1500 hours the two Support Companies crossed to the south-eastern side of the railway. Battalion Headquarters was established at T.16.a.3.2. Our casualties were Officers: wounded, 1, -- Other Ranks: Killed 1, wounded 16. Brigade was kept in touch with the situation by telephone and also by liaison.

11.10.18 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion was the right attacking Battalion of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on AVESNES-LE-SEC on October 11<sup>th</sup>. The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade OO No 24 of October 10<sup>th</sup> was received at 0045 hours. A meeting of Unit Commanders was held at Battalion Headquarters at 0100 hours when the operation was discussed and details arranged. Position was reconnoitered by Lieuts A Cockeram DSO, and GW Trollope MM, and the Battalion moved at 0200 hours to its assembly position in sunken road from T.10.b.10.20 to T.12.a.40.90. The assembly was complete at 0330 hours and Brigade Headquarters notified at 0350 hours.

The 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (left attacking Battalion) assembled immediately in rear of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. Zero hour had been set for 0900 hours. From 0530 hours onward the enemy shelled the assembly area intermittently with HE and Gas but few casualties were sustained. The hostile shelling had no effect upon the jump off at 0900 hours. The 146<sup>th</sup> Brigade attacked immediately on the right of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. The Battalion commenced its operations promptly at Zero. The enemy's retaliation was prompt, and his machine gun fire from the right caused many casualties in the first thirty minutes of the advance, but the attack continued unbroken until the advance of the whole line, right and left, was held up on the high ground south-west of AVESNES-LE-SEC. The enemy's counter measure was an attack of Tanks, and the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion after inflicting casualties, was forced to withdraw (in conjunction with units of both flanks) to the sunken road in C.31.c and d and later reorganized in the sunken road in U.1.a and T.6.b. Fifty per cent of our Officers, NCOs and Lewis Gunners became casualties during the first half hour of the action.

Battalion Battle Headquarters was established at T.12.a.95.10 with an advanced Headquarters at T.6.b.50.50. In accordance with the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade wire BM 40, the advance was resumed at 1530 hours on the 11<sup>th</sup>, the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade co-operating on the left. The sunken road in O.31.c and d was later occupied by the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, with the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the left and one Battalion of the 146<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade on the right. Casualties were evacuated by the Brigade evacuation party through RAP situated at our Battalion headquarters.

12.10.18 During the night of October 11<sup>th</sup>/12<sup>th</sup> the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade was relieved by a Brigade of the 51<sup>st</sup> Division, the 6<sup>th</sup> Gordons relieving the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. Relief was complete at 0245 hours and the Battalion proceeded to billets in ESCAUDOEUVRES, with Headquarters at T.25.a.10.25. Our casualties during the advance of the day were: Officers, killed, 3; died of wounds, 1; wounded 6; wounded at duty 2; Gassed 1: Other Ranks, killed 39; wounded 272; Missing 2.

"J" Battery, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Machine Gun Battalion, was withdrawn on October 9<sup>th</sup> but was replaced by "L" Battery which co-operated in the advance on October 11<sup>th</sup>. The Guns of this Battery were very effective during the operation, in support of our companies, and co-operating with our Lewis Gunners against the enemy's tanks.

The following Officers proceeded forward on October 9<sup>th</sup> with the Battalion for the operations north-east of CAMBRAI: Headquarters: - Lieut-Colonel HE Pense DSO, MC, Major GSS Bowerbank MC, Capt FK Ludlow (Adjutant), Lieut GW Trollope MM (LGO), Lieut A Cockeram DSO (Intel Officer), Lieut MB Button (Scout Officer), Lieut JG Caldwell (Sig Officer), Capt H Black (MO), 59969 RSM S Thomas DCM, "A" Company: - Lieuts VR Ullman, HM Pattison (Died of Wounds), JH O'Keefe (wounded), JA Grant (wounded). "B" Company: Lieuts FG Robinson, IR McKenzie (Killed), AM Scott (Killed), ES Webb (Gassed). "C" Company: Capt HT Deane MC (Wounded), Lieuts WF Ferrier MM (Killed), ST Crooks. "D" Company: Lieuts HD Wightman MC, AT Waters (Wounded), JH Northey (Wounded), HW Powell (Wounded).

Thirteen Officers of those who went forward with the Battalion became casualties on October 10<sup>th</sup>-11<sup>th</sup>. To the three – Lieuts AM Scott, IR McKenzie, and WF Ferrier – who were killed in the advance on the 11<sup>th</sup>, the highest tributes have been paid by their brother Officers and the men. The late Lieut McKenzie was the original Pipe Major of the Battalion and a leader of high principles. In January of this year he left the Battalion for England and qualified for a commission. The deceased was most highly esteemed and it was when leading his men, and fearlessly exposing himself, that he was killed by Machine Gun fire. Lieut McKenzie had joined the Battalion in Kingston, Ontario, upon organization and, with the exception of the short period in England, had seen continuous service with this unit.

Lieut AM Scott joined the Battalion on October 27<sup>th</sup>, 1916, and was a platoon commander in “B” Company. His work has been most thorough and consistent. He was a most excellent Officer in and out of the lines. In April and May of this year he particularly distinguished himself on successful patrols, which he conducted in No Man’s Land on the NEUVILLE VITASSE and MERCATEL fronts. His brother Officers and Men will remember him as one of our most loyal and courageous Officers.

Lieut WF Ferrier, also an excellent type of man, enlisted in the Battalion at Kingston, Ontario, in 1914. Soon after his arrival in France he was made an NCO, and later his Officers selected him as a prospective candidate for a commission. On January 11<sup>th</sup> 1918 he was sent to England to qualify at Bexhill. He rejoined the Battalion on August 22<sup>nd</sup> 1918, and since that time his work gave promise of advancement.

The next of kin of these Officers reside at, Strath Peffer, Rosshire, Scotland, Galt, Ontario, Invergorden, Scotland, respectively. The sympathy of the entire Battalion is extended to them.

Lieut HM Pattison, who was seriously wounded on the 11<sup>th</sup>, died later of wounds at a casualty clearing station. The deceased first joined the Battalion on October 6<sup>th</sup> 1917, but was lately evacuated to England through illness. He rejoined the Battalion in September of this year and again took over his platoon in “A” Company. The deceased Subaltern’s work was most praiseworthy and to his parents, the deepest feelings of those who have served with him in this Battalion are extended at this time.

Lieut HW Powell was the only Officer casualty on the 10<sup>th</sup>. He, with Lieuts Waters, Northey, O’Keefe and Grant had recently joined the Battalion. They had all been promoted from the ranks.

Capt HT Deane MC, who, except for a short time in England recovering from wounds received at Hill 70 in August 1917, has seen continuous service with this Battalion, was wounded shortly before Zero on the 11<sup>th</sup>, but advanced some distance with his Company before seeking Medical attention. This Officer’s fighting record is an enviable one. He was recently awarded a Bar to his MC for his gallantry in the operations east of ARRAS, August 26<sup>th</sup> to 28<sup>th</sup>.

Lieut ES Webb, who has seen 13 months service with this Battalion, and is considered a splendid Officer, was Gassed in the early stage of the advance on the 11<sup>th</sup>.



Major GSS Bowerbank MC, and Lieut MB Button were slightly wounded on the 11<sup>th</sup>, but remained at duty. Too much cannot be said of the gallantry, exercise of control and leadership displayed by all, particularly those who were fortunate enough to come out of the action unwounded.

- ESWARS 12/10/18 At 1630 hours on October 12<sup>th</sup> the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion received orders to move to the ESWARS area. Lieut MB Button and billeting party proceeded ahead, and with the Commanding Officer, arranged for billeting of the Battalion in the Village and south-western outskirts. Battalion Headquarters was established at T.7.b.05.90. The move was complete by 1915 hours. "A" and "B" Echelons, Transport and Rear Details rejoined the Battalion on route.
- 13/10/18 The day was spent quietly by the Battalion which rested in ESWARS. Routine Orders of this date announced the following decorations: Bar to Military Cross: Capt HT Deane MC, The Military Cross: Lieut VR Ullman (Order of St Stanislaus), the Distinguished Conduct Medal: 675739 Sergt EH Draper, 675360 Sergt DF Garlick. The recipients were heartily congratulated by the Commanding Officer and their many friends in the Battalion.
- 14/10/18 The Battalion left ESWARS at 1600 hours and proceeded to take over Support Area of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade north-east of IWUY. The relief was complete at 2115 hours and the night remained quiet. No casualties were reported. The dispositions of the companies were as follows: "B" Company, Right front, "D" Company, Left front. "A" Company, Right Rear. "C" Company, Left Rear. Battalion Headquarters was at Chateau N.29.c.65.40. Lieut EW Edwards on returning from attachment to the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade was posted to Battalion Headquarters. The Battalion Transport and Rear Details remained at ESWARS.
- 15/10/18 The day passed very quietly there being little aerial activity as the day was dull with poor visibility. Enemy shelled IWUY and the road near "A" Company Headquarters, but no casualties were reported.
- 16/10/18 During the day, which was very quiet, the Commanding Officer visited the companies. Except for a little shelling of Headquarters there was nothing to report. Lieut DK MacDonnell arrived as reinforcement and was taken on the strength as from 15-10-18.
- 17/10/18 The weather continued fine and conditions were normal. The Commanding Officer visited the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion to arrange for relief. Bathing was carried out by "B" and "D" Companies at the Baths at ESWARS. On this date Lieut D McK Goudy MC, was slightly wounded by shell-fire. Lieut-Colonel HE Pense DSO, MC, proceeded on leave to England from this date. During his absence Major GSS Bowerbank MC, assumed command of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion.
- 18/10/18 Very misty weather set in and an inter-company relief was effected to allow the two Forward Companies to bathe. The enemy withdrew on our front so the relief of the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion by the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion was cancelled. Routine Orders of this date announced the following promotions: Temporary Captain (Acting Major) GSS Bowerbank MC to be Temporary Major from 10-6-18. Temporary Lieut HT Deane MC, to be Temporary Captain. Temporary Lieutenant (Acting Captain) L Frazer to be Temporary Captain.
- 19/10/18 The weather was fine and the day was quiet. The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved to WAVERCHAIN-SOUX-FAULK at 1315 hours. Battalion Headquarters location was the Chateau at WAVERCHAIN. The Rear Details moved to ESTRIN.

20/10/18 The day passed very quietly and, owing to the continued rainfall, there was not aerial activity to report.

21/10/18 The weather continued misty and dull all day. A Fatigue party of 2 Officers and 100 Other Ranks reported to the Engineers to work on the roads. The Rear Details joined the Battalion from ESTRIN at 1630 hours.

AUBERCHICOURT 22/10/18 The Battalion moved to billets in AUBERCHICOURT, arrived at 1230 hours and the Battalion Headquarters was established at 36 CHARLES DUCRET, Routine Orders of this date announced the death of Lieut WH Mackey on 5-10-18 of wounds received in action. Lieut RA Stewart returned from leave on this date and it was announced that Capt NJ MacCrimmon had been awarded a Bar to his Military Cross.

23/10/18 During this period the weather remained fair and training was carried  
to on by Companies and sections. Capt DJ More MC, having arrived as  
31/10/18 reinforcement, was taken on strength and reassumed command of "C"  
Company. Routine Orders of October 24<sup>th</sup> announced the death of Lieut HM  
Pattison, on the 12<sup>th</sup> instant, of wounds received in action. Captain L Fraser  
proceeded on leave of absence to England from 25-10-18. A Brigade Church  
parade was held on Sunday October 26<sup>th</sup> at which No CCS was represented  
by several Nursing Sisters. There was also a special Roman Catholic Parade  
at the ANICHE Parish Church at 1000 hours which was conducted by Captain  
RJ McDonald MC (CF)

On October 28<sup>th</sup> the undermentioned Officers proceeded on leave of  
absence to England: Captain RJ Renison (CF), Lieuts A Cockeram DSO, RL  
Perry and ST Crooks. The following NCOs proceeded on this date to England  
to attend Cadet Course with a view to qualifying for commissioned rank: 59918  
CSM RS Stewart MM, 412665 Sergt FT Belyea, 157540 L/Cpl AS Black.

On October 29<sup>th</sup> the Nursing Sisters of No 1 Canadian Casualty  
Clearing Station were invited to dinner and eight were free to accept our  
humble hospitality, four of whom were old friends of the Battalion, having  
crossed with this unit on the Metagama from Canada almost four years ago.  
Other guests were Captain HM Wallis MC, Captain TC Tidy and Lieut C  
Menpes MC. After dinner Bandmaster Hinchey, who had just received some  
new music, favoured the party with a series of Waltzes, Fox-trots and One-  
steps which were greatly appreciated. The strict orders of No 1 Canadian  
Casualty Clearing Station were responsible for an all too early termination of  
the party.

The twelve days rest and training period spent in AUBERCHECOURT  
was most pleasant and the most beneficial experienced by this Battalion. The  
billets were excellent and practically every man had the opportunity of  
renewing his acquaintance with a spring bed with a real mattress on it. Many  
of the billets had Pianos and each evening the whole area rang with music,  
classic and rag-time, which reminded all of happier days and some (the  
Veterans) of the marvelous change that has taken place since the arrival of  
this Battalion in France, more than three years ago. The training facilities  
were good and the Battalion Parade Ground was just outside of the town area.  
A twenty target 200 yard range was constructed by Brigade about one  
Kilometre distance. Training commenced at 730 hours daily and stopped  
1230 hours, the afternoon being devoted to sports. The training consisted of  
Physical Training, Ceremonial Marching exercises, Drill, Gas instructions,  
Musketry and Tactical schemes, and terminated with a Brigade Staff Ride for  
the Officers and the firing of the Application, Grouping and Rapid Musketry  
exercises at the ranges on the 31<sup>st</sup> inst.

During the training period the Battalion was visited daily by Lieut-Colonel LH Millen DSO, Acting Brigadier, and Captain HM Wallis MC, Brigade Major who, with the Brigade staff, did everything possible to assist in the training.

On October 31<sup>st</sup> the Battalion was honoured by a visit (unofficially) from HRH The Prince of Wales. Captain FD Raymond MC, who was in charge of the training, was presented to His Royal Highness by Lieut-Colonel Millen DSO. He in turn presented Captain DJ More MC, Lieut GD Woodcock and Lieut DK MacDonnell. His Royal Highness talked with Captain Raymond for fifteen minutes and seemed greatly interested in the training and the welfare of the Battalion.

The Battalion pays a high tribute to the valour and consistent service with this Battalion of the following Non-Commissioned Officers and men who have laid down their lives in the discharge of their duty during the present month: 412201 Sergt RA Clarke, 1067292 Sergt E Mck Sullivan MM, 603052 Sergt ST Tilbrook MM, 636267 Sergt J Turriff, 144553 L/Sgt AT King, 59105 Corpl AS Brown-original-, 204326 Corpl FW Heath, 724261 L/Cpl CH McInnis MM, 880859 Pte E Barry, 3055137 Pte KF Bartley, 1027406 Pte A Bates, 3320631 Pte JR Brown, 59126 Pte G Byng-original-, 3057700 Pte JT Carroll, 4055902 Pte RA Burns, 1093415 Pte ST Connaghan, 59211 Pte M Craig-original-, 195904 Pte W Curtin, 3057524 Pte G Cobbledick, 3057267 Pte R Crarey, 634018 Pte WE Campbell, 4021569 Pte G Chartrand, 3057587 Pte A DeMarsh, 1036400 Pte RD Dickinson, 3108133 Pte WH Edmiston, 2507375 Pte J Foley, 3320041 Pte S Hall, 640016 Pte M Hodge, 634085 Pte W Hartell, 1087349 Pte F Henderson, 246105 Pte H Hopkinson, 663276 Pte M Kaley, 3106124 Pte C Knapp, 1051064 Pte MEM Kemp, 2356573 Pte T Kenny, 2138250 Pte IP Lehman, 3320611 Pte F Leon, 3320380 Pte J Levert, 455849 Pte JR Landar, 3108190 Pte HC Langmaid, 2021710 Pte J Mansfield, 4080299 Pte D Melandy, 59697 Pte JR McBride-original- 3320242 Pte GE McGregor, 4021085 Pte JR MacPherson, 636477 Pte DA McKenzie, 195694 Pte WJ Newnham, 4020966 Pte JL O'Connor, 633789 Pte FW Porter, 2137805 Pte DP Philban, 59775 Pte HJ Parkins-original- 3320687 Pte WP Reynolds, 2350311 Pte GA Ryan, 724064 Pte M Sinclair, 1069753 Pte F Silver, 2590877 Pte G Smith, 3057552 Pte JH Smith, 1093025 Pte HH St Peter, 3057473 Pte JA Storey, 3055822 Pte H Simpson, 1093245 Pte JW Switzer, 4020659 Pte FH Tryon, 1263566 Pte WT Wesley-Long, 219888 Pte E Whitefoot, 2265933 Pte TR Watson, 724304 Pte H Wood, 313 Pte N Wilson, 2356592 Pte J Wilson (*Transcriber's Note: Wilson's real name was Hugh Dodson*), 3130598 Pte W York.

Despite the numerous engagements and strenuous fighting in which the Canadian Corps participated during the month, the leave allotment was very light. 11 Officers and 90 Other Ranks was sent from this Battalion on a well earned and long expected 14 days rest.

The Ration strength of the Battalion on October 31<sup>st</sup> was:

Officers	15
Other Ranks	655

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 222

Reference Maps:

51.b SE)

57.c NE ) 1/20,000

October 1<sup>st</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, less "B" Echelon, Regtl Transport and Rear Details will move at 0430 hours this date to area in E.4.b and d.
- 2 Order of March will be as follows: Specialists, Communication and Headquarters, "A", "B", "C" and "D" Companies.
- 3 Route: - Inchy-en Artois-Cross Roads at W.27.b.00.10 thence to E.4.b and d.
- 4 On arrival in new area Companies will arrange for breakfast to be served.
- 5 "B" Echelon, Regtl Transport and Rear Details will move by above route to positions in E.11.b and 12.a.
- 6 On arrival of "B" Echelon, etc, in new area, notification will be sent to Battalion Headquarters.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

DG Woodcock Lt for  
Captain  
Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Cn Bn

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Coy	11	Medical Officer
4	OC "B" Coy	12	Transpt Officer
5	OC "C" Coy	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Coy	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 223

Reference Maps:

51.b SE)

57.c NE ) 1/20,000

October 1<sup>st</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, less "B" Echelon, Regtl Transport and Rear Details will move at 1930 hours this date to positions at present occupied by the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion, in X.14.d.
- 2 The Battalion will parade at 1915 hours and will move off in the following order: Specialists, Communication, Headquarters, "A" Coy, "B" Coy, "C" Coy, and "D" Coy. 100 yards interval will be maintained between Companies and Sections.

3 An Advance party consisting of Lieut GW Trollope MM, and 1 OR from HQ, and 1 Officer and 4 ORs per Company will proceed ahead to reconnoitre new locations.

4 On arrival in New Area Companies and Sections will forward to Battalion Headquarters locations and disposition of Units.

5 ACKNOWLEDGE

DG Woodcock Lt for  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Can Bn.

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Coy	11	Medical Officer
4	OC "B" Coy	12	Transpt Officer
5	OC "C" Coy	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Coy	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 224

Reference Maps:  
51.b SE) 1/20,000

October 3<sup>rd</sup> 1918

1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, less "B" Echelon, Regtl Transport and Rear Details will move at 1700 hours this date to area in X.19.c.

2 Units will move independently in the following order: Specialists, Communication, Headquarters, "A" Coy, "B" Coy, "C" Coy, and "D" Coy. An interval of 15 minutes will be maintained between Companies and Sections.

3 An Advance Party consisting of Lieut WG Trollope MM and 1 OR from Headquarters, and 1 Officer and 2 NCOs per Company will proceed ahead and reconnoitre new position.

4 Arrival in new area will be notified to Battalion Headquarters by runner.

5 Disposition sketch together with usual Daily Reports will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters as per recent list issued.

6 ACKNOWLEDGE

DG Woodcock, Lieut for  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Can Bn

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Coy	11	Medical Officer
4	OC "B" Coy	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Coy	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Coy	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 225

Reference Maps:

51.a SW) 1/20,000

57.b NW)

October 8<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1
  - (a) The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division will attack on "Z" day, establishing Bridge Heads over the Canal de l'ESCAUT, with a view of advancing to join up with troops of the Third Army East of Cambrai, in S.20.
  - (b) The 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will form a defensive flank on the Left, between BLECOURT and RAMILLIES
  - (c) The 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will establish Bridge Heads across the Canal de l'ESCAUT from from S.20.c.0.4 to T.19.a.5.4 and push forward and make good the line of the Railway, between A.12.a.6.3 and T.26.v.0.7, establishing Right and Left defensive flanks.
- 2 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will support the attack, and will move to the Marcoing Line in X.17.b and d tonight, October 8/9<sup>th</sup>. Assembly to be complete by 0505
- 3 Tomorrow, October 9<sup>th</sup>, will be "Z" day.
- 4 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will fall in on the Arras-Cambrai Road south-easterly, by 0315.
- 5 Dress and battle stores in accordance with our A.529 of this date.
- 6 The Quartermaster will arrange for tea to be served at 0215
- 7
  - (a) Lieut DM Goudy MC, will assume command of rear details at present at Transport Lines
  - (b) "A" Echelon transport, with three cooks, Officers' mess cart and water carts will move in accordance with administrative instructions to be issued from 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade
  - (c) Moves of evacuation and burial parties in accordance with our A.530 of this date
- 8 All ranks will be warned regarding the use of flares, very lights, etc, and given special direction as outlined in our A.531, of this date.
- 9 Watches will be synchronized at Battalion Headquarters at 0230 tomorrow, 9<sup>th</sup> instant
- 10 RAP at Battalion Headquarters until later notification

- 11 All reports to Battalion Headquarters at X.17.d.20.10
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

FK Ludlow  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Coy	11	Medical Officer
4	OC "B" Coy	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Coy	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Coy	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 226

Reference Maps:

October 9<sup>th</sup> 1918

51.B SE )  
 51.A SW ) 1/20,000  
 57.B NW )

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move forward to S.23.d, at 1300 this date.  
  
 Units will move from their present locations at that hour, observing 50 yards distance between platoons and sections.
- 2 The Quartermaster will arrange for cooks and rations to be moved to these Headquarters, where a guide, detailed by the Specialist Section, will meet and guide them to new location. Lieut MB Button, with 1 Officer and 2 NCOs per Company, and 1 NCO of each of the Communication and Specialist Sections, will proceed to new area at 1230 this date to make necessary arrangements.
- 3 Notification o location of Battalion Headquarters after arrival.
- 4 ACKNOWLEDGE

FK Ludlow  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 1205

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Coy	11	Medical Officer
4	OC "B" Coy	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Coy	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Coy	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 227

Reference Maps:  
51.A SW 1/20,000

October 9<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will cross the Canal de L'Escaut over bridge at S.30.a.85.55 at 0800 hours this date, and occupy billets in ESCAUDOEUVRES.
- 2 Battalion Headquarters and RAP will be situated at T.25.a.10.25.
- 3 "A" Echelon Transport and Quartermaster's Section will establish in S.23.d.
- 4 Lieut MB Button will proceed ahead with an advance party of 1 Officer and 3 NCOs per Company and 3 NCOs for Battalion Headquarters, communication and Specialist Sections, and arrange billets. This personnel will act as guides and will meet Companies and Sections at new Battalion Headquarters as above.
- 5 Rations will be delivered at new location as early as possible after move.
- 6 Locations of respective Company Headquarters will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters immediately upon arrival
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(Sgd) FK Ludlow  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Medical Officer
2	Commanding Officer	10	Quartermaster
3	OC "A" Company	11	Transport Officer
4	OC "B" Company	12	RSM
5	OC "C" Company	13	File
6	OC "D" Company	14-16	War Diary
7	OC Specialist Section		
8	Signalling Officer		

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 228

Reference Maps:  
51.A SW 1/20,000

October 10<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 In conjunction with the XVII Corps on the right, and the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on their left, the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will attack through the line held by the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade at 0600, 10<sup>th</sup> October, 1918.



- 2 The 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn will be on the Right  
 The 18<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn will be on the Left  
 The 20<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn will be in support of 19<sup>th</sup> Cdn Bn  
 The 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn will be in Reserve
- 3 ASSEMBLY AREA The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will assembly in T.19.b. and d.  
 Assembly to be complete at 0545 hours.

Major GSS Bowerbank MC, will be in charge of the assembly. Completion of assembly will be reported to Battalion Headquarters as para 6

- 4 (a) The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will keep in close touch with the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and, if the objective U.2.c is gained, will cross ERCLIN River, in support  
 (b) RIVER CROSSING There is a bridge across the ERCLIN River at T.5.a.5.0 and likely to be Railway Bridge in T.3.c and T.11.b  
 (c) The Battalion will advance in Artillery Formation – “B” Company, (Right), “D” Company, (Left), “A” Company in rear of “B” Company and “C” Company in rear of “D” Company.
- 5 Northern Boundary ESCAUDOEUVRES-IWUY-AVESNES-le-SEC Road  
 Southern Boundary CAMBRAI-NAVES Road
- 6 Battalion Headquarters and RAP will be established at the Chateau (T.19.c.30.70).  
 At Zero plus 60 minutes Battalion Headquarters will advance to T.16.a.30.20.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

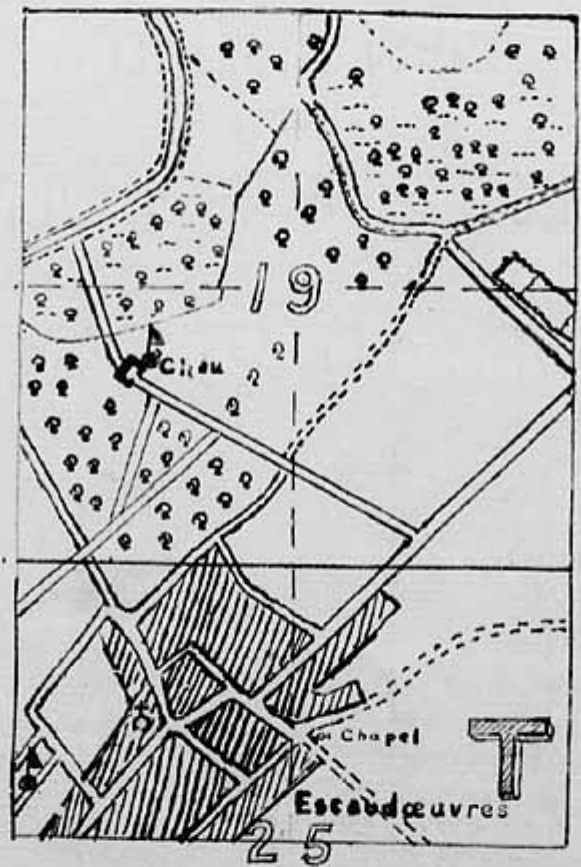
(Sgd) FK Ludlow, Captain  
 for Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Medical Officer
2	Commanding Officer	10	Quartermaster
3	OC “A” Company	11	Transport Officer
4	OC “B” Company	12	RSM
5	OC “C” Company	13	File
6	OC “D” Company	14-16	War Diary
7	Scout Officer		
8	Signalling Officer		

10-10-18

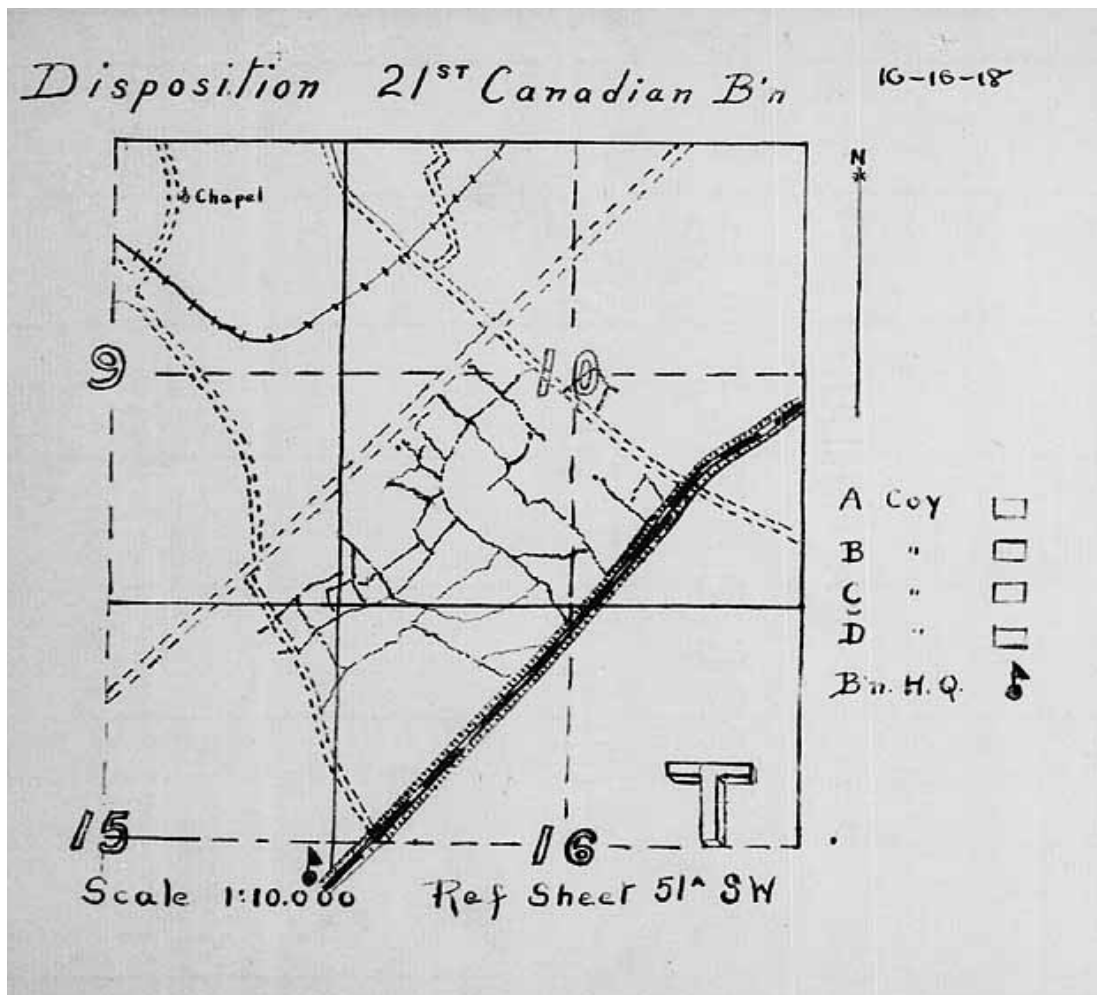
# Disposition 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian B'n



- A Coy
- B "
- C "
- D "
- B'n HQ

Scale 1:10,000

Ref. Sheet 51A SW



SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 229

Reference Maps:  
51.A SW 1/20,000

October 11<sup>th</sup> 1918

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will continue the attack tomorrow, 11<sup>th</sup> October, at 0900 hours, with the object of capturing AVESNES-le-SEC and move on to NOVELLES, and attempt to make good crossing over River ERCLIN.
- 2 The 146<sup>th</sup> Infantry Brigade will be on their right, and the 6<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on their left
- 3 Brigade Boundaries are marked on Map "A" attached.
- 4 The Brigade Assembly areas are marked on Map "A" attached.

- 5 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will attack on the Right  
The 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will attack on the Left  
Objectives and Inter-Battalion Boundary as marked on Map "A" attached  
The 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be in Support  
The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be in Reserve
- 6 (a) The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will assemble in Sunken Road, between Road  
Junction and Railway in T.12.  
(b) The 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will withdraw troops from SE of Railway after  
Assembly of 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion
- 7 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will attack with 2 Companies in the Front Line – "B" (Right,  
"D" (Left), with "A" Company (Right Support), and "C" Company (Left Support)
- Each Company will advance with 2 platoons front Line and 1 platoon in close Support.  
150 yards distance will be maintained between attacking and Supporting Companies.
- 8 The Battalion will assemble as para 6 (a). Companies and Sections will proceed from  
present location at 0200 hours. Assembly to be complete by 0345 hours. Lieut A Cockeram  
DSO, will be in charge of the Assembly and will post guides, from Specialist Section, en route.
- 9 Instructions regarding dress, extra SAA, SOS Rockets, very lights, bombs etc, in  
accordance with our A.529 of 8<sup>th</sup> instant.
- 10 Light Signals in accordance with our A.530 of 8<sup>th</sup> instant
- 11 Particular attention will be given as to movement after daylight
- 12 Prisoners will be despatched to Battalion Headquarters without delay, the necessary  
escort being detailed by Companies.
- 13 "L" Battery, CMGC will be attached to the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 14 Watches will be synchronized at Battalion Headquarters at 0145 hrs this date
- 15 Battalion Headquarters and RAP will be established at T.16.a.3.2. until zero hour.  
Advanced Headquarters will be established at T.12.a.9.1. Battalion Headquarters will advance  
to the latter location at Zero plus 45 minutes.
- 16 ACKNOWLEDGE

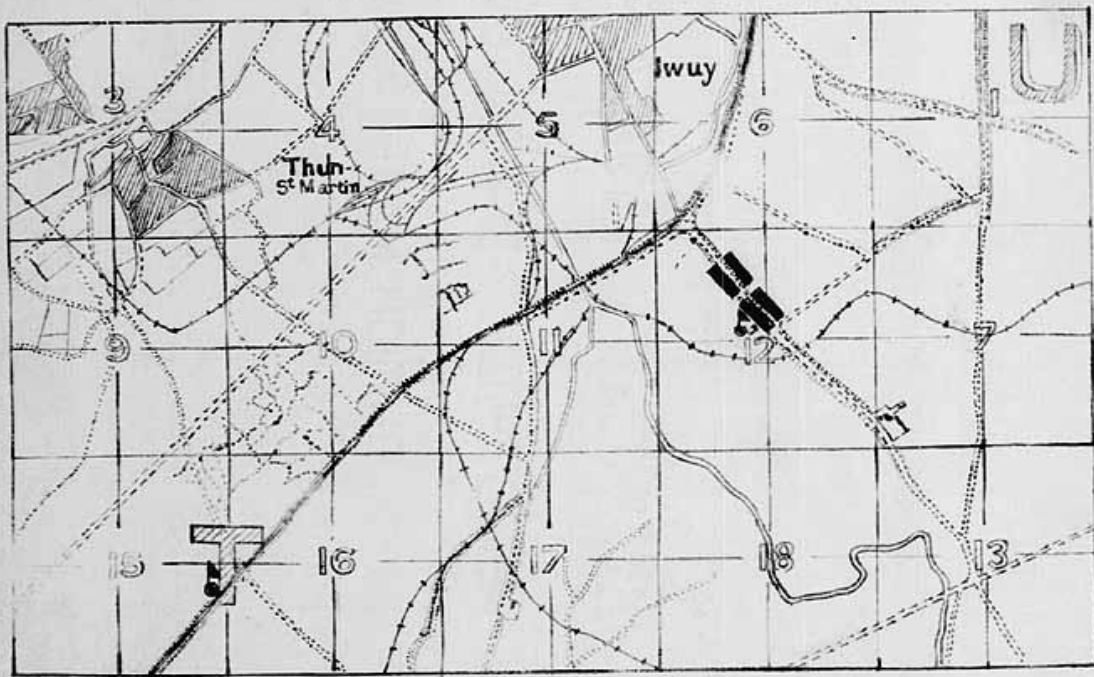
(Sgd) FK Ludlow, Captain  
for Captain,  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	Medical Officer
2	CO	10	Quartermaster
3	OC "A" Company	11	TO
4	OC "B" Company	12	RSM
5	OC "C" Company	13	File
6	OC "D" Company	14-16	War Diary
7	Scout Officer		
8	Signalling Officer		

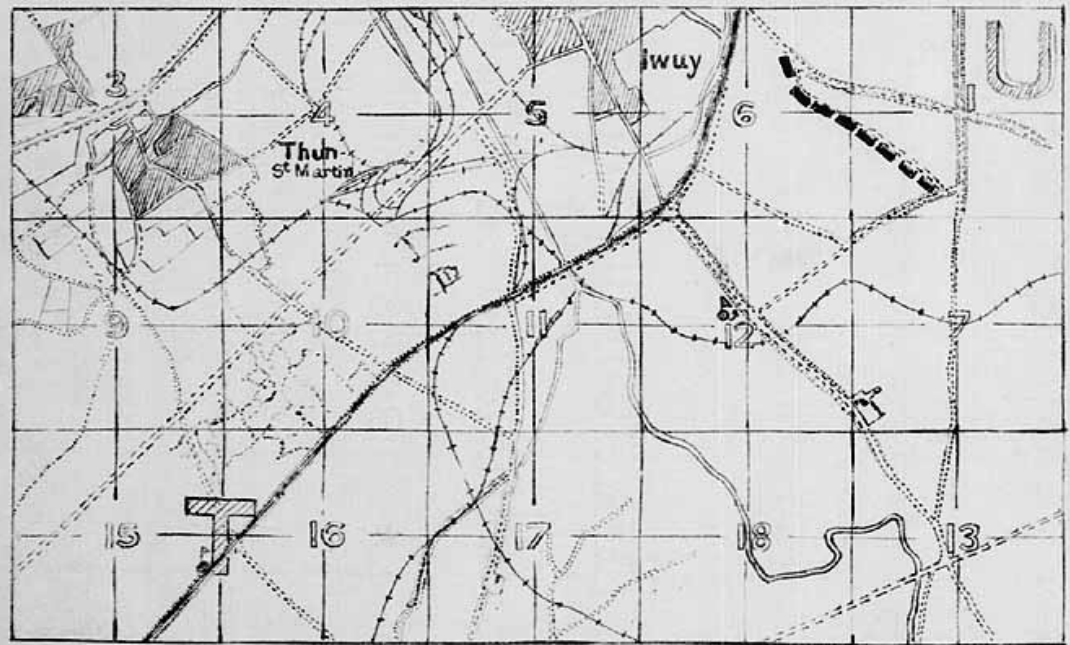
11-10-18

# Disposition 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn.



Scale 1:20,000 . Ref Sheet 51<sup>A</sup> SW

# Disposition 11-10-18. 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Bn.



Scale 1:20,000 . Ref Sheet 51<sup>A</sup> SW

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 230

Reference Maps:

October 11<sup>th</sup> 1918

51.A SW )  
51.B NW ) 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 6<sup>th</sup> Battalion, Gordons on the night of the 11<sup>th</sup>-12<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 4 guides per Company and 1 for Battalion Headquarters will report to Lieut WG Trollope MM at Battalion HQ at 1530 hours this date
- 3 All bombs, SOS and surplus SAA will be handed over.
- 4 On completion of relief Units will proceed independently to ESCAUDOVRES. Guides will meet Units and conduct them to their respective billeting area.
- 5 Relief complete will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by runner
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(Sgd) FK Ludlow  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Can Bn

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Company	11	MO
4	OC "B" Company	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Company	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Company	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 231

Reference Maps:

October 12<sup>th</sup> 1918

51.A SW 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to billets in ESWARS to-night. The Battalion will form up in column of route outside Headquarters
- 2 Lewis Guns will be loaded under supervision of LG Officer at 1600 hours
- 3 Cookers and water-carts will follow in rear of Battalion
- 4 Lieut MB Button with each CQMS and a representative from HQ will proceed ahead to arrange billets.

5 The Rear Details and remainder of Transport will fall in in rear of Battalion at Halt  
(S.24.C.35.35)

6 Units will notify Battalion HQ of their location immediately on arrival

7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GW Trollope, Lieut for  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Can Bn

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Company	11	MO
4	OC "B" Company	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Company	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Company	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 232

Reference Maps:

October 14<sup>th</sup> 1918

51.A SW )  
51.A NW ) 1/20,000

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will take over the Line tonight, Oct 14/15<sup>th</sup> from PAILLENCOURT (N.26.a) to the Railway at O.12.c.2.0. The 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will be in the Right Front and the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the Left Front. The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be in support of the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion: Companies to be distributed in N.28.d., N.23.c., N.29.a., and c. Battalion Headquarters and RAP will be established with Brigade at the Chateau (N.29.c.6.4.)
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will form in Column of Route at 1800 hours, the head of Column resting at T.7.b.12.60., facing East
- 3 Advanced parties of 1 Officer, 2 NCOs and 1 scout or runner per Company will report at Battalion Headquarters at 1330 this date, to proceed to the new area with Lieut BM Button. Lieut Button will take with him 2 scouts and 1 NCO of the Communication Section
- 4 Lieut Button will arrange to meet Battalion at N.34.b.40.65.
- 5 Tea will be served at 1630 hours. Transport will deliver rations at new location if they do not arrive at present location in time for distribution here. The meat ration will be cooked.
- 6 Rear Headquarters will be established at the present location of this Battalion Headquarters. Battalion Transport and Quartermaster Stores will move from S.23.d to this location this afternoon.

7 All rear details of Companies, Communication and Specialist Sections and Battalion Headquarters will remain at these Headquarters. Lieut GW Trollope MM, is arranging for the billeting of same. Unit Commanders will submit nominal rolls of those to be left at rear to the Orderly Room 1530 hours this date.

8 Relief complete will be reported to Battalion Headquarters giving time only

9 Disposition sketches will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters not later than 0600 hours 15<sup>th</sup> inst.

10 ACKNOWLEDGE

GW Trollope Lieut  
(sgd) FD Raymond  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Can Bn

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Company	11	MO
4	OC "B" Company	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Company	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Company	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 233

Reference Maps: October 18<sup>th</sup> 1918  
51.A SW )  
51.A NW ) 1/20,000

1 An Inter-Company relief will take place tonight. "B" Company will relieve "A" Company and "D" Company will relieve "C" Company

2 All necessary arrangements will be made by mutual agreement between Companies concerned.

3 Completion of relief will be reported to Battalion Headquarters by use of the code word PAPER and time

4 Disposition sketches will be forwarded to Battalion Headquarters not later than 0600 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst

5 Rations will be delivered as usual

6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GW Trollope  
Lieut for Captain  
Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Can Battn



Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Company	11	MO
4	OC "B" Company	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Company	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Company	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 234

Reference Maps:

October 19<sup>th</sup> 1918

51.A SW )  
51.A NW ) 1/20,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will move immediately to locations in WAVERCHAIN-SOUX-FAULK now occupied by elements of the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion
- 2 Companies will move independently and will meet guides of the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion at N.3.20.50 who will guide them to their respective areas. Route will be via Bridge N.34.b.20.80, thence to Bridge at N.20.c.80.70, thence along road to rendezvous
- 3 All very pistols, SOS, bombs, petrol tins, will be retained by Companies
- 4 Battalion Headquarters will be situated at N.3.c.20.50
- 5 Rations will be delivered at new Battalion Headquarters
- 6 All rear personnel will move immediately to and occupy eastern portion of village of ESTRUN situated in N.21.d.
- 7 On arrival in new area Units will report their respective positions to Headquarters
- 8 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) GW Trollope Lt  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Can Bn

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	9	LG Officer
2	CO	10	Scout Officer
3	OC "A" Company	11	MO
4	OC "B" Company	12	Transport Officer
5	OC "C" Company	13	Quartermaster
6	OC "D" Company	14	Office
7	Sig Officer	15-17	War Diary
8	Intel Officer	18	File

SECRET

Copy No 12

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 235

Reference Maps:

October 22<sup>nd</sup> 1918

51.A SW )  
51.A NW ) 1/20,000

- 1 The Battalion will move to the AUBERCHICOURT AREA today at 0915 hours, Units will form up in column of Route, facing North, head of column resting at Cross Roads, N2.d.95.50. Dress: "Fighting Order", overcoats inside ground sheets, rolled bandolier.

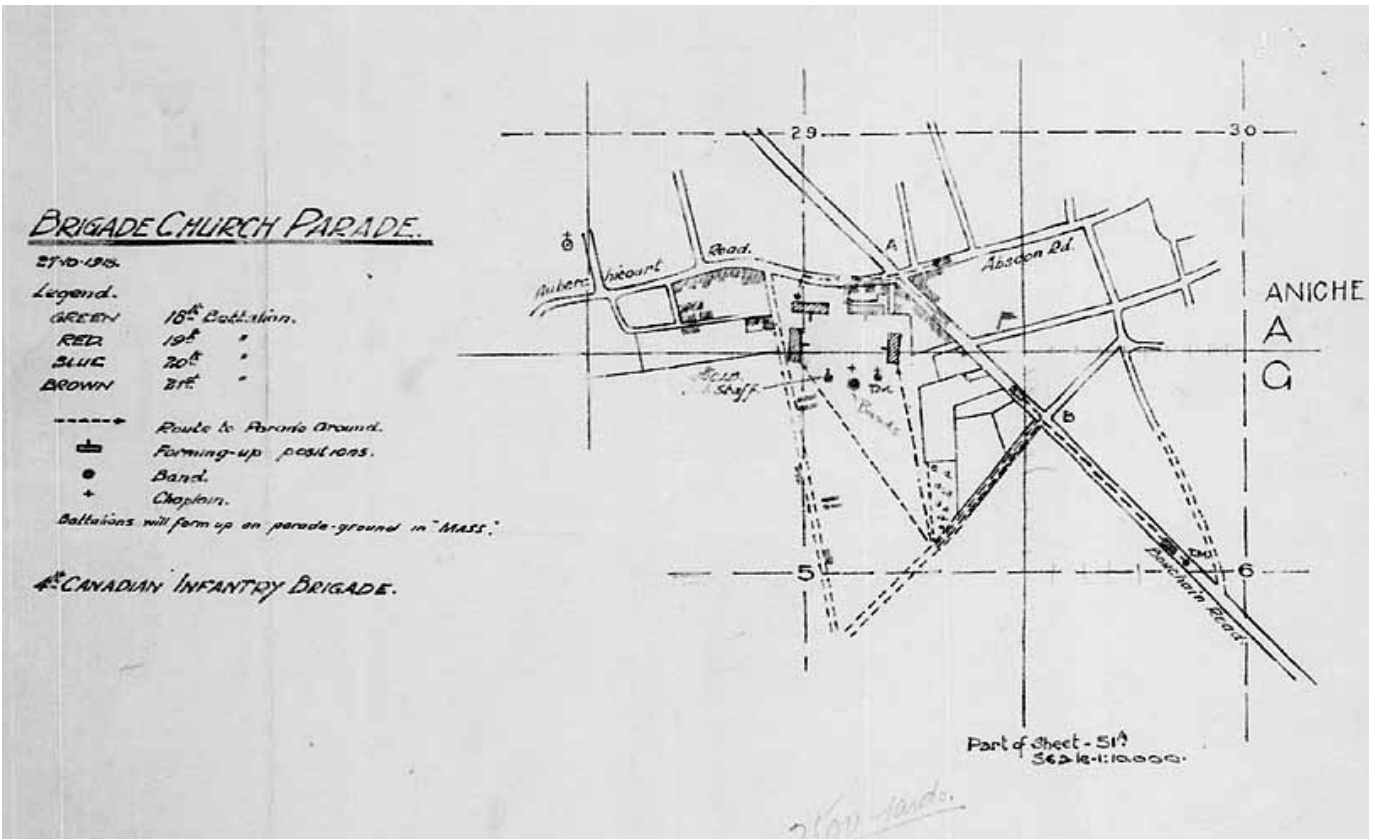
Transport will follow in rear of column

- 2 Billeting arrangements will be carried out as per our B1143 A.J.252, A.J 953 and A.J. 954 of the 21<sup>st</sup> inst, addressed to Companies, Sections and Billeting Officers concerned.
- 3 Officers Mess Utensils and Baggage, Lewis Guns and Stretchers will be loaded at the QM Stores by 0900 hours, also Orderly Room Equipment and Water Cans
- 4 The noon day meal will be cooked en Route, Water Carts will be filled prior to moving, from refilling point.
- 5 Bombs, SOS's, Flares, Very Pistols, etc will be carried by Companies
- 6 Immediately Companies have taken over their new positions, they will dispatch a runner to Battalion Headquarters, giving location of their Headquarters
- 7 Marching Out and Marching In States will be rendered one hour and one hour after, Units depart from and arrive at billets.
- 8 100 Yards intervals will be maintained by Companies
- 9 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut for Captain  
Adj 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 0630

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	9	TO
2	OC "A" Company	10	QM
3	OC "B" Company	11	RSM
4	OC "C" Company	12	Office
5	OC "D" Company	13-15	War Diary
6	Specialists Section		
7	Communication Section		
8	MO		



### THE BATTALION GOAT

When the Battalion left Canada nearly four years ago someone presented it with a white goat as a mascot. In spite of the strict English regulations, Celestine landed in England and soon settled down in barracks where her omnivorous appetite was a great help to the Sanitary Squad.

She has now been in France for three years and wears her chevrons painted on her horns. She has been stolen several times, so now the number of the Battalion is also carved in the same place.

In the good old days when we were sometimes in Rest Billets, she made herself at home with the various Companies in turn. She has a nice taste for laundry, but can always tell the taste of the Battalion shirts. She is especially fond of Staff Officers silk handkerchiefs. In the canteen or village estaminet she is a welcome guest. She prefers "Vin Blanc" to the sour French beer, and can take her ration of rum with the gusto of the Sergeant-Major. Her attitude towards the various ranks is a lesson in diplomacy. She loves to lie down in the sun, but always rises when the Colonel or Major passes by. Towards the newly joined she is tolerantly contemptuous, but she will work herself into a rage at the sight of a Heine prisoner.

Her real pals are the old originals with the Transport and Pipe Band. Once a new Transport Officer joined the Battalion, and wishing to eliminate all unnecessary baggage, he sold Celestine for fifteen francs to a thrifty French farmer, and presented the money to the Transport for beer. It caused the only mutiny in the history of the Battalion. The men who were washing the wagons struck at once, and demanded to be returned to the Line. The CO ordered the TO to get back the goat which he did at the cost of two hundred per cent on her selling price. That night Celestine visited the village estaminet and

Was presented with tobacco and a can of "Vin Blanc". On moon-light nights when Fritz loves to drop his bombs the goat is tethered in a shell hole and camouflaged with a blanket.

Her beautiful white coat is kept in perfect condition by Roberts, who cares for her like a baby. Before a Route March she comes to him to have her hoofs trimmed for the rocky road. The other day while the Transport was camped five miles behind the Line, suddenly there was a bombardment of HV shells. There were several casualties and among them Roberts, who was badly wounded. As he was being carried out he turned to the Bearers and faintly said "Tell me, is Celestine safe?"

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

ANICHE	1/11/18	On this day training was carried out as per Syllabus. In the afternoon the Battalion was paraded to a concert in ANICHE, given by the 5 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Divisional Concert Party, which was thoroughly enjoyed by all. The weather continued fine, though slightly overcast. Lieut VR Ullman MC, reported to the Battalion for duty from rest camp.
	2/11/18	Rainy weather set in on this date. The Battalion carried out a route march in the morning, and in the afternoon the weather cleared up sufficiently to allow sports to be indulged in. All Companies, Sections and Details were paid by the 4 <sup>th</sup> Brigade Paymaster on this date Lieut JG Caldwell returned from leave of absence and Lieuts VR Ullman MC and GW Trollope MM, proceeded on leave to England.
	3/11/18	The 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion attended church parade in the morning, the Service being conducted by Capt RJ Renison. A warning order was received from the 4 <sup>th</sup> Brigade of a move forward on the following day. The undermentioned NCOs proceeded on this date to England to attend a Cadet Course with a view to qualifying for commissioned ranks: 805232 Sgt RC Honey, 59737 Sgt JG McNab, 141591 Sgt CW Palmer and 123484 Cpl HV Mitchell.
	4/11/18	The Battalion moved forward in accordance with Operation Order 236 leaving ANICHE at 1700 hours and arriving at PETIT FORET at 2345 hours. The Battalion was billeted in the village and Battalion Headquarters was located at D.?.90.30. The Transport Section left ANICHE at 1230 hours and arrived at destination at 1700 hours. The Battalion was conveyed to the new location in motor-busses. The weather was fair but turned decidedly colder at night. Lieut-Col HE Pense DSO, MC, returned from leave of absence on this date and resumed command of the Battalion. Captain DJ More MC, was admitted to hospital due to illness.
	5/11/18	It rained steadily all day and the Battalion rested in billets. A concert was given in the afternoon by the Battalion brass band which was largely attended by all ranks. At 2300 hours a move order was received from the 4 <sup>th</sup> Brigade for the 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion to proceed forward to ST SAULVE.
ST SAULVE	6/11/18	The weather was still unsettled and rain fell at intervals all day. The 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved to ST SALULVE in accordance with Operation Order 257, leaving PETIT FORET at 1000 hours and arriving at destination at 1330 hours. The Battalion was billeted in a large seminary in the town together with the remainder of the 4 <sup>th</sup> Brigade units. At 1900 hours a warning order was received from the 4 <sup>th</sup> Brigade for the Battalion to hold itself in readiness to proceed forward in support of the 5 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the following day. Lieut-Col HE Pense DSO, MC, attended a conference at Brigade Headquarters at 2200 hours when the move forward on the following day was discussed.
BLANC MISSERON	7/11/18	Preparations were made for the move forward and at 1140 hours the 4 <sup>th</sup> Brigade move order arrived. The 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion then proceeded to the new location in S.9.b.70.20 north of QUIEVRACHAIN. The roads were in a very bad state owing to the shelling of the day previous and the enemy's demolition. Several times en route the Battalion was held up to allow the Engineers to make the necessary repairs which enabled traffic to be resumed. The destination was reached at 1540 hours and the Companies and sections occupied billets reserved for them. The village of BLANC MISSERON bore evidence of the enemy's shelling of the day before. At 2230 hours a warning order of the next day's move was received from the 4 <sup>th</sup> Brigade Headquarters.

BAISIEUX 8/11/18 The weather remained unsettled with occasional showers as on the day previous. The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved forward at 0900 hours to BAISIEUX (S.18.c.) and occupied billets in the village. Owing to the enemy having shelled this place the day before many of the civilian population were found to be suffering from the effects of the gas. Before our arrival many had already succumbed but the Medical Officer of the Battalion did much to alleviate the suffering of those who were yet alive. Shortly after leaving BLANC MISSEON (0915 hours) the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion crossed the frontier into Belgium. It was twelve months since this unit last marched in Belgian territory. At 1400 hours on this date the Battalion moved to ELOUGES in accordance with Operation Order No 240. Owing to continued rainfall the roads were in a very bad state but on arrival at our destination the Battalion was accorded a most sincere and hearty welcome by the inhabitants of the village. Battalion Headquarters was established at T.10.c.40.80.

9/11/18 On the 9<sup>th</sup> instant 8 Officers were on leave in England, while Major GSS  
to Bowerbank MC proceeded on leave this date. The Battalion, in other ranks, totaled  
10/11/18 826 men. On the morning of the 10<sup>th</sup> the number in the advance were 416. 50 other  
ranks in charge of Corpl J McLennon MM had been detailed for the Brigade  
Evacuation Party and 12 other ranks under Sergt GE Dobbs for the Divisional Burial  
Party. The number at Transport, including Bands, QM Stores, Water Detail and Regtl  
Transport was 106. 66 Other Ranks were on leave and those away from the Battalion  
on Course etc totaled 95. On this date Lieut DK MacDonnell, OC "C" Coy, was  
wounded by shell-fire, 1 Other Rank was killed and 5 Other Ranks were wounded by  
shell-fire. 3330034 Pte L Sullivan, who was killed, was a member of "A" Company and  
was considered a most efficient soldier. He was taken on the strength of the 21<sup>st</sup>  
Canadian Battalion on August the 28<sup>th</sup>, 1918. His home was Rapids des Joachims,  
Quebec Canada.

In all 11 Officers went forward with the Battalion on the morning of Nov 9<sup>th</sup>.  
Capt FK Ludlow and Lieut W Nicholson remained with the rear details, QM Stores and  
Transport. Owing to the casualties during August, September and October fighting the  
Battalion was very short of Officers. The following Officers advanced with the  
Battalion: Headquarters: CO Lieut-Col HE Pense DSO, MC, Adjutant Capt FD  
Raymond MC, Intel. Officer Lieut R Stewart, Sig Officer Lieut JG Caldwell, "A"  
Company Lieut EW Edwards, Lieut JR Smith, "B" Company Lieut FG Robinson, Lieut  
GD Woodcock, "C" Company Lieut DK MacDonnell, "D" Company Lieut RJ Gill, Lieut  
WI Fleming. (See report of 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Bn Operation Nov 9<sup>th</sup> attached)

NOIRCHAIN 10/11/18 The advance of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion halted at NOIRCHAIN on the 10<sup>th</sup>  
to where the unit rested overnight. Battalion Headquarters was located at the Chateau in  
12/11/18 the village and it was while there that the official notification of the Armistice between  
the Allies and Germany was received from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade at 0840  
hours on the 11<sup>th</sup>. This news was immediately transmitted by the Commanding Officer  
to all ranks who received it with enthusiasm. The Brass and Pipe Bands marched to  
the Battalion Headquarters, amidst great outbursts of joy on the part of the soldiers  
and civilians gathered around, and played the National Aire of the Allies. Then  
followed a march through the streets headed by our Brass Band, with a soldier  
carrying a large Belgian flag, in which nearly all the inhabitants of the village took part.  
On this date Captain DJ More MC, returned to duty from hospital. The morning of the  
12<sup>th</sup> was devoted to PT and cleaning up.

MESVIN 11/11/18 At 1100 hours on the 11<sup>th</sup> the Battalion moved to MESVIN and occupied billets  
to and enjoyed a well earned rest for the remainder of the day. Battalion Headquarters  
12/11/18 was located at Q.32.a.15.65

- 13/11/18 On this date the weather was fine, though a heavy frost set in overnight. Training was carried out by Companies and Sections in the morning and the afternoon was devoted to cleaning up equipment. Lieut-Col HE Pense DSO, MC, accompanied by the Adjutant, Captain FD Raymond MC, attended a conference at the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Headquarters at 1630 hours. Routine Orders announced that Lieut GL Edmunds returned to duty from hospital.
- 14/11/18 Captain DJ More MC, was taken on the strength of the Battalion as from 24/10/18 and Lieut JHW Cobb MC, was transferred back to the battalion from the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade TMB. On this date Lieut LA Anderson MM, arrived as reinforcement.
- 15/11/18 The following officers and 66 Other Ranks proceeded to MONS to take part in the celebrations of the relief of that city by the 1<sup>st</sup> Army Corps: Captain FD Raymond MC, Lieut RA Stewart, and Lieut WI Fleming. The weather continued fine, though quite cold and a large number of men took advantage of the opportunity to see the celebrations at MONS. Routine orders of this date announced that Lieut A Cockeram DSO, had been granted the authority to wear the badge of the rank of Captain. Captain RJ Renison and Lieut RL Perry returned to duty from leave on this date. Lieut C Menpes MC (attached 4<sup>th</sup> CIB) was wounded at duty November 9<sup>th</sup>, 1918.
- 16/11/18 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Transport, with cooks, was inspected by the GOC at 1100 hours this date. In the afternoon the Battalion was paid by the Brigade Paymaster, after which all Companies and Sections were bathed. Routine Orders of this date announced that Captain A Cockeram DSO and Lieut ST Crooks returned to duty from leave.
- 17/11/18 The Commanding Officer attended a conference at the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Headquarters at 1100 hours this date. The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion attended church parade at 1100 hours which was conducted by Captain RJ Renison CF. Preparations were made for the march forward on the following day.

THE  
MARCH TO  
THE RHINE

- 18/11/18 While the Battalion was at MESVIN it became known that the Canadian Corps, as part of the 2<sup>nd</sup> British Army, was to have the honour of taking part in the advance to the German frontier. The news was received with universal pleasure for everyone felt that it was a logical seal to the Great Compact which Canada had made.
- 21/11/18

At 0645 hours the historic march began. The Battalion touched the Eastern outskirts of MONS and proceeded along the ROEULX ROAD. The day was frosty and bright and the Battalion looked remarkably well as the men marched in fine spirits. Long lines of returning French and Belgian prisoners were met on their way from the German frontier. Their stories were most interesting. They reported that they had only been kept alive by the food and clothing sent from England. They said that the retreating German Army was in great disorder, that rubber tires were worn out on the vehicles, that material of all kinds was being left behind and horses driven till worn out and then killed for feed. The Revolution has evidently penetrated the army for Officers have been compelled to take down their decorations and the red flag was flying everywhere.

Evidently the German surrender had not been made without excellent military reasons. At 1049 hours the Battalion entered the village of THIEU, 12 kilometres from MONS, and went into billets for two days. The two days rest at THIEU was marked by wet and foggy weather which did not, however, dampen the hospitality of the inhabitants. From the inhabitants much was learned of the conditions during the four years of the German occupation. It was apparent that the country had not been touched by the destructive side of war, the mines and the fertile soil, so like the loam of Manitoba, and density of the population all testified to the potential wealth of the district. But the people seemed to have lived in slavery. The Germans, by commandeering and fines, seemed to have systematically secured the entire

Production of Belgium above the life line. Now any country could hope to control a conquered country by such methods is beyond the psychology of a Canadian. Among the Walloons there is a passionate resentment not only against the Germans but also against those of their countrymen who were intimate with them during the occupation. Several riots were reported in the adjacent villages where men were beaten and women branded and their hair cut by Vigilantes. Some cafes have been wrecked. Just a little "Descensas Aveni" to show that human nature even in martyred Belgium is pretty much the same as in Winnipeg or Martintown.

On November 21<sup>st</sup> at 0830 hours the Battalion fell in prepared to advance to its second objective. The Band played farewell before the house of the Bourgomestre. The entire population cheered us through the streets. During a march of twenty kilometres the whole route was practically through closed streets of towns and villages which run one into the other. After the vast spaces of unoccupied land in Canada it was like a revelation to pass through the most densely populated country in the world. Most of the road was stone cobbles. Only one man fell out on the march and the men finished fit and strong. Along the whole way crowds lined the streets and triumphal Arches were found in every village. In the town of LA LOUVIERE there was elaborate decoration. Some of the mottos were most interesting: "Canada For Ever" was one of the most popular. At one spot even the horses began to prance and moved with rhythmic dignity as they passed under an arch decorated with yellow, black and red with the following lyrical inscription:

"Honour and Glory  
To the Braves.  
The defenders of the Civilization"

Several men reconstructed their private opinions of themselves during the day. At 1530 hours the Battalion entered the town of TRAZEGNIES where they found most excellent billets for the night. The following Officers were invalided to England wounded on dates as shown: Capt HT Deane MC, 14/10/18, Lieut JH Northey 14/10/18, Lieut AT Waters 14/10/18, Lieut D McK Goudy MC 20/10/18, Lieut HW Powell 19/10/18. Routine Orders of this date announced the following awards: Bar to Military Medal 454457 Corpl JJ Higgins, 195631 Corpl SE Hill, 142365 L/Corpl HA McLaughlin. On this date (21<sup>st</sup>) Lieut RA Stewart was admitted to hospital sick. It was also announced in Routine Orders that Lieut ES Webb had been invalided wounded to England.

Routine Orders of the 21<sup>st</sup> announced the following awards: Bar to Military Medal, 434723 Corpl J McLennan MM, 49040 L/Corpl T McGeary MM, The Military Medal, 412586 Sgt JB Giles, 639577 Sgt AN Clark, 1093229 Pte H Wilson, 1093056 Pte C DeMille, 195879 Cpl HRP Houghton, 59273 A/Sgt HH Doyle, 663508 Pte LH Smith, 639285 L/Cpl A Angus, 4020088 Pte F DeLarosbil, 59786 Cpl JJ Zacharias, 724689 Cpl JJ Dovey, 195204 A/CSM A Stanley, 141804 Cpl R Watson, 246660 Pte GR McCaffery, 1093276 L/Cpl F Greatrix, 59292 Cpl TJ Edwards, 850259 L/Cpl H Dunkley, 246726 Pte L Hailstone.

22/11/18  
to  
23/11/18

The march for the past few days has been through the heart of Industrial Belgium where intensive agriculture and specialized industries of all kinds have made the province of HAINAULT within fifty mile radius of CHARLEROI a line of human bees. The population have not been touched by the horrors of the battle some but have known to the full fruition of German Rule.

Passing mile after mile through lines of people one was oppressed with their look and bearing. They seemed to lack the energy and youthful abandon of Canadian crowds. On second thought, you cannot expect people who have lived on soup and vegetables for years not to show some effects of malnutrition. This is a list of the



Current price of some of the necessities of life between MONS and the RHINE:

A milk cow - 6000 francs  
Apples – 1 franc each  
Suit of clothes – 600 francs

Boots - 300 francs per pair  
Beer – 20 francs per kilo  
Nothouse grapes – 12 francs per kilo

Many a Canadian will go home from this old land with a new appreciation of his own despised back garden. Probably from long residence among the Indians I have always despised apples and peaches as fit food for a (unreadable) rather than the carnivorous Canadian. But I have already pictured myself watching with the pride of a millionaire the growth of the vine on the kitchen wall. The people of TRAZEGNIES extended a wonderful welcome to the Battalion and the men were taken into their homes. One battle scarred veteran was overcome with home sickness when the wife of the Bourgomestre ordered him to wipe his feet on the mat before walking on her carpet. M Laberne a prominent Avocat in TRAZEGNIES placed his beautiful home at the disposal of the Headquarter Mess, he and his young family vanishing into the upstairs regions. The table was set with spotless linen and shining cutglass. The whole atmosphere contrasting strangely with the Spartan fare of our ration state. The delicate champagne glasses, like lilies on their slender stems, seemed to cry aloud for something which the Quartermaster does not provide. They did not sigh in vain however, for during the two day of our stay, they were supplied by an unseen spring. The members of the mess are all teetotalers but not bigoted ones. On the last night Monsieur and his charming wife graced the mess by their presence and a young Staff Officer who spoke French was invited, thinking that the party was in his honour. He was used as a speaking trumpet for three hours. He finished a sterling Marathon performance by assuring Madame (who listened with shining eyes) that Belgique was the 'sore' of the Alliance and that Liege would rank with Marathon in the Epic of Humanity. His laryngitis is doing well and it is hoped he will be convalescent before we reach NAMUR. The Canadian soldier is a born advertiser of his native land. In every house in the place for two days there was an orator eking out his scant French with convincing gestures to prove, between light reflection of bread puddings and hot milk, that Canada was the only country in the world. It would be good business for the Dominion Government to send up a car load of regimental badges and shoulder devices. They are prized by the natives as priceless relics. It is distinctly against orders but it is hard to refuse a pair of shining eyes pleading for a maple leaf as something beyond the price of rubies. On the afternoon of the 22<sup>nd</sup> the Battalion complete was paraded for their Xmas pay to the Brigade Paymaster. Lieut GW Trollope MM, returned from leave of absence on this date.

24/11/18

The Battalion left TRAZEGNIES on November 24<sup>th</sup> at 1050 hours and marched through a series of villages and the towns of COURCELLES and GOSELIES passing ten kilometres north of CHARLEROI. A halt was made at GOSELIES for lunch. Here it was that one of the tragedies of the war occurred. The eagle eye of the President of the Mess fell upon a shop window where a certain headcheese was for sale. He purchased it all and carried it in triumph to the home of a Professor of music, who had kindly placed his home at the disposal of the Colonel. Everyone was hungry and sat down with great eagerness. While the Professor produced a music book of American ragtime, which he played with the air of the late Francis Wagner at a Bayreuth Festival, the President remarked pleasantly that he had paid one franc a pound for the headcheese. Someone with a mathematical turn of mind said that if meat was ten francs a pound "what is this"? At the same moment the Doctor discovered some blond eyelashes in his portion. The Pessimist of the Mess began to speak of the glycerin factory Kadaver meal, while at the same moment the Professor whether by design or by accident, slipped into a minor key. The bust of Mozart looked down from the piano with a satirical expression. It suddenly became apparent that nobody was hungry. The President said firmly that he would carry it to the Rhine if necessary. The Colonel said bitterly that it was the appropriate place for it and he hoped he would bury it there. The Padre said that he did not want to suggest

anything but that he would take a chance and read the funeral service over it. The bugle call "Fall in" ended a most interesting discussion. The march was continued and the Battalion just after dark, entered the village of LAMBUSART.

The population, to welcome us, sent up a choice collection of Heine flares in lieu of fireworks. It was an eerie sight and, combined with the dusk of evening, the effect was electric. Men instinctively felt for their rifles and steel helmets for it was a perfect imitation of the old nerve wracking performance of entering the trenches. The poor fellows could hardly realize that they had done with that forever. During the day the weather remained fine and bright and the roads were in good condition for marching. Captain L Frazer returned from leave of absence on this date.

25/11/18 We only stayed at LAMBUSART one night and on the 25<sup>th</sup> at 1050 hours the  
to Battalion left in column of route for a march of twelve kilometres. It rained all day and  
26/11/18 the roads were heavy with mud but there were no stragglers when we reached the  
picturesque village of SPY at 1500 hours. The last day's march was through a more  
open and rugged country and many of the population seemed to be of Teutonic origin.  
We were now within five miles of the course of the Somme and before us lay the  
celebrated ring of forts around the city of NAMUR where the German Artillery had  
proved to the world the uselessness of fortification against modern guns in 1914.

NAMUR 27/11/18 On Wednesday the 27<sup>th</sup> the Battalion left SPY at 1015 hours and arrived at the  
to Cavalry Barracks at NAMUR at 1330 hours. NAMUR is the Capital of the one of the  
28/11/18 nine provinces of Belgium to which it gives its name. It seems to mark a transition  
stage of the various Ethnic strata across the country. The industrial belt seems to  
have been passed after a week's marching through a solid block of indistinguishable  
towns and villages and a rich agricultural region stretched before us. There has been  
evidently a distinctly Teutonic element in this city, albeit a minority. But one heard on  
all sides the stories of the frenzied German advance in 1914. It seems to have been  
the deliberate plea of the High Command in accordance with the theories of Von  
Bernhardi to break the spirit of the people by terrorism. Incendiary companies went  
through the towns marking a proportion of the houses for destruction. Men, women  
and children shot in cold blood. The story of Dinant has become one of the classic  
tragedies of the war. The Germans gathered the men together in the Market Square  
opposite the church and on the opposite side placed the women and children. Then  
they asked them to salute the German flag and when they refused, they shot down the  
women and bayoneted the children before their eyes and they systematically killed the  
men where they stood. The atrocity story was told by eye witnesses who wept at the  
recollection. It caused a feeling of horror among all towards the invaders which  
decades will not efface. Five hundred and seventy innocent persons died in this one  
29/11/18 holocaust of Kultur. It is stories of this kind that make Tommies say the Kultur is not  
an idea but an order. The Brigade spent the day at the great Cavalry Barracks and on  
the morning of the 29<sup>th</sup> at 0805 hours marched through the city towards the frontier,  
changing their general direction half right. As we crossed the NEMUR we looked back  
at the great fortification, one which crowned the heights two hundred feet above us  
and the scene looked like a picture of a medieval world. In any part of the world these  
forts are as obsolete before modern Artillery as the great wall of China. Passing  
through the prosperous suburbs of JAMBES the Battalion swing into the open country  
and the modern forts of NAMUR appeared. Low massive earthworks crowned with  
concrete, piles like mushrooms the same as those at LIEGE held the first German  
advance until the great guns were brought up Ever since the Epic of LIEGE man  
himself has been the only fortification capable of withstanding his son Frankenstein.  
At 1440 hours the Battalion entered the village of BONNEVILLE and went into billets  
for the night.

30/11/18

The Battalion Headquarters was in Chateau de Bonneville where the Count and Madame de Chatelaine offered us the freedom of the great rambling old house. There were five charming children whose presence made the day a memorable one. Their governess who spoke English made in "Brussels" had lectured to her charges on "Les Canadiens". They were very much impressed with the "tonsure" of the President of the mess whose one secret sorrow is the inability of his carefully nursed forelock to cover his bald spot over the bump of Philoprogenitiveness. The romantic governess wove for herself a long tissue about this "Religieux" who had forsaken his monastic call for the vigors of the battle field. The monk was particularly good form during the evening. His rendering of "La Veuve Joyeuse" being particularly admired. When the Colonel innocently introduced the Padre as another cure. Mademoiselle exclaimed "Mon Dieu c'est une seminaire". On this date the Battalion resumed its march and covered twenty five kilometres before going into billets at MIECRET.

Probably in the legends of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion the ten days rest at AUBERCHICOURT will be idealized as the first taste of the Promised Land. Coming from the fierce battle which marked the final phase of the fall of CAMBRAI the contest was almost overwhelming. For three years the Canadian Corps has taken its full share of the hardships incidental to the campaign, gradually increasing in intensity. From the trenches of the YPRES SALIENT to the 2<sup>nd</sup> (undecipherable) PASSCHENDAELE, from the bowels of AMIENS, to the desolation of the ARRAS region had been progression from one form of discomfort to another. The High Command must have had confidence in the ability of Canadians to resist heart failure or there would have been a judicious period of transition.

Towards the end of October the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division took possession of the town of AUBERCHICOURT, the suburb of ANICHE being the Belgravia of the city, was occupied by the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. It was in peace time a prosperous mining centre, the home of many well to do citizens of the commercial class. The Germans had driven out the inhabitants and we had the place to ourselves. Such billets had never been known in the experience of the most imaginative "Fifty-niners". Spring beds for all the troops, marble clocks on every mantelpiece, coal in every cellar and a back garden with the "leeks and cucumbers of Egypt". One Company Officer refused a billet because the piano was out of tune.

The latent domestic talents of many unsuspected artists were displayed in the decoration of the living rooms of the homes. House furnishings were less expensive than the Canadian installment plan, concerning which some innocent bachelors have already been consulting their married comrades. This was especially noticeable when the Canadian Casualty Clearing Station arrived in the town and the Nurses appeared in the streets. The MO pretended that he knew them and immediately carried out a masterly offensive with complete success. For some reason which no one else could understand the QM was called in to convoy the prisoners. The men lined the streets on either side as the procession passed up to "B" Mess for afternoon tea.

That night a most excellent HQ Officer, apropos of nothing at all, asked whether in peace time two could live as cheaply as one. A Brigade service under the command of Colonel Millen DSO, Acting Brigadier, was held on the 27<sup>th</sup>. The preacher spoke of St John's vision of a new Heaven and a new Earth, and said that the Gates of Pearl were the Gates of Sacrifice. The new world which was even then opening before us had been reached through the death of those who had died four years before. He mentioned the fact that the Canadian Corps was advancing along the historic line of the MONS retreat. Their voices seemed to cheer us from their resting place:

"We lie like castaways upon the shore  
Whose lives were lost in the Great Retreat  
But where the wave hath ebbd the flood shall roar  
And we await the tide's returning feet."

Few thought that in August 1914, that that returning tide would flow from the lakes and rivers of the New World.

When the Battalion with the rest of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division moved out of ANICHE on November 4<sup>th</sup> to PETIT FORET scarcely a week of fighting remained, but no one even then could have believed it possible. Great events were happening in Europe. As suddenly as the war began so did it hasten to a close. Turkey had surrendered unconditionally, Austria-Hungary was already vanishing forever after over a thousand years of chequered history during which she had been consistently the enemy of Human Progress.

But the Battalion went forward prepared for a continuation of the desperate fighting which had marked the last memorable hundred days. It soon became evident that something dynamic was happening. The villages in the remaining part of France and those in Belgium began to throb with electric excitement. ST SAULVE, BAISSSEUX, GENLEY and NOIRCHAIN marked the stages of a triumphal procession. There was still fighting to be done but it became evident that after four years the Boche was done. On the 9<sup>th</sup> of November the last casualties occurred. Lieut DK MacDonnell was wounded and also five Other Ranks. Pte L Sullivan was killed, the last of over seven hundred men who had died in France to make the history of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. Their bodies rest in a foreign soil but to Canada they have bequeathed their memory and their glory.

“On Fame’s Eternal Camping Ground  
Their silent tents are spread.  
While Glory guards with solemn round  
The Bivouac of the dead.”

When it is considered that over four thousand men have, in one way or another, passed through our ranks and that it was given to only a few to see the realization of the dream for which Britain drew the sword, one may truly say “Others have laboured and ye have entered into their labours”.

The Belgians of the province of NAINAUT are Celtic in temperament and intensely Gallic in their sympathies. It was a revelation to those who judged Belgium by the experience in Flanders. Our troops were welcomed during the last few days with transports of joy. Men were kissed by women of all ages from seven to seventy. In many cases the Germans were going out of one end of the town while the Canadians were entering the other. The villages were en fete, French and Belgian flags which had been buried for years hung everywhere. Marvelous imitations of the Union Jack, obviously improvised from available material, testified the genuineness of the welcome. Chrysanthemums and Asters with an amazing profusion of Autumn flowers were literally showered upon all ranks. Most men received more floral tributes than they will ever have until the Great War Veterans conduct their funeral in the old home town.

The Brass band came into its own for its stirring marches seemed to set the people wild. Men, women and children, emerging from the cellars where they had been for thirty-six hours, danced like Bacchantes in a delirium of delight. The symbol of the Wallen Cock crowing its head off which was placarded everywhere truly expressed the national psychology. The Pipe band produced an indescribable effect upon the populace. Too late it had been discovered what a potent weapon had been only partially utilized during the early months of the war. The girls at first tried to waltz to the strains of the “Cock of the North” but they felt themselves they were not doing justice to the music.

At last an old woman appeared on a window sill and spontaneously dissolved into a Highland fling like Tam O'Shanter's Witch....."A supple jade she was and strong".....From that moment the censorship was removed.

A notable set of heroism must here be recorded. The Adjutant and the MO crossed some fields alone and at a corner were embraced by five hundred Belgians. While they returning to the Battalion another expectant village was deserted and a council was held. It was decided not to make a detour and this party arrived safely at Headquarters with only a few minor casualties. But beneath the unique experience of these days which marked the Apotheosis of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in France, everyone saw the genuine gratitude of a nation delivered from slavery. It was pleasant, even if slightly undeserved, to hear Canadians hailed as the "Liberators of Belgium". And many a man wished that the same good comrade, who had died in hope in dark hours, could have been by his side on that day.

But the rush of events on the World Stage was already absorbing the drum of the Western Front. When the Battalion moved into NOIRCHAIN, October 10<sup>th</sup>, it was known that German envoys had crossed the frontier. In its relationship to the individual it was inevitable that the end of a world war should seem like an anti-climax in the field. There is a sublime simplicity in the following message which arrived at Battalion Headquarters at 0650 hours:- "Hostilities cease at 1100 hours November the 11<sup>th</sup>. Stand fast on line reached at that hour". The answer was:- "Warning order re cessation of hostilities received. Thanks". That was all. The advance of the Battalion on the last day was the longest ever made from the Front Line, being nearly fourteen thousand yards. When the order concerning the Armistice had been communicated to the various Companies, the bands paraded through the town and there was general cheering. But upon looking back upon the day, everyone remarked upon the comparative quietness at the time. The transition from war to peace is as great as from peace to war. As it was impossible on the fateful 4<sup>th</sup> of August 1914, to understand the full meaning of the years which were to follow, so the soldier who had so long through hope deferred, confined himself to the task in hand, could not at once realize that the end had come.

Again many of the older men were thinking of the early days and the good fellows who sleep in "Flanders Fields". On November 11<sup>th</sup> the Battalion moved into MESVIN, one of the southeastern suburbs of MONS. It was a source of deep and thankful pride that the very last Despatch from Sir Douglas Haig, the Commander-in-Chief, before the "Cease Fire" sounded, was sent from GHQ at 1045 hours:- "The Canadians captured MONS early this morning". The cycle was complete for, on the high ridge overlooking MONS, the British Army first met the German and began the most famous retreat in military history. The Official Welcome to the British Army in MONS on November 15<sup>th</sup> said:- "We witnessed the wonderful retreat of 1914 and knew that you would return". During the month 5 Officers and 25 Other Ranks proceeded on leave of absence from the Battalion.

The ration strength of the Battalion on November 30<sup>th</sup> was:-

Officers	24
Other Ranks	624

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 236

Reference Sheet  
51.A 1/40,000

4<sup>th</sup> November, 1918

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion will move forward to the AUBRY Area by bus early this afternoon. Hour to notified later.
- 2 Embusing Point – Road and Railway Crossing, G.6.a.4.5., facing North-West
- 3 Lieut RA Stewart is appointed Embusing Officer and Units will embus as under:-  
Headquarters, Specialist, Communication, Brass Band, Pipe Band, Quartermaster's Stores, "A", "B", "C" and "D" Companies.
- 4 The Transport will move independently via ABSCON, DENAIN, OISEY and will leave present quarters at 1230 hours.  
Captain FK Ludlow will supervise the move of the Transport.
- 5 Rations for consumption on 5<sup>th</sup> inst will be delivered on afternoon of the 4<sup>th</sup> inst., in new area.  
Guides from the Quartermaster's Stores will meet supply wagons at Church, D.10.c.2.6 at 1600 hours, to guide wagons to the Battalion
- 6 Dress – Everything owned by the men must be carried. This includes Pipe and Brass band instruments for the two bands.
- 7 All Officer's baggage will be sent to Quartermaster's Stores by 1030 hours. Officers' messes will arrange lunch in order to have mess boxes on mess cart at 1200 hours.
- 8 An embusing state will be sent to Battalion Orderly Room by 1100 hrs.

(sgd) FD Raymond, Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 0930

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Medical Officer
2	Commanding Officer	10	Quartermaster
3	OC "A" Company	11	Transport Officer
4	OC "B" Company	12	RSM
5	OC "C" Company	13	Pipe Band
6	OC "D" Company	14	Brass Band
7	OC Specialist Section	15	File
8	OC Communication Section	16-18	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No 17

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 237

Reference Sheet  
51.A 1/20,000

5<sup>th</sup> November, 1918

1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to St SAULVE tomorrow, November 6<sup>th</sup>, 1918

2 STARTING POINT – Road Junction D.6.d.3.5

3 TIME – Head of column will pass Starting Point at 1320 hours

4 ORDER OF MARCH – Specialists, Communication, RSM, Brass Band, “A” and “B” Companies, Pipe Band, “C” and “D” Companies, “QM” Section and Cookers.

The Battalion will form up in the above order with head of column at Starting Point at 1300 hours.

5 The Transport, less cooks, will proceed independently, passing Starting Point at D.6.d.3.5 at 1030 hours

Captain FK Ludlow will supervise the move of the Transport

6 ROUTE – The Battalion will march by the following route – Cross roads E.8.c.3.5., Bridge over ESCAUT CANAL, E.14.b.1.7., VALENCIENNES and ST SAULVE.

7 BAGGAGE – Officers’ kits, Company and Headquarters mess boxes will be piled at Quartermaster’s stores by 0930 hours

8 BLANKETS – Blankets, in rolls of 10, plainly marked, will be piled at Quartermaster’s stores by 0700 hours. A lorry will call at 0730 hours for their removal to new billets.

The RSM will detail one Other Rank to proceed with, and look after these blankets.

9 Divisional Train will deliver rations for consumption on November 7<sup>th</sup> in new area tomorrow

10 BILLETING – Lieut JG Caldwell, 4 CQMS’s, Corporal McLellan for Headquarters, and a representative of the Transport will report to Brigade Billeting Officer at ST SAULVE CHURCH, E.5.b.4.8., at 1100 hours tomorrow.

11 During march First Army March Discipline and distances will be maintained

12 Everything owned by the man must be carried. This includes Brass and Pipe Band instruments for both bands.

13 Billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition

14 ACKNOWLEDGE

(Sgd)) FD RAYMOND  
Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

All Recipients of OO 237

Reference para 3 – Head of column will pass starting point at 1030 hours and not at 1320 hours as stated.

Reference para 4 – The Battalion will form up with head of column at starting point at 1010 hours and not at 1300 hours as stated.

Reference para 10 – The Billeting party will report to the Brigade Billeting Officer at 0900 hours and not 1100 hours as stated.

The Transport, with Cookers, will follow the Battalion

Company Quartermaster Sergeants, Corpl McLellan and representative of the Transport will report to Lieut JG Caldwell at Battalion Headquarters at 0600 hours.

(Sged) FD Rarymond, Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly  
At 0700 hours

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 238

7<sup>TH</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheets  
45 and 51 1/40,000  
VALENCIENNES 1/100,000

- 1 Following the relief of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division in the line on the night of November 6/7<sup>th</sup>, the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will advance at an hour to be notified later today, November 7<sup>th</sup>. The 62<sup>nd</sup> Royal Naval Division will attack on the right and the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division will attack on the left of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. The first objectives of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will be the high ground in T.6 and 9, and the Fosse and Railway Embankment in T.15.b. The 2<sup>nd</sup> objective will be the village of ELOUGES. An independent force, composed of Cavalry and units of the Canadian Machine Gun Brigade, will concentrate in exploiting initial success.
- 2 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade has been ordered to be prepared to move today, November 7<sup>th</sup>, to the General Line QUIEVRECHAIN – MARCHIPONT.

The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will be prepared to move at 0800 hours to QUIEVRECHAIN

- 3 Lieut RA Stewart and two orderlies, detailed from Specialist Section, will report to Major Peterson at 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters, ST SAULVE, at 0640 hours today, November 7<sup>th</sup>, to proceed with him to Headquarters 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. Lieut Stewart will receive instructions from Major Peterson regarding the rendezvous of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion at QUIEVRECHAIN.



- 4
  - (a) The Battalion will proceed forward in Fighting Order with greatcoats rolled bandolier in ground sheet around haversack.
  - (b) Packs, with blankets in packs, will be handed in to the Quartermaster on the ground floor of the wing at present occupied by the Battalion, for storage, by 0715 hours.
  - (c) Instruments, pipes, etc, of the Brass and Pipe Bands will be delivered to the Quartermaster for the same purpose at the same time and place.
  - (d) The Quartermaster will detail two other ranks to remain in charge of the above
- 5
  - (a) Breakfast will be served to all ranks at 0630 hours.
  - (b) The Quartermaster will arrange for dinner to be cooked en route.
  - (c) Water carts will proceed forward filled.
  - (d) Rations for consumption on 8<sup>th</sup> inst will be delivered by the supply wagons at QUIEVRECHAIN. The Quartermaster will arrange for guides to meet same at Church at QUIEVRECHAIN, by 1030 hours.
  - (e) Officers' baggage will be delivered to Quartermaster's Stores for loading by 0730 hours. Headquarters and Company mess outfits will be delivered at the same time and place
- 6 Major GSS Bowerbank MC, will assume command of Rear Details. They will report to him on the Parade Ground, in the seminary enclosure, 15 minutes before the Battalion moves forward.
- 7 All Transport will proceed forward. "B" Echelon will receive further instructions at QUIEVRECHAIN
- 8 Evacuation and Burial parties will move forward in Rear of Quartermaster Section, and will receive further instructions from Major Bowerbank at QUIEVRECHAIN. Order of dress of Evacuation and Burial parties will be Heavy Marching Order; blanket rolled bandolier in ground sheet around pack. Details of these parties as per A.574 of this date.
- 9 The Quartermaster will arrange to draw from 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters, ST SAULVE, at 0700 hours today, battle stores as per 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, Q.467 of 6<sup>th</sup> inst, forwarded to him. He will issue to Companies at 0715 hours one extra bandolier per man, which will be carried forward. Balance of battle stores will be transported to QUIEVRECHAIN for issue.
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD RAYMOND, Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Medical Officer
2	Commanding Officer	10	Quartermaster
3	OC "A" Company	11	Transport Officer
4	OC "B" Company	12	RSM
5	OC "C" Company	13	Pipe Band
6	OC "D" Company	14	Brass Band
7	OC Specialist Section	15	File
8	OC Communication Section	16-18	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 239

7<sup>TH</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet

45 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to BAISIEUX tomorrow, November 8<sup>th</sup>, 1918
- 2 TIME. Head of column will rest on Cross roads S.9.b.60.45 at 0930 hours
- 3 ORDER OF MARCH. Specialists, Communication, RSM, Brass Band, "A" and "B" Companies, Pipe Band, "C" and "D" Companies, QM Section, Burial and Evacuation Parties, Rear Details and Transport
- 4 ROUTE. VALENCIENNES-MONS Road
- 5 BREAKFAST. Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours
- 6 Officer's baggage and mess boxes will be piled at QM Stores at 0900 hours
- 7 The Quartermaster will arrange to have packs and blankets left at ST SAULVE, collected early in the morning and delivered to new area.
- 8 Stores that cannot be taken forward with the Battalion will be piled at the QM Stores and a guard supplied by the RSM, will be left in charge until these are picked up later in the day by the Transport
- 9 Lieut RA Stewart, 4 CQMS, Corpl Zacharias for Headquarters and a representative of the Transport will proceed ahead and arrange for the accommodation of the Battalion. This Party will report to Lieut Stewart at the Battalion Orderly room at 0815 hours.
- 10 On completion of this move, Units will be prepared to move on short notice
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD Raymond, Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battn

Issued by Orderly at 2130 hours

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Medical Officer
2	Commanding Officer	10	Quartermaster
3	OC "A" Company	11	Transport Officer
4	OC "B" Company	12	Lieut N Nicholson
5	OC "C" Company	13	RSM
6	OC "D" Company	14	Band Master
7	Scout Officer	15	Pipe Major
8	Signal Officer	16	File
		17-19	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 240

8<sup>TH</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet

45 1/40,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion will move to ELOUGES and will be situated in that part South of East and West Grid Line in T.10.Central
- 2 THE Battalion will be formed up on WILHIEM STRASS with head of column facing north, and will move off at 1400 hours.
- 3 ORDER OF MARCH – Usual.
- 4 Packs and Band instruments will be piled at the QM Stores at once, this does not include the Rear Details and Evacuation Party.
- 5 BILLETING – Lieut RA Stewart, 4 CQMS, Corpl Zacharias for Headquarters and Transport representative will proceed forward at once and arrange for accompdation.
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

Issued by Orderly  
At 1300 hours

(sgd) FD Raymond, Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 241

9<sup>TH</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet

45 1/40,000

- 1 (a) The enemy is fighting a vigorous Rear Guard action, retiring to a prepared position in the vicinity of MONS.  
(b) The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, in conjunction with the 190<sup>th</sup> Brigade (63<sup>rd</sup> Royal Naval Division) on the right, and the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the left, will continue the advance today, November 9<sup>th</sup>, 1918, and maintain contact.  
  
The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will pass through Out Post line of the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion at 0800 hours.
- 2 BOUNDARIES. Right – (2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Boundary) a line along Grid from U.13.c.00.00 to U.18.c.00.00, thence SE to V.19.a.00 thence along Grid to V.23.a.00.00  
  
Left Battalion Boundary – U.8.a.10.60, East along road to road junction U.9.a.50.60, thence to road junction U.9.b.85.40, U.4.d.10.00, thence due East along Grid Line.  
  
Inter Company Boundary – Approximately along Grid from U.7.c.50.00, to V.8.c.00.00

3           OBJECTIVES The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will advance in a south-easterly direction, from U.9., 15., 10., 16., 11., 17., 12., and 18., until meeting with strong resistance. Companies will maintain contact with their flanking units.

4           ASSEMBLY

- (a) The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will assemble in U.7.b and d., and U.14.c and d.
- (b) If the road junction through U.15.a and V.16.a and b is made good by the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion before zero hour, the Battalion will assemble on the eastern edge of the wood in U.15.c and a., 14.b., and 8.d & b.

5           The Battalion will advance on a two Company front – “A” Company, Right, “D” Company Left, “C” Company in support of “A” Company, “B” Company in support of “D” Company.

The support companies will avoid becoming involved in the front line of the advancing units, unless occasion arises to assist “A” and “D” Companies in overcoming the resistance of the enemy Rear Guards.

See para 9, re – cooperation of Machine Guns

6           If the Battalion assembles as per para 4 (a), “A” and “C” Companies will advance from the wood via the Road running North-easterly through U.14.d and 15.a. “D” and “B” Companies will advance on the Northern edge of the wood from U.8.a and b. The attack will be continued vigorously, the right companies passing through the Southern outskirts of WARQUIGNIES (U.10.d and 10.a. The left companies will continue the advance through the Northern outskirts of WARQUIGNIES (U.9.b and U.10.a and b). The advance on this point will be through the grid line to U.9., 10., 11, and 12, which will be taken as the inter Company boundary.

The right companies will be responsible for the wood in U.16, 17 and 18 and for the villages in V.13.14, 15, 19, 20 and 21, and the left Companies for the spur and villages in U.11 and 12 and V.7 and 8.

7           Lieut RA Stewart will be in charge of assembly, and will report assembly complete to Battalion Headquarters

8           ARTILLERY The Brigade advance will be supported by three Brigades of Field Artillery, which, at zero hour, will barrage selected points.

On the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion front the points are ridge U.11, 16 and 17, East of WARQUIGNIES.

In addition, “G” Battery 311 Army Brigade, RFA, will support this Battalion. This Battery will move into position (U.8.a) and in the Northern edge of BOIS de T’EGUE (U.15.b., 16.a and b. and 10.d.). Later, this Battery will observe from Fosse No 1 and will engage targets which are holding up the advance which may be indicated to any officer.

2<sup>nd</sup> Lieut Black will be responsible for liaison with this Battalion

9            MACHINE GUNS "J" Battery, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion, CMGC, will cooperate with this Battalion. The left sub section will advance in support of the two front line Companies. Numbers 5 and 6 guns with "A" Company and Numbers 7 and 8 with "D" Company. The right sub section will be in reserve at Battalion Headquarters.

Sub sections concerned will report to Companies at ELOUGES at 0345 hours

10           One section of Medium Trench Mortars will cooperate with the Battalion. They will report at Zero hour.

11           CAVALRY One Troop, Canadian Light Horse Cavalry will be attached to this Battalion, and will be used for liaison and exploiting if possible

12           MOVE The Battalion will form up on Main Road, T.10.c and d, at 0550 hours and will move off at 0600 hours. Guides will be posted along route by Intelligence Officer.

13           ORDER OF MARCH "A", "C", "D", "B", Companies and Headquarters

14           DRESS Fighting Order, Greatcoats to be carried in Rubber sheets

15           BREAKFAST Breakfast will be served at 0500 hours

16           Evacuation Party will report to 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters ELOUGES at 0600 hours

17           Brigade report Centre will be situated at T.12.b.10.30

18           Battalion Headquarters will be situated at zero hour at U.7.c.70.00, and at 1000 hours will move to QUARRY in U.8.d

19           When Battalion Headquarters cannot be located, a representative can be found at the Church of the nearest captured village in Brigade Area

20           Lewis Guns and Stretchers will be carried forward

21           COMMUNICATION Communication will be maintained by visual, Fuller phone, DS phone, Popham Pannel and Runner.

22           PRISONERS Prisoners will be escorted to Battalion Headquarters as soon as possible.

21           RAP will be situated at Battalion Headquarters

22           ACKNOWLEDGE

(sgd) FD RAYMOND, Captain  
ADJUTANT 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by runner at 0450 hours

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	9	Scout Officer
2	OC 311 Army Brigade Artillery	10	Signalling Officer
3	OC "J" Battery CMGC	11	Medical Officer
4	OC "A" Company	12	Quartermaster
5	OC "B" Company	13	Transport Officer
6	OC "C" Company	14	File
7	OC "D" Company	15	RSM
8	Commanding Officer	16-18	War Diary

REPORT ON 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION  
MOVES AND OPERATIONS  
NOVEMBER 4<sup>TH</sup> TO 11<sup>TH</sup> (INCLUSIVE)

Reference Sheets  
51.A - 1/40,000  
45 - 1/40,000

In preparation for the relief of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division by the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division in the right sector of the Canadian Corps Battle Front, the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved forward from ANICHE to PETIT FORET, on November 4<sup>th</sup>, the move being complete by 2345 hours. Battalion Headquarters was established at D.5.b.90.30. The Battalion moved by bus, while the Transport completed its move by road at 1700 hours.

November 5<sup>th</sup> This day was spent in billets at PETIT FORET. At 2200 hours a move order was received from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade for the Battalion to proceed to ST SAULVE on the following morning.

November 6<sup>th</sup> The Battalion proceeded to ST SAULVE, the move being complete at 1330 hours. One wing of a large seminary in the town was occupied as billets. At 1940 hours a warning order was received from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade for the Battalion to hold itself in readiness to move forward on the following day, as a unit of the Brigade, in support of the advance of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. The CO attended a conference at Brigade Headquarters, ST SAULVE, at 2150 hours, when the move of the following day was discussed and instructions issued.

November 7<sup>th</sup> At 1140 hours an order was received from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade for the Battalion to proceed to the QUIEVRECHAIN AREA. Upon completion of move, Battalion Headquarters was situated at S.9.b.70.20. (Sheet 45 1/40,000). Companies, Sections and Transport were billeted and stabled in the houses and buildings in the vicinity. The move was complete at 1540 hours. Owing to the shelling of the previous day and the enemy's demolition, the Battalion was held up at many points on the VALENCIENNES – MONS Road, while the Engineers carried out the necessary repairs to enable traffic to be resumed. At 2230 hours a warning order was received from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters for the next day's move to QUEUVRAIN, but this was later amended, and BAISSIEUX (S.18.c.) was the village to which the Battalion was ordered to move on the following day.

November 8<sup>th</sup> At 0900 hours the Battalion moved to BAISSIEUX and occupied billets for a few hours. At 1400 hours on this day, the Battalion moved forward to ELOUGES, and Headquarters was established at T.10.c.40.80. At this place, which had been released by the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade on the previous day, the Battalion was accorded a rousing reception by the Belgian inhabitants. In the evening a warning order was received that the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade would advance through the out post line of the 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade and maintain contact with the enemy's rear guards on the following morning. The CO attended a conference at Brigade Headquarters at 2000 hours, and received instructions regarding the advance of the Battalion on November 9<sup>th</sup>. Upon his return to Battalion Headquarters a conference of Officers was held and all instructions and arrangements embodied in 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Operation Order No 241, which was issued during the night.

November 9<sup>th</sup> At 0600 hours the Battalion moved forward from ELOUGES, via DOUR, to the area U.7.b. and d., and U.14.c. & d. At 0200 hours the CO and Intelligence Officer had received information from the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (Right Battalion of 5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade) the Headquarters of which was located in T.11.c. The 24<sup>th</sup> Battalion assisted greatly in providing guides for the Battalion into the assembly positions, from which it advanced.

The advance of the Battalion was supported by "C" Battery, 311<sup>th</sup> Army Brigade, RFA, also by "J" Battery, 2<sup>nd</sup> Battalion, CMGC. The Officers Commanding these units were given all available information and instructions at Battalion Headquarters at ELOUGES during the night November 8/9<sup>th</sup>.

The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion advanced with two Companies in front line – "A", Right and "D", left, with "C" Company in right support and "B" Company in left support. The left sub-section (4 guns of "J" Machine Gun Battery) was distributed in support to "A" and "D" Companies, while "C" Battery, 311<sup>th</sup> Army Brigade, RFA, moved into position in the vicinity of V.8.a.30.80. before zero hour (0800 hours). One troop of the Canadian Light Horse was attached to the Battalion for the operation.

The 63<sup>rd</sup> Royal Naval Division advanced on the right and the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on the left. Boundaries as per Operation order No 241, para 2.

At Zero hour minus 30 minutes, Battalion Headquarters was established at U.7.c.70.00.

The advance will be detailed by Companies.

"A" Company (Right), Lieut EW Edwards, Commanding. Guides of the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion conducted this Company to Road at U.13.d.6.9 from thence it proceeded to Road Junction in U.20.a., thence by road to U.15.a.30.30., which point was made good at 0756 hours. No enemy opposition was encountered. At 0810 hours this Company, with "C" Company in support under Lieut DK MacDonnell, deployed in artillery formation and moved forward between WARQUIGNIES and BOIS ROYAL. No hostile opposition was met, and the advance was continued through U.10.c and D., U.11.c and d., U.18.a and b., V.13.a and d., and V.14.c and d. Royal Fusileers of the 63<sup>rd</sup> Division on the right. A hostile machine gun, firing from a position in V.15.d., was forced to withdraw by patrols which were sent out, and the advance of "A" and "C" Companies continued at 1145 hours. At this point Lieut DK MacDonnell and Lieut Scott ("J" Machine Gun Battery), were severely wounded by enemy shell fire, and other enemy machine gunners were forced to retire by the vigorous advance of our men.

"A" and "C" Companies halted in V.24.d before crossing the river, and connection was gained with our flanks. Patrols were sent across the river and hostile machine gun fire silenced. These Companies then proceeded to W.19.b., where they were again fired upon by artillery and machine guns. Five casualties to Other Ranks were sustained owing to this fire, one of our men being killed.

"D" Company (Right). Lieut RJ Gill in Command. This Company, with "B" Company in support, were guided to the first assembly position by the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. They arrived at U.8.a.20.50 at 0730 hours, and, finding that the 24<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion had advanced during the night, our companies moved forward to the second assembly position in U.8.a.70.80. Advancing, "D" and "B" Companies passed through the Northern outskirts of PETIT HORNU at 0820 hours, thence through WARQUIGNIES at 0840 hours, in touch with "A" Company on the right. Crossed over the spur in U.11.a and U.11. b central at 0915 hours. No resistance was encountered, through PATURAGES (U.6.c.20.20., U.12.a.90.90., U.12.b.20.90., and U.6.d.50.20) at 0945 hours. In this vicinity one enemy machine gun attempted to impede the advance, but was quickly forced to withdraw. The advance was continued south-easterly to approximately V.7.central, passing through BOUVERIE at V.7.b.50.70 and U.8.central, to V.8.d.50.60. This point was made good at 1010 hours. Proceeded south-easterly to V.15.a.20.70 to V.15.central, when a patrol was sent out to get in touch with our right Company. At this point enemy artillery opened fire on this Company with 15 rounds HE and gas, and one hostile machine gun attempted to impede the advance, which was continued to V.16.a.50.90. and the railway track crossed at 1315 hours. Proceeded to GENLY, passing through village in north-easterly direction at V.17.c.80.80 where two Germans were located. Time 1400 hours. The inhabitants reported that the enemy had retired from this area at 1330 hours that day. Advised that "A" Company on right was moving in a north-easterly direction. "D" Company proceeded to and remained in Sunken Road V.18.b and d. Position was taken up in high ground in V.18.b and d and connection was gained with 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion on left, and "A" Company on right.

The support Companies – “C” and “B” – maintained communication with the forward companies throughout the advance, and, as in the case of the Commanders of “A” and “D” Companies, Lieuts Robinson and MacDonnell, maintained excellent control. Lieut MacDonnell was the only Officer casualty of the day. The rapid advance was closely followed by the successive move of Battalion Headquarters which was kept in touch with the approximate location of the Companies throughout. The mounted patrols of the Canadian Light Horse attached to the Battalion, under Lieut Askwith, rendered excellent service in this regard, and also kept in touch with the flanking units. The left sub-section of “J” Machine Gun Battery was at all times available in support of our advancing Companies. The right sub-section remained in Reserve at Battalion Headquarters, with Lieut Marshall, Commander of the Battery.

Major Mein, 311<sup>th</sup> Army Brigade, RFA, advanced his battery in support of our Companies, and throughout the day kept Battalion Headquarters informed of his movements. At 1630 hours his battery was in action at V.17.d.20.90. The Outposts disposition of the Battalion throughout the night of 9/10<sup>th</sup> was approximately W.19.central – W.13.c and a. Battalion Headquarters was established at GENLY at V.17.c.50.40.

Battalion Headquarters moved from U.7.c.70.00 to U.8.d.50.30. at 0845 hours. Before moving, patrols of the Canadian Light Horse had reported that they were in touch with our Companies. At 0950 hours, Battalion Headquarters was advanced to the Church at WARQUIGNIES and established there at 1030 hours. Here the CO made a personal report to the GOC Brigade. At 1150 hours an advanced Headquarters was established by Captain FD Raymond MC, at V.14.a.30.25, and this was occupied as Battalion Headquarters at 1245 hours. Headquarters was established at GENLY (V.17.c.50.40) at 1640 hours.

Owing to the change in the Southern Boundary, and the Brigade Order for the 20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion to continue the advance as the right Battalion on the 10<sup>th</sup> November (north-easterly from NOIRCHAIN), the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion assembled at the Chateau at NOIRCHAIN at 0830 hours on the 10<sup>th</sup>. The area it had occupied during the night 9/10<sup>th</sup> had been allotted to the 63<sup>rd</sup> Division. The Battalion remained resting in billets at NOIRCHAIN during the day and night of November 10/11<sup>th</sup>.

The Belgian inhabitants of the villages through which the Battalion advanced received our Officers and men with wild enthusiasm, and, in all cases, the information received was to the effect that the enemy had not intended retiring from the area on that day, but owing to our vigorous advance, had hastily withdrawn.

Many stories were told of the harshness of the enemy toward the inhabitants during his period of occupation. Our men were accorded as the “Liberators of Belgium”, and the Officers maintained control with considerable difficulty, owing to the efforts of the inhabitants to impede the advance by their desire to rejoice and entertain.

The advance of the day was over 10,000 yards.

The Transport and Rear Details moved from ELOUGES and remained for the night of 9<sup>th</sup>/10<sup>th</sup> at our Headquarters (V.14.a.30.25) south of BOUVERIE. Headed by the bands this personnel was given a rousing reception en route.

The following Officers advanced with the Battalion:

Headquarters:	CO Lt.-Col HE Pense DSO, MC
	Adjut Capt FD Raymond MC
	Int Officer Lieut RA Stewart
	Sig Officer Lieut JG Caldwell
“A” Company	Lieut EW Edwards
	Lieut JR Smith MC
“B” Company	Lieut FG Robinson
	Lieut GD Woodcock
“C” Company	Lieut DK MacDonnell
“D” Company	Lieut RJ Gill
	Lieut WI Fleming





*For information of the A.G.'s Office at the base.*

**Officers and men who have become casualties, been transferred or joined since last report.**

Place **In the Field.** Date **November 4th 1918.**

Regtl. Number	Rank	Name	Corps	Nature of casualty, or name of unit from or to which transferred.	Date of being struck off or coming on the ration return.	Remarks *
---------------	------	------	-------	---	--	-----------

The undermentioned have been granted 14 days Leave of Absence from dates as stated

445132	Pte	Best, A	1-11-18	246390	Pte Hayes, WIS	3-11-18
59127	A/CSM	Byrne, C	do	123432	Sgt Wise, F	do
141716	Pte	Law, R	do	141722	Pte Low, D	do
141630	Pte	Brown, C	do	59578	Pte Lee, C	do
141724	Pte	Marshall, AJ	do	59590	Pte Lilley, W	do
141879	Pte	Coxall, T	do	291357	Pte Tandy, JH	4-11-18
123428	Pte	Kelly, A	4-11-18	142442	Pte Livingstone J,	do
1087324	Pte	Money, J	do			

The undermentioned proceeded to England 1-11-18 to attend Cadet Course

805232	Sgt	Honey, RC	123484	Cp	Mitchell, HV
59737	Sgt	McNab, JG	141591	Sgt	Palmer, CW

2115645	Pte	Cooke, H	admitted to Hospl "Sick" 1-11-18
633852	Pte	Lennox, H	proceeded to attend Course 1-11-18
2356550	Pte	Solomon, A	admitted to Hospl, "Sick" 2-11-18
412182	Pte	Bowen, H	admitted to Hospl, "Sick" 4-11-18

59268 Pte Doran, HA proceeded 2-11-18, for attachment to 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf. Brigade (Auth'y 4<sup>th</sup> Cdn Inf Brigade Wire: 430 dated 2-11-18)

The undermentioned returns to duty from Hospl on dates as stated,

506481	Pte	Thibert, WJ	1-11-18	1093321	Pte Poff, TH	2-11-18
636777	Pte	Wood, CA	2-11-18	1090383	Pte Rogers, HC	do
2497936	Pte	Hill, GC	do	4020054	Pte Landry, Z	do
142371	Pte	Hooper, JW	do	3320181	Pte Desjardins, A	do
3320495	Pte	Ferguson, WC	do	4020571	Pte Eagley, JA	do
805099	Pte	Lemon, C	do	124675	Pte Bremner, W	do
4020578	Pte	Jewell, WW	do	3108423	Pte LaPlante, H	do

The undermentioned returns to duty from leave on dates as stated,

59828	Pte	Reid, W	2-11-18	636567	Pte Wonnacott, WG	27-10-18
213911	Pte	Shields, A	1-11-18	444453	L/Cpl DesRoches, EH	2-11-18
726042	Pte	Graham, J	3-11-18	144959	Pte Pearson, T	1-11-18
59959	Pte	Taylor, J	4-11-18			

The undermentioned returns to duty from Rest Camp 1-11-18

633351	Pte	Foley, BWA	775448	Pte	Brittain, AE
675360	Sgt	Garlick, DF	725171	Pte	Truax, W
1012184	Pte	Parkinson, GC			

297228 Pte Gascon, D Returned to duty from Absence without Leave 31-10-18  
 675396 Pte Hill, P Returned to duty from Course 1-11-18

PROMOTIONS, APPOINTMENTS AND REVERSIONS

412665 Acting Sergeant Belyea relinquishes acting rank of Lance Sergeant on proceeding to England 27-10-18

59395 Cpl Griffith, H, promoted Sergeant, vice 639577 Sgt Clark, AN Struck off strength 15-10-18

454437 Lance Corporal Gilmore, M, promoted Corporal, vice 59395 Cpl Griffith, H, promoted 15-10-18

59273 Pte Doyle HH, appointed acting Lance Sergeant, vice 59746 Lance Sergeant Newman CE, to Hospl, with effect from 27-10-18

OFFICERS

Lieut VR Ullman (MC) returns to duty from Rest Camp 1-11-18

Lieut JG Caldwell returns to duty from Leave of Absence 2-11-18

Lieut-Col HE Pense (DSO, MC) returns to duty from Leave 4-11-18

Captain DJ More (MC) admitted to Hospl "Sick" 4-11-18

	Previous Week		Present Week	
	Off	ORs	Off	ORs
Effective strength of Unit	26	818	26	825
Details att. As in WD	1	1	1	1
Supernumeraries attached				
Total	27	819	27	825

Difference of 7 Other Ranks increase

Total strength of Other Ranks for previous week		819
From Hospl	11	<u>11</u>
		830
Command	4	<u>4</u>
		826

SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY  
By LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR ARTHUR W CURRIE, KCB, KCMG, COMMANDING  
CANADIAN CORPS

---

25<sup>th</sup> November, 1918

- 1 Some of you have already commenced, while others are about to begin, the march to the RHINE, liberating Belgium in your advance. In a few days you will enter Germany, and hold certain parts in order to ensure the fulfillment of the terms of the Armistice Preliminary to the Peace Treaty.
- 2 The rulers of Germany, humiliated and demoralized, have fled. That unscrupulous nation, who in 1914 set at naught every treaty and violated every moral obligation, who have since perpetrated the most ferocious atrocities on land as well as on the sea, is beaten, famished and at our mercy. Justice has come, retribution commences. During four long years, conscious of the righteousness of your cause, you have fought many battles and endured cruel hardships, and now your mighty efforts are rewarded: your fallen comrades are avenged. You have demonstrated on the battle field your superior courage and unfaltering energy. By the will of God you have won, won, won.
- 3 Marching triumphantly through Belgium, you will be received everywhere as liberators, but the kindness and generosity of the population must not cause any relaxation of your discipline or alertness. Your task is not yet completed, and you must remain what you are, the close-knitted army, in the grim, deadly earnest.
- 4 German agents, scattered throughout the country, must not be able to report to their masters any weakness or evidence of disintegration or your fighting power. It is essential that on the march and at the halt, discipline must be of the highest standard. Every possible protection should be taken at all times to guard against hostile acts by organized bodies, and to lessen the possibility, always present, of isolated murders or disparage guerilla acts by factions of the enemy. Above all, it is of capital importance to establish in Germany the sense of your overwhelming moral and physical standing, so as to complete by the presence of your potential strength, the victories you have won on the Battle Field. All external signs of discipline must be insisted upon, and the example in this, as in all instances, must continue to be and appear to be that powerful hitting force which has won the fear and respect of your foes, and the admiration of the world.
- 5 It is not necessary to say that the population and private property will be respected. You will always remember that you fought for justice, right and decency, and that you cannot afford to fall short of these essentials even in the country against which you have every right to feel bitter. Rest assured that the crimes of Germany will receive adequate punishment. Attempts will be made by insidious propaganda to undermine the source of your strength: but you, the soldier citizens of the finest and most advanced democracy in the world, will treat such attempts with the contempt they deserve. You know what self-imposed, stern discipline has made you – the hardest, most successful and cleanest fighters of this war. Beginning by the immortal stand at the Second Battle of Ypres, you befittingly closed, by the capture of Mons, your fighting record in which every battle you fought is a resplendent page of glory.

I trust you, and the people at home trust you, while the memory of your dead comrades demands of you, to bring back that glorious record, pure and unsullied, to Canada.

(sgd) AW CURRIE, Lieutenant-General  
Commanding Canadian Corps

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 242

17<sup>TH</sup> November, 1918

Reference Maps

Sheet 45 1/40,000

NAMUR 1/100,000

- 1 In accordance with terms of the armistice, the occupied portions of FRANCE, BELGIUM and LUXEMBOURG are being evacuated by the enemy, and the Allied Forces commencing their advance towards the German Frontier.
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion as part of the Main Body of the Left Column, 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division, will move by march route, via NYOR and HAVRE to THIEU tomorrow November 18<sup>th</sup>, 1918
- 3 STARTING POINT:- Road Junction Q.4.c.90.30 (Sheet 45)
- 4 TIME:- The Battalion will pass Starting Point at 9827 hours.
- 5 ORDER OF MARCH:- Usual
- 6 The Battalion will form up in Column of Route on the MESVIN ROAD, facing NE, with head of column at CHURCH, at 0640 hours and will move off at 0650 hours. 10 yards distance between Companies and Transport will be maintained.
- 7 DRESS:- Marching Order with Service Caps. Leather Jerkins will be worn and Breech covers on rifles
- 8 One Lorry and One GS Wagon, complete turnout, will report to the Battalion before the move.
- 9 Officer's kits, men's blankets, etc, will be piled at CHATEAU near Railway (Q.26.c.50.24) at 0600 hours and will be collected by lorry and GS Wagon provided for that purpose. Company Mess Outfits will be loaded on Company Lewis Gun Limbers by the same time. Headquarters Mess Outfit, Orderly Room boxes and Band baggage will be collected under separate arrangements.  
  
Unit Commanders will ensure that blankets are properly rolled (in bundles of 10s) and plainly marked.
- 10 Men who will not be able to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut RL Perry in accordance with instructions A.584 of this date.
- 11 The Rear Party as detailed in A.584 of Nov. 17<sup>th</sup> 1918, will ensure that billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 12 The permanent Billeting Party proceeded to THIEU today and will meet the Battalion on its arrival at Road Junction of MONS – ROSULX and VILLE-SUR-HAINE – THIEU ROADS.
- 13 Sergt Tompkins and 1 OR from QM Stores will be responsible for loading and looking after blankets
- 14 Breakfast will be served at 0615 hours. Dinner will be cooked en-route
- 15 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangements at 0600 hours tomorrow
- 16 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 2030 hrs

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	11	QM
2	Commanding Officer	12	RSM
3 to 6	ALL Companies	13	Pipe Band
7	Specialists	14	Brass Band
8	Communication	15	Office Copy
9	MO	16-18	War Diary
10	TO		

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 243

20<sup>TH</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet  
NAMUR 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move by march route, via BRACQUEGNIES – AIMERIES, LA LOUVIERS, LA HESTRE, CHAPELLE-les-HERLAIMONT, to TRAZEGNIES, tomorrow, November 21<sup>st</sup>, 1918
- 2 STARTING POINT – Road Railway Crossing, ½ mile Southeast of S in AIMERIES
- 3 The Battalion will pass Starting Point at 1039 hours
- 4 ORDER OF MARCH – Usual
- 5 The Battalion will form up in column of route facing North-East, with head of column at “C” Company Headquarters, at 0830 hours, and will move off at 0840 hours.  

Distances between Companies and Transport will be in accordance with Para 3, Section 25, Field Service Regulations, Part 1.
- 6 DRESS – Marching Order with service caps. Leather Jerkins will be worn. Breech covers on rifles.
- 7 One Lorry, in addition to the attached GS wagon at present with me, will report to the Battalion before the move.
- 8 Officers kits, men’s blankets, etc, will be piled at the Church, THIEU, by 0730 hours, and will be collected by Transport.  

Company mess outfits will be loaded on Company Lewis gun limbers at the same time.

Headquarters mess outfit, Orderly Room boxes and baggage will be collected under arrangements made by Commanders concerned.
- 9 Unit Commanders will ensure that blankets are properly rolled (in bundles of 10s) and plainly marked.

- 10 Men who will not be able to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut RL Perry at rear of the column before moving off.
- 11 Rear party, as detailed in A.584, of November 17<sup>th</sup>, under command of Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition.
- 12 No. 1 Billeting party, under Lieut JHW Cobb MC, proceeded to TRAZEGNIES today, and will meet the Battalion on its arrival at the entrance of the town on the CHAPELLE-les-HERLAIMONT – TRAZEGNIES Road.
- No. 2 Billeting party – Lieut EB Smythe MC, representatives from Companies, Specialist, Transport and Headquarters, will report to Brigade Starting point at an hour to be notified later. Lieut EB Smythe will report to the Adjutant for further instructions, and will arrange, on receipt of orders, a rendezvous for unit representatives.
- 13 Sergeant Tompkins and one Other Rank from QM Stores will be responsible for the loading and looking after of blankets
- 14 Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours
- 15 Dinner will be cooked en route, and will be served between 1150 hours and 1300 hours
- 16 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangements, at 0730 hours
- 17 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by FD Raymond)  
 Captain  
 Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 244

23<sup>rd</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet  
 NAMUR 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move by march route via COURCELLES – MOTTS – GROSSELIES – RANSART – BONAIR to LAMBUSART, tomorrow 24<sup>th</sup> Nov. 1918
- 2 STARTING POINT – Cross Roads, ½ mile North of S in FRAENES STA
- 3 ORDER OF MARCH – As per our A.598 of this date
- 4 The Battalion will form up in column of route facing East, with head of column at Starting Point at 1020 hours, and will move off at 1030 hours. Distances between Companies and Transport will be in accordance with para 2(d) of our A.598 of this date.
- 5 DRESS – Marching Order with Service Caps. Leather Jerkins will be worn. Breach covers on rifles.
- 5b One lorry, in addition to the attached GS Wagon at present with Battalion, will report to Battalion before the move.  
 “A” and “B” Companies, Headquarters Officers’ mess outfits and kits, Orderly Room boxes and Bands baggage, will be piled at QM stores at 0900 hours.  
 Officers’ kits and mess outfits of “C” and “D” Companies will be piled on Battalion Parade Ground by 0900 hours. Both the above will be collected by Transport.

- 7 Men who are not able to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut GL Edmunds at rear of the column before moving off.
- 8 Lieut JHW Cobb MC, will proceed to ST SARVAIS, as per our 21/206 of this date
- 9 Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours
- 10 Dinner will be cooked on route, and will be served at 1300 hours
- 11 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0730 hours
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 2230 hrs

Copy No 1 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB 2 Commanding Officer 3 to 6 ALL Companies 7 Scout Officer 8 Signal Officer 9 MO 10 QM	11 Transport Officer 12 Lieut JHW Cobb MC 13 Lieut GL Edmunds 14 Lieut LA Anderson MM 15 RSM 16 Bandmaster 17 Pipe Major 18 File 19-21 War Diary
---	--

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 245

23<sup>rd</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet  
NAMUR 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move by march route via VELAINE – LESTERNES to SPY, tomorrow 25<sup>th</sup> November 1918
- 2 STARTING POINT – BRIDGE over RAILWAY on MAIN ROAD, 350 yards SOUTH of S in STA (LAMBUSART)
- 3 ORDER OF MARCH – “D”, “A”, “C” and “B” Companies. Sections as usual. Distances as per our A.598 of the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst, and other instructions contained in same will remain in force.
- 4 The Battalion will form up in column of route on MAIN ROAD facing NE with head of column resting at Starting Point at 1030 hours, and will move off at 1040 hours
- 5 DRESS – Marching Order with Service Caps. Leather Jerkins will be worn. Breech covers on rifles.



- 6 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and piled outside Battalion Orderly Room by 0900 hours. The Quartermaster will arrange for guard over same, as previously ordered.
- Officers baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room boxes and Band baggage will be piled at same location by 0900 hours. Lorry will collect blankets and Transport Officer will arrange to collect balance of baggage etc.
- 7 Men who are not able to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut RL Perry at rear of the column before moving off.
- 8 Breakfast will be served at 0730 hours.
- 9 Dinner will be cooked en route, and will be served at 1200 hours.
- 10 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangements by 0800 hours.
- 11 Transport, including cooks will move independently from present location NORTH EASTERLY to CROSS ROADS 650 yards SOUTH of W in WANFERCEE, thence SOUTH EASTERLY to CROSS ROADS 100 yards NORTH WEST of S IN SPINCY, where it will follow in rear of the Battalion. Cooks will join their respective Companies at last mentioned CROSS ROADS
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut for  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 2330 hours

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	11	Transport Officer
2	Commanding Officer	12	Lieut RL Perry
3 to 6	ALL Companies	13	Lieut LA Anderson MM
7	Scout Officer	14	RSM
8	Signal Officer	15	Bandmaster
9	MO	16	Pipe Major
10	QM	17	File
		18-20	War Diary

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 246

26<sup>th</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet  
NAMUR 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move by march route via TEMPLoux – BELGRADE to NAMUR, tomorrow the 27<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 2 STARTING POINT – ROAD JUNCTION 450 yards NORTH of P in PRIEUX de MARIVAUX
- 3 ORDER OF MARCH – “B”, “A”, “D” and “C” Companies. Sections as usual. Distances as per our A.596 of the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst, and other instructions contained in same will still remain in force.
- 4 The Battalion will form up in column of route on PRIEUX de GOVET – TEMPLoux ROAD, facing EAST with head of column resting at starting point at 0915 hours, and will move off at 0920 hours.

- 5 Dinner will be cooked en route
- 6 Men who are not able to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut WI Fleming at rear of the column before moving off.
- 7 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut for  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	11	Transport Officer
2	Commanding Officer	12	Lieut WI Fleming
3 to 6	ALL Companies	13	Lieut LA Anderson MM
7	Scout Officer	14	RSM
8	Signal Officer	15	Bandmaster
9	MO	16	Pipe Major
10	QM	17	File
		18-20	War Diary

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
146/1

To: ALL RECIPIENTS of OPERATION ORDER No 246 of the 26<sup>th</sup> inst

Reference paragraph 4

For 0915 and 0920 hours read 1015 and 1020 hours respectively

ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut for  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

0715 hours  
Nov 27<sup>th</sup> 1918

SECRET

Copy No

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 247

28<sup>th</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet  
NAMUR 1/100,000  
MARCHE 9

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move by march route via the CANAL ROAD to BONNEVILLE, tomorrow, the 29<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 2 Starting Point – BRIDGE over CANAL, SOUTH-EAST of R in NAMUR

- 3           The Battalion will parade in Mass on the Barrack Square at 0835 hours in the following order – “A”, “D”, “C”, “B”, Sections as usual, and will move off at 0845 hours.
- Head of Column will pass Starting Point at 0902 hours
- 4           Dinner will be cooked en route and will be served at 1200 hours
- 5           Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly marked, and piled outside Quartermaster’s Stores by 0730 hours tomorrow. Officers’ baggage, Orderly Room boxes and Band baggage will be piled outside Quartermaster’s Stores by 0730 hours. Mess boxes will be piled outside Quartermaster’s Stores by 0600 hours.
- 6           Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours
- 7           Sick Parade will be held at 0730 hours
- 8           Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangements at 0730 hours
- 9           Men who are not able to keep up pace with the Battalion will report to Lieutenant ST Crooks in rear of the Column before moving off.
- 10          Rear party, under Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 11          Lieut EB Smythe MC, will report to 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters at 0625 hours tomorrow, to proceed ahead and arrange billets for 30<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 12          The Scout Officer will arrange for connecting files between this Battalion and the Battalion in front, (20<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion).
- 13          ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant  
For Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at

<p>Copy No 1 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade</p> <p>2 Commanding Officer</p> <p>3 OC “A” Company</p> <p>4 OC “B” Company</p> <p>5 OC “C” Company</p> <p>6 OC “D” Company</p> <p>7 Scout Officer</p> <p>8 Signalling Officer</p> <p>9 Medical Officer</p>	<p>10 Quartermaster</p> <p>11 Transport Officer</p> <p>12 Lieut LA Anderson MM</p> <p>13 RSM</p> <p>14 Bandmaster</p> <p>15 Pipe Major</p> <p>16 File</p> <p>17-19 War Diary</p>
---	--

SECRET

Copy No 16

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 248

29<sup>th</sup> November, 1918

Reference Sheet  
MARCHE 9 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion will proceed by march route, via STRUD – ST BEGGS, to MINCRET, tomorrow 30<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 Starting Point – CHURCH at Cross Roads (1.a.43.65)
- 3 The Battalion will form up in column of route on Road in front of Battalion Headquarters, head of column resting at Starting Point, facing North-East, in the following order – “D”, “C”, “B”, “A”, Sections as usual, at 0755 hours, and will move off at 0806 hours
- 4 Breakfast will be served at 0630 hours
- 5 Sick Parade will be held at 0700 hours
- 6 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside Quartermaster’s Stores by 0700 hours.  
  
Officers’ baggage, mess boxes, Orderly Room boxes and Band baggage will be piled outside Quartermaster’s Stores by 0730 hours.
- 7 All men who are not able to keep up pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut GL Edmunds at rear of column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangements by 0700 hours
- 9 Dinner will be cooked en route and will be served at 1200 hours
- 10 Lieut JHW Cobb MC, will report to Brigade Headquarters, HALTINE ONAU, at 0810 hours, tomorrow 30<sup>th</sup> inst, to arrange billets for 1<sup>st</sup> December
- 11 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant  
For Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 2230 hrs

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Quartermaster
2	Commanding Officer	11	Transport Officer
3	OC “A” Company	12	Lieut LA Anderson MM
4	OC “B” Company	13	RSM
5	OC “C” Company	14	Bandmaster
6	OC “D” Company	15	Pipe Major
7	Scout Officer	16	File
8	Signalling Officer	17-19	War Diary
9	Medical Officer		

## SUPPLEMENT AUGUST 1918 DIARY

Sir DOUGLAS HAIG in his despatch of December 21<sup>st</sup> says:-

“The definite collapse of the ambitious offensive launched by the enemy on the 15<sup>th</sup> July, and the striking success of the Allied counter-offensive south of the AISNE, effected a complete change in the whole military situation. The German Army had made its effort and failed ::::::::::: The British Army was ready to take the offensive.”

Dealing with the working out of his plan for an attack on the railway junction at CHAULNES, the Commander-in-Chief says:- “Further to strengthen my attack, I decided to reinforce the British Fourth Army with the Canadian Corps::::::::::::: In order to deceive the enemy and to ensure the maximum effect of a surprise attack, elaborate precautions were taken to mislead him as to our intentions and to conceal our real purpose”.

Further he states:- “The front held by the AUSTRALIAN Corps on the right of the British line was extended southwards to include the AMIENS – ROYE Road, and the Canadian Corps was moved into position by night behind this front. The assembly of Tanks and of the Cavalry Corps was postponed until the last moment and carried out as secretly as possible.”

In describing the Battle of AMIENS, 8<sup>th</sup> to 12<sup>th</sup> August, he says:-

“The brilliant and predominating part taken by the Canadian Corps and the Australian Corps in this battle is worthy of the highest commendation. The skill and determination of these troops proved irresistible and at all points met with rapid and complete success.”:::::::::::::

The results of the Battle of AMIENS may be summarized as follows: Within the space of five days the town of AMIENS and the Railways entering upon it had been disengaged. Twenty German Divisions had been engaged and heavily defeated by thirteen British Infantry Divisions and three cavalry Divisions, assisted by the 33<sup>rd</sup> American Division and supported by some 400 Tanks – nearly 22,000 prisoners and over 400 guns had been taken by us and our line had been pushed forward to a depth of some twelve miles in a vital sector.”

Writing of the Battle of BAPAUME, 21<sup>st</sup> August to September 1<sup>st</sup>, the Commander-in-Chief says:-

“As seen as the progress of the Third Army had forced the enemy to fall back from the MERCATEL SPUR, thereby giving us a secure southern flank for an assault upon the German positions on ????? HILL and about MONCH le PREUX, the moment arrived for the First Army to extend the front of our attack to the north. Using the river ??? ??? to cover their left. ::::::: The right of the First Army attacked east of ARRAS and by turning from the north the western extremity of the HINDENBURG line compelled the enemy to undertake a further retreat.”

The Battle of the SCARPE, 26<sup>th</sup> August to 3<sup>rd</sup> September, followed immediately. Of it the Commander-in-Chief says:-

“At 3 am on the 26<sup>th</sup> of August the Canadian Corps, Lieut General Sir AW CURRIE Commanding, on the right of General HORNER'S First Army attacked the German positions astride the SCARPE RIVER with the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Divisions and the 51<sup>st</sup> Division. The attack delivered on a front of about 5 ½ miles and closely supported by the left of the Third Army, was completely successful. By noon we had taken WANCOURT and GUEMAPPE and had stormed the hill and village of MONCY le PREUX:::::::::::::

“By the end of the month they had gained the high ground east of CHERISY and WANCOURT, had captured ETERPIGNY and cleared the area between the SENSEE and SCARPE Rivers, west of the TRINQUIS BROOK”.

## SUPPLEMENT SEPTEMBER 1918 DIARY

Dealing with the September events the Commander-in-Chief in his despatch of December 21<sup>st</sup> says:-

“On the 2<sup>nd</sup> September the DROCOURT-QUEANT Line was broken, the mass of trenches at the junction of that line and the HINDENBURG system was stormed and the enemy was thrown into precipitate retreat on the whole front to the south of it. This gallant feat of arms was carried out by the Canadian Corps of the First Army, employing the 1<sup>st</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Divisions and the 4<sup>th</sup> English Division and the XVII Corps of the Third Army, employing the 52<sup>nd</sup>, 57<sup>th</sup> and 63<sup>rd</sup> Divisions.

“The assault of the Canadians was launched at 5.00 am on a front of about 4 ½ miles south of the TRINQUIS BROOK, our infantry being supported by 40 tanks of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Tank Brigade and assisted by a mobile force of Motor machine gun units Canadian Cavalry and Armoured Cars. The attack was a complete success and by noon the whole of the elaborate system of wire, trenches and strong points, constituting the DROCOURT-CREANT Line on the front of our advance, was in our hands.”

Dealing with the events in the latter part of the month the Commander-in-Chief describing “The Battle of CAMBRAI and the HINDENBURG Line” he says:-

“The Battle of CAMBRAI which, on the 5<sup>th</sup> October, culminated in the capture of the last remaining sectors of the HINDENBURG Line was commenced by the First and Third Armies.”:.....

On the morning of the 26<sup>th</sup> September French and American forces attacked on both sides of the ??????, between the ????? and the SWIPPE Rivers.

“At 5.20 am on the 27<sup>th</sup> September the Third and First British Armies attacked with the IV, VI, XVII, and Canadian Corps in the direction of CAMBRAI on a front of about 13 miles from GOUEECOURT to the neighbourhood of SAUCHY LESTREE.:.....

“The Guards Division took ORIVAL WOOD and reached the neighbourhood of PRENNY CHAPEL where the 2<sup>nd</sup> Division took up the advance.

“In the centre the 52<sup>nd</sup> Division passing its troops across the Canal by bridgeheads previously established by the 37<sup>th</sup> Division, on the opening of the assault carried the German Trench line east of the Canal and gained the high ground overlooking GRAINCOURT. On their left the 63<sup>rd</sup> Division and the 4<sup>th</sup> and 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Divisions moved under cover of darkness down the west bank of the Canal between MOEUVES and SADIS-le-MARQUICH. In the half light of dawn these three Divisions stormed the line of the Canal itself, and advanced on GRAINCOURT, ANNEAUX, BOURLON and the slopes of the north of the latter village.

“:..... BOURLON had been carried by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division and the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division had passed through at BOURLON WOODS which was wholly in our possession.

“On the left the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division having seized SAINS-les-MARQUION early in the attack, advanced with the 11<sup>th</sup> Division and took HAYNECOURT.:.....” While the latter division captured EPINOY and OLSY-le-VERGER, :..... Next day the advance on this front was continued and GOUZEACOURT, MARCOING, NOYELLES-sur-L’ESCAUT, FONTAIN-NOTRE-DAME, SAILLY and PALLEUL were taken.”

## SUPPLEMENT TO OCTOBER DIARY

Dealing with the later phases of "The Battle of CAMBRAI", the despatch says:-

"In the CAMBRAI Sector, the New Zealand and 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadians took GREVECOEUR and RUMILLY, October 1<sup>st</sup>, while north of CAMBRAI the Canadian Corps cleared the high ground west of RAMILIES and entered BLECOURT. The fighting on the Canadian Front at this period was particularly severe and our troops displayed great courage and determination. :::::::::::

Speaking of the results of the Battle of Cambrai, 27<sup>th</sup> September – 5<sup>th</sup> October, the Commander-in-Chief says:-

"The great and critical assaults in which during these nine days of Battle, the First, Third and Fourth Armies stormed the line of the Canal Du Nord and broke through the HINDENBURG Line marks the close of the first phase of the BRITISH OFFENSIVE."

Dealing with the "Second Phase" of the British Offensive the Commander-in-Chief thus outlines the events between October 6<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup>:

"The second and concluding phase of the British Offensive now opened, in which the Fourth and Third Armies and the right of the First Army moved forward with their left flank on the canal line which runs from CAMBRAI to MONS and their right covered by the French First Army. This advance by the capture of MAUBEUGE and the disruption of the German main lateral system of communications forced the enemy to fall back upon the line of the MAUBE and realized the strategic plan of the Allied Operations." :::::::::::

The fighting in this period is described in three phases, the Battle of CATEAU, the forcing of the SELLE RIVER, and the advance to SAMBRE CANAL and VALENCIENNES.

There is but one reference to the Canadians in this portion of the despatch. It reads:

"During the following night, 9<sup>th</sup> October, the Canadian Corps captured RAMILIES and crossed the SCHELUT CANAL at POINT d'AIRE. Canadian Patrols entered CAMBRAI from the north and joined hands with patrols of the 57<sup>th</sup> Division working through the southern portion of the town."

## SUPPLEMENT TO NOVEMBER DIARY

Describing the "Battle of the SAMBRE", 1<sup>st</sup> – 11<sup>th</sup> November, the Commander-in-Chief in the despatch of December 21<sup>st</sup> says:-

"The principal British attack (of the Second and concluding phase) was to take place at the beginning of November as soon as possible after the capture of VALENCIENNES which I regarded as a necessary preliminary. In view of the likelihood of fresh withdrawals time was of importance. Accordingly at 5.15 am on the 1<sup>st</sup> November the XVII Corps of the Third Army and the XXII and Canadian Corps of the First Army attacked on a front of about six miles south of VALENCIENNES and in the course of two days of heavy fighting inflicted a severe defeat on the enemy ::::: On the left the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division captured VALENCIENNES and made progress beyond the town." :::::::::::

"The front of the decisive attack delivered by the Fourth, Third and First Armies on the 4<sup>th</sup> of November extended for a distance of about 30 miles from the SAMBER, north of GISY to VALENCIENNES :::::::::::

“ On the front of the First Army the XXII Corps and the Canadian Corps advanced against little opposition, except on the AUNELLE River and captured the villages of LE TRIKE, SEBOURG and LÉBOUR-QUIAUX, were counter-attacked on the high ground east of the AURELLE and pressed back slightly. The 6<sup>th</sup> Division and the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division on their left reached the outskirts of ROMEIRS and the eastern side of the marches north of VALENCIENNES.”

“By this great victory the enemy’s resistance was definitely broken. On the night 4<sup>th</sup>/5<sup>th</sup> November his troops began to fall back on practically the whole battle front. Throughout the following days, despite continuous rain, which imposed great hardships on our troops, infantry and cavalry pressed forward with scarcely a check, maintaining close touch with the rapidly retreating Germans”.

“on the 6<sup>th</sup> November, considerable opposition was again encountered on the front of the First Army, as well as on the left of the Third Army. AUBN, however, was captured and the HORNELLE River crossed, while Canadian Troops took BAISIEUX and QUIEVRECHAIN :::::

“On the 9<sup>th</sup> November the enemy was in general retreat on the whole front of the British Armies. The fortress of MAUBEUGE was entered by the Guards Division and the 62<sup>nd</sup> Division, while the Canadians approached MONS :::::

“Next day, the advance of the Five British Armies continued, cavalry and cyclists operating in advance of the infantry. Only in the neighbourhood of MONS was any substantial opposition met with. Here the Canadians advancing towards the town from south and west, and working round it to the North encountered an organized and tenacious MG defence” :::::

“In the early morning of the 11<sup>th</sup> November the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division captured MONS, the whole of the GERMAN defending force being killed or taken prisoners.”

#### NOMINAL ROLL OF 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

Being a record of all ranks with the  
Battalion at Noircchain on Armistice  
Day, November 11<sup>th</sup>, 1918

##### OFFICERS

Lieut.-Col HE Pense, DSO, MC  
Captain FD Raymond, MC  
Captain FK Ludlow  
Lieut RA Stewart  
Lieut JG Caldwell  
Lieut N Nicholson

Lieut EW Edwards  
Lieut JR Smith

Lieut FG Robinson  
Lieut GD Woodcock

Lieut RJ Gill



Nominal Roll of 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
 "A" Company

( % Original Men )

	636910	Pte	Anderson HG		2021652	Pte	Hunter R
	3202001	"	Austin R	%	59472	"	Holland D
	675609	Cpl	Armstrong C		2235327	"	Jarvo CE
	4000064	Pte	Arpan J		1045904	"	Jarvis LK
	3320716	"	Armstrong JE		850171	"	Jordan JT
	639649	"	Allen TF		412608	L/C	Jeffrey AW
	124675	"	Bremner W		4080283	Pte	Jackson J
	775448	"	Brittain A	%	59547	"	Kidby E
	633869	"	Brunette WH		3055581	"	Kerr EJ
	633013	"	Bennett WG		3055168	"	Keeler CD
	633058	"	Bathurst J	%	59605	"	Lowe H
	3056612	"	Boyd FJ		805099	"	Lemon C
	3055148	"	Boyce FG	%	59576	"	Leal HE
	4020534	"	Brown J		3320126	L/C	Lalonde VE
	3056620	"	Bolton S		3055237	Pte	Lepine A
	675470	L/C	Bourne H		3320628	"	Lajeunesse A
	2022079	Pte	Bashaw T		4021358	"	Laroche A
	2139009	"	Bayley T		2355443	"	Lange LF
	1049014	"	Bielby JW		2235319	"	Moss A
	2021671	"	Breen T		3055353	"	Manion AJ
	2021088	"	Butler SJ		3180517	"	Matheson A
	2356416	"	Baldwin E		3033181	"	Magrini R
	2537340	"	Black JV		3130749	"	Mason ET
	3202015	"	Breau B		175234	"	Mahoney AE
	3181452	"	Boutilier AE		636095	"	McKay A
	634162	"	Barney L		3204331	"	McLeod PJ
	412555	"	Clark C		928787	"	McKinstry H
	4020532	"	Churchill F		2356548	"	McFadyen F
	775466	"	Cousins A		3056534	"	O'Brien AA
	3055455	"	Cote VE		2356352	"	Oumette F
	3057465	"	Charette JLA		144959	"	Pearson T
	2137871	"	Cartwright TJ		501157	Cpl	Petrie J
	2021777	"	Coons L		663032	Pte	Page W
	2021836	"	Crotts F		726049	"	Pearson H
	3181561	"	Cook SD		640090	L/C	Phillips WH
	405663	"	Cummins O		739009	Pte	Roberts JK
	637093	"	Coleman CJ		1090383	"	Rogers HC
	141655	"	Dalmer HA		639170	"	Rickett H
	3056512	"	Deavy A		3056375	"	Redmond JH
	3056634	"	Denike HG		1030874	"	Runner FL
	3055844	"	Denison WI		639328	"	Sturgeon HE
	2139054	"	Donald T		633779	L/C	Shaver O
	2020553	"	Don JS		2265557	Pte	Smith SC
	3108117	"	Dayburn T		3320579	"	Smith JE
	3109088	"	Dault A		3320034	"	Sullivan L
	3108378	"	Darling J		2137937	"	Smith JL
	3180543	"	Donovan HA		3131498	"	Stewart T
	3056134	"	Easton ML		3109337	"	Suess LP
	4020571	"	Eagley JA	%	59946	L/C	Swan J
%	59303	L/C	Esford JW		4020327	Pte	Verrier EL
%	59292	Cpl	Edwards TJ		4025105	"	Vezina C
	1087346	Pte	Fisher CW	%	60086	CQMS	Wilson WE
	4020480	"	Forget E		3108845	Pte	Windsor HV
	3055907	"	Fletcher GH		3108498	"	Webber FH

2138340	Pte	Feinburg H
3204081	"	Finlayson R
675247	"	Franklin VL
675360	Sgt	Garlick DF
663324	Pte	Greenham CS
4020504	"	Gervais E
901687	"	George LA
675959	"	Hoad RT
675524	Sgt	Holmes JW
633893	Pte	Harrigan JH
636866	"	Hawley VM
195879	Cpl	Haughton HR
2021906	Pte	Hansen HM
2139152	"	Headley G
2022465	"	Henderson CJ

Nominal Roll of 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
"B" Company

( % Original Men )

	805003	Pte	Aldcroft GH	%	59648	CQMS	Measor WE
	3320505	"	Alguire R		675414	Pte	Markham A
	4021579	"	Adams JE		3320182	"	Meilleur E
	3055694	"	Bulger VJ		3320605	"	Mercier O
	3055500	"	Brownell AM		2003570	"	Moran JE
	3056063	"	Brunelle V		3107344	"	Mulligan HE
	2021235	"	Beaton B	%	59735	Sgt	McMahon F
	2021684	"	Boys SJ		49060	L/C	McGeary T
	2021041	"	Butler EW		240691	Pte	McGregor JD
	228357	"	Beck CF		4020041	"	McMullan HD
	3181292	"	Burns LE		3320123	"	McCann E
	745615	"	Bailey WG		3180130	"	McCulloch OB
%	59210	"	Cox WJ		3181264	"	McLeod A
	445523	L/C	Clement E		3202052	"	McPherson D
	4025097	Pte	Conway E		3181460	"	McLearn AR
	3055547	"	Coward LJ		675318	"	Noon JG
	2138804	"	Cotsford ET		3181623	"	Norton C
	3204003	"	Clarkin MP		724281	"	Nicholls JH
	282381	"	Conrad JR		3180183	"	Nickerson EM
	210193	"	Clark CA		3055788	"	Otto DW
	285599	"	Dine RK		4025047	"	Olmstead W
	3056236	"	Duford E		195257	"	Parberry A
	4082510	"	Davison M		901867	"	Parker I
	2356453	"	Dobbelare L		3180361	"	Parker LA
	3180093	"	Dupe CJ		207280	L/C	Reilly J
	1063013	"	Edmunds E		633115	Pte	Robertson SB
	3320244	"	Edmonds RB	%	59856	L/C	Rothwell EF
	2022378	"	Ekman JU		2115705	Pte	Robillard A
	195079	"	Fox HV		1090399	"	St John J
	3320495	"	Ferguson WC		2590876	"	Scott GW
	144943	"	Floyd S		1087149	"	Stefanelli D
	805708	"	Fournier L		445262	"	Stewart JD
	2245788	"	French RC		195467	"	Tranter WB
	805705	"	Fournier E		455327	"	Tabram A

	3107865	Pte	Foxton TC	726116	Pte	Townsend HW
	3181012	"	Freyponets W	3320658	"	Thibault L
%	59376	"	Goodall J	3320040	"	Trowse V
	634048	"	Gelineault AE	725171	"	Truax WT
	4021546	"	Granon B	3131136	"	Udy G
	297226	"	Gascon D	195795	"	Wannamaker H
	141677	"	Graham D	3056058	"	Willey J
	3107881	"	Gray RGL	2591158	"	Wilson TM
	444486	"	Herbert W	3320556	"	Weatherall HF
	195514	Cpl	Hales ZM	1093229	"	Wilson H
	349417	Pte	Hall W	3107650	"	Wilson VM
	1042387	"	Harrington EA			
	3055733	"	Hunter C			
	2020804	"	Herbert J			
	2245920	"	Handley AF			
	2022019	"	Hollingworth J			
	2022267	"	Henderson GS			
	1263796	"	Hill HF			
	2138953	"	Hawthornthwaite WG			
	285527	"	Hacking RJ			
	3132631	"	Hardy RD			
	928081	Cpl	Holloway JW			
	3130463	"	Hamilton WE			
%	59502	"	James TP			
	4020578	"	Jewell WW			
	3055219	"	John LA			
	3108178	"	Keefer GA			
	136063	"	Kennard AA			
	412259	Sgt	Logue RJ			
	636966	Pte	Luery EW			
	3056039	"	Lair H			
	3107312	"	Latour G			
	3108423	"	Laplante H			
	3180615	"	Lodge JH			

Nominal Roll of 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
"C" Company

( % Original Men )

	2022080	Pte	Andre AF	1087003	Pte	McDonald W
%	59007	"	Allen HE	3204037	"	McDonald A
	455497	"	Butler RW	3181436	"	McNeil JH
	127408	"	Briggs G	3180915	"	McKinnon C
	246224	"	Bond WS	3204263	"	McKinnon A
	850279	"	Booker JE	850855	"	Niles TA
	3056061	"	Belland J	3131928	"	Nolan J
	3056183	"	Beveridge W	850115	"	Osborne H
	3055951	"	Blair W	408577	CQMS	Phillips P
	3057393	"	Brown HP	1012184	Pte	Parkinson GE
	2022006	"	Bartlett R	1093321	"	Poff TH
	2021300	"	Baxter DN	3320383	"	Pappin WM
	2138868	"	Backstrom CT	2356077	"	Plutino S
	805532	"	Clark OC	2356571	"	Robertson AJ
	633160	"	Casselmann RL	123363	"	Rowbottom H
	3320492	"	Craig R	195204	CSM	Stanley A

3185746	Pte	Chase HE	675634	Pte	Schamberg RW
171062	"	Cruikshank S	633207	"	Stewart GR
412996	"	Deakin J	195570	"	Spears R
850259	L/C	Dunkley H	237357	L/C	Strain J
225968	Pte	Downey JE	458231	Pte	Smith E
2137859	"	Exton A	3057427	"	Symons S
3202025	"	Eisenhauer WS	3132573	"	Stewart RP
633215	Cpl	Foulds GA	724228	"	Smith FAO
1087239	Pte	Flanagan DJ	506214	"	Thompson EH
3204063	"	Fraser MJ	402226	Sgt	Wylie J
412586	Sgt	Giles J	195331	Pte	Wilkins A
639889	Pte	Gagon E	445577	Cpl	Wyers FJ
246682	"	Gilling EH	60085	Pte	Wilson W
2090903	"	Gordon RS	3132581	"	Walker GIS
3320194	"	Garrett R			
726073	"	Geeza C			
3204193	"	Griffin R			
633252	"	Girey WG			
210400	"	Hicks FH			
636461	"	Hopping GA			
2255359	L/C	Hunter JM			
675396	Pte	Hill P			
851078	L/C	Hatfield JG			
2497936	Pte	Hill GC			
124371	L/C	Hooper JW			
3320141	Pte	Holmes RWL			
3320237	"	Hogan MJ			
3181167	"	Harrington RH			
513617	"	Hunter WL			
3057320	"	Isbister TR			
675686	"	Johnston TE			
3109269	"	Jarrett FA			
3106114	"	Johnson H			
412069	A/S	Kerr TS			
727437	Pte	King E			
1042299	Sgt	Lepine L			
%	59574	Pte	Leach WR		
	4025033	"	Lesarge J		
%	59595	"	Llewellyn JJ		
	3180612	"	LaPointe A		
	844752	"	Lumley W		
	675226	"	Money C		
	602646	"	Moorehouse AJ		
	724128	"	Morrison D		
	3056686	"	Martin AG		
	3320586	"	Mulligan FA		
	3204206	"	Martel WJ		
	734098	"	Messom EA		
	3181614	"	Matheson AL		
	270284	"	Marsh R		
	2022341	"	Millar DJ		
	654448	"	Musgrove JE		
	772095	Cpl	Maich A		
	144205	Pte	Mathews R		

Nominal Roll of 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
 "D" Company

( % Original Men )

	639285	L/C	Angus A	4020054	Pte	Landry IZ
	3030689	Pte	Arbuckle AT	3320006	"	Lavoie A
	2529439	"	Abdail B	207799	"	Lukov MH
	2060378	"	Anderson JS	3180328	"	LeBlanc MM
	3320734	"	Armitage JM	248664	"	Lantz E
	3321475	"	Albert W	3180174	"	Linden A
	445139	"	Berton W	405134	"	Longard S
	675170	Cpl	Bichener FA	3180762	"	Lynds E
	835339	Pte	Baines ED	124221	"	Marks WP
	3204357	"	Bryanton JJ	805311	"	Mist A
	3180405	"	Bourgeois J	4020789	"	Morton WH
	636517	Cpl	Coleman WJ	636118	"	Moore WE
	1087218	"	Carnochan GR	2021053	"	Mills EF
	690269	"	Carey WJ	3108653	"	Markle MJ
	3180843	"	Campbell C	2137860	"	Mortimore G
	3105827	"	Camilani J	3180640	"	Millerd FA
	675005	"	Coles A	3130121	"	Mitchell MM
	3181454	"	Countway MJ	210641	"	McGlynn AF
	444887	"	Cameron SL	1093145	Cpl	McCoy PE
	445042	"	Doucette FS	3180625	Pte	McDonald JF
	3320181	"	Desjardins A	3204086	"	McKay JG
	4025006	"	Desloges J	3204121	"	McKinnon WG
	3107853	"	Downey WD	3202054	"	McDow A
%	59276	"	Dubien H	3104934	"	McIntosh W
	3132228	"	Eickmeyer EE	2138560	"	McCullock M
	3055801	"	Fredenburg JE	2329500	"	McFetridge J
	3108140	"	Fraser GJ	3181226	"	McEachern LB
	633676	"	Ferron EE	3180514	"	McKenna D
	3180059	"	Fielding W	3202056	"	McInnis A
%	59395	Sgt	Griffiths H	3204219	"	McMillan RD
	1093361	Pte	Gross L	3181458	"	McKay CH
	1093276	"	Greatrix F	1093057	"	Newson G
	636485	"	Grant DF	3181625	"	Oakley A
	3320475	"	Guay GGH	3202063	"	Omon LK
	3320464	"	Guerin L	190266	Sgt	Powles AE
	3320189	"	Guindon C	1045188	Pte	Polster DG
	3320028	"	Gagnon F	4020283	"	Pearson FW
	454437	Cpl	Gilmore ML	3320151	L/C	Perriard A
	2161262	Pte	Gravelle J	195196	Pte	Robinson NA
	901044	"	George BT	2188510	"	Rogers JF
	2562388	"	Gammon FI	1093121	"	Siddons A
	3107265	"	Guidi LH	751511	"	Schwartz FA
	2137887	"	Gillespie W	59904	"	Spry C
	3204273	"	Gaudet RH	805530	"	Souliere V
	195631	"	Hill SE	3132679	"	Shaw JW
	639392	"	Halladay WJ	908118	"	Stevens EE
	3320359	"	Hutt W	504576	"	Squires HJL
	633143	"	Houle JB	1093232	"	Shelton WT
	341862	"	Holding T	59959	"	Taylor J
	3180901	"	Harvie CG	59995	CQMS	Trappitt AA
	3181217	"	Horne C	506481	Pte	Thibert WJ
	636283	"	Hawkins J	3057690	"	Tucker D

3180904	Pte	Isenir AE	3132394	Pte	Trepanier E
3108405	"	Ireland SJ	675055	"	Thompson TA
412603	"	Johnson W	4090293	"	Taylor DW
3320172	"	Joanis R	141804	"	Watson R
3204093	"	Jay LV	3057607	"	Wilson WD
237049	"	Jones CB	3230697	"	Ware RH
3131266	"	Jeffrey MJ	2356438	"	Wirdnam JH
412756	"	Knight J			
633076	L/C	Kemp D			
283246	Pte	Keans AL			
2022364	"	Kostas AS			
2528408	"	King PJ			
3180761	"	Lunn EG			
633457	"	Longpre E			
805108	"	Longmire GP			
141719	Cpl	Lloyd GA			

Nominal Roll of 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

"Sections"

	633879	Pte	Alexander W		835641	Pte	Garrison JJ
	412022	"	Anjo JR		726042	"	Graham JM
	639299	"	Aris WJ		228185	"	Green W
	835813	"	Arden AJ	%	59347	"	Gainsford NG
%	59080	"	Booth T		690065	"	Gunnell RF
%	59031	"	Baillie MS	%	59439	Sgt	Hawkey J
	775441	"	Bible AC	%	59473	Pte	Holland J
	13	"	Bagshaw WS	%	59411	"	Holliday AJ
	1093090	"	Blaind EA		402111	"	Henderson J
	637163	"	Brooks J	%	59422	"	Harold FW
	636475	"	Burke RW	%	59468	"	Hipson E
	805018	"	Bridle J		455614	"	Hollefreund A
%	59046	"	Baylie CHW	%	59426	"	Harper SC
	454896	"	Boyles AE		724288	"	Heyde N
%	59063	"	Biggs AH		636232	"	Hughes JS
	639199	"	Brayshaw JWG		455762	"	Hirst J
	454681	"	Boyd T	%	59425	"	Harper RN
	639800	"	Bell WE		1093429	Sgt	Hinchey ER
	636562	"	Boomhower O		195603	L/C	Hawke G
	633815	"	Bartholomew N		195442	Pte	Hatcher W
%	59029	"	Bailey WM		246390	"	Hayes WIS
	2021681	"	Bingham CW	%	59408	"	Hall LD
%	59055	"	Bennett E		805221	"	Hamilton LA
%	59100	"	Brooks CMR		454611	"	Hilliker HJ
	775449	"	Brown R		195099	"	Hynes R
	634105	"	Brownlee R	%	59460	"	Hircock HT
%	59170	"	Clifford W		210425	"	Hope E
%	59176	Cpl	Cockburn E		805598	"	Hornby R
%	59200	Sgt	Cordes HGM		2022021	"	Innes A
	50448	Pte	Chappell JE	%	59512	"	Johnson A
	48525	"	Champion J		455514	"	Jones RW
	455016	"	Collupy CB		2161232	"	Jones EW
	675265	"	Candlish J		2235318	"	Jennings EJ
	171053	"	Correll HG	%	59552	RQMS	King TH
	675268	"	Collins WH	%	59534	Pte	Keenleyside F

	124312	Pte	Colonies G	%	59549	Pte	Kiff F
	636530	"	Cordes JC		113341	"	King F
	291279	"	Church AM		1093080	"	Kelly H
%	59151	Sgt	Chance JH	%	59571	A/Cpl	Lawson J
	636934	"	Conlin LB		633501	Pte	Laing R
%	639902	"	Coley TEG		675274	"	Little JG
	59141	"	Carman W		802173	"	Lowe FC
	211147	"	Colley T		634164	"	Laing G
%	3055996	"	Connelly J		413021	"	Lindsay JW
%	59260	"	Dew R		2060400	"	Livingstone W
%	59243	"	Davis WMcT	%	59682	"	Murduff RD
	444453	"	DesRoches EH	%	59685	"	Murray G
	675487	"	Draper EL		636602	"	Moynes EC
	636208	"	Dobbs GE		210618	"	Maxwell J
	506358	"	Denison WH	%	59627	"	Maidman EC
	171064	"	Dann AL		639389	"	Mead F
%	1093056	"	Demille C	%	59670	"	Moore JAB
	59234	"	Daniels GT		3056288	"	Montgomery JW
	455712	L/C	DeRochie RW		639232	"	Matthews WJ
%	640035	Pte	Derrig JJ		3204188	"	Maher JL
	59273	A/L/S	Doyle HH	%	60115	"	McKenzie H
	402724	Pte	Dymond SJ	%	59738	"	McQueen T
	405025	"	Daynes F	%	59699	"	McCluckie J
%	4020088	"	Delarosbil F	%	59713	"	McElroy J
%	59294	"	Ellegett CP		633020	"	MacDermid LE
%	59299	"	Emsley WR		434723	"	McLennan J
	675729	"	Edwards EA		455566	"	McNair DF
%	637085	"	Fraser MS	%	59714	"	McEwan JW
	59339	"	Fraser VL	%	59712	"	McElrath H
	633351	"	Foley BWA		675046	"	McGuire WW
%	412464	"	Follis HE		640116	"	McIlveen H
	59382	Sgt	Golding JD		633531	"	McMahon JM
	124072	Pte	Garson JJ	%	3202055	"	McPhail JA
					59742	"	Nelson WA
					412807	"	Nairn J
					469341	"	Neary LJ
					142124	"	Ouelette V
					636424	"	Parks MW
					640105	"	Pilon T
					636581	"	Paton G
				%	59820	"	Rawley S
					639469	"	Round E
					637194	"	Ross WL
					675148	"	Riley WH
				%	59828	"	Reid W
					2137788	"	Robbins F
				%	59883	L/C	Shotter FC
				%	59900	Pte	Soicuk J
				%	59916	"	Stewart JE
				%	59895	"	Smith JW
					412529	"	Skinner TH
				%	59876	A/C	Sharpe WH
					195325	Pte	Sanderson CE
					805251	"	Shaw JL
					455019	"	Schenck E
					636656	"	Sword DF

	639797	Pte	Schwartz I
%	59881	"	Sherriff HF
	141785	"	Soords F
	409488	"	Shuttleworth HC
	675097	"	Strowbridge S
	640032	"	Simpson W
	213911	"	Shields A
	255603	"	Smith LI
%	59993	Sgt	Tompkins A
%	59985	Pte	Timms MH
	455636	"	Tyson WE
	636504	"	Thompson HA
	195657	"	Tucker E
	123732	"	Turner AF
%	59969	RSM	Thomas S
	639527	Pte	VanStocken H
%	60099	Sgt	Woodrow A
%	60078	Pte	Wilson A
%	60068	"	Williams GE
	145409	"	Wheeler JW
%	60046	Sgt	West JN
	637164	Pte	Wallace HC
	636567	"	Wonnacott WG
	636146	"	Weymark JS
%	60094	"	Wood JA
	639562	"	Webb WG
	636777	"	Wood CA
	455450	"	Willis A
%	60027	"	Warman J
	675154	"	Whitton M
	2537385	"	Williams JJ
	663256	"	Wallace G
	195268	"	Watson WJ
%	59786	Cpl	Zacharias J



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erase heading not required.)

Place

Date

Hour

Summary of Events and Information

BARVAUX	1/12/18	The Battalion left Miecret en route to BARVAUX at 0805 hours this date and arrived at their destination at 1430 hours. The roads were in good condition for marching, and the scenery along the line of march was beautiful. Dinner was served on arrival at BARVAUX. Owing to the shortage of rations, due to transportation difficulties, the Battalion was obliged to accept a grant of the bread ration of the civilians of the village. The weather was dull in the morning, followed by showers in the afternoon.
	2/12/18	On this date the Battalion remained for a rest in BARVAUX. Routine orders announced the return from leave of absence of Major GSS Bowerbank MC. Permission was granted to the undermentioned officers to wear the badges of the rank of Captain:  Lieut EW Edwards, "A" Company, Lieut RJ Gill "D" Company
	3/12/18	The weather was unsettled. The intended move forward had been cancelled for this day. The Battalion spent the day in billets, cleaning up generally. At 1400 hours a warning order to continue the march on the following day was received from the 4 <sup>th</sup> CIB. A donation of 160 francs was given to the poor of the village.
GRANDMENIL	4/12/18	It rained continually all day and at 0800 hours the Battalion moved forward. Our destination was GRANDMENIL, where we arrived at 1230 hours. The march was mostly uphill and the roads were in a very bad state, owing to the continued rainfall. On this date Lieut RL Perry and Sergt HGM Cordes MM proceeded to England to escort the Battalion Colours over to Germany.
CIERREUX	5/12/18	At 0800 hours the Battalion commenced a move of about 25 kilometres to CIERREUX, arriving at 1530 hours. The weather was much colder on this date, and the march was over a good high road which was bordered by huge Spruce and Tamarac trees. This part of the province of LUXEMBOURG was most picturesque and the changing scenery constantly reminded one of northern Ontario.
CROSSING THE FRONTIER	6/12/18	<u>December the Sixth</u> is a Red Letter Day in the history of this Battalion, for it was on this day that the unit crossed the Belgian-German frontier onto enemy soil. The day's move was from CIERREUX to CROMBACH. [ <i>Transcriber's Note: Crombach was part of Germany and was ceded to Belgium when the border was moved by the terms of the Versailles Treaty in 1920</i> ] Soon after passing through BEHO, where one battalion of our brigade was billeted over the previous night, the frontier (marked only by a small stone) was crossed at 1120 hours with the Band playing the Regimental. With the one exception of the march across the Rhine one week later, it was the day of satisfaction. The neglect of the country and buildings, due to the war, was most marked. Properties seemed to lack the care of those passed in Belgium. Only a few German civilians were passed en route, and, where necessary, the males were induced to doff their hats to the Battalion.

Part of the road from BEHO to CROMBACH was in very heavy condition, but our destination was reached at 1330 hours, without casualties. Dinner was immediately served. The billets were inadequate and, in most cases, unsanitary. All were happy to say good-bye to them on the following morning. Commencing at CROMBACH the Burgomasters of the villages and towns were given the necessary instructions regarding the conduct and liberty accorded to the civilians.

- |                    |          |   |
|--------------------|----------|---|
| SCHONBERG          | 7/12/18  | The 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved at 0825 hours to SCHONBERG, a distance of 15 kilometres, arriving there at 1525 hours. In this place the billets were better than those provided at CROMBACH. The Headquarters was located in the village post office.  |
|                    | 8/12/18  | On this date the Battalion rested in billets. In the afternoon Church Parade was held and Captain EW Edwards conducted the service. The weather was fair and much colder.   |
| BAASEM             | 9/12/18  | The Battalion moved at 0740 hours, a distance of 30 kilometres, to BAASEM and arrived at destination at 1500 hours. The condition of the road was improved for marching, and the weather was fine and bright. The trip was made in record time.   |
| TONDORF            | 10/12/18 | The Battalion moved forward to TONDORF at 0900 hours, and, after a march of 20 kilometres, arrived at destination at 1700 hours, and went into billets for the night. The weather was fair and cold and the roads very hard for marching. Many hills were encountered on this trip. As the main roads were reserved for heavy traffic the Battalion was obliged to keep to the second class road which lead through open country. We passed through very few villages on the line of march.   |
| FLAMERSHEIM        | 11/12/18 | At 0750 hours the Battalion proceeded to FLAMERSHEIM, arriving at destination by 1315 hours. The distance covered was 24 kilometres over first class roads. The hilly country seemed to have been passed now and before us stretched the flat land of the Rhine district. Routine Orders of this date stated that Captain RJ Renison ceased to be attached to the Battalion for duty as Chaplain, his place being filled by Captain CW Foreman, who reported for duty on this date.   |
| DUISDORF           | 12/12/18 | On this date the Battalion moved forward to DUISDORF, a distance of 22 kilometres. Weather was cold, with rain fall in the evening. We arrived at our destination at 1300 hours, and the Battalion Headquarters was located in the post office of the village.  |
| CROSSING THE RHINE | 13/12/18 | Friday, the Thirteenth of December, is a day long to be remembered in the lives of Canadians privileged to cross the Rhine with the First and Second Divisions, of the Canadian Corps. From the day of enlistment the "Watch on the Rhine" had been the goal of all "Canucks", thousands of whom had willingly given their lives in the scores of actions by which the moral, fighting ability, and organization of the German Armies had been broken, and the Boche brought to his knees. The march from MONS to the RHINE had been hard, but all rejoiced in the final occupation of enemy territory. The spirit of the men throughout had been excellent, and their appearance and soldierly bearing was a credit to the Dominion from which they were transported to Europe during four years of war. |
- The 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, having moved into billets at DUISDORF on the afternoon of December 12<sup>th</sup>, preparations were made to proceed across the Rhine, via the BONN Bridge, on the following morning. The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade was the leading Brigade of the Division, and the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion followed the Brigade Commander and his Headquarters, consequently being the first Battalion of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division to cross the RHINE.

At 0800 hours the Battalion moved from DUISDORF, through the University City of BONN, and crossed the Bridge at 0915 hours. The parade was in "Review Order", and the Corps Commander took the salute from a position at the Eastern end of the Bridge. SIEGBURG had been notified as our destination, to which place the Battalion proceeded, and early in the afternoon all units were settled in buildings used during the war for the manufacture of munitions. The NCOs, Bands and "C" and "D" Companies were fortunate enough to be allotted to two buildings previously used as a hospital. The Officers were billeted in houses in the vicinity. Stabling accommodation was very satisfactory.

The map (Germany, 1/100,000) shows the Headquarters and billets occupied as the "Laboratorium", on the North-Western outskirts of SIEGBURG.

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division having been allotted a sector of the Cologne Bridgehead, the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade was disposed in the left section, the 1<sup>st</sup> Canadian Division being on the left. The 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> Battalions having taken over the outpost line, the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battalions were in support and reserve at SIEGBURG. Brigade Headquarters was also established there. Afternoons were free and all ranks were permitted to visit BONN, COLOGNE and friends in Canadian units in other places in the area.

In spite of the continuous hard marching, and the condition of the footwear, the Battalion finished the "trek" from MONS to SEIGBOURG in good form. No stragglers were reported, while the total evacuated to hospital numbered only [*undecipherable*]. The daily moves through the hilly country were particularly strenuous on the horses, but all the animals finished the march. The generous assistance of the bands was particularly appreciated in keeping up the spirits of the "Tommies".

At total of 106 of the personnel who came to France with the Battalion in 1915 were privileged to be with the unit when it crossed the Rhine, over the BONN Bridge, on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst. The total is as follows:

Officers	3
NCOs and men since awarded their commissions in the Field	6
WOs and NCOs	25
Men	72

SEIGBURG 14/12/18  
to  
15/12/18

Owing to the rain which fell while the Battalion crossed the BONN Bridge, the photographs taken by the Corps Photographer were failures.

These days were spent in getting settled and cleaning up generally. On the first day billets were re-allotted to the men in different parts of the works. The weather continued bright and a Church Parade was held on the latter date which was conducted by Captain CW Foreman. Routine Orders of December 14<sup>th</sup> announced the award of the Military Medal to the undernamed:

No 675609 Corp. Armstrong C, 454437 Corpl Gilmore ML, 59946 L/Cpl Swan J, 455139 Pte Bertin W.

The Commanding Officer, together with all ranks of the Battalion, extended hearty greetings to the recipients.

We wondered, as we wearily climbed the beautiful hills of the border, if there were any plains in Germany but, after we passed through MUNSTEREIFEL, it was confidentially rumoured that the rich valley of the Rhine lay in the distance.

We stopped in the quaint little village of FLAMERSHEIM. Some had dreamed of crossing "der Rhine", others had vision of driving the Boche out of this rich territory, but few thought we should march peaceably through the streets, greeted quite innocently by little children, and barked at by the dogs. It seemed like grim satire.

The historic Rhineland: celebrated in story and song: the glory of tourists; the source of German pride; one of the richest nurseries of the vine. In the early days it was the home of the Romans when first they established law and order in Europe. Since the days of the Caesars the Rhine has had an interesting history, the stage and background of a thousand legends and romances. As we approached BONN, the beautiful University town, we thought of the influence and inspiration it had given to Religion, Learning and Art. As we approached the Kaiser Plats we caught sight of the imposing monument of Wilhelm 1, who, with his son, was the idol of his people. His vision of Germany's greatness had faded and his culture had been tried in the World Court of Justice and he had been convicted and condemned.

We then passed the University, the home of learning, the cradle of the propaganda which had cemented firmly together the provinces of the Rhine and inspired the youth with hopes of a greater Empire. Through the narrow street we caught sight of the wonderful bridge. Crowds of people filled the Plats, "The war is over, we are friends again" is the attitude they seem to assume, and they do it with an ease which is in entire concord with the German mentality. Even a learned psychologist fails to understand their minds.

On our left the old minster, recalling to the minds legends of the days of St Cassius, towered above the buildings. As we caught a glimpse of the beauty of the landscape one thought of how charmingly Lord Byron extols its beauties and sings its praises in his "Childe Harold".

"The River nobly foams and flows,  
The charm of this enchanted ground,  
And all its thousand turns disclose  
Some fresher beauty varying:

SEIGBURG            16/12/18

On this date the Commander-in-Chief, Field Marshall Sir Douglas Haig, with his Staff, accompanied by the Corps and Division Commanders, with their Staffs, paid an informal visit to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division in the occupied area. The weather was bright, but quite cold, as the Battalion stood lining the street on either side and enthusiastic cheers were given as the Commander-in-Chief passed down the line. The Brigade Commander and Staff and the four Battalion Commanders of the Brigade met the Commander-in-Chief on the Siegburg-Treisdorf road in front of the "21" Headquarters, after which all were presented to Sir Douglas Haig.

17/12/18  
to  
22/12/18

During this period training was carried on by Companies and Sections as per Syllabus. The Battalion was paid on the afternoon of the 17<sup>th</sup> by the Brigade Paymaster. The weather continued fine, and, on the 18<sup>th</sup> inst, the Colours of the Battalion arrived. The following Officers and NCOs composed the escort:

Lieut AW May MC, 59530 RSM Jordan TF (MC, DCM), 59217 Sergt Cross WJ (Italian Medal), Lieut DR Wood, 59704 Sergt McCullagh WG (MM)

Routine Orders of this date announced the following awards:

THE DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER

Major GSS Bowerbank MC

### THE MILITARY CROSS

Captain FK Ludlow  
Lieutenant FG Robinson

Lieutenant ST Crooks  
Lieutenant (A/Captain) JA McGibbon

### THE DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL

190266 Sgt Powles AE (MM)  
675524 Sgt Holmes JW

412259 Sgt Logue RJ (MM)  
59735 Sgt McMahon F (MM)

The recipients of the above mentioned decorations were accorded the congratulations of the entire Battalion, the feeling being generally expressed that all had many times won the decorations awarded.

Major GSS Bowerbank enlisted with the Battalion in Kingston in 1915, as a Lieutenant, and for over a year served as a Platoon Commander and Company Second-in-Command. After the Somme fighting in 1916 he was appointed to Command "B" Company and, in that capacity won the Military Cross for his leadership and gallantry in the combined raid of the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> Battalions on the Cologne front on January 17<sup>th</sup>, 1917. For several periods Major Bowerbank has acted as Adjutant of the unit and was appointed Second-in-Command of the Battalion, in succession to the present Commanding Officer, on August the 8<sup>th</sup> of this year. He has been twice wounded, the last time being slight, near IWUY, France on October 11<sup>th</sup>. For his conspicuous gallantry and work in action on that and the previous day he was awarded the DSO.

Captain and Quartermaster FK Ludlow, also an "Original", came out to France in 1915 as Regimental Quartermaster-Sergeant. In November, 1916, he was granted his commission and appointed Quartermaster. His work in the unit has been at all times thorough, and the award of the Military Cross is considered a fitting recognition of his service, particularly in the line, south of IWUY, France, on October 11<sup>th</sup>, for which action the decoration was awarded. Captain Ludlow was, in pre-war days, an active member of the 14<sup>th</sup> Regiment (Princess of Wales' Own Rifles), Kingston Ontario.

Lieutenant WG Robinson has since September of this year commanded "B" Company, and inspired the respect and confidence of those under his command. He was originally of the 154<sup>th</sup> (Stormont and Glengarry) Battalion, but was in action with this unit at Hill 70 and Passchendaele in 1917, and was wounded in the latter attack. Lieut Robinson was awarded the Military Cross for conspicuous leadership and gallantry in action near IWUY, France, on October 10<sup>th</sup> and 11<sup>th</sup>, 1918.

Lieutenant ST Crooks is a Nova Scotian, having joined this Battalion as a private in June 1916. He was originally of the 54<sup>th</sup> Battalion. But it was not long before his "calibre" was recognized, and he became a Non-Commissioned Officer in "A" Company. His first experience of Boche fire was in the Somme fighting in 1916. In September, 1917, he was recommended by the late Commanding Officer as a candidate for a commission, and, upon qualification at the Bexhill School, rejoined this unit in June, 1918. Lieut Crooks who is of "C" Company, has gone "over the top" in every advance of this Battalion since the commencement of the Foch Offensive at Amiens in August. His standing as a brave leader and a resourceful officer is only too well recognized throughout the "21" and the award of the Military Cross is consequently a very popular one.

Lieutenant (A/Capt) JA McGibbon, who joined the Battalion as a reinforcement on the 27<sup>th</sup> of November, 1916, has since December, 1916, been attached to the Divisional Trench Mortars, where for his services he has been most highly spoken of.

The four Non-Commissioned Officers whose work in action during the fighting of the past year, but particularly on October the 11<sup>th</sup>, near IWUY, France, has been recognized by the awards of the coveted Distinguished Conduct Medal, are representative of the Best in this unit. In and out of the line they have merited the respect and confidence of officers and men. Since the announcement of these awards Sergt Holmes and Sergt Logue have been appointed Company Sergeant-Majors of "A" and "B" Companies respectively, in succession to CSM EG Taylor and CSM [undecipherable] struck off the strength. Sergt McMahon is of "B" Company, while "D" Company are proud of their claim on Sergt Powles. The quartette are considered worthy additions to the list of DCMs of this unit.

On the 22<sup>nd</sup> inst the officers who had left for France with the Battalion as officers in 1915 and those officers who had been granted commissions since their arrival in France on the same date proceeded to BONN Bridge where they were photographed by the Official Photographer of the Canadian Corps. The first group composed those who arrived in France with the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division as officers in 1915, the officers of this Battalion being: Lieut-Colonel HE Pense DSO, MC, Major GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC, Captain FD Raymond MC. The second, third and fourth groups included those who were members of their respective Brigades in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division. The 4<sup>th</sup> CIB were taken first, and the officers representing this Battalion, in addition to the above were Captain FK Ludlow MC, Captain DJ More MC, Captain A Cockeram DSO, Captain L Frazer MC, Lieut (A/Capt) JHW Cobb MC, Lieut GW Trollope MM.

23/12/18  
to  
27/12/18

On the afternoon of the 23<sup>rd</sup> inst the Colours of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion were officially escorted over the Rhine. The Officers of the Battalion and 240 Other Ranks, with both the Pipe and Brass bands, paraded to BONN and return. The Standard bearers on this occasion were Lieut N Nicholson and Lieut LA Anderson MM. Attached as Appendices are copies of a clipping from "Canada" of December the 21<sup>st</sup> and a letter written by the Commanding Officer to the Army and Navy Veteran's Association of Kingston, Ontario, who presented the Colours to the Battalion in 1915. Routine Orders of this date announced that Captain RJ Gill proceeded to England for leave to Canada. From this date Lieut FG Robinson MC, was granted leave to England.

Educational classes were started on this date under the direction of Captain EW Edwards who was assisted by No 59369 Sergt H Griffiths MM, and a volunteer staff. A large number of the NCOs and men took advantage of the opportunity to take up many of the subjects offered for study. The classes were held in the Hotel Germania, where ample accommodation was provided.

On Christmas evening a dinner was given to the men in the large Mess hall adjoining their quarters. A number of the officers were present and the music provided by the Brass band was thoroughly enjoyed by all. Attached as Appendices are the Christmas Greetings of Their Majesties the King and Queen, the Commander-in-Chief of the British Armies in France, the Commander of the Canadian Corps and the Commander of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division. On the evening of the 26<sup>th</sup> the Sergeants Mess Dinner was held in the Hotel Germania. The invited officers being the Commanding Officer, Major GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC, Captain FK Ludlow MC, Captain FD Raymond MC, Captain CW Foreman, and Lieutenant GW Trollope MM. The band played appropriate selections during and after the dinner and a most enjoyable evening was spent. Lieut GL Edmunds proceeded on leave to England on this date. The next day was spent in making preparations for the move forward to relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Battalion.

28/12/18 A week previous the Battalion had been warned by the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade to be prepared to relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the left sub-area of the outpost line on the 28<sup>th</sup> inst. Accordingly, the march was commenced from Siegburg at 0710 hours, and Brigadier-General GE McCuaig CMG, DSO, the Brigade Commander, took the salute en route. He afterwards expressed satisfaction of the turnout. Arriving at 1030 hours the Battalion relieved the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, with headquarters at NEUNKERCHEN, and took over the administration of the sub-area. The distribution of the Companies on the outpost line and in the villages is shown on the attached sketch. Though the billets and stabling were not to be compared with the splendid accommodation at SIEGBURG, the officers and men were fairly comfortable, and, off duty, were permitted to enjoy the freedom of the country. Our flanking units on this outpost line of the Cologne Bridgehead were the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion (left) and the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion (right).

29/12/18 During this period the weather was overcast with occasional showers. On  
to the 30<sup>th</sup> inst the Battalion Brass band proceeded to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional  
31/12/18 Headquarters for duty. Commencing at 2200 hours the officers of "A" Mess entertained a number of the officers, the RSM, Asst RSM, RQMS, CSMs and the Pipe band at the Officers Club. The Old Year departed and the New Year was ushered in with much jollification on the part of all present. The ration strength of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion on December 31<sup>st</sup> was:

Officers	22
Other Ranks	615

The return of RSM TF Jordan MC, DCM, to the Battalion on the 18<sup>th</sup> inst was very popular with all ranks. He had been wounded east of AMIENS on August the 8<sup>th</sup>, having sustained a fracture of the right upper arm. The RSM who is an Englishman, having served in the famous Rifle Brigade, enlisted with the Battalion in Kingston in 1914, and was appointed a Sergeant in "A" Company. His home is at Bloomfield, Ontario. With the exception of the recent period in England he has been with this unit continuously since its arrival in France in 1915. He won his MC in the fighting on the Somme in 1916. His appointment as RSM dates from the 20<sup>th</sup> of April, 1916. During his absence CSM (A/RSM) SL Thomas DCM, carried out his duties with distinct satisfaction. He was through all fighting of the year and won his decoration with "C" Company in the attack on August the 8<sup>th</sup>. He was awarded the Croix de Guerre (Belgian) in 1917. Both RSM Jordan and CSM Thomas served in the South African Campaign.

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
21-626

#### ALL UNITS

Reference A.625 of this date

The Battalion will form up at 0748 hours and will move off at 0758 hours.

2050 hours  
Dec 1<sup>st</sup> 1918

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut for  
Captain & Adjutant

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
A.633

ALL RECIPIENTS OF A.625

- 1 The Battalion will move to GRANIMENIL tomorrow 4<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 Instructions as per our A.6.25 and 21-626 of the 1<sup>st</sup> inst will in all cases be complied with
- 3 No guides for blanket lorry as paragraph 2 of A.625 of the 1<sup>st</sup> inst will be required
- 4 Officer Commanding "C" Company will please detail Lieut ST Crooks to take the place of Lieut HL Perry, proceeding to England this date (see par 7 of A.625)

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut for  
Captain & Adjutant  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Dec 3<sup>rd</sup>, 1918

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
B.1179

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER

- 1 Billeting representatives as per usual will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0700 hours tomorrow the 5<sup>th</sup> inst, ready to proceed ahead
- 2 The Battalion will move tomorrow the 5 inst to an area to be notified later.

The Battalion will form up in column of Route on Road in front of Battalion Headquarters with head of Column at Battalion Headquarters, facing EAST, at 0800 hours, and will move off at 0810 hours.

Order of March: "A", "D", "C", "B", Sections as usual

- 3 Breakfast will be served at 0600 hours
- 4 Sick Parade will be held at 0645 hours
- 5 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of Quartermaster Stores by 0730 hours

Officers' baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room Boxes and Band baggage will be placed outside of Quartermaster's Stores by 0730 hours.

- 6 The Transport Officer will detail a mounted orderly to report to Battalion Orderly Room on arrival at new location, ready to proceed to Ration Dump to guide rations to QM Stores.



- 7 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut GL Edmunds at rear of Column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0700 hours
- 9 Dinner will be cooked en route and will be served at 1200 hours
- 10 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition, and forward certificate from Burgomaster to Orderly Room on arrival at new location
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

December 4<sup>th</sup>, 1918  
1745 hours

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
B.1180

Ref Map: GERMANY  
1/100,000. 1.M

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER

- 1 Billeting representatives as per usual will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0715 hours tomorrow the 6<sup>th</sup> inst, ready to proceed ahead
- 2 The Battalion will move tomorrow the 6<sup>th</sup> inst, to an area to be notified later.  
  
The Battalion will form up in column of route on Road in front of Battalion Headquarters with head of column at Battalion Orderly Room facing NORTH, at 0845 hours, and will move off at 0855 hrs.  
  
Order of march: "D", "C", "B", "A", Sections as usual
- 3 Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours
- 4 Sick Parade will be held at 0730 hours
- 5 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of Quartermaster Stores by 0745 hours  
  
Officers' baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room Boxes and Band baggage will be placed outside of Quartermaster's Stores by 0745 hours.
- 6 The Transport Officer will detail a mounted orderly to report to Battalion Orderly Room on arrival at new location, ready to proceed to Ration Dump to guide rations to QM Stores.
- 7 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut WI Fleming at rear of Column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0745 hours

- 9 Dinner will be cooked en route and will be served at 1200 hours
- 10 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition, and forward certificate from Burgomaster to Orderly Room on arrival at new location
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

December 5<sup>th</sup>, 1918  
2030 hours

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
B.1186

Ref Map: GERMANY  
1/100,000. 1.M

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER

- 1 Billeting representatives as per usual will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0715 hours tomorrow the 9<sup>th</sup> inst, ready to proceed ahead
- 2 The Battalion will move tomorrow the 9<sup>th</sup> inst, to an area to be notified later. (BAASEM)  
  
The Battalion will form up in column of route on Road in front of Battalion Headquarters with head of column at Battalion Orderly Room facing SOUTH-EAST, at 0750 hours, and will move off at 0800 hrs.  
  
Order of march: "B", "A", "D", "C", Sections as usual
- 3 Breakfast will be served at 0630 hours
- 4 Sick Parade will be held at 0700 hours
- 5 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of Quartermaster Stores by 0645 hours  
  
Officers' baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room Boxes and Band baggage will be placed outside of Quartermaster's Stores by 0715 hours.
- 6 The Transport Officer will detail a mounted orderly to report to Battalion Orderly Room on arrival at new location, ready to proceed to Ration Dump to guide rations to QM Stores.
- 7 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut GL Edmunds at rear of Column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0745 hours

- 9 Dinner will be cooked en route and will be served at 1200 hours
- 10 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition, and forward certificate from Burgomaster to Orderly Room on arrival at new location
- 11 In future all map reference on the "1.M" sheet will refer to the linen squared sheet issued yesterday
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

December 8<sup>th</sup>, 1918  
1330 hours

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
B.1184

Ref Map: GERMANY  
1/100,000. 1.M

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER

- 1 Billeting representatives as per usual will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0715 hours tomorrow the 7<sup>th</sup> inst, ready to proceed ahead
- 2 The Battalion will move tomorrow the 7<sup>th</sup> inst to SCHONBERG.  
  
The Battalion will form up in column of route on Road in front of Battalion Headquarters with head of column at Battalion Headquarters Mess, facing NORTH-EAST, at 0825 hours, and will move off at 0830 hrs.  
  
Order of march: "C", "B", "A", "D", Sections as usual
- 3 Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours
- 4 Sick Parade will be held at 0730 hours
- 5 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of Quartermaster Stores by 0745 hours  
  
Officers' baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room Boxes and Band baggage will be placed outside of Quartermaster's Stores by 0745 hours.
- 6 The Transport Officer will detail a mounted orderly to report to Battalion Orderly Room on arrival at new location, ready to proceed to Ration Dump to guide rations to QM Stores.
- 7 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut ST Crooks at rear of Column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0730 hours

- 9 Dinner will be cooked en route
- 10 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition, and forward certificate from Burgomaster to Orderly Room on arrival at new location
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

December 6<sup>th</sup>, 1918  
2030 hours

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
B.1188

Ref Map: GERMANY  
1.MI, 1.LI, 2.L.  
1/100,000

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER

- 1 Billeting representatives as per usual will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0715 hours tomorrow the 10<sup>th</sup> inst, ready to proceed ahead
- 2 The Battalion will move tomorrow the 10<sup>th</sup> inst to a place to be notified later (TONDORF)  
  
The Battalion will form up in column of route on Road in front of Battalion Headquarters with head of column at Battalion Headquarters, facing EAST, at 0735 hours, and will move off at 0745 hrs.  
  
Order of march: "A", "D", "C", "B", Sections as usual
- 3 Breakfast will be served at 0600 hours
- 4 Sick Parade will be held at 0630 hours
- 5 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of Quartermaster Stores by 0615 hours  
  
Officers' baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room Boxes and Band baggage will be placed outside of Quartermaster's Stores by 0645 hours.
- 6 The Transport Officer will detail a mounted orderly to report to Battalion Orderly Room on arrival at new location, ready to proceed to Ration Dump to guide rations to QM Stores.
- 7 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut WI Fleming at rear of Column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0600 hours

- 9 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition, and forward certificate from Burgomaster to Orderly Room on arrival at new location
- 10 Dinner will be cooked en route and served at 1200 hours
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

December 9<sup>th</sup>, 1918  
2100 hours

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
B.1192

Ref Map: GERMANY  
1.MI, 1.LI, 2.L.  
1/100,000

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER

- 1 Billeting representatives as per usual will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0700 hours tomorrow the 11<sup>th</sup> inst, ready to proceed ahead
- 2 The Battalion will move tomorrow the 11<sup>th</sup> inst to a place to be notified later (FLAMERSHEIM)

The Battalion will form up in column of route on Road in front of Battalion Headquarters with head of column at Battalion Orderly Room, facing EAST, at 0755 hours, and will move off at 0800 hrs.

Order of march: "D", "C", "B", "A", Sections as usual

- 3 Breakfast will be served at 0615 hours
- 4 Sick Parade will be held at 0645 hours
- 5 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of Quartermaster Stores by 0630 hours

Officers' baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room Boxes and Band baggage will be placed outside of Quartermaster's Stores by 0700 hours.

- 6 The Transport Officer will detail a mounted orderly to report to Battalion Orderly Room on arrival at new location, ready to proceed to Ration Dump to guide rations to QM Stores.
- 7 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut ST Crooks at rear of Column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0645 hours

- 9 Dinner will be cooked en route and served at 1200 hours
- 10 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition, and forward certificate from Burgomaster to Orderly Room on arrival at new location
- 11 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

December 10<sup>th</sup>, 1918  
2130 hours

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
B.1204

Ref Map: GERMANY  
2.L. 1/100,000

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER

- 1 Billeting representatives as per usual will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0700 hours tomorrow the 12<sup>th</sup> inst, ready to proceed ahead
- 2 The Battalion will move tomorrow the 12<sup>th</sup> inst to DUISDORF  
  
The Battalion will form up in column of route on Road in front of Orderly Room with head of column at Battalion Orderly Room, facing NORTH-EAST, at 0810 hours, and will move off at 0820 hrs.  
  
Order of march: "C", "B", "A", "D", Sections as usual
- 3 The Battalion will pass Brigade Starting Point, ODENDORF (Road and Railway Crossing), at 0915 hours.
- 4 Breakfast will be served at 0615 hours
- 5 Sick Parade will be held at 0645 hours
- 6 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of Quartermaster Stores by 0630 hours  
  
Officers' baggage, mess outfits, Orderly Room Boxes and Band baggage will be placed outside of Quartermaster's Stores by 0700 hours.
- 7 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut GL Edmunds at rear of Column before the Battalion moves off.
- 8 The Transport Officer will detail a mounted orderly to report to Orderly Room on arrival at new location, ready to proceed to Ration Dump to guide rations to QM Stores.

- 9 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement at 0645 hours
- 10 Dinner will be cooked en route and served at 1200 hours
- 11 Lieut LA Anderson MM, will ensure that all billets are left in a clean and sanitary condition, and forward certificate from Burgomaster to Orderly Room on arrival at new location
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

December 11<sup>th</sup>, 1918  
1930 hours

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
A.646

ALL UNITS

WARNING ORDER FOR 12 AND 13<sup>TH</sup> INSTS

The Battalion will move to DUISDORF tomorrow, the 12<sup>th</sup> inst, and to the SIEGBURG AREA, (probably SIEGBURG) on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst. The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade will be the leading Brigade of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division to cross the RHINE. The dress will be "Fighting Order", steel helmets, and the actual march across the RHINE will be at attention, with bayonets fixed. The Corps Commander will inspect.

With this in view the afternoon, the 12<sup>th</sup> inst, must be devoted to cleaning up. All helmets must be oiled. Oil for that purpose will be drawn from the Quartermasters Stores by 1500 hours. Any shortage of steel helmets will be notified to the Orderly Room by 1600 hours. It is likely that the packs will be delivered to the units by 1500 hours.

All NCOs and men carrying revolvers and Stretcher bearers will march in the rear 4s of their respective units. Equipment must be well fitted. For this purpose and for the clean condition of arms, equipment etc, each other rank in the Battalion must be seen by an officer by Tattoo the 12<sup>th</sup> inst. Any failure to make up shortage of canteens with covers must be reported to Orderly Room by 2000 hours that day.

Special attention must be given to the cooks. If new clothing is required, the Officer Commanding unit concerned will take the matter up with the Quartermaster.

All dismounted personnel will wear chin strap of helmet on the point of the chin. All mounted personnel will carry the steel helmet slung from the left shoulder. The Brass and Pipe bands will service caps and Balmorals respectively. All ranks will be in puttees.

It may be impossible to procure sufficient cleaning material for all brass but the Bandmaster and Pipe Major will please insure that all instruments, drums, etc, are cleaned and polished. Material is on hand for this.

The Transport Officer will be issued with separate instructions. It is expected that the billets into which the Battalion moves on the 13<sup>th</sup> inst will be permanent ones. With this in view, Company and Section Commanders will please instruct the billeting NCOs who go forward on that day, regarding the dispositions they wish made of their units.

(Sgd) HE Pense  
Lieut-Colonel  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

11<sup>th</sup> December, 1918  
2050 hours





## CANADIAN COLOURS FOR GERMANY

The handsome Colours of the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion, provided by the Army and Navy Veterans of Kingston, Ont., and formally presented to the Battalion early in 1915 by Lady Borden, were, on the arrival of the unit in England, deposited for safe keeping with Sir George Perley.

On Wednesday of last week Lt-Col HE Pense, DSO, MC, commanding the unit, despatched a Colour Party to England in order to receive once again the regimental emblems. The Colour Party consisted of Lt AW May MC (Bar) of Ottawa, officer-in-charge, and Lt DR Wood, of Smiths Falls: and RSM TF Jordan MC, DCM, of Bloomfield, Ont., accompanied them.

Those present at the ceremony but not actively participating, included Lt RL Perry (St Stephens NB) and Sergt HC Cordes MM, (Belleville), representing the Battalion in the Field, Lt FL Barclay, RAF, of Belleville, an old 21<sup>st</sup> man. The guard of honour (of 20 NCOs and men) was furnished by the 6<sup>th</sup> Reserve Bn, Seaford (under the command of Lt CA Giroux) Pembroke Ont., and was composed entirely of 21<sup>st</sup> Bn "casualties".

The presentation ceremony took place in Sir George Perley's room at the High Commissioners office in Victoria Street. The party of two officers and a warrant officer were accompanied by two sergeants with fixed bayonets.

Sir George said he had been very happy to keep the Colours for them. It was appropriate that the Colours had been left with him because the Battalion came from the district where he had formerly lived. When they went forward their friends at home had every faith and hope that they would do things equal to their forefathers. The Battalion had accomplished this beyond their greatest hopes. The Battalion had been in all the big battles taken part in by the Second Division since its arrival in France. During the summer of 1918 they, with other units in the Corps, had made history that would never be forgotten.

The work of the Corps (said Sir George) had a lot to do with the final defeat of the enemy. He was proud of the Corps and the 21<sup>st</sup> Bn, and congratulated them on their service and record. They had had heavy losses and they mourned for the brave boys who had gone. Incomplete statistics, said the speaker, showed that the battalion had an honour list of 7 DSOs and 1 Bar, 30 MCs and 1 Bar, 6 DCMs, 131 MMs and 5 Bars, together with other minor decorations.

In handing back the Colours, Sir George said that he understood they were to be taken into Germany, where the Canadians were marching as a victorious army, and where he was sure they would maintain their great record.

The officers then received the Colours on bended knee, and the party proceeded to the street, where they guard of honour presented arms as the Colours were borne through their open ranks to the head of the parade. After being photographed the regimental emblems were encased, and the officers and men marched to Wellington Barracks, where they were quartered for the night.

Transcriber's Note: *written in hand is the following:*

From "Canada" 21-12-18

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
(EASTERN ONTARIO REGIMENT)

The Commandant and Commander  
Army and Navy Veteran's Association  
Kingston, Ontario

Dear Comrades:

Shortly after Armistice Day the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion made application for permission to bring its Colours to Belgium, in anticipation of the march into Germany. This was, in due course, granted, and the Colours were recently escorted from England to us.

At the office, in London, of The High Commissioner for Canada, they were handed over by Sir George Perley to a Colour Party and Escort. The personnel of the Colour Party was Lieut AW May MC, Lieut DR Wood, Regt'l Sergt-Maj TF Jordan MC, DCD, Sergt WC McCullagh MM, and Sergt WJ Cross. I am attaching a copy of a clipping from the "Canadian Record", relative to the handing back of the Colours by the High Commissioner. As you likely know, they were left in his custody prior to the Battalion proceeding to France in 1915.

You are probably aware that our Division is in the vicinity of Bonn, Famous for its university. On a recent afternoon the Colours were officially escorted across the Rhine, the Battalion being in Review Order and the bands playing the "Regimentals" while we marched across the bridge.

Only 140 Officers and Other Ranks of the personnel that left Kingston with us in May 1915, were fortunate enough to be present for the historic march, when our Division crossed the Rhine, over Bonn bridge on December 13<sup>th</sup>. At the eastern end of the bridge the Corps Commander reviewed the units of the Division as they marched past in column of route. The 21<sup>st</sup> was the first Battalion to cross. As you will assume, it was an historic event, one of intense satisfaction for us all. Though enthused over the complete breakdown of the Boche, and occasionally celebrating the triumph of the Allied Armies, we are ever mindful of the heavy toll in which Canada ungrudgingly shared, and our thoughts are often of hundreds of our comrades who lie in honoured graves in Belgium and France, and of their relatives at home.

It is with humility and pride that we read Marshal Foch's famous Special Order of November 12<sup>th</sup>, relative to the victory in which we had, in a small way, shared:

"Officer, Non-commissioned officers, and soldiers of the Allied Armies –

"After bringing the enemy's attack to a stand by your stubborn defence, you attacked him without respite for several months, with inexhaustible energy and unwavering faith.

"You have won the greatest battle in history and have saved the most sacred of all causes, the Liberty of the World.

"Well may you be proud!

"You have covered your standards with immortal glory, and the gratitude of posterity will ever be yours."

Early in 1915 the Battalion was highly honoured when it was presented with the beautiful Colours by the Army and Navy Veteran's Association of Kingston. During the years of fighting in France and Belgium they have been an inspiration to all who have served with this unit. I feel that we can say that during the many months of trench warfare and in all the actions in which the Battalion has participated on all parts of the British Western Front, at no time have our Regimental Colours been dishonoured. The "21<sup>st</sup>" has taken part in all the operations of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Division -

at St Eloi, the Somme, Vimy, Hill 70, Passchendaele, Amiens, Arras, Cambrai and Mons, to say nothing of numerous minor operations.

The Battalion has been at Siegburg since the 15<sup>th</sup> inst. All are very comfortable. Up to date the Germans have accepted our presence quite calmly. Naturally, all are anxious to return to Canada, but we have no idea when it will be. We presume that the Battalion will be returned to Kingston for demobilization. I can assure you, the day it marches up Princess Street will be a very happy one for us all.

We mailed to you our Christmas greeting card. In case that it has not been received, I enclose two others.

Asking you to accept the hearty greetings of our Battalion, which has endeavoured to guard and honour the Colours which you entrusted to its charge in the early days of the war.

I am  
Faithfully Yours

Lieut-Col  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Siegburg, Germany

December 27<sup>th</sup> 1918

### **COLOURS FOR THE RHINE**

SIR G. PERLEY PASSES 21<sup>ST</sup> BATTALION THEIR REGIMENTAL EMBLEM

#### GUARD OF CASUALTIES

On Wednesday, the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion (Eastern Ontario Regt) were handed back their Colours by Sir George Perley at the office of the High commissioner for Canada, where they had been deposited for safe keeping prior to the unit proceeding to France in 1916.

As the battalion now forms part of the Army of Occupation, it is intended that their Colours should accompany them during their stay in Germany.

Lieuts May and Wood, the officers in charge of the Colour Party, received the Colours from the hands of Sir George in his private office, the High Commissioner afterwards inspecting the guard, which comprised casualties who had served with the battalion.

In handing back the Colours, Sir George said that the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion had been in all the big battles taken part in by the 2dn Division since their arrival in France, and with other battalions of the Canadian Corps they had made history that would never be forgotten. We congratulate the officers on receiving back the Colours.

CHRISTMAS MESSAGE FROM THEIR MAJESTIES THE KING AND QUEEN

“Another Christmas has come round and we are no longer fighting. God has blessed your efforts. The Queen and I offer you our heartfelt good wishes for a happy Christmas and many brighter years to come. To the disabled, sick, and wounded, we send a special greeting, praying that with returning health you may be comforted and cheered by the vision of those good days of peace for which you have sacrificed so much.”

GEORGE, R.I.

TO HIS MAJESTY THE KING FROM FIELD MARSHALL SIR DOUGLAS HAIG

“Your Majesty’s gracious message has given universal pleasure to all ranks of the Armies in France. They join with me in sending most respectful thanks, and beg to be allowed to send to their King and Queen the earnest hope that the years to come may bring your Majesties all happiness. The never failing confidence and encouragement which we have received from you, Sir, throughout all the fluctuating fortunes of four and a half years of war have ever been a source of strength to us, and the gracious message which your Majesty has sent to the disabled, sick, and wounded will bring them comfort and reward.”

(Sgd.) D. Haig, F.M.

“This Christmas Day sees our united efforts crowned with a glorious victory.

I desire to wish all ranks of the Armies under my command a very happy Christmas and a brighter and happier New Year.

The self-sacrifice, endurance and devotion to duty of our troops have gained the admiration of the whole world, and at this time, when everything is being done to accelerate demobilization, I feel sure that same splendid qualities, which have carried us through these past years of war, will help us and strengthen us in reconstructing our Empire. My thoughts are with you all on this memorable Christmas Day, and I wish you God Speed.”

(Sgd.) D. Haig, F.M.

ALL UNITS

2<sup>ND</sup> Canadian Division

A.Q.C. 16-119

I wish a very Happy New Year to all ranks of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division.

This is the last New Year of the war and the time for demobilization approaches. We have past victories to look back on and our homeland to look forward to – and, we are on the Rhine.

The splendid spirit and discipline of the Division has overcome all. We have every reason to be happy this year.

I hope that the future has many Happy New Years in store for you all. They have been well earned.

January 1<sup>st</sup>, 1919

(Sgd) HE Burstall  
Major-General  
Commanding 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division

## CHRISTMAS GREETINGS

By Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur W Curried, KCB, KCMG, Commanding Canadian Corps

"I wish a very Happy Christmas to all ranks of the Canadian Corps.

Christmas in each year since 1914 brought a message of hope but the hearts of our people at home were heavy and full of forebodings. We, on the torn fields of battle could only harden our purpose to keep on fighting until Christianity and Civilization were vindicated and re-established.

And now we have reached our goal.

As a proof of victory our Divisions are in liberated Belgium, or across the Rhine on German soil.

The foe is vanquished: the powers of darkness are defeated. We can this year celebrate with joy the anniversary of the birth of Christ, the Prince of Peace.

The message to our people in Canada is: Be happy this Christmas. We have won. We will soon be home.....and from the great beyond, our fallen, ever present in our hearts, bid us all to be happy.

Christ is born again."

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
A.721

SECRET

Ref Map: GERMANY  
2.L. 1/100,000

ALL UNITS

### WARNING ORDER

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in the left sub-section of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Section on the 28<sup>th</sup> inst.

Relief of the outposts will be completed before 1200 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst

- 2 Companies and Sections will relieve corresponding units. Details of relief will be given to Unit Commanders by their representatives now in the forward area.
- 3 The Battalion will form up in column of route, at 0700 hours, and move off at 0706 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst, on road in front of Battalion Orderly Room facing South-East, head of column resting at Battalion Orderly Room, in the following order – "B", "A", "D", "C", Sections as usual.

Bands between "A" and "D" Companies.

Dress – Fighting Order. Leather Jerkins will be worn. SBRs will be worn slung over right shoulder. Each man will carry canteen in canteen cover, properly fastened to haversack.

- 4 Breakfast will be served at 0630 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst

- 5 Sick Parade will be held at 0615 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst
- 6 Watches will be synchronized under signal arrangement by 0630 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst
- 7 Dinner for the 28<sup>th</sup> inst will be cooked en route
- 8 All men who are unable to keep pace with the Battalion will report to Lieut NT Crooks MC, at rear of column before the Battalion moves off
- 9 All Lewis guns are to be cleaned tomorrow, 27<sup>th</sup> inst, and will be loaded on transport by 1600 hours, 27<sup>th</sup> inst, under the supervision of the Lewis gun Sergeant
- 10 All Transport will be loaded by 1700 hours, 27<sup>th</sup> inst
- 11 All breach covers will be turned into quartermaster's stores by 1000 hours 27<sup>th</sup> inst
- 12 Instructions re Officer's baggage and mess outfits will be issued separately
- 13 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly marked, and placed outside Quartermaster's stores by 0615 hours 28<sup>th</sup> inst. One man per Company and one man from the RSM's party, for Communication, Specialist, Medical Officer's, Transport Officer's, Quartermaster's and Headquarters Sections, will be detailed to remain with blankets, and will report to Sergeant Strickland for that purpose at Battalion Orderly Room at 0615 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst. These men will remain with Sergeant Strickland until blankets are handed over on completion of journey.
- 14 Packs (the steel helmet fastened on same by one kicking strap) will be piled in front of Battalion Orderly Room by 0615 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst. Each Company will detail one man and the RSM, one man, for Communication, Specialist, Medical Officer's, Transport Officers, Quartermaster's and Headquarters Sections, who will remain with and be responsible for packs. Detail will report to Sergeant Smith, "Spec", at Battalion Orderly Room at 0615 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst, and remain with him until packs are handed over. Three lorries, for packs and blankets, will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0630 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 15 Lieut N Nicholson will arrange for the loading of the Regimental Canteen on lorry on second trip
- 16 Lieuts EB Smythe MC, and LA Anderson MM, are detailed to carry the Colours  
The RSM will detail the necessary escort
- 17 Surplus personnel of Transport will march with Quartermaster's Section
- 18 Detail as under will report to Lieut JHW Cobb MC, at 0645 hours, 28<sup>th</sup> inst

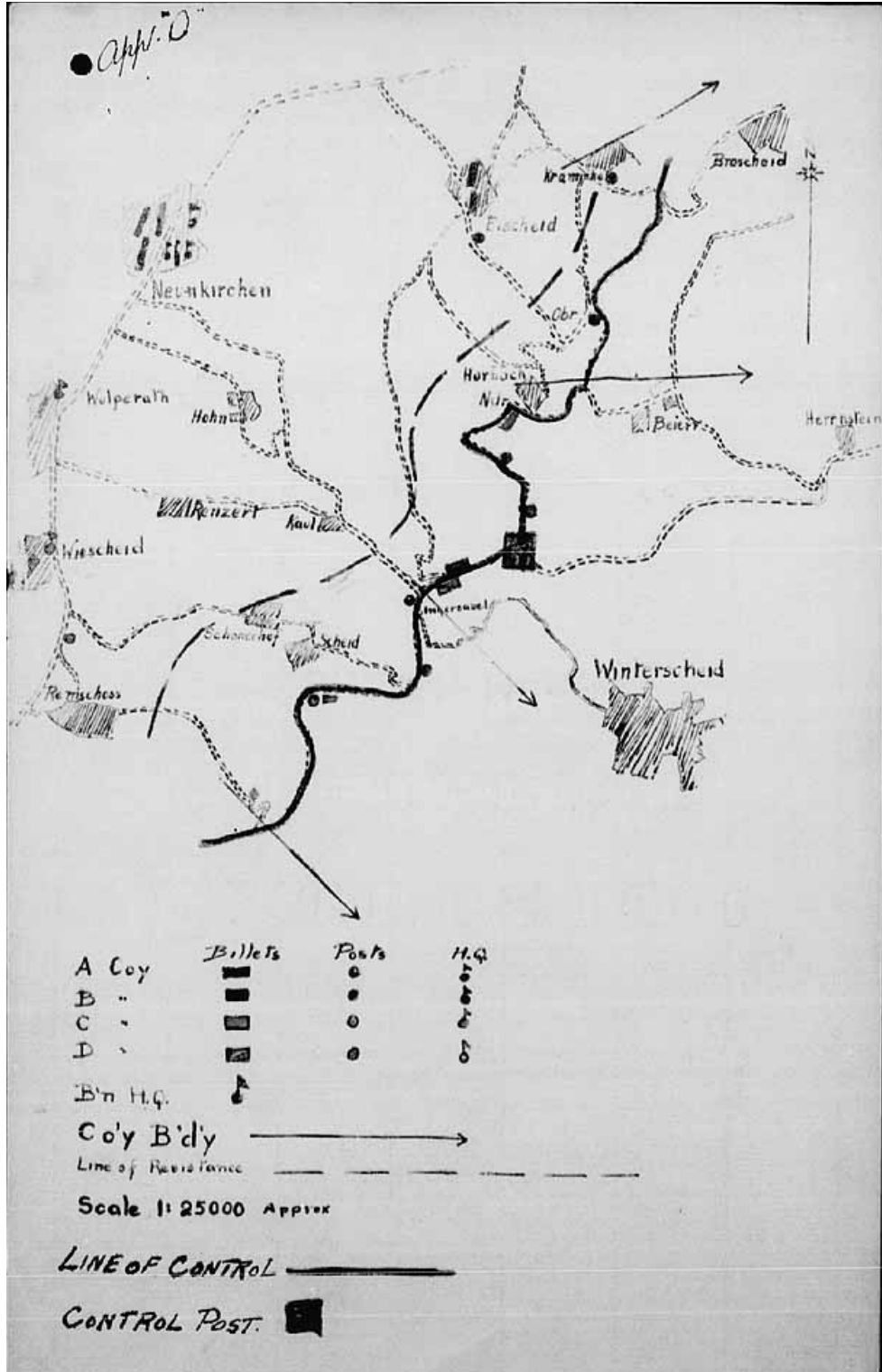
Each Company	1 man
Specialist Section )	1 man
Communication Section )	
RSM's Party	1 man
Transport	1 man

This party will ensure that all quarters are left in a clean and sanitary condition. Lieut Cobb will obtain clearance from the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

- 19 The Battalion will be inspected by the GOC, 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, while on the march. In anticipation of same, Unit Commanders will ensure uniformity, cleanliness and smartness in their commands

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant for Captain  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

26<sup>th</sup> December, 1918  
2230 hours



ORDER BY

General Sir HCO Plumer, GCB, GCMG, GCVO, ADC, Commanding Second Army

The Army Commander has noted with satisfaction that, while the fighting has ceased, the Army has continued to maintain the high standard of discipline and good behavior that has won it the regard of the friendly civil populations, among whom it has lived for several years.

Upon entry into enemy territory new conditions will be met

The Army Commander directs that the strictest attention be paid to the bearing of all ranks privileged to form part of the British Army of Occupation in Germany under the terms of the Armistice.

Intercourse with the inhabitants will be confined to what is essential, and will be marked by courtesy and restraint. It is not seemly that anything approaching familiarity should be allowed to enter into any relations between British soldiers and men or women of the German nation. But neither is it in accordance with our traditions to do otherwise than respect the persons and property of a beaten foe. The exaction of reparation and compensation from the German people is a matter for the appointed authorities.

Orders will be issued in due course for the administration under British Military authority of the occupied German territory. This administration will be firm and just, and in every way adequate to maintain British authority during the occupation.

The German troops have shown how infamously an army of occupation can behave. The Army Commander relies upon all ranks of the Second Army to show by their dignity and forbearance how such an army should behave in enemy territory.

The Army Commander knows that he can rely upon all ranks to preserve that careful attention to their deportment, their arms, their accoutrements, and their dress, which has always characterized the British Expeditionary Force in France, and he is confident that they will show themselves as they are, the tried and proven soldiers of the victorious army of the British Empire.

This order is to be conveyed to all ranks under your command.

(Sgd) AA Chichester  
Major-General  
DAA, QMG, Second Army

Headquarters  
Second Army  
27<sup>th</sup> November, 1918





EASTERN ONTARIO REGIMENT.

*Xmas  
Greetings*

*Land of the forest and the lake,  
Land of the rushing river :  
Our prayers shall rise for thy dear sake,  
Forever and forever.*

*Lieut.-Colonel H. E. Pense,  
Officers, W. Co., N. C. Co. and  
Men of the 21st Canadian  
Battalion wish you the Com-  
pliments of the Season.*

*France, 1918.*

*Land of the forest and the lake,  
Land of the rushing river ;  
Our prayers shall rise for thy dear sake,  
Forever and forever.*

**We are with you  
and you with us  
upon our  
Christmas Day**

**From**

**France.  
Xmas, 1918.**

" St Eloi "

" Somme "

" Vimy "

" Hill 70. "



" Passchendaele "

" Amiens "

" Arras "

Cambrai.

EASTERN ONTARIO REGIMENT.

*Xmas  
Greetings*

*Land of the forest and the lake,  
Land of the rushing river ;  
Our prayers shall rise for thy dear sake,  
Forever and forever.*

We are with you  
and you with us  
upon our  
Christmas Day

From

France.  
Xmas, 1918.



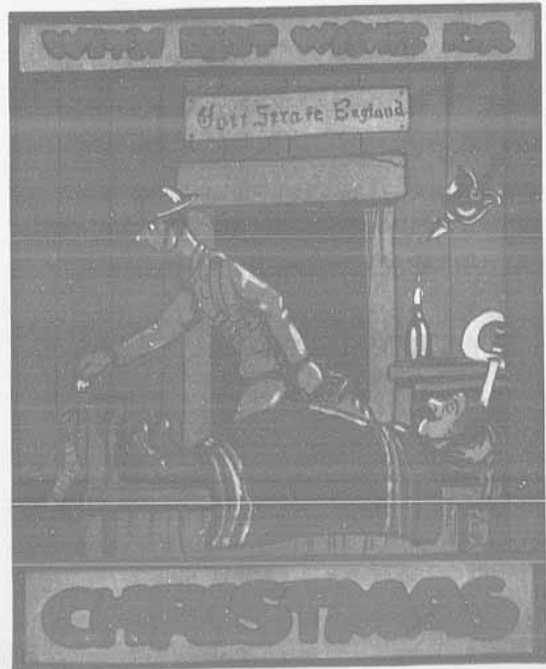
Udo Lilliehn: Compliments of the Season.

*Land of the forest and the lake,  
Land of the rushing river ;  
Our prayers shall rise for thy dear sake,  
Forever and forever.*

We are with you  
and you with us  
upon our  
Christmas Day.

From

France.  
Xmas, 1918.



## OFFICERS & OTHER RANKS OF 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

(Being a complete list of original Officers and Other Ranks who arrived in France with Unit, September 1915,  
and crossed the Rhine December 13<sup>th</sup>, 1918)

Lieut-Col HE Pense DSO, MC	Officer Commanding. Awarded the MC 15-9-16 Mentioned in Despatches 28-5-18 Awarded the DSO 3-6-18 Mentioned in Despatches 15-9-18
Major GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC	Second in Command Awarded MC 17-1-17 Awarded DSO 27-11-18
Captain FD Raymond MC	Adjutant Awarded the MC 17-1-17 Awarded Bar to MC 3-11-18
Captain FK Ludlow MC	Quartermaster Awarded the MC 27-11-18
Captain DJ More MC	Commanding "C" Company Awarded the MC 15-8-17
Captain L Frazer MC	Commanding "D" Company Awarded the MC 26-8-18
Captain A Cockeram DSO	Commanding "A" Company Awarded the DSO 16-10-17
Lieut JHW Cobb MC	Billeting Office Awarded the MC 27-3-18
Lieut GW Trollope MM	Assistant Adjutant Awarded the MM 13-10-17
<hr/>	
Escort	59030 RSM Jordan TF (MC, DCM) 59969 A/RSM Thomas SL (DCM, C de G) Belgium 59552 RQMS King TH (MSM) 59127 A/CSM Byrne C (MM & Bar) 59648 CQMS Measer WE 59995 " Trappitt AA (MM) 59022 Sergt Armstrong C (MM) 59177 " Coke GC (C de G) Belgium
Leave	59151 " Chance H
Escort	59200 " Cordes HGM (MM)
Escort	59217 " Cross WJ (Italian Bronze Medal)
	59273 " Doyle HH (MM)
	59395 " Griffiths H (MM)
	59382 " Golding J (MM)
	59439 " Hawkey J (MM, C de G) Belgium
	59572 " Leach J (MM)
Leave	59563 " Landsborough R (MSM)
	59735 " McMahon F (DCM, MM)
	59618 " MacDougall J

Escort	59704	Sergt	McCullagh WG	(MM)
	59891	"	Smith AJ	
	59993	"	Tompkins A	
Brigade	60023	"	Wallace PG	
	60046	"	West JN	(MM)
	60099	"	Woodrow A	
Leave	59176	Cpl	Cockburn E	
Hospital	59303	"	Esford JW	
	59292	"	Edwards TJ	(MM)
	59528	"	Jordan J	(MM)
	59511	"	Johnson A	
	59571	"	Lawson J	
	59856	"	Rothwell EF	
	59876	"	Sharpe WH	(MM)
	59786	"	Zacharias J	(MM)
Leave	59883	L/Cpl	Shotter FC	(MM)
Leave	59946	"	Swan J	(MM)
	59007	Pte	Allen HE	
	59100	"	Brooks CMR	
	59055	"	Bennett E	
Leave	59029	"	Bailey WM	
Brigade	59087	"	Bradley RJ	
	59030	"	Baillie J	
Leave	59080	"	Booth T	
	59031	"	Baillie MS	
	59046	"	Baylie CHW	
	59062	"	Bethell PF	
	59063	"	Biggs AH	
Leave	59039	"	Barr JC	
	59042	"	Bates TF	
	59040	"	Bates GL	
	59227	"	Curtin JV	
	59210	"	Cox WJ	
Leave	59181	"	Coghill JR	(MM)
	59170	"	Clifford W	
	59206	"	Coulthard G	
	59141	"	Carman W	
	59247	"	Day FE	
Brigade	59269	"	Doran JG	
	59265	"	Doleman E	
	59276	"	Dubien H	
	59260	"	Dew R	
	59243	"	Davis W McT	
	59268	"	Doran HA	
	59234	"	Daniels GT	
	59299	"	Emsley WR	
	59294	"	Ellegett CP	
	59323	"	Fitzgerald A	
Leave	59339	"	Fraser VL	(MM)
	59378	"	Goodall J	
	59347	"	Gainsford NG	
	59472	"	Holland D	
Leave	59430	"	Hart WGL	
Brigade	59473	"	Holland J	
	59408	"	Hall LD	
	59411	"	Halliday AJ [ <i>Holliday?</i> ]	
Leave	59422	"	Harold FW	
Leave	59468	"	Hipson E	

Leave	59426	Pte	Harper SC	
	59425	"	Harper RN	
	59460	"	Hircock HT	(MM)
	59502	"	James TP	
	59514	"	Johnson GA	
	59512	"	Johnson A	
Brigade	59547	"	Kidby E	
	59534	"	Keenleyside F	
	59549	"	Kiff F	
	59590	"	Lilley W	
	59575	"	Leal F	
	59574	"	Leach WR	(MM)
	59595	"	Llewellyn JJ	
Leave	59578	"	Lee CR	
	59570	"	Lawson G	
	59596	"	Lloyd H	
Leave	59627	"	Maidman EC	
Brigade	59700	"	Maconomy DH	
	59624	"	Magner CE	
	59682	"	Murduff RD	
	59688	"	Murray TL	
Leave	59685	"	Murray G	
	59670	"	Moore JAB	
	59662	"	Milligan HG	
	59738	"	McQueen T	
	60115	"	MacKenzie H	(MM)
	59699	"	McCluckie J	
	59713	"	McElroy J	
	59711	"	McEachem DS	
	59712	"	McElrath HS	
St Omer	59714	"	McEwan JW	
	59748	"	Nicholson J	
Leave	59742	"	Nelson WA	
	59757	"	Offer H	
	59781	"	Paver WJ	
Brigade	59810	"	Powell JJ	
APM	59799	"	Pidgeon G	
Brigade	59846	"	Robins S	
	59820	"	Rawley S	
	59828	"	Reid W	
	59880	"	Sherman AC	
	59922	"	Stinson F	
	59900	"	Soicuk J	
Leave	59916	"	Stewart JE	
	59895	"	Smith JW	
Leave	59881	"	Sherriff HF	
	59904	"	Spry C	
	59959	"	Taylor J	
Brigade	59955	"	Taylor C	
	59985	"	Timms MH	
	59999	"	Troup R	
Brigade	60037	"	Webster WL	
	60051	"	Whiffen WG	
APM	60045	"	West E	
	60068	"	Williams G	
	60078	"	Wilson A	
	60094	"	Wood JA	
	60027	"	Warman J	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			<b>WAR DIARY</b> <i>OF</i> <b>INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.</b> <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

NEUNKERCHEN 1/1/19  
GERMANY

The first day of the New Year found the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry in billets at NEUNKERCHEN, Germany. In accordance with time honoured tradition the Pipe Band fittingly ushered in the New Year. Even the strains of "Bonnie Dundee" as they floated on the early morning wind, failed to enthuse the natives of the village. The Pipers were in good form for the occasion and gained quite a following as they marched through the village streets to the tune of the "Cock o' the North". That their serenade was a complete success was proved by the fact that the only casualties were two broken drum-heads.

The day broke fine and clear with sufficient sunshine to impress on one fact that the last page of history for 1918 had been turned and the time was now to hand for the making of new resolutions for the New Year. As the day was declared a holiday all ranks enjoyed a good rest and it would be safe to state that everyone was afforded encouragement in the happy reflection that, in all probability, another New Years Day would find us back in dear old Canada.

At 1630 hours the men of Battalion Headquarters, Headquarter Section and "B" Company were served a special pork dinner in the YMCA Hall which adjoined our Battalion Headquarters. The Brass Band was in attendance and, to the enjoyment of all present, rendered appropriate selections. The memory of the occasion will linger with those who were fortunate enough to be present. As three Companies were on outpost duty the Commanding Officer visited them in their respective locations during the dinner hours. The weather grew colder towards nightfall, but in no way impeded those bent on celebrating from making the day a memorable.

2/1/19 to  
7/1/19

The weather continued bright and sunny. Training and inspections were carried out by Companies and Sections on the 2<sup>nd</sup> instant. On the following day Educational Classes were restarted and maintained throughout this period. Routine Orders of this date announced that Asst RSM SL Thomas DCM, proceeded to the Base at Etaples, pending leave to Canada on compassionate grounds. Under the heading of Strength Decrease Lieutenant C Menpes MC, was struck off our strength on being appointed Orderly Officer for the GOC 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade. During this period training and route marches were carried out by "B" Company and Sections.

8/1/19 to  
11/1/19

On the 8<sup>th</sup> instant the Battalion was paid by the Brigade Paymaster. The lecture given by Captain Best (YMCA) on this date was well attended by all ranks and proved most interesting as this officer who had been with the Brigade early in the war, had just recently returned from a tour of Canada. Music provided by the Brass Band was thoroughly enjoyed and several encores were called for during the evening. The weather continued bright but slightly colder.



	12/1/19	At 1330 hours this date the 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion, after relief by the 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, left NEUNKERCHEN and proceeded a distance of 14 kilometres to SIEGBURG, arriving at our destination by 1630 hours. "D" Company proceeded independently from their outpost area and arrived at 1600 hours. The same billets at the Labratorium as we had previously occupied were again taken over.
SEIGBURG GERMANY	13/1/19	On this date Captain DJ More MC, proceeded on leave of absence to England. The weather was overcast with showers at intervals.
	14/1/19 to 15/1/19	Lieutenant FG Robinson MC returned from leave of absence and Routine Orders also announced the arrival of Lieutenant FF Pirie MM (formerly a "D" Company NCO) as a reinforcement. He was posted to "A" Company with effect from this date. Lieutenant VR Ullman MC, was struck off the strength of the 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion with effect from the 11 <sup>th</sup> on November, 1918. The weather continued unsettled.
	16/1/19	The proposed inspection of the Battalion by the GOC, 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade took place on this date at 0930 hours. The Battalion paraded in marching order. Lieutenants GD Woodcock and JR Smith MC, carried the Colours. The weather cleared up. Fortunately there was no rain.
	17/1/19 to 18/1/19	Educational classes were resumed on these dates and preparations were made for the move back to Belgium. Routine Orders of the 17 <sup>th</sup> instant announced the following Appointments and Promotions:  Temp Lieut FG Robinson MC to be Act/Captain with effect from 28-10-18 Temp Lieut VR Ullman MC, to be Temp Captain with effect from 28-11-18 Lieutenant GL Edmunds returned from leave of absence to England
TAMINES BELGIUM	19.1.19 to 20/1/19	On this date the Battalion left SIEGBURG and proceeded in "heavy marching order" a distance of three kilometres to TROISDORF where it entrained for TAMINES, Belgium. This train was loaded and stated promptly at 1630 hours. Although there was ample room for all the journey was very tiresome, as several long delays were occasioned before the Battalion arrived at its destination at 2330 hours on the night of the 20 <sup>th</sup> . Billets were immediately occupied and hot tea was served on arrival.
	21/1/19	The Battalion rested in TAMINES on the 21 <sup>st</sup> instant. The weather was overcast and quite cold. A warning order of a move was received from the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade to proceed to billets in AISMONT and VITRIVAL.
	22/1/19	At 1100 hours on this date the 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved from TAMINES to AISEMONT, a distance of six kilometres. Three Companies, "A", "B" and "D", were allotted the village of VITRIVAL which was two kilometres south of the Battalion Headquarters and "C" Company. On arrival at 1230 hours the noon meal was served and the Battalion took over the billets from a battalion of the Cheshire Regiment.
	23/1/19 to 24/1/19	The Battalion remained in the villages of AISEMONT and VITRIVAL during this period. Inspections were carried out and, in addition, lectures were delivered by the Medical Officer in the village schoolhouse. Billets were very unsatisfactory and arrangements were made by the Brigade Staff for a move to another town in order to procure better accommodation. The weather in this district was quite the coldest we had yet experienced.

Routine orders of the 24<sup>th</sup> instant announced the following Appointments and Secondings:

Captain FD Raymond MC, to be Acting Major from 26-10-18

Lieutenant EW Edwards to be Acting Captain from 19-10-18

Lieutenant RJ Gill to be Acting Captain from 27-10-18

It was also announced that Lieutenant (A/Capt) RJ Gill had been struck off the strength on proceeding to England for return to Canada on compassionate grounds.

HAM-SUR-  
SAMBRE

25/1/19

The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion moved at 1000 hours this date to HAM-SUR-SAMBRE, a mining town six kilometres almost due north of AISEMONT. As no troops had hitherto been billeted in this place the population was out in force to witness our arrival at 1115 hours. Good billets were allotted to all ranks.

26/1/19

to

27/1/19

On the night of the 25<sup>th</sup>-26<sup>th</sup> the weather became milder and there was a considerable fall of snow. Church parade was held at 1030 hours in the town Cinema. Captain CW Foreman conducted the service. The Roman Catholics paraded for service at 1000 hours to the Parish Church. Routine Orders of the 27<sup>th</sup> instant announced that Lieut GD Woodcock had been granted leave of absence to England. Educational classes were carried on under the direction of Captain EW Edwards in the Cinema and Schoolhouse.

28/1/19

to

31/1/19

This period was spent in training and Educational classes in the mornings. On the afternoon of the 29<sup>th</sup> instant Companies and Sections were bathed at the mine baths. On the evening of the 30<sup>th</sup> a concert was given at the Cinema by the Brass Band. The hall was crowded and all present thoroughly enjoyed the excellent programme of vocal and instrumental selections rendered. The weather during this period remained quite cold with snowfall at intervals.

The Ration Strength of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion on the 31<sup>st</sup> of January 1919, was as follows:

Officers	22
Other Ranks	608

During the month of January 1919, 2 officers and 78 other ranks proceeded on 14 days leave to the United Kingdom.

On the last day of the month Brigadier-General GE McQuaig CMG, DSO, gave a very timely and practical address to the Battalion at 1100 hours in the Cinema. He very forcibly placed before them the prospects for the future and set forth reasons why every man should at once determine his profession or occupation upon his return to Canada. He advised all to take advantage of the educational work at present under way and replied to numerous questions regarding the policy of the Government and conditions which will be confronted in Canada upon discharge from the army.

In reply to a letter received from Sir Bruce Seton, BT., CB, in which he requested information regarding the history of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Pipe Band, complete record of the services of our Pipers was forwarded. Attached as Appendices is a Nominal Roll and Record of all Pipers having served, and those still serving, in that capacity with this Unit.

Attached as Appendices is a Roll of Officers and Other Ranks entitled to wear the riband of the 1914-15 Star. The Roll represents personnel at present with the Battalion who served with it in Belgium in 1915.

Shortly after the Armistice steps were taken to organize educational classes. When the Battalion moved to SIEGBURG school work was begun; 221 men enrolled and a staff of teachers secured. Even while the Battalion was doing outpost duty elementary education and a course of lectures on Canadian History were carried on.

The following subjects have been taught during the whole course; Book-keeping & Arithmetic, English literature & letter-writing, Drawing, Reading, Writing, Agriculture, Spelling, Motor Mechanics, Stenography, History and Geography. Real headway has been made by the men. Many have had a sort of refresher course which will greatly help them when they return to their occupations in Canada. About thirty men have learned to write their first letter home and to do considerable sums in arithmetic with comparative ease and accuracy. Several NCOs and men are pursuing the Kahki University Correspondence Course or are preparing for the examinations in the London Guild. Many men have also been helped in solving their after-the-war problems, so that the educational work has had for many a very practical result.

The following Officers and Other Ranks of the Battalion have done splendid work as teachers:

Capt EW Edwards	Canadian History & Stenography
Capt CW Foreman	Geography & Canadian History
Sgt H Griffiths MM	Elementary education
Cpl WL Hunter	English Literature & Letter-writing
L/C JE Downey, Pte WE Homer	Drawing, Reading, Writing & Spelling
L/C PJ King	
L/C GGH Guay	
Pte AT Arbuckle	Book-keeping & Arithmetic
Pte M Lukov	
Pte AJ Robertson	

Sergt Langford and Pte Moore from the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade have also given excellent service. Major JRW Cooper and Captain TA Girling have also given some very interesting lectures.

Captain EW Edwards, the Battalion Educational Officer, has devoted himself unstintingly to this work and is entitled to much of the credit due for the success of the classes.

SECRET

Copy No 18

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 249

Reference Map:

GERMANY 2L 1/100,000

11<sup>th</sup> January 1919

- 1 (a) The 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion will relieve the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion in the left sub section of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade section, tomorrow the 12<sup>th</sup> inst.  
(b) Relief of the Outposts will be complete by 1200 hours the 12<sup>th</sup> inst
- 2 On relief the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move into Brigade reserve and take over Billets vacated by the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion in SIEGBURG
- 3 Completion of relief will be reported immediately to Battalion Headquarters.
- 4 Blankets, Kits, Lewis Guns, Officers' Baggage, etc will be collected as per separate instructions.
- 5 On Units being relieved, they will report to Battalion Headquarters with the exception of "D" Company which will proceed independently to SIEGBURG.
- 6 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant  
A/Adjutant, 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued by Orderly at 1550 hours

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Medical Officer
2	Commanding Officer	11	Quartermaster
3	Second-in-Command	12	Transport Officer
4	OC "A" Company	13	Lieut JHW Cobb MC
5	OC "B" Company	14	RSM
6	OC "C" Company	15	Bandmaster
7	OC "D" Company	16	Pipe Major
8	Scout Officer	17	File
9	Signalling Officer	18-20	War Diary

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO 250

Reference Maps

Germany 2L 1/100,000

Namur 1/100,000

SECRET

Copy No

January 17<sup>th</sup>, 1919

- 1 The 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade is being relieved from the Left Section, Right Sector, COLOGNE BRIDGEHEAD, by the 101<sup>st</sup> Brigade, 34<sup>th</sup> Division
- 2 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to FLAWINNE, entraining at TROISDORF at 1600 hours the 9<sup>th</sup> inst
- 3 In accordance with para 2 above, the Battalion will parade in Column of route on ROAD in front of Battalion Headquarters at 1410 hours, facing NORTH WEST

Dress: "Heavy Marching Order"

- 4 Entrainment will be carried on in accordance with instructions issued separately
- 5 Lieut WI Fleming will act as Entraining and Detraining Officer
- 6 Lieuts Anderson and Pirie are detailed to carry Colours. The RSM will detail the necessary escort.

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at 1830 hours

Copy No 1	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	10	Transport Officer
2	Commanding Officer	11	Quartermaster
3	Second-in-Command	12	Lieut WI Fleming
4	OC "A" Company	13	RSM
5	OC "B" Company	14	Bandmaster
6	OC "C" Company	15	Pipe Major
7	OC "D" Company	16-18	War Diary
8	Communication Section	19	Office File
9	Medical Officer		

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

B.1262

To:- All Recipients of Administrative Instructions  
And Operation Order No 250

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

- 1 Reference Para 11. The 24 hours Hard Rations will be issued on morning of 19<sup>th</sup> inst, and will be carried by the men.

O's C Units will warn Other Ranks that these rations are for consumption on the 20<sup>th</sup> inst

- 2 Reference Para 7. No arrangements can be made for watering horses en route, consequently they must be watered immediately before entraining.
- 3 Reference Para 2. 6<sup>th</sup> Line. For Lieut Crooks, read Lieut Pirie.

OPERATION ORDER

- 4 Reference Para 6. Cancel para 6 and substitute the following:

Lieuts Crooks and Anderson are detailed to carry Colours. The RSM will detail the necessary escort.

- 5 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

January 18<sup>th</sup>, 1919

SECRET

Copy No  
Jan 17<sup>th</sup>, 1919

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS ISSUED IN CONJUNCTION WITH  
21 CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO 250

1 ENTRAINING OFFICERS (BRIGADE)

Captain HJ Morgan MC, will act as Brigade Entraining Officer.  
Captain FD Raymond MC, will act as Detraining Officer  
Major JA Cooper will supervise entraining of Transport.

2 ENTRAINING PARTY

Each Company will detail 2 NCOs and 25 men, who will report to Lieut WI Fleming at Battalion Headquarters at 1145 hours on the 19<sup>th</sup> inst.

DRESS:- "Heavy Marching Order"

Balance of days rations and 24 hours rations will be carried by this party

Lieuts Smith and Crooks will also report at the above mentioned time and place, and will assist in Entraining. The party will proceed at TROISDORF STATION and report to the RTO, at 1230 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst

Lieut WI Fleming will take Marching Out State which he will hand to RTO on reporting.

3 No 2 Train is allotted to the Battalion  
Composition of Train

1 Coach	Capacity	36 Officers
36 Covered Vans	do	40 OR's or 8 Horses
15 Flats	do	4 Axles (Each)

4 Transport, ready to load, will report to the Brigade Entraining Officer at 1230 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst

5 SURPLUS BAGGAGE, BLANKETS, ETC

The Quartermaster will arrange for all Surplus Baggage, etc to be piled at TROISDORF STATION by 1130 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst

Extra Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and piled outside of QM Stores by 0900 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst

Each Company will detail one man, and the RSM, Sergt Strickland and two men, who will report to the Quartermaster at 0900 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst, for guard over blankets and surplus baggage. This detail will remain under the command of the Quartermaster until Blankets have been re-issued.

6 SAA RESERVE

OC "C" Company will detail a guard of 1 NCO and 2 ORs to report to the Quartermaster at 0900 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst, to guard SAA RESERVES. This guard will remain on same until relieving Unit arrives. Written instructions will be given the NCO as to his duties, etc.

7 WATER CARTS

Water Carts will be loaded, filled, and all ranks will carry full water bottles. Horses will be watered before leaving.

8 MARCHING OUT STATES

Marching Out States will be handed in to Orderly Room by 1000 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst. States must show:- Number of Officers, Other Ranks, Animals, 4 Wheeled Vehicles, 2 Wheeled Vehicles and Bicycles.

9 The RSM will detail a picquet of 1 Sergeant, 1 Corporal and 20 ORs. Lieut RL Perry will be in charge and will proceed with the Battalion and report to Captain HJ Morgan MC, immediately on arrival at TROISDORF STATION. Picquet will be posted under Captain Morgan's Instructions and will prevent men leaving train, except to ease themselves.

10 Company and Section Commanders will detail 1 NCO for each door of each car, who will be responsible that no persons leave same without authority, and on no assent will any person be allowed to ride on top of cars.

11 RATIONS

Balance of day's rations will be carried on the 19<sup>th</sup> inst during the train journey. 24 hours rations will be issued. Thus each Unit will be in possession of the unopened portion of the day's rations and 24 hours' hard rations for consumption of the 20<sup>th</sup> inst

Supply Wagons of the Divisional Train will report at Entraining Station with 24 hours fresh rations and forage for consumption on the 21<sup>st</sup> inst, will entrain, loaded, and travel with the Battalion to the New Area.

These Supply Wagons will then join the 34<sup>th</sup> Divisional Train and continue to function for the Battalion.

12 Baggage Wagons will accompany the Battalion during the move.

13 BREAST ROPES

Breast Ropes for horses will be provided by the Battalion. Wire Lashings are provided by the German Railways for vehicles on flat trucks but units should supplement these with rope lashings as far as possible.

14 BRAKE VANS

Are not to used for either personnel or stores.

15 SUPPLY RAILHEAD

The New Area will be at FLOREFFE

16 BILLETING PARTIES

Billeting representatives from each Company:-

Comm Section	)	
Spec Section	)	1
QM Stores	)	
Transport	)	1
RSM	)	
Pipe &	)	1
Brass Bands	)	

will report to Battalion Headquarters at 0930 hours tomorrow the 18<sup>th</sup> inst in Heavy Marching Order, with balance of day's rations and 48 hours hard rations. Instructions and Move Order will be given by the Adjutant

- 17 Present Billets are to be left in a scrupulously clean condition. Major GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC, will inspect same before leaving the area.
- 18 Transport Officer will collect Officers' Baggage and Mess Boxes by 1000 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst.
- 19 Lewis Guns (previously cleaned and magazines filled) will be loaded on limbers by 0900 hours the 19<sup>th</sup> inst, under the supervision of the Lewis Gun Sergeant.
- 20 Reference Para 3 of Operation Order No 250 and para 5 of this Order:- One blanket will be carried rolled bandolier on the man.
- 21 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at 1830

To

All recipients of Operation Order No 250. 4/17-1-19

Secret

#### 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 251

Ref Map  
NAMUR 1/100,000

Copy No 18  
January 21<sup>st</sup> 1919

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move to billets in AISEMONT and VITRIVAL tomorrow the 22<sup>nd</sup> inst  
  
Battalion Headquarters, Communication, Specialists, MO, QM, Transport, Bands and "C" Company will be billeted in AISEMONT.  
  
"A", "B" and "D" Companies will be billeted in VITRIVAL. Major GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC, will be in charge of this party and will be billeted at VITRIVAL.
- 2 The Battalion will parade in column of route at 1000 hours on MAIN ROAD running SOUTH-EAST from S in TAMINES, facing SOUTH EAST with HEAD of COLUMN resting at BRIDGE over river ½ mile SOUTH EAST of S in TAMINES  
  
DRESS:- Fighting Order.
- 3 Lieuts GL Edmunds and WI Fleming are detailed to carry Colours and the RSM will detail necessary escort.
- 4 Blankets will be rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled and piled at QM Stores by 0900 hours



Each Company will detail 1 man and the RSM will detail Sergt Strickland and 2 ORs for Headquarters and Headquarters Sections.

Detail will remain in charge of blankets until handed over to respective Units

Packs (with Steel Helmets fastened thereon by one kicking strap) will be piled at QM Stores at 0900 hours.

Each Company will detail 1 man and RSM will detail 2 ORs for Headquarters and Headquarters Sections. Detail will remain in charge of packs until handed over to respective units.

The Officer Commanding "C" Company will detail 1 Sergeant to take charge of this detail

2 Lorries will report to QM Stores at 0900 hours to convey blankets, packs and surplus baggage, and will remain with Battalion until all baggage etc has been transported to new area.

- 5 Guides will meet the Battalion at CROSS ROADS ½ mile SOUTH WEST of A in AISEMONT for which point "A", "B" and "D" Companies, together with their sections and Lewis Guns and one Water Cart will proceed independently to VITRIVAL.
- 6 Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours tomorrow the 22<sup>nd</sup> inst. Dinner will be cooked en route and served on arrival in new area.
- 7 Officers Commanding Units will report arrival and location of their Headquarters in new area to Battalion Orderly Room
- 8 Present billets are to be left in a scrupulously clean condition. Orderly Officer will obtain clearance certificate.
- 9 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect officers baggage, mess boxes and Orderly Room Boxes by 0930 hours tomorrow the 22<sup>nd</sup> inst. Baggage etc, to be ready by 0845 hours.
- 10 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Issued to Orderly at 1550 hours

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	10	MO
2	4 <sup>th</sup> CIB	11	TO
3	Second-in-Command	12	QM
4	OC "A" Company	13	RSM
5	OC "B" Company	14	Pipe Band
6	OC "C" Company	15	Brass Band
7	OC "D" Company	16	Office Copy
8	Specialists	17-20	War Diary
9	Communication Section		

Ref Map  
NAMUR 1/100,000

Copy No  
24-1-1919

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will move tomorrow the 25<sup>th</sup> inst to billets in HAM-SUR-SAMBRE
- 2 The Battalion, less "A", "B", "D" Companies and units of Transport Section now at VITRIVAL, will parade in column of route on ROAD in front of Battalion Headquarters at 0945 hours tomorrow the 25<sup>th</sup> inst, facing EAST. Head of Column resting at Battalion Orderly Room, and move off at 1000 hours.

DRESS:- Fighting Order

"A", "B", "D" Companies and Units of Transport now at VITRIVAL will join main body at JUNCTION of ROADS ½ mile NORTH of T in NEVREMONT at 1050 hours

- 3 Breakfast will be served at 0700 hours, dinner will be cooked en route and served on arrival in new area
- 4 Billeting representatives as per this office letter 21-265 of 23<sup>rd</sup> inst will proceed ahead and will meet their respective Units at a point 400 yards SOUTH of LIGHT RAILWAY and ROAD CROSSING on main HAM-SUR-SAMBRE and NEVREMONT ROAD.
- 5 Units will obtain breakfast tomorrow as today. Dinner and tea ration for tomorrow will be drawn from cookers as under, and until further orders:-

"A" Company	Communication and Specialists Sections
"B" "	Pipe Band
"C" "	RSM Party and Medical Section
"D" "	Brass Band and QM Section
Transport	Independently

- 6 Major GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC, will detail two guides to report to Battalion Headquarters at 0900 hours tomorrow the 25<sup>th</sup> inst to guide lorries to VITRIVAL. These lorries will convey blankets, packs and Officers baggage of details now at VITRIVAL to HAM SUR SAMBRE, and, on unloading will return to AISEMONT to collect blankets, packs and surplus baggage of Battalion Headquarters and "C" Company. Major Bowerbank will arrange to have the baggage etc of "A", "B" and "D" Companies placed in a central position, ready to load and will ensure guards remain with and accompany same to destination.

Blankets, rolled in bundles of 10s, plainly labeled, and packs of "C" Company and Headquarters Sections will be piled at QM Stores by 0800 hours.

The Officer Commanding "C" Company will detail 1 man to guard blankets and 1 man for packs.

The RSM will detail 2 men to guard blankets and 2 men for packs of all Headquarters and Sections. These details will remain with and be responsible for blankets and packs until same are handed over at destination. Sergt Strickland will supervise blanket loading. The Officer Commanding "C" Company will detail Sergt Armstrong to supervise loading of packs.

Steel Helmets are to be fastened to packs by one kicking strap.

- 7 Orderly Officers will obtain clearance certificate from their respective areas.
- 8 The Transport Officer will arrange to collect officers baggage, mess boxes and Orderly Room Boxes by 0930 hours. Baggage, etc to be ready by 0930 hours.  
  
Mess boxes will be loaded on Lewis Gun Limbers.
- 9 Lieuts Perry and Pirie are detailed to carry Colours. The RSM will detail necessary escort.
- 10 Canteen covers will be worn
- 11 Officers Commanding Units will report location of their Headquarters in new area to Battalion Orderly Room
- 12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieut  
A/Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

EASTERN ONTARIO REGIMENT

PIPE BAND RECORD

Regt Number	Rank	Name	Remarks	
	Lieut	IR McKenzie	Killed in Action	11-10-18
	(originally Pipe Major)			
59937	Sergt	W Sutherland	Wounded	27-11-15
	Lieut	W Currie MC, MM		
	(originally Piper)			
59320	Piper	C Fife	Wounded	27-8-18
59311	Piper	J Ewart	Invalided	28-10-15
59620	Piper	H MacKeachen	Invalided	12-1-17
633985	Piper	W Grant	Invalided	15-5-17
401191	Piper	McDougall	Wounded	21-5-18
59425	Drummer	RN Harper (still serving)	Wounded	19-6-16
59436	Drummer	N Hasty	Wounded	31-1-19
59115	Drummer	CP Burke	Killed in Action	18-3-16
59585	Drummer	H Lewis	Killed in Action	9-4-16
402226	Drummer	J Wylie	Wounded	27-11-15
59537	Drummer	LC Kelly	Wounded	26-6-16
60094	Drummer	JA Wood (still serving)	Wounded	17-9-16
401865	Drummer	WS Collins [ <i>Collings?</i> ]	Wounded	14-5-16
675097	Drummer	Strowbridge (still serving)	Wounded	24-8-16
59412	Drummer	J Halliday	Invalided	4-6-18
59085	Drummer	W Bowman	Invalided	16-5-18
60057	Drummer	T Whitehead	Returned to Canada	
633881	Piper	EJ Whitton	Returned to Canada	under age

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS AT PRESENT WITH UNIT

59618 Pipe Major J MacDougall

59181	Corporal	JR Coghil MM	59685	Corporal	G Murray
60115	Piper	H McKenzie MM	59742	Piper	WA Nelson
633879	Piper	W Alexander	675265	Piper	J Candlish
675268	Piper	WH Collins	124072	Piper	JI Garson
675274	Piper	J Little	633501	Piper	R Laing
633643	Piper	DJ MacDonald	59031	Piper	MS Baillie
59662	Drummer	H Milligan	455019	Drummer	R Schenck
124312	Drummer	G Colonies	455636	Drummer	WH Tyson
59578	Drummer	CR Lee			

Lieutenant W Currie MC, MM

Awarded the Military Medal for conspicuous bravery, while acting as a Stretcher Bearer. Granted his Commission in 1917, and for his fine work and good leadership during a Raid upon the enemy in April 1918, he was awarded the Military Cross.

59181 Corporal JR Coghill MM

Awarded the Military Medal for courageous action on an Evacuation Party in the Battle of Arras, August 1918.

60115 Piper H McKenzie MM

Awarded the Military Medal for his good work and devotion to duty, whilst in action at Hill 70 (LENS) in August 1917.

---

It is considered in this Battalion, that Pipers as a Military Institution, are "indispensable".

While it has always been a cause for regret that Pipers have seldom been allowed, during this War, to pipe the troops 'Over the Top', yet it cannot but appear to all, that it would have caused such a dearth of Pipers, that the trained men would soon have become extinct, and the loss could not be repaired for many years.

The Pipers in this Battalion have rendered most valuable service as Stretcher Bearers, and on evacuation parties.

As the casualty list testifies, this work has been by no means light or free from immediate danger, and the pipers deserve every commendation.

---

-----1914-15 STAR-----

The undermentioned Officers and Other Ranks have permission to wear the Riband of the 1914-15 Star, which is Red, White and Blue shaded and watered:-

Lieut-Colonel HE Pense, DSO, MC

Major	GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC	Major	FD Raymond MC
Captain	A Cockeram DSO, MC	Captain	FK Ludlow MC
Captain	L Frazer MC	Captain	DJ More MC
Captain	JHW Cobb MC	Lieut	GW Trollope MM
Lieut	RA Stewart	Lieut	PF Pirie MM
	59630 RSM TF Jordan MC, DCM		
59200	Sgt Cordes HGM (MM)	59617	Sgt McDonald HM
59339	Cpl Fraser VL (MM)	59511	Cpl Johnson A
59234	Pte Daniels GT	59243	Pte Davis WMcT
59895	" Smith JW	59999	" Troup R
59595	" Llewellyn J	59985	" Timms MH
59682	" Murduff R	59460	" Hircock HT
59063	" Biggs AH		

Specialists Section

59382	Sgt	Golding JD (MM)	59891	Sgt	Smith AJ
59273	"	Doyle HH (MM)	59876	Cpl	Sharpe WH (MM)
59786	Cpl	Zacharias J (MM)	59571	"	Lawson J
59260	Pte	Dew R	59029	Pte	Bailey WM
59670	"	Moore JAB			

Communication Section

60046	Sgt	West JN	59883	Cpl	Shotter FC (MM)
13	Pte	Bagshaw WS	59712	Pte	McElrath JS
59323	"	Fitzgerald A	60027	"	Warman HJ
59881	"	Sherriff HF			

Pipe Band

59618		Pipe Major MacDougall J	59181	Cpl	Coghill JR (MM)
59031	Piper	Baillie MS	59425	Piper	Harper RN
59578	"	Lee CR	60115	"	McKenzie H (MM)
59685	"	Murray G	59662	"	Millican H
59742	"	Nelson WA			

Quartermaster's Section

59552	RQMS	King TH	59177	Sgt	Cocke GC
59993	Sgt	Tompkins A	59422	Cpl	Harold F
59170	Pte	Clifford W	59468	Pte	Hipson E
59570	"	Lawson G	59738	"	McQueen T
59916	"	Stewart JE	60094	"	Wood JA
59030	"	Baillie AJ			

Transport Section

59439	Sgt	Hawkey J (MM)	59820	Cpl	Rawley S
59080	Pte	Booth J	59046	Pte	Baylie CHW
59411	"	Halliday AJ	59426	"	Harper SC
59512	"	Johnson A	59688	"	Murray T
59699	"	McClukie J	59713	"	McElroy J
59757	"	Offer H	59900	"	Soicuk J
59473	"	Holland J	60068	"	Williams GE
60078	"	Wilson A	59141	"	Carman W
59534	"	Keenleyside F	413021	"	Lindsay JW
59828	"	Reid W			

"A" Company

59217	Sgt	Cross J	59572	Sgt	Leach J (MM)
59292	Cpl	Edwards TJ	59946	L/C	Swan J (MM)
48525	Pte	Champion J	59590	Pte	Lilley W
59575	"	Leal F	59781	"	Paver WJ
412046	"	Jeffrey W	59472	"	Holland D

"B" Company

412259	CSM	Logue RJ (DCM, MM)	59648	CQMS	Measor WR
59704	Sgt	McCullagh WG (MM)	59735	Sgt	McMahon F (DCM, MM)
59100	Pte	Brooks CMR	59856	Cpl	Rothwell F
59376	"	Goodall J	59210	Pte	Cox WJ
59627	"	Maidman EC	49060	"	McGeary TG (MM)

"C" Company

59022	Sgt	Armstrong C (MM)	412586	Sgt	Giles J (MM)
412069	"	Kerr TS	59528	Cpl	Jordan J (MM)
59007	Pte	Allen HE	59042	Pte	Bates TF
59574	"	Leach W (MM)	59624	"	Magner CB
412996	"	Deakin J			

"D" Company

59127	CSM	Byrne C (MM)	59995	CQMS	Trappitt AA (MM)
59563	Sgt	Landsborough R	59395	Sgt	Griffiths H (MM)
60051	L/C	Whiffen W	59748	Pte	Nicholson J
59040	Pte	Bate GL	59265	"	Doleman E
59055	"	Bennett E	59922	"	Stinson F
59276	"	Dubien H	412603	"	Johnson W
59247	"	Day FE	412756	"	Knight J
59959	"	Taylor J	412934	"	Longstaff F

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

A.820

4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

The following extract from the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Routine order No 115, d/3-2-19 is herewith forwarded for your information, please.

List No 2 1914-15 Star

Other Ranks attached to the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

59176	Sergt	Cockburn E	59218	Sergt	Crossey J
59810	"	Powell JJ	60023	"	Wallace PG
59062	Pte	Bethell PF	59547	Pte	Kidby E
59959	"	Taylor J	59846	"	Robins S
59430	"	Hart WG	59268	"	Doran HA
59087	"	Bradley RJ	59206	"	Coulthard G
59700	"	Maconomy D	60037	"	Webster WL

Lieutenant for  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Cdn Battalion

WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
-------	------	------	-----------------------------------

HAM-SUR- 1/2/19 to  
SAMBRE 3/2/19

During the month of February the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion remained in billets in HAM-SUR-SAMBRE. Short periods of training were carried out in the mornings and Educational work continued throughout the month. An estimate of the work done by the Educational Officer and his staff of competent teachers may be had from the following figures:-

Total number receiving instruction	148
Number attending classes in	Agriculture 17
do do	Commercial subjects 19
do do	Trades 45
do do	Elementary Instruction 40
Number in attendance at other lectures	27

The afternoons were devoted to sport and several keenly contested football matches took place. Indoor and Outdoor baseball, as well as boxing, attracted many enthusiasts. During the period from the 1<sup>st</sup> to the 3<sup>rd</sup> instant there was a considerable fall of snow, followed by a spell of cold weather. Church parade was held at 1115 hours on the 2<sup>nd</sup> instant in the Cinema, the service being conducted by Captain CW Foreman. The Roman Catholics paraded for Mass in the Parish Church at 1000 hours on the same date. Routine orders of February the 3<sup>rd</sup> announced the following Awards:-

THE MERITORIOUS SERVICE MEDAL

No 59891 Sergt Smith AJ  
No 60099 Sergt Woodrow AW  
No 59511 Corpl Johnson A

The Commanding Officer, together with their many friends, congratulated the recipients.

4/2/19 to  
8/2/19

Training and Educational classes were carried on during this period. On the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> instant the Companies and Sections were bathed at the mines. On the night of the 5<sup>th</sup> a concert was given by the Brass Band at the Cinema. Captain FG Robinson MC, Lieutenant LA Anderson MM, and Sergeants WG McCullagh MM, and WB Cresswell rendered valuable assistance in making it a success. Owing to there being insufficient space in the hall for those who wished to attend, the concert was repeated on the following night. The whole Battalion was paraded on the 7<sup>th</sup> instant for pay. On the evening of this date a dance was given in the Cinema by the NCOs and men of "D" Company. As splendid programme had been arranged and the music provided by the Brass Band was of the highest quality. Refreshments were served, after which a most enjoyable evening came to a close. During this period the weather still continued cold.

9/2/19 to  
12/2/19

On the 9<sup>th</sup> of February the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion attended church service in the Cinema at 0915 hours. Routine orders of the 11<sup>th</sup> instant announced the return from leave of Lieutenant N Nicholson. Lieutenants RL Perry and WI Fleming proceeded on the same date on eight days leave of absence to Paris.

13/2/19  
to  
16/2/19

A dance was given by Headquarters Sections at the Cinema on the evening of February the 13<sup>th</sup>. The music was provided by the Brass Band and Scottish Reels and dances were given by two NCOs of the Pipe Band. Refreshments were served and altogether a most enjoyable evening was spent. On the 14<sup>th</sup> instant Captain DJ More MC, returned from leave in England



17/2/19 Under the heading of Promotions & Appointments the following was  
to published in Routine orders of the 17<sup>th</sup> instant for information:- Temp Lieut GW  
22/2/19 Trollope MM, to be Adjutant with effect from 27-10-18.

A "Fancy Dress Ball" was given by "B" Company in the Cinema on the evening of the 20<sup>th</sup> of February which was largely attended. Refreshments were served and all who attended thoroughly enjoyed themselves.

On the night of the 21<sup>st</sup> instant a concert was given by the Brass Band, assisted by Captain FG Robinson MC, and Lieutenant Richardson of the 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion. As this concert proved to be such a success it was decided to repeat it on the following night. Routine orders of this date announced the return from leave of Lieutenant WD Woodcock. The Companies and Sections were paid by the Brigade Paymaster on the 22<sup>nd</sup> instant. The Church parade held in the Cinema on this date was conducted by Captain CW Foreman.

23/2/19 On the 23<sup>rd</sup> of February Lieutenants RL Perry and WI Fleming returned  
to from leave of absence in Paris. Towards the latter end of the month steps were  
28/2/19 taken by the Medical Officer to ensure against any outbreaks of sickness among the troops. On the 26<sup>th</sup> instant the Orchestra and Concert Party of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion proceeded to Fosse to attend a "Smoker" given by "C" Company, 19<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, at the Cinema there. They were given an enthusiastic welcome and, after the performance which lasted for over an hour, the wish was expressed that they return at an early date. Despite the decided change in the weather very few cases of sickness were reported. During the month of February 7 Officers and 64 Other Ranks took advantage of the three days leave to visit Brussels, while 2 Officers and 15 Other Ranks were granted leave to revisit Trazegnies, a small town where the Battalion had occupied billets for a short period at the commencement of the march to the Rhine. Three Officers and 5 Other Ranks were granted leave to points in France and 11 Other Ranks proceeded on fourteen days leave to the United Kingdom. During the course of the month considerable work of a documentary nature dealing with demobilization was done. Questionnaire cards and "D" forms were filled in and completed by Companies and Sections. The Ration Strength of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion on February the 28<sup>th</sup> was 25 Officers and 633 Other Ranks.

#### EDUCATIONAL CLASSES

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

Report for week ending Saturday March the 8<sup>th</sup>

---

1 Classes organized and name of Instructors

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| (a) Elementary Reading and writing | Sgt Griffiths<br>L/C King                      |
| (b) Elementary Business            | Capt Edwards<br>Pte Arbuckle<br>Pte Lukov      |
| (c) Agricultural                   | Capt Edwards                                   |
| (d) Motor Engines                  | (Cancelled on account of 'Flu'<br>precautions) |

(e) English Literature

Cpl Hunter

2 Average daily attendance last week in each class

(a) 49  
(b) 21  
(c) 10  
(d) 0  
(e) 3

---

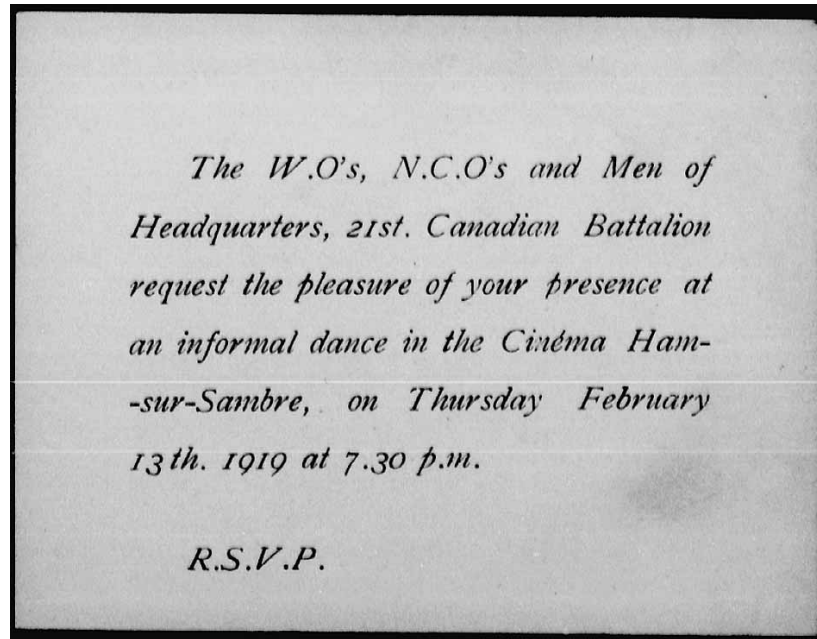
83

3 Hours during which classes were held 1100 to 1200 hours

4 No lectures last week on account of 'Flu' precautions

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant for  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

March 1<sup>st</sup>, 1919



**21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIANS**

**"D., COMPANY DANCE**

**21<sup>ST</sup> ORCHESTRA**

**PROGRAMME**

**7 PM.**

**10.50 PM.**



**COMMITTEE**

**SERGEANT GRIFFITHS H.**

» **NICHOLSON J.W.**

**LCE CORP. DESLOGES J.**

» **GUERIN L.**

**PRIVATE WARE R.H.**



**HAM-SUR-SAMBRE**

**BELGIUM**

**FEBRUARY 7/1919**

Ham-sur-Sambre. — Imp. F. Dolatre-Basell.

**PROGRAMME**

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. WALTZ .....       | 9. SELECTED .....     |
| 2. SCHOTTISCHE ..... | 10. WALTZ .....       |
| 3. WALTZ .....       | 11. ONE STEP .....    |
| 4. SELECTED .....    | 12. WALTZ .....       |
| 5. FOX TROT .....    | 13. SCHOTTISCHE ..... |
| 6. WALTZ .....       | 14. SELECTED .....    |
| 7. TWO STEP .....    | 15. TWO STEP .....    |
| 8. WALTZ .....       | 16. WALTZ .....       |

2

**INTERMISSION  
AND REFRESHMENTS**

**LA BRABANÇONNE  
GOD SAVE THE KING**

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.			WAR DIARY OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. <i>(Erase heading not required.)</i>	Army Form
Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	

HAM-SUR- 1/3/19  
SAMBRE

Battalion parades and Educational work were carried out in the mornings during this period. The weather continued bright and sunny, though slightly colder. Owing to the precautions taken against the "Flu" no church parade was held on the 2<sup>nd</sup> instant. The Battalion Bass Band gave a concert in the town square at 1000 hours, which was largely attended by both soldiers and civilians. On the morning of the 3<sup>rd</sup> instant 200 officers & Other Ranks proceeded in lorries to the Canadian Corps Sports at NAMUR. The Brass Band also went there to form part of the masses band display. Lieutenant JD MacGillivray MM, reported for duty on this date.

4/3/19

On the 4<sup>th</sup> instant a Burial Party consisting of 1 Officer, 1 sergeant, 1 corporal and 18 other ranks, together with the Regimental Brass Band, proceeded to NAMUR to take part in the funeral ceremony of the Late Captain TA Girling of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade Staff. The Weather was quite mild on this date with rainfall at intervals. Several other ranks took advantage of the opportunity to attend the Divisional Boxing Tournament in NAMUR. They were conveyed both ways in lorries and four other ranks represented this unit in the ring. The weather was quite unsettled on the 6<sup>th</sup> instant but cleared up in the afternoon. An inspection of Companies and Sections was held by the Commanding Officer on the Battalion Parade Ground. Lieutenants JR Smith MC, and GD Woodcock were detailed to carry the Colours and the escort was furnished by "D" Company under Sergt H Griffiths MM. The OR Concert Party entertained the Battalion in the Cinema on the evening of this date. The hall was crowded and the concert was thoroughly enjoyed by all ranks. The Companies and Sections were paid by the Brigade Paymaster during the afternoon.

7/3/19

On March the 7<sup>th</sup> the Brigadier visited the Battalion and, after having lunch with the Colonel, returned to the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Headquarters early in the afternoon. On this date Captain N Black returned from leave of absence to Paris. Preparations were made to supply a guard to relieve the 66<sup>th</sup> Division of Imperials stationed in and around NAMUR. On the afternoon of the 9<sup>th</sup> instant the Commanding Officer inspected the Battalion on the parade grounds. On the morning of the 10<sup>th</sup> of March church parade was held in the Cinema at 1045 hours by Captain CW Foreman. At 1745 a lecture was given in the Cinema by Colonel Adams of McGill University. A parade was held for this lecture and the Brass Band was in attendance. The Speaker dealt at length with "Canada and Her Resources" and his remarks were most interesting. He emphasized many points of value and laid particular stress on the possibilities in the future of our country.

11/3/19

The weather was very mild and bright on this date. Training was carried out in the morning and sports, mainly baseball and running, occupied the afternoon. A concert was given in the Cinema at 1900 hours on the 11<sup>th</sup> instant by the 5<sup>th</sup> Brigade Concert Party. It was largely attended and enjoyed by all. On this date Lieutenant RB Smythe MC, proceeded on fourteen days leave of absence to the United Kingdom. At 0845 hours on the 4<sup>th</sup> of March the Battalion proceeded to FOSSE for inspection, together with other units of the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, by the General Officer Commanding the 4<sup>th</sup> Army. On arrival in FOSSE each Battalion was detailed to its own parade ground after which the Brigade was drawn up in review order by RSM TF Jordan MC, DCM.

13/3/19 Bathing parades for all Companies and Sections were carried on this date at the mines. Educational classes were restarted with a large attendance of students. Physical Training was carried out daily between the hours of 0900 and 0930. Under the heading of reinforcements in Routine orders of this date Lieutenant EG Jones was taken on the strength of the Battalion and posted to "D" Company. On the 14<sup>th</sup> instant 27 Other Ranks were dispatched from this unit to the EORD Seaford, England pending transfer to Canada for duty with the Canadian Military Police. On the afternoon of this date two baseball teams arrived from the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion to play indoor ball. The visiting officers team defeated the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion officers by a score of 6 to 3 while our other ranks team lost their game to the 18<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion by a narrow margin. Four lorries conveyed a representation of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion to FOSSE to Participate in the 4<sup>th</sup> Brigade Sports. Our volleyball team won both their games by the scores of 21 to 11 and 21 to 4 respectively, thus making them eligible to enter the Divisional Sports Tournament.

17/3/19 The Companies and Sections were bathed on the 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> instants. On the evening of the 17<sup>th</sup> instant a concert was given by an Australian Concert Party in the Cinema. It was well attended and the general opinion was that it was one of the best entertainments given to the troops in Ham-Sur-Sambre. The Battalion was paraded to a lecture given by Lieutenant Eastman at 1100 hours in the Cinema on the 18<sup>th</sup> instant. Lieutenant JR Smith MC, proceeded on this date on fourteen days leave of absence to the United Kingdom. A church parade was held in the Cinema at 0945 hours on the morning of the 22<sup>nd</sup> instant, conducted by Captain CW Foreman. The RCs paraded to the Parish Church for Mass at 1000 hours this date.

23/3/19 On the afternoon of the 23<sup>rd</sup> instant the Battalion Brass Band proceeded to MOUSTIER to play at a "farewell party" given to the 16<sup>th</sup> Battery. They also assisted at another "farewell party" to the 22<sup>nd</sup> Battery. On the night of the 24<sup>th</sup> of March the Brass Band provided the music at a "party" given by the 20<sup>th</sup> Battery. Routine orders of the 24<sup>th</sup> instant announced the award of the Croix de Virtue, 1<sup>st</sup> Class, to No 59127 CSM Chris Byrne MM. The Commanding Officer, together with many friends, congratulated the recipient. Captain A Cockeram DSO, returned to duty from hospital on this date while Captain L Frazer MC, proceeded on seven days leave of absence to the United Kingdom to collect records for the Battalion history now being compiled.

In an interchange of all ranks in the Division for regrouping this unit sent away 1 Officer and 60 Other Ranks to be regrouped as under:

25 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	1 Officer (Lt Crooks) & 51 Other Ranks
24 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	3 Other Ranks
No 3 Section, DAC	2 Other Ranks
22 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion	1 Other Rank
26 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	3 Other Ranks

The undermentioned were posted to this unit for regrouping within the Division:-

18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	4 Other Ranks	19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	3 Other Ranks
20 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	21 Other Ranks	2 <sup>nd</sup> Battalion CE	17 Other Ranks
5 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion CE	3 Other Ranks	4 <sup>th</sup> Battalion CE	4 Other Ranks
2 <sup>nd</sup> Brigade CE	1 Officer	2 <sup>nd</sup> Battalion CMGC	1 Other Rank
27 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	5 Other Ranks	28 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	3 Other Ranks
29 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion	5 Other Ranks	31 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion	3 Other Ranks
5 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Inf Bde HQ	1 Other Rank	4 <sup>th</sup> Field Ambulance	1 Other Rank

30/3/19  
to  
31/3/19

Memorable send-offs were given the various parties who left the Battalion during the month, those who proceeded to England for return to Canada for police duty, the NCOs and men who re-joined their dependents in England in order to accompany them to Canada, those who proceeded to England for the purpose of marrying, and the personnel who reluctantly left for attachment to the 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and other units upon the regrouping of the Division for demobilization purposes. Battalion parades were held, short speeches were made by the Commanding Officer and others and the Bands took a prominent part in the "farewells". Lieutenant WH Blake MC, and the Other Ranks who became attached to the Battalion for regrouping, were welcomed.

The personnel who became attached or detached for the above reasons is as under:-

To Canada for Police Duty--- To England to re-join dependants--- To England to be married--- To 25<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion for regrouping--- To other units for regrouping--- Attached for regrouping--- See Nominal Rolls attached as appendices.

On the 18<sup>th</sup> of the month Lieutenant EB Smythe MC, was granted permission to wear the badge of the rank of Captain, his promotion to this rank having been forwarded. Upon his return from leave he was heartily congratulated by his many friends.

Lieutenants JD MacGillivray and EG Jones were heartily welcomed when they rejoined the Battalion. They were formerly Sergeants in "D" and "A" Companies respectively, having been recommended for commissions during the fighting of last summer. For valor and consistent service they were singled out for the honour of commissions in their own service unit. Lieutenant Jones, whose home is in Eastern Ontario, enlisted in the Battalion in 1914, while Lieutenant MacGillivray, from the province of New Brunswick, was with the earlier reinforcements in 1916, his former unit being the 64<sup>th</sup> Battalion.

During the month scores of group photographs of the Battalion were taken, to serve as souvenirs. A photograph, taken when General Rawlinson inspected the unit on the 12<sup>th</sup> of the month, appeared in a later edition of "Canada".

Thanks of the Battalion were extended to the "C-Too" and other Concert Parties which gave very enjoyable programs in the cinema during the month. The concert given by the Australian Party was among the best.

The undermentioned NCOs proceeded to the Base, pending return to Canada on Compassionate Grounds on dates stated:-

706032 Staff-Sergeant Hoy AB  
(28-3-19)

59820 Corporal Rawley SJ  
(9-3-19)

At 0930 hours on the 30<sup>th</sup> instant the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion left Ham-Sur-Sambre and proceeded to AUVELAIS a distance of two kilometres, where they entrained for Le Havre. Lieutenant-Colonel HE Pense DSO, MC, was appointed OC Train and after all baggage had been loaded, and every man accounted for, the train departed at 1120 hours. The undermentioned personnel composed Train No X30:-

21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion	23 Officers	601 Other Ranks
18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion	18 Officers	282 Other Ranks
C2 Concert Party		44 Other Ranks
5 <sup>th</sup> Brigade Concert Party	1 Officer	18 Other Ranks
2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Military Police	<u>1 Officer</u>	<u>21 Other Ranks</u>
	43	966

The trip was made in good time and all ranks expressed themselves satisfied with the accommodation provided. The system of rationing the men was most efficient and there was plenty for all at every halt during the trip.

Three Officers and thirty Other Ranks went on fourteen days leave to the United Kingdom during the month of March.

The Ration Strength of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion on March 31<sup>st</sup> was as under:-

Officers	23
Other Ranks	596

#### NOMINAL ROLL

#### Present and former Members of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion Brass Band

No	Rank	Name	Original Unit	Where Enlisted From
- 1093429	BM Sgt	Hinchey ER	155 <sup>th</sup> Bn	Belleville Ont
- 636208	Sergt	Dobbs GE	"	" "
59398	"	Groves JE	21 <sup>st</sup> "	Russell "
636146	Cpl	Weymark JS	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Belleville "
- 636656	L/Cpl	Sword DF	" "	" "
- 636504	"	Thompson HA	" "	" "
642057	Pte	Bunn R	157 <sup>th</sup> "	Orillia "
- 1093090	"	Blaind EA	254 <sup>th</sup> "	Belleville "
-805018	"	Bridle J	136 <sup>th</sup> "	Bowmanville "
-637163		Brooks J	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Kamsack Sask
-636361		Burke FJ	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Belleville Ont
-636475		Burke RW	155 <sup>th</sup> "	" "
-639902		Coley T	156 <sup>th</sup> "	Gananoque "
-636530		Cordes JC	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Belleville "
-675487		Draper EL	168 <sup>th</sup> "	Danville Ill
-637085		Fraser MS	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Frankford Ont
835227		Granger GA	146 <sup>th</sup> "	Kingston "
238105		Griffiths WB	204 <sup>th</sup> "	Toronto "
-455762		Hirst J	59 <sup>th</sup> "	Cornwall "
-455514		Jones WR	59 <sup>th</sup> "	Peterboro "
454913		Johnston FE	59 <sup>th</sup> "	Kingston "
-802173		Lowe FC	135 <sup>th</sup> "	London "
-636602		Moynes EC	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Stirling "
636499		Mitts WJ	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Belleville "
455583		Murray JA	59 <sup>th</sup> "	Kingston "
-640116		McIlveen WH	156 <sup>th</sup> "	Cardinal "
1093002		Patterson JH	254 <sup>th</sup> "	Toronto "
-636424		Parks MW	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Belleville "
-637194		Ross WL	155 <sup>th</sup> "	Kamsack Sask
-639469		Round E	156 <sup>th</sup> "	Gananoque Ont
639831		Smith HE (MM)	156 <sup>th</sup> "	" "
454873		Smith WC	59 <sup>th</sup> "	Belleville "



-409488	Shuttleworth HC	37 <sup>th</sup> Bn	New Liskard Ont
-639797	Schwartz I	156 <sup>th</sup> “	Bryson Que
455582	Torrents HN	59 <sup>th</sup> “	Kingston Ont
-637164	Wallace HC	155 <sup>th</sup> “	Kamsack Sask
636270	Warren A	155 <sup>th</sup> “	Belleville Ont
636520	Weymark WO	155 <sup>th</sup> “	Belleville Ont
-455450	Willis A	59 <sup>th</sup> “	Oshawa Ont
823063	Wilson E	142 <sup>nd</sup> “	London Ont
636567	Wonnacott WG	155 <sup>th</sup> “	Belleville Ont

- Indicates at present with the Battalion

#### BANDMASTER ER HINCHEY

Bandmaster ER Hinchey, of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion, first enlisted in the 15<sup>th</sup> Regiment (Argyll Light Infantry) in Belleville, Ontario, in 1900. His first interest was in the Drums of that unit, and from 1905 to 1908 he was Bugle Major. In the former year he joined the IOOF Brass Band of that city, dividing his time between both organizations.

Being a born musician, instrumentalist and considered a future leader, he became a member of the famous Canadian Kilties Concert Band in 1908, and made a complete circle of the globe with that organization, returning to his home in August 1910. He again became connected, for a short time, with the IOOF Band, and was appointed Bandmaster. In 1913, when that Band was merged with the Band of the 15<sup>th</sup> Regiment, he became Bandmaster and was granted the Bandmasters Warrant by the Minister of Militia.

Bandmaster Hinchey's connection with the Canadian Expeditionary Force commenced in January 1916, when he became Bandmaster of the 155<sup>th</sup> Battalion, with headquarters at Belleville. When that unit proceeded to England in the following October Mr Hinchey's Band was retained by Military District No 3 for recruiting purposes, and he was granted a commission as Lieutenant. After the winter spent stimulating recruiting this band was finally attached to the 254<sup>th</sup> Battalion and accompanied it to England. In August 1917 Mr Hinchey and twenty-two members of his band were secured by the late Lieutenant-Colonel EW Jones DSO, despatched to France, and became the Brass Band of his Battalion, the "21<sup>st</sup>".

Mr Hinchey's Band has long been recognized as one of the best organizations of its kind in the Canadian Corps. Under his capable and cheerful direction, it has contributed very much to the enjoyment of officers and men, and has been a decided credit to the Battalion on all occasions. In the summer of 1918, when the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division was in the 3<sup>rd</sup> Army, the 21<sup>st</sup> Band was accorded second place, with a very close margin, among the bands of the units of the 6<sup>th</sup> Corps. The Bands of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian division were among the contestants.

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS PROCEEDING TO CANADA FOR  
POLICE DUTY

14-3-19

59648	CQMS	Measor WE	725171	Pte	Truax W
636934	Pte	Conlin LB	3055951	"	Blair W
3055844	"	Denison WI	637171	"	Coulter WB
835641	"	Garrison JJ	3320472	"	Droughan JF
633520	"	Irvine DA	454611	"	Hilliker J
636155	"	Lindsay M	3055581	"	Kerr EJ
59900	"	Soicuk J	413021	"	Lindsay JW
60094	"	Wood JA	195268	"	Watson WJ
2356548	"	McFadyen F	454437	Cpl	Gilmore ML
3320181	"	Desjardins A	3181452	Pte	Boutilier AE
3180543	"	Donovan HA	3204081	"	Finlayson A
3202056	"	McInnis A	248664	"	Lantz E
3320130	"	Taylor JD	3030689	"	Arbuckle A
745615	"	Bailey WG			

Proceeding 15-3-19

59955	Pte	Taylor C
-------	-----	----------

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS PROCEEDING TO ENGLAND TO  
ACCOMPANY DEPENDENTS TO CANADA

20-3-19

195603	Cpl	Hawke G	850171	L/C	Jordan JT
59999	Cpl	Troup R	412996	Pte	Deakin J
675097	Pte	Strowbridge S	195657	"	Tucker E
255603	"	Smith LI	59738	"	McQueen T
59757	"	Offer H	59210	"	Cox WJ
195508	"	Diaper NJ	141999	"	Secord MD
59100	"	Brooks CMR	210193	"	Clark CA
639527	"	Vanstocken M	59547	"	Kidby E
59062	"	Bethell PF	59713	"	McElroy J

Proceeding 22-3-19

455246	Pte	Booth JJ
--------	-----	----------

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS PROCEEDING TO ENGLAND  
FOR THE PURPOSE OF BEING MARRIED

22-3-19

639800	Pte	Bell WE	633013	Pte	Bennett WG
144959	"	Pearson T	504576	"	Squires HJL
60068	"	Williams GE			

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS ATTACHED TO 25<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION FOR REGROUPING

Lieutenant ST Crooks MC			Lieutenant JR Smith MC		
2060378	Pte	Anderson JS	2021088	Pte	Butler SJ
3204003		Clarkin MP	3204063		Fraser MJ
3204273		Gaudet R	3204193		Griffin R
2060400		Livingstone W	3204206		Martell WJ
3181614		Matheson AL	3204086		MacKay JG
3204263		McKinnon A	3204121		McKinnon WG
3204331		McLeod PJ	3204219		McMillan RD
3180405		Bourgeois JF	3181292		Burns LE
3180843		Campbell C	282381		Conrod JR
3181561		Cook SD	3181454		Countway MJ
3202025		Eisenhour WS	445061		Evans LJ
3180059		Fielding W	3181012		Freyponis W
901044		George BT	3180901		Harvie CG
3181217		Horne C	3180904		Isenor AE
283246		Keans AL	3180612		Lapointe A
3180615		Lodge JH	4050134		Longard S
3180761		Lunn EG	3180762		Lynds E
734098		Messom EA	3180130		McCulloch OB
3181459		McDonald JF	3202054		McDow AB
2329500		McFetridge JL	3181458		McKay CH
3180514		McKenna D	3180915		McKinnon C
469674	Cpl	McKinnon L	3181436		McNeil JH
3202052	Pte	McPherson D	3180183		Nickerson EM
3202063		Ormon LK	901867		Parker I
3180361		Parker LA	445262		Stewart JD
4090293		Taylor DW	3204093		Jay LV
501157	Sgt	Petrie J	3180093		Dupe CJ

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS ATTACHED TO OTHER UNITS FOR REGROUPING

2021681	Pte	Bingham CW	26 <sup>th</sup> Bn	445566	Pte	McNair DF	26 <sup>th</sup> Bn
445139		Bertin W	3 DAC	445042		Doucett FS	3 DAC
445523	Cpl	Clement E	3 DAC	4020088		Delarosbil F	22 <sup>nd</sup> Bn
124675	Pte	Bremner W	24 <sup>th</sup> Bn	2161262		Gravelle J	24 <sup>th</sup> Bn
4021546		Granon B	24 <sup>th</sup> Bn				

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS ATTACHED TO 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION FOR REGROUPING

4080335	Pte	Allan W	29 <sup>th</sup> BN	2631865	Pte	Raven AN	4 <sup>th</sup> CE
814945		Andrews JE	18 <sup>th</sup> Bn	536135		Ross M	Bn
113056		Anderson A	2 CMG	412518		Rich JE	4 <sup>th</sup> F
412244		Anderson RW	2 CMG	256316		Sly L	Amb
1090020		Ayling A	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn	1042056		St Amond W	2 MG Bn
2380073		Beyette B	27 <sup>th</sup> Bn	835533	Cpl	Switzer A	2 MG Bn
231126		Bowen CC	31 <sup>st</sup> Bn	195324	Pte	Stocker HW	2 MG Bn
219661		Bowen H	29 <sup>th</sup> Bn	2007784		Stephens L	2 MG Bn
835206	A/Cpl	Bathgate A	28 <sup>th</sup> Bn	636371		Vollick CAR	4 CE Bn
1069256	Pte	Bristow L	28 <sup>th</sup> Bn	835925		Wood CE	5 CE Bn
725509		Beteau EJ	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn	835755		Wilkes E	2 MG Bn
724669		Barry A	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn	835747	L/S	Wattam AR	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn
835119		Boswell S	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn	835568	Pte	Whan AB	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn
724086		Boldt S	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn	835476		Watson J	19 <sup>th</sup> Bn
454238	BSM	Clapp PJ	2 MG Bn	75549	Cpl	Williamson JB	29 <sup>th</sup> Bn
50428	Pte	Chads DC	4 <sup>th</sup> F Amb	2173321	Pte	Wager FE	27 <sup>th</sup> Bn
226713	L/C	Cross WA	27 <sup>th</sup> Bn	54059		Wilson WH	18 <sup>th</sup> Bn
226549	Cpl	Cross CT	31 <sup>st</sup> Bn	412961		Waffenden T	2 MG Bn
835905	Pte	Coe AF	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn	725525	A/Cpl	Young HW	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn
726005		Curry AG	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
3230242		Corden WG	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
160069		Doyle CS	29 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
2204520		Daly F	19 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
454527		Dawes GW	18 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
413015		Darlington M	18 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
2378362		Dale AH	2 MG Bn				
226756		Dafoe PR	27 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
3230184		Darragh L	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
725545		Eggleton JA	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
2005761		Flanagan A	5 CE Bn				
219514		Grant J	4 CE Bn				
835129	L/S	Genge EV	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
835341	Cpl	Gowdy CE	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
59360	Sgt	Gerow GE	COC				
1027652	Pte	Gregg DG	19 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
2003522		Green S	5 CE Bn				
1027609		Hennessey CP	5 CE Bn				
412480		Holland E	26 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
1063069		Hall WH	19 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
696917	Cpl	Irven RC	31 <sup>st</sup> Bn				
113328	Sgt	Johnstone CP	2 MG Bn				
3206691	Pte	Kennedy MJ	31 <sup>st</sup> Bn				
412342		Kilpatrick N	2 MG Bn				
3106671		Kenary H	2 MG Bn				
226598		Livingston P	2 MG Bn				
454614		Lyman B	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
195987		Monk ET	18 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
455375		Meldrum N	5 CE Bn				
835678	Sgt	Merchant JB	COC				
634005	Pte	Miller RC	2 MG Bn				
226626		Murphy NW	2 MG Bn				
113389		Mash A	2 MG Bn				
1093036		Martin H	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				
2003676		Murray R	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn				

2021709	McConnell RH	29 <sup>th</sup> Bn
2021285	McElroy JE	29 <sup>th</sup> Bn
76349	McPherson RB	29 <sup>th</sup> Bn
639367	Nobes JH	2 MG Bn
220142	Peever H	27 <sup>th</sup> Bn
835033	Pindred D	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn
835630	Peters GW	20 <sup>th</sup> Bn
760764	Pybus EJ	29 <sup>th</sup> Bn

SECRET

Copy 19

21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
OPERATION ORDER No 253

Ref Map  
NAMUR 8, 1/100,000

- 1 The 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion will entrain at AUVELAIS for LE HAVRE and ENGLAND tomorrow the 30<sup>th</sup> inst at 1030 hours on Train No 1
- 2 The Battalion will parade on Battalion Parade Ground at 0915 hours tomorrow the 30<sup>th</sup> inst  
  
Dress – heavy Marching Order  
  
Lieuts LA Anderson MM and JD MacGillivray MM will carry the Colours. The RSM will detail the necessary escort.
- 3 Breakfast for the 30<sup>th</sup> inst will be served at 0630 hours
- 4 Instructions regarding Officers baggage and mess boxes and blankets will be issued later
- 5 Marching Out States, giving the number of Officers and Other Ranks, will be sent to Battalion Orderly Room by 0800 the 30<sup>th</sup> inst
- 6 Capt JHW Cobb MC, is detailed as Entraining Officer
- 7 Lieut EG Jones and a party of 20 Other Ranks from “D” Company will report to the Entraining Staff Officer on arrival at AUVELAIS STATION
- 8 Captain FK Ludlow MC, will report to the Officer i/c Supply Section (Lieut [undecipherable] CASC) at the Entraining Station, and supervise issue of coal and rations for the journey. He will demand from the RSM the necessary fatigue parties.
- 9 Instructions given by the RXO with regard to entraining and detraining must be obeyed by all ranks.
- 10 The following Units will also travel in Train No 1:-  
  
2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Concert Party  
Advance Party Divisional Police  
5<sup>th</sup> CIB Concert Party  
5<sup>th</sup> Canadian Field Ambulance  
20<sup>th</sup> Battery Canadian Field Artillery

11 Particular attention is drawn to "Instructions regarding train journey" issued here with

12 ACKNOWLEDGE

(signed by GW Trollope)  
Lieutenant  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Inf Battalion

29<sup>th</sup> March, 1919

Issued by Runner at 1040 hours

Copy No 1	Commanding Officer	11	Transport Section
2	4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade	12	Quartermaster's Section
3	Second in Command	13	Capt JHW Cobb MC
4	"A" Company	14	Lieut EG Jones
5	"B" Company	15	RSM's Party
6	"C" Company	16	Pipe Band
7	"D" Company	17	Brass Band
8	Specialist Section	18	Office Copy
9	Communication Section	19-21	War Diary
10	Medical Section		

21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion  
A. 923

All Units  
21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Infantry Battalion

INSTRUCTIONS REGARDING TRAIN JOURNEY 30-3-19 ISSUED TO ALL  
RECIPIENTS OF 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION OPERATION ORDER No 253

1 TRAIN JOURNEY

- (a) Straw will be provided for wagons. Care must be taken that fires are not caused by carelessness. Stoves are provided in each wagon.
- (b) YMCA is supplying cards, checkers, dominoes, etc, for each wagon and free reading material
- (c) One wagon on train is allotted to the YMCA as canteen.

2 LOADING OF BAGGAGE

Baggage etc, must be loaded in the rear 3 or 4 trucks of the train. If loaded in front great difficulty will be caused at LE HAVRE in removing same. Before baggage is loaded it should be ascertained which will be the rear of the train as it pulls into LE HAVRE

3 RATIONS ON THE TRAIN

Men will entrain carrying the unexpended portion of the day's rations. The Quartermaster will draw from the Senior SO at entraining point, 3 days train rations for each man. On arrival at LE HAVRE all unused rations will be handed to the Detail Issue Stores and a receipt obtained for same. This issue is to provide against unforeseen contingencies, but otherwise is in excess of requirement and should be loaded in rear of train.

#### 4 REST CAMP, LE HAVRE

- (a) All personnel is accommodated in No 2 Rest Camp, Le Havre
- (b) No 2 Rest Camp is by the docks to the east of the town. Accommodation is in huts throughout. There is no tentage.

#### 5 PROCEDURE ON ARRIVAL AT STATION

- (a) All parties detrain at SOQUENCE PLATEAU LE HAVRE, 1½ miles from the camp. They are met on arrival by an officer from the camp.
- (b) If the train arrives between 2200 hours and 0600 hours, personnel is not detrained until 0600 hours.
- (c) Lieut WI Fleming and 50 Other Ranks from each "C" and "D" Company are detailed to unload baggage and stores.
- (d) Baggage and stores are loaded on lorries, Officers' kits are delivered to their billets in camp. Quartermaster and Orderly Room equipment are taken at Bay No 5 at the camp, where they are available if wanted.
- (e) Rations will be turned in to Detail Issue Store.
- (f) Personnel is marched to the camp, carrying arms, equipment and blankets, in parties not exceeding 400 at 15 minutes interval. (Blankets will be carried one in pack and one bandolier, greatcoats to be worn).
- (g) Major GSS Bowerbank DSO, MC, will ensure that no baggage, stores, or equipment is left in the train or on the station platform.

#### 6 PROCEDURE ON ARRIVAL AT CAMP

- (a) Officers are billeted in camp and messed by the RFC at 3 francs per day, covering messing and billets. Officers receive their billeting accommodation, according to rank, on application to the NCO i/c Bay No 28. Adjoining the dining room is a large lounge.
- (b) A room with tables and chairs is set aside for Warrant Officers and Sergeants Mess. Meals are provided by the cooks of the permanent Sergeants Mess.
- (c) On arrival at the camp parade ground, men will be issued with meal tickets and will thereafter be rationed by the RFC, which provided all cooks and expert help. Breakfast, 0700 - 0800 hours, dinner 1200 – 1300 hours, supper 1600 – 1700 hours, cocoa 2100 – 2200 hours.
- (d) On issue of meal tickets men are marched under competent guides to their billets, where they put away rifles and equipment.
- (e) Immediately thereafter they receive a hot meal, which is waiting for them.

#### 7 DUTIES AT CAMP

Lieut JD MacGillivray MM, is detailed for Orderly Officer and will report to the Camp Duties Office at 0800 hours for instructions, etc.

The Quartermaster will indent for meal-tickets. He will report after 1830 hours daily to the Officer i/c Messing – location at the Camp Duties Office – and will make all necessary arrangements to issue the days meal tickets to each OR on one parade. Any NCO or man who fails to get meal tickets on this parade should report to the Battalion Orderly Room at once.

An Orderly NCO for each dormitory or hutted area is required. This NCO must pay particular attention to sick parades and is held responsible that all men going sick are properly paraded to the Senior Medical Officer. The RSM will detail a day and night picquet for each hutted area or dormitory for the protection of Government or private property. He will also detail the necessary sanitary party.

8 CERTIFICATES

At 0900 hours daily, OsC Companies and Sections will render a certificate at Battalion Orderly Room to the effect that all blankets drawn from Camp Store have been returned and that all dormitories and hutted areas are clean.

9 LEAVE TO LE HAVRE

No passes are necessary for troops in the LE HAVRE area between 1630 hrs and 2130 hours daily. No Other Ranks will be allowed to leave camp at other hours unless provided with a pass signed by the Commanding Officer. Officers may leave camp under arrangements made with the Adjutant. On embarkation orders being received all ranks will be confined to camp.

10 MEDICAL INSPECTION AND SICK PARADES

Captain H Black, CAMC, will report to the Senior Medical Officer as soon as possible after arriving in camp.

Sick parades are held at 0900 hours daily at the Medical Office near the British Leave Office. All casualties requiring attention at any other hour of the day or night will also report there.

11 TRAFFIC ON ROAD

No parades will be formed up on the Sorduroy Traffic Road running thru the centre of the camp. Other Ranks parading for meals will form up in two lines running in the direction of the dining halls to the kitchens.

12 MAILS

The Quartermaster will detail the Mail Orderly to collect Registered and other mail for the Battalion. He must report to Army Post Office No 1, at Southampton Quai, for this purpose. On the day of departure all undelivered mail will be turned over to the Canadian Embarkation Post Office for delivery to the Canadian Branch Record Office, LE HAVRE, for final disposal.

13 BASE STANDING ORDERS

The attention of all ranks is directed to HAVRE Base Standing Orders No 3 which reads as follows:-

A copy of Base Standing Orders Part 1 will be kept in every Officers Mess, Sergeants Mess, Recreation Room, Guard Room and in all offices.

All officers are responsible for making themselves acquainted with Base Standing Orders, and officers Commanding units, etc, will ensure that copies of the orders are at all times accessible and brought to the notice of officers joining their units.

This order will be published from time to time in the Orders of all Units.

All copies of Base Standing Orders in the possession of units should be withdrawn before the unit leaves the Base.

A copy of Base Standing Orders is posted in the Battalion Orderly Room and all officers will within 12 hours after arrival, read and initial same.



14 EMBARKATION FOR ENGLAND

- (a) All embarkation arrangements are made by the Camp Staff. Unit Commanders do not deal with the MLO
- (b) The boat usually leaves at night, embarkation, however, may be at any hour
- (c) From camp to boat is 2 ½ miles. Men will carry arms, equipment, and two blankets
- (d) Lorries take all baggage to the boat. There is no limit imposed by the Camp on baggage permitted to be taken to England
- (e) Prior to embarkation all meal tickets are handed in and rations for the journey are drawn. Details of this may be had from Camp Quartermaster. Hot tea is served on the boat
- (f) Units are issued with a second suit of underwear per man.
- (g) On arrival off Weymouth, (crossing takes ten hours) dis-embarkation takes place in daylight
- (h) Trains are waiting to take personnel to WITLEY

(Sgd) GW Trollope  
Lieutenant  
Adjutant 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

29<sup>th</sup> of March, 1919\

## WAR DIARY

Army Form

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
-------	------	------	-----------------------------------

Le Havre France	1/4/19 to 3/4/19		At 0600 hours on the 1 <sup>st</sup> of April the 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion arrived at LE HAVRE and after detraining was completed, marched from the station to the Canadian Corps Camp, a distance of about four kilometres. On arrival at camp the Battalion was formed up on the parade ground allotted to us and meal tickets were issued all ranks. Accommodation in Nisson huts was found for all and the Battalion rested for the remainder of the day. The 2 <sup>nd</sup> instant was spent in bathing, delousing and completing the necessary documentation. At 1745 hours on the 3 <sup>rd</sup> the 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion proceeded from the Canadian Corps Camp to the pier and embarked for England. At 2100 hours the SS Western Australia weighed anchor and put out for SOUTHAMPTON.
--------------------	------------------------	--	---

Southampton England	4/4/19		We docked at SOUTHAMPTON early in the morning of the 4 <sup>th</sup> instant and disembarked at 0600 hours. Almost immediately a hot meal was served and two hours later the Battalion proceeded, by special train, to Witley Camp, Surrey. Upon arrival at MILFORD Station at 1500 hours the same date the Battalion was served with refreshments before starting the three mile march to the camp. We arrived at our destination at 1705 hours and were assigned to huts in "F" Lines ("P" Wing).
------------------------	--------	--	---

Witley Camp Surrey	5/4/19 to 8/4/19		The two days following were spent in medical and dental boarding and preparing the balance of forms required for each man to complete documentation. The Wing Record Office had charge of this work. It was learned later, with considerable satisfaction, that this unit had established a record for the time required to complete documentation, medical and dental boards and clothing parade. All ranks were paid and bathed on the 6 <sup>th</sup> instant.
-----------------------	------------------------	--	---

Eight days leave was granted to all ranks and by the 8<sup>th</sup> instant the whole Battalion was on leave to various parts of the British Isles.

16/4/19 to 18/4/19			During this period the 21 <sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion remained in Camp at Witley. Bathing parades were held and sports were indulged in daily. The Weather continued bright but rather cold for the time of year. The meals served to the men were most satisfactory, both in quality and quantity. Huts were inspected daily by the Second-in-Command.
--------------------------	--	--	--

19/4/19 to 28/4/19			On the 19 <sup>th</sup> instant Major FD Raymond MC, and Lieutenant PF Pirie MM, were struck off the strength of the Battalion on transfer to the 2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Pool. The former officer assumed command of that unit. On the same date Lieutenant N Nicholson was struck off the strength of the Battalion on transfer to the 6 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Reserve Battalion.
--------------------------	--	--	--

At 0945 hours on the 20<sup>th</sup> instant Church parade was held in the YMCA Hut No 2. Routine orders of the 21<sup>st</sup> announced that Lieutenant GD Woodcock was authorized to wear the badges of rank of Captain. Captain EW Edwards MC, returned to duty from hospital on the 22<sup>nd</sup> instant. A Muster Parade of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion was held on the 24<sup>th</sup> instant after which the Companies and Sections were bathed. On this date Lieutenant AL Johnson MM, having arrived as reinforcement, was taken on the strength of this unit and posted to "C" Company. The following Other Ranks proceeded this date to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Discharge Depot, London, for discharge in the BRITISH ISLES:- 59177 Sgt Cocke GC, 59292 Sgt Edwards TC, 59574 L/Cpl Leach WR, 59688 L/Cpl Murray TL, 59590 Pte Lilley W, 48525 Pte Champion J

Captain JHW Cobb MC, having proceeded to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Divisional Pool for duty, was struck off the strength with effect from the 24<sup>th</sup> instant.

On the 25<sup>th</sup> of the month Lieutenant K McGoun reported to the Battalion and was taken on the strength and posted to "C" Company. The Battalion paraded on the Battalion parade ground on the 27<sup>th</sup> instant and was photographed. A group photograph was also taken of the Sergeants of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion. The weather was overcast in the morning and in the afternoon developed into a heavy snowstorm which lasted well into the night. In the Routine orders of April the 26<sup>th</sup> Captain CW Foreman (CF), was struck off the strength on transfer to EPSOM for duty.

29/4/19 The weather continued overcast with showers at intervals and high winds to during the afternoon. At 0845 hours on the morning of the 30<sup>th</sup> instant the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion paraded on the Battalion Parade Ground where a photograph was taken. Lieutenants JG Caldwell and HD Wightman MM, carried the Colours while the escort was furnished by "D" Company. At 1000 hours a Brigade Ceremonial parade was held on the "J" Wing Parade Ground at which Brigadier-General R Rennie CB, CMG, MVC, DSO, General Officer Commanding the 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade, presented medals to NCOs and men of the Brigade. Attached as appendices is a nominal roll of Other Ranks of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion who received their medals on this parade.

The Ration Strength of the Battalion as on the 30<sup>th</sup> of April was 24 Officers and 649 Other Ranks.

NOMINAL ROLL OF MEDAL PARTY TO BE PRESENTED AT WITLEY CAMP BY  
BRIGADIER-GENERAL R RENNIE, CB, CMG, MVO, DSO  
GOC, 4<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE, APRIL 30<sup>TH</sup>, 1919

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

195631	Sgt	Hill SE	"D"
--------	-----	---------	-----

MILITARY MEDAL

59572	C.Qmr.Sgt	Leach J	"A"
59218	Sgt	Crossey J	"B"
444453	L/C	DesRoches EH	"Comm"
59181	Cpl	Coghill JR	"P Band"
1063013	L/C	Edmunds E	"B"
59439	Sgt	Hawkey JT	"Transport"
59460	Pte	Hircock HT	"MO"
633076	Cpl	Kemp D	"D"
1042299	Sgt	Lepine L	"C"
634009	Sgt	Pitt LIJ	"C"

MERITORIOUS SERVICE MEDAL

59563	Sgt	Landsborough R	"C"
59891	Sgt	Smith AJ	"Spec"
60099	Sgt	Woodrow AW	"QM"

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS STRUCK OFF STRENGTH OF 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN  
BATTALION MONTH OF APRIL, 1919

---

<u>No</u>	<u>Rank</u>	<u>Name</u>
59022	Sgt	Armstrong C
725509	Pte	Beteau EJ
1042601		Carroll P
675005		Coles A
59247		Day F
640035		Derrig JJ
506358		Denison WH
59268		Doran HA
637085		Fraser MS
59411		Halliday AJ
636866		Hawley VM
805598		Hornby R
113328	Sgt	Johnston H
2528408	L/C	King PJ
775515	Pte	Liscombe E
454614		Lyman B
639389		Mead F
3130121		Mitchell MM
1087324		Money J
636961		Reid JW
2188510		Rodgers J
345840		Ruttle C
59876	Cpl	Sharpe WH
59922	Pte	Stinson F
835533		Switzer A
59959		Taylor J
59995	CQMS	Trappitt AA
635755 [455755?]	Pte	Wyers E

NOMINAL ROLL OF OTHER RANKS TAKEN ON STRENGTH OF 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN  
BATTALION MONTH OF APRIL, 1919

---

<u>No</u>	<u>Rank</u>	<u>Name</u>
514894	Pte	Bamford AC
59087		Bradley RJ
1093035		Brickman GC
1087218		Carnochan GR
1042601		Carroll CW
59163	Sgt	Clarke CW
141879	Pte	Coxall T
3320492		Craig R
2020553		Don JS
59268		Doran HA
160069		Doyle CS
3320495		Ferguson WC
835063	Cpl	Filson HK
59323	Pte	Fitzgerald A
59347		Gainsford NG

141442		Greenacre WC
3320475	L/C	Guay GGH
1042628	Pte	Henaire H
59460		Hircock HT
805598		Hornby R
237158		Howe P
2235327		Jarvo CE
725225		Johnson VF
675737		Kerr DM
424171		Larson T
775515		Liscombe E
59700		Maconomy DH
219573		Manser J
210618		Maxwell J
3320182		Meilleur E
2235319		Moss A
469341		Neary LJ
59747		Nicholls A
639712		Offord GH
514857		Park T
514851		Pound J
760764		Pybus EJ
514852		Ratty T
639170		Rickett NL
226831		Robertson H
636758		Smith WJ
2007784		Stephens L
237357	L/Cpl	Strain J
59938	A/Cpl	Sutton EW
1042149	Sgt	Swales A
59949		Symes AW
59959	Pte	Taylor J
187730		Tench OH
409494	Sgt	Thomas DR
726116	Pte	Townsend HW
59995	CQMS	Trappitt AA
210941	L/Cpl	Wells H
510094	S/Sgt	Williams A

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information
-------	------	------	-----------------------------------

- |             |        |  |   |
|-------------|--------|--|---|
| Witley Camp | 1/5/19 |  | The Battalion was at this time in Camp at Witley awaiting sailing orders. Hon Capt J Rollins (CF) reported this date for demobilization purposes and was taken on the strength.   |
|             | 3/5/19 |  | The Battalion paraded for Divine Service, jointly with the 18 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion, the service being conducted by Major EE Pugsley in the large YMCA hut.  |
|             | 4/5/19 |  | Parades were carried out on private parade ground, the Companies being engaged in PT and games.   |
|             | 5/5/19 |  | The Battalion paraded for Muster Parade for embarkation roll purposes this date. Copies of the 4 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade History were received, being a summarized history of the Brigade's movements whilst in Belgium, France and Germany. The writer being Major JA Cooper, 19 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion and attached to Brigade. |
|             | 6/5/19 |  | Individual parades were carried out under respective Company and Section Commanders. Thirty nine Other Ranks were struck off the strength to Hospital, Command, Discharge in England, etc.  |
|             | 8/5/19 |  | The following message was received by the GOC, 2 <sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division from General Sir Julian Byng GCB, KCMG, MVO, and published for information of all ranks:   |

11 Mount St. W1

My Dear General:

On the eve of their return to Canada and home, I am asking you if you "will convey a message of goodwill to all ranks of your old Division."

"The pride and affection I have always felt for them was intensified as I saw them taking part in the march through London. Their soldierlike bearing and smartness recalled memories to me which are impossible to eradicate. I fervently wish them every happiness".

(Sgd) J BYNG, General

- |        |        |  |  |
|--------|--------|--|--|
| London | 6/5/19 |  | This date Lieut-Col HE Pense DSO, MC, together with Capt Alan Cockeram DSO, and Lieuts Anderson and MacGillivray, carrying Colours, with 115 Other Ranks proceeded to London to participate in the Dominion troops march through London – which was commonly accorded one of the most inspiring spectacles London had ever witnessed. At the open air investiture held by His Majesty the King in the Quadrangle at Buckingham Palace the following Officers were invested with the order and decoration respectively opposite their names:- |
|--------|--------|--|--|

Lieut-Col HE Pense	DSO	Captain DJ More	MC
Major GSS Bowerbank	DSO	Captain FK Ludlow	MC
Major FD Raymond	Bar to MC	Lieut WH Blake	MC
Captain JA McGibbon	MC	Lieut HD Wightman	MC

- Witley 10/5/19 The Battalion paraded this date for Divine Service in No 2 YMCA Hut Witley
- 11/5/19 The Battalion paraded for Muster, for final checking of the sailing roll
- 13/5/19 The Battalion paraded at 0530 hours to march to Milford Station to entrain for Liverpool. The train left at scheduled time 0740 hours, and arrived at Liverpool at 1715 hours, a short halt of 15 minutes having been made at Crewe. The Battalion on detraining were marched direct to the dock and boarded the Cunard Liner "Caronia" on which were already assembled the remaining Battalions of the Brigade, together with the GOC with the Brigade Staff. Attached is the nominal roll of Officers and Other Ranks embarking.

[Transcriber's Note: The above mentioned nominal roll is missing from the file that I had access to]

The GOC Division – General Sir Henry Burstall KCB, CMG, ADC, visited the ship and in the afternoon gave a farewell speech to the Brigade, at which he was accorded a deep lunged reception. The following old Battalion Officers also visited the departing troops:

Major TF Elmitt DSO  
Major JF Wolfrain

Major HW Cooper  
Major WE Kidd MC (CF)

- 15/5/19 The day was fine and a run of 160 miles was made at 1200 hours. Band concerts were given in various parts of the ship
- 16/5/19 The weather became rougher and a considerable sea was running, and a number of the men were overcome by seasickness. Runs of 396 and 275 miles were made.
- 18/5/19 The weather improved, and the men were able to enjoy the open air. Concerts and sports were given, which were largely attended – Days run 415 miles
- 19/5/19 The weather was very fine, although at periods fogs prevailed. At 2000 hours the WOs and Sergeants gave a concert programme of which is attached. General Rennie presided and later gave a farewell speech. The bands worked hard in giving excellent programs during the day and evening. The run for this day was 398 miles.
- 20/5/19 Weather very calm. The Battalion sports took place and caused great fun and merriment and was very largely attended. Later the band gave an excellent concert on the aft deck. At 8.45 pm a concert was given in the Dining Salon, in aid of the Liverpool Seamen's Charities and was largely attended. The excellent talent of which received the applause it deserved. The second ship's newspaper was published containing the latest Marconigrams of current news. A considerable gloom was cast over the Battalion when it was learned that No 2356571 Pte AJ Robertson, of "C" Company had died at 2225 hours from septic influenza. He was a teacher from Florida, USA before enlistment. He joined the Battalion in the fall of 1918 and proved himself of excellent worth in the assistance he gave in the Educational work during the months in Belgium after the Armistice. He was deservedly popular and universal sympathy was expressed at his untimely decease.
- Definite orders regarding disembarkation were received this date by Marconigram. Days run 417 miles. (1200 noon)
- 21/5/19 Sea very calm, although temperature was noticeable colder, the days run of 430 miles proved a record for the present voyage.

22/5/19 Halifax harbour was reached soon after midnight 22/23<sup>rd</sup> May and 0700 hours the transport was berthed at Pier Two, and after a short time the troops were disembarked, the 21<sup>st</sup> Battalion being the last to leave the ship. The train was in readiness and entraining was effected very speedily and at noon the homeward journey to Kingston was commenced.

The journey was uneventful and very hot. The feeding and sleeping arrangements were most satisfactory and great jubilation was caused by the men as they drew nearer home.

24/5/19 Montreal was reached in the early hours and the train was met by Brig-Gen W St P Hughes DSO, accompanied by Lieut W Currie MC, MM, who accompanied same to Kingston. On the way to which General Hughes addressed each car and his inspiring remarks were enthusiastically received.

Kingston was reached at 11.45 am and detraining immediately commenced and the Battalion proceeded to Tete du Pont Barracks where they were formed in mass. At 12.30 pm preceded by a detachment of the RCHA mounted and a party of former Officers and men of the Battalion in command of Brig-Gen Hughes, the Battalion moved in column of route along the crowded and beflagged streets to the Market Square, where they were formed in close column of Companies. The Battalion Colours were then marched on, which impressive ceremony caused the greatest interest. The Very Rev Dean Starr gave the blessing, which was followed by welcoming speeches by Brig-Gen VAS Williams and His Worship the Mayor, which were responded to by Lieut-Col HE Pense DSO, MC. A great spirit of enthusiasm was most noticeable which was very gratifying to the returning Battalion.

After the speeches had been delivered, the detachment followed by the Battalion moved in column of route for a short tour round the City and proceeded to the demobilization grounds at Barriefield. On arrival then men were given a meal and at 1500 hours demobilization was commenced, and in a few hours the members of the Battalion became civilians once more. At 2000 hours the 21<sup>st</sup> Club of Kingston had arranged a magnificent banquet at the Armouries, which the greater majority of the members of the late Battalion availed themselves, and a very excellent evening was spent, and the great spirit of re-union was very electrical – although sadness had its portion in the idea of the ending of the old Battalion as an organized unit, which had passed out of being except for the glorious memories and the ever living thoughts of the years that had gone and the heroism and sacrifice they had produced.

(signed by HE Pense)  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion





BUCKINGHAM PALACE.

The Queen and I wish you God-speed,  
and a safe return to your homes and dear  
ones.

A grateful Mother Country is proud of your  
splendid services characterized by unsurpassed  
devotion and courage.

*George R. I.*

## SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY

By Brig-Gen R RENNIE CB, CMG, DSO, MVO,

Commanding 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

As the hour for the demobilization of the Brigade approaches, after over four years of Active Service abroad, I desire to express to all Officers and other ranks my warmest appreciation of the splendid support accorded to me during the period of my command.

Unvaried success has attended operations of the Brigade in the field; splendid *esprit de corps* has been maintained throughout, and an excellent feeling of comradeship has pervaded all Units. The record of the Brigade in the war is not excelled in brilliance by that of any similar formation in the Canadian Corps, due entirely to the loyal and cheerful manner in which duties have at all times been performed.

On your return to civil life, my earnest wish is for a continuance of that spirit of comradeship and self-sacrifice which has animated all ranks throughout the campaign, and which, combined with the confidence that we were fighting on the side of right and justice, has enabled us to emerge from the world conflict successfully and with honour.

(signed) R Rennie  
Brigadier-General  
Commanding 4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Infantry Brigade

21<sup>st</sup> May, 1919

## **SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY**

### **Farewell Message to-All Ranks of the 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion**

TO

**OFFICERS, WARRANT OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS  
AND MEN OF THE 21<sup>ST</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION**

We are hastening to the centre in Eastern Ontario which witnessed, in 1914, the birth of our Battalion and from which we will shortly proceed to our homes and civilian occupations. On parting from this, your Service Unit, the record of which in the achievements of the Second Canadian Division you have abundant reason to feel proud. I wish to thank you personally for your devoted service and to extend to you my most sincere wish for your happiness and success in the life and work which lie before you.

Though the Battalion will cease to be recognized as an organized Unit of the Canadian Army Corps, its spirit which has inspired us on innumerable occasions will not pass away, but will influence our lives in the years to come and, consequently, all with whom we are associated. Returning to your homes and loved ones who have endured so loyally and bravely during this world-wide struggle, you may well have the knowledge of duty faithfully done and carry with you pride in having shared in the Victory so aptly referred to, after the Armistice, by Marshal Foch: "You have won the greatest battle in history and saved the most sacred of all causes, the Liberty of the World."

Let us remember the hundreds of our gallant Comrades who, in the discharge of their duty, willingly made the supreme sacrifice on the battlefield and whose remains rest in honoured graves in France and Belgium. May we also ever be mindful of their bereaved ones whose hearts are particularly lonely upon our return to the "Land of the Maple". And, further, may we constantly look to the welfare of those of our number who by reason wounds sustained in action require our comradeship and assistance.

Allow me to express to you my deep appreciation of and gratitude for your loyalty to and trust in me. It has counted for more than you will ever realize.

Recalling what we have gone through and overcome together, let us take with us into our civilian pursuits the determination, spirit and fellowship which have meant so much to us as a Battalion and as individuals, and let them be telling forces for good in our participation in the future of our Empire.

Good-bye and God speed

(signed by) HE Pense  
Lieutenant-Colonel  
Commanding 21<sup>st</sup> Canadian Battalion

MAY 23<sup>rd</sup>, 1919

## SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY

---

### FAREWELL MESSAGE TO ALL RANKS OF THE 2<sup>ND</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION FROM THEIR COMMANDER

---

Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and Men of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division: We are about to return to our homes in Canada after taking our part in carrying to a successful issue the task which our nation undertook in 1914

We have had strenuous times together and have many glorious deeds to recall. The record of our Division is one of which we have splendid reason to be proud. The history of this war will not have any pages more glorious than that which will tell of the SOMME, of HILL 70 and LENS, of PASSCHENDAELE, of ARRAS, during the great German offensive in the Spring and again in the Autumn when they were forced to make their final retreat; of the battle in front of AMIENS, and finally, the rapid advance in the last stages of the war until the afternoon of November 10<sup>th</sup> when we captured the heights commanding MONS together with parts of the city.

We have reason to be proud of these achievements which have made the fame of our Division glorious, and while we think of them our thoughts naturally turn to those loyal comrades who fought and endured with us, and who have paid the full price of devotion to Country. They have died but their names will live. Their graves in France and Belgium will be perpetual memorials of our achievements long after we have passed away.

This is my last message to you. The Division will now cease to exist as an organized formation. The organization of the Division will pass away but its spirit will live forever. This, to me, is the grandest thing of all. The gallant actions and achievements, the cheerfully endured suffering and hardships of the past four years of active service will inspire the future generations of our country in all time to come. Take home to Canada with you the knowledge of duty faithfully done in the days of war and the determination to be no less loyal and faithful to your country in the days of peace. For you can be quite sure that the characteristics of courage and endurance, of determination and initiative which you have shown on active service are as necessary in the building up of your country as they have been in defending her.

I wish to express my thanks to you for the faith and trust you have had in me and my staff. And now that we are about to separate may I say to you that our one aim as a staff has been to leave no factor neglected in winning the most decisive victories at the least possible cost, to provide for your comfort as far as we could, and to merit your trust and confidence.

I wish to thank not only the fighting troops, which have won imperishable fame, but also the Service and Departments, including the YMCA, which, by untiring work, often under the most trying circumstances, made possible the achievements of the fighting troops.

With a heart full of pride and gratitude, as well as with the most real sorrow, I say Goodbye to you, and wish you all happiness and prosperity in your future homes. I trust that in the days to come I shall have the privilege of meeting many of you at gatherings where we shall be able to recall some of the great days we have spent together.

(signed by HE Burstall)  
Major-General  
Commanding 2<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Division

[Transcribers Notes:

*The pages that follow in the file that I had access to contained several newspaper clippings from the Kingston Ontario newspapers that told the story of the Battalion's homecoming, with a couple of articles containing a brief history of the Battalion. When enlarged, they are difficult to read and I felt they would add little to this transcription.*

*To repeat my opening comments, I have made every effort to correct the spelling mistakes that were made in the diary pertaining to names of locations, the names of the men, and their numbers. The original contains many of those kinds of errors. I did this so that if a descendent of one of those men tried to find mention of their family member, it would be found by doing a key-word search, which would not have been found had the spelling errors been left in place.*

*I would also like to acknowledge the assistance of "Sarge" (John Sargeant). Sarge transcribed a portion of this diary, as well as offering his support and encouragement over the past 18 months. Without that support, this transcription probably would not have been completed.*

*I take full responsibility for the content and I hope I have found all of my own typing errors.*

*Questions or comments can be directed to me at [swellal@hotmail.com](mailto:swellal@hotmail.com)*